

A TREATISE
excellent and compendious, the wing
and declaring, in manner of Tragedye, the
fallies of sondry most notable Princes and Princesses with o-
ther fables, through & mutabilitie and
change of vnticofast fortune together with their most
detestable & wicked vices. First com-
posed in Latin by the excellent Cierke Bocattus
us, an Italian borne. And since
that tyme translated into our
English and Vulgare tong,
by Dan John Lid-
gate Monke of Bu-
ry. And nowe newly im-
printed, correc-
ted, and aug-
mented out
of diuerse and
sundry
olde written copies
in parchement.

In adiutus Richardi Tottell
Cum privilegio.

Here foloweth the table of this

present Booke, called the fall of Princes and Princesses.

Which booke is deuised in to nine bookes, and euery booke

contayneth diuers Chapters, as hereafter folo-

weth: And fyrr of the fyrr booke, which

contayneth. xxviii. Chapters.

(. .)



The Prologe of John Ly-
gate Monke of Burp tra-
flatour of thys booke.

Howe Adam and Eue
for their inobedience were
put oure of Paradise and
liued in sorowe and woe,
they and their offspring. Chap. i.

Howe Rembzoth builde the towre of Ba-
bilon to saue him from Noies floude, which
for his pryde was put from hys magnificēce
and hys towre with lodeyne leuen smitten
dune. Chap. ii.

An exclamaciō of Bochas ayenst al proud
men, shewing how God may them and their
pride abate whē him best list by many diuers
meanes and wayes punishe and chastice.
Capter. iii.

Howe many yerres was betwixt Adam &
Rembzoth, and betwixt Rembzoth & Cad-
mus and of other kinges. Chap. iiii.

Of Oggigus king of Thebes. fol. vii.

Of a great floud in Thessalye. fol. viii.

Of goodly Iles wife to Apis king of Ar-
gie slain by hys brother Dikeus. Ca. v.

Of Sciliton that hys membez eate for
hungr. Chap. vi.

Howe Jupiter rauished Europa, and how
Cadmus was sent to seke her in diuers re-
gions. Chap. vii.

A processe of Oetes king of Colchos, Ja-
son, Mede, Theseus, Scilla, Aulus, & other
mo. Chap. viii.

Of myghty Iabin kynge of Canane: of
Queene Iocasta, and howe Thebes was
destroyed. Chap. ix.

Howe Atreus king of Micene wrought
ageinst his brother Chiestes, slewe his thre
children dismembred them in pteces, made
Chiestes to eate of their flesch and drinke of

their bloode

Howe Atreus accused himself of murder,
and his brother bpō aduoutrie done id Eu-
ropa the Mucene. Chap. x.

Of Duke Theseus, and Ariadne that
saued hys life in the caue, and howe he lyke
a foxwoyne man forsoke her, and wedded
fayre Phedra, which afterward slough her
selfe. Chap. xii.

Here Bochas repzeueth al them that ye-
ueth hally credēce to euery report. Ca. xiii.

Of Queene Althea, and howe Hercules
by women was bzought to confusio.
Chap. xiiii.

A processe of Narcissus, Biblis, Mircha,
and of other their infortunes. Chap. xv.

Of Priamus king of Trope and howe
the Monke of Burp translatoure of thys
booke wrote a booke of the sieg of Trope,
called Troy Booke. Chap. xvi.

Here speaketh Bochas the autour of this
booke ageinst the surquedous pryde of them
that trulle in richesse, saying these wordes
vnto them. Chap. xvii.

Here also John Bochas put a great prai-
sing and cōmendacion of suertie that stan-
deth in pouertie, vnder these wordes in se-
tence. Chap. xviii.

Of myghty Sampson which tolde hys
counsaile to Dalilah wherby he was de-
ceyued. Chap. xix.

A Chapter of Bochas descryuing þ malice
of women. Chap. xx.

The excuse of Bochas for hys wrytynge
ageinst misgouerned womē in stede of Le-
uoy. fol. xxxviii.

Of myghty Pirchus þ slough Dollitrene
which for hys pryde and aduoutrye died in
pouertye, slame at the last by Orestes.
Chap. xxi.

C. i.

Of

The Table

Of Machabe and hys sister Canace
Chapter. xx.
The letter of cōpleint of Canace to her
brother Machabe. Chap. xxii.

The ende of the table to
the first booke.

The table to the
second booke.



The Prologe of the transla-
toure to the second booke.

Howe Saule king of
Hierusalem bozne of lowe
degree, as long as he dyed
god, was obedient to him,
and ruled by good coun-
saile made manye great disconstitutes, but
at the last for hys prude, presumption, and gret
disobeysaunce, he lost hys crowne and was
slayne by Philistees. Chap. i.

A commendacyon of Bochas vpon the
vertue of obedience. fol. xliii.

Howe king Roboam for geuynge fayth to
young counsaile lost the beneuolence of his
people and died a foole. Chap. ii.

A Chapter descriuynge howe princes be-
ing heades of their commōties, should haue
noble chualry, trewe Judges their common-
tye to gouerne. &c. Chap. iii.

How Mutius Scauola slough an inno-
cent in slede of kinge Porcenna that layed
siege to Rome. Chap. iiii.

Howe Lucretie oppressed by Tarquyne
slough her self. Chap. v.

Howe Rome after was gouerned and
Virginia by her father slaine. Chap. vi.

How Jeroboam king of Israel for Ido-
latry & disobedience, came to a mischeuous
ende. Chap. vii.

How areas king of Ethiope was slaine
in bataile. Chap. viii.

Howe Nadab king of Hierusalem loste
scepter and crowne. Chap. ix.

Howe the vengeable prince zambrias
set a towre on fire and byente hym selfe.

Chapter. x.

Of king Achab and Isebel hys wyfe.

Chapter. xi.

Of Quene Athalia for her tyrāny slaine.

Chapter. xii.

Howe Dido Quene of Chartage slough
her selfe for conseruacion of her chastite.

Chapter. xiii.

Howe vicious Sardanapalus kinge of
Assiria byent hymselfe and hys treasoure.

Chapter. xiiii.

A commendatiō of Bochas of verteous
busynes, rehearsing names, founders of
diuers sciences and cunningses in reprieue
of ydlenesse. Chap. xv.

Howe Amastis in Iuda king, for prude &
presumption was vanquished in bataile &
after slayne. Chap. xvi.

Howe vpon Ollas succeeding king, next
in Iuda, god tooke vengeaunce, and smote
him with leprosie. Chap. xvii.

An exhortacion to princes to be auised
to doe ageine goddes preceptes. Ca. xviii.

Howe king Ozie king of Israel was ta-
ken by king Salmanasar and died in prison.

Chapter. xix.

Howe Senacherib king of Assirie was
slaine. Chap. xx.

How king Sederchie for false forswering
was slayne, and made blinde in prison.

Chapter. xxi.

Howe king Astages laboured to disherit
Cirrus but god suffered hys malice not to
preuaile. Chap. xxii.

Howe Candoles king of Lidia was made
curcold and after slaine. Chap. xxiii.

Howe what thing king Midas touched
was gold yet died he in miserie & wretched-
nesse. Chap. xxiiii.

Of Balthasar king of Babilon, and how
Daniel expounded, Hane, Thechel Phares.

Chapter. xxv.

How Cresus and Balthasar were vain-
quished by Cirrus, and the sonne of Cre-
sus slayne at the hunting of a Boze.

Chapter. xxvi.

How the cruel tyrant Cirrus delighted eue;
in slaughter and shedding of blood and so
ended

The Table.

ended.

Howe Amilcus for couetise slough his brother, and Remus and Romulus nozished by a woluesse. Chap. xxviii.

Howe Metius Suffecius kinge of Albanos beyng false of hys Othe and assuraunce, was drawen into peces.

Chapter. xxix.

A Chapter howe princes shoulde of their othes and promises be trew, auoding al doublenes and decepyon.

Chapter. xxx.

Of kinge Hostilius that first weared purple hewe, consumpt with fyre leuen.

Chapter. xxxi.

The ende of the table to the second Booke.

The table to the thyrde booke.



He Prologe of the tractateure to the thyrde booke.

Howe Andalus doctor of Astronomy concludeth howe princes shoulde not atwite comstellacions nor fortune of their vnhappy falling, but their demerites and vicious liuing.

Chap. i.

A disputation betwene fortune and glad pouerte.

fol. lxx.

Howe kinge Hostilius worshippinge false goddes was consumpt with fyre leuen.

Chap. ii.

Howe Anchus Martius king of Rome was murdred by Lucius by the assent of hys wife.

Chap. iii.

Howe Lucius that murdred Anchus was after murdred.

Chap. iiii.

Howe for the offence done to Lucrece by Tarquin was neuer after crowned king in Rome.

Chap. v.

The greuous complaint of Lucrece vpon her oppzession.

fol. lxxii.

The compleint of Bochas vpon Luxurie of princes as by examplis of many diuers mischaunces.

fol. lxxiii.

Howe cambises assenting to the mur-

ther of hys brother Mergus, at the last slough hymself.

Chap. vi.

Howe Dary obtepyning the kingdome of Perse by slepygh, ended with shame.

Chapter. vi.

Howe Coriolan by Romayns exiled gan warre ageinst them; and howe after they sent out hys mother with other for peace (which had) they est him exiled, and after was slaine.

Chap. vii.

Howe Alcibiades Duke of Athens with smal numbze baynquished. vi. C. M. Persiens, and after by his comindie that aye of custome desirerh a chaunge of princes newe, he was cheyned in prison and so died.

Chap. viii.

Howe Fettes kinge of Perse for hys raine and couetise, was dismembred in smal peces.

Chap. ix.

Howe Artabanus which murdred king Fettes was afterwarde hymself murdered and slayne.

Chap. x.

Of Duke Phalantus, and howe the Spartanes werreyed them of Hellene for rauishing their maydens.

Ca. xi.

Of Ceso Quintus exiled, and Gracrus Cluitus taken prisoner.

Cap. xii.

Here Bochas rehearseth the tyranny of Appius Claudius, and falsenesse of Judges.

Cap. xiii.

Bochas ageine þ vntruth of Judges folio. lxxvi.

Here Bochas maketh an exclamaciõ of the extorciõ of the officers of Rome.

Chapter. xiiii.

Howe Alcibiades was exiled and after byent in hys bed.

Chap. xv.

Here Bochas maketh an exclamaciõ vpon the death of Alcibiades.

Ca. xvi.

Here Bochas writeth ageine the desires of people.

Chap. xvi.

Here John Bochas speaketh ageine Idlenesse, rehearsing howe some men haue toye in one science, and some in another.

Chap. xviii.

Howe Macheus Duke of Chartage for oppzession and tyrannie was hewen into peces.

Chap. xix.

Howe the substance of the host of Amilcho Duke of Chartage going to

C. iii.

conquers

The Table.

conquere Cicile dyed of pestilence,
and after hymself slayne. Cap. xx.

Howe Hannon Duke of Chartage
was dismembred. Cap. xxi.

The Autoure agayne couetous peo-
ple. fol. xciii.

Howe Euagozas king of Cipze was
by Artaxerxes outrayed and putte from
his kingdome. Cap. xxii.

Howe Theo kyng of Egypt by Artax-
erxes was dreyuen from his kyngdom,
and fled into Arabie. Cap. xxiii.

Howe Amintas of Macedon kyng
had by Euredice his wyfe Alexander,
Perdiccas, and Philip, and howe the first
two were slayn. Cap. xxiiii.

Howe the proude Tirant Aman was
hanged, and the innocent Harbocheus
preserued. Cap. xxv.

Of the two brethren Artaxerxes and
Cirus, and how Artaxerxes slough his
chyliden and concubines, and how they
ended. Cap. xxvi.

The ende of the table to
the thirde Booke.

The table to the
fourth Booke.



The Prologe of
the translatour
to the fourth
Booke.

Howe Mar-
cus Manlius
wroughte and
dyd for Rome
town, and at the
laste he was by
the commons cast into Tiber and there
drownd. Cap. i.

Here Bochas writeth in part against
suche as cannot be contente with suf-
fisaunce, but vsurpe to highe dignities.
Chapter. ii.

Howe Nectanabus kyng of Egypte
was by Perces constreyned to flee his
kingdome. Cap. iii.

Howe Pausanias Duke of Lacede-
moyne was exyled by them of Lacede-
moyne. Cap. iiii.

Howe Clearchus the Tirante of He-
racia for extortion and oppression was
slayne by the knyghte Leonides.
Chapter. v.

Howe the vicious Dionise kyng of
Cicile slough his brethren and kynred,
and after beying exyled dyed at mischief.
Chapter. vi.

The Autour agayne presumptuous
people, and princes holdyng them selfe
for goddes. Cap. vii.

Howe kyng Polierates of the Ile of
Samos for extortion and tyranny was
hanged tyll euerie toynte wente from o-
ther. Cap. viii.

Howe the Tirant Alexander slough
his Philosopher Calisthenes with other
mo for saying of truthe. Cap. ix.

Howe Alexander kyng of Epirus, ad-
uentring to passe the floud of Acheront,
there at his backe by his most trusty was
deably wounded. Cap. x.

Howe Dary kyng of Perse and Mede
was outrayed by Alexander kyng of
Macedoyne. Cap. xi.

Here Bochas remembryeth the batailes
and losse of realmes of antiquitie, with
the falling of diuers nobles. Cap. xii.

Howe Camenes was twyse outrayed
by Antigonus, and at the laste dyed in
prison. Cap. xiii.

Howe Quene Olimpias mother of
kyng Alexander, for she delighted in bi-
ces, murther, and vengeance, dyed at
mischiefe. Cap. xiiii.

Howe Agathocles of lowe byrth borne
attayned vnto royall dignitie, ended in
pouertie and wretchednes. Cap. xv.

Howe Cassander slough the wyfe of
Alexander, and Hercules her sonne, and
Antipater slough his mother, and of o-
ther murthyzers. Cap. xvi.

Of the two prefectes, Peucestes and
Amintas. Cap. xvii.

Howe Sandrocottus borne of lowe
degree, cherished robboours and thence.
Cap. xviii.

The Table.

Chapter. xviii.

How Seleuchus the mightie prince was slayn by the great Ptholome, king of Egypt. Cap. xix.

Howe the two sonnes of quene Arsinoe, wer by theyr mothers brother traitorously slayne, and she exiled. Cap. xx.

How Ceraunus of Macedoyn kyng that murdered his cosins was slayne in battaile by them of fraunce. Cap. xxi.

How the prince Belgius was discōfited & brought vnto nought. Ca. xxii.

How Duke Biennus desiring to rob and scale, mischieuouſlye ended.

Chapter. xxiii.

Howe Pirthus kyng of Eptus lyſte not liue in peace, but of pride and preſupcion in warre came vnto mischaunce.

Chapter. xxiiii.

How the Tyrant Aristotimus by trecherous workyng, sette aſyde the ryght line, was crowned kyng of Epirothes, & after slayne. Cap. xxv.

Howe quene Arsinoe of Cirenēs for p̄aduoutrie done with Demetrius husband of her doughter Beronites, ended in lozowe. Cap. xxvi.

¶ The ende of the table to
the fourth Booke.

¶ The table to the
fifth Booke.



¶ Ere Bochas write against them that delite in beautie & ſemelnes, calling to purpoſe howe a mā bozne in Tufkā which excelled in beautie & ſattenes, (and for hys beautie ſhould not geue other occaſion to ſinne) he diſfigured his viſage & body with many a great wounde and ſpote. Chapter. i.

How the two brethren Seleuchus & Antiochus, eche deſirous to excel other, ſil at diſcozde and ended in miſchiefe.

Chapter. ii.

How the noble quene Laodomia was in the temple ſlain, & howe vengeance was take vpon hym that ſlough her.

Chapter. iii.

Howe Cleomenes kyng of the Lacedemonians was ſlayne with his wiſe & chyldren. Cap. iiii.

Of Hiero kyng of Sicile, of Cornelius, Aſina, and of olde Hanniball Duke of Chartage. Cap. v.

Of Antippus the Duke of the Lacedemonians caſt into the ſea. Cap. vi.

Howe Marcus Regulus of his free wil died for the cōmon weale. Cap. vii.

Howe Ptholome kyng of Egypte, called Philopater, ſlough father & mother, and his wiſe: in lecherie ſpente hys liſe, and miſchieuouſlye ended. Cap. viii.

How Bitomarus and Viridomarus kinglyes of fraunce, after great barailles were by the Romans ſlaine. Cap. ix.

Howe Siphax of Numedi kyng was take, and dyed in priſon. Cap. x.

Howe Nabis hauyng no title but by tfranny, toke on hym to bee kyng of Lacedemoyne and was ſlayne. Cap. xi.

¶ Here Bochas rehearſeth the moztall warres betwene the Romans and the Africans, Cap. xii.

How king Perſeus was by Romans outraped and after taken. Cap. xiii.

Howe the people of Achaia with their chief citie called Corinth by p̄ Romans was deſtroyed. Cap. xiiii.

Howe great Antiochus vſyng repte and vicious lypung, by Marcus Artileus was outraped, and dyed ſodeinlye.

Chapter. xv.

Howe Hieronimus kyng of Siracule was ſlayne, and how Scipio African that laboured for the commō weale of the Romans was exiled by them and ſo dyed. Cap. xvi.

How Scipio African, lord of Afie, that laboured euer for the common weale was murdered. Cap. xvii.

How the Duke Philopomenes was take and putte in priſon, and after dranke poiſon and ſo died. Cap. xviii.

¶

The Table.

Of the thirde Scipion Nasica that
erret wrought much for the commonwele.
Chapter. xix.

How Duke Hannibal after many victo-
rious dedes murdred himself with poi-
son. Chap. xx.

How Prusias king of Bithynia betrayed
Hannibal, and would haue disherited his
sonne and heyre, and howe afterwarde
he went a begging in straunge landes
Chapter. xxi.

Howe Perseus of Macedoyne kynge
that empoysoned hys brother, was by
Emilius outtrayed and died in prison.
Chapter. xxii.

How Ammonius a prince of Antioche
delisting in pillage and robbrye, with o-
ther vicious liuing, fled in womans clo-
thing, and after was taken and slayne.
Chapter. xxiii.

Howe one Andiscus of lowe birth
borne, hauing no title, made him selfe of
Macedoyne king, and after was take
and dyed in prison. Chap. xxiiii.

Howe one Ptolemy by a false name
called Alexander toke vpon hym to be
king of Siria, and for extortion pride
and vnkindnes, he died at mischiese.
Chapter. xxv.

Here Bochas writeth of the rebelli-
ons and seditions in Rome, betwene
Tribunes and the commons there.
Chapter. xxvi.

How the wife of Hasdruball bzent her
selfe and her children. Chap. xxvii.

Of Machabeus Jonathas taken by
the king of Siria. Chap. xxviii.

How Demetrius the second lost at the
last hys head. Chap. xxix.

Howe Ierobeam kinge of Siria by in-
trusion entring, had mischeuous ending
Chapter. xxx.

How Vitellius king of the Auernoyes
was by the Romans taken and died in
prison. Chapter. xxxi.

Howe the tirant Ptholomeus Euer-
getes wedded Quene Cleopatra, slough
her eldest sone, exiled his wife and wed-
ded her daughter. Chap. xxxii.

Howe Jugurtha by intrusion of Ru-
medie king, slough the rightfull heyres,
and after hymselfe was downed.
Chapter. xxxiii.

¶ The ende of the table to
the fifth booke.

¶ The table to the
sixth booke.



Here Bochas sytting
in his study alone, writ-
teth a great processe
howe fortune lyke a
monstrous image, ha-
uing and hundreth ha-
des appered vnto him

and spake, & Bochas vnto her, making
betwene the both many gret argumen-
tes and reasons of fortunes chaunces
Chapter. i.

Here rehearseth fortune her condit-
ions vnto Bochas, she wing howe many
one she enhaunceth for a tyme, and and
after, them sodenly ouerthroweth.
Folio. Cxvi.

Howe Cayus Marcius of lowe byrth
borne came to hys estate, which bleynte
with couetise, after many great batailes
died at mischiese. Chap. ii.

Howe king Mithridates bode seuen
yere in wildernesse, had great torment
both on Sea and land, and by his blood
was brought to vtterance, and slough
hymselfe with a sword. Cap. iii.

Howe Eueratides king of the Bac-
trians was slayne by Demetrius kinge
of the Indians, and after hys careyne
was cast to houndes. Chap. v.

Howe Diodorus king of Perthia war-
red with the Romayns, which after hys
sonne and heyre was slayne: made hys
bastard sonne king, & anon after slough
hys father. Chap. vi.

Howe one Caius Fimbria a Consul
of Rome slough hymselfe. Chap. vii.

Of

The Table

Of Albinus a consul of Rome that was
slaine with stones. Chap. viii.

Howe Fabius Adrianus falslye usurped
to be king of Africke: who with al his whole
famely was brente in hys owne house.

Chapter. ix.

Howe Sothimus king of Thrace that
much coueted, forwent al and died in pover-
tye. Chap. x.

Here Bochas in partte maketh a descrip-
cion of the kingdome of Thrace, and passeth
ouer lightly vnto the accomplisment of his
booke. fol. Clv.

Howe after manye great conquestes of
gret Pompey, great warre began betwene
him & Julius Cesar, & how three hundred
thousand were slaine. And at the last Pom-
pey was disconfited and hys head smitten
of. Chapter. xi.

Howe victorious Julius Cesar brent the
bessels of Ptholome, sloughe Achilles that
woulde haue murdered hym, and after great
victories he hym selfe was murdered with
bodkins by Brutus Cassius and others.

Chapter. xii.

Howe last Scipion Consul of Rome,
for that he not list to liue in the seruage of
Julius Cesar toke hym selfe to the heart
and so died: and of the death of Julius Ce-
sar. Chap. xiii.

Howe Octavian succeeded next after Ju-
lius Cesar, and howe he murderers of Julius
died at mischief. Chap. xiiii.

Howe Marcus Tullius Cicero was two
times exiled, and at the last slayne by one
Pompilius. Chap. xv.

A Chapter againe all such as be ianglers
and defamers of Rethorike. fol. Clxii.

Howe Sextus great Pompeyus sonne
warred against the Triumvirie of Rome, &
of the death of gret Antony and Cleopatra.

Chapter. xvi.

The ende of the table of
the sixt booke.

The table to the
seuenth booke.



Of Antony sonne and heire
to gret Antony, & of Cesa-
rius, Julia, Agrippa, Cas-
sius, and of Quintus Cal-
purnius. Chap. i.

Howe the tyraunt He-
rodes sloughe hys wyfe
and child: & after died at mischief. Chap. ii.

Of Antipater the first sonne of Herodes
exiled by Octavian, and of Archelaus the
second sonne of Herodes likewise by hym
exiled. Chap. iii.

Of the strife betwene Caligula, Tiberius,
and Messaline. Chap. iiii.

Of the most vicious tyraunt Nero that
slough Saint Peter and saynt Paule, and
did many other horrible dedes: and howe he
slew himselfe at the last. Chap. v.

Howe Eleazarus a Jew borne, for extor-
tion and robbie was brought in prison and
there ended. Chap. vi.

Howe the head of Sergius Galba Em-
perour of Rome was smitten off, filled full
of gold, and offered at the sepulture of Nero.

Chapter. vii.

Howe Otho Salutus and Iulus Vitel-
lius Emperours of Rome, for Gluttony, le-
cherie, Rihaudy, and cruelty ended in mis-
chief. Chap. viii.

Here Bochas againe gluttony cōpleineth,
saying as it foloweth. fol. Clxxi.

A Chapter descriuing the golden world,
that is to say: whan attemperance had who-
ly the gouernance. fol. Clxxii.

Howe the kinrede of Jacob was destroyed,
Christ was borne and crucified, Hierusalem
destroyed, and eleuen hundredeth thousande
slayn, and dead by sword, hunger, and pesti-
lence. Chap. ix.

The ende of the table to
the seuenth booke

The

The Table

The table to the
eight booke.

The prologe of the translatour to
the eyght Booke.

Howe the proud tiraunt Do-
mician Emperour of Rome, and
many other Emperours & nobles for their
outrages and wretchednes, mischeuouly
ended. Chap. i.

Howe Galien sonne of Valerian was
slayne. Chap. ii.

How Quintilius was murdred by womē,
Chapter. iii.

Of Aurelian the Emperoure borne in
Denmarke, and of others. Chap. iiii.

Howe the Emperour Carus and his two
sonnes were mischeued. Chap. v.

How the hardy Queene Zenobia fought
with Aurelian and was take. Chap. vi.

Howe the Emperour Galerius oppressed
martirs and Chyistes sayth, & mischeuouly
ended. Chap. vii.

Howe Maxence the Emperour enemy to
Chyistes sayth mischeuoulye ended.
Chapter. viii.

Howe Licinius enemy to Chyistes sayth
was slayne. Chap. ix.

Of Constantine and Chyisus, and howe
Dalmacius was slayne. Chap. x.

Of the Brethren Constance and Con-
stancius, and howe Magnencius & Decius
murdred themselfe. Chap. xi.

Howe the Emperoure Constantine the
great was baptised by Siluester Bishop of
Rome, and was cured of hys lepro. Ca. xii.

Howe Julianus Apostata enemy to Chy-
istes faith by false illusions was chosen Em-
perour, and after was slaine. Chap. xiii.

How the Emperour valence slough Her-
mites, shed chyistian bloode, destroyed chur-
ches, and after was bzent. Chap. xiiii.

Of Hermecius king of the Gothes, and
howe the Emperour Gracian and Theodo-
sie destroyed temples of false Goddes, and
howe Gracian was put to flight. Ca. xv.

A good processe how the Emperour The-
odosie by praiser with a smal numbze got the
Victoize. Chap. xvi.

Howe knightes and gentlemen of the

Gothes chose Maricus to be their king, and
the comons chose Rhadagalus which en-
ded in mischief. Chap. xvii.

How Rufine, chaberlein with Theodosy
vsurped to be Emperour, and therefore by
Honorius was damned & his head smet of
Chapter. xviii.

Howe Stillicon and other of like condi-
tion ended in mischief. Cap. xix.

A good processe why Rome was destroyed,
and for thesame or like cause manye other
realmes. Chap. xx.

How Trasilla king of the Gepidoys and
Busa king of the Bulgariens wer brought
vnto subiection & made tributaries vnto
the said Theodosie of Bina. Chap. xxi.

How Phelitus king of the Rugioys lost
hys kingdome, and of others. Chap. xxii.

Howe Simachus and Boetius his sone
in lawe were banished, and after Judged to
dye. Chap. xxiii.

Of king Arthur of great Brittein nowe
called Englande, and of hys conquestes,
and howe he was destroyed by hys cosen
Mordrede. Chap. xxiiii.

An exclamacion of Bochas againe kin-
redes vnkind. Chap. xxv.

Of Gelemetus king of the Wandaloys and
of thzee other kynges, and howe they were
destroyed. Chap. xxvi.

Howe Alboynus kinge of the Lubar-
des was murdred by hys wife, and howe he af-
terward being most vicious was murdred
also. Chap. xxvii.

The ende of the table to
the eyght Booke.

The table to the
ninth booke.



Howe the Emperour
Mauricius his wyfe
& hys children were
slayne at Calcedonie
Chapter. i.

Of Machomete the
false prophete, & howe
he being dronke was
deuoured among swine
Chapter. ii.

Howe

The Table.

Howe Brunichild Quene of Fraunce,
slough her kynne, brought the lond in di-
uision, and after was hanged and hewen
in pieces small. Cap. iiii.

Bochas mercurylng of the malice and
crueltie of Brunichilde, wryteth thus.
Chapter. iiii.

Howe Heraclius the Emperour sus-
tained Heresie, fel into dypsie and sickenes
incurable and so dyed: and of others.
Chapter. v.

Howe Gesulphus the Lumbarde was
slayn, and his wyfe ended mischieuouly
in Lecherie. Cap. vi.

Of the Emperour Justinian the second,
being a false extorcioner, and how he was
exyled by Leoncius: and after both hys
nose and eyen cut from hys head, and of
others. Cap. vii.

Howe the Emperour Philippicus dyed
at mischiese. Cap. viii.

Howe the Emperour Anthemius Ana-
stasius was compelled to leaue the Em-
pire, and to bee a prieste and liue in pouer-
tie. Cap. ix.

Howe the head of Lupus king of Lum-
bardye was smette of by Gymoaldus.
Chapter. x.

Howe the head of the Tyraunte Alahis
was smette of by the commaundement
of kyng Gunibert. Cap. xi.

Howe Arithbertus kyng of the Lum-
bardes was discomfited in battayle, and
after drowened with greate richesse.
Chapter. xii.

Howe Desiderius the last kyng of Li-
bardy was by Pope Adrian and Charles
the great kyng of Fraunce putte to flight
and dyed at mischiese. Cap. xiii.

Of a woman named Joane who was
Dope and after gote with chylde, and then
putte downe. Cap. xiiii.

Bochas counsaileth Prynces to re-
member on the Emperour Arnolphe.
Chapter. xv.

Of Charles Duke of Lozeyn confos-
ded with hunger. Cap. xvi.

Howe kyng Salomon whylom kyng
of Hungry was put to flight. Cap. xvii.

Howe Petro kyng of Hungry was

slayne.

Howe Diogines Emperour of Con-
stantinople was taken, and his eyen put
oute. Cap. xix.

Howe Robert Duke of Normandye
fought with the Turkes, and refused the
kingdom and crowne of Hierusalem, and
dyed at mischiese. Cap. xx.

Howe Joceline Prynce of Ages for
pride, slouth and lechery, dyed in pouertie.
Chapter. xxi.

Howe Andronieus Emperour of Con-
stantinople slough al that wer of h blood
royal, cherished vicious people, and after
was hanged. Cap. xxii.

Of Isaacus the Emperoure who was
made blynde and taken at mischiese, and
of diuers others. Cap. xxiii.

Of Henry the eldest sonne of Frede-
ricke the second, mischieued by his father.
Chapter. xxiiii.

A commendacion of Bochas of suche
as be kynd to the; kyntede. Cap. xxv.

Howe Hankrede kyng of Naples in
Italye was slayne, and of others. Cap.
xxvi.

Howe Charles kyng of Hierusalem,
and of Sicile for auarice and aduouty
dyed at mischiese. Cap. xxvii.

Of Hugoline Carle of Wyse slayne in
pyeson. Cap. xxviii.

Howe Pope Boniface the eyght was
taken by the limage de Columpnis, eate
hys owne bondes, and dyed in pyeson.
Chapter. xxix.

Howe the order of Templers was sou-
ded and a noumber of them brente.
Chapter. xxx.

Bochas here commendeth Theodo-
rus with other two Philosophers for
theyr notable patience in tormentes and
aduersitie. Cap. xxxi.

Howe Philip la Beal kyng of Fraunce
was slayne with a wilde boie: and of his
thre sonnes, and theyr endinges.
Chapter. xxxii.

Howe Duke Gaultier of Athenes for
hys tyraunye, lecherie, and couerisy, en-
ded in mischiese. Cap. xxxiii.

Howe

The Table.

Howe a woman called Phillip of Cathenors bozne of lowe byzih, came vnto greate estate: and after, she, her sone, and her daughter wer bynt. Cap. xxxiii.

Howe Sautius kyng of y Isle of Matorca was slayn by hys colyn, which was brother vnto the kyng of Arregon. Chapter. xxxv.

Howe Lowes kyng of Hierusalem and Scidle was put downe. Ca. xxxvi.

Howe kyng John of fraunce at Poyters was take priesoner by Prynce Edward and broughte into Englande.

Chapter. xxxvii.

Here Bochag maketh a reher sayle how fortune hath made high estates vnware ly to descende. Cap. xxxviii.

Here endeth
the Table of al the
whole Booke.

The prologe to the Reader.

The Prologe of John Lydgate, Monke of Bury, translatour of thys wooke.

HE that whilom did his diligence
the boke of Bochas, in frech to traslate
out of latine, called was Laurence:
The time truelye remembred and the date,
when king John through his mortall fate,
was prisioner brought to this region,
whan he first gan on this translation.

In his prologe affirming of reason,
Artificers hauing exercise:
may chaunge and turne by good discrecion,
shappes, fourmes, and newly them deuise:
Make and vnmake in many sondry wise,
as potters which to that craft entend,
Byke and renewe, their vessels to amend.

Thus men of craft, may of due right
that been inuentise and haue experience,
fantasien in their inward sight,
deuises newe through their excellence,
Expert maisters haue therto lycence,
fro good to better, for to chaunge a thing,
and semblably, these clerkes in writing,

Thing þ was made of auctours the before,
they may of newe, find and fantasie,
out of olde chaffe, trye out wel cleue coine,
make it more freshe and lustie to the eye:
Their subtil wit, and their labour applye,
with their colours agreable of hewe,
make olde thynges for to seme newe.

Aforene prouided that no presumption
in their chaunging haue no auctorite,
and that mekenes haue domination
false enuie, that the not present be:
But that their ground, with parfit charite
Conueyed be to their aduantage,
truely rooted amid of their courage.

Thus Laurence from him enuie excluded,
though toforene hi traslated was this boke,
within himself he fully hath concluded,
vpon that labour whan he cast his loke,
he would amend it, but first he forsoke,

presumption, and toke to him mekenesse,
in his Prologe as he doth expresse.

In which procelle like as I am leared,
he in his time, of cunning did excell,
in their langage therfore he was required:
Of estates which gan him compell,
among them hold of Rethorike the well,
to vnderfong this labour they him prepe,
and their request he lowly did obeye.

Ful wele he felt the labour was notable,
the fall of nobles with euery cyscumstance
from their lordships, dreadeful & vnstable,
how that they fil to put in remembrance,
Therin to shew fortunes variance,
that other might as in a myrror see,
in wo:ldlye wo:ship may be no suertie.

By ensauple as there is no rose
springing in garden, but there be su thorne
nor fairer blossom as nature lyst dispose
the may their beautie as mehan sen toform
with bitter windes be fro þ branches bo:rn,
As none so high in his estate contune,
fre from thawayting & danger of fortune.

Wherfore Bochas for a memorial,
considering the great dignities
of wo:ldly princes, in their power royall,
Great Emperours, estates and degrees,
how fortune hath cast them fro their sees:
namely such, as could themselves not knowe,
ful sodeynly to make them lye ful lowe.

This said auctour wise and right sadde,
hath gathered out with rethorikes swete,
in diuerse bookees which that he hath radde,
of Philosophers, and many an olde Poete,
Belied him both in tolde and hete,
out to compile, and writen as he fond,
the fall of nobles in many diuerse londe.

Upon whose boke in his translation,
this said Laurence rehearseth in certein,
and holdeth this in his opinion,
such language as open is and pleyn,
is more accepted as it is often seen,
than strage termes which be not vnderston
namely to folkes that dwell in vplond.

The prologe

And he saith eke hat this entencion
is to amende, correcten and declare,
Not to cōdemne of no presumption,
but to suppozt plainly and to spare
Thing touched shortly of the sorte bare
Vnder a stile briefe and compendious,
The to prolonge when they ben vertuous

For a storie which is not plainly tolde,
but constrayned vnder wordes fewe,
For lack of truth wher they ben new or old
Men by reporte can not the matter shewe:
These okes great be not downe yheue
first at a stroke, but by long processe,
Net long stories a word may not expresse.

For which plainly thys noble translatour
Cast of purpose these stories for to write,
And for to done his diligent labour
as they fyl in order to endite,
That men after might them selfe delite
auentures so as they fil in dede
Of sondry princes to beholde and rede.

And haue a maner contemplacion
that thinges al where fortune may attaine
Ben transitorie of condicion.
For she of kinde is hasty and sodaine
Contrarious her course for to restrayne,
of wilfulnes she is so variable (geable,
Whan men most trust thā she is molt chāu.

And for her chaunge & for her doublenesse
this Bochas bydde þ men shoulde encline
Set their hertes borde of vnstablenesse
vpon thinges which that ben diuine,
Wheras ioye perpetually dothe shine
without eclipsing in that heuenly see
Voyde of al cloudes of mutabiltee.

Among these, Bochas writeth of sweetenes
and of matters that lusty ben and glade;
And some while he writeth of wretchednes
and howe fortune can flour and after fade,
Joye vnder cloude prosperite in the shade,
enterchaung'ng of every maner thing
Which þ men sele here in this world lising.

And in his processe who so list beholde
of all estates of highe and lowe degre

And of princes both yong and olde
fro the beginning which i this worlde haue
Lising in ioye or in aduersite (be
from the first he descendeth down
Of their fortune by plaine descriptioun.

Of the moste noble he ne spareth none,
But setteth them in order serciouly:
Ginneth at Adam, & endeth at king John,
Their auentures reherceth by and by:
of this king John concluding finally
Howe þ he was for all his great puiſsaunce
of prince Edward take prisoner in fraunce.

This said Bochas aurtour of this boke
which of stories had great intelligencz,
Some he lefte and some also he toke:
such as he lefte was of no negligence,
Supposiſng and deniſng of credence
all the stories which that commune be
Other knewe them al so wele as he

And lest that folke would haue had disdain
thinges commune to be put in memorie,
therfore Bochas thought it was but vayne
to his name none encrease of glorie
To remembre no cronicle nor hystorie
but tho that were for their merit notable,
Factous, famous, and commendable.

In his labour hauing a delite
that the matter greatly might auaille,
Do plesaunce to the common profite
Of noble stories to make reberſade, (sayle,
Shewing a myrrour howe al þ world shal
And howe fortune for all their his renown
Hath vpon princes iurisdiction.

The which thing in full sober wyse
He considered in his inwarde intent,
In his reason gan to apuertise
seing of princes the blinde entendement
wyth worldly woꝝshyp how þ they be blent
as they shoulde euer their estates kepe
And as fortune were playde to slepe;

As they had of fortune the maistry,
her inchaunted which their potions
By some newe crafte of sorcery
Or by power of incantacions,

To make

of the translatour.

to make stable their dominations
with yron chaynes for to last long,
locked to rockes of Adamantes strong.

Supposiſing in their ſurquedry
their eſtates ſhould be durable,
but fortune can ſtewardly denye,
playnly proue that they be chaungeable
and to Princes, for they be not ſtable,
fortune full oft for al theyr great eſtate,
vnwarely chaſgeth, & ſaith to the checkmate

for lordes ſome, in their magnificence
of royal power, ſet of God right nought,
they not conſider his long patience,
nor aduertise his power in their thought
but in theyr heartes if it wer wele ſought
howe he is meke, and patient to abide,
they would of reaſon, their pompe leyn aſide.

But for their taryng and their negligence
that they to him will not reſort agayn,
yet of his mercy and beneuolence
without vengeance, rigour or diſdayne
As a meke father, in al his workes playne
aſſayeth his yerd of caſtigacion
So for to bring them to correccion.

Some he can ful fatherly chaſtiſe,
where he loueth, by puniſhyng of ſickneſſe.
And of his mercy in many another wiſe,
baduertitie of ſome worldly diſtreſſe,
And he not aſketh for his kindneſſe,
of high nor lowe, whoſo can aduert,
none other treaſure but a mannes herte.

And as mine authoꝝ liſt to comprehend
thys John Bochas by great autoritie,
It is almes to correcten and amend
the vicious folke of euery commontie,
And by enſamples, which that notable be
of Princes olde that whiſlom did fall,
the lower people from their errour call.

By ſmall whelpes, as ſome clerkes wryte
chaſtiſed is the mighty fierce Lyon,
And whan þe ſword of vengeaunce eke doth bite
vpon princes for their tranſgreſſion
the common people in their opinton

for betty dyede tremble don and quake,
and by ſuch menes their vices they forſake

And ſuch alſo as haue been defouled,
in their vices by long continuance
Or in their ſinnes ruſſed and ymouled
by good enſamples may come to repentaunce
who hym repenteth, þe lord wil him auance,
And him accept in high and lowe eſtate,
the meke preſerue & puniſh the obſtinate.

This ſayd matter touching ſuch thinges
mine authoꝝ Bochas hereafter ſhal declare
by enſample of princes & of mighty kinges
what was their fine, & not the truth ſpare.
And though my ſtyle naked be and bare,
in rethorike mine authoꝝ for to ſue,
yet fro the trueth, ſhal I not remewe.

But on the ſubſtance by good leyſar abyde,
after mine authoꝝ, like as I may attayne,
And for my part ſet eloquence aſide,
and in this booke bewepen and complayne
thaſſault of fortune, ſteward and ſodayne
How ſhe on princes hath kid her variance
and of her malice, þe deadly moꝝtal chance.

But O alas, who ſhalbe my muſe,
or vnto whom ſhall I for helpe call:
Calliope my calling will reſuſe,
And on Dernaſo her worthy ſuſtern all,
they will their ſuger temper with no gall
for their ſweetenes and luſty freche ſinging
ful ſerre diſcoꝝdeth ſerō maters cōplaining

My maſter Chaucer in his freſh comedies
is dead alas, chief poete of Bretaïne
That whiſlom made ful piteous tragedies
the fall of Princes he did alſo complayne
As he that was of making ſoueraïne
whom al this land ſhould of right preſerre
Such of our language, he was þe loberre

Senec in Rome, through his hie prudence
wrote tragedies of great moꝝalitie,
And Cullius cheſe wel of eloquence,
made in his time manye ſceh dille.
Fraunces Petrarche, of floꝝence the citie,
made a booke as I can reherſe,
of two fortunes, weleful and peruerſe.

A.ii.

And

The prologe

And agayn both wrote the remedies
In booke twayn made a diuision,
among rehearsing many fresh stories:
The first booke is thus fyrst conueyed down,
a dialoge twene gladnes and reason,
The second can beare me wel witnes,
made atwene reason, & worldlye heauines.

The matter is right wonders delitable,
though woe with ioye haue an intresse:
And John Bochas wrote maters lamettable
The fall of princes, where he doth expresse
how fro they: ioy they fall in great distresse
and all these writers, throw their hye renou
Great woz ship did vnto they: nation,

And semblably, as I ha told tofozre,
my maister Chaucer did his busines,
And in his dayes hath so well him bozne
out of our tong tayoyden al rudenes,
And to reforme it with colozs of sweetenes,
wherfoze let vs geue him laude and glozy,
and put his name with Poetes in memozy

Of whose labour to make mencion,
wherethrough of right he should comended
in youth he made a translacon (be,
Of a booke which called is Trophe
in Lumbard tong, as men may reade & see,
And in our bulgare, long o: that he deyed,
gaue it the name of Troylous & Cresseyde

which fo: to rede, louers them delite,
they haue therein so great deuocion,
And this Poete him also to quite,
of Boecius booke the consolacion
made in his tyme an whole translacon,
And to his sonne that called was Lewis
he made a treatise, ful noble & of great price

Vpon that labour in full noble forme
set them in order with their diuisions
Whennes wittes rapplen and confozme
To vnderstand by full expert reasons
by domisieng of sondry mansions
the roote out sought at the ascendent
Tofozre o: he gaue any iudgement

He wrote also ful many day agone,
Daunt in English him self so doth expresse

The piteous storye of Ceis and Alcion
and the death also of Blaunche the duchess
And notably dyd his businesse
by great aduise his wittes to dispose,
to translate the Romaynt of the Rose,

Thus in vertue, he set al his entent
ydenes and byces fo: to fite:
Of foules also he wrote the parliament,
Therin remembryng, of royall Egles thre
howe in they: choyse they felt aduersitee
tofoze nature profered the batayle.
Ethe fo: his partic if it would auayle,

He did also his diligence and payne,
in our bulgare to translate and endite
Dugene vpon the Gaudelayn,
and of the Lyon a booke he did wypte,
Of Annelida & of false Arcite
he made a complaynt doleful and piteous,
And of the broche which that Vulcanus

At Thebes wrought full diuers of nature,
Dude wytteth, who therof had a sight
fo: high desyre he should not endure
but he it had neuer by glade no: light
And if he had it ones in his myght
like as my maister saith, & wytteth in dede,
It to conserue, he should aye liue in dede,

This poete wrote at the request of þ quene
a legend of perfite holines,
Of good weomen to fynd out nenetene
that did excell in bountie and fayrenes:
But fo: his labour and busines
was importable his wittes to entombre,
In all this world to fynd so great a nobre,

He made the booke of Caunterbury tales,
whan the pylgryms rode on pylgrimage
throughout Kent, by hilles and by vales,
And all the stories tolde in they: passage,
endited them full well in our language,
Some of knighthod, some of gentlenesse,
And some of loue, and some of perfites.

And some also of great mo:alite
Some of disport including great sentence
In prose he wrote the tale of Mellebe
and of his wife that called was prudence:
And

of the translatour.

And of Gualdes perfect patience,
and how the monke of Noies newe & olde.
Pituous tragedies by the way tolde.

This sayed Poete my maister, in his dayes
Made and compiled ful many a frech ditee
Complaintes, ballades, roundels, virolates
ful delectable to hearen and to see:
For which men shoulde of right and equitee,
Such he of english in making was the best,
I pray vnto God to geue his soule good rest.

And these Poetes that I make of mencion
were by olde time had in great deintee,
With kinges and princes in euery region,
Greatly preferred after theyr degree,
For Lozdes had pleasaunce for to see
To study among and cast theyr looks,
At good leysar vpon wyse bookes.

For in the time of Cesar Iulius,
When the triumphe he won in Rome town,
He entre would the schole of Tullius
And heare his lecture of great affectioun,
and notwithstanding his conquest & renown
Vnto bookes he gaue great attendaunce,
and had in Noies great ioy and pleasaunce.

Eke in this land I dare asseme a thing:
there is a prince ful mighty of puiasaunce,
A kinges sonne, & vnkne to the king,
Pentry the sixth, which now is in fraunce,
and is lieftenant & hath the gouernaunce
Of our Britayn, through whose discrecion
He hath conserued in this region

During his tyme of full hygh prudence,
Peace and quyetie, and iustayned right.
Yet notwithstanding his noble prouidence
He is in dede proued a right good knight,
Cred as Argus with reason and foresight,
Of high Lecture, I dare eke of him tell,
And truely demie that he doeth excell.

In vnderstanding, al other of his age
and hath ioye wyth clerkes to commune
And no man is moze expert in langage
Stable in study alway he doth confute,
Setting aside all chaunces of fortune

and where he loueth, if I shall not tary
Withoute cause, full loth he is to vary

Duke of gloucester, men this prince cal,
and notwithstanding his state and dignitie
His courage neuer doth appall
to study in bokes of antiquitie
Ther in he hath great felicitye
vertuouly him selfe to occupie,
Of vicious slouth he hath the mastery

And with his prudence, & with his manhed,
trueth to studeyn, he fauour setteth asyde,
and holy Church mayntayning in dede,
that in this land no lollard dare abyde:
A very support vpholder and eke gyde,
Spaceth none, but maketh him selfe strong
to punish al tho that doe the church wrong.

Thus is he both manly and also wyse
Chosen of God to beeh his own knight,
and of o thing he hath a singler pryse
that heretike dare none come in his sight
In Chyistes faith he stant so whole vpright
Of holy churche defence and champion,
to chastice all that doe ther to treason,

And to doe pleasaunce to our lord Iesu,
He studieth euer to haue intelligence
Reading of bookes that bringeth in vertue
Vices excludyng, slouth and negligence,
Maketh a prince to haue experience
To know him selfe in many sondry wise
where he trespasseth, his errour to chastice.

And among bookes playnly this is the case
this sayed Prince considered of reason,
the noble booke of this John Bochas
was accordyng in his opinion
Of great noblesse and reputacion:
And vnto princes greatly necessary
to geue ensample how this world doth vary

And for these causes as in his intent
to shew thyntrust of all worldly thyng
He gaue to me in commaundement
as him semed it was right wel sitting,
that I shoulde after my small cunning
This booke translate him to doe pleasaunce,
to shew the change of worldly variance.

The prologe

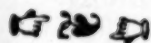
And with support of his magnificence
Under the winges of his correccion,
Though that I haue lacke of eloquence,
I shal procede in this translation,
fro me auoyding al presumption,
lowly submitting euery houre and space
My rude language to my Lordes grace.

And (as I haue o thyng wel in mind)
He bade I should in especiall
felowe myne auctour written as I fynde,
And for no fauour be not partiall,
Thus I meane to speake in generall,
And none estate singlerly depaue,
But the sentence of myne auctour saue.

Al this conceiued, I gan my stile dresse,
thought I would in my matter procede
And for the matter abrayde on beauiues,
Of freshe colours I toke no maner hede,
But my processe playnly for to lede
(As me semed) it was to me most mete
to set a part all Rethorikes swete.

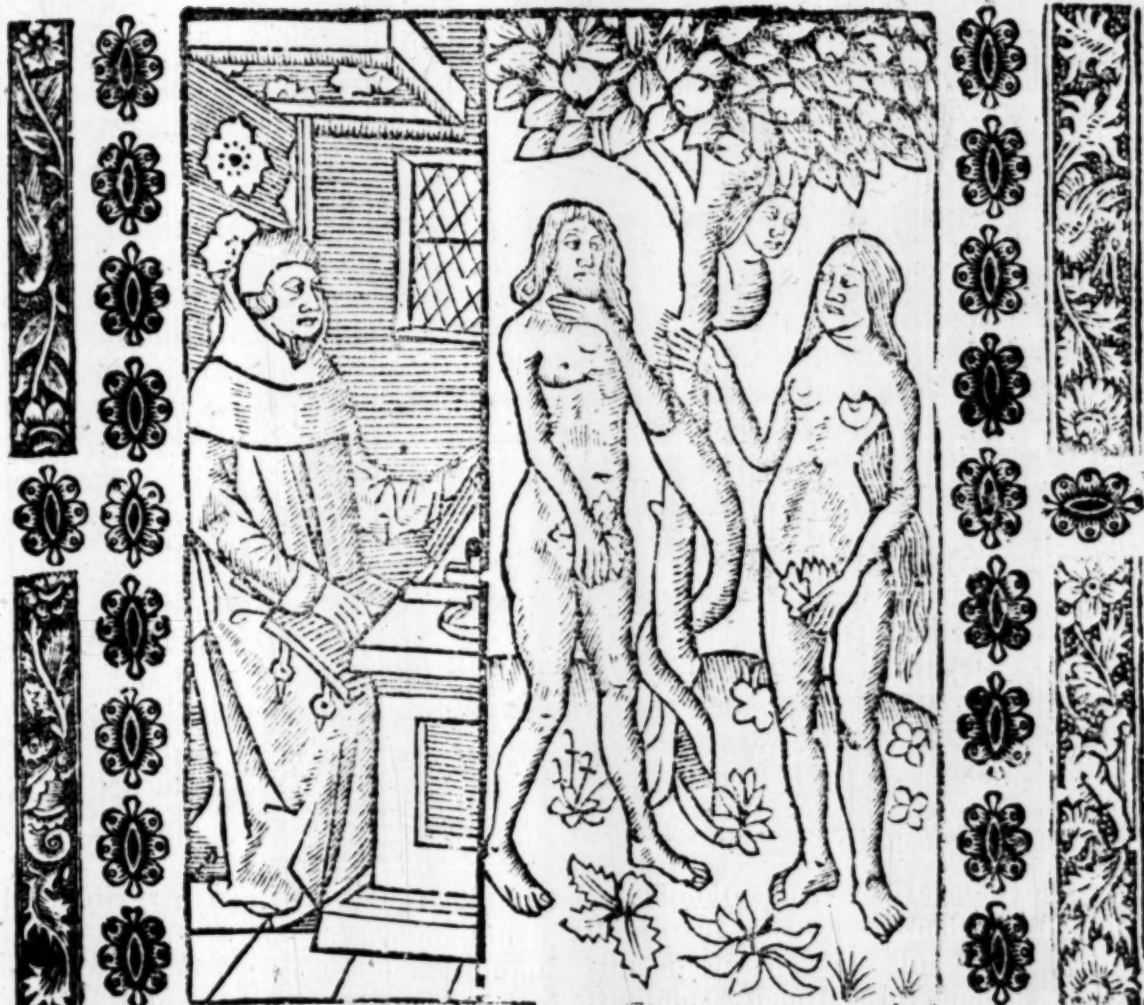
Ditties of mourning and of complayning
Doe not perryayn vnto Calliope,
Nor to the muses that on Parnaso syng,
which ben remembred in nōbers thysle thre,
And vnto matters of aduersitee,
with theyr sugred aureat licour,
they been not well ye for to don fauour.

But of disdeyn me setten farre abacke,
to hinder me of that I would endite,
hauing no colours but only whate & blacke
to the tragedies which that I shal wyte.
And (for I can my selfe no betier acquite)
Under support of al that shal it rede,
Upon Bochas right thus I will procede.



Thus endeth the authours prologe.
And here beginneth
the first booke.





Thow Adam and Eve for theyr
inobedience wer put out of paradise, and li-
ued in sozow and woe, they & their offspring:
And how they standyng naked befoze Bo-
chas, desyred him to putte theyr woeful fall
fyrst in remembraunce.

The fyrst Chapter.

Whan John Bochas,
considered had and sought
The woeful fall,
of mightie conquerours:
A remembraunce entred
In his thought,
Rekening the numbze
of our predecessours.

And first to mynd came the progenitours
of all mankynd farre & ranne in age,
And toward him holding their passage,

And as him thought in his inward sight
In their comming full pitously tremlyng,

Quaking for age and for lacke of might,
their great feblesse by signes out shewing,
And one of fyrst at his cummyng
Our fader Adam sodenly abrayde,
And to mine autour euen thus he sayde.

O sine Bochas, I wold wel that thou lere
thou that art busy to seache out ouer al,
Of infortune the maner to enquire,
Her sodayn chaunge turning as a ball,
of earthly princes from theyr estate royall:
It is most sitting o' we a sundze twinne,
At vs twayn thy processe to begynne,

Consider fyrst the lord in his awyle,
whan he vs made vnto his likenes,
He put vs both into paradise,
There to haue liued in perfit stablenes,
till the serpent did his busines,
of false enuie, to make vs lese our grace,
Perpetually exile vs from that place.

And

The first

And when John Bochas, naked the beheld
without the hand fourmed of nature
Of some of the arch in Damascene & field,
god made them sayest aboue eche creature
and for they should perpetually endure,
By discrecion for a prerogative,
He endued them with a soule of lyfe

Perfect of age, as man of .xxx. yere
But them after in possession,
Of paradise, a place most cutiere,
And of delites a chosen mansion
where Adam made an imposition
to fische and foule, and to these beastes all
Of very reason what men Would them cal

Out of a rib while that Adam did slepe,
Eue was ydrawe, ful fayre of her visage
al todaynly o: that he toke kepe,
after to him ioyned in mariage,
for his disport and for his auauntage,
So as the lord fyrst wyues did o:deyne,
Eythir for helpe, o: for encrease of payne.

God vnto them gaue the soueraintie
Of paradise and dominacion,
a place fulfilled of al felicitie,
the frutes wet al in their subiection
Saue that of one was made excepcion
which god forbade, the Byble can deuise
That they should touche it in no wise

All delites in that heavenly place,
god gaue to them, and put in their keeping
To bsen them euery heure and space
to theyr most ease, as was to them lyking.
Blomes, blossomys, their faynes ay keeping
and the frutes alwaye of o freschness
for winter stozmes might doe the no dures

The soyle embroyded ful of sumet floures
where wedes wicke had none interesse,
for god and kind with freschness of colours
and with their tapites, & moiles of gladnes
had made & place abundant in al sweetenes
and fresch floures, which is of floures quene,
Her lucrey made of a perpetual grene.

The trees rought almost to the heauen,
which cast abouten a full pleasant shade,

That stozme ne rayne, thundre wind ne le:
no power had their leues for to fade, (uen
for euer they wet ilke fresch and glade:
and when they list there they might see
mid of that gardein of life & holefome tree.

which vertue had ayeinst al maladic,
folke to preserue in youth in their freschness
who eate therof should neuer dye,
but lauen euer in ioy and gladnes,
and neither fele trouble no: sickenes,
but in that place haue alwaye heartes ease,
and suffysaunce of al that might the please.

Euer endure and neuer fall in age,
for which it was called the tree of lyfe:
But when Adam was fallen in dotage,
and ayeint God gan to holden stryfe,
through excitting of her that was his wife.
And wilfully he yane to her assent,
To breake the pcept and comaundement

Of god the lord through wilful negligence
Approche the tree which & bare the name,
the tree of running, and also of science:
for of the frute who that dyd attaine,
He sothly should, the Byble sayeth the same
of good & euil haue running in hys thought
wheras toforn of euil he knewe right nou-
(ghr.

Thus had they first of euil experience
wheras toforn they knewe no wickednes,
Presumpcion and inobedience
brought them out of ioy into wretchednes:
for afore time mine autour beareth witness
Health and goodnes wet called very life,
euil named sicknes first rote of al our strife

In paradise, mine autour sayeth certayne,
the riuers wet so orient and so fine,
Like quicksilver vpboyling on the pleyne,
And in their running, very chrystalline,
whiche from a wel, heavenly and deuine,
In their vpspringing and auayling down,
Of al pleasaunce gauz so swete a soun,

That it would tauish a courage,
whose baulmy licour endued al the place,
and in the freschness, & course of his passage

The

The holesome ayre, heartes did embrace
there was such pléie of pleasure & of grace
That euery spere, herbe, graine and roote,
wer founden growing in þe gardeyn soote.

There was also a delectable soun,
of song of byrdes in their cōmōny,
The ayre was cleene frō al maner corrupciō
for there engendred was no malady.
there was al mirth, there was all melody,
of ioy and blisse souerayn suffysaunce
with al that may to heartes doe pleasaunce

And of Clerkes like as it is told
in their bookes as they determine,
howe in his spere the sonne manifold,
was of more vertue, & more clere dyd shine,
Than it doth now in his midday lyne,
the Mōone whiter with his beames cleare
And euery sterre brighte did appeare.

Euery thing was there more vertuous
than they be now, who can behold and see,
for in that place ther was nothing noyous
But perfite gladnes knit vnto suretie,
Perpetuall peace, ioye and prosperitie,
And in þe blisse to maken them more strong
To theyr comfort, God spake wthē among

Of his goodnesse he bare them company
Shewed vnto them his gracious presence
Angels also their state to magnifye
among to serue them did their diligence
In diuers offices with humble reuerence,
And nature wrought for the nones
Of royall purple and of ryche stones,

Tissues of golde, and other ornaments
for reuiron their bodily beaultie,
Shaping to them such maner garments,
As Angels vse in their felicitie
Naked they wern, sayest vnto see:
for while they stode in state of innocencie,
they had of clothing none experience.

And of theyr blisse to make mencion
and of their ioyes that wer celestiall
there may be made no comparisō
of no ioy which is temporall,
which shoulde ha been lasting & immortall:

Euery ta liued in myght and in gladnes,
Saued agayn reason of very wilfulnes.

They banish themselves out of that blislyf, lye,
whan Adam gaue credence to a snake,
And wretchedly gan trusten on his wife,
whiche gan thapple of the serpent take
And pleasantly did a present make
vnto Adam, as she that fyrst began
death to deuise, and popson vnto man.

But as their ioye was incomparable
greatest their lordship, aboue al erthly thing,
So theyr fall was to them importable:
for he that was all other surmounting,
In paradise regning as a kyng,
was it not a deadly mortall payne
from thylke place to haue a fall sodayne?

For thilke sorow surmounteth euery sorow
which next foloweth after felicitie,
no woe more greuous at euen ne at morow
As is in dede sodayn aduersitie,
which cometh vnwarely after prosperitie:
For nothing may more heartes disauaunce
than of olde ioy newe remembraunce.

Taketh ensauple of Adam and of Eue,
maketh of them a myrtour in your mind
whether of reason it did the greatly greue,
for to be put alas so farre behind,
Out of that blisse they and all theyr kynd,
Chaunging the state of immortallitie,
And become subiect to death and pouertie.

Theyr sodayn chaunge & vnware mischief
and theyr vnhappy transmutacion,
It was to them ful vncouth and vnlese,
for to depart fro thilke mansion,
that was so ful of dilectacion
fro such delices sodainly to goe,
Into this world, which is so ful of woe.

There is delyte, and here is sorowe & care,
There is ioy, and here is heauines:
There is plentie, and here is euill fare:
There is health, and here is great sickenes
here trouble aye meynt wth vnure gladnes
There is ay blisse and eternal glory,
And here no myght but false and transitory
Alas

The fyrst

Alas howe they were blinded in their sight
through baingloze and false ambition
They went wronge, they looked not aright,
false couetise was their confusio[n]
where through they lost the domination
Of paradise, and were both poore and thral
their fredome lest and become mortal

Unto god they would haue be semblable
Lyke vnto him good and euell to knowe
And in their trust for they were not stable
fro their estate they were brought ful lowe,
and thus alas the fede was first yfowe
The rote planted of disobeysaunce (chaunce
which brought our linage to sorow & mis-

Thus came in first through inobedience
as by a gate pouerte and nede,
and at their backe folowed indigence
Sorowe, sicknesse, malady and drede,
Erile banishing and seruitude in dede
which caused man long to contune
Under the lordship and daunger of fortune

Thus came in eke malady and death
to dispople mankind of his beauty
Long sicknesse and pestilence that sleath
by soden stroke which no man may flye
for vnto Adam and his posteritie
death was annexed by successioun
for his offence and so conuicied down.

For man to man in euery maner age
for who list knowe, sinne brought in shame
Man to be feble and faint in his passage
and by processe to were halt and lame
Unto Adam this was an vncouth game
To be constrained from rich apparayle
In barraine earth to seken his vitayle

In hungre thyrst, here he had his lyfe
with sweet, with labour and tribulacions,
Endured also manye mortall strife
of hote and colde, right strange passions
Of elementes sodayne mutacions
winde, Rayle, and rayne fearfully fallinge
And vniware strokes of thuder & lightning

They stode also in danger and in drede
of cruel beastes, Tigers and Lions

Of tusshy Bores who so taketh hede
and in great feare of these fell Dragons
Chassaute of Serpentes and of scorpions
for thyke beastes that toforn were mylde
After their sinning full rage were & wilde

where they stode first in sicknesse
of ioye and blisse euer in one lasting
Out of their rest they fill in vnsuernes,
in sorowe & sighing & doloious playning
And from their eyen continually weping
The bitter teares day by day distill
In this deserte, for wanting of their will

And wheder were they sorowful or faine
long time after their desolacion
whan they found Abel their own son slaine
By cruel Cayn to his confusio[n]
The same Cain, as made is mencion
After that time wyld and vagabounde
Til blind Lamech, gafe hi his dethes wound

Adam no? Cue afore that ilke tyme
had neuer sene no least fune rall
It was of chaunge, to them a newe pyyme,
for to beholde a thing dynaturall
Brether of o wombe, by hatered fraternall
The one of hate so farre him self denide
Of false malice to been an homicide.

And was it not a payne when they stode
for to beholde their sonne pall and deed
Lig on the grounde bathed in hys blode
and al the soyle where he lay was red.
Then when Adam and Cue toke hede
it was to them full great aduersitie
The newe slaughter to beholde and se

And euer among their sighes harde & soze
they bitter weping, & sorowes to auance
Or they wet ware their heeres wore hope,
and age gan their beautie disauance.
Their youth also by ful great displeasaunce
gan to appall or they coulde aspye
By cruel constraint and force of malady

And when of youth fallen were the floures
by the processe of many hundred yeres
And by the durelle of many great labours
they were vniustly and vgly of their cheeres
Of age

Of age and death these ben the daungers
to sayen checkmate in nature it is couthe
Unto beaultie and grene lufy youthe,

For whan the yeres fully passed be
Of flowing age lasting a season,
By processe at eye men may se
beaultie declineth, hit blossomes fal adoun,
And litell and litell by succession
commeth croked elde vnwarely in ceping
With his potent full poozely manasing.

Thus to our father that called was Adam
of creatures fayrest of all fayre,
After great age by processe death in came,
and gan vnwarely ascende vpon the stape
With his potent, and cast him to repaire
with Antropose, which afore shall gone
For iuntwile his lyues threde anone.

And in Ebron was made his sepulture,
therafter was builde a mighty great cytie:
By whose stoye and record of nature
I may conclude who so list to see
That neuer man had libertee
sithen that Adam our lord gan disobey
A yensl death, but that he must dey.

In complaining mine auto: John Bochas
full pituously in his aduertence
Bewepeth, wayleth and ofte saith (alas)
in an Apple there was so great offence,
That for a tast of inobedience
Adam (alas) should haue so great a fall
So sodainly to dye and be mortal.

Which example ought ynough suffice
in all this worlde though there were no mo
To exemplifye to folkes that ben wyse
How this worlde is a throwfare ful of woe,
Like false Fortune which turneth to & fro
to make folkes whan they most clerely lye
In their estates vnwarely to decline. (ne

For though that they their hedes lift a losfe
highe as she bus shyneth in his sphere,
Thinke them selfe (as it falleth ofte)
their rencun reacheth aboue þe sterres clere,
& how they same surmounteth eueri sphere.
Their trust corrupt hath a ful sodaine fall

for to declare how they beh mortal.

Worldly folke aduertiseth of entent
what vengeance and what punition
God shall taken in his iudgement
for your trespas and your transgression,
Which breake his preceptes apen all reaso
ye han forgottē how id his precious blode
You for to saue he stak vpon the roode.

For if Adam for his disobeyaunce
was by the lord as him list ordaine,
Made first & formed with euery circumstance
of creatures to be most soueraine
If that he was enbraced in the chaine
of seruitude, with thraldome ouersene,
What shal I than of other folkes saien

That liuen here in this deserte of sorowe
in this exile of pleasure desolate
And in this world both at eue and morowe
of hertly ioye stond disconsolate,
All destitute and eke infortunate
and forpossed with woe of worldly trouble
Aye variable and full of chaunge double:

Ye not intende but to false couetise,
To fraude, barret, and extorcion,
Gaine god & trouth in many diuerse wise,
Gaine your neyghbour by false collusion
To doo him wrong and oppression,
and worst of all ye reche not by sin
To slea your soule, worldly good to winne.

And if it fall your power be but small
to accomplishe your auarice in dede,
Your sinful will assenteth ouer all
thing to desire of which ye may not spede:
And thus false lust doth your bydell lede,
thrust of hauing so soze you dothe assaile
falsely afraid the world should you faile,

And if that god benigne and debonayre
with his yerde of castigation
Chastise you but easely and fayre,
ye grudge against his correccion:
Nothing aduerting in your discrecion
how god ne hadde vs who so cā take hede
As for no crime, ne for to wastel in dede:
Repther

The fyfte

Neither our strength nor our might to applye,
vpon the beast monstrous and sauage,
which called is the chymere of liege:
Specially when he is in his rage,
which monstre had to his auantage.
head of a Lyon as bokes determine
wombe of a Gote and tayle serpentine.

which was outrayed of Belerofon,
as olde Poetes make mencion,
neither god had not that men should gon,
into Colchos to conquere with Jason:
The flees of gold which in that region
with fierye bulles of metall made and bras,
and by a dragon ful streyly kept was.

God had vs not our countreyes for to lete,
to vnderfong thinges impossible
the minotaure for to slayen in Crete,
halfe man halfe bulle if it be credible,
which was a monstre hateful and odible,
whilom brought furth in bokes ye may see
By Minos wife called Pasiphe.

whose story teacheth if ye list to lere,
this ougly beast, cruel and monstrous,
through Adrian the kinges daughter dere,
was whilom slaine by Duke Theseus
within a caue made by Dedalus;
God bidde vs not playnly for his sake,
so gteat empyles for to vndertake.

We bidde vs not to be so reebles,
in perillous dedes that been marciall.
As to reopard, as did Hercules,
which by the bidding in especial.
Of Euristheus, the mighty king royall,
Lord of Athenis to make his honour shine
Learned of Armes the famous discipline.

Of his preceptes if we haue a sight,
and remembre of his high bountie,
he vs commaundeth thinges that ben light
for to accomplish with all humilitie:
from our courage to auoyde al vanitie,
and from our heartes to exclude ydlenes,
and the false chage of all wooldy gladnes.

for vnto a man that perfit is and stable,
by good reason mine auctoz doth wel proue

there is nothing moze fayre ne agreable,
than finally his vicious life to leue,
On very God rightfully beleue:
han loue & woiship aboute al erthly thinges
this passeth victoꝝ of Emperozs & kinges.

The lord bidde eke, who that can discerne
of entiere loue to doen our labour
in this life here, so our selfe gouerne,
To father & mother that we doe due honoꝝ
and in theire nede to doen to them succour:
and in al vertue our frendes to confort,
and to our power, in mischiefe the support.

For in this woꝝlde is nothing moze perfit
nor to accomplish thinge of moze pleasance,
than a man for to haue delite
in litle good to haue suffisance:
And be content in his gouernance,
boyde auarice and thinke euer among
to his neighbour, that he doe no wrong.

Not to couete his goddes in no wise,
himselfe to gouerne like to his estate,
Not excede, but fflye and eke despyle
At maner loue, which is disordinate
himselfe preferne from conterke and debate
and specially reschewen it is good,
slaughter, murder, & sheding eke of blood.

flyen from his sinne, and hated for to lye,
of olde offences among han repentance,
and to eschewe al scoꝝne and mockery,
Aynst bytes doe almes and penance
and to haue most souerainly pleasance
to sue the pathes of our lord Jesu
true examplaye of grace and all vertue.

which for our sake and our redemption
and for our loue was nayled to a tree,
suffered payn and cruel passion,
And nothing asketh of high or lowe degree,
recompensed aynward for to be,
but that we set al wholy our intentes
for to fulfil his commaundementes.

And of his grace here in this mortall life,
as we precell in wisdomie and reason,
and of his gift han a prerogative,
to soꝝne all beaues by discretion,

Therfoze

therfore let vs of whole intencion:
as we of reason beastes farre excede,
let vs also in them be by word, exaple & dede

Ground vs fyrt vpon humilitie,
our pompous eyen mekely to vncluse,
encline our heartes to conceiue and see
All worldly welth shall faden as a rose:
and of meke heart let vs our self dispose:
By this tragedie to knowlegging
of our mischief, how roote & kee gynnynge

Was the vice of inobedience,
furquedie, and false disobeyfaunce,
As mine autour hath shewed in sentence.
emprynteth it wel in your remembraunce:
Beware the serpent, with his disceituaunce,
the flesh, the world, your enemies all thre,
throughe their traynes, ye not deceiued be.

Your best shielde to make resistance,
Against theyr power, soothly is mekenes,
your habicion most mightie of defence,
The fiendes might to banquish & oppresse
is to remember deuourly with lownes,
How mekely Christ, to paen our raunsom,
suffered on a crosse death and passion.

Wherby men may, that prudent be & wyse,
the ioyes claime which been eternal.
And again entre into paradise
fro whens whilom Adam had a fall,
To which place aboue celestiall
O Christ Iesu, so bryng vs to that glozpe,
which by thy death haddest the victorie.

Lenuoye.

Sodayne departing out of felicitie
into miserie and mortall heauines,
Unto woe depriuing of our prosperite,
change of gladnes into wretchednes,
Long languishynge in woe and bitternes,
continual sorow, dread, dole, and penitence,
wer first brought in by inobedience.

Adam and Eue losen their libertie,
their franchise and their blessednes,
Put into exile and captiuitie,
to liue in labour, in woe and pensifenes

Thow false desires of popous wilfulnes,
to the serpent when they gaue credence,
The lord mistrustynge throughe inobedience,

But O alas, where as they wer free
of ioye eternal lode in sibernes,
They wer to blinde, alas it was pittie,
to leaue theyr rest and liue in weatines:
All their offspring to bringen in distresse,
drawyng fro god his due reuerence,
throughe false consenting to inobedience.

Therefore ye princes, auisely doth see,
as this tragedie in maner beareth witnes,
Wher as wanteth in any com montee,
Subiection, for lackyng of mekenes,
and with pouert, pride hath an interesse,
there foloweth after thow frowarde inso:
Among y people false inobedience. (lence

And noble princes which han y souerentie
to gouerne the people in righteousnes,
like as ye cherishe them in peace & vniyte,
O frowardly destroy them or oppresse:
so again woad their corages thei wil dyeste
lowely to be, to your magnificence,
O disobey by inobedience.

How Rembryth hit the towre of Babilon,
to saue him fro Noes floud, whiche for
his pride was put fro his magnificence:
and his towre wyth sodayne leuen smitten
downe.

The seconde Chapter.

Mine autour Bochas he that vnderstode
the vengeance, and mischieses huge,
Which that God toke with Noes floude,
whan he sent an vniuersall deluge:
Against whiche there was no refuge,
Saue eight persons in that mortall woe,
within a ship wer saued, and no moe.

Wherfore mine autour lightly uttergoeth,
maketh of y age no special remembraunce,
but passeth ouer from Adam to Rembryth
Considering how in that deadly chaunce
the lord for syn tooke so great vengeance,
That by wyting of Noe no victorie
of hye no low, was left no memoire.

The fyrste

For there was left cronicle none no: boke
after the floude that made mention,
of none autour whose list to loke
For all was brought to destruction:
by a deluge without exception, (stile,
for which mine autour, transported hath his
And of that tyme list nothing compyle.

He fonde no matter wheron he might foud
no: set his foote by none authoritie,
no: no trowth his purpose on to grounde
Olde writting that he could see:
for whiche him thought of necessitie
the surplusage, of all that tyme lete
and after Adam, with Nembroth for to mete.

And certes liche, as Bochas in this boke,
remembreth fyrst of Adam the story
so next in order he the story toke:
To speake of Nembroth, and his surquedry
whiche here in earth, as bookes specifye,
after the floude, his waues gan asswage
was made a Lo:de to gouerne in that age.

For whan the floudes began to discrese,
and god his vengeaunce, gan to modifie
withdrew his hand, the water thog an cease
Upon the mountaines high of Armenye:
the ship gan rest, the Bible can not lye,
and in that age, called the seconde
lynage of man, began agayne to abounde.

Centrease agayne and to multiplie,
and by descent, in bookes ye may see
specifyed the Genalogie
Howe that one Chiris cosyn to Noe:
a man that tyme of great auroytie,
vnto this Nembroth the story doeth assure
the father was as by egendure.

This nembroth ware mighty, large & long
excelling other as of his stature,
surquedous, hardy and ryght strong.
And in his tyme, great labo: might endure
and in his force so much he did assure,
that there was none on water no: on lode
which durst presume his power to wstond

And his noblesse moze to magnifie,
in worldly wo:ship, by reposte of his glo:ye

he was chief pryncce of benetie
Desprouis euer for to ha victorie:
of beastes wyld, to be put in memo:ye,
and haue a price and ges these champions
Tigres to daunt, bo:rs and lyons.

There was no beast in woodes so sauage,
that durst agayne hym make resistance,
his furious ye so mortall was and rage
The earth quoke for feare of his presence:
till at last in his aduertence
as a pryncce deuoyded of all grace
against god he gan for to compasse.

He made a maner confuracion,
this frowarde geant and a conspitracye
tooke his counsell by false collusion
His might, his power, for to magnifie:
and his estate for to glorifye
thought he would of his entent not faile,
god and the heauen poudely to assaile.

That mauger god which gouerneth all:
he thought he would poudly take on hond
agayn deluges yf any shall fall
Of prouidence plainly them withstonde:
hymself tassure, and make a place on londe
p should him kepe and been to him defence
both agayn god and waters violence.

And p they might accomplish their intent
liche their desyre they didden they: labour
toke they: counsaile all by one assent
Chose nembroth they: duke their gouernour
them to conuey and done to them succour
to been their gide, afozne as thei wer war,
toward a countrey which called is Senuar.

In compasse wyse round about closed,
with a great floud named Euphrates
their strange folp which thei han purposed
for to fulfill thei wer not reckeles
this to sein thei put themself in presse,
so hygh a towze for to edifie
which that should surmount aboue p skye.

That thei should greued be no more,
with no deluge brought to destruction
no: that waters may not greue them soze
This was the fine of they: intencion:

and

And of þe towre & mighty strong dounge, Seem God & floudes hemselfen to assure the height and largesse, wet of o measure.

Thus of Aembroth encrease gan þe name, and in the peoples reputation, Of gold and riches he had so great a fame they called him god in theyr opinion: Most furious, most mightie of renoume the world al whole vnder his obeysaunce as god and lord he toke the gouernaunce.

Vnder whose might the people ga pcedde (le as a lord hauing inspection Percing the bowels of the earth in dede) to make myghty theyr foundation: and of false glozy and bayn ambition, this proude Aembroth in his appetite to seen hem worke, had full great delite.

His ioye was and hys inward gladnes, to behold so great a companye Perlen the earth by so great depenes to make the ground strong by masonrye: The worke vppward for to fortifie In many a stone huge and large of weight they han it raised vp in the ayre on height.

And finally by mediacion, of this great work Aembroth wore famous, Takynge in heart great consolacion, that by report he was so glorious Of so great mighte, & of pozt so pompous, that he was so myghty ryche and strong to capse a towre, so wide, so large, so long.

For to this day touching the great myght, of this towre which Babel yet men cal: men fro ful farre, may han thereof a sight For it surmounteth other towres all: of which worke thus it is befall, of serpentes and many a great dragon It is now called chief habitation.

That no man dare so farre as they it see, for wicked ayre, and for corruption by a great space and by a great countree Approche no nere that merueulous dounge, so benemous is that mansion and so horrible, no man dare approche

like to a mountaine bilt on a craggy roche.

And as men saye, þe harte had their repaire, this towre atteineth vnto the sterres clere and transcendeth the region of the ayre. The ston, the sment, wer made of such and þe ioyning so stedfast & entiere (matter, though fyre and water both did it assaile ful lile of nought their power hold auail.

It was made so mightie to endure, so well assured by disposition, that in this world no liuyng creature Saw neuer none like in comparison: whose rearing vp was chief occasion and the riches of the masonry where throw Aembroth of pryde & surquedry.

Dempt proudly as in his auise, he transcended al other of noblesse, thought hymself most mighty & most wyse fellow to god as by likelnesse: but god that can al worldly pryde oppresse, and maken princes eclipse in theyr glozy (such as trusten thinges transioyre.)

The same lord of his eternall myght this towre which Aembroth list to edifye he made with thunder & with leuene light Therof to fall a full great partier the boyluous wyndes & the ragious skie, and gods power on the tother syde gan thus abate a parcell of his pryde.

And in discente and falling of the stones of the workmen ful many a mā was dead, and oppressed, their backe ybroke & bones, The masonry with theyr bloude was red: yet proude nembroth þe of this work was hea In al these signes his lord ne list not know for which his pop, was after brought ful low

But in his errour proceedeth forth of new, thought he would get himself a name, of melancholy gan chaunge lobe and hew And gan also attempten and attaine (for to encrease and magnifye his fame) a new towre to edify agayne like as god had ben blynd & nothyng seen.

The fyrste

He would haue raught by to þe sterres seuē
bassent of them that gan him fyrst counsaill
robbed god and from hym raught þe heuen
But who presumeth the lord aboue assayle
it wer no reason that he should auayle,
Dittes may wel again hym crye loude
but his power may clype with no cloude.

For in the middes of his gret empyres,
this proud Nembroth making his malous
for to compasse and casten their deuises,
Semetrians in theyr diuisions:
but god that hath his inspeccions
seyng the tēte of eueri earthly man,
as he that is most mighty and best can

Again theyr malice make resistance,
theyr worldly power, their domination
of his vnychangeable & most magnificence
He can chastise and ouerwhelme don:
the pride of princes in eueri region,
berample of Nembroth anon as ye shal here
whose pomp raught aboue þe sterres clere.

For when his workmen stode at auantage,
and most wer busy to his entencion,
and to fogetyme spake all o language
All sodainly by transmutacion:
there was of tonges made a diuision,
that in their working, as they gan abyde
no man wist what that other sayd.

And it is likely accordyng with reason,
so as þe chāge was made of their lāguages
so of theyr heartes was made diuision
bothe of their wille and of their courages
and in descending of their working stages
ther was such chāge of broder vnto broder
like strangers none kēth the tēnt of oðer

Mine autour troweth, that this diuersitye
was for their gilt caused be vengeance,
and els god of right and equite,
Disposed hath in his ordinaunce:
to been among them so gret a variaunce
þe throw þe wold they should the self deuide
and fro Nembroth disceuer and not abide.

They gan anon among themselves dysdawn
sarcepte this Nembroth for theyr kyng

yet among them, in soth there not thowpne,
one of another that had clere knowyng
nor of their speche þe kēth þe plain menyng
for which þe countrey of Sennar they forsoke
and eche of them a sondry countrey took.

They departed, made no lengar spaces,
folowyng the fortune of theyr diuision
& gan to chose them new dwellyng places
In the parties of many a region:
and this Nembroth was pyrued & put down,
and of Babel the mighty famous towre
he was no lengar called possessor.

For agayn the pride of this Nembroth,
froward fortune gan her course to vayne
and god also was in maner wroth,
Of surquedry that he was so contrary:
and for the place was wyde and solitarie,
of this Sennar furious and sauage
Nembroth gan feble and fall into gret age.

And yet some bookes of him specifye,
he were froward of his condicion
and was fyrst grounde of Idolatry
And synder by of false religion:
causing peoples to haue opinion
gods to worship in paganism wise
founder of rites and of false sacrifice.

Toward perce he chose his dwelling place
which countrey is in the orient
that his lordship shold stretch a gret space
He bounded him into the occident
for perce lond haueth his extent,
toward the parties of the red see
and this lond perce whoso list to see

As bookes old remember and put in mind
howe that perce costieth enuiron
septemtrion and the greater pnde.
And many another mighty region
where Nembroth fyrst had dominacion
which extendeth as bookes specifye
out of Medes into Germany.

But in lordships (as mine autour sayth)
without that vertue be theyr true gyde
in them there is suraunce none, nor faith
thyng þe passeth which may no while abyde,
wherfore

wherefore Bochas in despite of pride
and rebuking of all folkes proude,
making his cōplaint crieth to the ful loud

CAn exclamaciō of Bochas apen al proude
men shewyng how god may them & they
pride abate when him best list, by many dy-
uers meanes and wayes, punish & chastice

The.iii. Chapter.

Ye all proude most tyal in your floures,
which that most trust, for to rayne long
dresleth by your rockes and your towres
and ayen god make your seluen strong,
and let your power proude by vnderfong
your self with pryde, for to magnifye
against the heauen to holden champarte

Bildeth youre castell rayleth them by on
of Adamantes strong ybound (hegght,
with square stones, large & huge of weight
reife by your wals most mighty & profound
& that your dōgeōs to night cheynes rofod
let men of armes who euer wake or slepe
night & day your watch so strenghtly kepe.

As god no; man in your opinions,
your foxtresses ne might not assaile
your castel no; your strong dungeons,
stuffed with men and plenty of vitayle,
Lyke to stond euer, and neuer to fayle:
as god not might, ayen your false puillace
whan euer him list, of right to do vengeaunce

Setteth aforthe your eyen that be blynde,
the monstrous worke of great Babilon,
the pride of Aedboth there was put behind
mauger his might & his towre smet down,
for al the craft of workman or mason,
distroyed was with a sodayne leuene
saunge his pride sent adown from heauē

For though your strengthes so assured bee
that none engne may thereto attayne,
Gonne no; bumbarb by no subtiltie,
Shot of arblast no; on touche of dōndme
yet god that is lord and soueraine,
whichliche desertes can both spil and saue
may al confounde with an earth quauē.

Whine auto; areth what castle or what tour
may be so strong made in any wyse
but that by mene of some false traytour
Or by some waye that he can deuise
it may be lost or solde for couetise,
and deliuered for al the strong bondes
into the power of enemies bondes.

Or by some other sodayn auenture,
castels, cities, and many a riche towne
han ben lost, thei might them not assure
for to resist ayenst false treason:
some ha be lost eke by rebellion
and al these wenes the trowth to begyn
is but punisshyng which god sent for synne.

God hath a thousande handes to chastyce,
a thousande dartes of punicion
a thousande bowes, made in vncouth wyse
a thousand arblastes bent in his dōungeō
Ordeined echone for castigation:
but where he fynt mekenes & repentance
mercy is maistresse of his ordinance.

Ye that be wyse considereth how the rote,
of vices all, is pride ye may well see
pulseth him down and put hym vnder tote
and take your counsaile of humilitie
and yf ye list stonde in suretie
bildeth in heart for moze sikernes
a towre of vertues grounde on mekenes

Whose masonry is of no costage
of vertues ground or soueraine
blastes of wyndes and of wethers rage
Neither no tempest, hasty ne sodayne
Dōmpe no; boast though thei do their pain
this vertue mekenes for to vndermine
thei be to feble to make her for tēclme.

For where mekenes is grounde dely,
though he somewhyle fele aduersitie
he passeth ouer and suffereth patiently,
And vanquisheth all maner enmitte
chassante also and the constrariouite
of infortune and of worldly trouble
and of victo; cōquereth a Palme double

And though mekenes amid floudes flow
of worldly mischief and persecucion

B.iii. whyle

The fyrste

whyle patience in her bote doth rowe
though froward waues tosse her vp & down
a calme shall folow of consolacion (low
whā sterne windes their blastes haue layd
the name of mekenes shall newe & be knowe

She may be troubled, but overcome neuer
and for a tyme she may suffer warre
But at the ende she vanquisheth euer:
on land or see, whether she be nigh or ferre
to the haue of life she was our lode sterre
I take recozd on the humilitee
of Mary, so blessed mote she be.

The rote of mekenes, floureth by so faite
whose beautie dyeadeth no tribulacions
in somer ne winter, her floures not aparte
And her fruit lasteth in all maner seasons
Pride may assaile with his boistful lownes,
but finally for her encrease of glozy
with humbles she winneth the victozy.

Lemnop.

O folkes all, that this tragidie rede
hath to mekenes among youre aduer:
of proud Nembroth also take hede (tence
How that he fell from his magnificence
onely for he by surdy violence
list of malice the mighty lord assaile,
but i such ease what might his pride auaille

Noble princes which þ this world possede,
ye that be famous of wisdom & prudence
and han so manye subiectes that you dyede
In gouernaunce vnder your excellence
let your power with mekenes so dispence,
that false pride oppresse not the poynle
which to your nobles so much may auaille

Pride of Nembroth did the bydell lede
which him conueyed to great insolence:
pride appertaineth nothing to man hede
Sauc in armes to shewen his presence:
wherfore honoz, laude, and reuerence,
be to mekenes that hath the gouernayle
of al vertues man may most auaille.

How many yeres was betwixt Adam &
Nembroth, & betwixt Nembroth & Cadmus
& of other kynges, The. iiii. chapter.

These old poetes in their sayes swete
full couertly in their verses do sayn
how old Saturne was whylom kyng of
and of custome did his busly payn (Crete
Of his godhead list for to ordayne,
that he should as of his nature
echeone deuoure as by his engendure.

In this matter shortly to solorne,
to vnderstande of poetes the proesse:
they mene plainly þ this worde Saturne,
Doth in it selfe nothyng but time expresse,
And Philosophers bere also witnes
þ as in time, forth euery thing is broughte
to time ageynward bringeth all to nought

Clarke's recozde eke in their trypting
vnder suppozt as I dare reherse
how that fyre wasteth euery thyng
And yon hard dothe the neshe thynges percee
if ought abitte þ thet may not transuerce,
yet cometh time and by continuance
al consumeth with his sharpe launce.

His sharpe toth of consumption
in still wise doth his busly cure
for to auentise in conclusion,
All thing that is brougt forth by nature
by long abyding they may them not assure
for olde thynges deuoured men may see
ferre out of mind, as they neuer had be.

Who can or may remember in any wyse
the glotous promesse of these princes old
or the nobles of Philosophers wise
Or of poetes the feining to vnfolde
Proesse of yeres (alas) as I you tolde,
deuoured hath their fame and their nobles
derked their renoune by folyetfulness.

Thus of their names is left no memory
time with his rasour hath done so gret be.
Shauen away þ honoz & the glozy (geaunce
of many a noble, ful mighty of puissaunce:
that there is left now no remembraunce,
of Princes, poetes, nor of Philosophers,
for whā þ death nayled the in their coffers

Came time vpon, and by proesse of yeres
their memory hath dusked and their mind
And

and reuolution of the heauenly spheres
by oft turning their glory hath left behind
thus euery thing which subiect is to kinde
is in this life without more aduantage
wasted in time and processe of long age.

In the first age from Adam to Aor,
Prudent listers which list in bokes rede
fynde of fortune no mutabilitee
Nor of her chaunges take tho none hede:
but from Adam there reckened be in dede
vnto Aembroth by turning of the heuen
a thousand yeres seven hundred & eleuen.

In which space who that considereth well
there ben no thinges witten in especial
digne of memory. ne spoke of neuer a dell
which that been notable nor historial.
But fro the time Aembroth had a fal,
vnto Cadmus the yeres to contene
they wer a. M. iiii. hundred and fourtene.

Touching this Cadmus as Bochas liste.
it is reherced by Rethoricians: (cite,
how one Alexores in bokes as they write
Was made first kyng of the egipcions,
where Philosophers and Aigromancions
gan firste tabouid, thet renoune tauaunce,
Aachor that time hauing the gouernaunce.

Of the Hebrues as made is mention,
after Aembroth by true rehear sayle
thre hundred yere by computation,
foure score & xii. which time it is no fayle,
that Alexores gan to warre & eke to battail
of volunte ayeins straunge nations
and to conquere cities, borowes, & townes.

By force onely without title of ryght,
he wan all Egypt to encrease of his name
but for all that who list to haue a syght:
There is now left no report of his fame
Saue Bochas wyte howe he first did at-
his myghty conquest of intencion (caine
that the gloze and the high renoune

Ascriued wer vnto his worthines,
and the residue and surpluse
of gold of treasour, of good and of rycheffe,
Turne shoulde to common auantage,

of all his people that euery maner age,
reporde might, it was to hym more nere
aboue singlaritie his common to preferre.

Eke Tanais of Scithie fyrst kyng
whan Saruth was Duke and soueraine
ouer the Jewes by recorde of wrytynge
Two hundred yere. lx. and eke rwayne
After Aembroth this Tanais gan ordain
a mighty power, and a strong battayle
them of Scithie proudly to assaile.

Conquering fro thence vnto the yle
Called Pontus in ful cruel wyse,
& though his lordship last not but a whyle
All that he wan it was for couetise:
and as Bochas doth of this folke deuyse
processe of yeres for al their gret puaunce
hath put their names out of remembraunce

sooastres eke for al his great might
of Bactrians kyng and possessor
lord of Thace, and a ful manly knight
Of all his dedes and of his great labour
of his conquest nor of his great honour
is nothyng left of wryting vs toforne,
saue þ he lough, the houre þ he was bozne

He began full sone for to be merre
with sodeyn laughter at his natiuitie
and worthy Anus þ was kyng of Assyre
Expounded his laughter to great felicitye
the which Anus wa many a strange cuntry
and day by day his power gan encrease
for which he wold of his coquest not cease

for this is the maner of these coquerours
whan thei haue had in armes o victorie,
thei do their might, their pain & their labors
with new empyles to be put in memory
for their corages supplied with vain gloze
can not be still content in their estate
till their paradie say to them checkmate.

fortune of armes in bokes ye may rede
in a false laughter on folkes thoughte the
the frowardeuer or thei ca take hede (simle
of her nature will falsely them begde
Conquest by warre lasteth but a whyle

for

The fyrste

for who by death doth surdy violence,
god wil by deth his vengeaunce recōpence

This worthy Sinus gan mightly p̄uaise
ayenst 30. astres of whom I spake toforene,
for he with him fought last in battayle
In which Sinus hath hym so wel yborne,
that 30. astres hath the feld yloze
and he was autour as boke specifies
of false magike and of nigromaney.

He fond the nature of euery element,
their kyndly workyng, & theyr mutacions
the course of sterres and of the fymament
Theyr influences, theyr disposicions
theyr aspectes, and theyr conuinctions
wrote in pillers deuised of metall
the seven sciences called liberall.

Eke in pillers of bricke full harde ybake,
which wer vp set, long, large, and huge
He gan eke write them and to vnder take
To make them sure as for theyr refuge
that they shoulde by floud noȝ no deluge
disfaced ben as of theyr scripture
But in theyr grauyng perpetually endure

But though 30. astres this crafte firsle out
ful life oȝ nought it might to hi auail: (schō
& though he wer a good knight of his hond
He was of Sinus slayne in battayle
lost his realme and ycall apparayle
and Sinus dyed with in a litle thow
but in what wise the story is not know.

Eke Moydes kyng of Sodome,
I finde of hym no memoȝy by wytyng,
saue in a story, as men may rede and see
He & his people wer free in theyr lyuyng:
but he that was of Assiriens kyng
throughe false fortune that cā so oftē vary
to Babilone made them tributary.

We haue eke seen and read also,
the vengeaunces and the pestilence
done in Egypt to kyng Pharaō
for that he made a maner resistance
ayenst god of wilful negligence
therfoȝe his people vpon a day and heȝ
wer dreynt eche one amid the red see.

The people of god led by Moyles,
without trouble of any maner waue
went eche one safe in quiet and in peace
And Pharaō as he gan after draw
them to pursue by a full mortall law
in his pursuit froward and atteynt,
among the waues with his host wer dreynt

In Ectody been the mencions,
seriously put in remembraunce
the .xii. plagis and persecucions,
in Egypt done by full great vengeaunce,
and of their treasure & theyr gret substance
they wer disposed by Hebruc: it is told,
of their vessels, of shuer and of gold.

And out of Egypt ful great treasoz thei lad
such as they thought might most thē auail
and Pharaō I fynde that he had
Two hundred chares enarmed for batayle
them to pursue and p̄oudly rassyale,
& fifty thousand in whō there was no lacke
of men of armes folowynge on horse backe

Two. C. thousand of footemen him about
and of Egypt al his cheualtie:
and Pharaō with al this great route
San Israel pursuen of enuy:
but for his p̄ide and false surquedy,
he and his people wer d̄rouned euerichone
of al his noumber there was left not one.

His froward hert ayenst god indutate,
fulfilled of malice and obstinate
and in his purpose p̄oude and obstinate
These foule vices oȝ he could them espye
from his gloȝy and his regally (crouned
he was cast down though he tofore was
Amid the se, among his people d̄rouned.

Of Oggigus kyng of Thebes.
A nother prince called Oggigus
kyng of Thebes as boke determine
and founder was, thus Bochas telleth vs,
of a cite called Eleusin
which stont i Grece whose power to decline
there fyll a floud in that regtoun
which ouerflowed full many a ycall townt.

And in Achala it dyd most dammage
time of Jacob the patriarke notable

and

and this deluge with his waues rage
flew lozdes many and princes honourable
for dame fortune is so detemable,
that she somethyle whan she list dysdayne
can folke assaile with a floude sodayne.

This floud also where it dyd assaile,
wasted cornes bothe crop and toote
caused also scarcitie of vitayle,
that many a man felt full bnfote:
the pooze not wist where to fynde bote
for the p^rinces suppressed wet with dyede
through lacke of vitayle in that great nebe,

Of a great floude in Thessalye.
Another floude there was in Thessaly
in the time when kyng Amphion
helde the Scepter and the regall p^r
Upon Thebes the mighty strong towne
beside the kyngdomes Orchomene & Pils
thesame tyme this floud fylle doubtles
whan goddes people was led by Moyse.

With this floud this lād had ben deuoured
of Thessaly and all that region
but on Bernaso the peoples was succoured
And on the rockes that stode enuiron:
found they refuge to theyr saluacion
and great succour tyl the floude rage
gan disceueresen, & ithrowe and alswage.

In olde flozles also ye may see,
whan Cieraps had fyrst possession
of Athenes the mightye strong citie
In heate there fell in that region:
by influence that disceadeth downe
from all the bodies aboue celestall
which likely was for to deuouten al.

And this heate engendred fyrst of the same
in diuers countreis both in length & bryde
hath his course so mightily begon
that many folkes fell in great dyede
rivers, welles, who that list take hede
consumed wet and dyed by eche one
the heate called the embzayng of Pheton.

Of goodly Isis wife to Apis kyng of
Argue, slayne by his brother Osirus.
The. v. Chapter.

We haue eke read in flozles here tofome
how that Isis to Egypte toke her flight
out of Grece the true daughter borne
Of Promotheus a ful manly knyght.
And this Isis in euery mans syght
so freche, so goodly, wedded by her lue
to worthy Apis that was kyng of Argue.

The which Isis excellyng of beautie
after tyme her father was ygraue
she was yput for moze suertye
with her vncle that should kepe and saue
this sayd mayde & no man should her haue
and her vncle in Quid ye may see
like as he wrote, was called Epimethe.

And flouryng by in her tender age,
this sayd Isis so pleisant was and mete,
of semelines, of looke and of visage
that Jupiter the mighty kyng of Crete
was enamoured with her for to mete:
and she excited of feminittie
enclined her heart vnto his dettie.

And for she was of her entent so clene,
obeying him in most lowly wyse
of Arguois he made her to be quene
Because that she was smit in couettise:
spensit Argus a warre she gan deuise
and for he was byweldy of his age,
her to withstād he soude none auantage.

But yet fortune gan vpon her frowne,
and kyng Argus through his subteltye
with his counsell so prudently gan rowne
that she was take by full great crueltye,
and her souldours wer eke made to flye,
and by Argus there gayned no raunsome
she fettered was and put in strong prison.

But her sonne the god Mercurius,
right freche, ryght lusty, and ful of hardynes
and of his heart, inly coragious,
spensit Argus gan his power dysse:
and so entirely byd his busines,
that he was slayne in conclusion
and Isis after deliuered fro prison,

Of her sleighes after ward not faint,
she toke a ship and into Egypt went,

In

The fyrste

in which Wypp there was a cow depeint,
And Mercur whom Jupiter eke sent
is gon with her bothe of one intent,
to make a mariage after anon right,
twene her & Apis a pice offul get might

She was right wise aboue other creaturs
secrete of cunnyng, wel expert in science,
he taught fyrst letters and figures
The Egyptians by plain experience:
gaue them cunnyng and intelligence,
to tyll theit londe, taught they labourers
To sow they graine, & multiply by yeres.

And in Egypt her fame and her renoune,
gan day by day waxe and her worthynesse,
holde of cunnyng and reputation
(By signes shewed) not onely a princes,
but she was hold among them a Goddesse
and with worshipps which that wer dyuine
And sacrifices to her they dyd enclyne.

But to declare playnely at a worde,
amid all her great prosperite
wyghty Apis her houseband and her lord
Prince of Egypt and Duke of that countrey
sonne of Jupiter and of Probe
(which Probe by lignage descended)
The daughter was of Phoroneus & kyng:

And Phoroneus fyrst the lawes fond,
to which al Grece stande vnder obeisance
and the statutes of that mightie lond
(wer established by his ordinance)
but for to write the vnhappy chaunce
of kyng Apis (as it is remembred)
he mayne was and pitously dysmembred

By his brother called Tiffus,
some what for hatred but moze for couetise
for Tiffus was myce despyous
To retoyce in full mortall wyse
the mightie kyngdō (as ye han herd deuise)
of Arguois, to haue possession
pferred by murther and false successiō.

And whan & Isis sonde her Lorde so ded,
(of entent that he wer magnified)
fyrst of wisdom she gan taken hede,
Odayned a meane that he wer deified,

hygh among goddes to be stelled,
in Egypt temples made him to be stalled,
And Sitapis god after he was called.

Of Egiton, that his members eate for
hunger. The. vi. Chapter.

What shall I write of the case horryble
of Egitō, with hunger so constreined
that his lyfe was to hymselfe odible
in the selfe with indigence ypeyned:
and pitiously his fame was disteyned,
whan he solde his doughter in seruage
Liriope, whiche was but younge of age

Besthaunge of gold to puruey him vitale
of very nede he was so woe begon:
he had nothyng & might his thirle auayle,
noz stache his hūger w gnawing on abone
wherfore he eate his members one by one
A Prince alas, was it not pitie
to see hym dy in such aduersitie?

Alle han eke read full many day to soze
the great banishyng, and prostracion,
of Arguois how kyng Gelanoz
Was cruelly put from his region,
and his liegis of indignacion
in his place they set one Danaus
Sonne and eke here vnto the god Belus

(The people of malice did him so recomber,
tencease his sorow, and his aduersite :)
and fyfte doughtren he had also in nūber.
And Egitus his brother eke partie,
had fyfte sonnes the story ye may see:
arwene the whiche by suretie of honde
in marriage there was made a bonde.

Under which compassed was treason,
couetly though they dyd it hyde,
but if ye like han clere inspeccion
Of this story vpon euery syde,
redeth the Legēdes of martirs of Cupide,
whiche that Chaucer in order as they stode
Compled of women that wer called good.

Touчыng the story of kyng Pandion,
and of his goodly fayre doughtren twene,
how Thereus false of condicion

hym

them to deceiue dyd his busye payne:
Thei both named of beaute soueraine
goodly, progne, and yong Philomene
both in nocentes, and of entent ful cleane.

Their piteous fate, in open to expresse,
it trer to me but a presumption,
sith that Chaucer dyd his busines
In his legende as made is mencion:
their martirdom and their passion,
for to rehearse them did his busye paine
as chiefe Poete, called of Brittain.

Of good women a booke he dyd write,
the noumber complete, fully of ninetene
and there the story he plainly did endite
of Therence, of progne, and of Philomene,
where ye may seen the leged thus I mene
doth the worship & forth their life doth shew
for a clere mixt out because there be so few.

I wil passe ouer and speake of the no moze
and vnto Cadmus forth my stile dresse,
yet in my writing it greueth me sore
touchyng of women of faith or stableness,
blessed be god I find none excesse;
and for there be so few, (as thinketh me,)
the good should be had in moze deyntye.

Lenuoye.

His tragedie beareth to you witnes,
Thow Saturnus by disposition,
Maliciously of his frowardnes,
causeth in Juno full great infection
He of nature conueyeth the venom downe
the ayre infect which no man may succour
cometh death anon, & al thing doth deuour

Time fro Adā mine outour doth expresse,
Down to Rembroth by succession,
His stile conueyed by great auisenes
from 30astres to king Pharaon:
of two deluges he maketh mencion
in Thessaly the vengeance gan labour
and in Achaia Thebes to deuoure.

Ye han of heates heard the greate excesse
of princes, princesses, ful great destruccion
of Egillus the great wretchednes,
The fury of Therens, the woe of Pandion

of the two sisters the confusion
and how they fate gan vpon them lowe
they felicitie vnwarely to deuour.

Princes, princesses your eye doth by dresse
I mene the eye of your discrecion
seeth of this world & change & doublenesse
The great vnSURENES, the variacion
and aduerteth for all your hye renoune
fortunes dues whā thei most sweetely thow
than is the fallst, your glozy to deuour.

How Jupiter rauished Europa, & how
Cadmus was sent to seke her in diuers re-
gions.

The. vii. Chapter.

The rehearsall of many an olde Poete,
By descent the line conueyed downe
next Saturnus the mighty king of Crete
Joue was crowned by succession
as next heye by procreation,
after his father the land to enherite,
reigned in Crete as Poets list to write.

Sonne of the linage, as I told you befor
of the goddess most souerayne and entere
yet though he was of bloud so high yborne,
He chose Europa for to been his fere:
and down descended fro his heauely spere
as he that was for al his deitie
Suppyled in hert with her great beutie.

And she was doughter to the mightie king
called Agenor by lineal descent
whose mighty kingdom & ryal faire dwel-
was in Phenice, toward & Orient cling
and to Arraby his lande was adiacent
for to be South as ye may rede and see
Towards the parties of the red see.

But Jupiter whan he did aduert,
of Europa the great semelines
him thought he was wounded thow & hert
vnto the death, beholdyng her fayrenes
and for his constreint, & his mortal distres
seing she was so fayre fouden in his sight
he rauished her, of very force and might.

But Agenor, her owne father dere,
gan on this case full piteously complayne,
whan

The fyrste

Whan the alas, most goodly and entere
was hym beaft, which doubled al his pain:
recure was none though he did plaine,
tyll he remembryng in his regally,
thought he would senden to espye

His sonne Cadmus, het to recure againe,
for to searche her in many region,
wher so his labor wer fructuous or in vaine
his father set hym a fel condicion:
not to returne by none occasion,
(And therupon, made hym to be bounde)
tyll he had the kynges daughter founde.

He toke his shippes by great abusenes,
and gan to sayle by many a straunge see,
Did his labour and his busines,
with many a worthy he wer with him pteuce,
But whan that he of reason dyd see,
there was no mene, for which that he was
for to accomplish his fine of his entent, (sent

With glad herte deuorde of all grutchyng,
seing the case frowarde and contrary,
Humble of his chere toke his cryyng,
and of manhoode list not hymself dispayre
But with his menyng knightly gan repaire
toward Grece, and proudly there to land,
of Apollo for to vnderstonde

To what partte that he might drato
he prayed the God to wisshen hym or rede,
some token shew or some maner lawe
Wher what he that he myght hym spede,
or that he would graciously hym lede
Wher as he might bidden a cite
that wer accordyng for him & his menyng.

And to Apollo he dyd sacrifice
and made to hym his oblacion
The god requyryng goodly to deuise,
to what lond or to what region
for his dwelling and habitacion,
he should draw without more obstacle
for hym and his, to make his habitacle.

And Cadmus thus toforne Appollo stode
kneling among with ful great reuerence,
And in the Temple of Delphos stil abode
with humble attendace & deuout diligēce,

mekely abiding by woorde or some sentence
that Appollo to him would vnclose
to what partte he should hymselfe dyspose.

This was his answer in conclusion,
as the statue to hym dyd expresse,
to gon and searche countreys enuiron
and tyll he fond done his busines,
a bulle that wer cxtelling of fayrenes,
which by pcept of Appollos law
had neuer afore in no yoke ydraw,

And where that euer sekynge that he fonde
a bulle stand styl in his pasture,
Appollo bad vpon the same londe
wher as he sawe this syght of auenture,
That he should done his busy cure
to build a cite, he and his folkes all,
and Boecia after the bulle it cal,

And when he Cadmus he pcept vnderstode
and in searthing dyd his busines,
He fond a place where as a bulle stode
fedyng hymself, which as by likelines,
Was a place pleasant of larges,
wher as he stynt and gan a cite rayse,
which that poets, greatly cōmend & praisse

And he his building might the more auaille,
all tho foreyns that dyd about hym dwell,
full lyke a knyght, by force and by battaille
out of that countrey he did them expell:
Keylyng a cite which that dyd excel,
and (as Quid recordeth eke the same,)
vnto this day of Thebes beareth he name.

And he was not onely glorified,
for rearyng bp of this great cite,
but he was also greatly magnified
for his manhoode and magnanimitie:
and most commended yf ye lyst to see
for the surmounting famous excellence
which that he had in wisdom and science.

For as myne autour list of hym endite,
through his noble prudent purueiaunce
He taught figures and letters for to write,
and made lawes of full great ordinaunce
Among the Grekes, and set gouernaunce
theyr vicious lyfe by vertue to restraine

And

And who outraged was punished wth p^{er} pain.

And of entent tencrease his lynage,
and his citey also to multiply,
He toke a wife that was but yong of age,
and she was called (as booke specifice)
Hermione, and touching her alye,
Though that she were borne of rial blood,
she was also both inly fayre, and good.

And this was don (as wytteth mine auctoz)
after the death of worthy Josue
Othontell byng his successour
Hauing the leding and the souerayntie
Of Israel, when Thebes the Citey
was founded first in the dayes olde
By king Cadmus tofozrne as I you tolde.

four doughtern he had by his lue,
full fayre echone, and goodly on to se:
And their names to reherce blyue
Semell was eldest, and next Anthonole,
The thirde in ordy was called Inoy,
and Agaue was yongest of them al,
Of the which doughters thus it is befall.

They were echone of port and of manere,
full well fauoured in euery mannes sight,
Right womanly, and heuily of their chere:
and for their beautie their fader anon right
(As it was sitting) wth all his full might
like their estates, their birth & eke their age
Made the be wedded & toynded in mariage.

To worthy princes his lynage to auance:
and they encreased by procreation,
Wherof the king had ful great pleasaunce
and great reioysing in his opinion,
To seene his line by generacion
with his newewes and cousins of alye
fro day to day so were and multiplye.

And this increased hys felicitie,
when he considered verily in dede
The rich building of his rial citey,
and how fortune dyd his byde lede
To great richesse, in booke as I rede,
To great nobles hauing residence
In his citey of most magnificence.

His doughter Semel (recorde of min auctoz)
Though she descended were of y^e blode rial
To Jupiter she was paramour.
And by his power aboue celestiall,
She conceived in especiall,
As Poetes of her lyst to endite
Hym that is god of grapes red and white

Called Bachus, whych hath y^e gouernaunce
of wines al, and the regaly,
Wherof after was take ful great begaunce:
for when Juno did first espie,
of Jupiter the great auoutrie,
of great hatred and enuyous desire
She made Semele be brate wth sodein fyre.

By descendyng of a sodein leuene (byent,
where through her palates was into ashes
The vnware stroke came down from heauē
and on Semele y^e benegaunce is down wret.
And of the flame consumed was and spent
There was of her left no remembraunce,
but of her ende, the woful mortal chaunce.

Eke Acteon sonne to Autonoe
to great mischiefe and infortune borne,
whose father was called Ariste
come of the kinted y^e I you tolde tofozrne
wth cruel boundes (alas) he was to tozrne,
for that he sawe (as booke of hym tell)
Diane naked, bathe her in a well.

And (as Poetes remembre at the least)
when the ladyes of Thebes the citey
Helde of Bachus solemnly the feast.
the yongest syster called Agaue
Doughter to Cadmus (alas it was pytee)
Aynst Pentheus her owne sonne dere
She were so wode and mortall of her chere

Murdering him in ful cruel wise
in her rage she was so furious,
for he lough at the sacrifice
in Thebes done by women to Bachus.
The which sonne was called Pentheus,
whome that she slewe wth a ful sharpe darte
In her wodnesse as she him found apart.

These great mischeues fellē in the line (ee
Of king Cadmus through his vnhappy chaū
C. i. Fortune

The first

Fortune his noblesse gan to vndermine
and thought he would his gloze disauaice
Al worldly gladnes is medled with greuaunce
Experience in Cadmus ye may see
So importable was his aduersite.

For while he satte most highest in his gloze
No part clipped of his prosperite,
His bright renoune and his roial memoze
In realmes spreadde and many farre cuntry
And he most wealefull in his kingly see
late in his linage most high in his noblesse
Tha came fortune the false enchauntresse

Of wilfulnes and fonde occasion
ayens this Cadmus, & made his renou bul,
And of his kindred by false collusion
She gan away the brightest fethers pull,
And whan his thynig was wagt by to þe ful
after the chaunge of fortunes lawe
His gloze gan discreten and withdraue.

It was more greuous to his dignitie
a sodayn fall from his high noblesse,
Than if that he neuer hadþe be,
Set in the state of so great woorthinesse.
For the furious mortall heauinesse
Of his kindred withoute any more
Would haue greued a pooze man full soze

And amonge his sorowes euery chone
(To reherce plainly as it was)
I dare asserme howe that there was one
Most horrible, and dyedefull in such caas:
For Cadmus sonne called Athamas
his sonne in lawe, through false melancoly
fell sodenly into a frenesye.

Of whom the wife was called Inoe,
Cadmus doughter, as ye ha hearde expresse:
Whiche through þe cōstrent of his infirmitie
In his rage and furious wodnesse
Thought that his wife was a lionesse,
And in his wild imaginations
That his two children were also two lions.

And vpon them full loude he gan to crye,
towardes his wife, in hast he ran anone
And from her armes there was no remedy
the childe he rent, and on a craggy stone

he ga to bruisse it, and brake it euery bone
the which childe, Bochas wyteyth thus
ful tendre and yong was called Learchus.

And of this woofull sodayne auenture,
Of his rage whan that he toke hede,
Is most sorowfull of any creature
Her other childe he hent anon for dyede,
(For of succour he knewe no better spede)
so as he might gan hast out of his sight,
But welaway as she toke her to flight

Her husband came after pursuing
Like a wode Lion in his cruelte,
Downe fro a mountaine which was depþe:
He and his childe fell into the sea (dng
was it not truethe, was it not pitie, (ned,
a kinges doughter, her lord i thebes crowne
he to be wode, & she for feare so drowned:

Lo here the fine of Cadmus euery deale,
His children slayne and his allies all,
And he him selfe from fortunes whele
whan he least wende full sodenly is fall,
His littel sugre tempzed with much gall:
for among all his mortall paynes,
His liege men of Thebes citezynes

Made ayens him a conspiracion,
Put him in erle and his wife also, (ciom
His sons his doughters brought to distruc-
and to thencresing of his deadly woo
He and his wife compelled both two
for very pouert and very indigence,
In their last age to purchase their dispce..

Thus of Cadmus the sorowes to disferme,
and his mischiese to put in remembraunce,
He banished was twise by hys lue,
first by his fathers cruel ordinaunce
Of his suffer to make enquitauce:
and alther last in his vnweldy age
He was compelled to holden his passage

Out of Thebes his wife and he alone
in sorowe and weping taceþplishe by their
In to Illyze together they be gone (daies
their pacience put at fell assayes,
Whose bitternesse felt none alaises.
Eke of their ende and unhappie fate

Neither

Neither of their death I find none other date

Save that Ovide maketh mention,
and John Borchas the poet excellent
Sate that two brethren, seto and Amphio
Oute of Thebes both by one assent
Hauē this Cadmus into exile sent:
his wife also after their high noblesse
To ende their life in sorow & wretchednesse

But the goddess of mercy & pytie (doun
whan they them sawe by fortune so cast
from their estates into pouertie
Hauing of them full great compassion,
They made anon a transfozmacion
of both twaine, them yeuing the lykenesse
Of serpentes, to lue in wildernesse.

Centuope.

What estate may him selfe assure
for to cōserue hys life in sickernes
what worldly toy may here long endure:
or where shall men find nowe stablesse,
Sith kings princes frō their high noblesse
Record of Cadmus ben sodely brought low
And frō the whele of fortune ouerthrow.

Who may sustayne the piteous auenture
of this tragedie by wytyng to expresse
It is not like vnto the chauntepleure
Ginning with toy, ending in wretchednesse
Al worldly blisse is meint with bitternesse,
the soden change therof no mā may knowe
for who sitte highest is soonest ouerthrow.

Was in this world yet neuer creature
rekin by princes for all their high noblesse
But fortune could reclaime the to her lute
& the enpouerishe through her frowardnes:
Wherfore ye lordes for al your great riches
beware afore or ye daunce in the rowe
of such as fortune hath frō her whele throw

Apperelle of Oetes king of Colchos, Ja-
son, Medee, Theseus, Scilla,
Atilus, and other moe.

The. viii. chap.

Whan John Borchas was most diligent
To consideze the successions
Of linages, withal his whole entent

In his wytyng and descriptions
to compile the generacions,
of many nobles, famous of estate
I meane of such as were infortunate.

In his searching he found not a setow,
that were unhappie found in their liuing
To his presence anon there gan the shewe,
a multitude ful piteously wepinge.
Amongest which ful dolefully playning
came first Oetes & hath his plaint begūe
King of Colchae and sonne vnto the sūne.

For of Phobus which is so bright and clere
Poetes write that he was sonne and heire
Because he was so mighty of power,
so freche, so lusty, so manly and so fayre,
But of fortune he fill in great despayre,
curling his fate and his deskenye,
whan Jason first entred his countrie

By Delias sent from Thessalye.
therfore accomplishe by diligent labourer,
The great empyres through his chynalrpe
if god and fortune list do to him fauour,
That he might winne the treasoure.
this is to meane that he were so bolde
The rani assayl which bare þ fleese of gold

This sated Jason through counsaile of Me-
dy sorcerye and incantacion (des
The bulle slough horrible for to see
and banquished the venimous dragon.
The king dispoyled of his possession
accomplished with charactes and figures,
Of Colchas the dreadfull auentures.

And afterwarde when he hys purpose had,
He lefte Oetes in full great dispeire,
And Medea forth with him he ladde,
and her brother which was þ kinges heire.
But as I finde howe in his repaire,
Out of Colchos when they gan remowe,
Kyng Oetes after them gan sue.

Upon Jason auenged for to be,
without taryng he folowed him proudly,
The which thing whan Jason dyd see,
this Medea gan shape a remedye,
She toke her brother & slough him cruelly

C. ii.

And

The first

And hym dismembred as bookes make munde
and pecemeale in a felde behind,

She gan him cast al bespyent with blode
where of his father when he had a sight
full pale of chere stil in the field he stode,
while she and Jason toke them vnto flight
I trowe that tyme the most wofull wight,
that was on lyue when he did knowe
his child dismembred and abyode pflowe.

Which cause was (alas and welawaye)
that he so stint as man disconsolate,
while that Jason fro Colchos went away
and Medea most infortunate (bete
Was roote and ground of this mortal de-
for who sawe euer, or redde of such another
To saue a straunger, lust to slea his brother:

Forsoke his father, his country and kinrede
the land epouertished through her robberye
Of his worship she toke none other hede
loue had her brought in such a fantasie,
And while that she abode in Thessalie,
and wpyth Jason dyd there sojourne.
She made Eson to yowth retourne.

A yerd she toke that was dye and olde
and with hir herbes and commixtions
She made it boyle, in Quide it is tolde,
and by charactes and incantacions
And wpyth the craft of hir conuacions,
the yerd began to bud and blossom newe,
And to beare fruite, & leaues fresh of hewe

And semblably with hir confeccions
his olde humours she hath depured cleane,
And wpyth hir lusty fresh portions
his empty skin trembling and right leane,
Pale and wanne that no bloud was sene,
But as it were a deadly creature,
All this hath she transfourmed by nature

Made him lusty and fresh of his courage.
Glad of herte, liuely of chere and sight,
Right wel hewed and clere of his visage
wonder deliuer both of force and might,
In all his members as weeldy & as light
as euer he was, and in the same estate
By craft of Medea he was so alterate,

After al this ayeinst kinge Pelias
she gan maligne, vncle vnto Jason,
And of enuye she proceeded thus,
the kinges daughters she drew to hit anon
Them counsayling that they should gone
vnto their father and plainly to hym sauen
If he desired to be yonge againe.

ful restored his force for to recure,
and therewithall in lusty age to flourre,
She beghit to done hir besy cure
like his desire to helpe and to succoure,
And in this matter so craftily laboure
Finally to stand in the same case
To be made yonge like as hys brother was.

Touching which thing for more euidence,
this Medea hath to the daughters tolde,
Of intent to geue the more credence,
she bade them take a ram & was right olde,
And with a knife for to be so bolde
to slea the beast, afoze them there he stode,
And in a bestell drowe out his olde blode.

Fully asserming, like as it were trewe
that he should be a lambe againe,
for she by craft would his bloud renewe
in such wise by euidence plaine
That of olde no token should be sene,
in all his members as lusty and entere
As was a lambe yered of one yere.

And herupon in such slepyghty wise
she gan a proesse of full false treason,
The sisters made vpon this ram practise,
Drewe oute his blode like her entencion,
And she by craft of false illucion
blent theyr iyen by apparence in betwixt
The olde ram to seme a lambe againe.

Thus Medea by slepyghty compassing
of enuye, and venemous hatred
Excited hath the sisters in working,
ayninst their father mortally to procede
With tharp knives they made their father
amyd & heart throughout euerie vein (blede
Supposiing the sely sisters twaine,

That Pelias renewed he should be,
to yowth ayein of force & of substance,

but

But finally by treason of Medee
He lost his lyfe, such was his woful chaunce
For she it wrought only of vengeance,
as roote and ground of this cruel dede,
against the nature of al womanhede.

Supposing thus in her opinion,
how that the death greatly should please
Of Pelias vnto her lord Jason
through great increase & set his hert at ease
But it rebounded vnto his disease,
that finally Jason her forsoke,
for her offence, and he hys way tooke

Into Corinth, toward the kyng Creon,
whose daughter Creusa, for her gret beaute
was afterward wedded to Jason:
but whē this wedding was knowē to Medee
Casting she would thereon auenged be,
gan to conspire of malice and enuy,
And through her magike and her sorcery,

In ful great hast gan to ordeyne,
a litle coffet, onely of entent,
and by her young fayre sonnes twayne,
with other iewels she hath it sent
vnto Creusa making a present,
which of malice she list to dispose,
that when Creusa the coffet did vncluse,

The fyre brast out a full large space,
Brent Creusa by ful great violence,
Set a fyre playnly al the place
By enchauntment, there was no resistance:
All went a fyre that was in her presence,
By vengeance did ful great damage,
But when Jason this fyre sawe in his rage

And considered the malice of Medee,
Thought he would doe execution,
for to punish the great iniquitie
against him compassed of treason,
for she of vengeance against al reason
after that Creusa consumed was and bent,
Her own sonnes which that she had sent.

Without routh or womanly piete,
He falsly murdered þe children that she bare,
Like a stepmother auenged for to be,
Cutte theyr throttes or that they wer ware,

Against nature there was none other spare,
But for hatred she had vnto Jason,
after this murder she fled away anon,

So escaping his indignacion,
by craft of magike she went at libertee,
To Athens, and in that region
She wedded was vnto the king Ege.
Not long after, a sonne by him had she,
the which chyld mine authour telleth thus,
After Medea called was Medus.

After whose name the famous region
ynamed was which called is Mede,
But following aye her olde condicion,
This Medea boyde of shame and dyede,
Compacted hath of wilfull false hatred,
that Theseus the sonne of king Ege,
with newe payson shal deuoured be.

But Theseus ful lyke a manly knyght,
in repaying home to his countrye,
Of hygh prudence espyed anon tpyght,
the mortal vengeance, the great crueltye
Of this stepmother, which of enmitie
Concluded hath in her intencion,
Byn to destroy vnwarely with payson.

Her heart of malice cruel and horrible,
as she that was with treason euer alped
when that she sawe her purpose most odible
by king Egeus fully was espyed,
She hath her hert and wittes new applied,
As in their booke, Doctes haue compyled,
ayen to Jason to be reconciled.

She fled away for dreade of Theseus,
Lest he had done on her vengeance:
And finally as writte Ouidius,
and morall Senek concludeth in substance,
In his tragedies making remembraunce,
How Medea, like as Doctes sayen,
vnto Jason restored was agayn,

Touching the end of their furious discord,
Doctes make thereof no mencion,
Nor tell no meane how they fell at accorde,
But if it wer by incantacion
which so wel could turne by so down,
Sundry thynges of loue and of hatred,

The first

And in Bochas of her no more I rede.

Same when she had fulfilled her purpose,
 Mine authour telleth that Jason & Medea
 Reuoked han ayein vnto Calchos
 Her father Oetes, and from hys rouertee,
 Brought him ayein into his royal see,
 And to his crowne by force they him restore,
 Touching his end, of him fynd I no more.

Thus his fortune hath turned too and fro,
 Fyrt like a kyng hauing ful great riches,
 After liuing in pouertie and in wo,
 Sithen restored to his worthines.
 Thus aye is sorowe medled with gladnes,
 Who can aduert in all worldly thing,
 Record of Minos the noble worthy king.

To whom I must now my stile adresse
 To folowe the traies of Bochasius,
 The which Minos as Quide doth expresse
 Touching his byrth, he wyrteth plainly thus:
 That he was manly wyse, and vertuous.
 Sonne by discent of Jupiter the grete,
 And of Europa, boyme to be heyre of Crete.

And of hys persone wonder delectable,
 Full renoumed of wisdom and science,
 By diuers titles of laude commendable,
 Of byrth, of bloude, of kinghode & proudece.
 For by his study and entiere diligence,
 He found fyrt lawes grounde on reason,
 Wherby of Crete the famous region

Gouerned was, and set in stablenes,
 All iniuries and wronges for to reforme,
 Made statutes extorcions to repressse,
 Of righteousnes they toke the fyrt fourme
 And that eche man should him confourme,
 Like their degrees subiect and souereyne,
 That no man had a matter to compleyne.

He made his lieges to liue in quiete,
 Clere shyning in his royall noblenes,
 With sword and scepter sitting in hys sete;
 And while he floured in his worthines,
 He toke a wyfe of excellent fayrenes,
 Daughter to Phebus in Bochas ye may see
 And she was called fayre Pasiph.

And her father by record of wytyng,
 In his time was holden ful famous,
 Of thyle of Rhodes he was lord and king,
 And in his daies of port ful glorious,
 Right proude in armes, and right victoruous
 taking witnes of Metamorphoseos,
 his daughter had thre chylzen by Minos

The fyrt a sonne, called Androgeus,
 and after ward ful fayre daughters tweyn,
 Right goodly and womanly vnto see.
 But like as fortune did for them ordeyne,
 they felt theyr life in trouble and great payn
 The one called Ariadne, & Phedra & other,
 folowing theyr fate, it might be none other.

Androgeus by kyng Minos was sent,
 For that he should profiten in clergie,
 To Athens, of vertuous intent
 there to studien in philosophie,
 And for he gan tencease and multiplie,
 and passe al other by studie in learning,
 and to excell his felowes in cunning,

They of enuie and false malice (alas)
 Made ayeinist him a conspiracion,
 and from a pinnacle sacced to pallas,
 of ful gret height they made him tūble down
 for which iniury, Bochas maketh mencion
 his father Minos auenged for to be,
 layed a great power about the Citee.

He cast him fully that no mā should him let
 but that he would done cruelly vengeaunce
 and round about so sore he them beset,
 with men of armes & with his ordenaunce,
 that finally he brought them to betraunce,
 And them constreyned within a litle space,
 their life, their death, submittig to his grace.

But while they made ayeinist him resistance,
 Supposing his power to withstond:
 Ailus that was king of Megarence,
 ayeinist Minos their partte toke on hond,
 and oftymes as ye shal vnderstond,
 whan king Minos the citee did assaile,
 Ailus within with mighty apparayle,

Upon the walles stode in his defence,
 when that Minos ful like a manly knight,
 fought

faught without with surdy violence,
Like Mars himself in stele armed bright:
wherof when Scilla once had a sight,
doughter to Aisus aduerting his prowes
Anon for loue she fell in great distress

She was supprised with his high noblesse,
His manly force expert many folde,
set Scilla in great heauinesse,
for loue of Ainos in poetes it is told
Made her heart presumen and be bold,
first her life to put in leoparby,
her fathers life the citie, the cleargie.

From her heart, loue hath set aside,
ayenst nature her bloud and her kinted,
and all frendship from her she gan deuyde,
and of her worship toke no maner hede.
Loue made her cruel ayenst al womanhede,
first her heart so sore set a fyre,
her fathers death falsely to conspyre.

For king Ainos beyng a straungere,
was so emprinted in her opinion,
Of creatures there stode none so nere,
And for his sake by full false treason,
she compassed the destruction
first of her father and of the citie,
so straunge a thing, alas how might it be,

That a woman of yeres yong and tender,
Could ymagine so merueylous a thing:
But oft it falleth that creatures slendre,
Under a face of angelike looking,
Been veray wolues outward in werkynge:
Eke vnder colour of theyr port feminine,
Some been found very serpentine,

Lambes in shewing shadowed w mekenes
cruel as Tygres who doth to them offence,
Of humble chere pretending a likenes,
But wo(alas) what harme doth apparence,
what damage doth counterfeit innocence
vnder a mantell shrowded of womanhede,
whan feined safenes doth the bydle lede:

For this Scilla the kinges daughter dere,
In whom he set his whole affection,
His hertes ioy, his pleasaunce most entiere,
His worldly blisse his consolacion,

But she al turned to his confusion,
Not like a doughter, but like a soreresse,
His death compassed, she stoz beareth witness

Her father had a fatal heere that shone
brighter then gold, the which did him assure
Manly to fyght ayenst his mortal sone.
For on his head whilst that did endure,
He should vanquish by manhode, & recure
and through his knightihod to his increase of
in euery quatel win the victoie. (gloie)

But while her father Aisus laye on slepe,
Upon a night percell afore day,
Full secretly of that he toke kepe,
the heere of golde this Scilla cut away.
And vnto Ainos armed where he lay,
she it presented through her ordinaunce,
Of fallie entent him for to doe pleasaunce.

But in this matter lyke as wyrteth Oude,
Metamorphoseos whoso taketh hede,
Her father sleping she kneeling by his side,
toke a sharpe knife without feare or drede,
while he lay naked, she carft atwo his head,
Stale away of ful false entent,
and to king Ainos the head she doth present

And in her coming vnto his presence,
Her fathers head when she afore hym layd,
Nothing ashamed of her great offence,
Vnto Ainos thus she did abrayde,
and with bolde chere euen thus she sayde,
My lord (or she) with support of your grace
yeueh to my tale, tye, time and space,

Certes my lord loue hath excited me,
And conseynded to this cruel dede
To slea my father, destroy my citie,
forget my worship, forsake womanhede,
& made me hardy to make my father blede.
Things horrible thus I haue vndertake,
for to accomplishe onely for your sake.

My self disherited for loue of your persone,
Called in my countrey a false traytoresse,
Disconsolate stole away alone,
Of newe defamed, and named a maistrisse
Of false murdre I byng a great waines,
My fathers head, and his deadly visage,
I present

The first

Against nature to further your voyage.

Wherefore I pray that ye list aduertise,
and consider like a gentle knyght,
how I for loue toward your great empyre,
and to great furthering also of your ryght,
haue first my father depriued of his might
Lost him his life, depopled his riches,
to doe pleasure to your high noblesse.

And nothing aske vnto my guerdon
nor to my reward that might me auayle,
But that I might haue full possession
Of your persone most worthy in battayle:
For ther is no trespour & might counteruayle
To my desyre as that ye would in dede
Goodly accept me, and my maydenhede.

Ye may me saue and spill with a word,
Make most glad and most dolorous,
I not require of you my courtyn lord,
but that ye would be to me gracious,
for bloud and kin, and my fathers house,
All left behinde if ye list aduerte,
And vnderparted, yeue to you mine herte.

Which to your highnes ought ynough suffi-
al thing considered in your royal state, (se
Concerned also how in vncouth wise,
for your loue I stand desolate,
Seue of your mercy full disconsolate.
Here is al and some, your loue I bye to soze
But ye doe grace, I can say you no more.

And when she had her tale told kneeling,
with a manner pretence of womanhede,
Of al her treason a poynt not concealing,
the king assented of her horrible dede,
By great abuse peysed and toke hede.
It was not sitting to a prince or king,
to doe fauour to so froward a thing.

With troubled heart and with a face al pale
His loke vncast sayd god forbede,
that euer in Cronicle, in story or in tale,
That any man should of Minos rede,
How he supported so venemous a dede,
Fauour a woman (alas, and welaway)
which came her father when he abed lay.

But for your hateful and unkindly rage,
I praye the Goddess echone, and Saturne
for to take vengeance on your false outrage
for euery where whether ye doe retourne,
And euery place wheras ye doe sojourne,
both lond and sea shortly for expresse,
they been infect with your cursednes.

your own mouth, your outrage both accuse
and your actes been so abhominable,
that your gyftes fully I doe refuse,
they been so froward and so reprobable,
and your persone disnaturall and vnstable,
within my court it wet a thing not fayre,
that ye should abyde or haue repaie.

Ye be so hateful on edery syde,
and contrarious of condicion,
I pray Tellus, which of the earth is gyde,
And to Neptuneus I make this orison,
as farre as stretcheth theyr dominacion
Under the bond of theyr regaly,
A dwelling place that they to you denye.

Whā Minos had his answer thus deuised,
On reason grounded and on equitee:
And Scilla saw how she was despyled,
knew no partte, passage, ne countrey,
to fynd socour whether she might flee,
But despyred like a false traytoresse,
toward the sea anon she gan her dresse.

To enter the water playnly if she might,
for very shame her selfen for to shroude,
And when the Goddess therof had a sight,
they turned her (as they that might & coude)
Into a quayle for to sing loude.
Her father Aisus they did eke transmette,
into a sparhawk, the quayle to pursue.

This was the end of Aisus and of Scilla,
And afterward of Athenes the towne,
was yelden by to stand at the will
Of kyng Minos without condicion,
Euery three yere by reuolution,
they of the cite shoulden not delaye,
Apyne of theyr chyldren for a tribute paye.

This was by Minos thimposicion
Upon Athenes, and of very drede

They

They obeted as made is mencion,
and their children yere by yere they lede
vnto Crete, the Minotaur to fede,
vnto this monster ordeyned for repast,
which at their comming deuoured were in

(hast

But of that I forther do procede
in this mater, I woll do my cure
to declare, (if ye list to take hede)
of this monstre to tell the engendure,
wincouth to heare and ayeins nature:
for by the wryting of Ouidius
Thys ougle beait was engendred thus.

Metamorphoseos the maner ye may se,
Minos had a bull of great fairenesse,
white as milke, and the quene Pasiphae
loued him so hot & stoye beareth witnessse,
And Dedalus did his besinesse
By subtyll craft, and made his gimnes so,
That ayeins kynd with her he had to doe,

And conceyued a beait monstrous,
that was departed halfe a bull half man,
And as the poete wryting, teacheth vs
of Minotaurus thus the name began,
And Dedalus not long after whā (brought
that thys monstre was by the Quene forth
Thys subtyll werkman hath an house y-
wrought

Called Labirinthus, diuers and vncouth,
ful of wyndes and of straungenesse,
Dugly to knowe which is north or south,
or to what part a man shoulde him dresse
folke were there blēt w furtous darkenes
who that entred his retourne was in vein,
Without a clewe for to resort ageyn.

Of Minotaurus this was the habitacle
like a prielone made of tormenty,
for damned folke a peynfull tabernacle,
for all that ley there in isoperdy
The monstre must deuoure them and desie
and specially was ordeyned this turmente
for all that were down from Athenes sent.

But in this matter some bokes barie
and afferme howe that quene Pasiphae
Of king Minos loued a secretarpe
Called Taurus, in Bochas ye may se,

And thus the king for all hys roialtie
disceiued was, for who may any while
him selfe preserue, where womē list begyle.

For by this Taurus Bochas bereth witness
Quene Pasiphae had a child ful faire
Minos not knowing by no likelimesse,
but that the child was bozne to be his heire,
his trust was good, he fill in no dispayre,
for some husbands as poetes haue compyled
which most assure the, rather ben begyled,

Innocentes can not deme amys,
Namely of wiues that ben found true
Clerkes may write, but doutles thus it is,
of their nature they lothe no thinges newe,
Stedfast of hert, they chaunge not their hew
Haukes best preued sūtime a chek cā make
Yet for a faute the soule is not forlake.

Of these matters write I woll no more,
But aye the tribute and seruage of & toun
procedeth forth, they cōstrained were so soze
Like as their lot turned bp and down,
for there was made none exception
of high ne lowe, neither for sower ne swete
But as it fylle they were sent into Crete.

The statute was so inly rigorous,
they toke their sozt as it came aboute,
Tyll at the last it fill on Theseus,
that he mot gone forth among the route
king Aegeus sonne being in great doitte
touching his life, which might not be socou-
But he must with other be deuoured (red

Which Theseus for his worthinesse,
and of his knighthode for & great encrease
Throughe manly force & for his high prowes
whilome was called the seconde Hercules
Whong Amazon es he put hym selfe in pres
weddid Apolita as bokes specifie,
The hardy quene of Lemnytie,

And afterwarde to Thebes he is gone
holpe there the ladies in especial,
Which he compleyned vpon the king Creō,
which the distressed like their estate roial,
to holde and halowe the festes funerall
of their lordes, as Queenes and Princelies
Of

The first

Of wifely trouth to shewe their kindnesse.

For when this duke the maner had sene
and of Creon the greates iniquitie
To the ladies he made delpyer ageyn,
the lordes bones of ruth and of pitie,
Yet in his youth out of his citie,
he was deliuered by statute full odible
To be deuoured of this beast horrible.

He goeth to prison for all his semelnesse,
as the statute felly dyd ordayne,
But of ruth and gentlenesse,
him to preserue from that deadly paine
Of king Minos & goodly daughters twain
Ariadne shope a remedie,
And faire Phedra that he should not die.

Through their helpe he hath & monster slaine,
that was so dreadfull and ougly for to se,
By the he escaped, wherof he was full fayne
lede them with him toward hys countre
And by the way betwixt of all pite,
Ariadne ful falsly he hath forsake,
Aynst his suraunce, & Phedra he hath take

Amyd the sea he left her in an yle
to wardes no partie she knewe no decline.
She wepeth she crieth (alas & herd while)
for of hir fate this was her mortal line
That for pitie Bacchus the god of wine
toke hir to wife whose crowne of stone fine,
Doth nowe in heauē with the sterres shine

Thus of Theseus ye may behold and see
to Ariadne the great vnstedfastnesse,
The great vntrueth the mutabilite
the broke assuraunce and & newefāglenes
But sely women kepe thier stedfastnesse,
aye vnde fouled saue sumtime of their kind,
They muste puruay whan men be found vn
(kind.

Of Theseus I can no more nowe seyn,
In this matter to make of him memoire,
But to king Minos I woll resort ageyn,
to tel howe fortune aye false and trasitory
In what pointes defaced hath hys gloire.
First of echone Bacchus doth specifie
Of Phalippa the foule aduoutre,

whiche was his wife & stode wel in his grace
to his pleasance he was most soueraine,
But a cloude of small trespase,
made her lord at her to disdaine
But he through wisdom bare pryncly his
for in such case this is my sentence (peyne
Let prudent husbands take the to pacience.

On other thinges Minos gan complaine,
hauing in hert therof full great greuaunce
That he so lost hys faire daughters twaine
and Minotaurus slayne with mischaunce,
Eke vnto him it was a great penaunce
that Theseus was gone at libertie,
And from all tribute deliuered his citie

It greued him eke in cositenauce & there
that Theseus, Ariadne had forsake,
It liked him also not the manere
vnto his wife that he Phedra toke.
And yet this Phedra like as saith my booke
had two sonnes by this Theseus,
first Demophoon and next Antigonus.

Eke Theseus after gan him drawe
toward Sicile in stele armed cleue
With Perithous in armes his felawes
for to raiſe Proserpyna the queene.
But of entent Phedra full vncleue
Loued her stepsonne called Ipolitus
But for he was to her dangerous,

And to her lust froward and contrary,
in hys appoynt not goodly ne benigne
Of false entent anon she gan to barpe
And aynst him full felly to malygne
With a pretence of many token and signe
Of womanhede she gan him accuse,
Her auoutry falsly to excuse.

Who sayth that women can not imagine,
in their defence tales tull vntreue,
For their desire if men list not tencine
nor on their fained false woe to rue
Anon they can compassen thinges newe:
filhe and find out of their entencion
A couert cloude to shadowe their treason

She hath accused yong Ipolitus
Of false auoutry in his tender age

Tolde

To be and affined to Duke Theseus
with ful bolde cheare and a plaine visage
Howe he purposed in his furious rage
only by force her beautie toppesse,
Her lord beseeching to resourne & redresse

The great iniurie done to his wife,
while he was absēt for thiges þ bare charge,
Whies of tales somtime been inuentise,
to suffer their tonges falliþ lien at large:
But folkes that list of daunger the discharge
of such accusing ne take they none hede
Tyll the trueth be tried oute in dede.

I meane no thing of wliues that been good
neither of womē that flourē in Innocēce,
for god forbid and the holy rode
but men should do due reuerence

To their noblesse and their excellence,
declare their bounte & their vertue shewe,
And moze the cherishe because they been
(but fewe.

Couching thaccusing ayeinst Ipolitus,
though it so were that it was false in dede.
Yet he for shame and feare of Theseus,
(as in the storye ye maye behold and rede)
In his heart hath caught a maner drede,
that he (alas) this selly yong knight
fledde & withdrew him out of his faders
(light

His indignacion playnly to eschewe
though by desert in him ther was no lacke.
Of hasty drede as he gan renewe,
either in a chaire or vpon hors backe,
His hors astrayed there fil a sedeyn wracke,
down fro a roche pendaunt (as ye shal lere)
He & his chaire wer drownded both in feare.

Thus bngil'p in his most lusty youth
he was conuied to his destruccion,
The slauder conspired (as it is wel couth)
by fals Phedra, but in concludion
The slaundye turned to her confusion,
for when she with Ipolitus was dead
Through her defeaute anon for shame and

Corrad
She toke a sword ful sharp ywhet & ground
And therwithal she raft her hart atweyne.
Lo howe þ vengeance woll open rebounde
On them that falsely doe their busþ payne

To slaunder folke, for like as they ordaine,
with their defames other folkes tarrwite
God at last their malice can acquite.

Yet some bookes of Phedra doe recorde,
that she ashamed and confuse of this dede
Hing her self ful high with a corde. (mede.
Lo howe false slaunder ca quite folke their
wherfore I counsaill euery man take hede
in such matters as shonde in vncertaine,
from hasty domes his tong to restraine.

Among these stories woofull for to rede
all besprent with teres in his face
full sobenly John Bochas gan take hede
Imyd the prese ysara came in place,
And howe that fortune gan eke to manace,
this proude Duke ful mighty and notable
Of king Jabin called the great constable,

Of his hoost leader and gouernour,
to Israell veray mortall foe,
With people he rode like a conquerour,
And where that euer his meynie did goe
The erth quoke people dread him so,
fledde fro his face wher as he cam afaire.
Nine hundred waynes he had for the warre

Strongly armed id hokes made like lithes
who that approached to mayme & to wound:
for this ttraunt of custome oft such
hadde great delite the Jewes to confound,
And all tho that his swerde hath founde
King Jabin bad the prince of Canaan
In Israell to spare child ne man

This ysara was sent to ben ther scourge
by gods sufferance their sinnes to chastise,
their olde offences to punish & to purge
as a flagell in many sundry wyse:
But whā of reaso they gan them bet deuise
and for their trespasses to fal in repētaunce
God gan withdrawe þ hand of his vengeaunce,

for in their mischefe they gan the lorde to
feeling the prycke of his punicion. (knowe
And mercy then hath vnbent the bowe
of his fell ye and castigacion.
To god they made their inuocacion

And

The first

Of wislytrowth to shewe their kindnesse.

For when this duke the maner had sene
and of Creon the greates iniquitie
To the ladies he made deliuer ageyn,
the lordes bones of ruth and of pitie,
Yet in his youth out of his citie,
he was deliuered by statute full odde
To be deuoured of this beaſt horrible.

He goeth to prison for all his ſemelneſſe,
as the statute ſelly dyd ordayne,
But of ruth and gentleneſſe,
him to preſerue from that deadly paine
Of king Minos & goodly daughters twain
Ariadne ſhope a remedie,
And faire Phedra that he ſhould not die.

Through their helpe he hath & moſter ſlaine,
that was ſo dreadful and ougly for to ſe,
By the he ſcaped, wherof he was full fayne
Ledde them with him toward hys countre
And by the way deuouide of all pite,
Ariadne full faſſly he hath forſake,
Ayeñſt his ſuraunce, & Phedra he hath take

Amyd the ſea he left her in an yle
towardes no partie ſhe knewe no decline,
She wepeth ſhe crieth (alas & herd while)
for of hir fate this was her mortal ſine
That for pitie Bacchus the god of wine
toke hir to wiſe whole crowne of ſtone fine,
Doth nowe in heauē with the ſterres ſhine

Thus of Theſeus ye may behold and ſee
to Ariadne the great vnſtedfaſtneſſe,
The great vntrueth the mutabilite
the broke aſſuraunce and & newefāglenes
But ſely women kepe thier ſtedfaſtneſſe,
aye vndefouled ſaue ſumtime of their kind,
They muſte puruay whan men be found vn
(kind.

Of Theſeus I can no more nowe ſein,
In this matter to make of him memoire,
But to king Minos I woll reſort ageyn,
to tel howe fortune aye falſe and trāſitoꝝ
In what pointes defaced hath hys gloꝝye.
Firſt of echone Bacchus doth ſpeſſifie
Of Phaliſpha the ſoule aduoutꝝe,

which was his wiſe & ſode wel in his grace
to his pleaſaunce ſhe was moſt ſoueraigne,
But a cloude of ſmall treſpace,
made her loꝝde at her to diſdaine
But he through wiſedome bare preuilly his
for in ſuch caſe this is my ſentence (peyne
Let prudent huſbādes take the to paciēce.

On other thinges Minos gan complaine,
hauiug in hert therof full great greuaunce
That he ſo loſt hys faire daughters twaine
and Minotaurus ſlayne with miſchaunce,
Eke vnto him it was a great penaunce
that Theſeus was gone at libertye,
And from all tribute deliuered his citie

It greued him eke in coſtenaunce & there
that Theſeus, Ariadne had forſoke,
It liked him alſo not the manere
vnto his wiſe that he Phedra toke.
And yet this Phedra like as ſatery my boke
had two ſonnes by this Theſeus,
firſt Demophoon and next Antigonus.

Eke Theſeus after gan him drawe
toward Sicile in ſtele armed cleue
With Perithous in armes his ſelawe
for to tauſhe Proſerpyna the queene.
But of entent Phedra full vncleue
Loued her ſtepſonne called Ipolitus
But for he was to her daungerous,

And to her luſt ſcward and contrary,
in hys appoynt not goodly ne benign
Of falſe entent anon ſhe gan to barꝝe
And ayeñſt him full ſelly to malygne
With a pretence of many token and ſigne
Of womanhede ſhe gan him accuſe,
Hert auoutꝝe falſly to excuſe.

Who ſayth that women can not imagne,
in their defence tales tull vntrue,
To their deſire if men liſt not tencleue
nor on their ſained falſe woe to rue
Anon they can compaſſen thinges newe:
fiſhe and find out of their entencion
A couert cloude to ſhadowe their treaſon

She hath accuſed yong Ipolitus
Of falſe auoutꝝe in his tender age

Tolde

Colde and affined to Duke Theseus
with ful bolde cheare and a plaine visage
Howe he purposed in his furious rage
only by force her beautie toppesse,
Her lord beseeching to resourme & redresse

The great iniurie done to his wife,
while he was absēt for thiges þ bare charge,
wines of tales somtime been inuentise,
to suffer their tonges fall y lien at large:
But folkes that list of daūger thē discharge
of such accusing ne take they none hede
Tyll the truth be tried oute in dede.

I meane no thing of wines that been good
neither of womē that flourē in Innocēce,
for god forbid and the holy code
but men should do due reuerence
To their noblesse and their excellence,
declare their bounte & their vertue shewe,
And moze thē cherishe because they been
(but fewe.

Touching thaccusing ayeinst Ipolitus,
though it so were that it was false in dede.
Yet he for shame and feare of Theseus,
(as in the storye ye maye behold and rede)
In his heart hath caught a maner drede,
that he (alas) this selly yong knight
fledde & withdrew him out of his faders
(sight

His indignacion playnly to eschewe
though by desert in him ther was no lacke.
Of hasty drede as he gan renewe,
either in a chaire or vpon hors backe,
His hors astrayed there fil a sedeyn wracke,
doun fro a roche pendaunt (as ye shal lere)
He & his chaire wer drownded both in feare.

Thus bngil'p in his most lusty youth
he was conueied to his destruction,
The slaūder conspired (as it is wel couth)
by fals Phedra, but in concludion
The slaūdy turned to her confusion,
for when she with Ipolitus was dead
Through her defaute anon for shame and
(dread

She toke a sword ful sharp whet & ground
And therwithal she raft her hart atweyne.
Lo howe þ vengeaūce woll apen rebounde
On them that falsely doe their busp payne

To slaūder folke, for like as they ordaine,
with their defames other folkes tarrwite
God at last their malice can acquite.

Yet some bookes of Phedra doe recorde,
that she ashamed and confuse of this dede
Hing her self ful high with a corde. (mede.
Lo howe false slaūder cā quite folke their
wherfore I counsaū euery man take hede
in such matters as stonde in vncertaine,
from hasty domes his tong to refraine.

Among these storyes wofull for to rede
all besprent with teres in his face
full sobenly John Bochas gan take hede
Imyd the prese ysara came in place,
And howe that fortune gan eke to manace,
this proude Duke ful mighty and notable
Of king Iabin called the great constable,

Of his hoost leader and gouernour,
to Istraell veray mortall foe,
With people he rode like a conquerour,
And where that euer his meynie did goe
The erth quoke people dread him so,
fledde fro his face wher as he cam afarre.
Nine hūdyd waynes he had for the warre

Strongly armed id hokes made like lites
who that appoched to mayme & to wound:
for this ttraunt of custome oft lites
hadde great delite the Jewes to confound,
And all tho that his swerde hath founde
king Iabin had the prince of Canaan
In Istraell to spare child ne man

This ysara was sent to ben ther scourge
by gods sufferaūce their sinnes to chastise,
their olde offences to punishe & to purge
as a flagell in many sundry wyle:
But whā of reasō they gan them bet deuise
and for their trespasses to fal in repētaūce
God gan wdrawe þ hand of his vengeaūce,

for in their mischefe they gan the lorde to
feeling the pycke of his punicion, (knowe
And mercy then hath vnbent the bowe
of his fell ye and castigacion,
To god they made their inuocacion

And

The first

And he them heard in their mortall dýede,
In Iudicum the storie ye maye rede.

Howe in the while that this ysara,
Hope him of newe, the Jewes to oppresse,
In theyr defence god sent the Delboza
A prophetesse, the story beareth witnesse
to proue the counsaill their armes to redresse
And by the spirite of hir prophesie,
for to withstande the great tyrannye

Of ysara, which was descended down,
with a great host into the fiede repayred,
But Delboza of high discrecion,
whan that she sawe the Jewes dyspayred,
and for to fight their cozages soe appaired
she made the first deuoutly in that dýede,
to crye to god to helpe them in their nede.

She was their iudge & their gouerneresse,
chiefe of their counsaile, and of custome she
Causes depending of great auisenes,
that stode in doute by dome of equite
she tried them out vnder a palme tree,
and was not hasty no mater to determine,
Tyll she the parties afoze did examine

And when she heard & knewe of comming,
of ysara, with full great puissaunce,
That was constable of that mighty kyng,
called Iabin, with all his ordinaunce,
Upon Jewes for to do vengauce
his Delboza gan prudently entende
The Jewes partie by wisdom to defende

She bad Barach hir husbände anoth right
Of Neptalym ten thousand with him take
Apynt ysara to fighten for their right
and that he should a great enarme make
But he for dýede this iourney gan forsake,
And durst not apynt him the warrepe
But she were present and list him to cōsey

Wel wel (quod she) sith it standeth so,
That of wantrust ye haue a maner dýede,
I will my selte gladly with you goe
you so supporte in this great nede,
But trusteth fully as ye shall finde in dede
that a woman with laude, honours & glozy,
Shal fro you win the pryce of this victozy.

It folowed after sothely as she saide
auisely she made hir ordinaunce
And the chiefe charge on hir selfe she laide
as princes of Jewes gouernaunce,
And prudently gan her selfe auauce,
with god conueied and support of his grace
With ysara to meten in the face.

And specially touching this biage,
God toke awate the spirite and the might
fro ysara his force and his corage,
That he was feareful to entren into fight,
Kepte his chaire and toke him vnto flight,
knowing no place surely in tabide,
Till that Jael a woman did him hyde.

Within her tent, and almost dead for dýede
Under a mantell desirous for to dýnke,
she gaue him milke, & slepe fell in his hede
And while that he, for beaumes gan winke
and sadly slepte, she gan her to bethynke,
Thought she woulde for ysara so shape,
That with the life he should not escape.

She toke a naile that was sharpe and long
and couertly gan hir selfe auauce,
With an hāmer, myghty, round and strong
she droue the naile, so this was hir vengauce
Throughtoute his hede, see here the sodeyn
Of tyrantes & trust on fortune (chauce)
which wol not suffer the longe to contune

In their false vsurped tyrannye,
to holde people in longe subiection.
She can them blandish with hir flatery
vnder a colour of false collusion
And with a sodain transmutacion,
fortune them cā, that pooze folke trouble,
Reuerse their pryde with hir face double.

What should I lenger in this mater tarpe,
Though & lordshyp be mighty and famous
Let ysara be your exemplarpe:
it not endureth but it be vertuous,
Conquest, victorie, though they be glozious
vnto the world, if vertue be behind,
Wē not reioise to haue their name in mind

For fortune through hir frowardnesse
Hath kynges put out of their regions.

and

and she hath also through her doublenes,
destroyed linages with their successions
made she not whilom her translations
of the kingdom called Argiuois
to be transported to Lacedemonoyse

The same tyme whan zifara the proude
gan gods people to put vnder foote
fames trumpe blew his name vp loude
with sugred sownes semying wonder fote,
but al his pride was rent bp by the roote
whā þ his glozy was outward most shynig,
but who may trust on any worldlye thyng?

Folke han afozme seen the foundation
by remembraunce of old antiquitie
of mighty Troy and of Ilion
after destroyed by Grekes that citie,
to vs declaryng the mutabilitie, (whyle
of false fortune, whose fauoure lasteth no
shewing aye trust, whan she wyll begyle.

So variable she is in her delites,
her whele butrysty and frowardly meuing
recorde I take of the Madiantes
their vnware fall full dolefully pleining,
whiche shewed themselves pitous to wepyng
to John Bochas as he in wrytyng sought
how þ fortune aye in their princes wrought

Which that gouerned the lōd of Madian
trusting of pride in their great puissance,
and ayeinist Jewes a warre they began
purposyng to byng them to vittraunce:
but god that holdeth of warre the ballance
and can of princes oppzelle the vain glozy,
yeueth where him list cōquest and victozy.

Not to gret nouber nor to gret multitude
but to that partie where he seeth the ryght
his dreadful hand shortly to conclude,
to halt bp by grace and petieth euery wight
the higher hand where he cast his syght,
list his powze and his fauour shewe
be it to many or be it vnto fewe.

The wrong partie gladly hath a fall,
though there be miliōs many mo thā one,
I take witnes at Jereboall,
which is also called Gedeon,

that with thre hundred fought ayein þ son
of Israell, the Bible can deuise
whan he to god had done his sacrifice.

Shewing to hym a signe mercurious
whan the flees with siluer dewe full shene,
was spreint and wet the stozp tellih thus
and rounde about the soyle and al þ grene
was found dze and no dzop seene
in tokē onely this duke, this knightly man
shoud haue the victozy of al Madian.

This Gedeon toke with him but a fewe,
thre hundred chose, which scaped the riuier
god bnto him suche tokens did shewe
And euidences afozme that wer ful clere,
that he shoud been of right good chere:
and on no partie his aduersaries dze,
for no pro wesse neyther man hede.

Where god about holdeth champartie,
there mai ayeinist him be made no defences:
force, strength, wisdom nor cheualrye
Ayeinist his might, are feble of resistance,
this was wel proued in experience,
whan thre hundred with Gedeon in nūber
so many thouādes by grace dyd encōber.

This sayd people deuised into thre,
with their trumpes vpon the darke nyght
by Gedeon that had the soueraintee
with void pottes and lampes therin light,
and thus arrayed, they entered into fight:
but vnto them this token was first knowe
whan Gedeon his trumpe did blow.

That blew eche one and loude gan to crye,
broke they pottes and shewed anon ryght
as the stozp plainly doth specifye.
Their lampes shewed w a ful soden light
whereof their enmies astounded in there
wer so troubled vpon euery syde, (syght
that in the field they durst not abyde,

The crye was this of them euerychone,
thanke to the lōd most noble and glorious
pise to the sword of mightye Gedeon
Which vs hath caused to be victorious,
made our enmies most malicious,
through influence onely of his grace

The fyrste

For very feare to flyen afoze our face.

Thus can the lord of his magnificence,
the meke exalt and the proude oppresse
like as he syndeeth in heartes difference
So of his power he can his domes dresse,
mercy aye meynt with his righteousness,
his iudgements with long delaye deferde
And o: he punishe, pitie is aye preferde.

Lenuoye.

Tighty princes, remeber þ your power
Mⁱs transitory, and no whyle abyding
as this tragedie hath rehearsed here
By euidences ful notable in shewing:
And by examples in substance witne sing,
that al tirantes plainly to termine
not from their state sodeinly decline.

Phabus is freshest in his midday sphere
his beames brightest & hottest out spreding
but cloudy skies ful oft approche nere,
to eclipse his light id their vnware comig.
None earthly toy is long here abiding,
record of T^u which stoumele doth shine
yet toward night his stremes down decline

Whan that fortune is fairest of her chere,
by apparence and most blandisshyng,
than is she falsest eche season of the yere,
her sodein chaüges now by now down tur-
þ nightingale in May doth freshly sig (nig
but aback winter can somer vndermine,
and al his freshtnes sodeinly decline.

Al earthly blisse dependeth in a were,
in a balaunce vneuenly hanging:
O princes princesses most souerain & fere
in this tragedie conueth by redyng
how þ estates by full vnware chaungyng,
whilō ful worthy their liues did fine (time
whā frō their nobles thei were made to de-

Of mightye Jabin king of Canane: of
quene Jorassa, and howe Thebes was de-
stroyed

The .ix. Chapter.

Now must I write þ great sodein fall,
Of mightye Jabin for his iniquitie,

which vnto Jewes was enuy full mortall:
with scepter & croune reining in Chanaue
and vpon Affrike had the soueraintie
rebell to god and list hym not obey,
but euer ready his people to warrey.

The lord aboue seing his tyranny,
forbare his hande with full long suffraunce
and was not hasty on his obstinacie
Like his desert for to do vengeaunce:
but aye this Jabin by continuance
endured forth in his cursednes,
til that the sword of goddes righteousness

was whet ayeinst him, this tirāt to chastice
and to repress his rebellion
from his kingdome the story doth deuise,
mid of his pryde he was pulled downe,
teyemplyse where domination
is founde wilfull, trecth touercast
god will not suffer theyr power long laste.

For this Jabin found alway forward
of high disdain list not the lorde to knowe
therfore his power drough alwa back ward
and his empire was after ybrought ful low
his royal fame fortune hath ouertrowe,
his name eclipsed that sometime shone ful
of great Cison beside the riuer. (clere,

Of quene Jorassa Bochas doth eke fōte
princesse of Thebes a mighty great citie,
of her unhappes he dolefully dothe wryte
Imagining how he did her see
to hym appeare in great aduersitee,
like a woman that would in teres reyne
for that fortune gan, at her so disdeyne.

And though she wer defaced of fygure,
there shewed in her a maner maiestie
of quenely honour, plainly to discure
her infortunes and her infelictie
and to declare plainly how that she
of all princesses which stode in state
She was her self the most infortunate.

Which yaued to Bochas full great occasiō,
whan he sawe her piteous apparaille
for to make a lamentacion
Of vncouth sorow which dyd her assaile,
with

with a tragedye to wepe and bewaile
her importable and straunge deadly stryfe,
which that she had during al her lyfe.

He wytt of her a story large and playne,
and of her byrth fyrst he doth desyre,
and affyrmeth in his booke certayne,
she was descended of a noble line.
In flouring age eke whan she did wyne
she wedded was for her great beautie
vnto the kyng of Thebes the sille.

which in his time was called Lays,
and whan her wombe by procelle ga arysse
the kyng was glad and also desirous,
the chyldes fate to knowe in some wyse:
and thought he would go do sacrifice,
vnto Apollo to haue knowing befoze,
touching this childe whan that it wer borne

What should folow in conclusioun,
he was desirous and hasty for to see,
first by the heauenly disposicion
And by the fauour if it would be,
of Appolos mighty deite
to haue aunswer among his rightes all
of this childe what fate should befall.

His aunswer though it wer contrary
to his desyre, yet was it thus in dede:
Apollo tolde hym and list no longer tarye,
That this childe should verely in dede
slain his father and make his sydes blede.
And to his handes there was none other
but on his sweord he must nedes deye (was)

The king was heauy & tryst of this sctence
sorrowful in heart (god wote) & nothing faine
and cast afoze through his prouidence,
that his sonne in all hast should be slayne:
and that he would not an houre delayne
after his byrth, but bad his men to gone
into a forrest and slep the chyld anone.

Like his bidding & ministers wrought in
taking & childe tender & yong of age (dede,
and in rasoze with them thet ga it lede,
to be deuoured of beastes most sauage
the mother (alas) fell almost in a rage,
seing her chyld so inly fayre of face

shall thus be dead, and dyd no trespase.

Little wonder though she felt smere
to all women I report me:
and vnto Mothers that ben tender of her
In this matter iudges for to be:
was it not routh, was it not pitie
that a princeesse and a quene (alas) (case:
should knowe her childe deuoured in suche

After his birth Lays tooke good kepe
without mercy, respice or delaye
that vnto one which that kept his shepe,
This yong childe vpon a certayn daye,
shalbe deliuered in all the hast he may,
to this entente it might not be succoured,
but that it should of beastes be deuoured.

This said shepeherd goth forth anon right
the childe beholding benigne of loke & face,
thought in his heart & in his inward sight
He should done to god a great trespase,
to slep this childe, wherfore he did hym grace
toke fyrst a knife and dyd his busy payne
throughout his fete to make holes twaine.

Toke a small rod of a yong Oler,
perced the fete, alas it was pitie.
bonde him fast and by good Lays
The yong childe he hong vp on a tree:
of entent that he ne should be
through wylde beastes cruell and sauage
be sodeynly deuoured in their rage.

Vpon the tree while he henge thus bound
of auenture by some occasion,
A strange shepeherd hath the childe yfound
which that of pitie & ruth toke him down,
bare it with him home into his towne,
made his wyfe for to done her paine
to foster the childe with her byestes twaine

And whan he was brought forth & recured
and full made hole of his woundes sore,
this yong childe which al this hath edured
than he in age gan to were more
and that nature gan hym to restore,
the sayde shepeherd & loued him best of all
after his hurtles, Oedipus did hym call.

The fyrste

For **Oedipus** is no more to sayne,
who that conceiveth the position
but fete yppered throughout both twayne
In that language as made is mention:
And to **Merope** wyfe of kyng **Polubion**
the shepheard of full humble entent
began the chylde ful lowly to present.

And for he was barayne of nature,
he and the kyng of one affection
toke **Oedipus** both into theyr care
As sonne and heire by adopcion
to raine in **Corinth** by succession,
the kyng the quene of **Corinth** the country
had the chylde in so great charitie.

Let men consider in theise discrecion
sodayn chaunge of euery maner thing,
this childe sent out for his destruccion,
And now prouided for to be a kyng,
as through fortune aye double in werkyng,
he that was refuse to beastes most sauage
is now receyued to knightly heritage.

Destitute he was of his kynted
for sake and abiect of bloude and of alle:
in tender youth his fete wer made to blede
Heng on a tree and gan for help to crye,
but god that can in mischief magnify,
and recomfort folke disconsolate,
hath made this chylde now thus fortunate.

And prouided to been a kynges heire,
of hym that stode of death in auenture
fortune can shew her self both foule & fayre
folkes brought lowe ful wel aye in recure
and such as patiently can endure,
and list not grutche aye in the chastyng
god out of mischief can sodeinly the byng.

But when **Oedipus** was growe by to age,
lyke a yong prince encreasynge in nobles,
lusty and strong, and freshe of his courage
Of auenture it fell so in sothnes:
eyther by stryfe or by some frowardnes,
or by some contes he had knowledgyng
howe he was not sonne vnto the kyng.

And by discent but a farre forayne

wherupon ful soze he gan to muse
and for to know and be put in certayne
thought he would some maner practis ble
and to the kyng he gan himself excuse,
for a time withdrawyng his presence
till that he knew by some experience

Or by some sygne how the matter stode,
thought he would done his diligence
to know his father, and also of what bloud
He was descended, and haue some euident
touchyng trowth how it stode in sentence,
and hereupon to be certifyed
toward **Apollo** fast he hath hym hyed.

Which in **Circha** worshipped was þe tyme
and gaue aunswer through his destie,
to folke that came at euen and at pyyme
Of euery doubt and ambigustie:
and there **Oedipus** fallynge on his knee
after his offeryng had aunswer anon
toward **Gere** that he should gone

Vnto a mountaine þe **Phocis** bare þe name,
and there he should of his kynted here,
also like his fate the aunswere was þe same
He should slep his owne father dere,
and after that to **Thebes** drawe hym nere,
wed his mother of very pynosaunce
called **Jocasta** through his vnhappy chace

He list no lenger tarten ne abide,
this sayd **Oedipus** forth in hast goeth he
and on his waye he gan anon to ryde
Till he the mountaine of **Phocis** dyd see,
vnder the which stode a great countree
called **Citoyens**, which that time certeyne,
warred them that wer on the mountaine.

His father **Layus** through his chualtye,
with **Citoyens** is entred into battayle
and **Oedipus** came with the partie
Of the hyll armed in plate and mayle:
and as they gan eche other to assaile,
among the prease at the countreyng,
of auenture **Oedipus** slew the king.

Unknowen to hym that he his father was
haupynge therof no suspicion,

passed

passed his way plainly this the case
And eke unknown he came to the towne
of mighty Thebes, wher for his high renown
he was receiued with ful great reuerence,
because that he slough in theyr defence

Sphinx the serpent horrible for to see,
whylom ordayned by incantacions
for to destroy the towne and the countre
By his compassed sleighty questions:
slough man and chyld in al the regions,
such as not could by wisedom or reason
make of his problem playne exposition.

Who so passed by, he could hym not excuse
but the serpent hym felly would assaile
with a problem, make hym for to muse
Called of some men an vncouth deuinaile
which for to expoune who that dyd sayle,
there was none help nor other remedye
by the statute, but that he must dye.

And for all folke haue not knowlegging
of this demaunde what it was in dede,
I will rehearse it here in my wytyng,
Compendiously that men may it rede:
first this serpent who that list take hede
was instructuous, and spake ayeinst nature:
and if it fill that any creature,

Man or woman should forth by passe,
hygh or low of all that region,
as I sayd erst there was none other grate
But if he made an exposition
of this serpent's froward question,
he must dye and make no defence,
the which demaunde was this in sentence.

The serpent asked what thyng may that be,
beast or soule, whan it is forth brought,
that hath no power to stande, go nor flee:
And afterwarde if it be well sought,
goeth first on foure, or els goeth he nought
after by processe, on thre, and thā on twain
and est ayein as nature doth ordeine.

He goeth on thre, and est on foure ayein,
of kyndly ryght nature disposeth so,
and in a whyle it foloweth in certepn,

To the matter which that he cam fro,
he must of kind resort ayein therto:
And who cannot the menyng clerely see
he of this serpent shall deuoured be.

Which Oedipus ful sober in his entente,
not to rakel nor hasty of langage,
but in his heart with great auisement,
And full demure of looke and of visage,
considered first this perodous fell passage:
sawe well tofore that it was no lape
and full prouided that no woode escape.

At good laster with whole mind & memory,
seing the earnest of this mortal empyre,
his life depending atwene death & victorie
This beast (quod he) plainly to deuise
is fyrst a childe, which may not suffice
whan it is bozne the truth is alday seen
withouten help himself to sustene.

After on foure he naturally doth creeze
for impotency and grene tendernes.
Flores can tell which that do them kepe,
But afterwarde by he doth hym dresse
with his two fete the thurd to expresse,
is hand or benche, or support of some walle
to holde hym by lest he cathe a fall.

And afterwarde encreasynge of his might,
to greater age whan he doth attayne,
of his nature than he goth byright
Mightily vpon his legges twaine:
Than cometh age his power to restraine
croked and lame like as men may see
In a staffe or potent to make by legges thre

But whā feblenes or sickenes done assade
on bondes and fete he must bowe & lowe
for crooked potencies may not than auayle
Whan ludy age is banished and shet out.
Than est ayein hereof may be no doubt,
with foure fete to earth he doth retorne
fro whence he came, there shyll to sojourne.

All came from earth, and all to earth shall
ayeinst nature is no protection:
wooldy estates echeone thei be mortall
There may no treasour make redemption
D. iii. who

The fyrste

who climeth highest, his fall is fardest down
a meane estate is best, who could it knowe,
twene high presuming & bowing down to low

For who sit highest stant in leoparde,
vnder daunger of fortune like to fall,
mischief and pouertie as for their partie
Ben lowest brought amōg these peoples all
Some folke haue sugar and some taste gal:
Salamon therfore mirrour of Sapience
twene great richesses & atwene indigence,

And a meane, called suffisaunce,
to helde hym content of competent disce,
not to reioyce of to great haboundaunce,
And aye in pouerte to tend hym patience:
sober to his plēy, in scarcenes none offēce
as of grutchyng, but betwene toye & smert,
thanke god of all, and aye be glad of herte,

Earth is the ende of euery maner man,
for the ryche with great possession,
dyeth as sone, as I rehearse can
As doeth the poore in tribulacion:
for death ne maketh no diuision
by singuler fauour betwene bothe plyche,
of the pooerest, and of him that is most riche,

This sayd problem concluded in this case,
whiche the serpent gan sleightly purpose,
that when a childe is first bozne (alas)
kind to his deathward anon doth hi dispose
eche day a iourney there is none other gloste,
Experience can teache in euery age,
how this woulde herte, is but a pilgrimage,

This sayd Oedipus fyrst in Thebes bozne,
sent to a forest deuoured for to be,
found & brought forth as ye haue herd tofore
And after drawing home to his countree,
flough his father, so infortunate was he
of froward happes folowynge al his līue
as this tragedy his fortune shal descrīue,

But for that he through his high prudence
vnto the serpent declared euery deile,
he flough hym after by knightly violence
more by willedō, then armure made of stele
State of Thebes can tell you full wele,

which was one cause, if ye list to sen quene
wherethrough Oedipus wedded hath the

Called Iocasta princesse of that cite,
his owne mother vnknewen to them both
and though she wer ryght saye vpon to se,
with this mariage & goddes wylful wyoth
for thei aliante nature gan to loth,
that a mother as ye shal vnderstonde
shoulde her sonne take to be her housbond,

There was therein none conuenience
to be supported by kynde ne by reason,
but yf it so be the heauenly influence
disposid it, by the inclination
of some false frowarde constellation,
caused by saturne or mars & froward sterre
to engender debate or some mortal warre,

In this matter plainly thus I deme,
of no cunnyng, but of opinion:
though he wer crowned wylceper & diademe
to reigne in Thebes & strōg mighty town
that some aspect came frō heauen adown
infortunate, froward, and full of rage,
whiche ayeinist kynd disposid this mariage,

He crowned was by assent of al the towne
flouring a cealon by soueraintie of peas,
and while he helde there possession,
sonnes and daughters he had double:
the fyrst sonne called Ericholus,
Polinices called was that other
as sayth Bochas the seconde brother,

Also he had goodly daughters twopne
the eldest called was Antigone,
the second named was Ireyne
And both they wer ryght saye vpon to se:
the quene Iocasta myght no gladder be,
than to remember when they waxe in age
how goddes had encreased her image,

It was her toye and her felicitie,
to see her chyldren that wer so mylly saye,
but oft in toye there cometh aduersitie
& hope vnured, when hope doth oft apatre
Cōtrarious trust wyl gladly there repaire
where false weynyng in hert is conceyued
throm

thow ignorãce, which fel folk haue deceued

That thyng in earth is moze decepuable,
than whan a man supposeth verely
in prosperitie for to stande stable,
And from his ioy is remedied sodenly
for where fortune is found to last
to trise folke is greuous to endure
for soden chaunges be hurtful to nature.

Unto woe that cometh on gladnes,
is vnto hertes right passing encombrous,
and who hath felt his parte of wealesfulness
Sorrow supring on, is to hym odious:
and worst of al and most contrarious,
is whan estates hyghest of renoune
been from theyr nobles sodenly put down.

There is no glory which that shineth here
that false fortune can so magnifye,
but whan his laude brightest is and clere
She can eclipse it with some cloudy saye
of vnto woe, onely of enuy.
seeth of Oedipus an open euidence,
which by his lyfe had experience.

Of high nobles and therewith also,
part importable of great aduersitie,
his ioye euer meynit with full mortall woe
for whyle he reigned in Thebes the cite,
and Jocasta with ful great royaltie,
within the countrey there fell a pestilence,
the people infectyng with his violence.

Though all the londe and all the region,
in euery age, but most greuously
on them eche one that wet of that towne,
The infection spred most speciall:
and of vengeance þe sword most rigorously
day by daye began to bite and karue,
of eche estate causyng folke to sterue.

Thus began to currease the mortallite
that euery man stode in leoparde
of theyr liues througout the countrey,
So importable was theyr maladye,
that men might here the people clepe & crye
dispeired so wet they of their liues
beyond of all succour and of preseruatiues.

They sought out herbes and spices in their
& ga to seke for help & for succours (coffers
the cause equiring of prudent philosophers
and of their most expert deuynours,
why that the goddes with so sharp shoures
of pestilence, and in so cruell wyse,
list them (alas) so mortally chalice.

But among al, in soth this is the case,
there was found one ful prudent & right wise
a prophete, called Tiresias.

Of prophete hauing a soueraine price:
which that assayed and saide in his aduise
as vnto hym was shewed by miracle,
Thebes himself declaryng the oracle.

Cause of this sickenes and these maladies
as the goddes plainly haue disposed,
and Seneca writeth eke in his tragedys
Though the cause be secrete and yclosed,
vnto the tyme there be a kyng deposed,
which slough his father & cast hi of his life
and hath eke take his mother to his wife.

Till this be done and execute in dede,
there may be made no redemption,
but pestilence shal multiply and spede
Iye moze and moze througout that regio
till vnto tyme that he be put downe
fro his crowne, which not long ago
his father slough among his mortal sone.

And hath his mother wedded eke also
ayenst law, and ayenst all ryght.
till that vengeance vpo that cryme be do
There shalbe warre, pestilence and fight,
sorrow & great strife & euery maner wight,
of vengeance his neighbour shal hate
brother to brother, & bloud to bloud debate

This all & some there may be no succour
which brought þe people in ful gret heuines
for Tiresias the great diuynour,
By prophete told them thus expresse,
and at the last by tokens and witnes,
men vnderstode by spgnes out shewing
this pestilence was brought in by the king

And though the people gaue no credence,

The fyrste

to Ciresias ne to his prophete
the quene Iocasta caught an euidence,
And in her heart a ful great fantasie:
Specially whan she did espye
of king Oedipus the fete to be wounded
how this rumour was on reuth ygroinded

Because also there was a daunour
which tolde toforn þæt Oedipus shoulde bee
to Layus, in Thebes successour
wherby the kyng, the quene, and the cite
fyll in great trouble and great aduersite,
wel more than I by wrytyng can repute
for there was nothig þæt might the recorde

full oft in the day Iocasta gan to sowe,
kyng Oedipus, sobbe, crye and wepe
in salt teres as thei wold them browne
Death cramplishing into their hert gā trepe
on day complaining on night thei may not
curtyng the houre of their nativitee (Nephe
that thei shoulde live that daye for to see.

Their mortal chance their deadly aucture
their fortune eke which gan on thē froune,
impacient and doleful for to endure:
Their froward fate with her lokes broune
the kyng for ye cast away his crowne
and gan to race for constreint of his paine
out of his head his woeful yen twayne.

Day and night he cryed after deth,
hatefull to come in any mannes syght
most desirous to yelde by the byeth,
Woeful in heart to come in any light.
Crooked for sorow, feble to stond byghte,
and specially in his deadly distresse,
for dyede and shame he dared in darkenes

The cruel constreint of his most grevance
was that his sonnes had him in dyspite,
which gan his sorowe greatly to auaunce,
for hym to scoyne was set all their delyte:
was neuer man that stode in worse plite,
for lyggynge and destitute of chere,
vnto the goddes he made this prayer.

Besechyng them with a full doleful chere
vpon his woe to haue some compassion,

and that they shoulde for to auge his smert:
Betwene his sonnes make a diuision,
eche to byng other to destruction,
this was his prater plainly in substance
that eche on other maye take vengeance.

In yeres fewe for their unkyndnes,
thei herd his prayer as ye han herd deuise.
the brethren two through their cursednes
Eche gan other mortally despyse
for lacke of grace and false couetise,
eche for his partie desirous in dede
toforn other to reigne and succede,

And thus these brethren unfortunate
betwene themself fyll at discencion,
and finally thus unkinde debate,
Brought all Thebes vnto destruction:
yet was there made fyrst a conuencion
By enterchangynge, þæt eche shoulde reigne a
the other abset to play & cum no nere (yete

This was concluded by their both assente
and by acorde of all that region,
Polinices rode forth and was absent
Etheocles toke fyrst possession.
But whan the yere by reuolucion
was come about, he false of his entente,
vnto the acorde denied to consent.

This was o cause of their bothe strues
Polinices thus put out of his right,
till Adrassus that king was of Argues
whiche through all Grece greatest was of
set vnto Thebes Eteus a knight (might
his sonne in lawe to treate of this matter,
and the cause finally to lere.

Whether the kyng called Etheocles
would condescende of truethe and of reaso,
to stint warre, and to cherisly peas
After the acorde and composition
to deliuer Thebes that mighty towne
vnto his brother, which absent was about
now that his yere was fully come about.

But he was false, and frowardly gan bar
Etheocles from his conuencion,
for whiche Adrassus no lenger wold tary
whan

whan Theseus had made relation
but called anone throughout his region
all the worthy both nere and ferre
against Thebes so: to begynne werre.

for this cause like as ye shall here,
Polinices to forcen his partie,
prowded had the kinges daughter dere;
I meane Adrastus floure of chivalrye
whan Theseus did him certify
touchyng the aunswere of Etheocles
and of his trueth how he was recheles.

false of his promise & cursedlye forsworne,
for to his truth none aduertence had he
neither to the accorde þe was made before
Touchyng þe deliuerance of Thebes þe cite
but who that list the story clerely see
of these two brethren and theyr dissencion,
and how Adrastus lay tofore the town,

And Theseus thzough his hye promesse
faught by the way goyng on message,
and how of Grece all the worthyness
with kyng Adrastus went in his biage:
And of the mischief that fel in that passage
for lacke of water tyl that Amphile
nourish of Ligurgus so sayre vpon to see,

Taught Theseus to fynde out a ruer,
She that did in sayrenes so excell,
and how the serpent most ougly of there,
Ofking Ligurgus þe child slough at þe wel
And how Amphiozax fell a down to hell:
all to declare me semeth it is no nede,
for in the siege of Thebes ye maye it rede.

The story whole and made there is mencio
of ether partie their pusillace & their might
and how Adrastus laye tofore the towne
And how they met euery day in fyght
and Theseus the noble famous knyght
so renowned in actes martiall,
was slayne (alas) as he fought on the wal.

And howe the brethren met among þe pres
like two Tigres or lions that wet woode,
with sharpe spores this is doubles,
Euetyche of them shed others hert bloode:
this was their fyne, & thus with the it stode

saue at their feastes called funetall
there fyl a meruell whiche I tell shall.

whan they wer brente into ashes ded
of theyr enuy there fell a full great wonder
among the byondes and the coles red,
High in the ayre the smokes went asunder
the one to one partie and that other yoder,
to declare the storye list not sayne
the great hatred þe was betwene the twain

Thus for theyr pye and false dissencion,
all the Lordes and all the chualerie
wer slain of Grece, and also of the towne.
And rote of all mine autour list not lye
was false aliaunce and fraternall enuy
and chief grounde with all the surplusage,
who search aright was vnkynbly marriage

The quene Jocasta felt her part of payne,
to see her children eche of them slep other,
her sonne, her lord, blind on his ypen swarth
which to his sones was fader & also broder
fortune would it should be none other,
eke Parcas sisters which be in nuber thye
Span so the threde at her natiuitee.

Eke whan Jocasta stode this disconsolate,
and saw of Thebes the subuersion
the countrey destroyed, waste, and desolate
The gentle bloud shed of that region,
without comfort or consolation
thought she myght be nomore appetyed
but of all hope fully dyspeyred,

Cryst and heauy pensife, and spake no word
her sorowes old and new she gan aduerte
toke the sword of him that was her lorde,
with which Oedipus smote Larys to þe hert
she to finish all her paynes smert,
and fro the body her soule to deuide
rooke her self throughout on euery syde.

She wery was of her woeful lyfe,
seyng of fortune the great frowardnes,
how her defame and slaunder was so ryfe
And of Oedipus the great wretchednes,
also of her sonnes the great vnkynndnes:
all these thynges wayed on her so sore
for distresse that she list to liue no more.

Bochas

The fyrste

Bochas wisteth the flour of her fatternes
 Consteint of sorow caused it to fade
 the famous lycht eke of her nobles
 And all the clerenes of her dayes glade
 With vnware harmes she was so overlade
 of very anguyshe that she her self did hate,
 so inly contrary disposed was her fate.

Thus death deuoureth with his bitter gall
 ioye and sorowe deuopde of all mercy.
 And with his darte he maketh down to fall
 rich and poore, them markyng sodeinly:
 his vnware stroke smiteth vnderdifferently
 from him refusyng fauour and all mede
 of all estates he taketh so lile hede.

Better is to dye than liue in wretchednes,
 better is to dye than euer liue in payne,
 better is an ende than deadly heauines,
 better is to die than euer in woe complain
 and wheras mischief doth at folke disdein
 by woful consteint of long continuance,
 better is to die than liue in such greuaunce

Taketh ensauple hereof and a pefe,
 of kyng Oedipus that was so long ago,
 of quene Jocasta that felt so gret mischief
 And of their children remember eke also
 which euer liued in enuy, sorowe, and woe:
 fortune (alas) durtyng al theyr dayes
 was found so froward to them at al assayes

Touchyng Oedipus processe fynd I none
 what ende he made in conclusion
 laue Bochas wisteth how the kyng Creon
 Cousin and heire by succession
 expyled hym farre out of the towne,
 where he endured mischief, sorow & dyde
 tyll Atropos vntwined his liues threde.

Clenup.

In this tragedy foure thynges ye may see
 the proude of Jabin and false presumption
 of quene Jocasta the great aduersitie
 of kyng Oedipus the enclinacion,
 to vices all, and the deuision
 of the two brethren plainly vs tassure,
 kyngdomes deuided may no while endure

for who saw euer kyngdom or countrey
 stande in quiet of theyr possession:
 but yf there wer right peace and equitie
 And iust accorde without dissencion:
 Doyd of vntueth and false collusion,
 plainly declaring bi example & by scripture
 kyngdomes deuided may no while endure.

Seeth here ensauple of Thebes & citie
 and how that noble mightie region,
 though theyr most froward false duplictie
 with warre wer brought to theyr destruce id
 their promise broken & theyr couert treason
 shewed bi their harmes impossible to recure
 kyngdomes deuided may no while endure

Dantes piceses which haue & souerantie
 ouer the people and dominacion,
 yf ye list liue long in felicitie
 Cherishe your subiectes, do none extorcion
 and aduertyseth of wisdom & of reason,
 as this tragedy doth to you discure,
 kyngdomes deuided may no while endure

How Atreus king of Myceno
 wrought against his brother
 Cheltes, slew his thre
 children, dismembred
 them in peces, made
 Cheltes to eate
 of their fleche
 and drynke
 of theyr
 blood.

The .x. Chapter.

Bochas the Poete autour of thys boke
 hym purposyng to gather and compile
 diuers stories, anon his penne he toke,
 hym remembryng within a lile whyle,
 in this Capitle gan direct his stile
 to write the story hye and compendious
 asofne all other of Duke Theseus.

Lozde of Athens a famous great cite,
 right strong and mighty on euery syde:
 but at his backe Bochas dyd one see

which

a hich cryed loude and bad he should abide
 Bochas (quod he) fro thee me lyst not hyde
 my wofull case, ne in no wise spare
 my piteous compleint to thee to declare.

I am Thistles besprent all with wepyng,
 brownd in teres as thou maist well see
 whylom sonne of the mighty kyng
 Pelops, and bozhe also paroye
 of quene Hippodamia excelleng of beautie:
 and for thou art despyous to endite
 of people vnhappy and theyr woe to write,

My wyll is this, that thou anon procede
 to turne thy stile and take thy pen blyue:
 leaue Theseus, take now of him none hede
 But my tragedye lyst that thou discryue.
 For I suppose that in all thy lue
 that thou saw neuer a thing moze dolorous
 moze vnhappy, moze froward, ne piteous.

Than is (alas) my moztall auenture
 incomperable the sorow surmounting
 of quene Jocasta most troful creature,
 O of Oedipus his fate aye complayning
 for my compleynt hath none ending,
 but lasteth euer and bereth me witnes
 no wo resembleth vnto my heauynies.

And with þ woꝛde John Bochas stil stode
 full soberly to geue hym audience,
 and in the place demurely he abode
 To heare þ substance of his moztal offence:
 wher this began to shew his sentence.
 O John (quod he) I pray the take good hede
 my woe to write that men may it rede.

Alas my brother roote of vnkynnes,
 Atreus called, of treason sours and well,
 and sinder out of treason and fallenes
 And all other in fraud he doth pretelle.
 Whose couert hate is moze than I can tel:
 I supposyng of very innocence
 in him no malice disceit noz offence,

But as brother should a brother trust
 I trusted him of heart, wil and thought,
 by apparence none other cause I wist:
 for in his person I supposed nought
 þ euer he could so false a thig haue wrought

but who may sooner another man deceiue,
 than he in whom no malice me conceiue;

I denied of hym as of my true brother,
 wening he had faithfull been to me:
 I sawe no signe, ne I knew none other,
 in hym supposyng no duplicitee,
 But wo (alas, how might it euer be
 oz who dyd euer in any floz p syn
 bloude vnto bloude to be so dinkynd:

I wyll passe ouer to tell the worthynes
 touchyng the states of oure progenitours,
 of our kynred, and the great nobles,
 I tel nothyng, neither of our predecessours
 nor of my youth, how passed ben the floures,
 I leaue al this and vnto mynd call,
 the wretchednes that I am in fall.

My brother found a false occasion
 against me, and gan a cause feyne
 to banishe me out of our region,
 And gan at me of hatred so disdayne,
 vpon me affirming in certayne
 in our kyngdome wher called is Micene
 I should haue lyen by his wife the quene.

This he compassed full falsly of malice,
 himself wel knowing that it was not so:
 aye found vnkynde and in his aulse
 Not like my brother but my deadly foe:
 and to encrease great parcell of my woe
 by long processe in his entencion
 he ymagined my destruction.

And his chief cause was false couetise,
 touchig this thing which he did on me feyn
 and yet this kyngdom truely to deuise,
 should haue be departed, of right betwene
 but against truth he did so ordein (vs twen
 me to exile out of that region
 himself alone to haue possession.

Yet in his heart he cast another wile
 to my vndoing and desolacion,
 to the place where he did me exile
 Under a shadow of false collusion,
 to make a maner reuocation
 of brotherhede, he shewyng a pretence
 me to resorte ayein to his presence.

The firste

To be accepted as a brother should,
with full accord be styl with him abide
all injuries of which afore I tolde:
On either party forgeat and let asyde,
that nothing after should our loue deuyde,
but of one will and one intencion
Lead al our lyfe without diuision.

Wherof the people wer full glad and lycht
throughtout Mycene that myghtye region
at my resortyng syndyng euery wight
Ready of heart and of whole affection,
me to receiue into that noble towne:
and none so ready (by signes out shewing)
to make me there in sothe as was the king

There is no damage in comparison,
that may be likened by no resemblaunce
to feyned trowth and simulacion
whan fraude is hyd in a fayre countenaunce
pretending trowth outward by discreuance
and vnderneath of most false intent,
of deublenes dareth the serpent.

As vnder floures is shrowded the dragon,
for to betraye by sodein violence
such folke as haue no suspencion
But truly mene in their pure innocence,
tyll they be caught dispurueyed of defence
as is a fyse with bait of false pleasaunce,
þ hoke not seen to bring hym to mischaunce

Thus semblably at my home commyng
I was receiued with euery circumstance,
like as halfe heire and brother to the kyng.
And he pretending (as by countenaunce)
that he had so inly great pleasaunce
of my repayre, and of trowth he tolde so
for reioysyng sayde he would go

Into his goddes to do sum obseruaunce,
for this accorde and humble sacrifice
made his ministers in faithfull attendaunce
To wait on me in al their best wyse:
it nedeth not to tell ne deuise
nor by wytyng in bookes for to set
halfe the sope he made whan we met.

first how frendly he did me embrace
of barely gladnes within his armes twain

and how for for the teres on his face,
full entirely gan down distil and rayne,
that for my partie could we not restrayne,
but that I must of frendship fraternall
wepe as dyd he, in his estate royal.

The wylly wolfe that cast him to deuour,
the sely lambe which can no defence
nor none help, himself to succour
So feble he is to make resistance:
which demeth trowth of false apparence,
what wonder is it the fraud not conceiued
though such lambes vnwarely be deceiued

Though þ roses at midsummer be full sote
yet vnderneath is hid a full sharpe spine
some fresh floures haue a full bitter rote
and lothsom gal can suger eke vndermine
in dyedful stozmes þ sune amög doth shyn
and vnder a shadow of feined frendship,
there is no frendship so perflous for to dyete

Thus remembryng þ faithfull woordes stable
of my brother she wed vnto me
at our metyng the kissing amiable,
thassured couenauntes at our fraternitee.
But oft time men may behold and see,
that likes grown amög these nettles thich
and floure delice amid these wedes wicke

Thus v hile I ressed in the kinges house
nothing aduerting his deadly crueltie,
his olde hatred was so benisious,
and so odible to destrope me,
himself tauenge he toke my chyldren thre
and slykely, is it not a wonder,
he cut their throttes with a knife asunder.

For he thought that it dyd hym good
them to dismember into peeces smale
and in a vessel for to gather their blood
while they lay stil, & loked on him full pale:
This was his dede in a desert bale
within a caue that no man should espye
treason conspired of his false tyrannie.

This was the substance of his sacrifice
to slep my chyldren & do their throttes blede
I trowe the goddes therof did agrife
Of his false offering when they toke hede.

He dyd these membris after rost and sede.
And with this biande most abhominable,
He made be serued me at the table.

In couert cruises also thus it stode,
to stauch my thrust through his cruel begäre
he made me vnknow to drinke their bloude
was not this thing to Gods displeaunce:
Yes I dare sayen for by demonstraunce,
Upon this dede without more obstacle,
The sunne in heauen shewed a miracle.

which soze agryed might not beholde,
with his beames theron to cast his sight,
for displeaunce his clerenes gan withhold
And for vengauce to withdraue his light
the day turning for horzour vnto night,
whē he shone brightest in his midday sphere
Shrouded his face and would not appere.

But I (alas) vpon this case horrible,
that could not ymagine, neither thinke
On any matter that was so odible,
eat of theyr fleshe, & of their blud did drinke,
which so soze doth in myne heart sinke
that I may not touching this auenture,
the circumstaunces for constreynt discure.

It nedeth not me to make rehearse,
Touching mine exile of al maner thynges,
Of diuerse sorowes that me did assaile,
my wooful sighes, ne my greuous wepinges
nor vpon nightes my dolorous wakynges,
My pouerte, nor how I stode in drede
To lese my lyfe, wherof Bochas take hede.

And remembre al the sprecumstaunce,
If euer thou sawe of high or lowe degtee
More contrarye, or more vnhappy chaunce,
then thou heard remembred here of me
weye in balaunces my sorowes, & let se
If any sorowe or mischiefs vntecured
May counterpeyre to that I haue indured

Myne infortunes I found them ay so fell
without fauour and socout dispurueped
My brother on me euer so cruell,
that I full oft desired to haue dyed,
for to this day my spyte hath be conueyed
with sorowe and woe deuouide of al refuge,

wherfore I pray (O Bochas) be my iudge,

And in thy wytyng leaue me not behynde,
nor in thy boke that thou not disdeyn,
among the folke that thou haue me in mind
which that for sorow, wepe, weyle and pleyri
And thus Tyesles rehearsing al his pain,
Like as he would himself on pieces rend,
Hade vnto Bochas of hys tale an end.

How Treus accused himself of murdre,
& his brother vpon auoutre done in Europa the Quene. The. xi. Chapter.

A Treus after with a full pale chere,
And of enure full dead in hys visage,
Vnto John Bochas he gan approche
liche as he had be fallen in a rage, (nere
and furiously abrayde in his language.
How may this be, that like a man wer wode
Tyesles hath his venome some abrode:

And like a ribaulde falsly me accused,
Notwithstanding that I ful clerely see
mine infortunes, which may not be refused,
so soze (alas) they werke ayeinst me:
And though Tyesles false and vntreue be,
and vnto thee Bochas with a face pale
ayeinst me hath forged here a tale,

which in effect shalbe found vntreue
If I haue space my complaynt to declare:
for I purpose to tell a tale newe
fro poynt to poynt, and for no mā to spare,
How he was roote & ground of all my care:
and euen like as it is befall,
reherse I shal þe ginning of my sorowes al,

Whilom when I reigned in Nicene,
of age lusty, flouering in my freshe
with my wife Europa that was quene,
Most renoumed that time of her faynes,
Tyesles then ground of al fallenes,
As a traytor his time did espye
through his false fraude and flattery.

Cumpassed a mene within my cite
By sleighty wyles that wer incomparable,
To corrupt my wifes chastite,
My bedde deuouling a thyng intollerable.

The first

And to the Goddess very abhominable,
 Raising the queene to hys fleshly pleasure,
 Till vnto time that by continuance

She by him had sonnes two or three,
 Eche one brought furth in false auourite,
 Deming truely that they had be
 Mine owne children, til that I did espye
 How this swine, through his false lechery
 This Tyestes after Europa,
 Laye by his daughter called Pelopia.

And by proesse furth a child she brought
 called Agistus, which when he cam to age,
 as saith Bochas, ful much treason he wrou-
 for by his malice & his great outrage, (ght
 Destroyed was all whole the linage
 Of Tantalus, which by his lining,
 In frigla reigned as lord and kyng.

But this Agistus, of whom I spake afoze
 falsly begoten, mine autour wite the same
 Of Pelopia anon as he was borne,
 To hide the claundre and also the defame
 Of Tyestes, and for to saue his name,
 when that he was but a day of age,
 He was outcast to beastes ful sauage

To be deuoured, the story is welc eouth,
 A mylke gote, god list for him proude
 To foster him in hys tendre youth,
 By day and night liggng by her syde,
 within the forest thus he did abyde,
 vnto the tyme that he gan growe in age,
 Then to the court he holdeth hys passage.

As vnknow to every maner wight,
 where he heard abyding in household
 Of his kindred, and how against al ryght,
 Tyestes was presumptuous and bold,
 By his disceites compassed manifold,
 with Europa my wife, to haue a doo,
 And on Pelopia begat a child also.

Which was himself, as he did vnderstand
 By euidences, many moe then one,
 wherfore of malice, he falsly toke on hand,
 On me his vncle tauenged been anon:
 For Tyestes, chiefest of al my bone,
 Mine own brother made Agistus blyue,

To make a sword throughout my hart true

Thus by this murther conspyred by treason
 On me Treus liggng pale and dead,
 Came Tyestes to haue possession,
 and set a crowne vniustly on his head,
 He nother had conscience nor dread,
 Routhles to see my woundes blede,
 with this that he might in my land succede.

This same Agistus, ful falsly in hys lyfe,
 as a pong braunche sprong out of treason,
 Lay by Clytemnestra, whiche was the wife
 Of the noble worthy, kyng Agamemnon,
 Liggng at a siege tofoze Troy towne.
 And this Agistus, which is a thing not sayd
 murthered him also in Grece, at his repayre.

Wherfore (O Bochas) of heart I pray thee
 which of these stories is now most terrible,
 Of Oedipus, Jocasta, or of me?
 Tell on anon if it be possible,
 which of their sorowes is fond most peynible
 Of Theban brethren, most ful of wo & tene,
 Or of vs twaine, brethren of Mycene?

I am aknow as for my party,
 Of vengeaunce I did a cruel dede,
 I slough his children of malice and enuy,
 and rolled them when that they wer ded.
 Only because if thou list take hede,
 That he begat the as roote of al this stryfe,
 Upon Europa, which that was my wife.

Such hateful thinges eche mā should loth,
 which apperteyn to murder and to treason,
 Thus may I say we been vnhappy both,
 He fyrst by trespass of fornicacion
 Done by the queene, within my region,
 And I deslaundred on that other side
 Of hasty vengeaunce, so been an homicide.

My bedde he fouled by his auourtry,
 To god and man a thing most detestable,
 And I of malice and false melancoly
 slough his children, and serued the at table,
 Thus enterchangng if it be commendable
 Eche was despyous, through our vnhappy
 vpon other for to do vengeaunce.

(chaucer
 Out

Our great hatred most odious found at all.
Our cruel dedes wrought on other syde,
Senec rehearseth them in especiall
In tragedies, and there he doth deuide
Our compleyntes, our malice and our pryde
our fatall end, in sorow and mischiefe fyned
when Attopos our liues threde hath twined

When John Bochas had fully espyed,
Of these two betheren the accusacions,
and how they had maliciously replied
Eche ayeinst other in their discencions,
He gan dully to heare their mocions,
Put vp his pen, and wrote not moze a word
Of their fury, ne of their false discord.

Clenuoy.

This tragedy sheweth a figure,
a maner of ymage, and also likenes,
How contrary it is to nature,
Bloud vnto bloud to shew vnkindnes:
This woeful storpe can beare witnes,
All such debates been as ye shal fynd,
Hateful to God, and contrary vnto kynd.

For there is none moze dyebeful auenture,
than in kynred to fynd frowardnes,
Nor no damage moze perillous to endure,
than in frendship when ther is strangenes
a maner partie by example I dare expresse
To sene the tree debate agayn the rind,
to God wer hateful, & contrary vnto kynd.

Euery beaſt and euery creature
Loueth his ſe blable, of kindly right I gesse
and whē one truth twain herts doth assure
Undeparted of very perfectnes,
It wer a viciouſ froward curſednes,
Their loue ſo knyt, to loſe it oꝝ vnkynd,
Hateful to god and contrary vnto kynd.

Princes princeſſes, doe your beſy cure.
Pro you rauoyde ſtriſe, fraude & doublenes
Remembꝛe you vpon the vnhappy cure
of theſe two bꝛethꝛē & of theiꝝ wꝛetchednes
and of theiꝝ both malicious wilfulnes,
and how theiꝝ ſtrues haue this wel in mynd
to god was hateful and contrary vnto kynd.

Of Duke Theſeus, and Ariadne that ſa-
ued hys lyfe in the caue, and howe he lyke a
forſwoꝛne man forſoke her, & wedded fayre
Phedra, which after ward ſlough her ſelfe.

Che. xii. Chapter.

Athenes whilom
When it was in his floures,
Was called Aroice,
Of philoſophers wyſe,
Princes of poetes, and expert Oratours,
Sonne of al ſciences as clerkes can deuise
Whence al cunning moſt clerely did ariſe,
Named of Grece the lanterne and the light
which throw al erth ſhed his beames bryght,

With noble tytles which been out of nūbre,
In euery coſt his renown did ſpꝛe,
the ſame therof was clyped w none vmbꝛe
Al other ſcholes it did ſo enlumine,
For in that cite plainly to termine
of the. vii. artes, as down fro one hed ſpring
therz ran out riuers & ſtreames of al cūning

Theſe ſciences wer called liberal,
Onely of freedom, franchiſe and libertie,
For of a ſtocke that wer proued thꝛall,
there ſhould no bꝛant the ſtudy in that cite
But the yke blud that wer found free,
Both by diſcent and lineal high nobles,
There to ſcholey ſhould haue intereſſe.

This cite was ſacred to Mercurie,
For theiꝝ wiſdome and theiꝝ ſapience,
Of Mercurie the ſeaſtes they obſerue,
For Rethorike and for eloquence:
And mighty Mars gaue them influence,
With glad aſpectes, theiꝝ partie to amende,
Nobles of knighthod theiꝝ elergy to deſcend.

This town was nobled by title of other thing
and moſt glorious reckned in y age, (ges
By ſucceſſion of Dukes and of kinges,
Among which Duke Theſeus by limage,
Sonne of Aegeus full freſh of his courage,
Excelling al of prudence and manhede
that euer did the eroune thete poſſede
For to that cite through his high nobles
In theiꝝ deſces, ſuch truſt, ſuch affiaunce

The first

He pauer to them by his expert prowesse,
Of his triumphes so great haboundaunce,
and specially they renoun to auance,
He made the free, they trewage for to lete
ayeins Minos, the mighty kyng of Crete.

For by his force the story is wel touth,
Them to fraunchise and al that region,
The Minotaure he slough in tender youth
and afterward he of deuotion,
to acquite himselfe like a champion,
therof made solemne sacrifice
to Jupiter, in most humble wise.

And in a Theatre called Marathon,
Duke Theseus had this victorie,
After he went to Colchos with Jason,
Chief of counsell as made is memory,
and by proces to augment his glory,
with Hercules his brother to conueye,
ayeins Amazones he went to werrey.

Conquered them, his manhod was wel seen
His force, his noblesse, in that mortal stryfe,
and after that Ipolita the queene,
this Theseus toke vnto his wyfe,
and for his brother he list leoparde his lyfe,
Duke Pirithous whan he did undertake,
the Centaures to outray for his sake.

These Centaures, poetes specifye,
and Serapus maketh mencion,
How they wer whilom engendred of a shepe
whan first they father called Trion,
was enamoured ful many a day gon,
vpon Juno, because she was so fayre,
Gouernesse and Goddesse of the ayre.

This Trion was her secretary,
and for her fayrenes and excellent beaultie,
Loued her ful hote, albe she was contrary
to his desyre, in Bochas ye may see,
Whan to delude, he wyperth how that she
herself transformed (as she might & coude)
Into the likeness of an heauenly cloude.

This Trion playnly supposing
It was her selfe, and euen thus he wrought,
the cloude embracing without moze taryng
Of his folly, the goddesse there he sought,

And to their medlig betwene the earth they
p centaures, these bestes meruelous brought
which of nature been found contrarious.

Halfe man halfe horse, parted thus in twain
and wonderfull by their description,
Of false malice did themself ordeyne,
On Pirithous to make inuasion,
And him to put out of possession
Of his wyfe, called Ypodamen,
And her to ranshe, maugre al his men.

There wer of them an hundred in numbre
Swift as the wind in their course renning
which of malice cast them to encumbrer,
Duke Pirithous the day of his wedding,
and to ranshe his wyfe at their coming,
If for his partie there wer no defence,
ayeins their power to make resistance.

But Theseus list not to delay,
Pirithous his brother to defend,
First the Centaures he knightly did outray
So mortally they durst him not offend,
after this conquest to hell they descend,
Duke Pirithous and worthy Theseus,
Maugre the daunger of cruel Cerberus,

There they ranshed in their mortal tene,
through their knighthod if ye list to lere,
Dispite of Pluto, Proserpina the queene,
which of Jupiter was the daughter dere,
And Pirithous fond first the manere
Of wilful force, through his high renoun,
Realmes to conqueere and holde possession.

But by wytyng soothly of Dunde,
He playnly telleth how Duke Theseus
Arested was in hell, and must abyde,
By the force of cruel Cerberus,
and Pluto was to him contrarious,
Cyll Pirithous to fynd a relees,
the case declared vnto Hercules.

Wherch of his knighthod a remedy fond,
to helpe his frend, did his besy payne:
First by his promesse, Cerberus he bond,
at hell gates with a treble chayne,
and of his manhod he did so ordayne,

Duke

Duke Theseus from dainger to discharge
Haugry Pluto for to goe at large.

They were in armes brethren both twelue
loued as brethren together in warre & pees
That neither coude vnto other feine,
their life to leoparde & put the self in pees,
And both as brethren were called Hercules
to signifye, poetes can well tell,
This name in conquest all other doth excel

By old time they that were percles,
for their nobles in diuers regions,
Al they for māhode were named Hercules,
such as were noised for famous champiōs
Tigres to Daunt Bores and Lions,
and renoumed among them euerychone,
Bochas affirmeth that Theseus was one.

first as I saied by his knightly trauaile
whan Athenes stode in deuision
Among them selfe by warre & by battayle,
by his wisdom and his discrecion,
He set accord within that noble tounne,
thē that were exiled & stode in none certein,
He of his knightshode made thē resort again

He gaue thē lawes wherby they should thē
Noble statutes founded of reason (gpe
Set among them so prudent poley,
in their liuing, that no dissencion
Should arise by none occasion
amonge them selfe, in high or lowe estate,
Proudyng euer that there were no debate

Thus gan the citie encrease and multiplie
to ware famous of wisdom and riches,
There sprong the wel first of Philosophie,
there first of knightshode rose & high nobles
By Theseus, Bochas beareth witnes
Thus, thinges two like as it is founde,
Clergie and knightshod did there habound.

And for to set the Cytie in quiete,
he made peace through all that region,
And of knightshode he manly did mete
the cruel tiraunt, that called was Creon.
Haugre him made restitution
of lordes bones, & were at Thebes slaine,
To the ladies, wherof they were full faine.

Thus through Grece abroad his renoune
his knightly fame gā gretly multiply (spad
And long in iope thus his life he lad,
while that fortune list him magnifye,
But as her gladnes is meete to some enuy,
for she froward, list no more sojourne
With Theseus but gan her face tourne

Away fro him, were peruerse and froward
of his glozpe, vngoodly gan to dulle,
doun fro her whele she made goe backward
of his good fame she gan the feders pull.
Whan his noblesse was highest at the ful,
I meane the full of his felicitie,
There folowed an ebbe of great aduersitie.

And moreouer, her frowardly to quite,
hys unhappes rehersing one by one,
One, the first as Bochas list tendite,
wan he lay in Crete among his sone,
And out of prisione should into Grece gone
repairing homeward, & him self withdrew
The Minotaure whan he had slawe.

The first emprise that he vndertoke,
was whan he escaped the importable paine
Of Minotaures, like as seith my boke,
and to him lad & kinges daughterne twelue
That he of malice falsly lyst disdaine
ayeinst Ariadne, which that did him saue
From the death, whan he lay in the caue.

Should haue be slaine had not her socour
in his repaire he toke therof none hede, (be
He left her sole in great aduersitee
within an yle, in mischiefe, sorowe & drede,
And faire Phedra with him he dyd lede,
wedded her like a forsworne man.
Thus with vnt ruth his mischief first begā

Howe Phedra quit her & story is wel knowe
In his absence. Bochas writeth thus,
Whan that she within a little throuwe,
loued ayeynt kynd her son Hippolitus,
But he to her was contrarious,
Should not assent to so foule a dede,
For shame he fled and parcel eke for drede

To his father, for she dyd him accuse,
as ye tofozne haue the story seime

C.iii,

And

The first

And for he dyd her company refuse
he went away and came neuer ageyne,
for ye haue herd howe that he was slaine
win a chariot, thzough hys vnhappy chaunce
And howe Phedra thzough myschiefe and
(vengeaunce

Slough her selfe against all womanhede,
Here in this boke tofore as I you tolde:
Of which thing whan Theseus toke hede,
thought it was vegaunce for his officers old
for he not quit him like as he was holde
to Ariadne, which should haue bene his wife
By whose socour he scaped with his lyfe.

This infortune and this vnhappy chaunce
was to his noble full contrarious
The death also was to him a vengeaunce
of his sonne, called Hippolitus,
for sorowe of whome this duke Theseus,
with salte teares, sore gan complaine,
At the exequies of these like twaine.

I trowe also it did him sore gtreue
Duke Pirithous whan he sawe dead,
Slaine w a beast, and might not him releue
king Orthus hoūd which had a treble head,
whose teeth horrible of his blode were red
which infortune whan he gan beholde,
Vnto the death he felt his heart colde.

And for to reken the great wretchednesse
the vnhappie chaunces þ fil him in his lyfe
Among al his other great distresses,
was none so mortal nor none so ful of strife,
As whan that he gaue credence to his wife
Phedra called, which of entencion
Compassed vntreuly an accusacion

Vpon Hippolitus of hatred and enuye,
because he nolde doe so great offence,
As for to assent to her lecherie,
therfore of death he felt the violence,
And for his father to sone gaue credence,
Bochas forbad hulbandes al their liues
without preefe nor leue to sone their wiues

For be to hasty tales for to leue
of flatterers in chāber nor at table. (preue
Forgers of lesinges mine auctor doth well
to abide with lordes that they be not able.

Hereon he maketh a chapitle ful notable
and of hys wrytyng this was the cause why,
That princes shoulde examine eche partye

Of wisdom also and of discreacion,
without a preefe not be parcal,
for to a prince it is confusion,
If at weie parties he be not found egall,
Caused manyone for to haue a fal,
God suffred such not long to contune
Withdrow with their grace: & hindreth they
(fortune

Thus Theseus for his hastines,
his hap, his grace, distressed day by day,
The same appalled of his worthines,
and froward fortune in a waite eke lay,
for his defautes to hinder hym if she maye
Cast she wolde his noblesse disauaunce,
And than his kingdome by disobedience.

from him withdrough honoure & reuerēce
full frowardly thzough all his region,
They of Athenes by cruel violence
fill against him in rebellion,
That he was faine to fle out of that tounz,
thus hath fortune derkid the brightnesse
Of all his noblesse, and cast him in distresse

This was the ende by great contrariouste
of Theseus, after his daies glade,
whan the frethe flour of olde felicitie,
fortune aduerse made them for to fade,
Eche thing must bowe whan it is ouerlade
worshipp & honoys whan they bytest thine
With vniware chaunges thā rather it done
(decline

C Lenuoy.

The vn sure gladnesse the soye trāsitory
the vnstable surenes & trās mutaciōs
The cloudy brightnes, & false eclipsed gloiy
Of erthely princes which haue possessions,
And Monarchies, and dominacions,
Their soden chatinge declareth to vs al
Their pōpous suger is meint w bitter gal.

This blind goddesse in her consistorie
with hir plesaunce medleth discencions
After triumphes, conquest & victorie. (nes
reuerthfro princes their Scepters & crow
Troublous

Troubleth the people with false rebellions
 seeth these Dukes which fro her whele been
 Al worldly sugre is meint w bitter gal. (fal

This tragedye maketh a memoire
 of Dukes twelue, and of their high renomys
 And of their loue wyte a great hulorie,
 and how they conquered diuers regions,
 gouerned cities, countreies and eke townes
 till fortune their prowesse dyd appalle,
 To shewe their sugre was meynt w bitter

(gall

Princes princestes see how deceptoyre,
 been all these worldly reuolucions,
 And howe fortune in her reclinatoire,
 with her triacle tempereth false poysons,
 So meruelous been her confessions,
 of frowardnes she wold what so by fall
 Aye with her suger of custome tempre gall.

Where Bochas reпреueth all them that
 yeueh hasty credence to euery repoire.

The .xiii. Capter.

In this Chapter Bochas in sentence,
 reпреueth and blameth not onely princes,
 But all them y ouer lightly yeueh credece
 to euery tale and fable which is,
 Reported vnto them for sothfastnes,
 and list nothing do, as it were dewe,
 To proue the trouth wher it be false or true

Although so be in euery maner age,
 folkes been diuers of condicions,
 to tourne, plie, & chaunge in their corage
 On other partie with sodein mocions,
 And for to bowe by transmutacions,
 with euery wind, as done y vnstable leues
 Which hange on trees, in forrestes and in

(greues.

But of al chaunges that chaunge is most to
 and most fereful is that variaunce (diede
 whan that princes which may y people lede
 Been found vnstable in their gouernaunce
 For their noblesse & their high puissaunce
 Assureth them by a maner of fourme,
 what euer the list to accomplishe & perfourme

To comen profite they may most auayle,

whan they been ruled by wisdom & reaso
 And to the people they may most disauayle,
 whan they lacke wit and discreason
 Thus betwene tweyne in euery region,
 the people draweth who that can deserue,
 To good or bad as princes them gouerne.

They may not be to hasty nor sodeyn,
 but doe all thing by good auisement,
 Kepe them fro songes that been on twelue
 not be to rakel to yeue no iudgement
 And of no folkes whan they been absent,
 leue no tales, neither yeue no credence,
 Till that the party maye come to audience,

(credence

Some while hath hapned howe that slowe
 hath in some case be found full noyous
 But hasty credence I dare say in sentence,
 a thousand folde is more perflous
 for vnauised, al hast is odious,
 for hast full oft for lacke of reason,
 Of much people hath been destruccion.

There is no damage that men can purpose
 more to be dyed, nor more lamentable,
 Than a prince his eares to vncluse
 to euery tale and to euery fable:
 It is a token their hertes be not stable,
 whā they to flaterers their eares don apply
 Namely to such that can well forge and lye

folkes be diuers, some false some trewe,
 in diuers studie done their besynesse,
 Some can studie to find out tales newe,
 and some for lucre ca maintene wel falsnes
 And hold by quarels ayeinst rightwisenes
 Pretending truth vnder a false entente,
 to hynder folkes which that been innocent,

Men doe suppose it were a great folye
 that folkes should in their opinion
 Speake or pronounce al on one partie
 Or hold one way in their intencion:
 For semblably as there is a diuision
 Of corages, in high or lowe degre,
 so is there truly a great diuersite

In reherfale or repoire of a thing,
 for to his party eche man is fauourable.

Some

The first

Some man can say wel in his rehearsing,
Some mā is double & some mā dissauable,
Some men say trewe, & some be variable,
wherefore a prince, of right as it doth seme,
Should wel examine afoze, oꝝ that he deme

For there is none more dreadfull pestilence
Than a tonge that can flattere and sage,
For with his cursed crabbed violence
he infecteth folke of euery maner age.
Woe to tonges, frowarde of their lāgage
and woe to tonges false furious & wode
which of no persone can say good.

Bochas reherseth it is right wele sittinge
that euery man othet doe cominende,
And say the best alwaye in reporting,
For in wele saying may no man offende.
Where mē say wele god wol his grace send
after men be, men muste the pꝛince vꝛeysse
Like their merites alowe them oꝝ despise

But where a thing is bitterlye vnknowe,
Let no man there be hasty of sentence,
For rightfūl iudges sitting on a rowe,
of their wisdom and of their high pꝛudēce
wil of truth haue first some euidence,
I meane such as gouerned be by grace,
Oꝝ any dome forth by their lippes pace.

A pꝛince should assemble thinges twelue,
within him selfe full pꝛudently,
Shet by his domes bitwix lockes twelue
One of the soule, reason for that partye.
Pꝛudence chose out and ryght for þ body,
and betwene both oꝝ he gaue a sentence,
To counsaile cal, truth and good consciēce

first to consider with euery circumstance
Diligently done theron his labour,
Of discrecion to take the balance,
and first wey out who is the accusoure,
And whether that he for falsnesse oꝝ fauour
in his processe list for to procede,
Hereof a pꝛince must of right take hede.

He must also consider by and by
what that he is, which to him is accused,
And whether þ accusour be frend oꝝ enemy,
oꝝ whether he shal been accepted oꝝ refused

In his accuse he must afoze be mused,
and whether he be by report of his name
A man wel noysed oꝝ flaundꝛed by defame

If Theseus had been thus aused,
and considered of reason the manere,
He had not so hastily deuised
his sonnes death, like as ye shal here.
For if there had assembled be in fere,
in his persone pꝛudence and reason,
He should haue sent in his discrecion

By knowleging of long experience,
of his wife the great vnkedfastnesse (quēce
which through her froward cōpassing elow
was redy euer to byng folke in distresse
And in his wyting Bochas bereth witnesse
of their nature, women can flatter and sage
And be sometime to copious of langage,

Also of wisdom this Duke Theseus
Should haue considered afoze in his entent
Howe that his sonne called Hippolitus,
of all vncienes was found aye innocent.
And how that he of custome made his went
into forrestes during his yong age,
To hunte at beastes which þ were sauage

Renning on fote as ye shal vnderstand,
on hilles, valeys reschewen idelnesse,
Mother of vires with his bowe in hand,
Diane to serue, of hunting chief goddesse
Sometime to hauke he dyd his besinesse
Eke vnto fishing he greatly was applyed
So that his yowth was neuer vnoctupted

Thus he lyued in wodes solitary,
and of venus despised the seruise
Among women he would neuer tary,
their felowship he did euer despise
for he demt by sentence of the wise,
who toucheth pytch by assay men may se
It sayleth not, he shal defouled be.

Hippolitus sawe well this thing afoze,
kept hym at large from such contrarioussie
His grene yowth he would not haue it lose
to be defouled for lacke of chastitie
for he liued euer in virginittie,
And neuer dyd (Bochas wyl not barpe.)

Nothing that was to God contrary.

Thus of entent he kept his body cleane,
During hys life both in thought and dede:
Whose mother was Hyppolita the quene
Of Amazonas, in Quibe ye may rede:
But woe alas that Theseus toke hede,
For a tale of Phedra ful of gyle,
Without gyle his sonne to cyle.

After whose death some Poetes sayn,
Howe that Diana for his chastitie,
Restored him vnto life agayn,
By Esculapius, and gaue him libertie,
In her forestes to hunt and goe free:
For which restoring as wyte Quidius,
As wise a man, men call him Virbius.

But Bochas here I not what he doth mene
Maketh in his booke an exclamation,
Ayeins women, that pietie is to scene,
Seith how their life, their generacion,
Been of nature double of condicion,
and calleth them eke diuers and vnstable,
Beastes resembling that been insatiabie,

He meneth of women þ ben bozne in Crete,
and nothing of the that dwel in this cuntry
for women here al doublenes they lete,
and haue no tatche of mutabilitie,
They loue no chaunges ne no duplictie,
for their husbondes in causes smal of grete
whatsoeuer they say, they canot counterplete

Blessed be God þ hath them made so meke,
So humble and fearefull of their condicions
for though men would causes & matter seke
Ayeins their patience to fynd occasions,
They haue refused al contradictions,
and the submitted thow their gouernance,
onely to mekenes and womanly suffraunce.

I speake of al, I speake not of one,
that been professed vnto lowlines, (none
thei mai haue mouthes, but lagage haue thei
al true husbondes can beare he of witnes,
for wedded men I dare right well expresse,
That haue assayed and had experience,
Well can recozd of wifly patience.

For as it longeth to men to be surdy,

And sumwhat froward as of their nature,
right so can women suffer patiently,
and all wronges humbly endure,
When should attempt no maner creature,
& namely weme their mekenes for to proue
which may wel suffer while no man doe the
(greue

Euery thing resozterh to his kind,
as Bochas wytteth sometime of the pere,
and yet who seareth, by proces he shal fynd
that truth & vertue may neuer fade of chere
for rightwisenes wil alway shine clere,
truth & falsenes in what they haue to done,
they may no while assemble in one persons

Fayth and flattery they been so contrary,
they may together hold no colour,
For simples which that cannot vary,
May neuer accord with a baratour.
Neither innocence with a losengour,
Neither chastitie cannot her self apply,
Her to confourme vnto no ribaudye,

Craft and nature sue the profession,
By the ordinaunce set in their courage,
And eche foloweth his condicion,
as of the stocke the fruite hath hys tarrage:
pilgrimes may go ful ferre in their passage
But I dare say, how farre that euer they go
there biueth some tarrage of þ they cam fro

Bochas maketh an introduction,
In this Chapitle, of the high noblesse
That princes haue in their possession,
and by a maner laughing doth expresse,
How for to set them in great sikernes:
Thei haue sarkantes vpon them abiding,
And me of armes day and night awaiting.

That no mā may entre but if he haue lifce
the froward porters stonding at gate,
But men abacke by surdy violence,
It wer ful hard ayeins them to debate,
thei watches kept early and eke late,
& the to assure on nightes when they slepe;
the chamberleines the dores strictly kepe.

When assigned their meates to assay,
to tast thei wyne lest there wer treason,
Such mortal drede these lordes doe assay,
So is their surenes meint with suspicion,

The first

Who feareth him gladly & feareth him of poore
but poore folke franchised from such dyede
with such as god sent, merely they the fede.

But Poetes that wryten tragedies,
Their compleyning is al of high estates,
Rehearsing euer the piteous seoperdies,
Their sodain chaunges & their woful fates,
their deuisions, and their mortall debates,
and aye conclude their dittes who can rede,
High estates stond aye most in dyede.

And ground & roote of al this mortall trouble
as Bochas wyreth and beareth witnes,
Been these lters, with their tonges double,
Themself aye forsing truth to oppresse,
with whom flattery is a chief maistresse.
And worst of al to their dyedeful sentence,
Is when princes been hasty of credence.

Hasty credence is roote of all errour,
A froward stepmother of all good counsaile
ground of gret hindring, a dyedful disseuer
fairest of face with a ful perilous taylor,
Gladly concluding with ful gret disauayle,
Next neighbour vnto repentaunce,
to all that trust and haue in her pleasaunce.

C Lenuoye

Princes considereth howe in euery age,
folkes been diuers of their condicion
to plye & turne, & change in their corage
Yet is there none to mine opinson,
so dyedeful chaunge ne transmutacion,
as chaunge of princes to yeeue a iudgement
O; hasty credence without ayssement.

It is well found a passing great damage,
known and expert in euery region,
though a tale haue a fayre visage,
It may include ful great decepcion,
hid vader sugar gail and fell poyson,
with a freche face of double entendment,
yet prueeth no credence without ayssement

Let folkes al beware of their language,
Kepe their tonges from obloquion
To hindre or hurt by no maner outrage,
Preserue their lippes from al detraction,

from champertie and contradiction,
for lest that fraude wer solid in their intet,
Be yeeue no credence without ayssement,

Princes princesses of noble & hygh parage,
Which haue lordship and dominacion.
Voyde them asyde that can flatter & sage,
fro tonges that haue a sarage of treason,
Stop your eares from theyr bitter soun,
Be circumspect, not hasty, but prudent,
And yeeue no credence without ayssement.

Of quene Althea, and howe Hercules by
women was brought to confuson.

The. xiiii. Chapter.

Han Bochas had shewed his seten
And declared his opinion,
A yemil them that wer
hasty of credence,

He gan anon to make a digression
fro that matter, and of intencion
to searche out moe, his purpose to contune,
That wer down cast and hindred by fortune

And as him thought he saw a companie
Of many woorthie, which to him did appere
and among al, first he did espye
Quene Althea, as she gan nigh han nere,
All bedewed her face and eke her chere
with salt teares, that piete was to sene,
which whilom was of Calidony quene.

She was the daughter of king Thestius,
wedded to Dene, of Calidony kyng,
Of chere and face appearing full piteous,
Her heere to tozne, and frowardly liggung,
and in token also of compleyning,
as wyreth bochas, wherof he toke good hede
blacke was her habite, & al to rent her wede

A sonne she had, Meleager he hight,
In earth was there none fayrer to see,
Right wel fauoured in euery mans sight,
And as I fynd at his natuiter,
Present wer the fatal luster thre,
with their rockes, and gan for to spyn fast;
and toke a byond, and into fyre it cast.

And in that houre this was their language
Touching

Teaching this child we full accorded be,
and haue dysposed the terme eke of hys age,
The space concluded of his destinee,
as long time whoso list to see,
Till this bzond among the coles read,
Be full consumed into ashes dead.

But when Althea espyed their intent,
and conceiued the fine of their sentence,
She rose her bp. and the bzond she hent
Out of the fyre, with ful great diligence,
Quenched anon the fyres violence,
The dome of Parcas she gan thus disobey,
The bzond reseruing vnder locke and key.

Couching the father of this Meleager,
Deneus of him thus doe I rede,
How that he went and sought nygh a ferre
Goddess & Goddesse, whoso list take hede,
In hope onely for to haue great mede,
For to them all Portes thus deuise,
saue to Diana he did sacrifice.

Wherof she caught an indignacion,
Cast she would on him attenged be,
Sent a boze into his region
ful sauage, and ful of crueltie,
Which deuoured the fruite of many a tree,
And destroyed his cornes and his vines,
That such scarlnes of vitayles & of wines

Was in his lond vpon euery syde,
That the people of necessitie
Compelled wet, among them to prouyde
some meane waye to saue theyr countree,
And at the last they condescended be,
That Meleager, lusty of his courage,
Shuld chese to him folke fresh & yong of age

This dredeful boze mightely to enchace,
and surth they wēt, echone deuorde of drede,
with round speres they gan him to manace
But Meleager made fyrst his sydes read,
And with a sword than smote of his head,
wherof the countrey was both glad & sayn,
and in this wise the tushy boze was slayn.

And some bookes tel of this hunting,
That a lady which that was bozne in Arge
Called Alalanta, daughter to the kyng,

To lea this boze, toke on her the charge,
And with an arrow made hys wound large,
Eke in Quide, like as it is founde,
Because that she gaue the fyrst wound.

Meleager anon for a memozye,
(as he that was her own chosen knight)
Gaue her the head in token of this victozy,
But his tweyn vnckles ayeinst al shal & right
Rast her the head of very forte and myght,
Hauing despite that she in her auice
Of this victozy, shoulde beare away þ pyce.

With which iniurie Meleager was wroth,
Ayeinst them prouedly gan disdeyne
Pulled out a sword, & vpon them he goeth
and throug his manhod slough his vnckles
and after that did his besy peyn
To take the hed, & with ful humble entent
to Alalante, agayn it to present.

One of his vnckles was called cleippus,
a manly knight, & but yong of age,
That other brother named Corcus:
But when their suster hearde of þ outrage,
how they wer slayn, she gan in her vilage
were dead and pale (alas) for lacke of blodz
when she espyed the cause how it stode.

She had no matter (god wot) to be sayn,
Quene Althea to standen and beholde,
Her brethzen tweyn, of her sonne slayn,
At the hunting of which tofore I tolde,
Fyrst thinges tweyn she gan peise & vnfold
Of her brethern the loue and nigh kynred,
and of her sonne the hasty cruel dede.

And remembryng she casteth in balaunce
Of hertly woe, that she did endure,
thought if she did vpd their deith vengance,
to lea her sonne, it wer ayeinst nature,
Thus in a werre long time she did endure,
Her deadly sorowe peyning euery dell,
whether she shal be sende or cruell.

Thus tender I meane, her son for to spare
Or punish the death of her brethzen tweyn,
Thus cōmfortles, al destitute and bare
In languishing she endured furth her peyn
and remedy can she none other ordeyn,

Saue

The first

Shall sayn she would avenge her if she may
But then came nature again and sayd nay.

It was her sonne against al kindly right,
Of whom she cast avenged for to be,
To women al an ougly strange sight,
That a mother deuoyde of al piete,
Should slay her child so mercesles pardie:
Nay nay not so, nature will not sent,
For if she did, ful soze she should repent.

But o (alas) all fatall puruepaunce
Kepeth his course as some clerkes sayne,
But the w. yting of doctours in substaunce
And these diuines reply there agayn,
and affyrme the opinion is in bayne,
of them that trust of fate or destiny,
For god aboute hath the soueraintie.

And of fortune the power may restrayne,
To saue and spill like as folk deserue,
Against his will they may nothing ordeyn
of necessity what course that they deserue,
But this matter al wholy I reserue
Unto diuines, to termine and conclude,
which apperteyneth to no folkes rude.

But Althea of Calidonye quene,
gan soze muse and henge in a balaunce
Her brethren dead when she dyd them seen,
than was she moued anon to doe vengeance
Upon her sonne, by full great displeaunce:
But as Poetes list for to compyle,
nature made her withdraw her had a while.

Thus atwoene yre and twene affection,
She held her long on neither partie stable,
Till that she caught in her opinion
a sodain racour, which made her be begable
and harty wrath whiche is not commendable
against her sonne, made her with her honde
out of her chist to take the fatall bond.

And so deynly she cast it in the fyre,
And wored cruel against al womanhede.
To execute her benemous desyre,
The fatall bond among the flames dedde,
consumed was into ashes dedde,
And furiously in her melancoly,
the vengeance done thus she gan to crye,

O ye Parcas froward sisters thre,
Which of Ioue kepe the librarie,
And of children at their natiuitie,
waite his sentence which that may not vary,
where so it be weleful or contrary,
Upon his domes takyng alway hede
Howe that ye shall dispose the fatall threde

Thou Cloto first takest thy rocke on hande
And Lachesis after doth beginne
by great auisse, who can vnderstande,
The threde and length to drawe & to spin
But when the spirite shal from þ body twyn
Thou Atropos doest thy cruell peyne
ful frowardly to parte the threde in twene

I may well playne on such departicion
Not for o day, but (wo alas) for euer,
ye haue vntwyned and made deuision
Of my two brethren & caused them disseuer
That here on liue I shall see them neuer,
And I of haile, (alas why dyd I so)
tauenge their death haue slain my son also

O ye thre daughters of Erebus the felle
whose ougly modze was the blacke nighte,
And al your kynred and lynage lyeth in hel
And for to auenge þ wrong & great vnrighthe
which that I haue accomplisid in your sight
I will with you perpetually complayne
Like my desert endure sozowe and payne

And while she gan with hir self thus crye
Upon hir sozowes that were endles
She made a swerde through her hert crye
Of her lyfe here she was so recheles,
And Bochas after among all the prees
sawe as him thought id a ful hidious chere
Dead of vislage Hercules appere

whose father was Jupiter the grete,
His moder daughter of kyng Amphitrion
Called Alcmena, whylom borne in Crete,
And as poetes tehercen one by one
So excellent was there neuer none
To speke of conquest, of victorie, & of fame,
Here in this world that had so great a name

Dreadfull of loke he was and right terrible
His berd eke black which hege full lowd
And

and al his heere as bzilles wer horrible,
His robe also ful merueilous of facion,
was of the skinne of a feers Lion,
which from his backe of very force he rent;
within a forest alone whan he went.

In his hande he bare a mace of stele,
which to behold was wonder large & huge,
by apparence as Bochas felt wele,
Dempt of reason as a rightfull iudge
that Hercules had to his refuge
wisedom with force, for to encrease his name
All bralles wilde for to make them tame.

And vnto Bochas he gan loude crye,
take right good hede for it is no fable,
For my merites to speake of chualrie
And noble triumphes, am most comendable
to be preferred most worthy and most able,
which haue accomplished al that may excel
through high prowesse & any tong can tell.

Eke of my birth in heauen full yore ago,
fully conceiued my constellation,
mighty Ioue sayd vnto Iuno,
On such a day in such a region
one shall be borne, most mighty of renown,
noblest of nobles both in warre and peas,
of whom the name shalbe Hercules.

The whiche dome whan Iuno vnderstode
of Jupiter conceiuyng the entent,
and knew my fate shoulde be so good,
To Lucina her messenger she sent:
but some saine how down her self she wente
to this goddes, goddes of chyldeyng,
and her besought to graunt her her asking

That she would from Hercules translate
the influence of his natiuite,
help to truerse his fame and eke his fate,
And graunt it wholly to young Euryshee
and that Lucina present would be,
the same houre by Jupiter prouided,
it to possede all whole and vndeuided.

Thus to the mother of Euryshee,
Iuno the goddes graunted her fauour,
therby disposyng that he shoulde be
Mighty of puissance, like an Emperoure:

but of his noblesse the conquest and labour
and of his manhode the prowesse & pursure
by Hercules was fully execute.

This Hercules had the trauaile,
and Eurysheus bare away the name,
Eke Hercules faught in plate and mayle,
And high empyres proudly dyd attaine:
but the report of his noble fame
to Eurysheus fully was finally aserued,
thus of his thanke was Hercules depriued.

Full oft in armes some man doth ful wele,
and oft causeth that the field is wonne
and of another that dyd neuer adele,
the price out spredeth like as Mineth & Sune:
and oft it happeneth, & he & best hath runne
doth not the spere like his desert possede,
wher false fauor yeueth euery mā his mede

fame in her palace hath trapes mo thā one,
some of gold that yeueth a full freshe sounne
some man hath laude that deserueth none;
And some haue ben full woorthye of rethourne
nothyng preferred by commendacion,
as by reposites of states high and lowe,
so frowardly fame his trumpe hath blowe.

Touchyng armes the poore ne the ryche
ben not eche one of heart couragious,
For all men may not be pliche,
For of their name egal ne gracious:
and though the poore haue ben victorions
of auenture to doe full wel some daye,
other haue pinched to take his thanke awaie

One sleeth the dere with an hoked arrowe,
whose part is none yet of the benison,
one beateth the bush, another hath & sparow
And al the byrdes in his possession:
one draweth his nettes in riuers by & doun
with sundry baites cast out line and hooke,
and hath no part of all that euer he toke.

An euidence hereof ye may see,
ful notable to be put in memozy,
of Hercules and of Euryshee,
for Hercules gate aye the victozye,
And Eurysheus receiued hath the glozye
thus their palme parted was in tweyne

The fyrste

the one reioysed the other bare the payne.

Curistheus was a prince of Athene,
sonne and heyre by discent of line
vnto the king, that called was Sthenelene
Under whose might as Bochas dothe ter-
Hercules throw knightly discipline (mine
prouided so most manly and most wise,
that from all other he bare away the pryse.

But wo (alas) that euer it should fall.
so manly a knight, so noble and notable,
that any spot should his pryce appalle,
Or cause his courage for to be vnstable,
which is a thing dolefull and lamentable,
fro his knighthode, which is a thig to strage
that euer a woman should his hert change.

I will excuse them because they nature
is to chaungen heartes and courages,
apeynt their power no force may endure,
for their flattery and sugred faire langages
like Sirens fresh of their visages,
so, to enchaunge of princes the nobles
more than Hercules can bere herof witnes,

Thus Hercules astounded and ashamed,
vnto Bochas shewed his presence,
sayd alas, my knighthode is defamed,
By a full false amorous pestilence,
so sore constreyned by mortall violence
wherby, alas, my manhode was applyed,
By sleight of women oppressed & maystred.

To take their habite and clothe me in their
to there my beard & farce my visage (webe
with oymntes apeynt all manhede,
To make it souple and change my langage
and to complaine more of mine outrage,
vpon my fingers fwe twise tolde,
I had ringes richely wrought of golde.

Thus was my courage changed feminine
for loue of one called Iole,
of condicions though she wer serpentine
He thought she was fayrest vpon to see,
that all my ioye was with her to be,
and that none should apereceue my trespas
I chaunged both habite, loke, and face,

And was a woman outward in apparence,
of entent to haue more libertie,
to vse my lustes and haue experience
Of appetites, which that vnlesfull be,
wherof the flaunder reboundeth vnto me,
that I dare say, my outrageous trespas
doth al my knighthode and prowesse deface

wherof (or Bochas) I pray the take good hede
for to deserue in termes plaine and clere
mine infortune, like as it was in dede,
That when other conceiue the matter
of mine unhappes, contagious for to here,
they may by example of me doe their payne
from vicious life their heartes to restraine.

For these folles that all wisdom despyse,
and been contrary to vertuous discipline,
may yue example to folkes that been wise
And been to them a lanterne of doctrine,
vices to eschew and prudently decline
fro fleshly lustes, for it is taught in scholes
that wise men been alday ware by foolles.

When Bochas had conceiued the completnt
of Hercules, in his appearng,
and how his nobles by women was atteint
Through his pituous disordinate liuing,
he thought anone himself remembryng
it had be ruth for to haue put in minde
his vices all, and vertues left behynde.

Considered also it was impertinent,
other by langage to write apeynt all right,
and thyng that should in sentment,
the same Amenuse of so noble a knyght
or to deserues in any mans sight: (warres
his glorious prowesse, syth Boetes for his
reue his renoune so high aboute the sterres.

For he was bothe knight and philosopher
and for his strength called a Geant,
for comon profit he proudly gan eke profer,
Of manly courage yue thereto full graunt
to enter into Egypt, to slep there the tyraunt
Called Busiris, of full false entent,
slough al straungers & throw his kingdow wnt

for vnder a colour of liberalitie,
vnto his palace he gladly would call
Strangers

Strangers echone þ cam thow his countrey,
and solemnely receiue them one and all,
and like a kyng bothe in chamber and hall,
make them such chere in all maner thyng,
as appertained vnto a worthy kyng.

But while his gesses lay a nyght and slepe
this false traitour in full cruell wyse,
murdered them echone or they toke kepe,
And after that, this was eke his guile,
with their bloude to make a sacrifice
to Iupiter, god of that countrey,
of whole entent to please his deitie,

That in his kyngdom of frutes and grayn
the londe encreased by great haboundance
down from heauen he would send the raine,
This mene he made & this false cheusauce
to murther & sleie he had so great pleasance
for all thyng him thought it did hym good,
to slea strangers and to shedde their blood

But whā this murder of Busiris was couth
that no stranger might passe his lōd in pees
this manly knight yet flowing in his youth
this noble famous, this worthy Hercules,
amonges other he put himself in pees,
and like a guest outward in shewing,
came to the pales of Busiris the kyng.

Rebuked hym of his great outrage
done to his gesses by cruell violence,
and for to make peassible that passage,
and for rauenge his importable offence,
and of his murther to make a recompence,
this Hercules slough Busiris in dede,
and toke the bloude which he did blede.

Offered it by Iupiter to please,
for this victorie him to magnifye,
and all Egypt thus was set in ease,
Their lōdes, their frutes, gan also multiply
their grayn encrease about on eche partie,
and to habounde by influence of rayne,
which afore time of vitaille was barayne.

Another Giant called Antheus,
kyng of Libie, and gouerned all that londe:
whō Hercules most strong & most coragious
whilom outraide & slough him to his hond,

for as they wassted by experience he sonde
touching the earth, this Giant it is true,
his force, his might did alway renew.

But whan Hercules the maner dyd espye
how his strength, renewed ayein so oft,
therayein he shope a remedy,
Hye in the ayre he raysed him by a loft
and with his armes hard and nothyng soft,
backe and bone so sore he did embrace,
that he fyll dead tofore him in that place.

But some booke of this Giant tell,
within his kingdom who dyd hym assaile,
he would of new his chualtrie compell,
Est ayein to mete hym in battaille:
and in this wyse ful seeld he dyd fayle
to asoyce of new, as folke shall vnderstonde
his strength, his might, al enemies to wōd

But Hercules of high discrecion,
the field on hym manly to recure,
had hym by sleight out of his region,
And as they met there of auenture
the said Antheus myght not endure;
but was discomfited by Hercules anon,
mauger his might, he and his men echone.

After this conquest Hercules is gone,
for exercise, his prowes for to vse
ayein the mighty strong Geryon
kyng of Spayne, of Balears and Ebuse,
the which tirant might hym not excuse,
that all his labour as Doctes do compile
was from these realmes his people to exile.

His tyranny might not long endure,
for Hercules that noble worthy knyght
made vpon hym a great discomfiture,
And slough þ tirant as thei mette in fight:
and after that through his great might
of high prowes and magnanimitie,
slough Cerberus with his heades thre.

The famous bull of the lond of Crete,
which that destroyed all that region,
he slough also whan they dyd mete,
And in Aemea he slough a farse Lion:
and for a retoyde of his high renown,
Of manly force his skin away he toke,

The fyrste

And to his body a coate therof he chose.

To al his ennies to shew him more dreadfull
therfore he wore that hideous garmente,
and for in armes he neuer was found dull,
But euer ylike fresh in his entent,
into a mountaine anon he made his went
called Crimanthus, and there in his passage
he slough a boxe most wild & most savage.

Beside a riuer called Stymphalus,
of furious briddes he slough a great number,
within the kyngdom of kyng Isthneus,
All the countrey for they dyd encomber,
for which they shadow & contagious vmbre
on sede, on frutes, where euer they alyghte,
all was deuoured in euery mannes syght.

Upon the mountayne called Iuentine
whiche is not farre fro Rome the cite,
there is a wood as cronicles determyne,
Right fresh of syght, and goodly on to see:
and Hercules passyng by that countrey
fro spaynewarde goyng by Italie,
Cacus the Eliaunt dyd hym there assaile.

While Hercules among the leues grene
layde hym to slepe of sodein auenture
and his beastes ayeins the sonne shene
While that he slept, went in theyr pasture,
came Cacus forth ful hideous of stature,
thought he wold these beastes to him haue
Nale them echone and byd them in a caue

And lyke a thefe, he made the go backwarde
that no man should the traces of the know
For of theyr passage haue no rewarde
for by theyr taples he led them on a rowe
into his caue which that stode ful lowe,
and for they wer of excellent fayrenes,
to kepe them close he dyd his busynes.

Out of his slepe whan Hercules awoke,
and apperceyued his oxen wer away,
he rose hym vp and kest about his loke.
Gan to espye in all the hault he may,
to what partie the traces of them laye,
and while he stode thus musing in y shade
herd the lowyng that his oxen made.

And by theyr lowyng he gan anon approche,

toward the partie where they wer kept full
sonde the caue vnder a mighty roche (close
And proud Cacus which had the in depose,
ayeins Hercules he sturdely arose:
but for all that he might not hymselfe saue
for he him slough at the entry of the caue.

And thus his beastes he hath ayein recured
that seemed afore irrecuperable,
after the moztain by force he hath assured,
which for brigantes afore was ful doutable
but by his knighthode it was made habita-
that men might for drede of any foe (ble,
whan euer they would frely come and goe.

Touchyng his conquest vpon feminine,
ayeins Amazones with Theseus he wente,
the quene Hippolyta throug his chualtre,
for his pray anon to hym he hent:
and Hippolyta of full true entent,
yaued vnto hym in token of victorie,
of golde a gyrdle to haue her in memozy.

After to Affrik he went a full great pace,
onely of purpose the garden for to see,
which apperteyned to the kyng Atlas,
That brother was to kyng Prometheus
in astrologie full well expert was he,
& in this garden of which I haue you told,
the rich braunches and apples wer of gold.

Throug magik made by great auisement,
full streite kept and closed enuiron,
And I watched with a fell serpent
That no man entred that riche mansion:
but Hercules most mighty of renown,
the serpent slough throug his many pursute
and fro the garden he bare away the frute.

This sayd Atlas as booke specifye,
and Poetes eke of him endite,
he was full cunnyng in Astronomie,
And therein dyd full greatly hym delite:
and many a boke he made and dyd write
with great labour and great diligence,
in his tyme vpon that science.

The which wer more pfectious than golde,
and more riche in his opinton,
but Hercules in soth as it is tolde

Got al the bokes thzough his high renoun,
bare them by force out of that region;
and into Grece like a conquerour,
with him he brought for a great treasure.

Of Thace he slough the tirant outrageous
that was called whylom Diomedé,
which murdered al that came into his house,
And with theyr flesh his horse he dyd fede;
and thzough his witte, labour, and manhede
of Achelous which was a great wonder,
he made the steames for to depart asunder.

And by his wisedom dyd them so deuyde,
in two parties disseuering his passage,
for tofore tyme no man might abyde,
Of his course, the furious fell outrage,
for in countreys it did so great damage,
turning bpward, there was none other bote
where it flowed of trees crop and rote.

A great emprise he dyd eke undertake,
whan that the mees hideous and horryble
arrived bp of Archadie in the lake
called Lerna, the beastes full odible,
which w their teeth & mouthes ful terrible,
frut grain, and corne did mortally deuour,
but Hercules the countrey to succour,

Came like a knight theyr malice for to let,
& by his prudence destroyed the euerychone
within the lake the woymes bp he shet,
Saue among al behynd was left one,
and ayenst him this Hercules anon,
of knighthode caught so great auantage
that to the countrey he dyd no moze damage.

Thus al that euer may reherfed be,
touching knighthode, pzwesse, or prudence
glorious fame, or long felicitie,
This knightly man had most excellence,
and in armes longest experien ce,
for his triumphes and actes marciall
set bp pillars for a memorfall.

Which remebzed his conquestes most nota-
and his dedes by grauing did expresse (ble
beynd which no lond is habitable,
So farre abroad spred his high nobles;
but as the sunne leseth his brightnes,

Some while tohā he is freshest in his sphere
with vnware cloudes that sodeinly appere

Semblably the noblesse and the glozy
of Hercules, in this vnstable lyfe,
Eclipsed was, and shadowed his memory
by Deianira that whylom was his wife,
for by her fraude came in mortall stryfe,
as ye shall here the maner and the case,
whereby that he lost his lyfe (alas.)

Yet for her sake this most manly man
fought, as I fynde in singuler battayle
with Achelous sonne of the Ocean,
Like as Poetes make rehearse:—
and as eche other proudly dyd assayle,
this Hercules of knighthode soueraine
rent from his head one of his hornes twain

Of king Deneus she was þ doughter dere
to Hercules toynd in marriage,
and as they came to a great riuer
with surdy waues, where was no passage,
Nessus the Giant ougly of visage,
to Hercules proffred his seruice,
and full falsely ayenst him gan deuisse.

Made his pzwomes to Hercules in dede,
to put his lyfe in great auenture,
ouer the streame Deianira to lede.
Because he was large of his stature:
and for she was a ryght fayre creature,
whan they wer passed and pzwome to londe,
Nessus falsely would vpon the stonde.

Haue know her fleschly like as wyte Quid
Hercules haupng therof a syght,
as he abode vpon the other syde,
And for tauenge him of his great vnryght,
toke his bowe and bent it anone right,
and with an arrow filed sharpe and ground
yaue to Nessus his deadly fatal wounde.

Like a conduit gushed out the bloude,
and whan he saw that he must dye,
to Deianira tofore hym there she stode
with al his heart her he gan to pray,
that in one thyng his lust she would obey:
to take his shert and be not recheles
with bloude disseined and send it Hercules.

The fyrste

Therwith to hym to be reconciled,
and the the Myrte to hym anon hath sente,
through whose benim (alas) he was begyled
for what by touchyng & what by enchant-
his flesh, his bones, furiously wer bryt (met
and among his deadly paines all,
into a rage he suddenly is fall.

And as a beast furiously he ran
on vales, hilles, among the craggy stones,
semblably as doth a wood man
pulled by trees and rootes all at once,
brake beastes hornes and all to gnew their
was it not pittie þ a knyght so good (bones
shoulde among beastes ren sauage & wood:

Thus overwhelmed was al his worthines,
and to decline went his prosperitie,
and cause and roote of all his wretchednes
Was for that he set his felicitie,
to trust so much the mutabilitie
of these women, which early, late, and sone
of they nature bryde vpon the mone.

Alas, alas, all noblesse and prudence,
prowesse of armes, force and chivalrye,
foresyght of wisdom, discrecion, & science,
Vertuous study profayning in clergye:
and the clere Mynyng of philosophy
hath throw false lusses be here afore mana-
by sleight of women derked & defaced, (ced

O Hercules, my penne I fele quake,
mine ynke fulfilled of bitter teres salt,
this piteous tragedy to write for thy sake,
whom al Poetes glorify and exalt,
but fraud of women made thy renown halt
& frowarde muses thy triumphes al to rend
for to descriue (alas) thy farall ende.

¶ Lenuoye.

The sote venim, the sauey false popson,
the dzedfull ioy, the dolorous pleasaunce,
the woful gladnes with furious reason,
fayth dispayred aye stable in variaunce
vertue exiling where lust hath gouernance
through false luxury diffacen all noblesse
as this tragedy can beare ful wel witnes.

Where froward venus hath dominacion,
and blynd Cupide his subiectes doth auace
and wilfull luste through indiscrecion,

Is chosen iudge to hold þ balaunce (chaunce
they chose vnleful hath through vnhappy
darked of princes the famous high nobles,
as this tragedy bereth full well witnes:

O thou Hercules for all thy high renoune,
for al thy conquest and knightly suffiaunce
thou wer throw women brought to cofusion
& throw their fraud thy renowned puifface
dislaundred was & brought vnto mischance:
I wer ashamed to write it or expresse, (nes,
except this tragedy can beare me wel wit-

Princes princesses of high discrecion,
this thing emprinted in your remembrance
of others fallyng make your proteccion,
you to preserve throw prudent purueiance,
afore prouided that your perseuerance,
be not perturbed by no false sojrecelle
as this tragedy of other beareth witness.
¶ A proces of Narcissus, Biblis, Mirrha,
and of other they infortunes, to Bochas
complaining. The .xv. Chapter.

Narcissus, Biblis, and Mirrha, all they
tofore Bochas piteously dyd appere
they infortunes, they infelicitie,
to hym complaining with a deadly there:
and of they comyng to tell the manere
Narcissus fyrst with sorow and dole atteint
began fyrst of all declare his compleynt,

He was sonne of Cepheus the floud,
and his mother called Liriope,
and by descent borne of gentle bloud
Of creatures sayest on to see:
and as I fynd at his natiuitie,
Cresias by spirit of prophecy,
touchyng his fate thus gan specify.

The goddes haue prouided him a space
to liue in earth, and so long endure,
tyll that he know and see his own face,
And for his sake full many creature,
by ordinaunce of god and of nature,
whan they hym see shal fele full great paine,
if they in loue his grace may not attaine.

But he shalbe contrary and dangerous,
and of his port full of straungenes,
and in his heart right inly surquedous,

By the occasion of his natife fayzenes,
and presumyng of his semelnes,
shal thike no womā so fresh ne faire of face
that able wer to stonden in his grace.

And for the excellence of his great beautie,
he hym purposed in his tender age
neuer in his lyfe wedded for to be,
he thought hymself so fayre of visage:
for which he cast hi throw his gret outrage,
ayenst all lustes of loue to disdayne,
to hunt at beastes alone and be solayne.

And in this whyle that he kept hym so,
in forest and in wildernes,
a water goddes that called was Echo,
Leued hym full hote for his great fayzenes,
and sickerly dyd her busines
to folow his steppes right as any lyne,
to her desyres to make hym to encline.

He heard her wele, but he saw her not,
wherof astounded he gan anon temquere,
as he that was amercueyled in his thought,
Saide euen thus, is any wight now here?
and she answered the same in her manere
what euer he sayd as longeth to Echo,
withouth abode, she sayd the same also,

Come nere quod he and began to call,
come nere quod she my toy & my pleasaunce
he loked about among the rockes all,
And saw nothyng besyde ne in distaunce:
but she abayde declaryng her greuaunce,
and to hym sayd, mine owne hert dere,
ne be not straunge but let vs dwell yfere.

May nay (quod he) I woll nothyng obey,
to your desires for short conclusion,
for leuer I had plainly for to dey,
Than ye should haue of me possession:
we be nothyng of one opinion,
I here you well though I no figure see.
go forth your way & speake no more to me.

And she ashamed, fled her way anone
as she that might of hym no succour haue,
but dispeired, this Echo is forth gone,
And hyd her selfe in an ougly caue
among the rockes is buried in her graue,

and though so be I ment her bovee may here
after that tyme she neuer durst appere.

And thus Narcissus throw dāger & disdain
vpon this Lady dyd cruelly vengeaunce,
but whan the goddes his crueltye had seyn
towards hym, they fill in great greuaunce
Of his vnniercy they had displeasaunce,
and right as he merceles was founde,
so with vnniercy he caught his deadly wound

for al daunger displeaseth to Venus,
and al disdayne is lothsome to Cupide,
for who to loue is contrarious,
The god of loue wil quite him on some side
his dyedfull arrowes so mortally deuode,
to hurt and mayme all that been reches
and in his seruice found merceles.

And for Narcissus was not mercriable,
toward Echo for his great beautie,
but in his port was founde vntreatable,
Cupide thought he would auenged be,
as he that heard her prayer of pitie,
causing Narcissus to sele & to haue his part
of Venus bronde and of her fyre dart.

And on a day whan he in wildernes,
had after beastes runne in huntynge,
and for long labour gan fall in weyning,
He was desirous to haue some refrechynge,
and thurstle after trauaylyng,
might not endure lenger there to dwell,
and at the last he fond a chystall well.

Right fresh spryngyng & wonder agreable,
the water lusty and delectable of syght,
and for his thurst was vnto him importable
vpon the bynkes he fyll down anon right,
and by refleccion mid of the water bryght,
him thought he saw a passing fayre ymage
to hym appere most angelike of visage.

He was enamored with the semelnes,
and despyous therof to stonde in grace,
and yet it was not but a likenes,
And but a shadow reflectyng of his face:
the which of feruence amercously to embrace
this Narcissus with a piteous compleint,
stert into the well and himself dreint.

And

The fyrste

And thus his beautie (alas was layd low,) his semelines put full farre abacke, thus whan that he ga first himself to know & see his visage in which there was no lack Presumptuous pride caused all to go to wrack for who to much doth of himself presume, his own blurpyng wil sonest him consume.

And finally as these Poetes tell, this Narcissus without more succour, after that he was drowned at the well, The heavenly goddesses dyd him this fauour, they turned hym into a freshe floure, a water lilly which doth remedye in hote accessess as bokes specify.

After Narcissus was at the well dyent, and to John Bochas declared had his woe, Biblis appeared with teres al bespreint And toward him a great pace gan she goe: and her brother Caunus came also and of one wombe as gemelles twayne, but she tofore her fate gan complayne.

She in her loue was not vertuous, for ayeinst god and kyndes ordinaunce, she loued her brother & called was Caunus And whan she saw her froward gouernace and vnto her gaue none attendaunce, though she of sleight to accomplishe her entet in secreete wise a pisse to hym sent,

She sayd it was an impossible thyng, without his grace her self for to saue, and but he woe to her assentpyng She els playnely may none helth haue, but onely death and afterward her graue, thus in her wryting to hym she dyd attame and to be couert she ne wrote no name.

But whan this pisse came to his presence, vertuously therat he gan disdayne, and gaue therto no maner aduertence, nor toke none hede of her furtous payne: but suffred her eternally to playne, tyll that she was as (Quid can wel tel,) with oft wepyng transfourmed to a well.

Next came Mirrha with face full piteous, which that whilom loued (ayeinst nature)

her own father, called Cinarus for whose sake he great payn she dyd endure, for she ne durst her sorow not discure, tyll her noyce by signes dyd espye, the hertly constraint of her maladye.

for her noyce of which that I haue tolde, conceiued hath by open euidence, as she that could both of new and olde, In such matters all whole the experience, that throughe long labo: & sleighty diligēce, diuers wayes and meanes out she sought to her fathers bed & she Mirrha brought.

with whō she had her lust & her pleasaunce for she vnknew lay with hym all nyght, he was deceyued by dycke lew ignoraunce And on the morow long o: any lyght, she stole away and went out of his syght with her noyce kept her long close, tyll vnto tyme that her wombe rose.

But her father that was of Cypr kyng, which as I told was called Cinarus, whan he the trueth espyed of this thyng That by his daughter he was deceued thus she waxe to hym lothsome and odious: fled from his face, so sore she was aferde, and he pursued after with his swerde.

In Arabie the hote mighty londe, king Cinarus hath his daughter founde, and cruelly he gan enhaunce his honde, With his swerde to geue her a wounde: but the goddess of metry most habounde, haue fro the death made her to goe free, & throw thei power transfourmed to a tree

which after her beareth yet the name, called Mirrha as she was in her lyfe, out of which, as autours say the same, Distilleth a gumme, a great preseruatisse: and of nature a full good defensise, to kepe bodies from putrification and them fraunchise from all coruption.

By influence of the sunne beemes, Mirre is engendred distylling of his kind with cold droppes ayeinst thebes flames And downe descendeth throughe & hard rind and

and through the riftes also as I fynde
the sayd Mircha hath a chyld forth brought
in all this worlde that it be well sought

Was none so fayre fourmed by nature,
for of his beautie he was peerles,
and as Poetes recorde by scripture,
He called was the fayre Adonis,
and to his worship and his great encrease,
(for he of faynes bare away the floure,)
Venus hym chase to be her paramoure.

The which goddes yaued to him in charge
that he should in his tender age,
in forestes whyle he went at large.
Hunt at no beastes which that wer sauage:
but he contrary to his disauantage,
through wilfulnes, I can say you no more,
was slaine vnwarely of a tuskie boore.

At the which he fell dyd enchase,
but of folly in bayne was his labour,
for he lay slayn full pale of chere and face
whom Venus turned to a full fresh floure
which was as bloud lyche purple of colour
a bud of golde with goodly leues glade
set in þe middes, whose beauty may not fade

And whā that Mircha fro Borhas was
had declared her great aduersitie (drow
and of her fate told the mortall lawe,
Came Ophreus full ougly vnto see,
sonne of Apollo and of Caliope,
and appered with a full dolefull face,
whylom brought forth a yborne in Thace.

ful renowned in armes and science,
famous in Musike and in melodie,
and full notable also in eloquence,
And for his sote sugred armonie,
Beastes, foules Poetes specyfe
woodes floudes of their course most strōg,
flam of their course to hearken his sote song

In harpe he had of Mercurius,
with the which Euridice he wan,
and to Bachus as wote Ouidius,
Sacrifices full solemne he began,
and vnto hell for his wife he ran,
her to recure with soote touches Harpe,
which that he made bpō his heauely harpe.

But whan that he this labour on hym toke,
a law was made which that bound him soze,
that if that he backward cast his loke,
He should her lese and see his wife nomore:
but it is sayde sythen gone ful yore,
there may no lawlouers well constreigne,
so importable is their deadly payne.

If some housebandes had storde in þe case,
to haue lost their wiuues for a loke soden,
they would haue suffered, and not sayd alas,
But patiently endured all theyr payne,
and thanked god that broken was þe cheyne
which hath so long them in prison bounde,
that they by grace hath such a freedom found

To liue in prison it is a full great charge,
and to be stockd vnder key and locke,
It wer wel metier a man to gone at large
Than with yrons be nayled to a block:
A there is o bonde which called is wedlocke
fettering husbondes so sore þe it is wonder,
which with a filc may not be broke asunder,

But Ophreus father of armonye,
thought e Euridice whiche was his wife so
for her sake he felt he must dye (fayre
Because that he, whan he made his repaire,
of her in trowth nothing embraced but ayre:
thus he lost her, there is nomore to sayne
and for the constraint of his greuous paine

At his heart her partying fate so sore,
the grene memozy, the tender remembraunce,
that he would neuer wuen more,
So fayre he was escaped his penance,
for wedlocke is a lyfe of most pleasaunce,
but who hath ones infernall payne seen,
wil neuer his thākes come in þe snare again

This Ophreus yaued counsaile ful notable
to husbondes that haue endured payne,
to suche as been prudent and trefable,
one hel is dyedful & more perillous bē tweine
and who is ones bounden in a cheyne,
and may escapen out of daunger bliue,
if he resort, god let hym neuer thyme.

On this sentence women wer vengeable,
And

The fyrste

And to his writing full contrarious,
sayd his counsaile was not commendable,
At the feast they halowed to Bacchus
thei sylle the one vpon this Ophreus:
and for all his rethorick swete,
thei slough (alas) this Laureat Poete.

And of his harpe yf ye list to heare,
the god Apollo made a translation,
among the ymages of the sterres cleare,
wherof men may haue yet inspection,
but fortune to his confusion
denyed hym, from warde of her nature,
whan he was slaine freedom of sepulture.

Nert Ophreus there dyd appere also,
of Amazonis, worthy quenes twayne,
Merpesia and her suster Lampedo,
Which in conquest did thei busy paine,
and great worship in armes dyd attaine,
naming themself by writing nere and ferre
doughters to Mars which is god of werre.

Merpesia rode out in regions,
and conquered full many a great cite,
for couetise of great possessions
To encrease her lordship if it woulde be,
and her suster kept surely their countrey
from all enemies, that there was no doubt,
while Merpesia rode with her hoost about.

But while she was in conquest most famous
and her enemies proudly dyd assaile,
fortune anon were contrarious,
And caused she was slayne in batayle:
loe what conquest or victorie may awayle,
whan that fortune doe at them disdaine,
see here example by these quenes twaine.

¶ Cenuoye.

This tragedy remembreth thynges fyue,
of Narcissus the excellent beaultie,
and of Biblis doth also deserue
the great luxurie and dishonour,
Mircha defamed, touned to a tree,
to exemplifie that lecherie and pride,
been from all vertue set full farre asyde.

How Ophreus endured in his line,
soy intermedled with aduersitie,

in his youth whan he dyd wyte,
He felt in wedlocke full great felicitie,
his worldly blisse meint with duplictie,
as fortune her chaunges can deuide,
which from all vertue be set full farre asyde.

Merpesia for her list to stryue,
with wilful werres to encrease her countrey
but her pompe was ouerturned blieue,
whan in battaile vnwarely slayne was she,
for of al werre death is the fine pardy,
so furious Mars can for his folke proude
which fro al vertues been set full farre asyde

Ye mighty princes, let wit and reaso dyue
your high noblesse to consider and see,
how fortune estates can depriue,
And pinge them down fro their prosperitee
pride and luxurie I counsaile that ye flee,
false auarice ne let not be your guyde,
which from all vertue is set full farre asyde.

¶ Of Priamus king of Troy and how the
monke of Burye translatour of this booke
wrote a booke of the siege of Troy, called
Troy boke. ¶ The .xvi. Chapter.

After these cōpleintes & lamentacions,
which þe Bochas did in his boke cōple
medled among with transmutacions
Set in Quid by full soueraine stile,
whan he on them had mused a long tōyle,
seen the maner both of sorow and ioye,
he gan to remember of Priamus of Troy.

First of his byrth and of his kindred,
how among kynges he was moste famous,
and as Boetes recorde of hym in dede
He descended of worthy Dardanus:
which as his line declareth vnto vs,
from Jupiter was lineally come downe
vnto his father called kyng Laomedon.

Of olde Troy this Laomedon was kyng
destroied by Gykes he and his countrey
after whom this Priamus reighnyng,
Made thereage in a mighty strong cite,
where he full long in full great royaltie,
with wife & childe n most worthy of renoun
with scepter and crowne helde possession.

Governed

Gouerned his cite in peace & rightwisnes,
and fortutie was to him fauourable,
foz of all this the treasour and riches
He dyd assemble this kyng most honorable,
and in armes he was so commendable,
that thow the world as far as mē man gone,
of high nobles the renoun of him shone.

This Priamus had children many one,
worthy princes, and of full great might,
but Hector was among them everythynge
Called of prowesse the lantern & the light,
for there was neuer bozne a better knyght;
Troilus in knyghthode so manly the was
he was named Hector the second. (long)

But if I should rehearse the manhode
of kyng Priamus, and of his sonnes all,
and howe his cite besieged was in dale,
And all the roze to remembraunce call,
betwene him and Grekes, how it is befall,
the circumstances rehersyng by and down
to set in order the occasion

Of the siege, why it was fyrst layde,
by Hercules and also by Jason,
the manere whole in Troy boke is sayd
Rudely endited of my translacon,
folowyng vpon the destruction,
called the second, which by accountes clere
fully endured the space of ten yere.

For as me semeth the labour wer in vayne,
truly also I not to what entent
that I should write it new agayn,
for I had once in commaundement
by hym that was most noble and excellent,
of kynges all for to undertake
it to translate and write it for his sake.

And if ye list to wete whom I mene,
Henry the fifth most mighty of puissance
pauē me the charge of entent most clene,
kyng of old time to put in remembraunce;
the same Henry for knightly suffaunce,
worthy for manhode taken kynges all,
with nine worthy for to haue a fall.

To holy church he was chief defensour
in all such causes Christes chosen knyght,

to stop. Lollardes he set al his labour,
Loved all vertues and to sustayne ryght:
thow his nobles, his manhode & his might
was diligent, and did his desy payne,
to haue set peace betwix realmes twaine.

I mene in soth betwene Englad & fraunce
his purpose was to haue had a peace final,
sought out meanes with many cyrcūstance,
As well by trete as actes marciall,
theron reoparded lyfe, goodes and all,
but wo(alas) against death is no bone,
this lond may say he dyed al to sone.

For among kynges he was one of the best,
so all his dedes conueyed wer with grace,
I pray to god so yeue his soule good rest
In holy sayntes in heauen a dwelling place
for here with vs to litle was the space
that he abode, of whom the remembraunce
shall neuer dye, in England ne in fraunce.

This worthy kyng pauē to me in charge,
in English tonge to make a translacon
out of Latin, within a volume large
how long the Grekes lay tofore the towne;
And how that Paris fyrst at Citheron,
in Venus temple slightly dyd his payne,
there to rauishe the fayre queene Helene.

In which booke the processe ye may see,
to hym how she was wedded in the towne,
and of the siege layde to the citee,
By Menelap and kyng Agamemnon,
and many another full worthy of renoun
on eyther partie which that in batayle,
fro day to day eche other dyd assaile.

Wherto should I tel, or what should I write
the death of Hector, or of Achilles,
or wherto should I now of new endite,
How worthy Troilus was slain among the
the end of Paris, or of Pallamides (pees
or the slaughter of manly Dephebus,
or how his brother called Helenus

Told afore how it was great foly,
that Paris should wed the queene Helene,
and how Cassandra in her prophesy,
on this wedding soze gan complayne:

And

The fyrste

and for the constraint of her hertly payne,
how she ware mad and ran about the town
till she was caught and set by in prison.

All this matter ye may beholde in dede
set by and by within Troy booke,
and how Creseide loued Diomedes,
whan worthy Troilus she wilfully forsoke
of her nature a quarell thus she roke,
to assay both if mede eke wer to sayne
to take the thirde and leaue them both twain

I passe ouer and tell of her nomoze,
no: by what meanes Grekes wan þe towne,
how Eneas, neither how Antenor,
Ayeinst kyng Priam conspired false treasoun,
neither how Ulixes gatte Palladion:
the death of Priam, no: Hecuba the quene,
no: how þe Pirrus slough yong Polyxene

No: here to write it is not mine entent
repaire of Grekes home into their countree
after the cite and Ilion was brent
No: of theyr mischief they had in the see:
neither how Ulixes fond Penelope
a true wyfe, though he wer long her fro,
throughout all Grece I can rede of no mo.

Of these matters thus I make an ende,
what fyll of Grekes after their biage,
to Troy booke the folke eche one I sende
which haue desyre to see the surplusege,
Howe Grekes made first theyr passage
towards Troy, besegying the cite,
rede the story ye geat no moze of me.

Here speaketh Bochas the autour of
this boke ayeinst the surquedous pryde of
thē that trust in riches, saying these wordes
vnto them.

¶ The .xviii. Chapter.

Ye proude folkes that set your assaunce
in strength, beautie, or in high noblesse
if ye consider fortunes variaunce
and could a mirrour afore your eyen dresse
Of kyng Priam and of his great riches,
to see how he and his children all,
from their nobles sodenly be fall.

Pector of knighthode called sours and wel

sad and demure and famous of prudence,
Paris also in beautie did excell,
And Helenus in perfit prouidence:
Troilus in armes had great experience,
eke Deyphebus proued manly his lone,
yet in the warre they wer slain euerychone.

Had not this kyng eke as I can deuise,
noble Hecuba which that was the quene,
a doughter called Cassandra the wise
Her young suster called Polyxene:
alas alas, what may such pryde mene:
for al be it their renoun sprong full fetre,
yet wer these women deuoured in þe warre.

¶ Alas he not mighty and strong in al thinges
and had also of his aliaunce
right worthy princes, & many riche kinges,
And nigh all Asia vnder obeysaunce,
hold in his time most famous of porsaunce
most renoumed of riches and treasures,
till that fortune with her sharpe Moures

whan that he sate highest on her whele,
this blynde goddesse gan hym to assaile:
her froward malice he felt it ful wele.
His golde, his treasour, fyrst it gan to fayle,
and darken gan his royall apparayle,
by which example all proude men may see
the vnsure trust, the mutabilitee

¶ Which in this world is seen & found al day
mid of estates in their magnificence,
ebbe after flowe maketh no delay,
But halt her cours there is no resistance,
the tide abideth not for no violence,
eche mā þe stādeth of changes here in doubte
must take his turne as it cometh about.

Let Priam be to you a clere mirrour,
ye proude folkes that set your assaunce
in such vainglozy, which saderth as a flour
And bath of beautie here none attēdaunce:
the world to you cast a full bitter chaunce,
for whan ye were sit highest at full,
than wil she rathest your bright fethers pul.

Ye haue warninges for to take hede
by ensample of other clere and right bisshope
how worldly blisse is medled aye with drede.

And

And if your reasons and wittes be sensible,
thing seen at the eye is not incredible,
and all this doctrine is to you in beyne,
If in your time ye haue no chaunges seyn.

Wherefore Bochas, vnto your auaise,
and prudently put you at this issue,
first of all he pteueth you this counsaile,
to leaue your byces, and take you to vertue
and set your trust al wholly in Iesu,
for he may best in mischief helpe at nede,
of worldly chaunges, that ye ther not byede.

Here also John Bochas put a great pre-
sing & commendacion of suretie that ston-
deth in pouertie vnder these wordes in sen-
tence. The. xviij. Chapter.

These great Lordshyppes,
these high dignities,
These thyng annexed
vnto the regaly,
whan they sytte highest in theyr sees,
and round about stant the chivalrye,
Byede entreteth in, perill and enuye, (know
And beware chaunge which no man maye
The houre whan fortune wol make the lowe

They may wel hold a stately great household
with a bayn trust their power should as last
clad in theyr mantles of purple, perle & golde,
and on the whele of fortune clymbe by fast,
Like as she myght neuer down them cast.
But as the higher theyr climbing is at all.
Alas the soxer is their vnhappy fall.

The fall of Ixam and of Agamemnon,
ought of ryght more to be compleyned,
whan fortune had them pulled downe,
And of her malice hath at them dysdeyned,
than if they neuer to worship had atteyned,
But the falling was the more greuous,
because tofore they wer so glorious.

O thou pouert, meke, humble and debonaire,
which that kepest the lawes of nature,
for todayn changes thou wilt not dispayre,
so art thou fraunchised from fortunes lure
all her assantes thou lowly doest endure,
That she may haue no iurisdiction

To interrupt thy possession.

Thou settest little by all worldly riches,
For by his treasours which been transitory
thou skoznest them & their Meltrons dreile
toward battayles, for conquest and victo-ry
thou despyrest al shyning & beynglozy, (ght
laud of triumphes which conquerors haue sou-
with al their pillages & settest the at nought

Thou dispraisest al superfluitez,
None infortune may chaunge thy courage,
and the shippes that sayle by the see,
with marchandise among the floudes rage,
their auentures and their perillous passage,
Lyfe, body, good, al put in auenture,
Onely for lucre, great riches to recure.

Of al such thing thou takest litle hede,
nor of that people that maners do purchase
For of pleters which for lucre and mede,
Mayntain quarrels, & questes doe embrace,
Thou them beholdest with a full still face,
their subtil working sought out for & nones
And sodeynly depart from all at ones.

Thou canst in little also haue suffysaunce,
And art content with ful small dispence,
For thy riches and thine habundance,
without grutchyng is humble patience,
If any man doe to thee offence,
Thou forgettest, and lightly canst foryeue,
to thee suffyseth, so that thou mayest lue.

The sterred heauen is thy couerture,
In somer season vnder the leaues grene,
thou makest thy dwelling, & dost thy self as-
ayn in great heates of & sune shene (sure
Content with frutes, & water chystal cleene
To staunche thy hungre & thy thurstes soze
after the seasons, and carest for no more.

Pouert eke liggeth the cold winters night
wrapped in strawe without compleynyng,
without byede he goeth glad and light,
And tofore theues he merely doth sing,
She goeth also without paynyng,
fro lond to lond, among pooze and ryche,
for frend and foe to her be both plyche.

¶ C. l. Moral

The first

Wherall Senec recorderth by wytyng,
richest of thinges is gladd pouertie,
Euert of one chere. boyde of all grutchyng.
Bot h in ioye and in aduersitie,
Throug al the world last her libertie,
and her fraunchise stant in so great ease,
that of fredome no man wil her displease.

She is nourice of study and of doctrine,
In vertuous labour doth her diligence,
And of sciences which that been diuine,
He is called mother. by clerkes in sentence
Of Philosophers most had in reuerence:
fortune and he so ferre a sondre waye,
that eche to other of custome is contray.

Her earthly ioy is for to lue in peas,
Hateth tumult, noyse, and disturbaunce,
for her disciple called zenocrates,
In wilfull pouert set wholy his pleasaunce,
fobye of his port, throug whose attēperaūce
ful many man by example of his teaching
wer brought to vertue from vicious liuing.

His dyete was so measurable,
And deuoyde of superfluite,
That hys courage he kept fyne and stable
fro fleschly lustes he was so attempre,
Reason maistred his sensualite,
Despyes vnleful for to set asyde,
During his life pouert was his gypde.

His abyding and conuersacion,
was in places that wer solitary,
among trees & welles he byt him a donge
with multitude he hated for to tary,
for pouert was his secretary,
fobye of his chere and stable of his entent,
and in Athenes first to schole he went.

He was so mighty of auctoritee,
Rightwisenes and iustice to obserue,
that rightful iudges his sētece toke atgree
He could his mouth & tong so wel preferue,
that in the temple once of Minetue,
without othe vnto his sentence,
to that he saide the Judges pauē credence.

He aied was among great audierce,
why he was solayne of his daliaunce:

His aunswere was, that neuer for seilence
throug little speaking he felt no greuaūce,
Speche vnaduyfled causeth repentaunce:
And reuell tonges for larke of refreining,
to many a man hath be ful gret binding.

Diogenes true heyre and next allied,
To wilful pouert by iust inheritaunce,
for al riches he playnly hath despyed,
to him it was so great incomberaunce,
with worldly treasour to haue all paunce:
His dwelling made within a little tunne,
which turned about w concours of þ sunne

Himself refrethig w hete of þebes bemes,
for he was content (god wote) with ful lit
king Alexandre that conquered realmes,
Came riding down, and gan himself delite
this philosopher to see and visite,
Himself sequestred sole from al the pyes,
and came alone to see Diogenes.

Proctred vnto him great riches and treasour
Bad him aske what thing that he wolde,
that might him please or do to him succour
But of all that he nothing ne tolde,
But prayed him full lowely that he shoulde
not draw fro him that thing ayein al right
which for to yewe, lay not in his might.

What thing is þ, quod Alexander ageyn,
I haue by conquest al erthly treasour wōt
the philosopher sayd he spake in beyne:
Thou hast (quod he) no lordshyp of þ sunne,
thy shadowe letteth his bemes fro my tūne,
And sith thou hast no power of his light,
I pray the frendly forbere me not his sight.

Though Alexandre was mighty of puillatice
and al the world had in his demene,
Yet was his reason vnder the obeysance,
of fleschly lustes fettered in a cheyne,
for in his persone wil was souereyne,
his reason bybled by sensualite,
troubling the freedom of right and equite.

for where that wil hath dominacion,
In a pauce which shoulde susteyn right,
And partiaall fauour oppreth his reason,
and trouthes title is bozn down with might

And egall dome hath lost his clere light,
though for a season they syt in hys chapers,
Their fame shal fade within a fewe yeres.

In this matter make a comparison
betwene Alexander and Diogenes,
The one endured but a short season,
for that he loued warre more than peace,
And for the other was not recheles
but helde him content with giftes of nature
vnto great age his pouert dyd endure.

Alexander was slaine with poison
in his triumphes whan he did excelle,
But in a toun that lay full lowe downe
Diogenes dranke water of the wel.
And of their ende the difference to tel,
Alexander with couetise was blent
The philosopher with littel was content.

Blessed be pouert that may endure longe
Maugre the fraud and daunger of fortune
where as kinges and emperours sit ong,
In their estate no while may contune
and of all vertues rekened in commune,
twene indigence and great habundaunce,
Is a good meane content with suffisaunce

for with great plenty men be not assured,
after their lust alwey to liue in ease, (cured
And though þ inē great treasure haue re-
with their riches they fele many diseale.
Lords haue not al thing þ may thē please,
but hertely for Philosophers expresse,
Is greatest treasour twene pouert & riches

for this Chapitle sheweth a figure,
a maner likenesse and demonstracton,
Howe Diogenes lenger dyd endure,
than mightye Priam, or king Laomedon.
So to exemplifie in conclusion,
There is more trust in vertuous simpleste
Than in presuming of vicious falsse riches,

for the auoutrie of Paris and Heleyn
Brought al Troye to destruccion,
Pride & luxurie were also meanes tweyne,
why Grekes layed a siege to the toun,
And finall cause of their confuson,
to other partye losse of many a man,

The ground conceiued why first þ warre ga

Clennop.

This tragedie piteous and lamentable,
and dolorous to wryten and expresse,
That worthy Priam of kinges most notable
was fall in pouert from his great riches,
fro kingly honoure into wretchednesse,
fro scepter and crowne, & from his regaly,
To mischief brought through falsse auoutry

was not fortune frowarde and deceiuable
for to suffer by her doublenesse,
And by her course which euer is variable,
that worthy Hector floure of high prowesse
shuld vnwarely most famous of noblesse
be slaine (alas) chief stocke of chualtre,
for a quarrel of falsse auoutrie

Agamemnon coumpted incomperable,
among Grekes for trouth & rightwisenesse,
To gouerne most glorious and able,
within his paleys þ soz by beareth witnessse,
His wife Clytemnestra through her cursed
allēd was to murder him of enuy (nesse
for the occasion of falsse auoutry.

Ye noble princes conceiue howe chaūgeable
is worldly honour through vnsedfastnesse
Seeth of king Priam þ glory was vnsable
fixe in your mind, this mater doth impresse,
And your corages knightly doth vpbresse,
againē al titles holdeth champartie
Which appartaine to falsse auoutrye.

Of mightye Sampson which tolde hys
counsaile to Dalilah whereby he was
deceyued.

The. xix. Chap.

No was more mightye
or strong than Sampson:
None more deliuer
the bible beareth witnessse,
Without weapon he slough a fiers Lion,
and for his enemies to him did expresse
His vncouth probelē, anon he gan him dresse
againē Philistines, and slough of them thysse
To pay his promes, spoiled them by and by.

The first

His Problem was, the text thus raterling,
after the letter in very sothfastnesse,
There came out meate of a thing eating,
and fro þ strong there went out sweetnesse
But his wife of froward doublenesse
which euer wrought to his disauaile.
Of worthie Sampson told the counsaile

What is more strong than is a Lion,
or more sote than hony in tastinge
But weomen haue this condicion,
of secret thiges whā they haue knowleging
They bolue inward their hertes ay fretting
Other they must dye or disceure,
So byetle of custome is their nature.

This was the caas, the lion that was dead
again the sonne gaping lay byright,
A swarme of been entred in his head
of whom ther came hony anone right.
And whan Sampson therof had a sight,
he fantasied in his opinion
full secretly, this propolition.

As ye haue heard and gan it forth purpose
That Philistes to him it should expoune,
Under a peyne the trowth to him vnclouse
But with hys wife they priuely gan rowne,
And she on Sāpsō gan cōplaine & frowne
and feyningly so long vpon him wepe,
That he not coude his counsell frō her kepe

Which whā she knewe, she made no tarieng
but plaine and whole she gan it to declare,
Such double trust is in their weping
to kepe their tonges women cannat spare,
Such weping wīues coul mot them face
and al husbands I pray god pene thē sorow
That to thē tel their counsaile eue or morowe

She told thē whole, she told it thē not half
and Sampson than gan vpon them smile
If ye not had hered in my call,
ye should not haue found it a great while
Who may be sure where women list begile
though bokes Sāpsō of strōgth so cōmēd
yet durst he not ayeinst his wife offende.

This mighty Sampson dyd also his paine,
the hundred foxis once that he fonde,

He toke their tassel knit thē twēin & twēin
and amid euery eche he set a fire bronde,
And as they ran in Philistes lond
so furiously vp and doune they went,
That they their frutes & their vines byent

Eke by treason whan he was once bound
with newe cordes as he lay & slepe, (found
Ther came thre thousand which þ Sampso
to haue murdered him or that he toke kepe.
He brake his bondes and vp anone he lepe
of an asse he caught a chaule bone,
And a thousand he slough of them anone.

He gan to feynt and had a soden lust
foz to drinke, fadyd face and chere,
And god sent him to Naunch id hys thurst,
from the Illis toth water cristall clere,
which that sprang out large like a riuer,
Refreshed his spirite which afore gan dull,
Till that he had of water drunke his full.

After he went to Gaza the cylie
amōg al his enemies þ were of great might
To his plesaunce where he did le
a ful faire woman, lay with her al night,
And on the morowe long or it was light
Augre þ watch vpo his shoulers square
The gates strong, vp to an hyl he bare.

And in a valey which called was Sorre
full hote he loued Dalilah the faire
On whome his hert was ful soze plet,
she coude her faue so meke and debonaire
Make him such chere whā þ htm list repaire
But I dare cal her Dalilah the double,
Chief roote & cause of al his mortal trouble

He neuer dranke wines white ne read,
of Razarees such is the gouernaunce,
Rasoure ne there touched neuer his head,
foz in long growing stōdeth their plesaunce
And this Sāpsō most mighty of substāce
had of his force by influence of heuen
By heres weyinge that were in nūber, seuf

It was full secrete in euery mannes light,
among people told for an vncouth thinge
Wherof Sampson had so great might,
outward shewed by force of his working.

But

But Dalilah with her flattering,
would neuer stint enquiting euer amonge
Til that she knewe wherby he was so strong

She like a serpent daring vnder floures,
or lyke a worine that wyoteth in a tree,
Or like an adder of manyfolde coloures,
right freshe appering and faire vpon to see
For shadowed was her mutabilitee,
with lowlyhede, and a faire pretence
Of true meaning, vnder false apparence,

He meint trouth, and she was variable,
he was faithfull, and she was vntrue,
He was stedfast, and she vnstable,
his trust aye one, she loued thing newe,
She weared coloures of many diuers hewe
she loued chaunges of many diuers grene,
In stede of blew which stedfast is and clene

But to the purpose for to condescende,
whan she of Sampson knewe al the priuete,
Her falsehede shortly for to comprehend,
she made him slepe ful softly on her kne,
And a sharpe rasoure after that toke she,
shooke of his here, large and of great length
wherby (alas) he lost all his strength.

Damage in earth is none so greuous,
as an enemy which that is secrete,
For pestilence none so perillous,
as falsenesse, where he is proue,
And specially in feminite:
for if wiuues be found variable,
Where shal husbannes finden other stable?

Thus Sampson was by Dalilah deceiued,
she coude so wel flatter, forge and faine,
Which philistines whan they haue conceiued
bwarely bond him in a mighty cheine,
Cast him in prison, put out his iyen twaine,
and of despise after as I finde,
At their quietnes made him for to grinde.

They made a feast stately and solemne,
whan they had al this treason wrought
And to rebuke him, scorne him, & cōtemne
blind Sampson was afore them brought.
Which thinge full sore greued him in his
cass he would in his preynt minde, (thought

To auēge his blyndnesse some maner wey
(finde
And whan he had thus bethought him long
he made a child hyin preuely to lede,
To twein postes, large, square, and strong,
enbrazed them or any man toke hede,
And ga to shake the without fere or drede
so sturdely among his sone all,
That the temple is vpon them fall.

Thus he was auenged on his sone,
which that falsly dyd ageine him strue,
Slough in his dying, god wote, many one,
More than he did euer afore in his liue,
And he was also (the date to discernue,)
in Israel, the bible is mine auctour,
Twenty yere, there iudge and gouernour.
¶ Lenuoye.

This tragedye peueith in euidence,
to whō mē shal their counsell out discure
For recheles tonges for lack of prouidence
haue doe great harme to many a creature.
Whan harme is done, ful hard is to recure
beware by Sampson your counsaill well to
though Dalilah cōplein, cry & wepe, (kepe

whilom Sampson for manhode & prudēce
had Israel in gouernaunce and cure,
Daunted Lions through his magnificēce,
made on a thousande a disconfiture,
But his most perillous auenture,
was whan he lay with Dalilah to slepe
which falsly coude, cōplaine, crie and wepe,

Ye noble princes conceiue the sentence,
of this story remembred in scripture,
Howe that Sampson of wilful negligence
was shauen and shorne, defaced his figure,
Kepe your conceites vnder couerture,
Suffre no nightworm within your counsell
though Dalilah cōplein, cry & wepe (crepe

¶ A Chapter of Bochas deservuing y malice of women. ¶ The .xx. Chapter.
Myne auctour Bochas reioised in his liue
I dare not late where it was comēdable
Of these women the malice to discernue
generally, and write it is no fable,
Of their nature howe they been variable,
and howe their malice best by euidence,

The first

Is knowen to them that haue experience.

They can afforce them alday men may see,
by singuler fredome and dominacion,
ouer men to haue souereyntee
And kepe them lowe vnder subiection,
full soze labour in their opinion,
By subtill craft that thing to recure
whych is to them denyed of nature.

Bochas affirmeth and halt it for no tale,
if they want freshnesse of colour,
And haue their faces fawne swert & pale,
anone they doe their diligent labour,
In such a nede to helpe and doe succoure,
their reueled skin abrode to draw & streine
frowarde froicis to make them smoth and
(pleyne

If no rednesse in their chekes be,
noz no lilles delectable and white,
Than they take tencerece their beautie
such oymntes as may most delite
where kind faileth & surplusage tarquite
they can by craft so for themselfe dispose
Shewe rednesse, though there be no rose.

And for to shewe their face fatte and bright
wth hote spices and oymntes soote,
They can by craft counterfete a right,
take in such case many an holsome roote,
where kind faileth cūpng can doe boote
if their brestes bp to high them dresse,
They can ful wel thenboling down repress

And if they be to soft or to tender (round
they haue cūpng to make them harde and
They: coisines they can eke make slendre
wth poinaunt saulis & been in phisike found
They: subtil wittes in sightes so abound
thing & is coubyd or wrong in mans sight
To make it seme as it went by sight.

(Mene
They haue stricoles to make their skin to
brought subtilly of gommies and of glatre,
Crafty lees to die they: heere cyrtine,
distilled waters to make them seme face
fumigacions to rectefye the aire
stomachers and fresh confections,
To repress false exhalacions.

Of al these thigs Bochas hath most disptte

whan these beekes ferre yonne in age.
Within them self hath vaine glory & delite,
for to farce and poppe their visage,
Like as paintours on an olde ymage,
they lein coloures rich and freshe of hewe,
woymfete stockes to make the seme new

Their slack skin by craft abroad is strained,
like an Ozenge from the galley brought,
Rich relikes about their necke is cheyned,
Gold bpō gold w pētle & stones wrought
and & their colour outward aperte nought
with wind or sūne which should the stein or
for vnkind hetes they vse Citrinade (sade

What should I wyte al their vnkouth desi-
somtime froward, sōtme debonaire, (res
Imagining sundry freshe attires
contrived of newe many thousand paire,
Diuers deuises to make them seme faire,
in their appoyt by counterfete likenesse,
for to resemble Venus the goddesse,

Of one deuise they holde them not appaie
they must ech day haue a straunge wede,
If any be better then other araied (blede
of frowarde grutching they fele their heart
for euery eche thinketh verely in dede,
a morowe pyeng in anyrout bright,
for to be fairest in her owne sight.

They can the it ypen and their lokes dresse
to drawe folkes by sleighes to their lure,
And somwhile by their frowardnesse,
And seyned dāiger they can of men recure
what euer they lyst such is their auenture,
Agein whose sleighes force noz prudence,
May not auaille to make resistance.

With cōstrent weping and forged flatteris
subtill spech farcid with pleasaunce,
And many false dissymuled maladye,
though in their herts they fele no greuaunce
and w their couert sobye dātaunce,
Though vnderneath the double serpēt dare,
ful many a man they haue brought in their
(snare

Of swetnesse ful of mortallite,
serpentine with a pleasaunt visage,
Unstable ioye ful of aduersite,

A most changeable of heart and of coage
in thy desires hauing this auantage,
what euer thou list to daunt and oppresse,
Such is thy fraunchise Bochas bereth wit
(nesse

Of nature they can in many wise,
of mighty Grauntes the power wel aslake,
What wit of man can compasse or deuise,
their sleghty wiles dare it vnder take,
And if them list thereon an ende make,
fro this consypte who so that discorde,
A thousand Royses the reuers can recorde.

Remēbyng first howe Hercules most strōg
was brought by women to distruction
¶ que ne Clitemnestra did also great wrong
To murdre her lozde king Agamemnon,
Dalilah betrayed also Samson,
Amphiaras sanke depe doune into hell,
Because his wife, his counsel dyd out tell.

It nedeth not to make mention,
though Phillis dyed through impacience,
Of long abyding of her Demophoon,
Nor how that Aisus king of Megarence,
was by his daughters cursed violence,
Unwately murdered, in Quide it is tolde
whan fro his head we sale the here of gold

Bochas rehearseth of wiuers many one,
which in their working were ful cōtrarious
But among al, he wyreth there was one,
Queene of Assirie, and wife to king Aisus
And by discente doughter to Neptunus,
Semiramis called in her daies,
which of al men would make assaies.

She nouthet spared straunger ne kintrede
her owne sonne was not set aside,
But with him had knowleging in dede,
of which the slaunder went about ful wide,
for with one man she coude not abide,
such a false lust was vpon her fall
In her coage to haue adoe withall.

And truly it doth my wit appall,
Of this matter to make rehearsaile,
It is no reason to atwite women all,
though one or two whosome dyd saile,
It lieth not, nor it may not auade,

Them to rebuke that perfitte ben and good,
farre out of ioynt though some other stode

The rich Rube nor the Saphir ynde,
be not appeired of their freshe beautie,
Though amōg stones mē cōterfets finde
and semblably though some women be
Not wel gouerned after their degre,
it not defaceth nor doth no violence,
To them that neuer did in their life offence

The white lylly nor the hollome rose,
nor violence spredde on bankes thicke,
their swetenes which outward they vnclōse
Is not appeired wyth no wedes wicke,
and though þ breates a many croked sticke
Grow in gardens among þ flowers faire
They may the vertue of herbes not apere

And I dare say that women vertuous,
ben in the vertue of pyce moze cōmendable
That there be some reked vicious,
and of their liuing found also vnstable:
Good women ought not be partable
of their trespass nor their wicked dede,
But moze cōmended for their womanhede.

What is appaired of Hester the mekenesse
though that Scilla was sturdy a vègeable
Nor of Ilecste the perfitte stedfastnesse,
is not eclipsed, but moze acceptable
Though Clitemnestra was found variable
like as whā cloudes their blaknes do decline
¶ hebe's wh hys beemes doth moze clere shyne

full many one haue clene ben al their liue
Undefouled kept their virginittie,
and some coude agein al vices stryue,
Them to conserue in perfect chastitie,
Deuoid of chaunge and mutabilitie
though some other haue theragain trespas
the laude of thē is not ther w defaced (led

And who that euer of malice list accuse
These sely women, touching variaunce,
let them remēber and in their wittes muse
Men be not ay stable in their consaunce,
in thys world here is no perseuerance,
Chaunge is aye found in mē a women both
On outhet partie be they neuer so wroth.

The first

No man should the vertuous atwiste,
in siede of him that dyd the trespase,
Nor for a theef a trewe man endite,
nor for the gilty an Innocent Manace,
Good and wicked abide in euery place,
their price, their lacke, late the be reserued
To other partie as they haue deserued,

Though John Bochas in hys opinion
againne women list a processe make,
They that been good of condiction,
Should against him no maner quarel take,
But lightly passe and their sleues shake,
for again god he nothing made,
Who can conceiue the effecte of this balade.

CThe excuse of Bochas for his writting
ayeinst misgouerned women
in siede of Lenuoy.

Ye women all that shall behold and se
this Chapitle, and the processe rede,
Ye have been good founde in your degre
And vertuous both in thought and dede,
what Bochas seith take ye none hede,
for his writting if it be deserued,
Is not agein them that be wel gouerned.

For though it fall that one two or thre,
haue done amisse, as therfore god forbede,
that other womē which stable & feithfull be
Should be atwited of their vngoodlihedde,
But more commended for their womāhedde
for this scripture if it be concerned,
Is agein them that be not wele gouerned.

A galled horse the sooth if ye list se,
who toucheth him boweth his back for dyed
And who is knowe vntrue in his countrey
shrinketh his hornes whā mē speake of fals-
But good womē haue ful littel nede
To grutch or frowne whā þ truth is lerned
though ther be some which be not well go-
(uerned

Of Dalilah and Queene Pasiphe
though doublenes dyd their bydle lede,
yet of Lucrece, and Penelope,
The noble fame abroad both shine & spede
out of good coyn mē may some darnel wede

Women rebuke in these diffaultes querned
And not touch them that be wel gouerned.

COf mighty Pirthus & slough Polixene,
which for his pride and auoutrye died in
pouerty, slaine at the last by Diestes,

The .xxi. Chapter.

Pirthus musing
in his remembraunce,
And considering
in hys fantasie,

The vntrue trust of wooldy Dartaunce,
of men and women the chaunge & the folge
The same time he sawe a company
of myghty pynces full piteously weping,
To him appeare, their fortune cōplaining,

Among other that put them self in pries
of myghty Pirthus first he had a sight,
That was the sonne of worthy Achilles,
Among Grekes the most famous knight,
most commēded of manhode and of might
Sonne and next heire, bokes specific
of Pelleus king of Theffalie,

This Achilles full manly of his heart
hurte of Hector, and his wound grene,
Slough Hector after or he dyd aduerse
the which Achilles for loue of Polixene,
By compassing or Hecuba the Queene,
Under Trety this grekes champion,
was slaine of Paris within Troy toun.

whose death to auge Pirthus in his tene
furiously with face dead and pale,
Slough afterwarde the sated Polixene
and dismembred al on pieris sinale,
Which for to heare is a piteous tale,
That a knight so vengeable was in dede
To slea a maide quaking in her drede,

He coude for Tre on her no mercy haue,
But with his sword most furious and wode
Herciles vpon hys faders graue
like a tiraunt he shed her chaste blode:
The dede horrible diffaced his knightthode
that to this daie the flander and diffame,
By newe report reboundeth on his name.

Poetes

Poetes say, and specially Oude
write, whan Grekes fro Troy shoulde sayle
Howe their shippes by an anker did tye,
of their purpose which long made the faile.
But in this whyle he maketh reherfaile,
out of the earth manacing of chere,
Of Achilles an ymage dyd appere

To Grekes said with a deadly face,
I fele wel mine honour and my gloze,
and my noblesse full lightly forth doth passe
Unkind people out of your memoze,
Which by me had your conquest & victoize
your deuoute doe Hollirene to take,
And on my graue a sacrifice to make.

With her blood loke ye spare nought,
to sprinkle it round aboute my sepulture,
thus blood for blood wth vengeance halbe bou-
& for my deth, & deth she must endure (ghy
And whole the maner of this auenture,
and howe she died in her maydenhede,
Hethamorphoseos & processe ye may rede.

In hasty vengeance set was all hys toye,
with thurst vntaunched, Troia blud to shede,
He slough Priam & worthy king of Troye,
and into Grece with him he dyd lede
Andromache, the stoze ye may rede,
wedded her and after in certein,
By him she had worthy sonnes twelue.

But in repairing home to his country,
as Colus dyd his shippes driue,
I find he was a pirat of the se,
and into Grece whan he did arrive
fortune vnwarely gan agein him strue,
forsoke his wife lete her liue alone,
Toke another called Hermione.

Which was that time ioyned in matlage,
to Orestes son of Agamemnon.
And he alas of wylful loues rage,
toke her by force to his possession,
But of auoutry foloweth this guerdon,
sodein death, pouert, or shame,
Ope disclauder, great mischies, or defame.

Eke in his time this Pirthus as I rede,
fell into mischies and great pouertee,

And woth such meane as he dyd lede
He was a rouer and robbed on the lee,
and as poetes reherce ye may see,
Of such robbing by sleaunder and defame
this woze pirate of Pirthus toke the name

And as the stoze after doth deuise,
the said Orestes gan sekerly espie,
where that Pirthus did sacrifice,
tofoze Apollo that god to magnifie.
Full vnwarely Orestes of enye,
toke a sharp sword or Pirthus coude aduert
where that he stode and roof him to & hert

This was the fine of Pirthus in substance
for al his pride and great presumption,
Of false auoutry foloweth this vengauce
losse of some membre pouert or pison,
Or hateful sleaunder by some occasion,
Or sodein death shortly in sentence,
Complete in Pirthus by full clere euidence

Of Machaire and his suster Canace,
The .xx. Chapter.



fter this Pirthus
came Canace the faire,
with teares distillinge
from her ypen tweine,

And her brother that called was Machaire
and both they gan full piteously complaine
That fortune gan at them so disdaine,
hiding their fate by wofull auenture
Touching their loue which was ageyn na-
(ture

He was her brother and her loue also,
As the stoze pleynly doth declare,
And in a bed they lay eke both two
Reason was none why they shoulde spare,
But loue that causeth wo and eke welfare
gan agayne kynde so straungely deuise,
That he her wombe made sodeinly tarise.

And finally mine auctour beareth witness
a child she had by her owne brother,
which excelled in fauoure and fairnesse,
for like to him of bewitte was none other,
But of their loue so guyed was the rother,
that Charibdis twene windes ful corraye,
hath Canace destroyed and Machaire.

The first

For whan their father the maner did espie,
of their working which was so horrible,
For Tre almost he fyl in frensie,
which for to appese was an impossible,
For the mater was froward and odible,
for which plainly deuorde of al pitie
Upon their trespas he would auenged be.

The cause knowen, the father anon right
cast for their death of rigour to prouide,
for which Machaite fled out of hys sight,
and from his face, his presence gan to hide
But woe alas, his suffer must abide,
Merciles for their hateful trespas,
Suffer death, ther was none other grace.

First her fader a sharpe swerde to her sent,
in token of death for a remembraunce,
And whan she wist plainely what he ment,
and conceiued his rigorous ordinaunce,
with whole purpose to obey his plesaunce,
She grutcheth not but lowlye of entent,
Like a meke daughter to his desire assent.

But or she died she cast for to wyte,
A littel letter to her brother dere,
A dedly compleint compleine and endite,
with pale face and a moxtall chere,
The salt teares from her eyen clere
with piteous sobbing fet fro her herts dyke
Distilling downe to tempre with her ynke.

The letter of cōplaine of Canace to her
brother Machaite. Chap. xxiii.



Wite of her swoone
whan she did abyde,
knowinge no meane
but death in her distresse.

To her brother full piteously she saied,
Cause of my sorowe rote of my heaumesse,
that whilō were chief sours of my gladnes
Whā both our ioyes by wil were so disposed
Under one key our hertes to be enclosed

Whilom thou were support and sekernesse
chief reioysing of my worldly plesaunce
But now thou art þy groud of my sicknesse
wel of wanhope of my deadly penaunce,
which haue of sorowe greatest habundaunce

That euer yet had any creature,
which must for loue the death alas endure.

Thou were whilom my blisse & al my trust
soueraign confort my sorowes to appese,
Spring and well of al my hertes lust,
and now (alas) chief roote of my disease
but if my death might do thee any ease
(o brother mine) in remembraunce of vs twain
Death shal to me be pleasur, and no paine

My cruel father most vnmerciable,
ordyned hath, it nedes must be so,
In his rigour he is so vntretable
All mercedes he will that it be doe
That we algate shal dye both two.
But I am glad sith it may be none other
Thou art escaped my best beloued brother.

This is myne ende I may it not astarte,
(O brother mine) ther is no moze to saye
Lowly beseching with al mine whole hart
for to remember speciablye I praye,
If it befall my littel sonne to dye
that þy mayst after some mynd vpo vs haue,
Suffer vs both to be buried in a graue.

I hold him strictly atwene my armes twain
thou and nature leyde on me this charge.
He giltyes with me must suffer paine,
and sith thou art at freedom and at large,
Lat kindnesse our loue not so discharge,
but haue a minde where euer that thou be,
Once a day vpon my child and me.

On the and me dependeth the trespas,
touching our gilt and our great offence
But welaway most angelik of face,
our child pong in his pure innocence,
Shal ageyn right suffer dethe violence
tender of limmes, god wote full giltyes,
The goodly faire that lieth here specheles

A mouth he hath, but wordes hath he none,
can not complaine alas for none outrage,
For grutcheth not but lieth here all alone,
still as a lambe most meke of hys disage.
What hurt of stele coud do to him damage,
or suffer him dye beholding the manere,
And loke benigne of his twaine eyen clere.

O thou my father, to cruel is thy weche,
Harder of heart than any Tygre or Lyon,
to slea a chyld that lyeth without speche,
Glorie of al mercy and remission,
And on his mother hast no compassion,
his youth consided with lippes soft as silke
which at my byest lieth still & souketh milke.

Is any sorow remembred by wytyng,
Unto my sorowful sighes incomparable?
Was there euer creature living,
that felt of dole a thing more lamentable?
for comfortles and vnrrecoverable
Are thilke heaped sorowes full of rage,
which haue with woe oppressed my courage

Reken al my mischiewes in especiall,
on my mischiet remembre & haue good mind
My lord my father, is mine enemy mortall,
Experience ynough therof I fynde:
for in his pursuite he hath left behind,
In destruction of thee my child and me,
Ruth and all mercy, and fatherly piete.

And the my brother auoyded fro hys sygh,
which in no wise his grace mayest attayne,
Alas that rigour, vengeance, & cruel tyght,
Should aboute mercy be lady souerayne,
But crueltie both at me so disdayn,
That thou my brother, my child, and also I,
Shal dye cryled, alas, from all mercy.

My father whilom by many sondrye sygne,
was my succour and my supportacion,
to thee and me most gracious and benigne
Our worldly gladnes, our consolation.
But loue & fortune hath turned vpsō down,
Our grace (alas) our wefare and our fame,
Hard to recure, so flaudred is our name.

Spot of defaming is hard to washe away,
whan noyse & rumoz adzod do folke manace
To hinder a man, there may be no delay,
for hateful fame flieth ferre in shoyt space,
but of vs tweyn there is none other grace,
saue onely death, and after death (alas)
Eternal selandze, of vs this slant the caas.

Whom shal we blame, or whō shal we atwite
Our great offence, sith we may it not hide:

For our excuse repoytes to respite,
meane is there none, except y God Cupide,
And though that he would for vs proude,
In this matter to be our chief refuge,
Poetes sayen he is to blind to ben a Judge

He is depaynt like a bynd archere,
To make a tyght sayling discrecion,
Holding no measure nother farre nor nere
But like fortunes disposition,
All vpon happe boyde of all reason,
as a blind archere with arrowes sharp ground
of auenture peueth many a mortall wound.

At thee and me he wrongly dyd marke,
felly to hinder our fatall auentures,
as farre as Phebus shyneth in his arke,
To make vs refuse to all creatures:
Called vs tweyn vnto the worful lute
Of diffame, which will depart neuer,
by newe report the noyse encreas yng euer.

Odious fame with swift winges flyeth,
But all good fame enuye doth restrayne,
Eche man of other the defautes seeth,
Yet on his owne no man wil compleyne,
But al the world outcrpeth of vs tweyn.
whose hateful yre by vs may not be quemed
for I must dye, my father hath so demed.

Nowe farewell brother, to me it doth suffice,
to dye alone for our both sake:
and in my most feythful humble wyse,
vnto my deathward though I treble & qua-
of the for euer now my leaue I take (he
And once a yere forgeat not but take hede,
My fatall day this letere for to rede.

So shalt y haue on me some remembrance,
My name enprinted in thy kalendere,
By rehearsaple of my deadly greuaunce,
weate blacke y day & make a doleful chere,
and whan thou comest & shalt aprouche nere
My sepulture, I pray the not disdayne,
Upon my graue some teares for to rayne.

Wryting her letter awapped al in drede,
In her right hand her penne gan to quake,
and a sharpe sword to make her hert blede
In her left hand her father hath her take,
And

The first

And most her sorow was for her chldes sake
Upon whose face in her barme sleeping,
Full many a tere she wept in compleining,

After al this so as she stode and quoke,
her chld beholding mid of her peines smert
without abode the sharpe sword she toke,
and coue her self euen to the heart.
Her chld fill down which might not asert,
Hauing no helpe to succour him nor saue,
but in her bloud the selfe began to bathe.

And than her father most cruel of entent,
Bad that the chld should anon be take,
Of cruel houndes in hast for to be rent,
And be deuoured for his mothers sake,
Of this tragedy thus an end I make,
Processe of which men may rede and see,
Concludeth on mischief & furious crueltie.

Remembryng fyrst as made is mencion.
How that Pirthus delited him in dede,
When Troy was brought to destruction,
With cruel sword Trojan blud to shedde,
but of such slaughter, se here the cruel mede
Is right requireth by vnware violence,
Blud shed for blud, is final recompence.

¶ Lenuoe.

When surquedby oppressed hath plette,
And mekenes is to tyranny boze down
And agayn right hasty crueltie,
To be vengeable maketh no dilacion,
What foloweth therof by clere inspection
see an example how Pirthus in his tene,
Of hatefull yre slough yong Polyxene.

King Colus too rigorous was parde,
And to vengeable in his intencion,
Agayn his children Machayre and Canace
So importable was his punicion,
Of hast proceeding to theyr destruction,
Worse in his yre as it was wele sene,
the cruel Pirthus, which slough Polyxene

Noble princes prudent and attempre,
Differre vengeaunce of high discrecion,
Tyll your yre sumwhat allwaged be.
Doe neuer of dome none execution,
For hate & rancour perturben the reason,
Of hasty Judges, more of entent vnclene,
the cruel Pirthus, which slough Polyxene.

¶ The end of the
first booke.





I Sum folk percase it would seme
touchyng the chaunges and mu-
tabilities.

bi me reherfed þ thei might deme
Of fortunes straunge aduersities
to pices shewed, down pulled fro thei sees
the tragedies ought ynough suffice,
in compleining which ye haue heard deuise

Thes story pitous the processe lamentable
boyde of ioy all gladnes and pleasaunce,
a thyng to greuous and to importable,
where as no mirth is medled w greuaunce
all vpon compleint standeth the aliaunce,
moſte whan fortune who þ her course well
chāgeth old ioyes into sorowes new (knew

for vnto hym that neuer wist of woe,
remembraunce of his olde gladnes
whan his welfare and pleasaunce is agoe,
a neuer afore knew of none heauines (nes
such vnware chāge, such vncouth wretched
causeth in pices throw new dedly trouble
after their fallig their sorowes to be double

Olde examples of princes that haue fall
their remembraunce of newbrought to mind
may be a mirrour to estates al,
How they in vertue shall remedies fynde:
to eschew vices of such as wer made blynd
from sodein fallynge themself to pferue,
long to contune. & thanke of god to deserue

The fall of one is a clere lanterne,
to teache another what he shall eschew,
perill of one is, (who can discerne,)
Schole and doctrine from perill to remeto
as mē deserue such guerdō there must sew
in vice noz vertue no mā may god deceiue,
like their desertes their mede they shall re-
ceiue.

who foloweth vertue lēgest doth perseuer
be it in riches, be it in pouertie,
light of trouth his clerenes kepeth euer,
Agayn the assaultes of all aduersitie:
vertue is cause of long prosperitie,
and whan princes fro vertue down decline
their fame is shrouded vnder þ cliptike line

for false fortune which tourneth as a ball,

of vnware changes though men her whel
it is not she that princes raue þ fail (atwite
But vicious liuyng plainly to endite,
though god aboue ful oft them doth respite
long abideth and doth his grace sende,
to this entent they should they? life amend

for their welfare and they? abyding long,
who aduertiseth dependeth not on chance,
good lyfe & vertue maketh thē to be strong
And them assureth in long perseuerance:
vertue on fortune maketh a defiaunce,
that fortune hath no dominacion,
where noble princes be gouerned by reaso.

But such as list not corrected be,
by example of other fro vicious gouernaūce
and fro their vices list not for to flee,
If they be troubled in their high puissaūce:
they aret it fortunes variaunce,
touchyng the gistes that they dyd ble,
they? demerites full falsely to excuse.

Vertue conserueth princes in they? glozy,
and confyrmeth they? dominacions,
and vices put their price out of memozye
for their trespasses and their transgressions
and in al such sodein mutations,
they can no refute noz no bette socoure,
but agein fortune to make they? clamour.

Make an outcry of her doublenes.
as no gilt wer in their owne dede,
thus vntruely they call her a goddesse,
Which litle oz nought may help at suche a
but yf they had god in loue and drede (nede
trusted his lordship, in hert wyl, & thought,
they should fortune plainly sei at nought.

Euidences ful expert and palpable,
tofore rehearsed told of diuers ages,
worldly glozy, bayn and ful vnstable
With deceites double of their visages,
shewyng to princes ferme of they? cozaiges,
by these examples, how and in what wyse
by others fallynge thei shall thēself chastice.

Signes shewed and tokens in the heauen
diuers cometes and constellacions,
dyedfull thunder, fereful firy leuene,

to the second Booke.

Rumour in earth and great dissencions,
disobeyfaunce in sondry regions,
shewe examples ful wel aspyne I dare,
to mighty princes them bidding to beware

Their lyfe to amende or the lorde do smyte,
through negligence or it be to late,
and or þe sword of vengaunce keue or bite
Into vertues their vicious lyfe translate:
cherish rightwisenes, again al wrong debate
with dread of god make them self strong,
than is no doubt they shall endure long.

Who is not ware by others chastisynge
other by him shal chastised be,
hard is that he art whiche for no wrytyng,
for no doctrine, nor none auctoritie,
for none examples wil from his vices flee,
too indurate is his frowarde entent,
which wil not suffer his hardnes to relent.

The round droppe of the smooth raine
which that descende and fall from aloft
on stones hard, at the ipe as it is seyn,
Perceyth they? hardnes w they? fallynge oft,
al be in touchyng water is but soft,
the persynge caused by force nor puaissance,
but of fallynge by long continuance.

Semblably of right I dare rehearse,
oft redyng on booke fructuous,
the heartes shoulde of prudent princes perce,
Sink in they? mind & make the vertuous
to eschew all thyng that is vicious:
for what auayleth the examples þe thei rede,
to their redyng, if contrary be the dede?

Cunnyng and dede who can comprehend,
in clere conceites thei been thynges twayne
and if cunnyng do the dede amende,
Than atwene the is made a mighty cheine
a noble thyng and right souerayne:
for than of cunnyng the labour is well spent
whan dede foloweth, and both been of assent

Thus John Bochas proceeding in his boke
which in number is called the secound
gan for to wryte, and his purpose toke,
To set in storiez such as he had found,
of entent al vires to confounde
by ensamples which he did expresse.
And at the beginnyng of his bysinesse.

Mighty Saul to hym dyd appere,
kyng of Israel, piteously wepyng,
deadly of face, and with an hideous chere,
his voyce ybroke by manifolde sobbing,
and to mine autour his sorow completynge
requiryng hym together whan they mette,
kiss in his boke his wolfull fate to sette.

Anon after, of entencion,
with penne in hand fast gan me speke,
as I could in my translacon
In this labour further to procede:
my lord came forth by, and gan to take hede
this mighty prince ryght maly & right wise,
gaue me charge in his prudent aulse,

That I shoulde in euery tragedye,
after the processe made mencion,
at the ende set a remedye
with a Lenuoy, conueyed by reason,
and after that with humble affection,
to noble princes lowly it direct,
by others fallynge they might the self correct

And I obeyed his bidding and pleasaunce
vnder support of his magnificence,
as I could I gan my penne auance,
Albe I was baren of eloquence,
folowyng myne autour in substaunce and
for it sufficed plainly vnto me (sentence,
so that my lord my makynge toke atgre.

The ende of the
Prologe.

The seconde Boke.



How Saul king of Jerusalem,
borne of low degree, as long as he
died god, was obediēte to hym, &
ruled by good counsel, made many
great discomfitures: but at the last
for his pride, presumption, & great
disobeisance he lost his crowne, &
was slain by Philistees.

The .i. Chapter.



His said Saul
of whom I spake tofore,
full well compacte
and large of his stature,
of the lyne of Beniamin
eke borne,
His father, Cis
was called in scripture:

whose asses whylom left theyr pasture,
space of thre dayes Saul had them sought,
lost his labour and founde them nought.

For they wer gon out so farre astray,
so disseuered he ne could them mete,
till that a chylde hym supping al the way
gaue hym counsaile his labour for to lete,
And that he should go to the prophete
whiche was full famous hold in Israell,
of whom the name was called Samuell.

Which Saul made in his house to dyne,
receyued hym of great affection,
and by precept and ordinaunce deuine,
Samuel made no prolongacion,
but shed the holy sacred unction
vpon the head of Saul, down kneeling,
and full deuoutly of Israel made him king

Of goddes people to haue gouernaunce,
with scepter and crowne & whole the regaly
and his noblesse more mightly to auance,
with mekenes to rule his monarchy:
god gaue to hym spirite of prophety,
whiche was great glory to his magnificence
of future thynges to haue prescience.

¶ ii.

And

The seconde

And whyle that he was meke and humble
boorde of pride and false presumption. (in dede
and prudent counsaile with hym did lede,
Hym to gouerne by good discretion,
he found quiete through al his region,
no fozeyn enemy durst him to warrey.
whyle he the lord mekely dyd obey.

No enemy might agayn hym recure,
thow none eprises but soze dyd hym drede,
made many great discomfiture,
Through his force, knighthode, & manhede,
on Philistees, and daunted eke in dede,
two mighty kinges, that one of Ammonites
and another that gouerned Moabites.

He was found strong and eke victorious,
the Philistines bringing to mischaunce,
agayn Jougrees so mighty and famous.
Through his knightly proude gouernance,
that he their pride brought vnto outrans:
outtrayed them of wisdom and manhede,
Primo regum as ye may planely rede.

He was a sonne called of one yere,
in Israell whan his raigne began,
stable of heart, and benigne of chere,
froward noz surdy to no maner man.
All that whyle loue of the people he wan,
the time I meane while he was iust & stable
and in his workes not found variable.

But whan that pride gan his hert enhance
willfulnes and false melancoly,
outtrayed reason to haue the gouernance,
Of his olde famous policy:
and had forgotten in his fantasye,
to knowe the lord, and mekely sue his law,
god fro his crowne his grace ga withdrow.

The vnkynd worme of forgetfulnes,
in his heart had myned through the wall,
whan he to god for his kyndnes.
Gaue no laude, noz no thanke at all,
which had hym reysed vnto estate royall:
from pooze degree among all his kin alone,
a synguler fauour to set hym in his throne.

What thing in heart more froward may be
than is lode in false presumption, (thought

of a wretche that came bp of nought,
To yeeve hym lordship and dominacion,
and for to make a plain comparison,
men shoulde of reason drede a Lion lasse
than the rudenes of a crowned asse.

That thing to god is more abhominable,
than pride vpraised out of pouertie,
& nothyng gladly is found more vengeable,
Than are wretches set in hygh degree:
for from his stocke kind may not fle,
eche thyng resoreth how farre euer it go,
to the nature which that it came fro.

Fruite and apples take theyr telerage,
where thei fyrst grew of the same tree,
and semblably eke kindred and linage.
Once a yere it will none other be
by token or signe at eye as men may see,
draweth commonly in euery creature,
some teache to folow after his nature.

I wyte not this in rebuke of pouertie,
but for suche onely as that it deserue,
god of his might as men be well expert,
May them in vertue encrease and coserue
from all mischief a pooze man preserue.
reysle hym on height to dominacions,
thzough high noblesse of theyr condicions.

By influence god may his grace shede,
where he findeth cause onely by mekenes,
a pooze man to reysle hym vp in dede,
Vnto the estate of vertuous noblesse
for out of vertue cometh all gentlenes,
in pooze and riche make none exception,
but them commende like theyr condicion.

A pooze man which that is vertuous,
and deadeeth god in his pouertie,
eche thyng eschewyng that is vicious,
And to his power doth trowth and equitie:
I dare say tyght well what euer that he be,
puttyng no rebuke vnto his kintede
but call hym gentle betely in dede.

But kyng Saul was contrarious,
disobeysaunce found in his working,
whan god made hym to be victorious,
On Amalech where Agag was kyng:

hym commaunded to spare no maner thing
man nor woman, beast nor child foroure,
but þ his sword should al quick this deuour

But Saul wrought all in otherwise,
eche thyng reseruyng þ was faire to sight,
and of entent to make a sacrifice,
After his victorie he shope hym anon right
fattest beastes he chose, and hath them dight
toward the fyre, to make his offering,
and fro death he spared Agag the kyng.

He was reprocued afterwarde of Samuell,
to goddes bidding for he was contrarie,
as abiect to regne in Israell,
That all good hope in hym gan despayre,
his grace, his might, gan pall and appayre,
his prophete after hath hym fayled,
and with a fiend he was also trauailed.

Thus fro her whele fortune cast him down
auailed hym from his copall see,
and god also toke away the crowne,
Both from him and his posteritee,
and set vp Dauid for his humilitee:
loe how the Lord his doimes can deuise,
to enhaunce mekenes and to abate pride.

Saul endured in his frensy,
a wicked spirite so soze hym dyd assaile,
vnto Dauid euer he had enuye
That he was hardy to enter in battayle:
with a staffe sling boyd of plate and mayle,
flough Goliath without fere or drede,
pulled out his sword and smote of his hede

At they repaying home out of the fiede,
whan Dauid had slaine thus Goly,
yong maidens whan that they behelde,
The great victorie, they in theyr armonye,
in laude of Dauid thus gan syng and crye:
Saul hath slaine a thousand with his might,
Dauid ten thousand the lusty yong knight.

Saul disdayned and sayd frowardly,
they graunted haue a thousand to my name
and to the sonne here of Ilaye
Yauie ten thousande to encrease his fame:
which is to me a rebuke and a shame,
wherupon this Saul fret with yre,

of yong Dauid gan the death conspyre.

In his heart he had a fantasie,
of theyr synging whan that he toke hede,
dempt it was a maner prophecie
That Dauid preferred should be in dede,
and to the crowne after hym succede,
thought his children as he gan dryue,
should be depriued of the copall line.

Thus day by day, Saul wayes sought
to slea Dauid plainly if he might,
albeit so that he no malice thought,
But euer kept hym lowly in his syght:
therfore good euer and grace on him alight
for aye the Lord of his magnificence,
again tyrantes preseruethe innocentes.

And as the Bible plainly doth vs lere,
this Dauid had in his tender age,
for his noblesse the kynges daughter dere,
Called Michol toynd by mariage,
and whan that Saul fyl in any rage,
Dauid anon to asswage his woodnes,
touched his harp & brought him in gladnes

Saul full oft gan Dauid to enchace,
and warrey throughtout all his londes,
through desertes him pursue and manae,
Of entent to haue shet hym vp in bondes;
or to sleigh hym if he come in his hondes,
but finally god through his ordinaunce,
preserued his knight fro al maner mischace

Saul full oft was brought to mischief,
yet aye from death Dauid dyd hym saue,
and hereof this was a speciall preef
Whan Dauid cut his garment in the caue,
and no tokens yf ye list to haue,
another tyme Dauid also kept,
the lyfe of Saul, whan he lay and slept.

The case was this as they lay hostyng,
not farre asonder, and Saul lay and slept,
all his people about hym sleppng,
And vnprueyed like a flocke of shepe,
of whiche thyng Dauid toke good kepe,
down descended and made no delaye,
came to the tent where kyng Saul laye.

¶.iii. The

The seconde

The spere of Saul stondyng at his hede,
Dauid toke it and went his waye anone,
of his comyng there was no man toke hede
for Saul slept and his men eche one,
and whan that he by to the hyll was gone,
toward Saul again he cast his loke,
made a noyle that all his knightes woke.

Fyrt to Abner pynce of his chivalrye,
Dauid sayd these wordes in sentence,
Abner (quod he) thou hast done great folye,
this day shewed a great negligence,
to suffer of Saul the magnificence,
in perill stonde and none hede to take,
about his perill to make his knightes wake

Thou art to blame for thy rechelesnes,
to leue the kyng stonde in so great a drede.
in slepe to haue moze sauour and sweetenes
than of his lyfe to take hede:
such negligence requirerh for his mede,
death and torment by rightfull iudgement,
about a pynce whan folke be negligent.

And if thou list to see an euidence,
how that his lyfe stode in icopardye,
to here his spere and yewe thereto euidence,
how vnprouided ye wer in your partie:
Saul noz thou ye may it not denye,
your life, your death, your power, your pryncesse,
this dat god put hole in me gouernace (face

But me to acquite of pure innocence,
as euery man shoulde vnto his kyng,
and to declare in me was none offence,
Again his noblesse in wyll noz in workyng
as god wel wote that knoweth euery thing
that I neuer by no conspiracie,
wrought noz compassed agayn his regalye.

Here example of perfit patience,
agayn malice to shewe kyndnes
where Saul shewed his mortall violence,
Dauid acquit him with sufferance & goodnes
þt tyrant vanquished by his pryncesse
men again trowth may wel a warre ginne,
but at the ende the palme he doth aye win.

For of this story if that ye take hede,
Saul is fall for his frowardnes,

into mischiese and into soden drede,
for Philistees the Bible beareth witness
with a great power gan they wardes dresse
vpon kyng Saul auenged for to be,
they tentes pight belyde Gelboe.

Wherof kyng Saul assented in his heart,
had lost his sperte of knightly hardines,
and specially whan he byd aduert,
Prophete was none his harmes to redresse
of future thynges trowth to expresse,
in Israell, which cast hym in great drede
because that tyme Samuell was dede.

For Saul had cast out all diuines,
from Israell, and eche diuineresse,
notwithstandyng the Philistines,
where tyme again his power to oppresse:
and he ne knew no maner sorceresse,
of whom he might any counsaile take
and he of god that tyme was forsaie.

In this wyse he stode disconsolate,
counsaile of god noz prophete knew he none
but lyke a man most infortunate,
Vngraciouly he sped hym forth anone
and secretly this Saul is forth gone,
to a woman that shoulde him rede and wisse
in Israell called a Phtonesse.

Which is a name as clerkes wryten all,
and office who that taketh hede,
soules of men agayn to clepe and call,
I meane such that tofore wer dede,
which is a thyng straunge for to rede:
that any woman shoulde, who so list to lere,
make soules of dead men to appere.

Uncouth and straunge is theyr opinion,
and to my wit a manere impossible,
not accordyng me semeth to reason,
for lyke a thyng which that is credible,
that a soule of nature inuisible,
might appere or shewe visibly,
vnto eyen which that been bodely.

But or that I any farther flitte,
lest I wer holde to presumptuous,
to diuines this matter I committe,
And wisse clerkes that ben vertuous,

in theyr wittes subtyll and curious,
to conclud as it doth them seme,
in this matter a trowth for to deme.

Whether it was the soule of Samuell,
or other spirite that he dyd call,
which that tolde the kyng of Israell,
Of the battell that should after fall:
his auentures and his mischues all,
and of his death he told also in dede,
and how Dauid should after hym succede.

Because onely of his disobeyssaunce,
as it is writen, and for his rechelesnes,
on Ameleche for he toke not vengeance:
Thus the spirit bare to hym witnes,
wherof Saul fell in great heaumes,
knowig no mene to escape out of this dont
but take his fortune as it cometh about.

Told him also his enemies wer so woorth,
the Philistees besyde Gelboe,
in that battayle he and his children both,
Should dye that day of necessitee:
his chualre shall scounfited be,
of his reigne there is no lenger date,
for god fro him his kyngdom wyl translate.

And thus Saul returned is agayn,
his meiny after brought to discomfiture
and whan he sawe al his people slayne,
And how there was no meane to recure,
in that deadly wofull auenture,
he bad his squier take his sweorde as byue,
and through the heart y he should him rive.

That his enemies which wer buctificed
should haue no power in theyr it is founde,
to fall vpon hym as they haue deuised,
To reue hym his last fatal wounde,
his high noblesse at mischief confounde,
but his squier for feare of god and drede,
would not assent to doe so foule a dede.

To sleigh his lord he greatly was aferde,
a thyng hatefull in euery mans syght,
but Saul toke the pomell of his sweorde,
And in the ground full depe anon it pight,
and in all hast possible that he myght,
made the point in his furious payne,

to perce his hert and part it euen on twaine

The Philistees anon as he was dead,
Sporled hym of his royall armure,
dismembred hym and smote of his head,
And in token of theyr discomfiture,
toke the spores with all theyr busynesse,
and therof made in all theyr best entent,
to Staroth, of pryde a great present.

Thus was Saul slayne in sentence,
of Philistees vpon Gelboe,
for sake of god for disobedience,
Abiect also from his royall see,
and thus for lackyng of humilitie,
of god he was for euer set asyde,
for here the ende of surquedye and pryde.

¶ Lenuoye.

Haue mind of Saul which to estate ryal
fro low degree was called for mekenes,
but presumption made him haue a fall,
Of god abiect for his frowardnes,
lost his crowne the Bible bereth witnes
and cause was for his disobeyssaunce,
to gods byddyng he gaue none attendaunce.

God not creeth no more of man at all,
but whole heart without doubtenes
for all the gistes whiche in especiall,
He gaue to man of his high goodnes
but he chastiseth all vnkynndnes,
such as bene rebel for to doe pleasaunce,
and to his byddyng geue none attendaunce.

Noble princes vertue most principall,
you to conserue in your hygh noblesse,
is to empreinte in your memorall,
fayth equitte, all wronges to redresse,
to sustayne trowth, and ryghteousnesse,
and tofore god hold euenly the balaunce
to his byddyng geue whole your attendaunce

¶ A commendacion of Bochas vpon the
vertue of obedience.

Vertue of vertues most of excellence,
which that hath most
souerayn suffisaunce,
is the vertue of true obedience,

¶ Which

The seconde

which set all thyng in ryghtful gouernace
for ne wer not this prudent ordinance,
some tobey, and some aboue to gyle,
destroyed wer all worldly policie.

Where that vertue and hygh discrecion,
auoyded haue from them al wilfulnes,
by title onely of domination,
Truely styng vpon rightwiseness
wrong and errours iustly to redress,
of trueth I may right well affirme and say
the people mekely their bidding should obey.

This noble vertue of faithfull obeyssaunce,
established vpon humilitie,
which includeth no double varsaunce:
In all regions and in eche citie,
causeth welfare, joy, and prosperitie,
and as vertue chief and souerayne,
al vicious rpyte it plainly both restrayne.

Obedience eke as men may see,
falsenes cyleth and all rebellion,
for by temperaunce, ryght and equitie,
Stant the welfare of euery region:
for the mekenes and low subiection
of commonities, holde vp the regales
of lordshippes, and of all monarchies.

And no doubt whan lordshippes of entent,
bisy been the soueraine lord to queme,
to theyr subiectes doe rightfull iudgemente
In conscience, as right and reason deme,
than shall their crowne and their diademe,
vpon their head perseuer and freshly shyne,
& make subiectes to theyr bydding incline.

Thus obeyssaunce plainely at a worde,
in such as haue lordship and soueraintie,
done of entent to theyr soueraine lorde,
shall cause them raygne in long prosperitie
and theyr subiectes of humilitie,
for theyr noble famous gouernaunce,
aye to be ready vnder theyr obeyssaunce.

For who that serueth the lord of Lordes all,
and hath the people in his subiection,
god wyll kepe hym that he shall not fall,
Long preserue his domination,
but ageynwarde whan wisdom and reasō,

bene ouermastred with censualitie,
farewell the floures of theyr felicitie.

Obedience blunteth the sharpnes
of cruell swoordes, in tyrantes bondes,
and mekenes appeaseth the felnes,
Of hasty vengeance breketh a two & bodde
eke patience setteth quiete in londes,
and where these three cōtune in comonties
lōg peace preserueth kingdomes and citie

Obedience doth also restraine,
conspiracions and false collusions,
whan the stant vnparted not arweyne,
There is no dyed of no discrecions,
for she combineth the true opinions:
in hertes of peoples ful wel afozn provided
vnder princes to stond whole vndersted

Where princes be meke, hūble & debonaire,
towards god of whole affection,
theyr subiectes be gladly not contrayre,
In theyr seruice by no rebellion,
for there is found no deuision,
but head and members eche for his partye
be so gouerned by prudent policie.

Contrariouly Saul was put downe,
abiect of god for his obstinacie,
put from his scepter, his crowne, his region
Of Israell lost all the monarchie:
for he list not make his alie,
of frowardnes and wylfull negligence,
this noble vertue called obedience.

For as it longeth in kyngdomes and citie,
vnder a key of one beneuolence,
princes and kynges to gouerne theyr sees,
So apperteyneth due reuerence,
to theyr subiectes by obedience,
tobey theyr lordes as they be of degree,
by tyle of ryght in euery cōmontie.

For obeyssaunce if it be discerned,
with Argus eyen who that taketh hede
as right requirerth is not well gouerned,
whan the members presume agein & hede
of gouernaunce there is no perfit spede,
from vnitie they go a frowarde waye,
whan subiectes theyr princes disobey.

How kynge Roboam for geuing sayth
to yong counsaile, losse the beneuolence of
his people, and dyed a foole.

The .ii. Chapter.



After John Bochas,
in order next there came
with full great dole
and lamentacion,
the yong kynge called Roboam,
sonne and next heire to Salomon,
entring by title of iust succession:
besought myne autour to make of his folie,
and of his falling a piteous tragedie.

first whan he entred into his region,
twelue Tribes gouernynge in dede,
ruled hymself by wyll and no reason.
kept his subiectes playnly as frede,
not vnder loke, but vnder frowarde drede:
of olde wise, to his great disauayle,
he despyed the doctryne and counsaile.

He demeaned as it was well couth
his scepter, his crowne, and his regall y,
by luche folke as floured in the yth youth,
Could of custome their wittes wel applye,
to blynde hym falsely with their flattery,
which is a stepmother called in substaunce,
to all vertue and all good gouernance.

Alas it is great dole and great pitie,
that flattery should haue so great fauour
whiche blindeth princes y^e they may not see,
Misteth the y^een of euery gouernour,
that they cannot know their owne erroure
false hony wed aye on they^r sentence,
a foole is he that yeueth to them credence.

They may be called the deuils tabourers,
with froward sownes eares to fulfill,
or of Circes the perillous butlers,
which gal and honey together down distill
whose drinckes bene Amerous and yll,
and as clarkes well deuise cunne,
woorse than the drinckes of Sirenes tunne

Cares of princes full well they can anoynt
with the soft oyle of adulation,

and their termes most subtelly appoynt,
Eche thyng concluding with false deceits
aye blandishyng with amorous porson,
and finally, as the Poete sayeth,
their faith of custome cōcludeth wth vnfaith

flourig in wordes though there be no fruit
double of heart, pleasunt of language,
of true meanyng, boyde and destitute,
In mustering outward pyetēd a faire visage
who trusteth them, fyndeth smal auantage
by apparence and glorious fresh shewing,
princes deceiuing and many a worthy king

Roboam can beare full well witnes,
from hym auoyding folkes that wer true,
how he was hindred by flattery and falsenes,
By them that could forge out tales new
whose counsaile after soze dyd hym rewe,
and with their fayned false suggestion,
greatly abyddged his domination.

He dempt hymself of more autoitie,
of folie, youth, and of presumption,
than was his father in all his royaltie,
And this pompons false opinion,
came into his conceit by adulation,
for flatterers bare to hym witnes,
how he excelled his fathers high noblesse.

He did great rigour and oppression,
vpon his people as it was well proued,
and then to fynd some mitigation,
In matters which that haue them greued,
of they^r tributes for to be releued,
besought he would release the^m in their nede
but al for nought he toke therof none hede.

All olde counsaile from hym he set aside,
and refused they^r doctrine and they^r loze,
and by false counsaile of folkes full of proude
His pooze lieges he oppressed soze:
and ten kyntedes anon without more,
for tyranny and for misgouernance,
fro hym withdrough their trowth & liegrace

This of the kynge conceyued the rigour,
the people anon of indignacion,
stoned Aburam which was collectour
of the tributes in all his region,

from

The seconde

from hym departyng by rebellion,
Wherof astonied tauenge his great bright
into Ierusalem toke anon his flight.

And whan thei wer parted from Roboam,
the ten kindreds by deuision,
chase them a kyng called Jeroboam,
And Roboam within his royall towne
to bene auenged of their rebellion,
and for to doe on them cruell iustice,
an hundred thousand he made anon tarise.

With Jeroboam he cast hym for to mete,
and all at once set in iopardye,
but Semeias the prophete bad hym iete.
And from the watte withdrew his partye:
and more the quarell for to iustifie,
of his people frowarde departyng
it was goddes wyl done for a punishing.

Touching the surplus of his gouernance,
his royall buyldyng of many fayre citie
his great riche famous suffisaunce.
Of wine and oyle hauing great plentie,
and how his empire encreased yeres thre,
eke how that time he rightfull was in dede
in Iosephus his story ye may rede.

Of his children bozne in right lyne,
eightene wiues as made is mencion,
I finde he had and many concubine,
Sonnes and daughters by procreation,
and how his riches and great possession,
that time encreased, as it is well knowe
to god aboue, while that he bare hym lowe.

But as this auctour maketh rehearse,
in his encrease and augmentation,
mekenes in heart in hym gan wast & fayle.
And proude entred with false presumption,
vertue despising and all religion,
after whose vices as sayeth the same boke,
wicked example of hym the people toke.

After the maners where they be good or yll
bled of princes in diuers regions,
the people is redy to blesse and fulfyll
fully the traces of their conditions:
for lordes may in their subiections,
so as them list who so can take hede,

to vice or vertue they subiects lede.

Thus Roboam for his transgressions
in Iosephus as it is deuised,
and for his frowarde false opinions,
Onely for he all vertue hath despyed,
of god he was rightfully chastised,
in Ierusalem his chief royall towne,
of his ennies besieged enuiron.

The kyng of Egypt a siege about hym layd,
with so great people that socour was there
albeit so that Roboam abrayde, (none,
And prayed god deliuer hym from his fone,
to auoide (of mercy) his ennies euerythynge
but god list not graunt his prayer,
but hym chastised like as ye shall here.

First his citie and his noble towne,
deliuered was, he knew no bet socour,
vnder a fayned false composition
for at their entryng boyde of all fauoure,
keepyng no couenaunt, toke all the treasour
within the temple, hauyng no pitie,
but ladde it home to Egypt their countrey.

And to rehearse it is a great dole,
how Roboam (as Iosephus doth declare,)
was inly proude and therewithall a foole,
And of all wisdom destitute and bare,
vnmertiable his people for to spare,
hating good counsayle, and so in his folly,
reignyng a foole, and so I let hym dye.

¶ Enuoye.

Philosophers concluden and deuise,
in their booke of olde experiance,
that counsailers, sad, expert, and wise,
True of their word, stable of their sentence
hasty nor recheles for no violence,
kepe and preserue the trowth I dare attaine
noblesse of princes fro mischiese & defame.

Hasty youth and rancour in contrary wyse,
which haue to wyll all they aduertence,
except themselfe all other men despyse,
through their vnbubled furious insolence
Nothing acquainted with wisdom & prudence
byng ayeinwarde, wherof they be to blame,
puttyng

putting his noblesse in mischief & defame

kyng Roboam agein ryght and iustice,
to yong folles yaued faith and most credence
cruelly his subiectes to chastice,
which put his people fro his beneuolence,
thzough ten kyntredes from his obedience,
which was to hym by record ful gret shame
puttyng his noblesse in mischief & defame

Noble princes doe wisely aduertise
in perseuering of your magnificence,
of olde expert not blent with couetise,
Take your counsaile and do the reuerence
Gyed as Argus in theyr hygh prouidence,
which conserue by report of good name,
noblesse of princes fro mischief & defame.

Chapter describing how princes being
heads of their comonties, should haue no-
ble chualtie, true iudges theyr comontye to
gouerne, &c.

The .iii. chapter.



What earthly thyng is
more deuenable
then of princes the
poine and bayneglorie

which went to stonde in theyr estates stable
As they the world had conquered by victorie,
and sodenly be put out of memory,
theyr fame clouded (alas) and their noblesse,
with a darke shadow of forgetfulnes.

Wherof cometh the famous clere shining
of Emperours in their consistories:
or wherof cometh their laude in reportyng,
haue þe clarkes haue wryten theyr histories
or whers wet now conquestes & histories,
or their triumphes, where should men the
nad wryters their prowes put in mind (find

Reken by all and first the worthy nyne,
in high noblesse which had neuer peers,
their marciall actes which clerely byd shine
their fame vpoorne aboue the nine spheres,
with loude soundes of famous clarkoners:
their glorious palmes yf they be wel pressed
by low labours of comons was first reised.

Make a likenes of these great ymages
curiously carue out by entayle,
head, armes, bodye, and theyr fresh visages
without fete or legges may not auayle
To stonde byright, for nedes they must faile,
and semblably subiectes in comontees
teise by noblesse of princes in theyr sees.

Is head & members in images be one stone
other of stocke by cumpas vndeuided,
and by proportion theyr fetures euerychone
Set in true order as nature hath prouided,
so þ all errors through craft be circicided:
the head set highest by custome as men know
the body amyd, the fete beneth lowe.

Mighty princes for theyr high renoune,
as most worthy shall occupye the head,
with wit, memory and tyen of reason,
To kepe theyr members fro mischief & dredd
like theyr degrees take of them good hede,
with clere foresight of a prudent thought
their fete preserve that they erre nought.

There must be handes & armes of defence,
which shall the ymage manly kepe and gite
from al assautes of foeyr violence,
Which shall be named noblesse of chualtie,
their true office iustly to magnifye,
sustain the churche & make them self strong
to se þ widowes nor maidens haue no wrog

Prudent iudges as it is skyl and ryght,
to punish wrong and surfetes to redresse,
in this ymage shall occupy the syght,
for loue or hate, by dome of rightwisenes,
for frende or foe his iudgementes dresse,
so egally the lawes to susteyne,
in their woakes that none errour be seyn.

Amid this ymage there is a body set,
an aggregate of people and degrees,
by perfit peace and vniue knet.
By the states that gouerne comontees:
as Mayores, prouostes, & Burgeis in citiez
marchauntes also which seke sundry lodes
in other craftes which liue by their hodes.

And as a body which that stant in health,
feleth no grief of no froward humours,

The second

to euery comon continueth in great wealth
which is demeaned to prudent gouernours
that can appease debates and errors,
the people kepe from all controuersie,
causynge their welfare to increase & multiply

This body must haue a soule of lyfe,
to quicke the members with ghostly motions
which shalbe made of folke contemplatiue,
The churche committed to theyr possessions
whiche by theyr holy conuersacions
and good example, shoulde as sterres shyne,
by grace and vertue the people to illumine.

Vpon the light of their conditions,
of this body dependeth the welfare,
for in their teachynge and predicacions
They shoulde trowth to high & lowe declare,
and in their office for no drede ne spare,
byes correct like as they are holde,
sith they ben herdes of Christes folde.

Folowynge vpon of entent full clene,
labourers, as ye haue heard deuised,
Shall this body bearen vp and sustayne
As fete & legges which may not be despised
for true labour is iustly auctorisid,
and nere the plough vpholde by traualle,
of kynges, princes, face wel al gouernayle.

Thus first if princes gouerned be by ryght
and knighthode suffer þ people to haue no
a trowth in iudges shew out his light (wroȝ)
And forth in cities with loue he draw along
and holy church in vertue be made strong,
and in his labour þ plough ne fein nought.
thā by proportiō this image is wel wrought

This matter whole for to exemplifye
kyng Roboam for a false oppression,
and for his wilful froward tyranny,
Lost a great partie of his region,
wherfore let princes consider of reason
god set the people for lordes auantage,
and not to be oppressed with seruage.

Vpon some princes Bochas doth complain
suche as haue a custome and manere,
again theyr subiectes vngodly to disdayne,
And of pride to shew them froward chere

counsaileth them to remember and lere,
as this Chapter doth finally deuise,
first out of labour all lordship did arise.

How Mutius Scaeuola slough an in-
nocent in steede of kyng Porcenna that layd
siege to Rome.

The .iiii. Chapter.



When king Porcenna with
his chivalrye,
agayn Romanes a
warre first began,

the towne besieging vpon eche partie,
with grete puissance brought out of Tusca
in the cite there was a knightly man:
Mutius Scaeuola which cast in their distress
to breake the siege through his high prowes

Let arme himself clene in plate and mayle,
for common profit to auance his corage,
kyng Porcenna proudly to assaile,
A tyme provided to his auantage,
through the siege to maken his passage,
and finally at his in comynge,
to open his person for to sleie the kyng.

But like as telleth Titus liuius,
where Porcenna sate in his royall see,
this Senatour, this manly Mutius,
Saw a prince of great auctoritie:
the kyng resembling clad in oo liuetye,
atwene decernynge no maner variaunce,
slough that prince of very ignoraunce.

But when he knew that he dyd fayle,
to slea Porcenna enemy to the towne,
and saw he had lost all his traualle,
He made a pitous lamentation;
because he dyd execution
of ignoraunce, ageyn his owne entent
to spare a tyrant and slea an innocent.

For which he was with himself full wrothe,
that he was found so neglygent in dede,
and with his hand vnto a fyre he goth,
Made it brenne bryght as any glede,
both tierue and bone and his flesch to shede,
his hand consuming on peeces here & yoder
and from his arme made it part a sonder.

And

And as the story declareth vnto vs,
this manly man, this noble senatour,
afore time was called Brutus,
which for the comon did many gret labour,
and for the vncouth hasty fell rigour
done to himselfe, the Romaynes all,
Scuruola they did him after call.

As much to say by language of that lond,
who take a right the exposition,
as a man which is without an hond,
and after hym by succession,
all his offsprynge were borne in the towne,
In remembraunce for to encrease his fame
Of Scuruola, bare after hym the name.

By this example and many other moe,
If men list their courages to awake,
They should sene what peril and what woe
for common profit men haue vnder take,
As whilom Brutus for Lucreces sake.
Chased Tarquyn for his transgression,
And kinges al out of Rome town.

Touching Lucrece, example of wisly trouth
How yong Tarquyn her falsly did oppresse
and after that, (which was to great a routh)
How she her selfe slough for heauines,
It nedeth not rehearse the proceste,
In that Chaucer, chief poete of Britayne,
Wrote of her life a legend souerayne.

Rehearsyng there among other thinges,
Eche circumstance and eche occasion,
Why Romaynes exiled spast they kynges
Prer to repgne after hym in they town
as olde Chronicles make mention,
Remēbyng eke thunkindly great outrage
By Aenee done, to Dido of Carriage.

Eke other stories which he wrote in his lyue
ful notably, with euery circumstance:
And they fates did piteously describe,
Like as they fil put them in remembraunce
wherefore if I should my penne auance,
after his making to put them in memozye,
men would deme it p̄sūpcion & beinglozy.

for as a starre in p̄sence of the sunne,

Leseth his fresshnes and hys clere light,
So my rudenes vnder skyes dumme,
Dareth ful lowe, and hath lost his sight,
To be compared agein the beames bright,
Of this poete, wherefore it wet but hapn,
Ching sayde by hym, to write it new agayn.

Howe Lucrece oppressed by Tar-
quin, slough her selfe.

The .v. Chapter.

But yet at Lucreces
sine I wil a while,
It wet pitie her story for to hyde,
O slouth the penne of my rude
idle:

But for her sake al matters set aside,
also my lord bad I should abyde.
By good auyse, at layser to translate,
The doleful proceste of her piteous fate.

Following the trace of Titus Lutus,
which wrote of her a declaracion,
Most lamētable, most doleful, most piteous,
where he descriueth the dolorous treason,
Of her constreyned false oppression,
Wrought & compassed by vnware violence
The light troubled of her clere conscience,

Her father whilom called Spurius,
Her worthy husbond named Collatin,
which by the luxurie and treason odious,
& vicious outrage of Iertus, proud Tarquyn
oppressed was and brought vnto her fyne,
whose deadly sorow in English for to make
Of piteous ruth, my penne I fele quake.

This said Tarquin, this euil auised knight
this slandered man most hateful for his dede
Came like a thefe (alas) vpon a night,
with naked sword when no man toke hede
vpon Lucrece she quakyng in her drede,
Lying abedde farre from her folkes all,
and knewe no refuge for helpe for to call.

I. i.

De

The second

Demensating in his froward intent,
On her beholding with a furious chere,
that with his sweorde but she would assent,
Her and a bope he would prent I fere,
suchone as was most ougly of manere,
Most vnkely of persone and of fame,
Thus he her thert for to claunder her name

But his intent when she did fele,
and sawe no meane of her woful chaunce,
the morow after she list nothing concele,
Told her husband wholly the gouernaunce,
Him requirynge for to doe vengeaunte
Upon this cryme sayd like a true wife,
she would her heart peice with a knyfe,

In this matter this was her fantaspe,
Better was to dye then to liue in shame,
and lasse wycke to put in iopardye,
her mortall body than her good fame,
when honour dyeth farewell a mans name:
Better it wer out of this life disseuer,
than claudious fame to flea a mā for euer

But to that purpose her husband said nay,
Her father also was therro contrary,
Makynge a promise without moze delay,
To doe vengeaunce how they wil not tary,
To her declaring with reasons debonary,
vnder these wordes trowth & right cōserued
to flea her self she hath no thing deserued,

For sodaynly and also vnadvised,
as a foule is trapped in the snare,
By vnware fraude vpon thee practised,
thou wer decriued playnly to declare,
Hauing this conceit hard is to repare
The name of them which falsly be defamed
when wrong report & high renoun hath Ma-

(med

Touching thy person I dare affirme & seyn
that it wer a maner impossible,
and like a thing which neuer yet was seyn,
that thy wo:shippe was found corruptible,
but stedfast aye and indeuisible,
Vnderparted vertue and made strong,
and now desirous tauēge thy pietous w:dg.

On thine inuerte we shal auenged be,

Considered first the deadly beautiesse
which thou sufferdest by great aduersitie,
when the auoutour thy beauty dyd oppresse,
And reioysing by a false glauinessse,
Maugre thy will as a thefe by night,
thee encumbred of very force and might,

But if thou wouldest leaue al thy mourning
and restrayn thy importable woe,
None shouldest thou se an egall punyſhing
Upon thy most froward mortall foe,
To warne al other they shal no moze dole
In chastising of false auoutrepe,
the and thy renoun of right to magnifye,

What was defacing to thy true intent,
though his youth vnbydded went at large,
So for tenfoure a cely innocent,
whose wickednes ought to beare the charge
and we of right thy conscience discharge,
the soye vnkely of his false pleasaunce,
with double palme thine honoz doth auant

Conceiue and see O thou my Lucretie,
How that reason and good discrecion,
shoulde thy trouble and thy mourning cease
Of right restreyn thy opinion,
So recklesly to doe punition,
with kniue in hand to flea thy selfe (alas)
for others gylt, and didst no trespass.

Let be Lucretie, let be al thy dole,
cease thy complaynt and thy woe restreyn,
shoulde I fro thee liue alone all sole,
and thy death perpetually complayne
to put thy father in importable payne
Of our welfare be not so reckles,
to dye and leaue our chyldre motherles.

Of prudence eke thou oughtest for to see,
and aduertise onely of reason,
though of force thy body corrupt be,
thy soule inward and thynne intention,
franchised been from all corruption,
Offence is none consioze in thine intent,
But wil and heart yeue therto full consent

Thou wer naked in thy bed lpyng,
Alone vnware sleeping and voyde of myght,
Suspect

Suspiciousles al of his comping,
that time namely, because that it was night
a feareful woman and he an hardy knight,
albeit so vnknighly was his dede,
with naked sweord tallayle thy womanhede

He might thy body by force wel oppresse,
By sleighty wayes that he had sought,
But wele wot I for al his surdineffe,
he might neuer haue mastery of thy thought
The body yelded, the heart yelded nought:
ye wet tweyn thou feble, & he ryght strong,
thy trouth enforced, he woꝝker of the wꝝong

where mightest þ haue greter praisse oꝝ laud
all right considꝛed, trouth and equitie,
first couꝛterpeised his foꝛce & sleighty fraude
Then to perseuer in leminitie,
with thought vnchanged and in fragilitie,
Of womanhede to haue an heart stable,
what thing in the might be moꝛe comẽdable

It is wel knowe thou wet of heatt ay one,
to al false lustes contrarꝝe in gouernaunce,
moꝛe like an ymage carued out of stone,
than like a woman fleshy of pleasaunce,
the tyrant fond the in chere & countenaunce
whiche euer after by womanly victoꝛy.

Shalbe ascriued to thine encrease of gloꝛy

Thy father Brutus hath thee wel excused,
My selfe also thy bloud and thy kynrede,
On this matter let no moꝛe be mused,
To slea thy self oꝝ doe thy sydes blede,
Certes Lucrece thou hast ful litle nede.
It wet great wꝝong by all our iudgement,
to spare a tyrant and slea an innocent.

Thy selfe to murder to some it woulde seme
thou wet gylty, wheras thou art cleint:
Diuerse wittes diuersly wil deme,
Repoꝛt thing thou none didst mene,
foꝛ which thou shalt patiently sustene,
Till thy chast wisely innocence,
May see him punished foꝛ his violence.

Folke wil not deme a persone innocent,
which wilfully when he is not culpable,
Yeldeth himselfe to death by iudgement,
and neuer was afoꝛe of no gylt portable.

his owne dome vpon himselfe bengeable,
causeth þ people, tho their repoꝛt be nought
To deme a thyng that neuer was done ne
(wꝝought)

To be auenged vpon thine oꝝwn life,
In excusing of thy deadly fame,
To shew thou art a true perfect wyfe,
wening by death to geat the a name,
In this deuise thou art greatly to blame,
where þ yet knowest thine honoꝛ clerely shꝛ
to yue þ people matter to deuine. (ne

And with that woꝛd Lucrece did abyꝛde,
ful deadly pale both of loke and of chere,
to them agayn euen thus she sayd:
Let be husband, let be my father dere,
Speaketh no moꝛe to me of this mattere,
Lest men dempt in hyndꝛyng of my name
I dread death moꝛe then false defame.

Your counsel is I shal my life conserue
to soꝛow and flaundꝛe, but to no gladnes,
But lasse wicke is at one houre to sterue,
than euer languish in soꝛowe & heauynesse,
death maketh an end of al woꝛldly distresse
and it was sayd sith ful yꝛe agoe,
Better is to dye, then euer to liue in woe.

when that woꝛship in any creature,
Is slayn and dead by flaundꝛous repoꝛt:
Bet is of death the dreadful peyne endure,
then by false nopsle aye liue in discomfort,
where newe, & newe defame hath his resoꝛt
Neuer dyeth, but quickeneth by thoutꝛage
Of hateful tonges & venemous language.

Doe your deuoyze to halow & make stable,
the chast chambꝛes of wisely gouernaunce,
foꝛ in this case if it be variable.
On false auoutꝛie foꝛ to done bengeaunce
There shal folow euerlasting remẽbꝛaunce
how true spousaple as ye haue herd deuised
In your citie booke and not chastised.

If ye be found in such case negligent, (ge
to punish auoutoꝛs of right as is your chaꝛ
through your slouth as ye wet of assent,
luxurie vnbridled shal rũne abzode at large
who shal then your conscience discharge:
O what woman stond in sekernes,

Al, Of Lucrece

The second

Of Lucrece affoorded the clennes.

O deare husband what toy should it be
to thine estate in any maner place,
Lyke as thy wyfe for to cherishe me,
Or in thine armes me goodly to embrace:
the gilt horrible considered and trespase,
By Tarquin done (alas and wel away,) tere
which in my p^{er}son may neuer be washed away

And father mine, how shouldest thou me cal
after this day thine owne daughter dere,
which am (alas) refuse of woemen al,
that to thy pleasance was whilom most en-
within thy house whā I did lere, tere
By clere example of manifold doctrine,
All that pertained to vertuous discipline.

Which I haue lost now in my dayes olde,
Dispeyred it to recure agayn,
Mine owne childe I dare them not behold
because þe wombe in which þe they haue leyn,
defouled is and pollute in certein,
which was toforn in chastitie conserued,
Chastite the auouter as he hath deserued.

And for my parte to speake in woordes fewe,
Lenger to liue I haue no fantasie.
For where should I out my face shewe,
Or dare appeare in any company,
With a darke spot of false auoutrie,
Whal euer I create whether it be false or true
into mine hindring the flaundre to renewe

Lust affoorded hath a false appetite,
Of fraytie included in nature,
Whaugre the will there foloweth a delpte,
as some folkes sayn in euey creature.
Good fame lost full hard is to recure,
And sith I may my harmes not redresse,
to you in open my gylt I wil confesse.

Albe I was agayn my toyl oppressed,
there was a maner constrained lust in dede
which for no power might not be redressed,
for feblenes I stode in so great drede,
for which offence death shall be my mede,
Sith leuer I haue with some edge tole
to slea my selfe, than liue in flaundre & dole.

O father mine, spare and haue piete,
And dere husband rue on mine offence,
Goddess and goddeses called of chastite,
to my trespase graunt an indulgence:
For of my gylt to make a recompence,
where that Venus gate in me auantage,
death shall redresse, & chastite mine outrage

For if I should maken any delay,
To perce my brest by Harpeues of a knyfe,
Then would deme and say fro day to day,
to make my flaundre more open and ryfe,
How that I was more tender of my lyfe
the of my worchip which wer to gret shame
to loue my life more then my good name.

In this matter no witnes is so good,
to put away all false suspicion,
as with a knife to shede my heart blood,
I might not make a better purgacion
to all folke that haue dyscrecion,
Than finally by my death to excuse,
The gilt horrible, of which men me accuse.

Goe furth my soule pure and immortall,
Chief witnes of mine innocence,
Colore tho Judges which been infernall,
First Minos king, to deme my conscience,
With Rhadamanthus to yewe a sentence,
Like my desert that it might be sene,
In wisely trowth how that I was cleue.

Thou erthly body which throw thy saynes
wer to auoutrey ful great occasion,
of thy bloud shed out the rednes,
And by thy sides, lat it raike adowne,
Stiere and exite the people of this towne,
To done their deuet within a litle while,
For loue of Tarquin al kinges to exile.

And first I pray my husband most entere,
Of this vengeaunce to make no delay,
with helpe and succour of my father dere,
To punish thauoutour in al the hast ye may
Lat him take his wages and his pay,
like as ye see and plainly now conceue,
For his offence the death I doe receue.

And sodeinly or they might aduert,
She toke a knife and with great violence,
Through

Through the brest euen vnto the heart,
He made it glide there was no resistance
full pale & dead fyl doune in their presence
And by occasion of this piteous dede,
Carquin exiled and wholy his kinrede.

For which cause by record of writing,
was there neuer in Rome the cite,
After that day no man crowned kyng,
as in Chronicles ye may behold and see,
Thus for luxurie and their crueltie,
their tyrannye and theyr false extortion,
They were exiled out of Rome town.

Howe Rome after was gouerned, and
Virginia by her father slayne.

The. vi. Chapter.

Gouerned after by other officers,
As is remembred in Titus Linius,
Called Decemviri of diuers chronicles
among which there was one Appius
A iudge vntreue, proude, and luxurious,
which through the cite & stozz bereth wit-
Behatid was for his great fallnesse (nesse)

And once it fel as he kest his loke
vpon a maide, most inly fatte of sight,
A false desire within his heart he toke,
Her to disuse ageyn all skill and right.
And she was daughter to a worthy knight
full manly found in his dedes all,
And Virginius the Romans dyd him call.

whose goodly doughter & stozz doth vs lere
was after him for his noble fame,
Virginia called most goodly and entere,
and for this cause she bare the same name
But Appius full greatly was to blame
which hath cōspired through his great fall-
If he might her beauty to oppresse (nesse)

This iudge vntreue both in thought & dede,
Of lawe vnrighful sought oute occasion,
Made a sergeant of his to procede,

Again this maide to take an action,
Cleime her his seruauant by false collusion:
and thys was done by Appius of entent,
That he on her might geue a iudgement.

And by this mene in hys false delite
thought he might her beauty best disuse,
So to accomplishe his fleschly appetite
He being feble the action to refuse
Wherupon her father gan to muse,
fully conceyued of Appius the manere
In her defence wrought as ye shal here.

When Appius had geuen hys iudgement,
Again thys mayde whych afore hym stode,
Her manly father most knightly of entent,
toke her apart as he thought it good,
And wpyth a knife shed her heart blood,
Dempt it better to slea her in clemesse,
Than & tyraunt her beautie should oppresse

Thus whole conserued was her chastitie
and vndefouled was her maidenhed
for Virginius to kepe her honestye,
Spared nothing to make her sides blede
But Appius for this horrible dede,
& Decemviri through his unhappie chaunce,
Had in that cite neuer after gouernaunce

As the stozz also maketh mencion,
Appius ashamed of hys dede,
Slough him self fettered in prison,
Of a false iudge, lo here the final mede,
And tho Tribuni in Rome gan succede,
Twene right and wrong trulie to decerne
And Romayn lawes iustly to gouerne.

Men may here se as in a myrroure clere
estates chaunged for their great offences,
And by some poze persons singulere
Princes put doune fro their magnificences
which not cōsider in their great excellences
Howe god ordeineth his yard in iudg wile
The poze some while & pompous to chastise

Hereon to shewe example anone right,
Marked in stozz for a notable thing,
Pausanias of Grece a manly knight,
Of Macedonye slough Philip the king,
At a table were he was sitting,

I.iii.

Itwene

The second

Attene Alexander and Olimpiades
Hys wronge sauenge ampydes of al þ pries

By a seruant, loe what it doth araise,
Treason purposed afore in the pozaile

The Salmator a knight of lowe degree,
for wronges done inespiciall,
Of manly force grounded on equitee,
Slough of Chartage the prince Hasdruball
Wherch brother was vnto Duke Hannibal,
beside a riuer as they mette in battale,
Called Metacre which renneth in Itale.

Noble Princes your reason doe applie,
which ouer the people haue domination,
So prudently to gouerne them and guye,
that loue and dread by true affection,
Preserue their heartes from false rebellio,
sith to your highnesse no thing maye more
tha true subiectio expert in þ pozaile (preuail

Wherfore ye princes if ye list long endure,
be ryght wel ware be ye neuer so strong,
In your lordshippes not to much assure
Or surqued by the pozaile to doe wronge,
in your discreacion conceyuing euer ambyg
Greatest dreade is that may your state assail
whan subiection doth in the people faile.

Howe Hieroboam king of Israel for
Idolatrye and disobedience, came to
a mischeuous ende.

The .vii. Chapter.

Lenuoye.

This tragedye declareth in partye,
What mischief foloweth of extortion,
The of spousebrech and of auourtye
By Tarquin done through false oppression
vnto Lucrece within Rome town,
Kynge exiled for such misgouernasse,
and false outrages done to the pozaile.

NExt these stozpes
in Bochas as I fynde,
there did appeare
vnto hys presence,

Kinges sixe, him praying to haue mynde
vpon their fall by vnware violence,
from their estates of royall excellence:
And tofoze all I find that there came,
Of all Israell king Hieroboam.

The Appius of wilfull tyrannye,
agein Virginia toke an accion,
Through a false lust of stoward lecherie,
blent and far derked his memozy and reaso
Which was chief cause and occasion,
why the estate of Decemuir byd fayle,
Through false outrage done to the pozaile.

Vnto mine auctoure he began to declare
his deadly complaint with a pale face,
His great mischeues and hys euill face,
and howe he fil down fro his kinglye place,
through greet unhappis which did his hight
as this stozp plainly hath deuised (I trace
for his offences howe he was chastised.

King Philip lost scepter and regalie,
of Macedony the famous region
vnwarely slayne amyd hys chualtepe.
Sitting at meate within his chief donged
and greatest cause of his falling down,
Was whan fortune his pride byd assaile,
for false outrages done to the pozaile.

In Idolater he was as it is told,
reised by auters of very force and might
Set therupon two calues of pure golde,
byd them worship agein all skill and ryght.
Gaue cruel example in the peoples sight
whan he did with fumes and ensence,
To false Idoles vndue reuerence.

Duke Hasdruball whome bokes magnifye,
vp to the heauen for his high renoun,
Whose triumphes taught vp to the skye,
and had al Chartage in his subiection,
yet was he slaine vnwarely by treason.

From the temple he made the people gone,
prieses ordeyned after his owne guile
forsoke the tribe of Leuy and Jacou,
and vpon Bethel his offering gan deuise:
And while he byd vnlefull sacrifice
God that wel knew of him the false intent
from Ierusalem a prophete to hym sent,
which

Which him rebuked of his misgouernance
 And gan the perils to him specifie,
 Told him afoze for to do vengeance
 of Dauids kin, that should come one Josie,
 which should his prestes that falsly could lye
 Manly destroy and slea them al at ones,
 and into ashes byenne them fleche & bones

And in token of their destruction,
 the prophete toid among them all,
 Howe his alters should bowe down
 and his Idoles from their stags fall:
 whom that fooles their goddes falsly call
 which haue no power to helpe in no manere
 for they may neyther see, fele, nor here.

After that this prophete Jadan had told
 these saied signes plainly to the kynge.
 His altar fill on peris many folde,
 and ouerturned backward his offeringe:
 for which the king furiously loking,
 put forth hys hand the story maketh mind
 Bad is men the prophete take and bynde.

And as he his arme caught out on length,
 had no power it to withdraue again,
 wex vnweldy cōtracte, and lost his strength
 and whan the king these tokens hath seyn,
 And how þe prophete spake no word in vein
 greatly astonied could say no more,
 But praide Jadan hys arme for to restore.

And by hys prayer and medtacion,
 of his arme (after this vengeance)
 There was anone made restitution,
 and of his peyne feleth algeaunce,
 for which the king with great instaunce,
 Requyred him to be so gracious
 That day to abide and dyne in hys house.

But the prophete would not assent,
 nother with him to eate nor to dunke,
 Toke hys assc and forth anone he went,
 on whose departing the king gan soze think
 And fantasies gan in his hert synke,
 specially whan that he toke hede
 Of al his tokes, how they were true in dede

God bad Jadan in this greate empuse,
 To Hieroboam first whan he was lent,

eate nor dunke in no maner wyse
 In that cytye while he was present:
 But another prophete of entent
 ful olde and ligh on that other side,
 compelled hath this Jadan to abide.

Him afozsing by false collusion
 To resozt again vnto the Cytye,
 and to make no contradiction,
 with hym to dyne of fraternitie,
 to him affirming it may no other be
 for god sent him as to his frend & brother,
 to abide with him & plainly with none other

Of frendshede and true affection,
 within his house to shewe his presence,
 for a repast and a refectiō,
 This goddes wil and fully hys sentence
 to whose wordes the prophete yaued credēce
 And as they sate at diner both in fere,
 God vnto Jadan sayed in this manere.

For the breaking of my commaundement,
 Thy great offence and thy transgression,
 that thou hast be so wyful negligent,
 Thou shalt endure this punicion:
 Be al to toyne and rent of a Lion,
 and in thy countrey thou shalt not recure,
 with prophetes to haue thy sepulture.

Of which thing this Jadan nothing faines
 gan to depart wryth a ful heauy thought,
 Of a Lion amyd of the way slaine,
 but hys Ille harmyd was right nought,
 A full great meruaile if it be wel sought,
 the Lyon sitting as in their defence
 And kept them both from al violence.

All these tokens myght not conuert
 Hieroboam fro his inquite,
 Goddes warning hym list not to aduert,
 nor by his prophete corrected for to be,
 Wherefore god would that he should se,
 Vengeance folowe as it fel in dede,
 Both vpon him and his kinrede.

A sonne he had which fel in great sickness
 called a dia the boke doth specifie,
 for which þe king bade þe Quene her dysse
 To

The second

To goe disguised without company,
Vnto a prophete which called was Ahpe,
Him to require truly for to saye,
Whether the child should liue or dye.

And in his inward sight contemplatife,
God shewed him by clere inspection,
Of Hieroboam howe she was the wife.
For al her sleighty transformatiō,
For nouthen fallas nor false decepciō,
May be to god but it be perceiued
For he ne his prophets may not be deceiued

She came to him in a straunge weede,
At the entering he called her by her name,
Come forth (quod he), for it is no nede
to hide thy self, as it were for shame,
For the trowth trulpe to attame,
God hath geuen me fully knowleging
What þ shalt answere & say vnto the king

Say plainly to him & marke it in thy thou-
th thy reparte these wordes reherling (ght
Sith god hath made the & reised the bp of
fro a seruant to raigne as a king (nought
fro Dauids kin most worthily reigninge
Partyd the kingdome & geuen it vnto thee
And thou unkind therof canst no thing see,

His great goodnes is out of remembraunce,
fully forgotten of thy froward prude,
In false goddes put thine affiaunce,
God aboue falsely set aside.
Wherfore from the anone he shall deuide
Thy kingdome whole without more delay,
And fro thy line the crowne take away.

And for thou hast to thy confusion,
thy faith vnfaithfull to false goddes take,
wrongly refused thy religion,
Of god aboue, and plainly him forsake,
This is þ ende which that thou shalt make,
thee and thy kyn no man may socoure,
Fleish, skyn, and bone, houndes shall deuour

And at the entering home to the Citte,
thy sonne and his thou shalt find him dede
of al his kin though there were none but he
found very good take therof good hede:
of which answer þ quene fil in great dyde

Enteing the Citte in espe ciall
Her childe was dead and lay cold by þ wal

Of this warning the king toke none hede,
but made him reby with full great aparaile,
forty thousand with him he dyd lede
Of manly men armed in plate and made,
with king Abias for to haue a great battail
the which Abias that was of Iuda king
Vnto hys people saied at their meting.

(more)

O noble knightes haue one thyng in me-
no man vanquisheth platly to confude,
with great people, nor getteth victorie,
with nounters heaped nor great multitude
False Idolaters god will them delude,
Not suffer his seruauntes þ ben true & sad
Of miscreauntes to bene ouerlad.

Triumphe is none founde of newe or olde,
in these ydoles of stone nor silver shene
Nor in calues of metall made, or golde,
peue to that partye which vntuly mene:
and sith that god knoweth our quarel cleue
There is none hope, force none nor might,
with them that ground the a cause agein

(ryght)

Hope of victorie standeth by rightwysnesse
of them that cast their sinful life ramende,
And list forsake wrong and al falsnesse,
And with whole heart vnto the lord entend
which shal this day his grace to you send
Dure true cause truly to termyne
And thus Abias gan hys tale fine.

His prestes gan their trumpes for to blowe
and king Abias through his high renoune,
Gaue to his people both to highe and lowe
full manly confort and consolacion,
And fifty thousand by computacion,
were slaine that day which ful proudly came
Vpon the party of king Hieroboam.

And al the party of Hieroboam
and al that were of his line borne,
After this bataille vnto mischief came,
whā they were slayne, w houndes al to toyne
As the prophete had them told before:
But for the king toke therof none hede
with sode vengeaunce god quit him his mede

¶ Howe

Howe zareas king of Ethiope
was slayn in battayle.

The. viii. Chapter.

After hym to Bochas did appeare,
Next in ordre pleynly as I fynd,
One zareas with a sorowful cheare,
And he was king of Ethiope and Inde,
Whose yen wer almost with weping blind
Praying intue auctour his vnhappy chaunce
With other woeful to put in remembraunce

And that he would record by scripture,
His sodayn fall and dolorous distresse,
And his defamous hateful disconfiture,
With the dispoyning of his great richesse:
And howe kyng Ala through his noblesse,
and his people as he did them assaile,
hath him venquished and slayn in battayle.

Howe Adab king of Jerusalem
lost scepter and crowne.

The. ix. Chapter.

If Israell than came the woefull
kyng,
called Adab, ful pietously weping
Unto Bochas his compleynthe
rehearsyng,
How kyng Baasa by subtyll false werkyng,
with sodayn slaughter caused his falling,
whan fortune can falsely on him frowne,
and toke vnusully from him scepter & crown

Howe the vengeable Prince
zambrias set a toure on fyre
and byent himselfe.

The. x. Chapter.

Next came zambzi, a Prince full
vengeable,
Whiche slough kyng Ela by
false treason,
That found also fortun full vnstable:
for this zambzi of entencion,
hath murdred him within the chief dongeon

Of his castle, with a full great route,
as he vnwarely layd a siege about.

But Amri, a prince of ful great might,
Came into Charfa a famous strong citee,
and cast him pleynly like a woozthy knight,
On this samer auenged for to be,
him to destroy without mercy or piete:
But in a towre as zambzi went,
Set it a fyre, and so himselfe he byent.

Of king Achab and Iesabel
his wyfe.

The. xi. Chapter.

With sighes sore, and wepyng
importable,
Came kyng Achab vnto John
Bochas,
whose heartly sorow was incomparable,
and compleyning full oft, he sayd (alas)
Beseching him to wyte his woeful caas,
Compyle his falling and the fate ptere,
Of Achalia his own daughter dere.

To god about most contrarious,
this Achab was in al his gouernaunce,
and had a wife cruel and lecherous.
Called Iesabel which set al her pleasaunce
On Gods prophetes for to do vengeaunce:
In the byble their malice men may see,
and ydolaters they wer both he and she.

God for their trespasses as it was wel seyn,
aforeshewed by true prophete.
Sent thre yere neither dewe ne reyn
Upon the earth, their grayn to multiplie,
Till est agein by prayer of help,
Holesom waters from heauen gan descend
which gaue the cause their cursed life tamed

But his wife that cursed Iesabel,
to eche thing hateful which was diuine,
an hundred prophetes she slough in Israell
Unto Baal for they would not encline:
and she also slough Naboth for his vyne,
through whose outrage and false oppression
Achab was brought to his confusion.

Of hys

The second

To goe disguised without company,
Vnto a prophete which called was Ahpe,
Him to require truly for to saye,
Whether the child should liue or dye.

And in his inward sight contemplatife,
God shewed him by clere inspection,
Of Hieroboam howe he was the wise.
For al her slepyghty transformatioun
For nouthen fallas nor false deception,
May be to god but it be perceiued
For he ne his prophets may not be deceiued

She came to him in a straunge weede,
At the entering he called her by her name,
Come forth (quod he), for it is no nede
to hide thy self, as it were for shame,
For the trowth trulye to attame,
God hath geuen me fully knowleging
What þu shalt answer & say vnto the king

Say plainly to him & marke it in thy thou-
in thy repaire these wordes reherling (ght
Sith god hath made the & reised the bp of
fro a seruant to raigne as a king (nought
fro Dauids kin most worthyly reigninge
Partyd the kingdome & geuen it vnto thee
And thou unkind therof canst no thing see,

His great goodnes is out of remembraunce,
fully forgotten of thy froward proude,
In false goddes put thine affiaunce,
God aboue falsely set aside.
Wherfore from the anone he shall deuide
Thy kingdome whole without more delay,
And fro thy line the crowne take away.

And for thou hast to thy confuson,
thy faith vnfaithfull to false goddes take,
wrongly refused thy religion,
Of god aboue, and plainly him forsake,
This is þe ende which that thou shalt make,
thee and thy kyn no man may socoure,
Flesh skyn, and bone, houndes shall deuour

And at the entering home to the Citie,
thy sonne and his thou shalt find him dede
of al his kin though there were none but he
Found very good take therof good hede:
of which answer þu quene til in great dyede

Entering the Citie in especiall
Her childe was dead and lay cold by þu waie

Of this warning the king toke none hede,
but made him reby with full great aparaile,
forty thousand with him he dyd lede
Of manly men armed in plate and made,
with king Abias for to haue a great battail
the which Abias that was of Iuda king
Vnto hys people saied at thei meting.

(more)

O noble knightes haue one thyng in me-
no man banquisheth plarly to confude,
with great people, nor getteth victorie,
with noubbers heaped nor great multitude
False Idolaters god will them delude,
Not suffer his seruantes þu ben true & sad
Of miscreantes to bene ouerlad.

Triumphe is none founde of newe or olde,
in these ydoles of stone nor siluer shene
Nor in calues of metall made, or golde,
yeue to that party which vntuly mene:
and sith that god knoweth our quarel cleue
There is none hope, force none nor might,
with them that ground the cause agein

(ryght)

Hope of victorie standeth by rightwisnesse
of them that call their sinful life ramende,
And list forsake wrong and al fa'snesse,
And with whole heart vnto the lord entend
which shal this day his grace to you send
Durc true cause truly to termynne
And thus Abias gan hys tale fine.

His prestes gan their trumpes for to blowe
and king Abias through his high renoune,
Gaue to his people both to highe and low
full manly confort and consolacion,
And fifty thousand by computacion,
were slaine that day which ful proudly came
Vpon the party of king Hieroboam.

And al the party of Hieroboam
and al that were of his line borne,
After this bataille vnto mischief came,
whā they were slayne, th houndes al to toyne
As the prophete had them told before:
But for the king toke therof none hede
with sode vengeaunce god quit him his mede

¶ Howe

Howe zareas king of Ethiope
was slayn in battayle.

The. viii. Chapter.

After hym to Bochas did appeare,
Next in ordre pleyndly as I fynd,
One zareas with a sorowful cheare,
And he was king of Ethiope and Inde,
whose eyen wer almost with weping blind
praying mune auctour his vnhappy chaunce
with other woeful to put in remembraunce

And that he would record by scripture,
his todayn fall and dolorous distresse,
and his defamous hateful disfigure,
with the dyspoiling of his great riches:
And howe kyng Ala through his noblesse,
and his people as he did them assaile,
hath him venquished and slayn in battayle.

Howe Nadab king of Jerusalem
lost scepter and crowne.

The. ix. Chapter.

If Israell than came the woefull
kyng,
called Nadab, ful pietously weping
Unto Bochas his compleynthe
rehearsyng,
How kyng Baasa by subtyll false werkynge,
with sodeyn slaughter caused his falling,
whan fortune can falsely on him crowne,
and toke vnusully from him scepter & crown

Howe the vengeable prince
zambrias set a toure on fyre
and bzent himselfe.

The. x. Chapter.

Next came zambzi, a prince full
vengeable,
Whiche slough kyng Ela by
false treason,
That found also fortunz full vnstable:
for this zambzi of entencion,
hath murtherd hym within the chief dongeon

Of his castle, with a full great route,
as he vnwaitepy layd a siege about.

But Amel, a prince of ful great might,
Came into Tharsa a famous strong citee,
and cast him plemly like a woozthy knight,
On this samti auenged for to be,
him to destroy without mercy or pietie:
But in a towre as zambzi went,
Set it a fyre, and so himselfe he bzent.

Of kyng Achab and Jeshabel
his wyfe.

The. xi. Chapter.

With sighes sore, and wepyng
importable,
Came kyng Achab vnto John
Bochas,
whose heartly sorow was incomparable,
and compleyning full oft, he sayd (alas)
Beseching him to wyte his woeful caas,
Comple his falling and the face yfere,
Of Achalia his own daughter dere.

To god aboute most contrarious,
this Achab was in al his gouernaunce,
and had a wife cruel and lecherous.
Called Jeshabel which set al her pleasaunce
On Gods prophetes for to do vengeaunce:
In the byble their malice men may see,
and ydolaters they wer both he and she.

God for their trespasses as it was wel seyn,
afoze shewed by true prophetic.
Sent thre yere neither dewe ne reyn
Upon the earth, their grayn to multiplie,
Till eft agein by prayer of help,
Holesom waters from heauen gan descend
which gaue the cause their cursed life tamed

But his wife that cursed Jeshabel,
to eche thing hateful which she was diuine,
an hundred prophetes she slough in Israell
Unto Baal for they would not encline:
and she also slough Naboth for his vyne,
through whose outrage and false oppression
Achab was brought to his confusion.

Of hys

The second

Of his enemies outraped in battayle,
With a sharpe arrow caught his fatal wound
Till all his bloud by bledying did fayle,
about his chayre with many droppes round,
that the wordes wer full true found
Of Helias, which tolde hym as it shode,
that hungry houndes should lick his blood.

In a cite than called Jeruſael,
Down from a towre toynd to a wall,
The ſayd queene called Jeſabel,
was cruel caſt, and had a deadly fall, (all
touching theſe miſchies for ſhe was cauſe of
beware ye princes, remembryng al your lues,
Reſchew falſe counſel yee by your lues

Of queene Athalia for her
tyranny ſlayne.

The .xii. Chapter.

Next to Ahab in order did ſue,
Athalia with doleful countenance
Bochas beſeching as ſhe thought
it due,

Her ſodayne fall to put in remembrance,
ſours and chief roote of ſorrow & miſchance
Uſurpacion and of falſe couetiſe,
Like as her ſtory hereafter ſhal deuiſe.

She was oppreſſed by ſauour in theſe thinges
For father by other, and alſo her huſbond,
wer in that time ſcheone crowned kynges,
with ſcepter & ſword as ye ſhal vnderſtand
Many enuiſes theſe dayes tooke on hand:
and how fortune theſe highnes did aſſaile,
I caſt ſhortly to make rehearſaile.

She fil of fortune in the vnhappy boundes
fiſt whan her father was w an arrow dead
his blud by licked with cruel hōgry hōdes,
about his chayre renning down ſul crab,
his body pale laye, who that toke hede,
Like a careyn, naked and diſpoyled,
with ſoule black earth, amid þ field pſoyled

Cauſe of another vnhappy heauineſſe,
and of her deadly deſolation,
was the people ſell þ did them dyeſſe,

Of Ahab in theſe rebellion,
again her huſbond of intencion,
to robbe his treaſour to theiſe auantage,
and his riches by outrageous pillage.

Some of hys meyne they put in priſon,
there was again them made no defence,
ſpared nother cite, borough nor town:
Slough man and child by ſturdy violence,
her lord infect with ſodayn peſilence,
Conceiued fully by his malady,
there was no geyn but he muſt needs dye.

After his death moſt wretched and odible,
his body corrupt, his bowels ſpl downe,
Of his careyn the ſtench was ſo horrible,
the ayre infect about him euiltron,
with ſo great horroz and putrefaction,
that no man might abyde nor endure,
to bring his body vnto ſepulture.

Her thyrd vnhappe wherof ſhe was ful ſain
that fortune liſt her eſt aſſaile,
Made her vncle king Joſam to be ſlayne
with an arrow, as he fled in battayle,
ſhe ſuppoſing grea'ly it ſhould auayle,
Like a woman moſt furious and wode,
ſhe of king David ſlough al the royal blode

Her purpoſe was to gouerne all the realme,
Alone her ſelfe to haue domination,
to reigne in Iuda and Jeruſalem,
This Athalia by uſurpacion,
and for that cauſe in her intencion,
with mortal ſwoord ſhe made al tho to ſine
that wer deſcended from David down by line

Except one Joas there left none alior,
Child of a yere, ſonne of king Ochoſie,
Whom Joſabeth the ſtory doth deſcriue,
Of very prettye caught a fantaſy,
the child to ſaue that he ſhal not dye,
from the malice of Athalia,
and ſhe was wyl: to biſhop Joſada.

She & this biſhop w whole hert & entiere,
kept this child in ſul ſecre wyſe,
within the temple, the ſpace of ſeuene yere,
And in the ſeuenth, the ſtory doth deuiſe,
Joſada toke on him this empyſe,

Young

Young Joas within a certayn day,
By iust title to crowne him if he may.

His messengers he sendeth out anon,
Of princes tribunes gan a counsel call,
Of priestes eke, and Leuites euerychone:
And whan he had discused to them all,
Whole his intent, thus it is befall,
Swoyne and assented as it was sitting,
That young Joas shalbe crowned king.

for by promise which that is diuine,
(Quod Iosada) if ye take hede,
God hath beheled to Dauid and his lyne,
and assured vnto his kinrede,
In Ierusalem how they shal succede,
And though Joas be yong & tender of might
he to þe crowne hath neuer the lasse right.

In this matter I will not that ye slepe,
But to shew your true diligence,
On foure parties the temple for to kepe,
That no man entre by no violence,
and in the middes by royal excellence,
(Quod this Byshop) no man shal vs let,
On Joas head a crowne for to set.

And wha eche thing was brought to þe point
his hygh estate to increase and magnifye,
the people anon whan þe he was anoynt,
What Rer they began to crye.
And whan Athalia gan this thing espye,
for very yre, and the sodayn wonder,
Of melancoly her clothes cut asunder.

Ran to the temple and gan make a fray,
with her meyne and to crye aloud,
Bad them goe slea and make no delay,
The yong king in all the hall they coude,
Her betwixt hid vnder a couert cloude,
All at ones her purpose to recure,
By sodayn malice she gan that day discure.

The temple kept entre had she none,
People ordeyned awayting for the nones,
And of she might any further gone,
Clenly armed the Centurions,
The cruel queene assayled at at ones,
and of her malice to wyte a short tale,
they slough her after, of Cedron in the vale

Loe here the end of murder and tyrannye,
Loe here the end of vsurpation,
Loe here the end of false conspiracye,
Loe here the end of false presumption,
boyn rightful heres, wroghtly to put the down
o noble priees though god made you strong
to rightful heres beware ye doe no wrong.

Cenuoye.

These tragedies to estates and degrees,
fully decriat eth the deceptions
Of fortunes false mutabilitees,
Shewed in prouinces cities & eke townes,
Princes vnwarely lost theyr possessions
which from theyr sinnes in no maner wise
had of god warning, and list not for to rise.

Mighty kynges cast down from their sees,
Lost theyr lyues and theyr regions,
Unwarely throw from theyr felicities,
Hieroboam for his oppressions,
and for his froward false oblations
Done to ydoles his slopy dorth deuyse,
had of god warning, and list not for to rise.

Ahab also had great aduersitees,
through false counsaile and exhortacions,
of Jezabel, roote of iniquities,
Did to his people great extorsions,
She slough prophetes, goddes champions
Both he and she most cursed in theyr gyfte
Had of god warning, and list not for to rise,

Athalia with her duplicitees,
And conspired false intrusions,
Slough Dauids seide to eter their dignitees,
and to possede theyr dominacions,
But for her hateful false collusions,
Unwarely slayne for her great coueise,
Had of God warning, and list not for to rise

Princes remember in your prosperitees,
and see afoze in your discrecions,
Among climbing vp of states or degrees,
Other by murdre or by false treasons,
areth a fall for their final guerdons:
Namely of them that the lord despise,
and for his warning, list not for to rise.

Chewe

The second

Howe Dido quene of Cartage
 Thoug her selfe for conseruation of
 her chastitie.

The .xiii. Chapter.

Now must I put my rude stile in pices.
 To quene Dido make my passage,
 her lord Sicheus was priest to Hercu-
 Her father Belus fel in great age, (les
 King of Tyre, and the quene of Cartage:
 And it is read in bookes that been true,
 howe fyrst in Tyre was found purple hewe.

Cadmus found first letters for to wyte,
 Gaue them to Grekes as made is mencion,
 whose brother Fenix as Cletkes eke endite
 found fyrst the colour of bermilion:
 and of Cartage the famous mighty towne.
 This sayd Dido her story doth expresse,
 How she was both quene and founderesse.

But her husband was chief lord and syre,
 Called Sicheus, ful famous of renoun,
 Of this noble citie named Tyre,
 had great treasure and great possession:
 And for enuye king Pigmalion,
 brother to Dido, this Sicheus flew in dede
 of false intent his riches to possede.

Dido this slaughter toke grievously to hert
 sore compleyning this unhappy chaunce,
 Cast she would if she might avert,
 & lee out of Tyre and her selfe auance,
 with all the treasure and the habundaunce
 Behind left when her lord was dede,
 her shippes entring, went away for dyede.

She knew and dread the greedy auarice
 Of her brother, kyng Pigmalion:
 And howe that hateful vnsaunchable byce,
 was ground and roote, and chief occasion,
 why that her lord was slayn in that towne:
 for whom she cryed ful oft welaway,
 whose death was cause why she fled away.

She had also this opinion,
 which caused most her heartly heauines,
 that with her brother kyng Pigmalion,
 had slayne her lord: so his great riches,

If she abode that he would him dresse,
 parcel for malice, parcel for couetise,
 to haue her treasure, some treaso to partise

And for to eschewe his malice and treason,
 for her nauy she maketh ordinaunce,
 by aduise of them, in whom as by reason,
 she should of right set her affyaunce,
 And they full ready her to doe pleasance,
 By one assent for nothing would fayle,
 with fayre Dido out of that lande to sayle,

In Cypres fyrst was her actuayle,
 and there she fond by a riuier syde,
 Of yong maydens with ful riche apparayle,
 Sixty and tenne in the same tyde,
 which in the temple of Venus did abyde,
 after the custome as I can report
 Of Cyprians, straungers to dispozt.

And in their most faithful humble toyle,
 after the rightes of Cypre the countrie,
 Unto Venus eche day doe sacrifice,
 them to conserue in their virginittie,
 Durynge their life to liue in chastitie,
 neuer to be toynd in mariage,
 and with quene Dido they went to Cartage

In the passage fell a great miracle,
 as Seruius maketh mencion,
 for Dido tooke of Juno this oracle,
 other by apparayng, or by aduision,
 Of Cartage to byde that mighty towne:
 And at reuerence of that great goddesse,
 she to tho parties fast gan her dresse.

The sayd Citie stately for to found,
 and her workemen as they the earth sought
 an oxes head of auenture they found,
 & to quene Dido anon the hed they brought
 mening wherof, to searche out she thought
 and her clerkes in the diuinayle,
 tolde it was token of seruage & trauaile.

for which she left to byld in that place,
 and gan remeue as she ought of ryght:
 And fro thence but a little space,
 a soyle she found ful delectable of sight,
 and as her workemen with theyr ful might,
 the ground gan sette anon or they toke hede

The

The story telleth they fonde an horse hede. The kyng suppressed with love in his cozage

And by expounyng of her deuourours
fond this best greatly might auayle,
vnto princes and mightie conquerours,
Accessary in warre and in battayle,
and for no wight her noblesse should assaile
Chartage she bylded of so great excellence
agayn all enemies to stonden at defence.

Some booke declare and specifye,
Dido dyd as muche londe purchase,
as a skyn in rounde might occupie
Of an ore, theron to bylde a place,
the grounde compassed toke a large space,
whiche strongly bylded thus it is befall,
after the skin men Birsā dyd it call.

And whan this citie mightly was walled,
after a skin wrought by good curray,
the name take, Charta it was called,
Lethit of Birsā plainly this is no naye,
toke eke his name during many a daye,
Charta and Birsā knit in theyr language,
as muche to say as this worde Chartage.

And in Affrick stant the territoire,
where she buylded this citie delectable,
founded it in laude and in memoire,
of mightie Juno the goddess honorable,
The citie walled with towres strong & stable
time of kyng Dauid mid the fourth age,
as I sayd erst called it Chartage.

With great worship she reigned in þe towne
euer of purpose to liue in chastitie
and rounde about floured her renoune,
Of her prudence and her honestie,
till the report of her famous beautie,
came to the eares which gladly wyl not hide
of a kyng that dwelled there besyde.

Of Musitans he was Lorde and syre,
as Poetes plainly list deserue
whiche in his heart greatly gan desyre
The quene Dido by her assent to wyue,
vnto her grace yf he myght aryue,
but for she had auowed chastitie,
He neuer cast marryed to be.

for her wylle dom and her great beautie,
sent for the princes of Chartage,
On this matter to haue a great tretie,
to condescende if it myght be,
like his desyre in all theyr best entent,
do theyr deuorpe to make her to consent.

with his request he gan them eke manace,
if he fayled of his entencion,
Like his desyre to stonde in his grace,
Said he would be enemy to theyr towne,
to ordayne by force for theyr destruction,
not fully sober, nor fully in a rage
this was to them plainly his language.

But for they knewe her great stedfastnes,
and her heart very immutable,
they wer aferde any worde to expresse
Lest theyr aunswere wer not acceptable
to his highnes, for he was not tretable,
eke in theyr conceyte they gan also recorde,
to his desyre the quene would not accorde.

With good aulse an answer they puruey,
to his purpose in partie fauourable,
aferde he would be theyr noble towne merrey
Or of disdayne vpon them be vengeable:
but quene Dido in her entent aye stable,
cast she would what euer they her tolde,
her chaste auowe feithfully to holde.

She set aside of this cruell kyng,
his fel manacis and his wordes great
and to her princes for theyr consentyng,
whiche stode in fere of that he did the thre
she vnto them gaue a maner hete,
for they wer bolde to attempt or to attame,
to treate of matter rebouyng to her shame

flay rather dye (quod she) than assent,
to hys desyres which thyng god forbode,
or fro the tenter of my chaste entente,
for to remeue eyther in thought or dede,
whiche wer disclaunder to all womanhede,
to condescende for any manacyng,
to breake my bowe for pleasaunce of a king

Touchyng manacis made to this citie,
for to destrope it with his great might,
K. I. without

The seconde

without cause or title of equitie,
to grounde hym a quarell ageyn ryght,
onely for he is blinded in his sight,
with forward lust my chaste auowt assaile
be right well sure how he therof shall faile

If ye wer bolde and manly of corage,
for common profit your cite to defende,
and withstonde his vicious outrage,
To trete with hym ye would not condescend
but mine entent platly to comprehend,
whether it be to you ioye or displeasaunce,
in my promes shall be no variaunce.

My lord Sichens the which (alas) is dead
vnto the worlde who list aduert,
trust right well for manacing nor dead,
That he shall neuer dye in mine hert,
nor he shall neuer myne auowt peruert,
thus auided whyle that I stand free,
quene of Chartage to gouerne this citee.

Whine hasty answer I pray you not distaste
but that ye list to yeue me libertie,
with your support that I may attayne,
To haue a space graunted vnto me,
this to mene the space of monethes thre,
my lordes wyll to accomplishe of entent,
which he whilom made in his testament.

Vnder colour to her auauntage,
He toke this space booke specifie,
that she might her cite of Chartage,
the meane whyle strongly fortifie
agayn her enemies, that for no flogardie,
of them that would her high estate confound
vnto the citee not be founde.

Whan thre monethes passed wer and gone
He after would for hertely pleasaunce,
with sondry rightes many mo than one,
To all her goddes do some obseruaunce,
for a speciall singuler remembraunce,
of hym that was as folke shall vnderstand,
whilom her lord and best beloued husband.

And more to exalt her glozy and her honour
held his exequies by due reuerence,
of al Chartage in the highest towre,
with byrennyng fyre fumes and miserie,

her princes all byng in presence,
to whiche she gan declare in complaynyng,
her dedly sorow down fro her towre loking

Farewel my frendes, farewel for euermore
vnto my Lorde my husband I muste gone,
to hym I mene that was my lord of yore,
for of husbodes (god wote) I haue but one,
praying you to report euerychone,
after my death Dido of Chartage,
ioyned was but once in mariage.

Say to the kyng which hath you manaced
my chaste beaultie that he would assaile,
go tel hym how that I am passed,
And of his purpose how that he shall faile,
his manacing shall not hym auayle,
and say how Dido dyed for the nonce,
for she not would be wedded more than once

Leuer I haue my life as now to lose,
rather than soile my widowes chastite,
let hym go farther some other for to chose
for in such case he shall not speede of me.
And with the treasure of mine honestie
which I haue truely obserued al my lyue
I wil depart out of this world now blyue.

And into fyre that byent clere and bright,
He ran in hast there is no more to seyne,
saue with a knife in euery mans syght,
ful sodenly he roote her hert on tweyne:
whose piteous death the citee gan complein
for wepyng for wonder and for ruth,
in a woman to fynde so great a truth.

After her death they did theyr bisines,
to holde and halow a feast funerall,
worshipped her like a chaste goddes,
And her commended in especiall,
to heauenly goddes, and goddes infernal
and widowes all in theyr clothes blacke,
at this feast wept for her lake.

Touchyng Dido let there be no stryfe,
though that she be accused of Quide,
after Bochas I wrote her chastyte,
And the contrary I haue set asyde:
for me thought it was better to abide,
on her goodnes than thyng reherce in dede
which

which might resowne again her womāhede

To Eneas though she wer sauozable,
to Traile making his passage,
all that she did, it was commendable,
hym to receiue compng by Charrage,
though some folke wer large of their lāgage
amisse to expoune by report, or to expresse,
thing done to hym onely of gentlenes.

There shall for me be made no reheartsayle,
but as I fynde wyttten in Bochas,
for to say well may muche more auaple,
than froward speche in many diuers case,
but all Charrage oft sayde (alas)
her death complaining throwout their cite
which slough her self to obserue her chastite

Cenuoye.

Of aye Dido most stable in thy constance,
quene of Charrage mirrour of high no-
reing in glozy & vertuous habūdāce (bles
called in thy time chiefe sours of gentlenes
in whom was neuer founde doublenes,
aye of one hert and so thou diddest fyne,
with light of trouth al widowes to flumine

Chast and vñchanged in thy perseuerance
and immutable founde in thy goodnes,
which neuer thoughtest bpon variaunce,
force & prudence wardeins of thy faitrenes
I haue no langage thy vertues to expresse,
by new report so clerely they shyne,
with light of trouth al widowes to flumine

I lode sterre of all good gouernance,
all vicious lustes by wisdom to repressse,
thy grene youth flouring with al pleasance
Thou dost it bydel with vertuous sobernes
Diana demeaned so chastly thy clennes,
while thou were sole plainely to termine,
with light of trouth al widowes to flumine

Thy famous bountie to put in remēbrance
thou sloughest thy self. Innocent purenes
lest thy surenes wer hanged in balance,
Of suche as cast the thy chastitie to oppresse
death was ynough to bere therof witnesse,
causing thy beautie to al clennes to encline
with light of vertue al widowes to flumine

Cenuoye direct to widowes,
of the translatour.

O Noble matrones which haue al suffisance
of womanhede, your wittes do bydresse,
how that fortune list to turne her chance,
Be not to rethles of sodayne hastines,
but aye prouide in your stablenes,
that no such foly enter in your cozage,
to folow Dido þ was quene of Charrage.

With her maners haue none acquaintance
put out of mind such foltysh wilfulnesse,
to slep your self wer a great penance,
God of his grace defende you and blesse,
and pzeferue your variaunt byotilnesse,
that your trouth fall in none out rage,
to folow Dido that was quene of Charrage

With couert colour and sober countenance
of faithful menyng pretendeth a likenes,
counterfetteth in speche and daliaunce,
All thyng that sowneth in to stedfastnes,
of prudence by great auisenes,
your self restrayneth yong and olde of age,
to folow Dido that was quene of Charrage.

At all your porte be borde of displeasance
to geat frendes do your belinesse,
and be neuer without puruepance,
So shall ye best increase in richesse,
in one alone may be no sikernes,
to your heart be diuers of language
cōtrary to Dido þ was quene of Charrage,

Hold your seruauntes vnder obeysaunce,
let them nother haue freedom nor largesse,
but vnder daunger do they obseruaunce,
daunt their pride the bydlyng with lownes
and whan the serpent of newfangelnes
assayleth you, do your aduantage,
cōtrary to Dido þ was quene of Charrage.

Chow vicious Sardanapalus king of
Assiria bent himself and his treasure.

Che. xliii. Chapter.

O f Assiria to reben kynges all,
which had that lond vnder subieccion
all of echeone was Sardanapall,

h. ii. most

The seconde

most feminine of condicion:
wherfore fortune hath hym throw down,
and complaining most ougly of manere,
next after Dido to Bochas ryd appere.

To vicious lust his lyfe he dyd enclayne,
among Affricens whan he his reigne gan,
of false vsage he was so feminine,
That among women vpon pocke he span,
in their habite disguised from a man,
and of froward fleshy insolence,
of all men he fled the presence.

Fyrst this king chafe to be his guide,
mother of vices, called Tolenes,
which of custome eche vertue set asyde,
In eche a court where she is maistres,
of sorow, and mischief, the fyrst founderes,
which caused onely this Sardanapall,
that to all goodnes his wittes dyd appall.

He fond by first ryot and drunkennes,
called a father of lust and lecherie,
hateful of heart he was to sobernes,
Cherishyng surfeits, watche, and glotonie,
called in his tyme a prince of bawdry,
found reueloxpers and fetterbridders softe,
drinke late, and change his wines oft.

The ayre of meates, and of bawdy cookes,
which of custome all day rost and fede,
flavour of spetes, labels, and fleshy hookes,
He loued well, and toke of them great hede,
a folke that dranke more than it was nede,
smellyng of wyne for theyr great excesse,
with them to abide was wholly his gladnes

He thought also that it did hym good,
to haue about hym agayn skyl and ryght,
boistous Butchers al besprent with blood,
And watry fishers abode euer in his sight,
their coates poudered w scales siluer bryght,
dempt theyr odour buryng all his lyfe,
was to his courage best preseruatiue.

For there was no herbe, spice, grasse, ne rote
to hym so lusty as was the bo;delhouse,
no garden, none so whollom nor so sote
To his pleasure, ne; so delicious,
as the presence of folkes lecherous,

and euer glad to speake of ribaudry,
and folke cherish that could flatter and lye

Till at the last god of very ryght,
displeased was with his condicions,
because he was in euery mannes syght,
So femanine in his affections,
and wholly paue his inclinations,
During his life to euery vicious thyng,
terrible to heare and namely of a kyng.

But as Bochas list to put in mynde,
whan Arbaces a prince of great renowne,
saw of this king the fleshy lustes blynde,
Made with the people of that region,
agains him a consuration,
and to hym sent for his misgouernaunce,
of high disdayne a full plaine defiaunce.

Bad hym beware and proudly to hym tolde
that he hym call his vicious lyfe rassaile,
and in all hast also that he would,
Within a field mete him in battayle,
where astonied, his heart gan to fayle,
where amog women he sat making gaudes
no wight about but flatterers and baudes.

And by he rose and gan hymselfe tauance,
no stiffe about hym but sergeautes riotous
toke the field without gouernance,
No men of armes but of folkes vicious,
whole aduersary called Arbacus
made hym proudly the fild to forsake,
that like a coward his caille he hath take.

And for his heart frowardly gan fayle,
not like a knyght, but like a losengoure,
his riche perre his royall apparayle,
His gold, his Jewels, vessels, and treasour
was brought afore hym downe of a towre,
mid of his palice, and paue his me in charge,
of cole and fagot to make a fyre full large.

In which he kest his treasour and Jewels,
more bestiall than like a manly man,
and mid his riche stoness and vessels,
Into the fyre furiously he ran,
this Triumphe Sardanapalus wan,
with fyre consumed for his final mede,
byent al to ashes among the coales rede.

Tofore his death bad men should write,
upon his graue the boke do specifye,
with letters large this reason for tendite,
My cursed lyfe, my froward glotonye,
myne ydlenes, myne hatefull lecherie,
hath caused me with many false desyre,
my last dayes to be consumpt with fyre.

This Epitaphie on his graue he set,
to shewe how he was in all his lyue,
besy euer to hynder and to let
All maner vertue, and thereagayn to strue
who foloweth his trace is neuer lyke to
for which ye p'fices se for your auail (th' true
vengeaunce ay foloweth vices at the taile.

A commendacion of Bochas of ver-
tuuous besines, reherling names, fol-
ders of diuers sciences and run-
nings, in rep'ese of ydlenes.

The .xv. Chapter.

There wer eke other þ list falsly proude,
false fleshly lustes and dissolucions,
tyot outrage, froward disdain & pryde,
vices to enhaunce in theyr affectiōs,
with many vnlesfull croked condicions,
reason auoyding as I reherce shall,
hemself delityng for to be bestiall.

Twelue maner folkes to put in remēbrance
of vice and vertue to set a difference,
the good alway haue let theyr pleasure,
In vertuous labour to do theyr diligence,
and vicious people in slouth and negligēce
and the reposit of both is reserved,
with laude or lacke as they haue deserued.

Men must of ryght, the vertuous prefferre,
and truely prayse labour and busines,
and againwarde dispraysen folke that erre,
Which haue no soye but in ydlenes,
and to compare by maner of w'tnes,
vertuous folke I wyll to mynde call,
in rebukynge of king Sardanapall.

The old wyse called Pythagoras.
by sound of hamers, auctours certify,
example toke, and chiefe maister was,

That fond out Musike and melody:
yet of Tubal some bokes specifye,
þ he by stroke of smithes where thei stode,
fond fyrst out Musike tofore No's floude.

And Iosephus remembreth by scripture,
that this Tubal could forge well,
fyrst ymagined makynge of armure,
With instrumentes of Iron and of Steele,
and theyr tempures he fōd out euery dele:
Lucius Tarquin in story as I fynd,
fond cheynes first, folke to fetter and bynde.

The chyldren of Seth in story ye may see,
flouryng in vertue by long successions,
for to profite to theyr posterite,
fōunde first the craft of heauenly motions,
of sondry sterres the reuolucions,
bequeth theyr cunnynge or great auantage,
to them that after came of theyr linage.

For their vertue god gaue the gret cūnyng,
touchyng natures both of earth and heuen,
and it remembred soothly by writyng,
To lasten aye for water or for leuen.
Generaciōs there wer of them seuen,
which for vertue without warre or stryfe,
trauailed in cunnynge durynge all their lyfe.

And for that Adam dyd prophecie,
twise the world destroyed should be,
with water once stōd in seoparde,
Next with fyre which no man might flee,
but Sethes chyldren all this dyd see,
made two pillers where men myght graue,
fro fire and water the Carctes for to saue

That one was made of tyles hard ybake,
fro touche of fyre to saue the scripture,
of hard marble they dyd another make.
Agayn water strongly to endure,
to saue of letters the print and the figure,
for theyr cunnynge afore gan so proude,
gayn fire and water perpetually tabyde.

They dempt their cunnynge had ben in bestie
but folke w' h them had ben partable,
and for theyr labour should after be seyn,
They it remembred by writyng ful notable,
and tofore god a thyng full commendable,

The seconde

to them that folow by scripture and writing
o; that men dye depart they; cunynge.

For by olde time folke diuers craftes found
in son dry wise for occupation,
Vertue to cherisly, vices to confounde,
Their witte thei set and their intencion,
to put their labour in execution,
and to outrage t his is very trowth,
fro mannes life, negligence and slouth.

Olde Enoch full famous of vertue,
during that age fond first of euerichone,
through his prudence, letters of Hebrue,
And in a piller they wer kept of stone,
till that the flood of Noe was gone.
And after hym Cam was the seconde,
by whom of Hebrue letters were first found.

And Catarrismus the first was that founde
letters also as of that language,
but letters written with goddes own hond,
Moises first toke most bryght of his visage,
vpon Sinai as he helde his passage,
which of Carctes and names in sentence,
from other writing had a difference.

Eke afterwarde as other tokes tell,
and saint Jerom rehearseth in his stile,
vnder the Empire of Zorobabell,
Eldras of Hebrue gan letters compile.
And Abraham gan syth a great while,
the first was in bokes men may see,
that fond letters of Sire and of Chaldee.

This in Egypt founde diuersitie,
of sondry letters parted into twene,
first for priestes and for the commonie,
vulgar letters he also dyd ordaine,
and Phenices did their busy payne,
letters of Greke to fynde in their entente,
which that Cadmus first into Grece sente.

Whiche in number fully wer seuentene,
whan of Troye ended was the battayle,
Pallamides their language to sustayne,
But thze thereto which greatly did auayle,
Pythagoras for prudent gouernayle,
found first out. V. a figure to discern,
the life here shoyt, and the life that is eterne

first Latin letters of our. a. b. c.
Carmenes found of full high prudence,
great Homerus in Iliadoe ye maye see,
fond among Grekes craft of eloquence,
first in Rome by soueraine excellence,
of Rhetorike, Cullius fond the floures,
plee and defence of subtill oratours.

Callistrates a grauer most notable,
of white puor dyd his busines,
his hand, his eye, so iust, true and so stable,
Of an ampte to graue out the likenes,
vpon the groude, as nature doth him dresse
this craft he founde as Sardanapall,
founde ydenes, mother to vices all.

Of a seruieyn Bochas maketh mention,
how in a serowe of litle quantitie,
wrote of all Trope the destruction,
folowing Homerus by great subtiltie,
which is had amog Grekes in great deintie
because he was found in his writing,
so compendious the story rehearsing.

Hermecdes made a chayze also,
and a small ship with all the apparayle,
so that a Bee might close them bothe two
vnder his winges, which is a gret meruail,
and nothyng seyn of all the whole entaile,
this craft he founde of vertuous busines,
to eschewe the vice of frowarde ydenes.

Pan, god of kinde with his pipes seuen,
of recorderis fond first the melodies,
of Mercurie that sit so high in heauen,
first in his harpe fond sugred armonies,
wholsom wines through fined fro their lies
Bacchus fond first on wines heuy lads,
licour of licours, cozages for to glade.

Perdix by compasse fond triangle and line,
and Euclpyde first fond Geometrie,
and Phebus fond the craft of medicine.
Alumasar fond Astronomie,
and Minerua gan Charetes first to gre,
Jason first sayled, in story it is tolde,
toward Colchos, to win the flets of golde.

Ceres the goddesse fond first tilth of londe,
Dionisius triumphes transitoies,

and

and Bellona, by force kysst out fond,
conquest by knightthode, & in þ field victoꝝ,
and Partis sonne, as put is in memory,
called Etholus fond speares sharpe & bene,
to renne a warre in plates bryghte & shene.

Cke Aristeus fond out the vslage,
of milke and cruddes, and of hony soote,
Pyrodes for great auantage,
fro flintes smet fyre daryng in the roote:
and Pallas which that may to cold do bote,
fond out weauyng, this is very sothe,
through her prudence of all maner cloth.

And Ido fond first out the science,
of measures and of proportions,
and for marchauntes did his diligence,
To finde balaunces by iust deuisions,
tauyde all fraude in cities and in townes
on nother partie plainly to compile,
of true weight that there wer no gyle.

Compare in order clerely all these thynges
found of olde tyme by diligent trauayle,
to the pleasance of princes and kynges,
To shew how much cunnyng may auayle,
and way againward þ froward acquitayle,
contrariouly how Sardanapall,
fond ydlenes, mother of vices all.

Late princes all hereof take hede,
what auayleth vertuons busines,
and what damage the reuerse dothe in dede,
Vicious life, slouth and ydlenes,
and these examples late them eke impresse
amid they heart, and how Sardanapall,
fond ydlenes, mother of vices all.

¶ Lenuoye.

Noble princes here ye may well see,
as in a mirrour of full clere euidence,
by many examples moze than two or three,
what harme foloweth of slouth & negligēce
depe enprynting in your aduertence,
how gret hindring doth wilful frowardnes
to your estate through vicious ydlenes.

Whan reason faileth, and sensualitie
holdeth the bydle of lecherous insolence,

and sobernes hath lost his libertie,
And to false lust is done the reuerence,
and vice of vertue hath an apparence,
misedeth princes of wilful rechelesnes,
to great errour of froward ydlenes.

There may to slouth no other guerdon be,
nor no other condigne recompence,
but sorow, mischief, and aduersitie,
Sodein vengeance, and beware violence
whan ye be froward in your magnificence,
to know the Lord & bowe you by mekenes,
to obey his preceptes and eschewe ydlenes.

¶ Howe Amastias in Juda kyng, for
pride & presumption was vanquisht
Wed in battel, and after slaine.

¶ The .xvi. Chapter.

In his study as Bochas sat musyng,
with many vncouth solemne fantasie,
to hym appeared many mighty kyng,
And tofore all came worthy Amastie,
his sonne also that called was Ozie,
of Dauids bloude descendyng as I rede,
eche after other in Juda to succede.

First Amastias compleyned on fortune,
causyng his greuous great aduersities,
the traitouresse called in commune,
These kynges twain casting fro they sees:
whome ouerturning from they dignities,
beware fallyng dreadfull and terrible,
been seriously remembred in the Bible.

They piteous end me may there rede & see
how fortune they fates dyd entrete,
wherfore terchew and flee proflittie,
All tediously in this proceste to lete,
and in substaunce to glene out the grete,
of they fallyng I purpose not to spare,
compendiously the causes to declare.

This Amastias hauyng gouernaunce,
by iust title of succession,
the scepter of Juda w al the whole puissaunce
ful peaceably in his possession,
tyll that pride and false presumption,
most frowardly dyd his heart enbrace,
which al at once made hym lose his grace.

The seconde

In heart he had a maner baingloze,
because that god made hym to preuaile
in his conquest, and to haue victoꝝy,
Amalechites to vanquish in battayle,
eke Gabaonites as he them dyd assaile,
purposyng after if he might,
with Israelites, of pride for to fight.

Unto kyng Joas of Israel he sent,
him commaundyng to be his bydding,
and be like subiect as wer in theyꝝ entent,
his predecessours in all maner thyng
whilom to Dauid the noble worthye kyng,
this was his son to Joas plat and planne,
which by a poble thus wrote to him agē

The ougly thistle of the valeys lowe,
proudly presumyng aboue his degre,
to make his pride openly be know,
Sent his message to the Cedre tree,
that his sonne might wedded be
to his doughter, although in substance,
atwene them two was a great discordeance

But of the forest the beastes sauagene,
in theyꝝ corages had therof disdayne,
all of assent fiercly dyd enclyne,
The thistle leues abrode vpon the playn,
that there was nother lese nor pricke seyn,
this was yꝝ problem which Joas by wyting
sent in a pisse to Amazie the kyng.

But Josephus in his originall,
the sayd epistle as he doth expresse,
seeth of the vale how the pouder small,
Of pride sent to the high Cipresse,
that his doughter of excellent fayrenesse
vnto his sonne plainly to deserue,
might be deliuered and haue her to wive.

But a fell beast which that besyde stode,
of cruel ye and indignacion,
with tete disdaynyng the pouder cast abrode
high in the ayre about him enuiron,
the which ensample conceiued of reason,
who that attempteth to climbe high a loft,
with vnware chaunge his fal is ful vnsoft

Atwene the Cedre of trees of royal,
and a Harpe thistle is no conuenience,

nor twene a Cipresse estatefy found at all,
And lothsome pouder is a great difference,
for royall bloud should haue no assistance,
to be ioyned nor knit in marriage,
Wh such as ben brought forth of low parage

The Cedre is strong & mighty of substance
in his bygrowyng ryght as any lyne,
& though yꝝ thistle haue spottes of pleasance
he hath eke pricks, Harpe as any spyne,
and both natures plainly to termyne,
the Cedre of kynd who loke wel about,
to no thistle should his byaunches loute.

Wholesome of odour is the fatte Cipresse,
as bokes tell and vertuous of kynd,
dust and pouder plainly to expresse,
Troubleth yꝝ ayre and maketh folkes blind,
for which in spousaile conuenience to fynd
let estates of theyꝝ byrth honozable,
boyd al tascal and wedde theyꝝ semblable,

But Amazias would not beware,
for no warning, nor for no prophete,
but styl in heart great hatred he bare,
Agayn kyng Joas of malice and enuie,
into a field brought al his chualtre,
garthred them out bothe nere and farre,
agaynst goddes wyll on hym to gin a warre

And kyng Joas ful like a worthye knight,
into the field fast gan hym spede,
and al the knyghtes of Iuda anon ryght
wer smet of vengeance wh a sodein drede
to byd them flye (God wote) it was no nede,
and Amazias for al his great pride,
stode destitute, and no man by his syde.

With hym was none leste of all his meiny,
so god and Joas agaynst him wrought,
of Jerusalem entred the citie,
And Amazie of force with hym he brought,
and in the temple the treasour out he sought
gold and syluer, and wholy theyꝝ richesse,
and to Samarie home he gan hym dresse.

And Amazias he let out of prisson,
after all this, and suffred hym go free,
to his mischief and his confusyon,
He was deliuered from his captiuitie.

for slayne he was in Lachis the citie,
among his frendes by simulacion,
his death conspired vnder ful false treatō.

How vpon Ozias succeeding king next in
Juda, God toke vengeance, and smote him
with lepre.

The .xvii. Chapter.

After in Juda the mightie region,
next Amazias, Ozias gan succede.
wonder manly and famous of renown
In all his werkes full prouident in dede,
and of his knighthode vāquished as I rede
the Palestines for all theyr great puissance
with all Arabie he brought vnto vttraunce.

Bullded townes and many a strong citie,
and vnto Egypt he his boundes set,
made castels besyde the read see,
And in his cōquest whom that euer he met
of manly pride he ne would let,
I meane al tho that were his aduersaries,
to his gret lordship to make thē tributaries

He dyd his labour also to repara
Jerusalem, after his ruyne,
the walles reared which on þe soile lay bare
Made new towres ryght as any lyne.
fanes of gold theyr turrets to enlumyne,
and tafforce them let workmen vnder take,
square bastiles and bulwarkes to make.

He delited to make fresly gardens,
diuers grayne and herbes for to knowe,
repleyd to plant sondry vines,
To graffe trees, and sedes for to sowe,
and strange frutes make thē grow a rowe,
and with hym had his enemies to encomber
thre, C. thousand of manly mē in number.

His noble fame gan to spreade wide,
and greatly dyed for his high prowesse,
wherthroughe his hert corrupt was w pride
Because only of his great rycheesse,
and frowardly he dyd his bisinesse,
for to maligne in his estate royall,
agayn the lord which is immortall.

To god aboute he gan ware obstinate,

that by processe full small he dyd toyn,
and fauour caught in his royall estate,
To folow his father in vnthrift and synne
that grace and vertue from hym dyd twin,
in most thynnyng of his magnificence,
fortune prouidly assayled his excellence.

Cast he would within a litle whyle,
his surquedye and froward pride assayle,
and full vnwarly deceiue hym and begyle,
To make his power to appall and to sayle,
whan that this kyng toke on thapparayle,
of a Bishop of very frowardnes,
and into temple prouidly gan hym dyesse.

Be yng in purpose on a solemne daye,
to take his way vp to the hye altete,
falsly vsurpyng whosocuer sayd naye,
To sacrifice holding the censere,
tofore þe aulter that none of gold full clere,
for which offence the Bible sayth the same,
Azarias the Bishop did him blame.

San withstonde hym in the face anon,
fourescore priestes be yng in presence,
of the kindred descended of Aaron,
which forbad hym and made resistance,
that with his hande he should put incense,
vpon the aulter agayn goddes lawe,
him charging boldly his presence to withdraw

But of despite he made thē hold their peace
in payn of death he gan them to manace,
and soberly among all the prease,
An earthquake fill in the same place,
and therewithall in the kynges face,
of the sunne there smote a beame so bright,
that al his face was scorched with the light

He wared a lepre foule and right horrible,
for his offence as god list ordayne,
to euery man of lōke he was terrible,
And but few his mischief gan compleine,
and a great hyl þe same houre cart on twain
not farre asyde from the towne without,
cities destroying that rode rounde about.

On king Ozie ged toke his vengeance,
for al his lordship and his magnificence,
to punish his pride & his froward puissance
And

The seconde

And brought him lowe for his great offence
for his parson was put out of presence,
perpetually as holy writ can tell,
farre from all people with lepes for to dwell

His flesh was troubled with diuers passions
for his sickenes auoyded the citie,
in crye and sorow, and lamentacions,
His lyfe he had in great aduersitie,
and so he dyed in sorow and pouertie,
simply buried for al his great might,
within an Iland þe node farre out of sight.

CAn exhortacion to princes to be auyded
to do agayn goddes preceptes.

The .xviii. Chapter.

Et princes all in
theyr prouidence,
be right wel ware
any thing to attaine,
which vnto god should be offence,
Lest that the fine conclude to theyr shame,
let them thinke for all theyr noble fame,
(but they repent,) god of his iustice,
theyr froward pride vnwarely wyl chastice.

Let them beware of malice to presume,
agayn his church to do offence,
for god of ryght all tyrantes wyl consume,
In full thort tyme for theyr presumption
which wyl not suffer their dominacion,
to intercept for al theyr great might,
nor breke þe fraunchise of holy church ryght.

To prouide princes which that can discern
let kyng Orie consider his offence,
been in theyr mind a mitrout and lanterne
To help church to do due reuerence,
and conserue in theyr magnificence,
god wyl of ryght be theyr neuer so stronge,
chastice their malice though he abyde long.

Chow kyng Orie king of Israell
was taken by kyng Salma-
nazar, and dyed in prison.

The .xix. Chapter.

There was another that
called was Orie,
which whilom reigned
as Tassyme dare,
in Israell, whom fortune by enuye,
made hym be take or he was ware,
besieged about of kyng Salmanazar,
and into Assirie vnder his daunger,
the Bible telleth he was prisoner.

His citie, townes, brought to destruction,
and all his people vnder long seruage,
wer take and kept in strong Babilon,
Suffred there great paine and damage,
and in prison by furious outrage,
this sayd Orie in cheynes bound soze,
for sorow dyed, of hym wite I no more.

Chow Senacherib king of
Assirie was slayne.

The .xx. Chapter.

Vith these foresayd
wofull kynges thre,
Senacherib of
Assirie kyng,
came to John Bochas most ougly to see,
full piteously his fate complainyng,
And specially his vnware changyng,
he gan bewaile oppressed in his thought,
from high noblesse how he was brought to
(nought,
His renoune spred throughe many diuerse
and all people gan hym magnifye, (realme
a siege he laide vnto Ierusalem,
In the time of kyng Ezechie,
but in his most frowarde surquedye,
goddes angell tofore the citie,
an hundred thousand slough of his meyne

And the more to make hym aferde,
mid of his people the selfe same nyght,
goddes angell howe away his berde,
Wd a Harp sweet þe thone ful clere & bright,
left his siege and toke hym vnto flight,
and in a temple his goddes worshipping
slough hym his sonnes as he late kelyng.

Chow kyng Sedechie for false forswering
was slayne, and made bynd in prison.

Che

The .xvi. Chapter.

Touchyng the complaint
of kyng Sederchie,
and of his sorowes
to shewe the manere,
holly writ doth clerely specifice,
wherfore it wet but vayne to tel them here
for there men may the proceste plainly lere
how Joachim kyng of Jerusalem,
his owne brother was led out of his realme

Wherof in heart he felt full great soze,
this Sederchias as it is there founde,
because the kyng Nabuchodonosor,
his brother held strong in prison bound,
fully in purpose the Jewes to confounde,
for this tyrant had in that mortall strepe,
his brethren, children in prisō and his wife.

And yet this tyrant in his tyrannie,
this fauour dyd in all his fel rage,
vnto this most wofull Sederchie,
To suffer hym raygne in his great age,
from yere to yere to pay hym a truage,
by sayth and othe and compolicion,
reised of his people and brought to Babilō.

Yet Sederchias in especiall,
by a maner of false felicitie
hymself reioyced in his see royall,
To occupie that noble dignitie,
and so forgot the great aduersitie
of his brother, and other frendes all,
touchyng the mischief that they wet in fal.

Of pride he fell into presumption,
whā he remembred his brother & his linage,
considred how fro kyng Salomon,
he was descended by title of heritage,
gan disdayne to pay his truage,
and to maligne in heart he was so wroth,
and falsely brake his suraunce and his othe

He had oo maner indignacion,
which he caught of olde remembraunce,
how tyme passed to kyng Salomon,
By his manly prudent gouernaunce,
kynges about for a recognisaunce,
payed tribute, and durst it not withsaye,
fro yere to yere his noblesse to obey.

Which thyng remembred of kyng Sederchias
as he ware great and strong in puissance,
of hys disdayne his tribute can denye,
Set asyde his sayth and assuraunce,
so that his othe stode in no substaunce,
for he agayn the kyng of Babilon,
presumptuously fell in rebellion.

And his kingdom to strength and fortifye,
thought he would to his awauntage,
the kyng of Egypt to haue on his partie.
Of pride he fell into so great outrage,
that he no moze would pay his truage,
full finally suche wayes he hath sought,
that of his othe litle he thought or nought.

But woe (alas) it is a dolefull thyng
to be remembred, in hys or low degree,
that any prince or any worthy kyng,
Should false his othe or vntrue be:
or that men should such variance see,
in theyr corages which been so hys bozne,
for any cause falsely to be forsworne.

By report it doth theyr same trouble,
infortuneth and clipseth theyr noblesse,
whan a prince is of his heest double,
And chargeth not of wilfull rechelesse
alby his promise conclude on doublenesse,
though god a while suffer them and respite
at vnset houre theyr fallenes he wyl quite.

His warnyng oft he sent to them asofte,
because they lacke prudent policie:
reorde I take of Nabuchodonosor,
which came vnderely on kyng Sederchias
for he his tribute gan falsely hym denye,
with all his power as he dyd abrayde,
to Jerusalem a mightie siege he layde.

They within constryed wet of nede,
the king himself there was no better defence
with mannes fleshe his people for to fede
While the Chaldeis by mighty violence,
of very force without resistance,
on false forswearing for to take wake,
their mighty towers and their walles brake.

To sleigh and kill they list none for to spare
whosoever they met or came in theyr sight;
Sederchias

The seconde

Sedechias left the towne all bare,
But take he was as he him toke to flight,
in cheynes bounde and fettered anon ryght,
in whose presẽce to encrese his paines anon
his yong childre wet slayne euerycheone.

His wyues almost wofull of theyr cheres,
which in their tyme most goodly wer a faire
deliuered were into handes of straungers,
And more (alas) to put hym in despayre:
into his kyngdom neuer to haue repayre,
with sharpe tonges it was to great a payn,
out of his head wer rent his eyen twaine.

Of Ierusalem his citie was ybient,
plaine into the grounde into ashes dede,
his great riches, his treasour wholy sent,
To Babilon with stones blew and dede,
vessels of golde which richest wer in dede,
without mercy or remission,
Caldeis toke to theyr possession.

And thus in sorow and in wretchednes,
he dyed (alas) fettered in prison,
loe here the ende of perurye and falsenes,
Loe how fortune can turne bysodowne,
of mortall men the condicion,
now richest shynnyng in prosperitie,
with vnware chaunge to hatefull pouertie.

Now men lyft by to royall dignities,
now hye aloft by fulsum habundaunce,
but what auayleth to sit in roial sees
To folke that haue therein none assuraunce
namely whan fortune holdeth the balaunce
which aye of custome vnto high estates,
hath a false ioye to shew her checkmates.

Recorde I take of princes more than one,
theyr wofull fates hangyng in iopardye,
remembred late and among ercheone,
The wofull fall of kyng Amazie,
his sonne eke lepre which called was Ozie,
and last of all how in Babilon,
kyng Sedechias dyed in prison.

¶ Lenuoye.

Oble princes consider the falles,
of fortunes stoward flattery,

seeth her deceptes in many diuers case,
How she first marked manly Amazie
which slayne was for his surquedye,
to yeeue you warnig by exaple as ye may rede
whan ye sit hyghest your fall is most to dede

And as it is remembered in Bochas,
eke in the Bible of kyng Azie,
in his tyme how famous that he was,
Both of riches and of chivalrye,
punished with lepre lookes spacye,
for his presuming remembreth this in dede
whā ye sit hyghest your fall is most to dede.

All worldly glory fleeth hence a great pace,
I take witness of kyng Sedechie,
for false forswaryng he slayne was (alas)
Whade blinde in prison the story cannot lye,
thus sheweth fortune through her stoward
to you princes if ye list take hede, (enug)
whan ye sit hyghest your fall is most to dede

¶ How kyng Astiages laboured to disherite
Cirus but God suffered his malice not to
preuaile. The. xxii. Chapter.



fter these kynges one fo-
lowed in the pries,
And gan to Bochas his
complaynt discure,
and he was called the great Astiages,
Which told in ordre his vncouth aventure,
lorde of Arie as bokes vs assure,
and had of treasure durynge all his lyfe,
about all kynges a prerogatyfe.

Most fortunate in all his gouernayle,
felt of fortune none aduersitee,
saue an heire male nothyng dyd hym fayle,
for he most glorious sat in his royall see,
of worldly welch he lacked no plenteie,
excepte onely as clarkes of him wyte,
he had no sonne his kyngdom to inherite.

Which to his welth was great disencres,
lest succession fayled in his line,
a doughter had he called Mandonee,
Out of whose wombe as bokes determine,
he dremp a night how he sawe a byne,
in his auision with hym so it stode,

Quet al *Alie* his braunches spred abroad,

He had also a reuelacion
 sleeping a night after his supper
 Though he not knewe the exposition,
 he thought he sawe a chrystalline riuier,
 with lusty waters as any berell clere,
 out of her wombe with hys streames freshe,
 The soyle of *Alie* make tender and neshe

Touching this riuier and this lusty vine,
 to him shewed in his auision,
 within hym selfe he coude not termine,
 Therof to find no clere conclusion,
 without some maner exposition,
 To hym declared by folkes in sentence,
 which of such dremes had experience.

To him he called his Astronomers
 His Philosophers and hys deuinours,
 that knewe y meaning of the nine spheres
 ymages of sterres their houses & their cours
 and such as were expert expositours.
 And when they were assembled euerichone,
 Touching hys dreme they corded al in one

Totell hym trouth they were not rechles
 Said his doughter fro whom their came a
 she y by name was called *Madones* (vine
 should haue a sonne descēding frō his line
 whose noble fame thzough *Alie* should shine
 which should him put thzough his renoun,
 By force of hys armes out of his region.

This was hys fate he myght it not refuse,
 The heauenly cours but it dyd fayle,
 wherupon he soze gan to muse,
 Such fantasies dyd his heart assaile,
 fyl in great doubte of their diuinayle,
 Thought he would make purueyance,
 for to wythstand goddes ordeynaunce,

full hard it is to make resistance,
 gein thing ordeyned whā god wol that it be
 And namely there, where as influence
 of heauen about hath shape a desenee,
 Some men record that no man may it flee
 The dome of thys where y it holde oꝝ flitte
 to Astronomers al wholly I committe.

This said kyng of whome I spake but late
 cast he would for hys auantage,
 The ordenaunce reuerse and the fate,
 of the heauen wyth all the surplusage,
 And geue hys daughter as in marriage,
 to some vnworthy poze infortunate,
 That neuer were likly to rise to hys estate.

And in thys wise king *Alfages*,
 married his doughter as in hys entent
 To one vnworthy called *Cambyses*,
 deming therby by short ausement,
 within him self that he was right prudent
 wening y noblesse came by descent of blode
 And not by grate, noꝝ as the heauen stode,

In hys reason was not comprehended,
 howe *Socrates*, maister of *Platon*,
 Of ful lowe bed by birth was descended,
 and not to enherite kingdome noꝝ regyon,
 But for to haue fully possession
 of moxtal vertue and Philosophie,
 During hys life hys wyt he did applpe.

He sought countreyes for wisdom & science
 a secret cūninges to serch he dyd his paine
 And he fonde out thzough his diligence
 thys philosopher, as bokes asserteine
 To ioy reserued other vnto payne,
 by grace of god which is eternall,
 Howe mēues soules be found ay immoxtal

The great *Appollo* in bokes it is found
 gaue iudgement of equite and ryght,
 That *Socrates* in vertue most habounde
 and most preferred in euery mannes sight,
 was called of wisdom y laterne & the light
 And wisest named at euen and at prime,
 of Philosophers that were in hys time.

The Poete also called *Curtides*,
 most honorable called in that age,
 Al by his mother of life was recheles,
 and contagious thzough vicious outrage:
 yet was this Poete for al his vile linage,
 Most vertuous founden at assayes,
 Of all Poetes that were in his dayes.

Called in his time a great tragicien,
 because he wote many tragedies,
 L. i. And

The second

And would of trouh spare no maner man
But them rebuke in his Doctrines,
Touching the vices of fleshly fantasies,
Complain in princes their dedes most horrible
And ech thing punysshed was to god odible.

Another clerke called Demosthenes,
the most subtyll Rethorician,
And most inuentif among all the pres,
that euer was sith the world began,
Albe of birth he was a pooze man,
yet had he most soueraine excellence,
Among Philosophers of spech and eloquence

By which example me semeth doutles,
that roial blood, nor hye linage,
To mannes birth yeueth but smal encreas,
For vnto vertue but littel auantage:
For hygh noblesse taketh not hys corage
of rich nor poze, nor states soueraine,
But of his grace as god list ordeine.

Wherefore of folly king Astyages,
contrariouly agayne al gentry,
Bad that his daughter called Mandanes
first whan folke with child her did espye,
For to accomplishe hys froward fantasie,
whā it were borne, charging aboue al thing,
Of hir canye to beare it to the king.

Which in that time was called Harpagus,
and as I fynd he dyd in vertue floure,
And hye had, the story teller thus,
that beastes should this litel child deuour.
but god that may in mischief best succoure,
to kepe the chyld was not recheles,
Agayne the malice of Astyages,

Wherwith commaunded of malice and hatred
howe that thys child grene & tender of age
By Harpagus should be cast in dede,
to be deuoured of beastes most sauage:
But for he dyed to doe so great outrage,
to his wepeheard, (him self to stand at large)
The chyld to slea, he fully gaue the charge.

This herdman, albe that he was loth
to execute this woeful auenture,
Fnto a forest forth with the chyld he goth,
and gaue to beastes that litel creature,

whom to foster by grace agayne nature,
A wilde bitch her whelpes there forsoke,
and to her pappes the litel childe she toke,

And wth her milke she made him sup & dine
and busy was fro hym to enchace,
wilde foules and beastes sauagie,
That none ne durst neygh to that place:
Loe howe that god dispose can hys grace,
Innocentes fro mischief to preserue,
Again false enuy which would make them
(strue

O blood unkind found in kinrede
For couetise, O blood disnaturall
of false malice, O blood full of hatred,
To murder a child borne of the stock royal
where mannes reason is turned bestial,
falsely transfourmed vnto crueltie,
to slea a child where beastes haue pitie.

The sely herd hath told his wyfe the case
and she anone of pitie dyd arise,
wyth her husband went a ful great pace
into the forest beholding al the guise,
As heretofore ye haue heard deuise,
seing the child with lippes tender and softie,
The bitches pappes how he sucke ful ofte,

The sayd herd called Spargos,
hys wyfe also of whome tofore I told,
this yong child toke in their depos,
And in her armes she softly gan it folde,
and he ful goodly her face gan beholde,
and on hys maner in the same while
In childly wyfe on her gan to smile.

The chilles laughter whan she dyd aduert
wyth all her whole faythful diligence,
She gan to cherishe it & wyth al her heart,
she gaue it sucke wyth ful great reuerence,
Albe the bitch made resistance,
Complayning stode fully at a baye,
The litel child whan she lad away.

Ful pyteously she gan to houle and crye,
at their departynge dolefully complaine,
and after them ful fast gan to hye,
The child to lete she felt so great a payne:
Loe howe that god of mercy can ordeine,
A cruel beast such sorowe for to make,

And

And so to mourne for a childe's sake.

But euery thing þat god wil haue preserued,
may not fayle to stand in sekerneise,
His secre domes been to hym self reserued
There can no mā expowne thē as I gesse
for he shope first that this shepherdesse,
of Spargos the true pore wife,
for to be mene to saue the childe's life.

Home to her house the child she led anone,
and it to foster dyd her businesse,
Of other salary, god wote, knewe she none,
saue that her heart therto did her dresse.
And moze enterly þat story beareth witnesse,
she tenderd hym, and with moze busy cure,
Than him þat was her child borne of nature

And as the story plainly doth expresse,
this yong chld as he were in age,
fro day to day encreased in noblesse,
lyke for to be right manly of corage.
Cyrus he was called in that language,
To say in latin playnly in substance,
A man yborne to great inheritaunce.

And whan the renoune of his excellence
(By long processe & of his great encrease,)
came by the report vnto the audience,
Of his ayele the great Astiages,
and howe the king was found rechles,
Called Harpagus for to doe vengeaunce,
on yong Cyrus he fyl in displeasaunce.

Thys is to mene, Astiages was wroth,
that Harpagus was found merriable,
Cyrus to saue, and for that he was loth,
ageynst al right for to be vengeable,
To slea a child, a thing not commendable,
Deming of trouth in his conscience,
God was not payed to murder Innocēce.

Astiages cast hym to betwexe,
On Harpagus by false collusion,
because that he his bidding dyd bryake,
And was contrary to his intencion,
Cyrus to slea agein al reason,
and for that cause Astiages I rede,
Of Harpagus lete slea the child in dede.

Thys to say by false compassing
and couert murder, wrought by Astiages,
The sonne was slayne of Harpagus þat king
and after rosted alas ful causeles,
And sith presented among al the pzees,
tofore hys father, a thing most lamentable,
with Astiages, as he sate at the table.

But whan thys king called Harpagus,
conceiued hath thys murdre most terrible,
And how hys sonne & heire was slaine thus
in hys Ire, most furious and odible,
In all the hast that it was possible,
he is repayed home to hys householde,
And al the case to Cyrus he hath told.

And how his sonne was slaine for his sake
In the most hatefull odious cruelte,
erci tynge him with hym to vnder take,
On this false murder auenged for to be,
to him declaring of trouth and equitee,
He was borne by discent in dede,
as right heire to reigne in Perce and Medes

To hym declaring the storye by and by,
first of the dreame of Astiages,
And how that he by fraude ful falsely,
made his doughter called Mandanes,
Dorely be wedded vnto Cambyles
which was his mother, & how in tender age
He was out cast to beastes ful sauage.

By a shepherd and shepherdesse,
fostred he was in great pouerte,
and brought frō beastes out of wildernesse
because god would he saued should be,
for thilke lord, which euery thing may se,
whan that he hath a thing afore disposed,
Nedes it must fal and may not be deposed.

Thys sayd Cyrus at his natiuitie,
orderyed was by reuolucion,
of þat heauenly spheres in nouēze thise thise
so stode that time his constellation,
That he should haue the dominacion
ouer al Asie, by influence deuine,
afore figured by spreding of the vine.

What may þat fraude of sleighty folke auaise
Innocentes to put out of their right,

L.ii. Though

The second

Though trouth be hid amonges þe poraille
heard brough forth a date not shewe his li-
yet god wil ordein þe the bemes bright (ght
Molome one day shewe out his clerenesse
Dauger al tho þe woulde hys title oppresse

For this Cyrus as clerkes of him write,
was by the title of hys mothers side
Bozne to be king, al Alie to enherite,
albe his aiel from him woulde it deuyde.
But god that can for trouth best prouide,
hath for Cyrus by proesse so ordeyned,
That he of Alie the lordship hath attained,

Cyrus þe time was growen wel on length,
wel proportioned of membyres and nature,
wonder deluer, a passing of great strength
Straunge empyles proudly to endure,
and to leoparde and put in auenture,
Hys owne person, the same was of him so,
was none more likly wher me shoulde haue
(adoc

And by the counsaile of king Harpagus
whan thys Cyrus was wel waxe in age,
With Persiens proud and surqueuous
and Hyrcanites cruel of coage,
for to recure his rightfull heritage,
Began Cyrus armed with plate and mase
with Aliages to hold battayle,

And he ageyneward gan to take hede
and with him toke many a worthy knight,
With all þe puissance of the lond of Medes
hath take the feld the same day forth right
To di herite Cyrus of his right.
But god a trouth was atwene the tweine,
Egall iudge, their quarel to darayne,

The field ordeyned a splayed their baners,
on other party full proudly on they set,
At challemblyng like Lions of their cheres
in the face as they fierly mette,
With round sperees sharp ground a whet,
till that Cyrus of grace more than nouber
Of hys aiel the partye dyd incoomber,

Thys myghty Cyrus, thys pong champion
throughout þe feld ga such a slaughter make,
with hys knightes, as he went by and down
That as the death hys fomen hym forlake,

Aliages vnder his baner take, (glorye
The field vanquished for al his false bein-
to shewe that right hath alway the victorie

A man of malice may a thing purpose,
by a maner froward prouidence,
But god aboute can graciously dispose
ageine such malice to make resistance,
When for a while may suffer violence,
and wronges great where so þe they wende,
But trouth alway vanquisheth at thende,

Aliages sonde ful soth hys dreame,
Though he ageyn it made purueyance
to haue depriued Cyrus of hys reame,
He was deceiued in hys ordenaunce:
for where that god through his mighty pow-
List for heires lustly to prouide, (saunce
Sleight in such case of man is set aside,

Dauger the myght of Aliages,
Cyrus on hym made a disconfiture,
and al Alie reioysed eke in pees,
of very right as was his aduenture:
And by iust title he dyd also recure
the lond of Medes, lyke as was hys fate,
And into Perce he dyd it whole translate,

Agein hys aiel he was not vengeable
which had wrought to hys destruccyon,
But was to hym benigie and mercetable,
and graunted hym of whole affection.
The fourth part of the regyon
of Hyrcan, of whych afore I tolde,
Hym to sustayne in hys dayes olde,

For kyng Cyrus would not hys lyue,
Suffre hys aiel of very gentlesse,
that men shoulde hym fynally depriue,
Of kingly honour, for none vnkindnesse,
to geue exauple to princes in sothnesse,
Though god in erth haue geue them might
they shoulde aye mercy medle with the right

Cenuoy.

Oble princes your etes doe encline
And consider in your discrecions,
howe dreimes shewed by influence deuine
Be not lyke sweuenes but like auisions.

Or resembling to reuolutions,
which though me would disturbe & make fail
God wil not suffer their malice to preuaile.

Images exempt he saue a byne,
Shewed of trouth and none illusions,
from his daughters wombe, right as lyne,
Spied in Asie ouer the regions,
But to disherite by false collusions,
young Cypus the king did his trauaile,
but God not suffered his malice to preuaile.

princes remeber, ye that in honour shine,
Upon this story in your intencions,
se wel willed where God lyst forther a line,
Other to riches or to dominacions,
To fauour them to their promotions,
Be not contrary in your acquitayle,
Sith God wil suffer no malice to preuaile.

Howe Candaules king of Lidia was
made cuckold, and after slayne.

The xxiii. Chapter.

While John Bochas
cast his looke asyde,
In his studie as he sate wytyng,
To hys ptesence came the kynge
of Lyde,

Called Candaules, ful pitoussly pleyning,
With salt teares full lowely besechyng,
That he would to swagen his grieuance,
His deadly sorow put in remembraunce.

His compleynt was most of unkindnes,
for false disceit agayn al skil and right,
that where his trust was most of gentlenes
he mocked was for al his great might:
for of his house there was a certayn knight
Gyges called, thing shameful to be tolde,
to speke plain English, made him a cuckold

Alas I was not auised wel befozne,
Unknowingly to speake such language.
I should haue said how he had an hozne,
Or sought some teeme with a fayze visage,
to excuse my rudenes of this great outrage
as in some lond Cornodo men them call,
& some affirme how such folke haue no gall

Thus was I case whā Phebus shone shene
the somer season in his assencion,
whā sote braiches wet clad in new grene
Heate importable had domination,
whā that the quene for recreation,
bnprouided that no man did her kepe,
vpon her bed lay naked for to slepe.

And as clerkes of her beautie wyte,
there was on lue none fayrer creature,
Nor moze excelleng like as they endite,
Of semelines her story doth assure,
Called for beauty, colin to nature,
and worthy eke if I shal not sayne,
to be compared to Grisilde or Heleyne.

Kynd in her forge list nothing to erre,
whā she her wrought by great auisenes,
To make of beautie the very lodesterre,
and yewe her fauour and semelines:
But for nature had so great bu'sines,
to fourme a woman she was so fresh of hewe
she had forgeat for to make her true,

Her eyen wet very celestiaall,
her here vntressed like Phebus in his sphere
a thing resembling that wet immortall,
So angelike she was of looke and chere,
an examplary of port and manere, (flouth
there was no lack saue nature thzough her
Had left behind to yewe her fayth & trouth.

And on a day as she lay slepyng,
Naked on bed most goodly to sight,
ful vnwarely came Candaules the king,
into her chāber where Titan shone ful bright
& shewed her beauty vnto hys own knight,
Of entent he should beare witness,
how she excelled al other in fayzenes.

And whā Gyges gan in order see,
Of this quene the great excellence,
he was enamoured vpon her beautie,
all the while he stode there in ptesence,
Can ymagine a treason in silence,
To slea his lord without long taryng,
winne the quene, and after reygne as king

This was the end doleful and piteous,
To be remembred hateful and terrible,

The second

Of this noble worthy Candaulus,
For of his trust to much he was credible
vnto Gyges, the traytor was odible,
and yet more foolish, wherby he lost his life,
Outward to shew the beauty of his wife.

Though she wer fayre and goodly vnto see
There was no trust nor no sekernes,
for other had as good part as he,
Gyges coulde beare therof witnesse.
Alas a quene or any great princeesse,
Assent should her fame for to trouble,
But if nature excuse them to be double.

How what thing kyng Midas touch-
ed was golde, yet dyd he in mi-
serye and wretchednes.

The .xxiii. Chapter.

What whosoever was
therewith loth or fayne,
Gyges was after crowned kyng
of Lyde,

whan that his lord was by treason slayne:
Of him the surplus Bochas set asyde,
And in his study as he did abyde,
there came of Phrygie, Midas the rich king
told mine auctour his cōpleint with weping

For there was neuer by cōquest nor labour,
No king afore that had more richesse,
Nor more plentie of golde nor of treasour,
At whose byrth Poetes thus expresse,
About his cradle amptres gan them dresse,
while he slept, and gan about him leyne,
a ful great number of pured whete greyne.

Wherupon most expert diuinours,
as they toke hede in their attendaunce,
Such as wer best expositors,
Said it was a token of habundaunce,
To haue of richesse al maner suffisaunce:
and concluding playnly gan to tell,
Howe he al other in treasour should excel.

Poetes of him wrote that wer ful old,
how Bachus gaue him þe might god of wine
what he toucheth shall turne into golde,
as good as that which came out of the mine

At all assayes to be as pure and fyne:
This request (as wyrteth Ouidius,)
was vnto Midas graunted of Bachus.

He thought golde might him most auayle,
what he handled was gold with touching:
But whan hunger his stomake gan assaile,
his bred his mete, was clere gold in shewing
And whan he gan to sayle of his feeding,
and found in gold no recure to escape,
Besought Bachus some remedy to scape.

Bachus bade him goe bath in a riuer,
to washe away the colour aureate,
where it is shewed the golde grauel clere,
which example declareth to eche estate,
that gold alone maketh men not fortunate,
for what may gold or treasour there auail
where men in hunger fynd no vittail.

Or what is worth gold perle, or stones read,
Grene Emeroudes, or Saphyrs ynde,
whē mē ē famined, haue nether grein ne bryd
nor in such mischief vittail may none fynd
for to foster their nature and their kynd:
A bacley lōke in such a distresse,
more might auayle than al worldly richesse.

This knew Midas and was expert in dede
though he of gold had so great plentie,
that with metall he might himself not fede,
which caused him of necessitie,
To consider, and clerely for to see,
þe bread more baseth, for fostering of nature,
then all riches that men may here recure.

For which this king gan hate al riches,
Gold and treasour he had eke in disdeine,
Left his crowne and his royal noblesse,
And chase to kepe shepe vpon a pleyne,
all worldly worship was to hym but beynt,
Of melancoly and froward pouertee,
Ended his life in great aduersitee.

For of pte and impatience,
finally thus with him it stode,
furiously in his great indigence,
(as wyrteth Bochas how he drank þe blud)
Of a bull sauagine and woode,
with loue enchaufed made no delates.

Most bestially ended thus his dayes.

Of Balthasar king of Babilon,
and how Daniel expounded
Hane. Techel. Phares.

The. xxv. Chapter.

NExt to Bochas or that he was ware,
As he sate wyting with ful gret labour
Of Babilon came great Balthasar,
to declare his sorow and his langour.
Which had misused ful falslye the treasour,
And the vessels brought to Jerusalem,
In Babilon chief cite of his reame.

for at a supper with his lordes all,
whan of þ vessels he dranke mighty wines,
and solemnely sate in his royal hall,
and round about all his concubines,
philosophers, Magiciens, and Deuines,
There came an hand the byble doth assure,
and on the wall gan write this scripture.

Hane Techel Phares, written in his sight
though he þ mening conceued neuer a dele,
which on the wall shewed fayre and bright,
fro whose sentence auayled none appele:
But the Prophete holy Daniel,
fully expounded to Balthasar the kyng,
this misery of this darke wyting.

This troord (Manc) playnely and not tary,
In latin tong betokeneth in substance,
the dayes counted, the numbrary,
Of thy reigning, & of thy great substance:
And (Techel) souneth, a waying in balaunce,
In token thy power & kingdom by measure
god hath them peysed, they shal no while en-
(dure

Phares also betokeneth a breaking,
In Romaine tong, into pieces small:
for thy power and froward rebelling,
shall from the hye be brought into the vale.
This is holy writ, and no feyned tale:
for whan princes wil not theyr life redresse
God wil bewarely their surquedry repress.

Thou wer by tokens warned long afore,
by many exampples, the story ye may rede,

by the falling of Nabuchodonosor,
and thou therof toke ful litle hede,
the lord to thanke & haue his name in drede
for which thou shalt within a litle tyme,
lose scepter & crown, & be brought ful lowe.

Let princes al this story haue in mind,
And for them selfe notably proude,
and namely tho, that been to God unkynd:
their concubines for to set asyde,
And make vertue for to be their gyde.
Woyde Lechery and false presumption,
which hath so many brought to destruction

Nabuchodonosor had repentaunce,
and was restored to his possessions:
But god of right toke sodenly vengeance
On Balthasar, for his transgressions:
Wherfore ye princes dyspose your reasons,
after your merites to haue God meritable,
for pour demerites to find him vengeable.

Agayne holy church take no quatels,
But aduertise in your inward sight:
for Balthasar dranke of tho vessels,
Stale fro the temple of very force & might
He lost lordship and life vpon a nyght,
So that the kingdom of Assiriens,
translated was to Mede and Persiens.

Howe Cresus and Balthasar wer
benquished by Citus, & the sonne
of Cresus slain at the hun-
ting of a boze.

The. xxvi. Chapter.

NExt to John Bocas whan a litle throte
wyting of princes many piteous fate,
he saw king Cresus w other on þ rowe
Lowly beseching his falling to translate,
And how fortune agayn him can debate,
and of his mischief doleful for to rede,
for to describe anon he gan procede.

for as it is remembred in wyting,
As god and kynd list for him ordeyne,
Of Lyde he was gouernour and king,
And Lordship had, the story can not feyn,

Of

The second

of many kingdoms more then one or twain
fame in that time so did him magnifye,
that he was called floure of al chivalrye.

And he was also in his time found,
the most expert in warre and in battayle,
and of richesse was the most habound,
and most excellling in conquest to preuaile.
Plentie of people with royal apparayle,
and with al this to his great auantage,
Nombze of childze tenblisse his linage.

In the most highest of his royal see,
and al was wel and nothing stode amisse,
yet tamenuse his felicitie,
A dreame he had and truly that was this:
How that his sonne which called was Atis
was take from him and by mortal outrage,
Slayne sodenly in his tender age.

This woeful dreame did him great distresse
and put his heart in great dispayre,
Stonding in feare and great heauinesse,
because his child, tender, young, and fayre,
which that was borne for to be his heire,
should causeles in such mischiefe dye,
So as his dreame afore did specifye.

Of this proesse to declare more,
How Cresus dreame fulfilled was in dede,
from Olympus there came a wilde boze,
Most furious and sauagine of dede,
with fomy tusshes which fast gan him spede,
Down disconding, and no where list abide,
Till that he came into the lond of Lyde.

And gan destroy there frutes & there viues
whereuer he came in any maner place,
Brake the nettes and the strong lynes
Of the hunters, that did at him enchase:
But vnder support of the kinges grace,
His sonne & heire of whom I spake before,
Gate him licence to hunt at this boze.

His father Cresus deining of this case,
There was no cause of dede in no manere
though his sonne wer present at the chase
with other hunters such game for to lere,
But aye fortune with her double chere,
Is ready euer by some fatal trayne,

At such dispoyses, some mischief to ordeyn.

For one there was which had gouernaunce
Upon this child to wayte and to see,
chaling þ boze, to saue him fro mischaunce,
from al damage and aduersitee,
with many lusty folke of that cuntrey,
with hoznes, hoüdes & sharp speares growde
seking the boze til they had him found.

And as they gan fierly the boze enchase,
he that was charged to be the chides gyde,
as with his spere he gan the boze manace,
the hed not etred far but forby it gan glide,
And on the child which that stode beside,
the stroke alight, and or he did aduert,
The speares head rofe him to the hert.

But of this child when the deeth was counth,
tolde and reported wholy the manere,
How he was slayn in his tender yowth,
Bozne to be he yre vnto his father dere,
Cresus for sorow chaunged loke and chere,
And for constreynt of dole in his visage,
he resembled a very dead ymage.

But euer sorow by long continuance,
at the last it sumwhat must allwage:
For there is none so furious greiuaunce,
Nor so mortall importable rage,
But long proesse yeueth him auantage,
I mene as thus, ther is none so gret a sorow
but it mote ceale other eue or morow.

Philosophers concluden and discerne,
and by theyz reasons recorden in scripture,
thing violent may not be eterne,
Nat in one poynt abydeh none auenture,
Nor a sorow may not alway endure,
For soundmele through fortunes variance
there foloweth ioy after great greuaunce.

(rable

The sorow of Cresus though it wer intolle:
And at his heart the greiuaunce sat so sore,
Such that his dole was irreuerable,
and mene was none his harmes to restore,
Mine auctor Bochas writeth of his wo no
but of his sal how he fil in dede,
To tel the maner forth he doth procede.

And

And for a while he set his stile aside,
and hys proces in patrye he forbare,
To speake of Cresus that was king of Lyde
and gan resorte to wypte of Balthasar,
Ageine reher sing o: that he was ware,
howe mighty Cyrus of fatal auenture,
Made on him proudly a disconfiture.

And as it is put in remembraunce,
of Balthasar to holde by the partie,
Cresus with him had made an altaunce,
with al his puissaunce and al his chynaltie
his life, his treasure, to put in scopardie,
sworne in armes, as brother vnto brother,
by Cyrus vanquished the one after y other

Both their mischiefe no lenger was delayed
albe that Cresus faught long in his defence
he finally by Cyrus was outrayed,
and depriued by knightly violence:
Take in the feld, there was no resistance
and rigorously to his confusion,
With mightye fetters cast in derke prison.

And more to encrease his great aduersitye
a sonne of hys, tender and yong of age,
That was dumbe from his natyuite,
and neuer spake word in no maner lagage
Cyrus commaunding by furious outrage,
that Cresus should by vengeable crueltie,
By a knyght of Persie in prison headed be,

And with his sword as he gan manace,
Cresus to haue flame without al reuerence,
The dumbe childe there present in the place
which neuer had spokē, thus said in audiee
withdrawe thy stroke and doe no violence,
Unto my lord, thy fame so to confound,
to see a king that lyeth in prison bound.

The knight astonished hath his stroke forborne
greatly abashed in y darke habitacle, (ne
which heard a childe y neuer spake toforn,
Agein his sword to make an obstacle:
Ran and tolde this merueilous miracle
To mightye Cyrus, with euery circumstance,
Hoping therby to haue tēpēd his grenaunce

But where as tyrauntes ben set on cruelte
they croked malice full hard is to appeale

So indurate is their inquite,
that al in vengeaunce is set their hearts ease
Themselves reioysing to se folkes in diseafe,
like as they were in their froward daunger
Clenly fraunchised fro god and his power

This cruel Cyrus most vengeable of desire
to execute hys fell intent in dede,
Lete make in hast of fagot a great fire,
and gan them kinde wyth many coles rede
And made Cresus quaking in his dede,
for to be take, where as he lay ful lowe,
And bad men shoul into y fire him thow

But Jupiter which hath his vengeaunce setne
howe cruel Cyrus wyth malice was atteint
from heauen sent a tempest and a reine,
that sodenly the horrible fire was quaynt,
And woful Cresus with dysadful fire made
escaped is his furious mortal peine (saint
God and fortune for him list so ordeine,

This auenture in maner merueilous,
the heart of Cyrus gan somewhat embrace,
And caused him for to be piteous
ageine Cresus, and graunted him his grace
To occupye while he hath life and space,
the lond of Lyde, except only this thing,
he shoul not after no more be called king,

And thus of Lyde the king did fine,
which toke his beginning of one Ardissus
And endured the space of kinges nine,
loke who so wyll the booke tel thus.
Hereof nomore, but forth vnto Cyrus
I wil procede, with al my busy cure,
for to translate hys woful auenture,

Howe the cruell tyraunt Cyrus delighted
euer in slaughter and sheding of
blood, and so ended.

The. xxvii. Chapter.

Cyre by descent to greate Astages,
Horely brought forth as made is
mention,
And had al Alie to his great encreas,
holding that reigne by full succession,
In long quiete without rebellion,

The second

Tyl tyme he thought in ful frowarde wise
the world was smal to staunch his couetise.

He had an Etke most contagious,
fretting vpon hym for desire of good,
A droppe hatefull and furious,
Of froward rage þ made his heart wood:
a wuluishe thyrtt toshedde mannes blood,
Whych ouerwharted by false melancoly,
His royal corage into tyrannye.

But whan he presumptuously entende,
to robbe and reue folke throughe his pillage,
God and fortune made him to descende.
ful sodenly from his royal stage,
Deming of pryde it was a great auantage,
to winne londes of very force and might,
though in his cōquest there were no tittle of

(right

To wil he gaue wholly the souereintie,
and aduertised nothing to reason,
But preferred his sensualitie,
to haue lordship and dominacion,
Above sad trowth and discreacion,
which causeth princes fro their estate to fall
Or they be ware to haue a sodaine fall.

For the lordship of al Asia,
Might not suffice to Cyrus greedinesse,
But thought he would conquere Scythia,
& there warrey tenceare his great richesse
Though he no tittle had of rightwisnesse,
saue a false lust wherof mē should haue ruth
That wil in princes should oppresse truth.

First this Cyrus al princes dyd excell,
both in conquest, victoie and bataille,
Of gold and treasure (as bokes him tell)
kingdomes to winne he did most preuaile.
And yet to vices dyd hys heart assaile,
first couetise euer to encrease in good,
With a desire to shedde mennes blood.

(one

With these two vices he byenneth euer in
that neuer might from hys heart twynne,
made a great arme toward Septemtrione
and cast him proudly to set on and beginne,
Scythia the mighty lond to wyne.

Queene Comeris there reigning as I find
whose kingdō ioineth to Ethiope in Inde

Toward the party which is Orientall
the sea of Siria floweth full plentuous,
Downe to the sea called Occidental,
And southward renneth toward Caucasus
and folke of Scythie that ben laborious
Which tittle þ lond haue not to their liuing
but only frutes which fro the earth spring.

The lond of Scythie is rich for the nones
for greine and fruite a land ful couenable;
Rich of gold, pearle, and precious stones,
right commodious and wonder delectable;
But a great party is not habitable,
the people dreadfull to bylde their manciōs
for feare of drath because of the griffons.

The noble fame nor the highe renoune,
Was not farre knowe nor yprad aboute,
Of Tomiris, quene of that region,
nor of her noblesse within nor without,
Tyl that king Cyrus wyth a ful great rout
into Scythia gan hym proudly dresse,
The hardy quene to spoyle of her richesse.

But she her fame moze to magnifie,
Can in great haile with full rich apparaple,
ul prudently assemble her chualtre,
and toke a feelde if he would her assaile,
Ready with him to haue a battaile.
And of her meyne (like as sayeth my boke)
Unto her sonne, the thyrd part she toke.

And gaue hym charge in the same place,
hym self to acquite that day like a knight
And for to mete Cyrus in the face,
and no thing drede wyth hym for to fyght.
But whan king Cyrus of hym had a sight,
Cast him that day þ yong prince to oppresse
Rather by wiles then manhode or prowesse

first he lete suffice hys large pauppons,
wyth great plentie of drynkes delectable;
Dyuer meates and confeccons,
round aboute vpon euery table.
And in his meaning passing deceuable,
Lyke as he had in maner dreadfull be,
Toke al hys hoste and gan anon to fle.

This yong prince of meaning innocent,
Nothng deming as by supposale,

But

But that Cirus was with his meine went,
and fled for feare he durst him not assaile,
And when he founde such plenty of vitayle,
he & his knightes through misgouernaunce,
To eate and drinke set at their pleasure.

They had of knightthode lost al discipline,
forsoke Mars and put him out of sight,
And to Bacchus their hedes gan encline,
Gorge vpon Gorge till it drough to night:
and proud Cirus came on the anone right
with al his host, they out of their armour,
On bestial folke made of disconstitute.

Cruel Cirus left none aloue,
of hygh nor lowe made none exception,
they were to feble agein his might to strue,
for chief cause of thyr destruction
was drunke nesse, which voideth al reason,
And wise men rehearce in sentence,
where folke be dronken ther is no resistence

And when this slaughter by relation
Reported was, and brought to the presence
Of Compyris, Queene of that region,
Unto her heart it did ful great offence,
But of ire and great impacience,
Seeing her sonne slayne in tender age,
for sorowe almost she fyl into a rage.

But for all her woofull deadly peyne,
she shewed no token of feminite,
But of prudence her weeping gan restraine,
and cast her playnly auenged for to be
vpon king Cirus, and on his crueltee,
sent out meyne to spien his passage,
If she hym might find at a vantage.

And wher his meine gan sette a maner flight
vp to the mountaines dreadfull and terrible,
And Cirus after gan hast hym anone right
In hope to take her if it were possible:
Among which hilles more thā it is credible
been craggy roches most hideous of entaile,
Perilous of passage and boyd of al vitayle.

And Cirus there fyl in great daunger,
All vnpurueyed of dogeman or of guide,
to foster his people but aile was none ther,
Erring as beastes vpon euery side:
And they of Scythie gan for hym proude,

wherof theire queene, god wote, was ful fame
A great mischief, that al his me were slaine

None of al was take to ransom,
nor he him self escaped nor thyr boundes,
Such waite was layd to his destruction,
& he through perced w many mortal wounde
on peeces rent as beares ben w hounds (des
the queene commaunding whē he lay thus to
To her presene this body to be born (tozme

first she hath charged to smite of hys head,
whā she thus hath y victory of him wonne,
And in a bath that was of blood al read,
she gan it throwe within a litle tonne:
And of despite right thus she hath begone,
most tirauntly in her woeful rage,
To dead Cirus to haue this language.

O thou Cirus that wisdom were so wood
and so thrustleugh in thy tiranny,
Ageine nature to shede mannes blood,
so wulst she was thine hateful droppe,
That mercy none myght it modify,
thine etike toynd greddy and vnsable,
With thrust of slaughter ay to be vengeable

It is an horzour in maner for to thinke,
so great a prince rebuked for to be
Of a woman, mannes blood to drinke,
for to dislauder hys royal maieste,
But gladly euer vengeable cruelte,
of right requireth wth vnware violence,
Blood shed for blood fully to recompence.

Of mighty Cirus the imperial noblesse,
was by a womā vquilld & born doune,
God made her chastise his furis wodnesse
and for to oppresse his famous high renown
for where vengeaunce hath dominacion
in worldly princes, playnly to deuisse,
with vnware stroke god cā the wel chastise

The ende of Cyrys cā beate ful wel record
how god withstādeth folke y been vengeable
Lordship & mercy whā they ben at discorde
right wil not suffre theire state to stōde stable
And for this Cirus was so vnnmerciable,
he with vnnmercy punyshed was in dede,
Death quit for deth loe here his final mede

In

The second

In slaughter & blode he did him most delite
for in tho tweine was his repast in dede,
He fond no mercy his vengeaunce to respite
where he fond mater any blood to shede,
Such ioy he had by death to se folke blede,
and for the sight dyd him so much good,
His fatal ende was for to swimme in blood

Loe here the exequies of this mighty king,
loe here the ende of his estate royall:
There were no flābes noz byrdes clere
to bren his body wth fiers funeral, (ning
Noz obseruaunces, noz offringes merciall,
noz tounbe of gold with stones rich & fine
was none ordeined þ day to make his shryne

Epithaphie there was none red noz songe
by no Poete with their Poetries,
noz of his triumphes there was no bell ronge
Noz no wepers with sobbing tragedies,
none attendaunce but of his enemies,
Which of hatred in their cruel rage,
Cast out his Carcin to bestes most sauage.

Loe here of Citrus the finall auenture,
which of al Alie was whilome Emperoure,
Nowe lieth he abiect withoute sepulture.
of high noz lowe he fond no better fauour,
Loe here the fine of al worldly laboure,
namely of tirātes which list not god to dred
but set their lust in slaughter & blud to shed

Lenuoy.

Right noble princes cōsider in your sight
The fine of Citrus piteous & lamentable
Howe god punisheth of equitie and right.
tirauntes echeone cruel and vengeable,
for in his sight it is abhominable,
that a prince, as Philosophers write,
In slaughter of mē should him selfe delite.

Thys said Citrus was a ful manly knyght,
in his beginning right famous and notable
Nature gaue him semelnesse and might,
for in conquest was none seene moze hable,
Tyl tyrannye the serpent deceiueable,
Mercuries his corage dyd atwite,
In slaughter of mē whan he him gā delite.

wherefore ye princes remenber day & night
rafforce your noblesse & make it pardurable,
To get you fauour and loue of euery wight
which Mal your states cōserue & kepe stable
for there is conquest none so honourable,
In gouernaunce, as vengeaunce to respite
mercy preferring, in slaughter not delite.

When Amulius for couetise slough bys
brother, and Remus and Romulus
nourished by a wauelle.

The. xxviii. Chapter.

After king Citrus Bocas dōd espy
two worthye byrthzen,
with faces piteous,
borne by descent to reigne in Al.
both of one father þ story telleth vs (ban)
The one of them called Amulius:
and to remembre the name of that other
Numitor ycalled was his brother.

They had a father whych named was Pro-
king of þ lond the story both deuise (cas
After whose death plainly this the cas,
Amulius for false couetise,
His brother slough in full cruel wise,
that he vniustly by false tyrannye,
might haue the kingdome alone of Albany.

Thys Albany by description,
like as Bochas affermeth in certein,
Is a cite not farre fro Rome town,
set on an hill besides a large pleine,
The bilyng stately, rich, and wel beset,
strong walled with many a rich toure,
And Ascanius was first therof fondoure.

Which called was in his foundation,
Albania for the great whitenesse:
there kinges after by succession
Named Albanys pricelle of great noblesse
and by descent the story beareth witnesse,
from king Procas recozde on bokes olde,
came these two byrthzen, Alhea their syster (told

Numitor slayne as made his mencion
the kingdome occupied by Amulius,

And

and entred into religion,
for to be wymples in that holy house,
sacred to Vesta with virgins glorious,
therfoze to abide and be contemplatife,
with other maidens durynge ali her lyfe.

And this was done while she was yong of
by her brother, of false intencion, (age,
that she should haue no maner heritage,
for clayme no title in that region
of her kynted, by none occasion,
but stond professed in virginittie,
tofoze Vesta, and lue in chaastitie,

Yet notwithstanding her vireginal clennesse
she hath conceived by naturall miracle,
gan to encrease in her holines,
whose wōbe arole in kid was none obstacle
agayn such bolnyng auaileth no triacle,
but the goddesse for her so dyd ordayne,
that she at once had sonnes twayne.

The temple of Vesta stode in wildernesse,
where Vhea had wholy the gouernaunce,
of priestly honoz done to the goddesse,
With many straunge vncouth obseruaunce,
but by her brothers mortall ordinaunce,
her yong sonnes might not be socoured,
but cast out to beastes for to be deuoured.

But a she wolfe which whelped had late,
to reue them sucke dyd her bilnes,
by god ordayned, or by some heauenly fate,
The to conserue fro death in their distresse
for holy writ plainly bereth witnessse,
God can defende as it is wel couth,
chylde from mischief in their tender pouth.

But in this while this said Amulius,
that was theyr vncle as made is mention,
agayn his suster froward and furious,
Made her be shet in a full darke prison,
and there compleynnyng the destruction
of her two chylde, borne to her repese,
for very sorow dyed at great mischese.

These saide chylde deuoyde of all refute,
besyde a riuer lay piteously crying,
from all succour naked and destitute,
Except a wuluesse vpon them wayting,

at whose wombe ful still they lay suckyng,
vnto nature a thing contrarious,
chylde to sucke on beastes rauinous.

But he that is lord of euery creature,
right as hym list can both saue and spyll,
and beastes which ben rage of theyr nature
He can aduert and make them lye full still,
Tigres, Lions, obeyen at his wyll,
the same lord hath made a fell wuluesse,
vnto twaine chylde her bigges for to dresse

And while this wuluesse had the in depose
there came an herde called fauulus,
beheld their suckyng, & saw the lye ful close
Which shepherd was of king Amulius.
caught by these chylde & soze telleth thus
a brought them home with ful great diligēce
vnto his wife that called was Laurence.

And she for loue dyd her bisy payne,
them to foster till they came to age,
gaue them sucke of her brestes twaine,
fro day to day of hert and whole corage,
and they wer called as in that language,
after the soze, that one of them Remus,
And the second was named Romulus.

Of which brethren brievely to termine,
the towne of Rome toke originall,
of false dislauder fyrst began that line,
The roote out sought ful vicious found at all
clerely remembred for a memorial,
theyr ginning grewe of such incontinence,
as clarkes call Incessus in sentence.

Incessus is a thing not fayre nor good,
after that bokes wel deuise cunne,
as trespassing with kyn or with blood,
Or froward medling with her & is a shame,
and thus the line of Rome was begunne,
for slaughter, murder, and false robbery
was chiefe beginning of al theyr aunccitrye.

Of couetise they toke their auantage,
liggers of wayes, and robbers openly,
murderers also of theyr owne linage,
And strong theues gat to theyr company,
spoyled all tho that past them for by,
vnder shadowe of keepyng their bestaile,

The seconde

all maner people they proudly dyd assaile.

To slep marchantes they had no consciēce
and for to murder folke of euery age,
women to oppresse of force and violence,
In all that countrey, this was theyr blage,
where thei abode there was no sure passage
and these two brethren lyke as it is founde,
foud first the maner of spers sharp ground.

A spere in Greke called is *quiris*,
and for that cause the sayd Romulus,
as booke say, and soothly so it is,
He afterward was called *Quirinus*,
which with his brother he called was Remus
was in all thyng confederate and partable,
that before god was vicious and damnable.

And as it was accordyng to theyr lyfe,
for lacke of vertue they fell in great defame
& atwene them there was an vncouth strife
Which of both should yeue the name
vnto the citie, atwene earnest and game,
after theyr names Rome to be called,
thus fell the case afore or it was walled.

And thereupon full long lasted their strifes
which should of them haue dominacion,
shewyng theyr titles and prerogatiues,
who should of them yeue name to þe town,
and reigne as kyng in that region,
there was no reason who should go before
because they wer both at once borne.

But to finish theyr fraternall discorde,
they haue prouided atwene the anon right,
thus condescending to put them at accorde,
Noether by force, oppression, nor might,
that which of them sawe greatest flight
of byrdes, flying high vpon an hyll,
should name the citie at his owne wyll.

Of this accord for to be witness,
they with them led a full great multitude,
therof to yeue a dome of rightwisenes,
Both of wise and of people rude,
all at once this matter to conclude,
and vnto an hyll called Auentine,
they ben ascended this matter for to fyne.

And byrdes fyre to Remus dyd appere,
by Iugurpe as they gan procede,
called vultures ful fierce in theyr manere,
But in number they double did excede,
that Romulus saw whan he toke good hede
wherof there fell a great controuersie,
which of them should preuaile on his partte

Thus first of al Remus had a syght.
of fyre byrdes, called Vultures,
and for to auance and preferre his righte,
He full proudly put hymself in piers,
but Romulus was not recheles,
his brothers clayme plainly to entrouble,
afforded his title with the number double.

Yet of his purpose one of them must sayle,
though it so be that they euer strue,
but Romulus gan finally preuaile,
And to the citie he forth went blieue,
and as auctours list echeone descriue,
and in their booke as they rehearse all,
after his name, Rome he did it call.

And al foreyns for to exclude out,
and agayn them to make strong defence,
first he began to wall it rounde about,
And made a law full dyedfull in sentence,
who clymbe the wall by any violence,
outward or inwarde, there is no more to sey,
by statute made he must nedes dye.

This was enact by full playn ordinaunce,
in payn of death, which no man breake shal,
but so befell Remus of ignorance,
Which of the statute knew nothyng at all,
of auenture went ouer the wall,
for which a knight or dayn in certayne,
the sayd Remus hath with a pikes slain.

His brother list not in no maner wise,
agayn the law to be fauourable,
but assented parcell for couetise,
vpon Remus to be more vengeable,
of this entent to make his raygne stable,
that he alone might gouerne & none other
by no claim found, nor brought in by his bro-

(ther.
And that the people should the more delite,
there to abyde and haue possession,

as olde auctours of Romulus doe write,
within the boundes of the same towne,
that he deuised by great prouision,
in compasse round so Chronicles compile,
a territory that called was Asile.

This Asilum by Romulus deuised,
was a place of refuge and succours,
like a Theater with liberties fraunchised,
for to receyue all fozeyn trespassours,
thieues, murderers weyliggers, & robbers,
by great resort within the walles wyde,
to foster al bybers & durste no where abide.

And with fled people fro diuers regions,
the citie gan to encrease and multiplie,
and banished folke of straunge nations,
To fynde refuge thither gan them hie:
And thus by processe gan they chivalry,
first through tyrantes, reches of working,
till all the worlde obeyed they byddyng.

Of wisful foze without title of ryght,
they brought all people vnder subiection,
a clayme they made by violence and might,
And toke no hede of trowth nor reason,
and the fyist auctour of they foundation,
was Romulus, that gathred all this route,
within the citie and walled it about.

And many day as made is mencion,
he had this citie in his gouernaunce,
and was the first kyng crowned in þe towne,
And raygned there by continuance
full many yeres, till the variaunce,
of fortune, through her false enuye,
in Campania made him for to dye.

Upon a day whan it gan thunder loude,
his name for euer to be more magnified,
some booke say he was rapte in a cloude,
High vp in heauen to be stellified,
with other goddes stately deified,
there to be stalled by Jupiters syde,
like for his knightes as Mars list prouide.

Loe here of Painims a false opinion,
to Chyestes law contrary and odious,
that tyrantes should for false oppression,
Be called goddes, or named glorious,

which by theyr lye wer found vicious,
for this plain trowth I dare it right wel tel
they rather been fiendes full depe in hell.

For but in earth theyr domination,
conueyed been by vertuous noblesse,
and that theyr power and high renoun,
be set on trowth and rightwiseness,
like theyr estates in prince or princeesse,
I dare affyrme of them both twayue,
for vicious liuyng they must endure payne.

But whan they been faithfull of entent,
right and trowth iustly to mainteyne,
and in theyr royall power be not blente,
Whonges redressing, and pooze folke sustein
A so cōtune to cōscience most clene (werres
Such life moze rathe than pompe of worldly
shal make them reigne in heauen aboute the
(serres.

For whiche, late princes vnderstōd at once,
A worldly princeesse to al their great riches
that their high hoynes fret with rich stones
Toward heuē theyr passage doth not dresse
but vertuous life, charitie, and mekenesse,
whan they list pride out of theyr heart arace,
that causeth them in heauē to wyne a place.

There is no moze straunge abuson,
nor tofore god greater ydolatre,
than whan princes list cathe affection,
Creatures fall to deifye,
by collusion, brought in by sorcerye,
now god defende all princes well disposed,
with suche false craft neuer to be enoyed.

And that theyr eyes by none yllusions,
be not englued nother with hoke nor lyne,
nor by no baytes of false insperctions,
Wrought by Cirenies by drinke or medicine
which of their nature resemble to a hyne,
through riches outward & beauty souerain
and who loke inward be like a foule carcin.

God of his grace amend al such outrage,
in noble princes, & saue the fro such warre,
and them enlumine, disposyng theyr corage
In such false worship & thei nomore ne erre
lyke to Argus, that they may sene a ferre,
that no false faging cause them to be blind,

The seconde

gods nor goddes to worſhip again kynd.

And though þe Romans did worſhip & ho-
to Romulus, by a conſtreint dyede; (nor
let no man take example of theyr error,
but to that lord whole ſides wer made rede
to ſaue mankind and on a croſſe was dede.
let men to hym in chief theyr loue obſerue,
which can the quite bet tha thei can deſerue

Now Metius Suffetius kyng of Al-
banoyrs being faſle of his othe and af-
ſuraunce, was drawen into peces.

The .xxix. Chapter.

Next Romulus with
terres al beſprent,
vnto John Bochas
appered Metius,
of chere and loke and of his port full faynt,
His ſal declaring ſcoward and deſpiteous,
and he was called the Suffetius,
lowe of birth and ſimple in bygrowyng.
of Albanoyrs tyll fortune made hym kyng.

Again whole pride the Romans ga werrey
full mightely oppreſſyng his countrey,
and for kyng Metius liſt them not obey,
They caſt them fully auenged for to be,
becauſe his birth was but of lowe degree,
and was tyſen by vnto eſtate royall,
they them purpoſe to yeez hym a ſodain ſal

Hasty clymbyng of pouert ſet on hight,
whan wrong title maketh hym to aſcende,
with vntare peys of his owne might,
A ſodain fall maketh hym to deſcende,
whan he liſt not of ſurquedye entende,
fro whence he came, nor himſelf to knowe,
tyll god & fortune his pomp hath ouerthrow

For this Metius of preſumption,
thought again Romans his pride might a-
gan warre agayn them by rebellion (uaile
was not fearefull theyr nobleſſe to aſſaile,
tyll on a day was ſigned a battaile,
both their hoſtes win a field to mete, (ſweete
to take their part whether it were ſower or

That time in Rome reigned Hoſtilius,
a manly man, and a full worthye knight,
twene hym concluded and king Metius,
They twaine to mete in ſlele armed bryght,
for bothe battayles to trye out the ryght,
by iuſt accord, and thereto not vary,
the partie vanquiſhed to be tributary.

And wholly put hym in ſubiection,
without entreating or any more delay,
and finally for woſt concluſion,
King Hoſtilius the triumphe wan that day,
that Albanoyrs ne could not ſay naye,
but that Romans (as put is in memory,)
by ſingular batayle had wonne the victory.

Thus had Romans firſt poſſeſſion,
of Albanoyrs to obey them and to dyede,
Metius yelded and ſworne to the towne,
Neuer to rebell for fauour ne for mede;
but for he was double founde in dede
of his aſſuraunce, and faſle to their citie,
he was chaſtiſed anon as ye ſhall ſee.

Again ſidenates a countrey of Itale,
king Hoſtilius for theyr rebellion,
caſt he would mete them in bataile.
for common profite and for deſenſion,
both of his citie and of his royall towne,
and for to aſſorce his partie in workyng,
of Albanoyrs he ſent vnto the kyng,

To come in haſt with his whole chivalrye,
and tary not in no maner wiſe,
but make him ſtrong to ſuſteyne his partie,
Like his beheſt as ye haue heard deuſe:
But king Metius full falſely gan practiſe,
a ſleighty reaſon and a couert wyle,
again his promes the Romans to begyle.

Yet he outward pretending to be true,
came to the field with a full great myrre,
liuing in hope to ſee ſome chaunges newe,
That he on Rome might auenged be,
and ſpecially that he might ſee,
kyng Hoſtilius of ſcoward falſe enuy,
that daye outrayed with al his chivalrye.

Fiſt whan he ſaw the Romans enbatailed
and ſidenates on that other ſide,

they

they wardes ready for to haue assailed,
he couertly dyd on an hyl abyde,
and too noz fro list not go noz ryde,
no: his person put in seopardy,
but who was strongest to hold on þe partie.

Wherof the Romaines fell in suspencion,
of king Metius whan they toke hede,
til Hostilius of high discrecion, (dyde
throughe his knighthode put them out of
and gan distimile of Metius the falschede,
and to comfort his knightes of entent,
saide what he did, was done by his assente.

He was full loth that his chivalrie,
should know the fect of Metius treason,
which cause might in all or in partie,
ful great hindring by some occasion,
to deme in him falsenes or treason:
yet of trouth the story beareth witnes,
al that he ment, was vntrouth and falsnes.

Thus of manhode and of high prudence,
he to his knightes gaue hert and hardines,
made them set on by so great violence,
that he the field gate of high prowesse,
on fidimates, brought in so great distresse,
and so outrayed on force on euery syde,
tofoze Romainis that they ne durst abyde.

And whan Metius saw the thus outrayed
by a maner of feyned false gladnes,
like as he had in heart be wel payed,
to Hostilius anon he gan hym dresse,
himself reioysing by counterfeit likenes,
and for his meaning plainly was conceiued
so as he came, right so he was receiued.

Thus whan Metius stode in his presence,
with a pretence of faithfull stablenes,
and all thapport of trouth in apparence,
he shadowed hath his expert doublenes,
vnder soote hony couert bitternes,
frendly visage with wordes smoth & playn,
though mouth & hert departed wer in twain

But Hostilius hath al his fraude espyed,
and his compassed falsenes and treason,
and therupon hath iustly fantasied,
A payne accordyng ypeysed of reason,

hym to punishe by a double passion:
this to meane, like as he was deuiced,
a double torment for him he hath prouided.

This was his dome and his fatall payne,
by Hostilius controued of iustice,
his fete, his armes, twene Charets tweyne.
Naked and bare the story doth deuise,
to be bounde and knyt in trauers wise,
contrariouly the horse to drawe and hale
till all his body wer rent on peeces smale.

And right as he was cause of great trouble
found ay in dede most full of variaunce,
therfore his pain was made in maner double
Right as himself was double in gouernace
false of his othe, of best and assurance,
a double in meaning as he hath perseuered
so at his ende his members wer disseuered.

His fete wer draw from the head asonder,
there was no ioynt with other for tabyde,
Here was a legge, and an arme laie ponder,
thus eche member from other gan deuyde.
And for he could holde on other syde,
by false pretence to other partie true,
him to chastice was found a pain new.

¶ Chapter how princes should of there
othes and promises be true, auoyding
all doublenes and deception.

¶ The. xxx. Chapter.

Where the end of double false mening
whan worde and hert be contrarious,
othe and behest false found in a king,
Of Albanys as was this Metius.
O noble princes prudent and vertuous,
let neuer story after moze recozde,
that worde and dede should in you discozde.

For king Metius variaunt of cozage,
whose inward mening was cuer on treason
treines contriuing with a faire visage (set,
his thought, his heart with double cozd feet,
by Bochas called disceit, and false bareit,
which vice descriuing concludeth of reals,
fraude of al fraudes, is false deception.

M.iii. for

The seconde

For with a face flattering and peaceble,
pretending trowth vnder false pleasaunce,
with his panteres perillous and terrible,
trappeth innocētes w greines of mischāce:
I meane deceit that with her countenance,
folkes englueth symple and rechles,
and them werreyth vnder a face of peace.

Duissauce of princes, famous & honozable,
hath be deceiued by this traitouresse:
A folke most prudent in their estate notable,
hath be distroubled by such false doublenes
and many a knight victorious of prowes,
hath ben entricked for al his high renoun,
by treines found of deceit and treason.

Deceit deceiueth and shalbe deceiued,
for by deceit who is deceivable,
though tis deceit be not out perceiued,
To a deceiver, deceit is returable,
fraud quit w fraude, is querdō ful couenable
for who with fraude, fraudolent is founde,
to a defrauder, fraude wil ay rebound.

Of king Hostilius that first weared pur-
ple hewe, consumpt with fyre leuen.

The .xxxi. Chapter.

What should I more of deceit edite
touching y fraude of king Metrus
for I me cast now finally to write,
The fatall end of king Hostilius,
which was the first as sayth Valerius,
in Rome citie that auctours knewe,
among kinges that weared purple hewe.

But after all his triumphall noblesse,
and many vncouth knightly high empzyse
fortune tappalle the price of his prowesse,
Made hym to be in ful frowarde wise,
rechles and slowe to do sacrifice
to Jupiter, for which sent from heauen,
he was consumpt with soden fyre leuen.

Here men may see the reuolutions,
of fortunes double puruepaunce,
how y most mighty of Romain Champions
haue sodenly be brought vnto mischance,
and their cutrages to put in remēbraunce,
great conquest turned to reue fro ioy,
for a rebuke I send them this Lenuoy.

Lenuoye.

Rome remember of thy foundat'ion,
& of what people thou toke thy ginning
thy building gan of false dissencion,
Of slaughter, murther, & outrageous rob-
yeuing to vs a maner knowlazing, (byng,
a false beginning auctours determine,
shal by processe come vnto ruine.

Where be thy fpyrours most souerain of re-
kiges exiled for their outrageous luing (not
thy senatours with worthy Scipion,
portes old thy triumphes rehercing,
thi laureat knightes most statly in their re-
thine aureat glozt thi nobles tēlumine (big
is by long processe brought vnto ruine.

Where is now Cesar that toke possession,
first of the Empire the triumphc blurring
or where is Lucan that maketh mencion.
Of all his conquest by serious witting:
Octavian most solemnely reigning,
where is become their lordshyp or their linet
processe of yeres hath brought it to ruine.

Where is the palace or royall mansion,
with a statue clere of golde shining,
by Romulus wrought, & set on that dōgebt
where is thy tēple of chrystal bryght shewing
made half of gold most richly monstreyng,
y heauēly spheres by cōpasse wrought & line
which that lōg processe hath brought vnto
(ruine)

Where is Tullius chief lantern of thy toun
in rethorike al other surmounting:
Mozall Senec, or prudent sad Caton,
thy common profit alway preferring:
or rightul Traian most iust in his deining
which on no partie list not to declynes
but long processe hath brought all to ruine.

Where is the temple of thy proteccion,
made by Virgil most curicus of building:
Images erect of euery region,
Whan any land was found rebelling,
toward that part a smal bell heard ruyng
to that prouince y ymage did encline,
which by lōg processe was brought vnto ruine

Where is also the great extorcion,
of consules and prefectes oppresynz,

Of Dictators the false collusion,
of Decemvirs the fraud and deceyving,
and of Tribunes the fraudulent workyng:
of all echedone the odious raine,
hath by processe been brought vnto ruine.

where is become thy domination,
thy great tributes, thy treasures enriching
the worlde all whole in thy subiection,
thy sword of vengeance al people manacing
euer greby to encrease in thy getting,
nothing by grace which that is diuine,
which hath the brought by processe to ruine

In thy most highest exaltacion,
thy proude tyrantes prouinces conqueriing,
to god contrary by long rebellion,
Goddess, goddesses falsely obeyiing,
aboue the startes thy surquedous climbing
till old vengeance thy noblesse did vnrwine
with new complaints to shewe thy ruine.

Lay down thy pride, and thy presumption,
thy pompous boast, thy lordshippes fcelig
confesse thine outrage & lay thy boast adoun
All false goddess plainly despying.
Lift vp thine here vnto that heauenly king
which with his blood thy sorowes for to fine
hath made thy raunsd to saue the fro ruine

from old Saturne draw thine affection,
his golden world fully despising,
and from Jupiter make a digression,
his siluer n tyme heartly dispraying,
resort agayn with will and whole menting
to hym that is lord of the orders nine,
which mekely dyed to saue the fro ruine.

Though Mars be mighty in his assencion
by influence victories disposyng,
and bright Phebus yeueth consolacion,
To worldly princes their noblesse auanting
forsake they? rightes and thy false offering,
and to that lord bowe a down thy chine,
which shed his blood to saue the fro ruine.

Wynge Mercury chief lord and patron,
of eloquence, and of saye speakyng,
forsake his seruice in thine opinion,
And serue the lord that gouerneth al thing
the sterred heauen, the spheres eke meuing,

which for thy sake was creained with a spine
his heart eke perced to saue thee fro ruine.

Cast bp of Venus the false derision,
her fiery bond, her flatteries renuing,
Of Diana the transmutacion,
now bright, now pale, now clere, now dreyng,
of blind Cupide the fraudolent mockyng,
of Juno, Bacchus, Proserpina, Lucine,
for none but Christ may saue the fro ruine.

Wode of Circes the bestiall poyson,
of Cereus the furious enchanting,
let not Medusa do thee no treason,
And fro Gozgon's turne thy loking,
and let Sinderelis haue thee in keepiing,
that Christ Iesu may be thy medicine,
again such raskall to saue the fro ruine.

Of false ydols make aburaction,
to Simulacres do no worshipping,
make thy resort to Christes passion,
which may by mercy redresse thine erring,
and by his grace repare thy falling,
so thou obey his vertuous discipline,
trust that he shall resore thy ruine.

His mercy is surmounting of foyson,
euer encreaseth without amenuyng,
aye at the full eche tyme and eche reason,
And neuer wasteth by none eclipsyng,
whan men list make deuoutly their reckning
to leaue their synne & folowe his doctrine,
he redy is to saue them from ruine.

O Rome Rome all olde abuson
of Ceremonies falsly disusing,
lay them asyde, and in conclusion,
Crye god mercy thy trespasses repenting,
trust he wil not refuse thyne arpyng,
but thee receiue to labour in his vine,
eternally to saue thee from ruine.

O noble princes of high discretion,
sithe in this worlde there is none abyding,
periseth conscience atwene wyll and reason,
While ye haue leisure of heart ymagining,
ye beate not hence but your deservyng,
let this conceit aye in your heartes mine,
be xample of Rome how all goeth to ruine.

¶ The ende of the second boke,

The prologe

The a pilgrime which
that goeth on foote,
and hath none horſe
to releue his trauayle,
thote, dnye and wery, and may find no bote
Of wel cold whan thurst doth hym assaile,
wine noz licour, that may to hym auayle,
right so fare I which in my businesse,
no succour fynde my rudenes to redyſſe.

I meane as thus, I haue no freſh licour
out of the conduites of Calliope,
noz through Clio in Rhetorike no floure,
In my labour for to refreſh me:
noz of the ſuſters in noumber thriſe three,
which with Cithera on Parnaſo dwell,
they neuer me gaue drike once of their wel

For of theyr ſprynges clere and chryſtalline,
that ſprange by touchyng of the Pegase,
their fauour lacketh my making tenſumine
I fynde theyr bawme of ſo great ſcarcitie,
to tame their tūnes with ſome drop of plectre
for Polyphemus throw his great blindnes,
hath in me derked of Argus the brightnes.

Our life here ſhort of wit the great dulnes
the heuy ſoule troubled with trauayle,
and of memorye the glaſyng brotelnes,
drede & vncūning haue made a ſtrōg batail
with werynes my ſpīrite to aſſaile,
and with their ſubtil cōpeyng in moſt quiet
hath made my ſpīrit in makyng for to ſeint

And ouermore, the ferefull ſtewardnes
of my ſtepmother called obliuion,
hath a baſtyll of forgetfulnes,
To ſtoppe the paſſage, and ſhadow my reaſon
that I might haue no clere direccion,
in tranſlating of new to quicke me,
ſtoyes to write of olde antiquite.

Thus was I ſet and ſtode in double werre
at the metyng of fearefull wayes twayne,
the one was this, who euer liſt to lere,
Wheras good wyll gan me conſtrayne,
Sochas accompliſh for to doe my payne,
came ignoraunce, with a manace of drede,
my penne to reſt I durſt not procede.

Thus my ſelf remembryng on this boke,
it to tranſlate how I had vndertake,
full pale of chere aſtonyed in my loke,
Mine hād gā tremble, my pēne I felt quake
that diſpayred, I had almoſt forſake
ſo great a labour, dreddful and importable,
it to perfourme I fond my ſelf ſo vnable.

Twene the reſidue of this great iourney,
and litle part thereof that was begunne,
I ſtode chekmate for feare whan I gan ſee,
In my way how litle I had runne,
like to a man, that fayled day and ſunne,
and had no light to accompliſh his biage,
ſo ferre I ſtode abacke in my paſſage.

The nyght came on, darked with ignoraunce,
my witte was dull by clerenes to diſcerne,
in Rhetorike for lacke of ſuffiſaunce,
the Torch out, & quēched was þ lantern
and in this caſe my ſtyle to gouerne,
me to further I fond none other muſe,
but hard as ſtone Pierides and Meduſe.

Support was none my dulnes for to gye,
pouert approached in ſtale croked age,
Mercury aſſent and Philologie,
My purſe aye light and boyd of al coyngage,
Bacchus farre of, to glad my corage,
an ebbe of plentie ſcarcitie at full,
which of an old man maketh the ſpīrit dull.

But hope and truſt to put away diſpayre,
into my mynde of new gan them dreſſe,
and chiefe of all to make wether fayre,
My lordes freedom and bounteous largelſſe
into mine heart brought in ſuche gladnes
that through releuyng of his benigne grace
faſte indigence liſt me nomore manace.

O howe it is an heartly reſorſyng,
to ſerue a pynce that liſt to aduerſe,
of their ſeruauntes the feithful ſuſt menyng
And liſt to cōſider to guerdon their ſeruece
and at a nede, liſt them not deſpiſe,
but fro al danger þ ſhould thē noy or greue
be euer ready to helpe them and releue.

And thus releued by the goodly hede (man,
þ through þ nobleſſe of this moſt knightly
al

all misse clere of dispayre and drede,
Trust, hope, and faith, into my heart ran,
and on my labour anone forthwith I gan,
for by clere support of my lordes grace,
al sojeyn letting from me I dyd enchase,

folkes that vse to make great viages,
which vnderfong long trauaile and labour,
whan thei haue done gret part of their pas-
Of werines tawage their rigour, (sages
again faintise to find some fauour,
loke oft agayne parcell to be releued,
to see how much theyi iourney is atcheued.

Cause why they so oft loke ageyne,
backward turne loke, and eke visage,
is onely this, that it may be seyn
To them, how much is done of theyi viage:
the wery folke that gone on pilgrimage,
tell them some while a ful large space,
laborious swete to wypp fro their face.

Their heavy fardel among they cast down,
at certain boundes to bo their backes ease,
at welles colde eke of intencion, (tappease,
Drynke fresh waters their greuous thyrle
or wholfō wines their appetite to please,
techenyng the miles by computacions,
which thei haue past of castels & of tounes.

It doth them ease the number for to know,
sch they began of many great iourneys,
of hye mountaines and of valeys lowe,
And straunge sightes passing by countreis
the vncouth building of boroughes & cities
costing & distance frō towne & the spaces
this is their talking at theyi resting places.

The residue and the surpluse,
thei recken also of their labour comming,
thirke it is a maner euantage,
To haue and see a clere knoweleging
of thinges passed, and thinges eke folow'ng
for to their hertes it doth ful great please
whan al suche thyng is put in remembrance.

And semblably John Bochas as I finde,
gan turne his backe, loke, and countenance
and to remember a pointing in his minde,
To the stoies rehearsed in substaunce,
in his two bokes of sorowes & displeasance
himself astonied meruellyng a great dele,
the fall of princes from fortunes whele.

Of their vnhap as he doth rehearse,
toward hymself the cause doth rebounde,
their clurbing by the heauens for to pearce,
In worldly richesse tencease and habound
their grede by eke doth themself confounde,
and theyi thyrā of hauing vntancheable,
causeth their noblesse to be so variable.

High climbyng by of reason who can see,
dulleth of brynes the memoraill:
blunteth the sight in high and lowe degree,
which from a loft maketh them haue a fall,
men say of olde who that coueteth all,
at vnset houre such one shall not chese,
but all his gathryng at once shall he lese.

For worldly folke which so hye aryse,
with the great peys of worldly habundance
and with the weight of froward couetise,
Namely where fortune holdeth the balance
to vnware turne of some unhappy chance,
this stormy quene, this double fals goddes
plungeth the down frō al their great riches.

Wherefore Bochas, hereof to make a ppefe
sheweth to purpose a sentence full notable
a clere example of vnware suche mischiefe,
Whiteth of an auctour by maner of a fable,
albe the meanyng be full commendable,
and well accorpyng in conclusion,
to the clere purpose of this entencion.

There endeth the
Prologe.

The thirde Boke.



How Andalus doctor of Astro-
nomie concludeth howe Princes
shoulde not attribute constellacions
nor fortune of their unhappie fal-
ling but their demerites and vici-
ous liuyng.

The .i. Chapter.



A Naples whilom
as he doth specifye,
in his youth whan he
to schole went,
there was a Doctour
of Astronomie,
famous of cunnyng
and ryght excellent,
of hym rehearsing shortly in sentment,
his ioye was most to study and to wake,
and he was called Andalus the blake.

He read in scholes the meying of the heauē
the kynde of sterres and constellacions,
the course also of the planettes seuen,
theyr influences and theyr merions,
and helde also in his opinions.

the fall of princes, the cause well out fought,
came of themselfe, & of fortune right nought.

For the startes wer nothing to wite,
by theyr meying nor by theyr influence,
nor that mē shoulde of right & heauē at wite,
for no froward worldly violence,
for this clarke there concluded in sentment
how men by vertue long may contune,
from hurt of sterres, or of fortune,

Theyr owne desert is chief occasions
of the unhap whoso taketh hede,
& theyr demerites vnwarely put the doter
than vicious life doth theyr bydle lede,
course of fortune nor of the sterres rede,
hindreth nothing agayn theyr felicitie,
sith of free choyse they haue full libertie.

God punisheth synne in many maner
some he chastiseth for theyr owne awayle.
men may of reason in such case deuise.
Sinne ay requireth vengeance at his tale.
God of fortune taketh no counsaile,
nor from her meying no man is more free
as clarkes wite, than is glad pouertee.

And vnto purpose this auctour ful notable
to his scholers there being in presence,
full demurely gan rehearse a fable,
with many a colour of sugred eloquence,
theron cōcludyng the sūme of his sentence
touching a strife which he dyd expresse,
arwene glad pouert & this blind goddesse.

A disputacion betwoene fortune
and glad pouert.

Quod Andalus whilom of fortune,
in streight place ther sat glad pouerte
which resembled of loke and figure,
A reches woman most ougly on to see,
at a narrow meting of hie wayes thre,
all to torne, to ragged and to rente,
athousand patches vpon her garmente.

She was hideous bothe of chere and face,
and in semyng voyde of sorow and dyede,
and by that way as fortune did passe,
And of glad pouert sodeinly toke hede,
she gan to smile and laugh at her in dede,
by a maner scornynge in certayne,
of her araye she had so great disdayne.

Whose froward laughter whan pouert did
how she of her had indignacion. (espye
she rose her vp of high melancoly,
plainly to shewe her intencion,
without good daye or salutation,
doynge to fortune no maner reuerence,
vnder these wordes declaring her sētece.

O thou fortune most foolt of fooles all,
what cause hast thou for to laugh at me,
or what disdayn is in thy heart fall:
Spare not a dele, tell on let me see,
for I full litle haue a do with thee,
of old no; new, I haue none acquaintance,
noher with thee no; with thy gouernance.

And whan fortune beholdeth the manere
of glad pouert, in her to torne wede,
and knew also by countenance and chere,
how she of her toke but litle hede,
like as she had to her no manere nede,
the which thinges conceiued and plene,
to pouert she answered thus ageyne.

My scorneful laughter plainly was for the
whan I thee sawe so meger pale and lene,
naked and colde in great aduertisee,
Scabbed, scouze, scaled, and bneleue,
on backe, and body, as it is well sene,
many a beast walke in the y^r pasture,
which day by day of new thou doest recure.

Hauiing nothyng to wrap in thy head,
saue a brode hat rent out of nattes olde,
full oft hungrye for defaute of bread,
Slepyng on strawe in the frostes colde,
and where I comest as mē may wel behold,
for feare of thee, children them withdraue,
and many a dogge hath on thy staffe ygnaw

To all estates thou art most odious,
men with thee wyl haue no dalaunce,
thy felowship is so contrarious,
where thou abidest may be no pleasaunce,
folk hate so deadly thy froward acquaintāce
that finally I dare conclude of thee,
where euer I comest thy felowship mē flee.

Whan glad pouert gan plainly vnderstoode,
these rebukes rehearced of fortune,
the rude reasons that she toke on honde,
which frowardly to her she dyd entune,
as pouert wer a refuse in commune,
by the repreues that fortune on her layde,
for which pouert replied agayn and sayde.

Fortune (quod she) touchyng this debate,
which of malice thou dost agayn me take,
be well certain touchyng my pooze estate,
I of free wyl thy fauour haue forsake,
I though folke say I mayest men rich make
yet I had leuer be pooze with gladnes,
than with trouble possede great riches.

For though thou seme benigne & debonaire
by a maner counterfeit apparence,
fatte and well fed with round chekes fayre,
with many colours of trouth as in pretence
as therof faith were very existence,
but vnder all thy floures of freshnes,
the serpent glideth of change & doublenes.

And though thy clothyng be of purple hew,
with great awaiting of many chamberetes
of

The thirde

of gold and perle eche day chaunged newe,
Clothes of gold and sondry freshe attires,
and in thine houshold full many officers,
yet I dare well put in leoparde,
with thee to plete and hold chaumpartie.

Thus glad pouert gan toaxe importune,
of chere contrary, of loke, and of language,
again this Lady which called is fortune,
That of disdayne she fyll into a rage:
behold (quod she) of pouert the rozaige,
in wretchednes stondyng disconsolate,
how againe me she is now obstinate.

She cannot see how she stant outrayed,
t. tre from the fauour of my felicitie,
yet of pride she is not dismayed,
For list not bowe for to obey me,
though she be cast in mendicte,
farthest abacke I do you well assure,
in mischief set of any creature.

But truly pouert for al thy trauandise,
mauger thy pride and thy great outrage,
I shal thee punish in full cruell wyse,
To make thee loue vnder my seruage.
which resemblist a deadly pale ymage,
that wet of new rysen out of his graue,
and yet of pride darest ayein me raue.

But whan fortune had these wordes sayde,
glad pouert gan fall in great gladnes,
and again fortune with a sodayne brayde,
She gan her conceit out shew and expresse
fortune (quod she) though thou be a goddesse
called of fooles, yet learne this of me.
from thy seruage I stond at libertee.

But if I shall al gates haue a doe,
with thee in armes most cruel & vengeable
touchyng the quarrel that is attwene vs two
There is one thyng to me right cōfortable,
that thy corage is fleking and vnstable:
And where an hert is in himself deuided,
victory in armes for hym is not prouided.

He lyst nother flatter thee nor sage,
nor thee tanoynte by adulation,
though flattery and feyned false language,
Appropried be to thy condition:

And in despite of thy presumption,
I haue forsake of my fre voluntee,
all the treasours of worldly vanitee.

Whilom I was as thou hast deuised,
seruaunt to thee and vnto thy treasours,
but fro thy danger now I am fraunchised
Seking of thee nother help nor succours,
manace kynges and mighty Emperours,
for glad pouert late nother sone,
with thy riches hath nothing to done.

For though thou haue embraced in thy chaine
worldly princes and goodes transitoies,
and riche marchauntes vnder thy demeine
yeuest to knighthode conquest and victories
the fading palme of laude and baingloies,
but whan eche one thy fauour haue recured
than is glad pouert fre fro thy lure assured.

All thy seruantes stond vnder drede,
quaking for feare of thy doublenes,
for nother wisdom, force, nor manhebe,
freedom, bountie, loue, nor gentlenes,
may in thy fauour haue no sikernes,
they be so possed with windes in thy barge,
wheras glad pouert goeth frely at his large

Thy manasyng doth me no duresse,
whiche worldly princes dreden eueryhowe
they maie wel quake for losse of great riches
But I glad pouert thereof despye none:
as flow & ebbe all worldly thyng must gone,
for after floudes of fortune's tide,
the ebbe foloweth and wyll no man abide.

Flow and ebbe to me be both pliche,
I drede nothyng thy mutabilitie,
make whom thou list other pooze or riche,
for I nothyng wyll requyre of thee,
nother lordship nor great prosperitee,
for with thy giftes who that hath to done,
of chaunges braideth ofter than the Mont.

Out of pouert came first these Emperours
that wet in Rome crowned with laurere,
tredō and largesse made the first victours,
Causing theyr fame to shine bryght & cleer
till couerise brought them in daunger.
whan they of folly in their most excellenc,
To

To thy doublets did reuerence.

for whan freedom a pynce doth forsake,
And couetise put away largesse,
and straytnes is into household take,
And niggardship exileth gentlenesse,
than is withdraue from their high noblesse
the people's heart, and playnly to deuise,
of their seruantes face wel al good seruise.

All such sodayn chaunges in commune,
in this world bled now fro day to day:
eche one they come by fraud of false fortune
Experience hath put it at assay:
Loue, trouth and feyth, be gone ferre away,
And if that trust with princes will not tary,
Little meruayl though the people bary.

for though thy changes of fraudolēt fair-
there is now vsed in euerie region, (nes
glad there out shewed to couert doublets
bnder the courtain of simulation,
So secrete is now adulation,
that in this world may be no suretie,
But if it rest in glad pouertie.

Yet of thy perilsous froward varsaunce,
I let no stoe truely (as for me.)
for al thy frendship cōcludeth to mischaunce,
with sodayn mischief of mutabilitie,
which reueth me hert to haue adoe with the:
for sustaunce in my pooze estate,
What to thy changes, say sodeinly checkmate

fortune with angre almost dispeyed,
Of these wordes toke ful great greuaunce,
Pouertie (q. he) which mayst not be appeied
But I now shew agayn thee my puissance,
Men would little accoumpt my substaunce
O mighty pouertie, O strong Hercules,
which agayn me putteth thy self in pices.

Supposeth thou it should the auayle,
Other by force or by hardinesse,
To haue adoe with me in battayle,
which am of conquest and of high prowesse
In armes called lady and princeesse:
for there is none so mighty conquerour,
that may preuaile without my fauour.

Of these wordes pouert nothing aferde,
Answered agayn thus, playnly in sentence
though I here haue, spere, shield, nor sword
Nor chosen armour to stond at defence,
Dollax nor dagger to make resistance,
But bare and naked anon it shal be seyne,
where I with me darest wrestle on this plain

which shalbe done vnder condicion,
that none of vs shal himself withdraue,
But still abyde of intencion,
til he I banquisheth ordeined hath a lawe,
Such as him liketh, agayn his felawe.
The which lawe shal not be delayed,
to be accomplished on him that is outtraped.

Of whose wordes fortune again gan smile,
that pouert proffered so proudly to assaile,
And vpon this she stint a little while,
and to pouerte she put this opposaile.
Who shal (quod she) be iudge of this battaile
or yeue dome iustly atwene vs tweyne,
of this quarel which we shal dareyne?

I aske also another question,
Touching thy profer of furious outrage,
where as thou putteth a condicion
And a lawe with ful proude language,
Where shalt thou finde pledges or hostage,
to kepe the promise which thou doest ordeyn
therof to abide the guerdon or the peyne.

I mene as thus, if there be set a lawe
atwene vs two, or a condicion,
By suretie which may not be withdraue,
as vnder bond or obligacion.
But there is nother lawe nor reason,
May bynd a beggar, if it be wel sought,
whan it is pricued I he hath right nought.

The sect of pouert hath a protection,
from al statutes to goe at libertie,
And from all lawe a playne exception.
Than foloweth it if thou bynd thee
to any lawe that may contriued be,
It wer in bayn plainly to endite,
which hall right nought thy party to acquite

Thou art so feble (if I came therto)
that thou wer brought vnto betraunce.

The thynde

For no power whan al that wer doo,
thou shouldest fayle to make thy finaunce,
Both destitute of good and of substaunce.
And sith no lawe thy persone may coarte,
It wer foly with such one to seoparte.

If I would compulse thee to wake,
to aske of the treasour of king Dary:
On that partie thou stondest farre abake,
My payment so long shal tary,
Indigence would make the to vary.
And if I would thy person eke compare,
To Alisaunder, thy sides been ful bare.

And finally thou stondest in such caas,
Of misery, wretchednes, and nede,
that thou mightest of reason sing alas,
Both forlake of frendship and kintede:
and ther is none þ dare pledge the for drede
Yet like a foole suppressed with bainglopy,
Hoped of me to winne the victoꝝ.

Quod glad pouert, I doubt neuer adel
that the victoꝝ shal passe on my side
pledge & hostages let the go fare wel,
I alke no more of al thy great pryde,
But to this end, that thou wilt abyde,
Pledge thy feith (albe that some men seith)
to trust on fortune there is full litle feith.

And for my part in this high empyse,
sith I haue pledges, nother one nor tweyne,
More sure hostage can I not deuise:
But if so be the victoꝝ thou atteyne,
than yelde I my body bounden in a cheyne
Perpetually, like the condicion,
with thee to abide fettered in prison.

Than fortune lough moze thā she did afoꝝn
whan she sawe pouerte so presumptuous,
In her array all to ragged and to toꝝne,
And had nother rent, land nor house,
It is (q she) a thyng contrariouse
Unto nature, who that can aduert,
To a begget to haue a sturdy herte.

And if I thee vanquished in Battayle,
It wer to me nother worþip nor auantage:
What shouldesthy body vnto me auayle,
Thee to enpryson streitly in a cage?

It shoulde be a charge and a costage,
thyne empty wombe eche day to fulfill,
If thou mightest haue bittayle at thy will.

And if I would my selfe to magnifye,
token of triumph afoꝝne my chayne the lede,
Then would deme it a maner mockery,
and say in scoꝝne: take of þ foole good hede.
How he a beggar hath ouercome in dede:
fought with him for to encrease his name,
which conquest turneth to his disaunter &
(Name.

Yet whan I haue the brought vnto vittrāce
My power shewed, & my great might,
and thine outrage oppressed by vengancer:
After al this (as it is skil and right.)
It shalbe couth in euery mannes sight,
Out declared the great difference,
betwene thy feblenes & my great excellēce.

Than to repressse thy surquedry at ones,
Cruel Orchus the tye dogge infernal,
shal rend thy skin asunder from the bones,
to shew my power which is imperial,
And to declare in especial,
Pouert reclaimed vnto þydes lure,
with me to plete may no while endure.

And sodeynly oꝝ glad pouert toke hede,
fortune proudly fyrst began tassayle,
And vntwarely hent her by the hed,
Deming of pryde that she may not fayle,
through her power to vanquish this battale,
But it may fall a Dye wyꝝ in his right,
to outray a Gyant for al his great might.

God taketh no hede to power nor to strenght
To high estate, nor to high noblesse,
to square limmes forged on byede oꝝ lēgh,
But to quarels grounded on righteousnes,
for out of wꝝong may growe no prowesse:
for where that trouth holdeth champartie,
God wil his cause of grace ay magnifie.

Wherfoꝝe pouert strong in her entent,
Light and deliuer, boyde of al fatnesse,
Right wel byethed and nothing corpulent:
Small of dietes surfetes to repressse,
Agayn fortune ful proudly gan her dresse,
And with an ougle sterne cruel face,

Can in armes her proudly to embrace.

Pouert was slender and might wel endure,
fortune was roūd, both short of wind & breath
And woundes great oppressed with armure
for lacke of wind the great stuf her slethe,
And many a man bringeth to his death:
for ouer much of any maner thing,
Hath many one brought to his vndoyng.

A meane is best with good gouernaunce,
to mekel is nought, no: ouer greate plentie
Greater richesse is found in suffisaunce
than in the folte flodes of superfluitie:
And who is content in his pouertie,
and grutcheth not for bitter ne for sore,
What euer he be hath fortune vnder sore.

Couetise put hym in no dispayre,
wherfore pouert in heart glad and light,
Lift fortune ful hygh vp in the ayre,
and her conscreyned of very force & might:
for glad pouert of custome and of ryght,
whan any trouble ageyne her doth begynne
Aye of fortune the lauter she doth wyne.

Danger fortune in the aire alofte,
Constrained she was by wilful pouerte,
that to the earth her fall was full vnlofte,
for of pouert the bony sharpe kne,
Slender and long, and leane vpon to se,
hit fortune with so great a might
Ageine & hert, she might not stand byght,

To signifye that pouert with gladnesse,
which is content with small possession,
and geueth no force of treasure ne richesse
Hath ouer fortune the dominacion,
and kepeth her euer vnder subieccion:
where worldly folke w their rich appaile,
Lue euer in dzebe lest fortune would fayle

The poze man afore the thief doth sing
Under the wodes with freshe notes myll,
the ryche man ful ferel of robbing,
Quaking for dreade, rideth forth ful still:
the poze at large goth where hym list at wyl,
Strongly fraunchised fro al debate & strife,
the rich afeard alway to lese his life,

Thus glad pouert hath the palme ywonne
fortune outraid for al her doublenesse,
Upon whom pouert in hast is conne,
and strayned her with so greate duresse,
Tyl she confessed, and plainly did expresse,
with feith and hande in al her great payne,
To abide what lawe pouert list her ordaine

And in hast after this disconfiture,
fortune began to compleine soze:
but glad pouert which al thing might endure
Charged fortune to scornen her nomore,
for it was saide sithen goe ful yore,
he that reioysed to scorne folke in vaine,
Whā he were lothest shal scorned be again

Yet (quod pouert) though I were despitous,
wordes reherling which were not faire,
Straunge rebukes ful contrarious,
and repreneus many a thousand paire,
Thou shalt me find ageine debonaire:
for though a tong be slaudorous & vbegeable,
To slauder agein is nothing commedable

Thou must consider touching our batayle,
the ordenaunce and imposicion,
That which of vs in conquest do preuaile,
to bring his felowe to subieccion:
He shal obey the statute by reason,
and accomplishe of very due det,
what lawe the victour list vpon hym set.

For which thou shalt the same lawe obeye,
with circumstaunces of the condicion,
By me ordained, and nothing agein seye,
Make no grutchyng no: replicacion:
Consired fist the false opinion,
of them that seine al worldly auenture,
Both good and bad abide vnder thy cure.

Some poetes and philosophers also,
would in this case make the a goddesse,
Which be deceiued (I dare say) both two,
and their errour and foly to redgesse,
I shall withdraue in very sikernes,
euill auenture away fro thy power,
That she nomore shal stand in thy daunger

This lawe of newe vpon the I make,
that first thou shalt al open in some playne,
A. ii. End

The thynde

Euil auenture bynden to a stake,
or to some piller where she may be seyn,
To shewe example to folkes in certeyne,
that no man shall lose her nor discharge.
But such as list with her to gone at large.

Hereof to make a declaracion,
touching thy might of euyl auenture,
Thou shalt forgo thy domination,
to hinder or harne any creature,
But only foolles which in thy might assure,
they of their folly may fele great damage,
Not of thy power, but of their owne outrage

For thilke foolles which that list vnbnde,
This wretch called unhappy auenture,
of wyt and reason they make the self blind
Like as the world stode in fortunes cure,
As though she might assure them a vnure
and them dispose to welth or wretchednesse
In their errour her calling a goddesse.

Such wilful wretches þ them selfe betake
to put their fredome in her subiection,
Of god above the power they forsake,
and them submit again al reason,
Under fortunes transmutacion,
their libertie ful falsely for to thral,
Namely whan they a goddesse list her call.

With a darke myst of variacon,
fortune hath clouded their clere naturalite.
And euer shadowed their discreaon (ght
That they be blent in their inward sight,
For to consider and to behold aright,
Howe god above put vnder mannes cure,
fre choise of good his reason to assure,

The lord enlumined of bounteous largesse
with mind and wit his memoial,
Toward al vertue hys steppes for to dresse,
endued hys reason for to be natural,
Of frowardnesse til he ware bestial,
to bind him self contrariouly in dede.
To serue fortune at wene hope and drede.

Thus bestial folke made her a goddesse,
falsely wening she might them most auasle
With her plente of haboundaunt richesse:
And some deme in their supposale,

with vnware chaunge she dare þ great assaile
whose trust alway medled is with trouble
a her pleasaunce includeth meaning double.

And some affirme that she may auance,
Conquestes great and disconfitures,
and howe it lieth alio in her puaunce,
To forther and hinder al maner creatures
and cal her princeesse of fatall auentures:
The rich to auance by royal apparale,
and by disdaine to hinder the pozaile.

Whā she maketh most fulsomly her profers
her blandishing is forced with falshede,
Whan her richesse is stuffed vp in coffers
they been ay shet vnder a locke of drede,
Wherfore ye rich, of one thing take hede:
As your gadying came in with pleasaunce,
right so your losse departeth with mischaunce

Your greedy thyrt treasure to multiplie,
Causeth an etike of none sustaunce,
in you engendring a false hydropisie,
With a sharpe hunger of worldly habūdāce,
making of you a maner resemblance,
With Tantalus whan ye depest sinke
than is your nature most thrustleugh for to
(Drynke

Whō climeth highest on fortunes welc,
and sodeynly to richesse doth ascende,
An vnware turne afoze sene neuer adel,
whan he least weneth, maketh him descend,
fro such chaūges who may him self defēd,
but they that be with pouert not dismayd,
And can with litell hold them self appayd.

Howe king Hostilius worshipping false
goddes was consumpt with fiery leuen.

The .ii. Chapter.



And while Bochas gan
muse in this matter,
Considered first al worldly thing
must faile,

with weping yeu to hym there dñd appere,
Princes þ whilom were famous in frayle
which gan their fal ful piteously bewaile,
For more contrarpe was their falling lowe
That

That they tofore had of no mischiefe knowe.

For more vncouth is thilke aduersitie,
Namely to princes whan it is soden,
whiche euer haue liued in prosperitie,
Hauing on fortune no matter to compleyn,
Than of a wretch that liueth ay in payne,
of custome causeth (conceiued the sentence)
Of ioy and sorow a ful great difference.

Of ioy passed the new remembraunce,
whan folke been fal from their felicitie,
In treble wise it doth them great greuaunce
The vnware turne from their tranquillite
the vnsture fruit and mutabilitie
In worldly power, which þ they haue found
Unto their hertes yeueth a greuous wound

But a wretch which is in wretchednes,
hath euer liued, and neuer was partable
Of no welfare nor of wealthfulnes,
Nor neuer found fortune fauourable,
His sorow, his mischiefe, been so custumable
that of his paynes, long continuance,
Doth to his griesues a maner allegeaunce.

But to princes which sate so high aloft,
A soden fal is most contrarious,
And they descending wel the more vnsoft,
In they triumphes that they wer glorious
Record I take of King Hostilius,
which in Rome from his royal stall,
whan he sate crowned most sodenly is fall.

It is remembred of olde, and not of newe,
Of all Rome that he was lord and syre,
the fyrst of kinges that weared purple hewe,
And of that cite gouerned the empire:
Had of fortune all that him list desyre,
Till that he fel, in al his regaly,
Into a froward deadly malady.

And of his paynes to find allegeaunce,
To the temples he went on pilgrimage:
His offering made with deuout obeysaunce,
wherby some deale his paynes gan asswage
And he was restored of courage,
felt himself that he did amend,
To common profit agayn he gan entend.

Upon the Albanes reising in his glory,
To great auayle of Rome the Cite,
through his knightthod he had a greet victorie
After the which by ful great crueltie,
He beraft them fraunchise and libertie,
& made the after, through his high renoun,
To be to Rome vnder subiection.

After his conquest the story doth deuyse,
In his noblesse full statly and royal,
he gan make a riche sacrifice,
to queme and please for a memorial,
after the rites Ceremonial,
to Jupiter, by ful great reuerence,
Afore his altars with fyres and insence.

But for that he in his inward intent,
By circumstances of his oblation,
was reches found, and also negligent,
By some froward false assention,
The goddes caught an indignacion,
and sodenly descending from the heauen,
he was consumpt with a fyery leuen.

His false Goddes might him not auayle,
Jupiter, Saturnus, nor Venus:
Let al chrysten desyre such rascalle,
for to our feyth they be contrarious,
And among gods a thing most outragious,
is whan that princes blent in their folp,
List earthly thinges falsely desyre.

For vnto God is hateful and odible,
A withdrawing of his reuerence,
To magnifie thinges corruptible,
with vndue honour, with false concupiscence
wherfore ye princes, beware of high proudece
Lest God vnwarely punish your noblesse,
make you in erth no false god nor goddesse

How Anchus Martius king of
Rome was murdered by Lucius,
by thassent of his wyfe.

The.iii. Chapter.

Thinke on Anchus king of Rome toun
Whiche was so noble thynnyng in hys
glory,
weared a crown ful famous of renoun,

A.iii.

Act

The thyrde

Next Hostilius (as put is in memory.)
wanne the palme of many great victorie
But for al that with a ful sharpe knyfe,
he murthered was by assenting of his wife.

He loued her best aboue eche creature,
Considered not her flattery nor falsenes,
Her double meaning vnder couerture,
falsly blent this princes worthines.
To robbe and reue him of his great riches,
was her labour with counterfet pleasure
In her intent to bring hym to mischaunce.

This Anchus had a great affection,
vnto his Goddess to make sacrifices,
and to augment the religion
of Paganisme, made in sundry wyse,
through his manhode, & circumspect diuises
vpon Latines, rebel to hys Citie,
for common profit he made a great army.

One of their Cities, called Polotoxe,
he knyghtly wan maugre al their myght:
And when he had of them ful victorie,
He abode no lenger, but anon forth right,
Made al the people in euery mannes syght
As prisoners thys Romaine Champion,
Be brought afore him bound into the town.

Eke as I fynd, this Anchus hold cease,
for common profit in his affection,
their territories to augment and increase
In all the countreys about enuiron,
toward the riuer where Tyber reneth down:
At which place he lette edifye,
a ful strong citie which called is Ostie.

But notwithstanding al hys worthines,
He was deppynd the story telleth so,
Of hys byrgdome and hys great riches,
By a foryn called Lucinio.
Hys wyfe Tanaquil assented was therto,
By whose outrage and gredy couetise,
Anchus was murthered in ful cruel wyse.

How Lucinio that murthered An-
chus was after murthered.

The fourth Chapter.

Thus to the whele of fortune he is fal
Lucinio in Rome is crowned king,
And the Romaines after did him call,
Tarquin the old by record of wytyng,
which hath atteyned by fraudolēt working
And by his subtyll forged eloquence,
vnto the state of royal excellence.

He fyrst ordeyned in hys estate royal,
Turneyes, Justices, in Castles and cities,
and other playes called martiall,
with many famous great solemnities,
Sessions for states and degrees.
This Tarquin eke was fyrst he did his pepyr
In open streetes tauerns to ordeyn.

Eke to preserue his Citie out of doubte,
If they enemies list them to assaile,
He was the fyrst that walled Rome about
with myghty towres, bulwark for to sayle,
And had also many strong barayle,
with the Sabynes in their rebellyon,
and made them subiect vnto Rome town.

But for he was assented to depyue,
worthy Anchus from hys estate royal,
And after that toke Tanaquil to wyue,
which slough her lord by treason ful mortall
God would of right he should haue a fall,
The lord wil not, which euery thing mayle,
Suffer murder long to be secree.

for Lucinio for his great offence,
Touching the murther of king Anchus,
Vayne was by sodeyn violence,
of two shepheardes, the story telleth thus,
which of entent wer contrarious,
atwene themself by a fayned stryfe,
to fynd a way to reue him of his life.

for while the kyng sate in iudgement,
vpon their quarel for to do iustice:
full sodeynly they being of Assent,
fyll vpon him in ful cruel wyse.
And with an Axe, the story doth deuise,
One of them (or any man toke hede,)
On two parties rose the kynges hed.

This thing was done by the procuring,
Of two chyldren, sonnes to Anchus:

which

which wer excited by false compassing
Of Lucinio agayn them most pious,
To him they presence was so odious.
But they the hope, tho they wer out of sight
they fathers death to auenge if they might

for of nature blud wil auenged be,
To recompence the wrong of his kintede.
In this Chapter like as ye may see:
Blud shed for blud, thus both did blede.
By which example let princes take hede,
How murder done for supplantacion,
Requireth vengeace for his final guerdon.

Clenug.

This tragedy by cleare inspection,
Openly declareth in substance,
how slaughter of princes causeth subuersion
Of realmes, Cities put out of ordinaunce,
Of mostall werre long continuance.
Blud by supplanting shed of kinges twen
beraple here shewed, false murder to restrin

The fine declaring of murder a false treasō
the dede horrible cryeth aye vengeaunce,
to God aboue, to cast his eyen downe,
to punish this sin throw his mighti pūssāce
for it is mother of mischief and mischance
wherfoze ye princes doe some lawe ordein,
within your boundes, three vices to restrin.

The vice of slaunder, murder and poyson,
where euer these three haue acquayntaunce
They bring in sorowe and desolacion,
But at a priefe by new remembraunce,
Of falschēd bled vnder fayre countenaunce
wherfoze ye princes doe your busye peyne,
within your boundes these vices to restrin.

God defend this noble region,
with these three vices to haue allyaunce:
for slaunder fyrt deuoureth high renoun,
and sleeth good fame through false balāce
Harne done, to late foloweth repentance.
wherfoze ye princes doe a lawe ordeyn,
To punish they malice false tonges to res-
(ceyn.

God hath of murther abhominacion,
and false poyson doth to him displicāunce

There is no peyn in comparison,
Condigne to murder peyled in balaurce.
wherfoze ye princes make an ordinaunce,
within your boundes of some deadly peyn,
by due punishyng, false murder to restrin.

O noble princes proude of reason,
Ageyne these vices to make purueyaunce:
Of rigour shew due execution,
with al your labour and heartly instaunce.
Let death be guerdō for their final penance
to warne al other by constraint of their pain
fro these thre vices their corages to restrin

How for the offence done to Lucrece
by Tarquin, was neuer after trou-
ned kyng in Rome.

Che. v. Chapter.

Touching this Tarquin of whome I
nowe tolde,

As mine auctour maketh mention,
He called was Tarquinius the olde,
which long in Rome had dominacion,
till hys kyntede and generacion,
for the offence done vnto Lucrece,
Caused of kynges the names to cease.

for his sonne which after did succede,
for his outrages and his extorcion,
And for many an other cruel dede:
And for hys hateful vsurpacion,
his froward life and false condicions,
Among the people both still and loude,
He called was Tarquinius the proude.

ful obstinate he was in his entent,
Ambitious taccroche great richesse,
till that fortune wered impatient,
Ageyns him in al his great noblesse:
Can her snares and her crokes dresse,
thought she would (but he kept him wele)
All sedeynly cast him from her whele.

A sonne he had, ful vicious as I fynd,
to all vertue most contrarious:
To be froward it came to him by kynd.
And of nature proude and despyteous.

Ageyn

The thynde

Ageyn the people felle and malicious,
Not loued, but dyed, for tyranny of right,
Is thing most hated in the peoples sight.

This proud Tarquin, the story is wel couth
ageyn Lucrece did a great outrage:
oppressed her beauty in his unbridled youth
His trowth assaying in a furious rage:
for which his father, he and his linage,
Cried woe, and for this hateful thing,
ther was neuer after in Rome crowned king

Her bodi corrupt, she clene of hert & thought
By force assayed was her innocence,
Oppressed her beautie, but her spite nought
Her chaste will did none offence,
But entred is into her conscience,
A great remorse, for al her wyl y truth,
to slea her self, which was to great a ruth.

And for that Bochas remembreth piteously
her deadly sorow and lamentacion,
Wrote her compleynt in order seriously,
Which that she made for her oppression,
I tolowe must and make mention,
After mine auctour percel rehearsing,
touchyng her wordes sayd in her dying.

Albeit so by bidding of my lord,
Rehearsed haue in my translation,
after Pierius, here and there a woord,
Of a ful doleful declamation,
By him remembred of intencion,
for her sake men might see and rede,
what wyl y trowth was in her womanhede.

And John Bochas list not set asyde,
But that he would rehearse in sentence,
her woeful compleynt, and therupon abyde,
of wronges done to her innocence,
And though I cannot folow his eloquence
I shal sue the trowth of rehearsing,
as in substance the effect of his wytyng.

The morow next after this foule dede,
Lucrece byrose with a full deadly chere,
Out of her face gone was al the red,
And deryked wex her heauenly eyen clere,
all clad in blacke after the manere
Of thulke folke, which in especiall,

Be wont to goe to feastes funerall.

All her frendes being in presence,
Husband, father, with other eke also,
By and by rehearsing in sentence,
The circumstaunces of her heartly woe,
And of that I any further go,
(Under hope my Lord wil me support.)
What that she sayd, I wil to you report.

The grievous compleynt of Lucrece vpon her oppression.



Of as much (as she) as I Lucrece,
Am by the law toynd in marriage,
To thee my lord, whose loue shall
aye increce,

Towardes thee with al the surplusage,
Of wyl y trowth to endure al mine age,
as humble subiect with feithful obeysaunce
Under thy lordship and thy gouernaunce,

O Collatin, my lord and true husband,
Best beloued of whole affection:
I wil no more no quarel take on hond,
Nor in no wise take none action,
Without that thou list encline downe
Goodly thine eares, to geue me audience,
to that I shal rehearse in thy presence.

Injury done of any maner wrong,
Agayn my worship or mine honestie,
By the lawe my sentence is made strong,
It toucheth you also wel as me,
I am so wholy yolden vnto thee,
thou art mine hed who clerely can discern
Lord and husband my body to gouerne.

Partial causes in sooth there may none be,
Itwene vs twaine, nor none disseuraunce
for sote and bitter, ioye and aduersitie,
we must them weye both in one balaunce.
Counterpeyse our sorowes & our pleasure,
Entermeddle all thing that stant in doubt,
Receiue our fortune as it cometh about.

Ther may atwene vs be no mening double
But one heart one will, and one corage,
And as woman y stondest now in trouble,
without pulshing of any fayre language,

I must

I must disclose to you the great outrage,
done vnto me, and plainly it discure,
which to redresse lieth holy in your cure.

For the matter to speake in wordes plaine,
aright out serched, and the trowth out found
As a iust cause indifferent to twaine,
toward vs both the quarel both rebound.
And more strongly our matter for to ground
rehearse I wil, so that ye saue it vouché,
A mortal wodge which the & me both touch

In a castel which called is Collace,
of which my lord here hath the gouernance
Tarquin the yong came into that place,
I ful disware to make purueiaunce
ageyn hys coming, or any ordenaunce,
Tofore not warned of hys officers,
late vnpurueied among my chamberers.

Of entent to eschewe Idlenesse,
we late and span vpon wolles soft,
for he of vices is a chief maistres,
where he is cherished and I set aloft:
But of custome as I haue done ful oft,
I and my women duly as we ought,
To auoyde slouth ful busily we wrought

Hys entring was meke and debonaire,
benygne of porte, of loke, and of visage,
With a pretence of many wordes faire,
In whose meaning was full great outrage,
his there contrarie vnto hys corage,
In this wise there he was receiued,
wherby (alas) I falsely was deceyued.

At pryme face as me thought it due,
I hym receiued at his in comming,
Rose vp mekely, gan him to salue,
as apperteyned in al maner thing,
Vnto the sonne of a woorthy king.
And truly Tarquin, for which I say (alas),
He to betray he stode in the same caas.

A kinges sonne should of dutie,
be to women wall and protection,
Preserue and kepe them in al suertie
that no man should of no presumption,
Doe them no wrong nor oppression,
Rather dye than se them suffer vnright,
Aduertising the office of a knight,

But in contrary of knighthode he hath by-
by false outrage done ageinst me, (ught
wrong wayes, and croked menes sought
Of lawes twaine to breake the libertie,
and to deface the auctorite,
Of lawe Ciuile, and natural also,
in my person offending both two.

Fyrt by his subtyll compassing,
he gan espie thestres of the place,
And when abed alone I lay sleeping,
like a Lion ful sterne of loke and face,
With his left hand my throte he did embrace
and in hys other held ageyn al lawe,
He to oppresse, a naked sword ydrawe,

Thus afforsing my wifly castite,
ageyn knighthode he did this great offence,
My lyfe, my woorthip, put in perplexite,
hauing no might to make resistance:
He manacing by deadly violence,
the tone of tweyn to dye in hys entent,
Or to auoutry falsly to consent.

Thus I stode sole twene death & defame,
My body corrupt, my spyte abode cleane,
my spousaile broke & my good name (Mene
for euer disclauidred that whilom shone full
Eul fame, of custome wil alway war grene,
neuer dye, the people so them disporte,
The worst of thinges gladly to reporte.

Alas alas, among my sorowes all,
thys one the most that doth my heart agryse
I am not worthy that men me should call,
or haue the name in no maner wyse,
For the offence which ye haue heard deuise
to be called in this wretched life,
Of Collatin from henceforth the wyse.

Mine ysen also be blinded with derkenesse
only for shame to lyft vp their sight,
Other their streimes or beemes vp dresse,
of the clere heauen to loke vpon the light.
For I may neuer be of the number of right
of true matrones among them fet or nere
For to be rekened in their kalendere.

Let mine injury and this mortal cryme,
be so punished of right and equite,
Withoute

The thynde

without delay of any longer time,
That euer after it may example be,
through al the world, and eke in this citie,
with such a paine therupon deuised,
þ all auouterours may be therby chastised.

And if it seme in your opinion,
in this case I should be vnpure,
I will receiue iust punicion,
and the paine patiently endure,
If it so stand (that parauenture,)
ye deme of reason that be so iust and stable,
In this mater that I be culpable.

Her tale told, whan they long had mused
on thys complaint in their inward sight,
Of trowth echone they held her ful excused
made al behest with al their full might
To auēge her wrong: & Lucrece anon right
toke a sharpe kniue of they might aduert,
And roue her selfe euen through the herte,

The complaint of Bochas vpon the
Lururie of princes, as by examples
of many diuers mischaunces.

Bochas in heart, brenning hote
as fire,
Of very Ire and indignacion,
again tho princes which
in their desire,
Haue fully set their delectacion,
Their felicitie and their affection,
to folowe their luites of false lecherie,
froward spousbrech, and of auoutre.

He writeth agein them that seketh occasiōs
Places of luites to haue their liberties,
for to fulfyll their delectacions,
& for to accomplishe their great dishonesties
Deuise out tauarnes in boroughes & cittes
and sitting there among their companie,
After the dede they boast of their folye,

If any man pyntche at their outrage,
Or them rebuke for their transgressions,
they wil aunswere w froward false lāgage
And for their party alledge great reasons:
first howe it longeth to their condicions,

By right of nature (as it is wel couth,)
frely to vse lechery in youth.

Effirme also howe lawe of kind is free,
and so afforce them to susteine their partie,
by exāple of Dauid which þroke Bethsabe
And for her sake howe he slough Abye,
byd manslaughter and false auoutre,
for them alledging agein right and reason
for Dalilah the Lururie of Sampson.

The storie also they frowardly applye,
Howe for a woman prudent Salomon
the lord offending, byd Idolette:
And in defence of their opinion,
Rehearte these stories for excusacion
of their errour, therby a pize to winne,
As tofoze god lechery were no sinne.

They not consider in their intencion,
of these stories euery circumstance,
first of king Dauid the greake contricion,
nor byd Sampson howe god toke vengeaunce,
first how he lost his force & his puissaunce
for his offence, they haue not this in mind
nor howe þ both his yen were made blind.

Nor their reasons they list not to enclint,
for to conceyue in their discreacion,
The spite of wisdom, heauēly and deuine,
was take away fro prudent Salomon,
In chastising for hys transgression,
And some doctours affirme ouermore,
Howe Salomon repented hym ful sore.

The play of youth folke called lecherye,
Say that it is a game of nature,
and to sustaine and beare by their partye,
How it syt wel by record of scripture,
Unto euery lyuely creature
that stant in helth, and is coragious,
Of very kind to be lecherous.

Vicious report they haue in remembraunce,
but vertuous thing is ferre out of mynd,
fle shy luites and lecherous pleasure,
In their desires be not left behind,
auaunting lying they can of new out fynd:
And now a dayes they hold it curtesye,
Or hes horrible, flattering and rybaudrye.

In their aune they take little hede,
vnto the doctrine of noble Scipion,
which commaunded (in story as I rede,)
to Mafciniffa ful famous of renown,
not to touche by no condicion,
Sophonisba, fayrest of visage,
but if it wer by way of mariage.

Though she wer borne of the blud royal,
Her youth was set to al honeste,
Doughter and heyre to noble Marsduball,
Duke of Chartage, the story ye may see.
And for her vertues of feminitee,
she wedded was of birth as she was like
to king Syphax, which reigned in Affrike.

And for to proue the great libertie
which is in vertue conueyed by reason,
and the false thraldome of dishonestie,
Of both to make a playn comparison,
After the doctrine of Censorin Caton,
Shewed by hym to folkes in commune,
that vertue neuer is subiect to fortune.

Vertue conserueth measure and reason,
Considereth thinges afoze or they befall,
taketh none enpryses but of discrecion,
and on prudence foundeth her werkes all,
as to her counsel attemperance she doth cal,
hearely prouiding in her self within,
the end of thinges, tofoze or she begin.

This was þe doctrine taught forth of Caton
Lecherous lustes to put them vnder fote,
Gaunting to vertue the domination,
Plucke by vices, braunch, crop and roote:
fruite of goodnes groweth vp so soote,
whan it is planted of youth in a corage,
It neuer appalleth in heyth of hys carage.

Caton of vertue was a chiefe officer,
Preferring euer common commodities
tofoze Prophetes that wer singuler,
to enhance the comon in kingdoms & citie
their wittes peysed and their habilitie,
persons promoting in whō it was supposed
that they in vertue wer naturally disposed.

Manly of heart he was aye to sustene,
indifferently, trouth and al iustice,

fleshly delites of folke that wer viciene,
he was aye ready by rigour to chaiste,
and set lawes in ful prudent wyse,
for to punish flatterers and lechours,
and suche as wer open aduouterours.

He had of woemen none opinion,
with them to deale for lust nor for beaute,
But if it wer for procreation,
So stable he was found in his degree,
the boke reading of immoztalitee,
which Plato made, (þe truth wel out sought)
therin concluding how soules dye nought,

But I wen ever, other in tope or peyne,
Thus wrote Plato in his original:
Men may þe body by death ful wel constrictie
But the soule aye abydeth immoztall,
for which this Caton stedfast as a wall,
for common profite to dye was not aserde,
whan he hymself slew with a naked sword.

But to fortune afoze his death he sayd:
O thou princeesse of worldly goodes beyne,
to thy flatterers I neuer did abraide,
thy fauour is so false and vncerteyne,
that neuer I sought no fraunchise to attem
as for my selfe no parcial singularitie,
But al for profit touchyng the commontie,

Ageyn Cesar I made resistance,
to conquire freedom to me and to the toun,
freely to eschew his mortall violence,
this world despyling in mine opinion,
our fraunchise thralled vnder subiection,
Justly forsaking the variaunce of this lyfe,
My soule conueped to be contemplatiue.

Thys philosopher, this prudēt olde Caton,
Tendryng in heart common commodities,
Tofoze hys death wrote of compassion,
To them that sate in royal dignities,
which had of vertue lost the libertie:
Prynces besechyng that wer luxurious,
to take example and folow kynge Drusus.

The which Drusus by succession,
heyre to Augustus, was next him Emperour
Set al in vertue his affection,
And it to cherishe did wholy his labour.

To

The thynde

To lust vnleful he neuer gaue fauour.
And touching loue during al his life,
He neuer had lust, but onely to hys wife.

And in his palace, mid of his royal see,
Of noble princes dwelling in Rome town,
He axed was for all his dignitee,
What maner courage of temptation,
Or what seruence or delectacion
Within himself he had of loues play,
Sole by his wife whan he abedde lay.

And like a prince ful filled of high nobleste,
answered again with sobre countenaunce
touching such lust as foloweth fleshlynesse,
Like as nature me put in gouernaunce,
In one alone is set al my pleasaunce.
For with none other for no concupiscence,
Sawe with my wife, I neuer did offence.

Princes eche one folow not the traas
of noble Dzulus, as ye shall vnderstonde,
For some haue stonde al in another caas,
Such as can hold two or thre in hond,
now here, now there, as botes come to lond
not considering their crees nor disauayle,
whan new fanglenes bloweth in their saile

(bound

The Bochas writeth some princes haue be
which viciously haue done theyr busy payn,
Vertecus weomen by flattery to confound
And tender maydens to bring in a trapne,
such manaces and tormentes to ordeyne,
them to transfourme fro their perseuerance
And interrupt their virginall constance.

But of such folke þe yreue no force of shame,
For drede God such trespas to deuise,
Husbondmen forsooth are most to blame,
with foryein womē to trespas in such wise,
I trowe their wiues the may inough suffice
For many be feble their dettes for to quite,
though they in change the self falsly delyte.

Some affirme for themselves alledging,
to such outrage that they haue licence,
freely of nature to vse their own thing,
and in such caas to no wight do offence,
But froward is their etrouer in sentence,
fro bōd of wedlock whā they be so vnstable,

and tofore god most hateful and damnable,

for he that is through her high nobleste,
named of clerkes which clerely can cōcerne
Doughter of god, lady and princeste,
Reason called to gyde folke and gouerne,
It were good and euil rustly to discretne,
She hath departed playnly to concluden,
the life of man from life of beastes rude.

This lady reason sithen go ful pore,
Gaue vnto man wit and discrecion:
taught him also by her souerayn loze,
twene vice and vertue a great diuision,
and that he should in his eleccion,
Vnto al vertue naturally obey,
and in contrary, all vicious life werrey.

And to enpynt in his memozial,
how of luxurie the great dishonestie,
Disfourme a man and make him bestial,
and disfigure of what estate he be:
For whan that reason in high or lowe degre
is fled away, folke may affirme than,
He is like a beast rather than a man.

wherfore let princes þe haue been defectiue
to folowe their lustes of sensualitie,
shape them by reason for tamenend their life,
And to conserue and kepe their chastite,
Both of virgins and wylly honestie.
And to punish al tho that list labour,
the honest fanie of weomen to deuoure.

For whan a lechour by force or by mastery,
Defouled hath of virgins the clenness:
wedowes oppressed, and by auoutry,
assayled wies that stode in stableness:
tho may the their slaunderous harme redress
whā their good name is hurt by such report
for fame lost once, can neuer haue his resort

And these may robbe a man of his richesse,
and by some meane make restitution,
and some man may disherite and oppresse
a pooze man from his possession,
and after make satisfaccion:
But no man may restore in no degree,
a mayden robbed of her virginitee.

A man

A man may also beate a castell downe,
and build it after moze fleshly to the sight,
erile a man out of a region,
And hym reuoke, where it be wroꝝg or right:
but no man hath the power nor the might,
for to restore the palace virginnall,
of chastitie, whan broken is the wall.

Men may also put out of seruiſe,
and officers remeue from their place,
and at a day whan fortune list deuise.
They may agayne restored be to grace,
but there is nother time set nor space:
nor neuer in story nother read nor ſepne
that maydenhede lost recured was ageine.

for which men should haue a conscience,
rewe in theyr heart and repent soze,
and haue remorse in theyr great offence,
to rauish thing which they may not restore:
for it is sayde, and hath been sayd full yore,
the Emeraude grene of perfit chastite,
sloine once away, may not recured be.

And hard it is to rauish a treasour,
which of nature is not recuperable,
lordship may not of kyng nor Emperour,
Reforme a thing which is not refourmable
Ruill of defame is inseperable,
and maydenhede lost of new or yore,
no man alſue may it agayn restore.

Romains olde through theyr patience,
suffered tyrantes in theyr tyrannies,
and in their citie to do great violence,
the people to oppresse with theyr robberies:
But to punish they set streite espies,
on false aduouterers (as it is well reuth.)
widowes to rauish, & maidens in their youth

Upon this matter the story beareth witness
touchyng the xyle of king Carquinius,
afore rehearsed by writing full expresse,
The hatefull death of Appius Claudius,
for his trespassse done to Virgineus,
the iudgements rehearsed and the payne,
and fro the office depriued bothe twayne.

Was not the citie whilom desolate,
of Sichemites for theyr ribaudye,

of one Sichem which gan a great debate,
To haue accomplished his foule lecher ye,
whan yong Dina as bokes specifie,
went rechelesly walkyng by and downe,
to se the maydens of that royall towne.

But whan Sichem this Dina did espye,
sole by her self walke in the citie,
he began anon assaile her by maistrice,
And for to afoze her virginite,
because she had no layser for to flee,
whose great offence and transgression,
the citie brought vnto destruction.

Her father Jacob, and wholly her kyndred,
ageine this Sichem gan inwardly disdain,
whan the fury of Wars was most to drede,
To be venged they dyd theyr busy payne:
and specially her worthy brethren twayne,
fel on the citie Simeon and Leuy,
to auenge theyr suffer, and stroye it finally.

So mortally they gan with them strue,
with their sweorde grounde sharpe & kene,
of male chyldren they left none aliue,
they wer so vengeable in theyr furious tene
the Sichemites might not sustene,
that day agayn them to stonde at defence,
so importable was theyr violence.

For where that god list punish a mā of right
by mortall sweord, farewell all resistance,
whā grace faileth, away goeth force & might
febleth of princes the magnificence,
chaungeth theyr power into impotence,
reuerſeth the kynges theyr stately regally,
example in Sichem for his false ribaudye.

It was an harde dredeful punicion,
that on princes trespassse in lecher ye,
caused afore God that all a region,
Destroyed was without remedye,
this story tolde for to exemplifye,
whan noble princes to womē them submit,
grace & al fauour anon both from them flit

Of this story what should I write moze,
in Genesis the residue ye may rede,
the death of Sichem and of kyng Emor,
& how their kingdō destroyed was in dede,

The thirde

Of Sichemites, lo here the final mede,
of lechery and of false pleasaunce,
whiche many a realme hath brought vnto
(mischaunce)
What should I eft rehearse agein or write,
the false aduoutrie of Paris and Heleynne,
They? woful fall Guido did endite:
Doctes echeone eke dyd they? busy payne,
To declare how onely by these twayne,
the woful bleud for short conclusion,
Of Troy and Grece came to destruccion.

But oft it falleth that much habundance,
Of worldly good, with great ease and riches
in folke that set all wholy they? pleasaunce,
To folow their lustes of froward wilfulnes
hath caused in lodes gret mischief & distres,
whā vicious lyfe their corages dyd encōber
destroyed kingdomes & people out of nūber

For whā the people through false obstinacie
Is indurate to amende them and correcte,
and wyl not turne them from their lechery
But ay be ready they? soules to infect,
And vnto purpose my stile I wil direct,
to exemplifie how Sabaa the towne,
was for this synne brought to confuson.

Whilom this people called Sabaonites,
from Benjamin descended in they? line,
wer aye disposed to folow they? delites,
And of custome their wittes dyd encline,
In worldly plentie to floure and to shyne:
And dempt alway to them it was molt due,
Of wilfulnes their lustes for to sue.

In lechery was set all there pleasaunce,
And in that vice they lad most they? lyfe,
wherby they wer brought vnto mischaunce,
And many slayn by full mortall stryfe,
whan the Leuite came forby with his wife,
full excellent of fetures and beaultie,
And toke his lodgyng within þ great cite.

He was full olde, and she was inly fayre,
He impotent, and she but tender of age,
Through Sabaa makynge they? repayre,
The Citizins of importune rage,
shewyng the fury of their great outrage,
So long that night her beaultie dyd assaile,

till lyfe and breath at once dyd fayle.

Contagious the flaunder and the defame,
in Iudicum the story ye may rede,
which to rehearse, is a maner shame,
To here the abuson of that foule dede.
And how þ Leuite a morow gan take hede,
With pitteous chere, and saue his yong wife
Tofoze the gate depriued of her lyfe.

He hent her by and larde her on his asse,
To noyse this crime vpon euery syde,
Though in such case he might do no lasse,
toke a sharpe sword and list no longer bide
On twelue parties he gan her to deuyde,
And to eche tribe of Jacob he hath sent,
a certain partie to see they? iudgemente.

Which thing to thē was hateful & terrible
and in their sight full abhominable,
And in al hast likely and possible,
All of one wyll, and one corage stable,
on Sabaonites for to be vengeable,
They gathered haue shortly to concluder,
tassayle that towne, a full great multitude.

Whē thei fyrst met, atwene thē thus it stode
the twelue Tribes wer twise put to flyght,
On other partie greate quantitie of blode,
was shed among them in þ mortall fygth,
for sixtie thousand, (who that count aright,)
wer slayn there, the story wyl not lye,
To auenge the flaunder of false aduoutrie.

Lo here the gerdon of the froward fires,
In lecherous folke þ wyl not slached be,
that brent so whote through bestial desires
In Sabaa the mightie strong cite,
which was destroyed for his inquitie:
And almost brought of Benjamin the lyne,
through this offence, to eternall tume.

Eke for his feruent drunken lecherye,
Holofernes by Judith lost his hede,
And al his host and al his chivalrie,
left the field and fled a way for drede,
And he lay bathed in his bloud al rede:
Thus through this vice if it be well sought,
ful many a prync hath be brought to nought.
These

These sayd noyes ought ynough suffice,
if men would consider and take hede,
the great vengaunces in many sondry wise,
which god hath take for this sin in dede,
as in their booke they may behold and rede
marnings afoze full oft put at prefe,
how they themself shall saue fro mischief.

¶ Cenuoye.

This tragedy peuetb vs a great warning
by clere example of manyfolde reason,
how many a prince for his misleuing,
many a cite and many a region,
And many riche royall mighty towne,
haue bene cuerled full notable and famous
for sinne of princes which þe wern lecherous

The chose of god Dauid the worthy kyng,
prophete of prophetes, most souerain of re-
on Bethsabe, for a sodain loking, (noune,
To sleen Ary caught occasion,
for which he suffred great punition,
chastised of god, he and all his house,
becaue onely that he was lecherous.

Great repentance he had & great sorowling,
and made psalmes of great contricion,
with wofull teres and manifold weping,
To make a seeth for his transgression,
yeuing to princes full clere direccion,
for to eschewe the flattery odious,
and the false fraude of women lecherous.

Where was there euer of science or cūning
so renoumed as was kyng Salomon,
yet womē made hi throughe their fals flatte-
To soze yn goddes done oblacion, (ting
which clipped his honoz, & brought his fame
þ was in wisdō whilō most vertuouus (doun
till he throughe women fill to be lecherous.

Is it not eke remembred by writting,
of Israell, how the chief champion,
which goddes people had in his ledyng,
I meane the famous mighty strong Samp-
that throughe his force to rent the Lion,
but Dalilah with teres plentuous,
his grace bereft and made hym lecherous.

Sichem was slaine eke, for the rautshyng

of yong Dina, as made is mencion,
his father Emoz brought to his endyng,
Lost his riches in that disencion,
and his kingdom brought to destruccion;
loe here the fine of princes vicious,
which them dispose for to be lecherous.

It is in earth one the most perillous thyng,
a prince to been of his condicion,
Effeminate his wittes euclining,
By false despyres of fleshy motion,
to put himself vnder subiection,
and thzall his reasō, treasour most precious
to vnable luses, hateful and lecherous.

This is the sentence ful plainly in menting
where women haue the dominacion,
to hold the reine, they hokes out castyng,
that sensualitie hath iurisdiction,
to enter on reason by false intrusion,
werre again vertue thing most contagious
to be vanquished of luses lecherous.

It taketh fro men their clerenes of sepyng,
causeth great sickenes and corrupcion,
and to al vertue it is greatest hyndryng,
Maketh men seme olde, as by inspycion,
appalleth their minde and disposicion,
Morteth their dates, thing dyedful & piteous
whan they dispose them for to be lecherous.

Noble princes in your ymagenyng,
conceiue of women the false deception,
namely of them that loue but for winnyng,
And labourerth aye for your possession,
whose sugted flatterie is false collusion,
like to Sirenes with voice mellodious,
anoint your eares to make you lecherous.

¶ How Cambises assenting to the mur-
ther of his brother Mergus, at the
last sleugh himself.

¶ The .v. Chapter.



After the death of mightie
kyng Cyrus.
Next came his sonne,
called Cambises,
heye by succession full victoriosis,

D. II.

which

The thirde

Which tofore Bochas put himself in pries:
And gan his compleint this is doubles,
that they of Egypt in many vncouth wyse,
To sondry goddes did sacrifice.

First vnto Apis thei did reuerence,
Called Serapis thei greatest god of all,
reigning in Egypt most of excellence,
And god of goddes fooles dyd hym call.
And of his noblesse thus it is befall,
Slaine by his brother, which is a gret woder
Seuered on peces, a ful sarre cast asonder.

And they of Egypt made their ordinaunces,
vpon payne of death in their statutes olde,
A god to cal hym, and do thei obseruances
Within his temples like as thei wer holde,
wherof Cambises tofore as I you tolde,
all the temples of that region,
Cast him by force for to throw them down.

The temple of Jupiter to robbe it by raine
Called Ammon without exception,
his knightes sent to bring it to ruine,
But they echeone for theyr presumption,
With soden leuen wer synge & beate down,
wherof Cambises in this the reignyng,
Had this dreame as he laye slepyng.

He dreemt his broder þe called was Mergus
Should in the kingdome after hym succede,
Wherof in heart he were so enuius,
That he purposed of rancour and hatrede,
by some meane to make his sides blede.
And that his purpose should take auaple,
a Magicien he toke to his counsaile.

And he was hold a ful great philosopher,
Called Comares ful sleightie and cunning,
to whom Cambises made a full large profer
Of gold and treasour to make him assenting
to execute this horrible thyng.
And that he would in most cruell wyse,
the murder of Mergus compasse & deuise

And while Cambises ordeined this treason
to sleigh Mergus his owne brother dere,
God from aboue cast his iyen downe,
hym to punish in full cruell manere,
for he wered wood whoso list to lere,

caught a sharpe sword & reue his thygh on
And sodenly he died for the payne. (twain

for two causes god toke on him vengeance
as mine autour Bochas doth expresse,
for his presumptuous and false disobedience,
Spoilyng the goddesse of her great riches,
and for the froward great unkindnes,
To yeue assent to the contagious case,
whan þe Mergus his brother murthred was

The death of whom was chief occasion,
of full great werre, strues and debate,
The small cause why all the region,
of mightie Perse stode disconsolate,
for heye was none of high nor low estate,
by title of right throw this unhappy chance
To be thei kyng and haue the gouernance

for the Magicien called Comares,
which slough Mergus as ye haue herd ere
Toke his brother called Dapastes, (presse
And made hym kyng, þe story bereth witness
because that he resembled in likenes,
vnto Mergus of face and of stature,
to croune hym king therfore he did his cure

The death of Mergus outwarde was not
nor plainly published in that region (know
his body buried and cast in earth lowe,
Of whom the murder & fraudulent treat
the piteous slaughter wrought by collusion,
And al the maner byprocasse was espyed,
so openly, it might not be denied.

And in what wise the noyse gan out spede,
touching this murder obvious for to herte.
Whan that Dapastes occupied in dede,
The croune of Perse the story doth vs lere
there was a pryncce full notable and entere,
Called Oranes, than gan his wit applye,
of high prudence this murder out trespere.

While that Dapastes vnder a false pretence
of Persiens was receiued as for kyng,
The sayd pryncce did his diligence,
By inquisition to haue knowlagyng,
by what engine, or by what sleightie thyng,
the sayd Dapastes caught occasion,
In dede of Mergus to occupie the croune.

On this matter he had a coniecture,
that his title was nother whole ne cleere,
The trowth to trye he did his busye cure,
And to searche out wholly the manere.
He sought so farre that he came right nere,
And in this case letted for no slouth,
till that he had found out the trowth.

The case was this plainly to termine,
he had a doughter full fayre of her visage,
Which of the kyng was chiefest concubine,
By whom he thought to cathe auantage.
And vnto her he hath sent his message,
Secretly to enquire how it stode,
where that þ king wot come of Cirus blode

And bad that she should secretly take hede,
while that he slept to doe her busye peyne,
With her handes for to fele his hede,
And to grope after both his eares twaine,
And if it fyl (there is no moze to seyne,)
vpon his head that she none eares founde
to tel her father of trowth, as she was bound

This mighty prince Otanes knew well,
right as it is recorded by scripture,
Touching this case how it stode euery dell
how king Cambyses of Sodein auenture,
by his lyue for a forgeture,
Made of Oropastes, the story sayth not nay
both his twaine eares to be cut away.

And hereupon to be certified,
he was desirous to haue full knowlagynge,
Which by his doughter whan it was espied
vpon a nyght lying by the kyng.
Gropynge his head as he lay slepyng,
full subtelly felt and toke good hede,
Howe he none eares had vpon his hed.

And to her father anon she hath declared,
the secretenes of this auenture,
And for no feare nor drede she hath not spared.
How that it stode playnly to discure.
And fyrst of al he did his busye cure,
All the princes of Perse londe yfere,
to counsaile all to entrete of this mattere.

And whan they wer assembled euerychone
Of Oropastes he told them at the chaunce,

And how þ Mergus was murdered yore agoon,
As here tofore is put in remembraunce,
whereupon to set an ordinaunce,
And to redresse these wronges done toform,
of Perse lond wet seven princes swozne,

Of one assent in theyr entencion,
by bond of othe they made their assuraunce
And a full secrete communicacion,
to put Oropastes from his royall puissaunce,
Which had al Perse vnder his gouernaunce
By a ful false pretence of heritage,
for he was like to Mergus of vilage.

These seven princes of which toforen I told,
al of one heart, and by thei othe ybounde,
prudent, and manly, and of yeres olde,
Haue sought a time Oropastes to confound.
And with their swerdes sharp whet & grofend
vnder couert in their appaile,
Came of entent Oropastes to assaile.

And in the palace whom euer þ thei mette,
or agein them made resistance,
All of accorde they fiercely on hym set.
But the Magicien þ was there in presence
Came agein them by surdy violence,
and at thencountrie gan them so constrict
That of the princes thei haue yslain twain.

But finally the tother princes fide,
whan that thei saw their twain feeres blede
In all the palace they left none alieue.
And king Oropastes quakyng in his drede,
full vnwarely or that he toke hede,
was slain, there guerdoned for all his might
of pretence kinges þ reigne & haue no right

Howe Darie obteinyng the kingdom
of Perse by sleight, ended with shame.

The. vi. Chapter.



After the death
of this Magiciens,
Was left no kyng to haue
the gouernaunce,
Nor for to rule the lond of Persiens,
saue fide princes ful famous of puissaunce
which made a statute and an ordinaunce,

The thirde

Of one accorde by record of wrytyng,
theron cōcluding who shoulde be chose king

Their fort, they hap, and all their auenture
was p̄ue to fortune of this election,
Is thus that p̄ince the crowne shal recure
among these fīue by theyr conuencion,
for to gouerne the mighty region:
and in that lond to reigne and contune,
Like as the fauour list oʒdayne of fortune.

This was the statute vpon a moʒnyng,
all at once early for to ryde,
Itwene Aurora and Phebus v̄p̄syng,
v̄p̄ to an hylle to houe and to byde,
All rancout and discorde set asyde,
whose horse amōg the was first herd neyng
without grutchyng shoulde be crowned king

v̄p̄o this matter what shoulde I lēger tary
heron was made an othe in sikernes:
Among these p̄inces there was one called
a p̄ince of Perse excellig of noblesse (Dary
which had a seruant, & floʒy bereth witnes
that kept his horse, & thought in very dede,
His Loʒd he woulde p̄ferre at such a nede,

The sayd seruant ful sleighty in working
his diligence lyst nothyng to spare,
The day tofoʒe set of theyr metyng,
at a place, smothe, playne and bare,
His loʒdes horse he made leape a mare,
and on the moʒow whan the p̄inces mette,
On horse backe there his loʒd he sette.

And whan the horse thether came agayn,
nature anon affozed his coʒage,
To ney loude vpon the same playne,
where as the mare had v̄sed her passage,
Kynde in such case had great auantage,
by which sleight plainly to rehearse,
the said Dary was crowned king of Perse.

The p̄inces all like their conuencion,
oʒ Phebus shewed his fyr beames bryght,
Without stryfe oʒ contradiccion,
from their horse sodenly alight,
and vnto Dary as lowly as they myght,
Sayd in Greke oʒ they v̄p̄ arose,

Policromisudo Basileas.

Which is in Latin to speke in wordes plain
and in English by expounyng of scripture,
After the Greke as much for to seyn.
As, long time myght the kyng endure,
and līue in helth with good auenture,
by the grace and fauour of fortune,
v̄pon all Perse to reigne and contune.

Who lyst considren euery c̄yrcumstaunce,
it is a merueile not grounded on prudence,
by such a sleight a kyng to haue gouernance
throughe title oʒ claime as of iust euidence,
So to be reyled to kyngly excellence,
But whan fortune fauoureth such a way,
til that she change there can no mā say nay

Thus was king Dary borne of low līmage
Set v̄p̄ by sleight in estate honorable,
Thought that he woulde for his auantage
to make his kingdom and his reigne stable
wedde such a wife as to hym was most able:
demyng of trouth his claime w̄er wel amē.
Of Cyus lyne yf she w̄er descended, (ded

To wedde such one was al his couetise,
stable for to reygne vpon the Persiens,
And as I fynd in full cruell wyse,
by the counsaile of false Magiciens,
A warre he gan vpon the Egipcians,
eke solily he gan for to w̄etrey,
Them of Athens which lyst hym not obey,

And as mine autour maketh rehearsaile,
he for his p̄ide and false presumption,
Was discomfited twyse in battaile,
And neuer after as made is mencion,
He was not had in reputacion.
Among Persiens, so gan hys honour fade,
Wh̄ sleight he gan, wh̄ shame an end he made

Wh̄ oʒre Cortolan by Romains cryled, gan
warre agaynst them, and how after
they sente out his mother with o-
ther for peace, whiche had, they
este hym cryled, and after
was slayne.

The. vii. Chapter.

After



After this Darpe
as I rehearse can,
And myne outour
liketh to conclude,
To John Bochas came Coriolan,
The most wofull of all that multitude,
Which gan complayn vpon the ingratitude
Of the Romans, how they whylom in dede
exyled his person of rancour and hatrede.

Which in his time would neuert cease.
through his noblesse and his hygh renoun,
they: common profit to augment & encrease
And for to byrnyng to they: subiection,
Many a citie, and many a noble towne,
yet thei ageinward for all his chivalrie,
haue hym exyled of malice and enuye.

But whan this Marcius, called Coriolan,
Sawe of Romans the great vnkindnesse
toward a countrey that called was Tusca,
Of high disdayne anon he gan hym dresse,
and them entreated of manly fell prowesse,
To gin a warre sith they so manly be,
through his conueying gein Rome the citie

And for to put them more in assuraunce,
to haue victorie through they: hygh renou
He told them plainly of a great disaunce,
of a false strife and a discencion,
That was of new fall in Rome towne:
wherfore they should if it be prouided,
siquere the lightly because thei wer deuinded

By they: assent he made a great armye,
with stiffe for warre richly appareded,
Nigh his tentes tofore that strong citie,
and in the field stode proudly battailed,
But the hertes of Romans haue the failed
and durst not passe the gates of their town,
There was among them so great diuision.

They: citie stode that time destitute,
with feare suppressid for lacke of gouernace
Them to defende they fond no refute,
so ferre enfeblished was they: old puissance
for euer gladly where stryfe and variaunce
in any kyngdom haue an interesse,
touchyng defence, adue al hardinesse.

Within themself they rode at debate,
afore they: enemies ready for tassale,
comfourt was none in high nor low estate.
For where discord is, what counsell may auaille
Thei sone without, within the self bataile
brought in (alas, to their confusion,
By the false serpent of discencion.

But at the last affozed and constreyned,
they wer coacte after peace to seke,
The case stode so, of nede they wer peyned,
mauger their might their hertes for to meke
And they: mischief more to encrease & eke,
in augmenting of they: cruell fates,
thei saw they: enemyes byght armed at their
(gates,

They sent out fyrst priestes of the towne,
with their enemies for to entreate of pees,
With humble proffers and low subiection,
But Coriolan this is doubteles,
ageyn the Romans was so merciles,
That grace none myght in his heart myne
to they: request his eares to enclyne.

Than the Romans the story tell can,
to Veturia made they: prayer,
whiche was the mother of Coriolan,
And to Volumnia his feithful wyfe entere,
that they should both go in fere,
Vnto that prince beseechyng at the lest,
benignly to heare their request.

His mother fyrst full prudently abrayde,
vnto her sonne wakyng this question,
At they: metyng to hym thus she sayde.
Shall I (q she) for short conclusion,
Of feythfull heart and true affection,
to thy presence declare finally,
Be now receyued as mother or enemye?

After thyne answer I must my self dispose,
and my wittes specialy applye,
Cause of my commyng clerely to vnclose
and tell the effect of myne ambassatre,
And my speche so gouerne and guye,
after I am receiued to thy grace,
My self declaryng if I haue tyme & space.

For lyke thy mother yf thou receyue me,
and me accept vnto thy presence,

The thirde

I must thereafter so gouerned be,
To tell my tale plainly in sentence,
So that you geue me frendly audience,
and if I be not receyued in suche wise,
More straungely my tale I must deuise.

This noble prince, this Coriolan,
whan that he herd his mother thus cōplein
full lyke a lorde and a knightly man,
Can her embrace in his armes tweine,
In lowly wyse there is no more to seyne,
Saue lyke a sonne of due and of right,
To her he sayd full like a gentle knight.

Madame (quod he) be it to your pleasure
to here my conceite as in this mattere,
With feithful hert and humble attendaunce
I you receyue as for my mother dere,
But and ye lyke benignly to here,
the ingratitude done in most cruell wyse,
To me of Romans, I purpose to chastise.

A sonne (quod he) touching theyr offence,
done to thy noblesse & theyr great outrage,
thei shal by meanes their trespass recōpence
And thinke thou art borne of theyr linage,
And suffer þ mercy thy rigour may asswage
& thinke of nature þ mayst not wel withsey
thing for þ which thy moder doth now prey.

Thou shalt not close thine entrails of pite
To the requestes of me and of thy wyse,
nor gyn a werre agayn thy countrey,
To stroy thy lyne by new mortal stryfe,
thy chyldren & me to make vs lose our lyfe.
wey in balance to Romans thyne hatred
against the loue of me and thy kyndred.

Send home agayn thy strange souldiours
which ben so redy þ Romain bloud to shedde
Let stond in peace our walles & our towres,
Suffer thy grace thy rancour to excede,
so that thy pitie may put away all dyde.
And condescende to receiue for hostage,
me to be pledge for theyr great outrage.

Behold the wombe in which þ þ wer borne
And see also my naked brestes tweine,
by which thou wer fostred here tofore,
If there wer lacke þ wouldest crye & plein

Remember thereon and at me not disdeyne
but vn to mercy receiue this citie,
at the request here of thy wyse and me.

Whilō my milke thy cherishing was & lode
To stint thy crye whan thou didst wepe,
their sote dropes full wholsom wer & good
Thy tender yowth for to preserue and kepe,
And lyke a mother to byng thee aslepe.
I woke ful oft, to thee I was so kynd,
Wherefore dere sonne on my request haue
(mynde,

If that thou lyst this citie now torment,
theyr demerites by rigour recompence,
Punish me for the m, and I wyll assent,
to bere the gilt of their great offence.
But dere sonne let thy magnificence,
suffer of knighthode þ mercy may in dede,
attemper thy right or thou to dome procede.

Suffer Romans to liue in quiete,
graunt the peace again their great outrage
Some droppe of pitie let in thine hert flete
and thynke thou art borne of theyr linage,
Loke vpon them with merciful visage,
which offer themselves as they shal fulfyll,
Theyr lyfe, theyr death, all wholly at thy wil,

Remember of nature how that the Lion,
set asyde his rage and his wodenes,
To them that mekely afore hym fall down,
his royall kynd wyl do them no duresse,
teremply to thy knightly noblesse,
In rigorous swerd þ shalt no more manace,
them that be lowly, yeld vnto thy grace.

And whan this prince, this Coriolan,
had heard al that his mother list to seine,
He goeth to her in al the hast he can,
Besprent with teares þ on his chekes reime
and her embraced with his armes tweyne,
and sayd: mother, there may be no letting,
Of whole heart to graunt your arying.

The siege he made for to auoide away,
and to repayre home to theyr countrey,
& with his mother and wife he was that day
with great gladnes and solemnitie,
Anon receiued into that citie,
like as fortune hi neuer would haue failed.

But

But the sone after of new hath him assailed

The gery Romans, storme and vnsable,
which neuer in one syll could abide,
Again this prince most knightly & notable,
for to conspire of new they gan proude,
and banished hym to Tuskan there besyde
Where he was stayne within a litle space,
for he the Romans toke afore to grace.

Howe Miliades Duke of Athens with
small number vanquished. vi. C. M. Persi-
ens, and after by his comontie pay of cus-
tome desireth a chaunge of princes new, he
was cheyned in prison, and so dyed.

The viii. Chapter.

Among other that put
themsell in ptees,
for to bewaile their
griuous heauines,
Came of Athens duke Miliades, (wesse
which throw his mabode & famous high pro-
e through his knightly renoumed noblesse,
Like as autours his triumphe list comend,
saught many a batayle his citie to defend.

And of his victories as it is compiled,
for common profit of that noble towne,
saught with a tirant that was tofore exiled,
Called Hippias, which by false treason,
had to kyng Darye made a suggestion,
Upon Athens, in all the hast he might,
to reise all Perse agayn & towne to fyght.

Five. C. thousand accounted was & nuber
of Persiens armed in plate and mayle,
Them of Athens by force to encomber.
echeone assembled them proude to assaile,
But this Duke for nothyng would fayle,
Miliades but knightly toke his place,
with ten thousand he met them in the face.

for both he was right manly & ryght wysse.
and of his handes proued a good knight:
Set vpon them with so prudent auise,
That thei of Perse for al their great might
wer foure times put vnto the flight,

by this Duke (if I shall not sayne.)
And by the noblesse of their knightes twain

Themistocles ycalled was the tone,
which of his hand as autours list deserue
was in a field proued on his sone,
The manly knight in his tyme aloue,
Which this day so proude did strue,
again the of Perse & such all laughter make
that finally the field they haue forlake.

Cinegirus a knight eke of that towne,
the same daye through his chualrye,
with bloudy sword as he went vp & down,
without number in his melancolie,
Slough Persiens thus bokes specifice,
that for the time that they no refute kunne,
saue to their shippes for drede of death thei
(runne.

And there he wrought a strange gret meruel
as writeth Bochas, affirming in certaine,
The greatest ship that bare largest sayle,
with his right hand he gan it so restrayne,
like as it had be fastned with a chayne,
mauger Persiens which did the sore greue
& by no craft thei coulde not make it meue.

But whan that they none other refute will
freely to escape out of his daunger,
till they his right hand hugh of by & worst.
But with his left hand he gan approach nere
and held it syll, an vncouth thyng to here,
That he had force so great ship to let,
but than (alas) his left hand of they smet.

Yet mauger the whan he theyr malice seeth
al wer it so that he had lost eche hand,
The ship he held syll with his teeth,
that they ne might depart from the land,
Like as their vessel had fall vpon sand,
cause that daye mine autour doth reherce,
two. C. thousand wer slain of the of Perse

And whan this singular mighty champion,
Cinegirus most vncouth of corage,
had done this merueile, as made is mencio,
Of very anguish he fyl into a rage,
like a beast furious and sauage,
ranne about (alas) for lacke of mynde,
In Bochas booke no more of hym I fynde.
But

The thirde

But in this processe after I behelde,
ay how that fortune can her frendes fayle,
for Milciades leder of that field,
And gouernour of all that great battaile,
causing victorie (as made is rehearſayle)
yet his people of malice and of pryce,
ageine his nobleſſe fallſly gan conſpire.

They of Athens ſet him in priſon,
and in cheines mightely him bounde,
vnkindly they gaue him this guerdon,
for all the knighthode thei in hym founde:
yet had he ſuffered many mortal wounde,
in theyr defence, and for their liberties,
to ſaue their liues, their touz & their countreis

This was the ende of Duke Milciades,
thzough the conſtreint of his ſtrōg bondes,
eke thei exiled the knight Themistocles,
Out of their towne to lue in ſtrange lōdes,
that was ſo woꝛthy proued of his bondes,
to ſhew the chaunge and mutabilitie,
found in fortune and euery comontie.

Clenioye.

The ſtormy truſt of euery comimontee,
their gery corages & troubled conſtance,
in this tragedy men may behold and ſee,
now vp, now down, as fortune caſt her chāce
for thei of cuſtom haue ioꝝ & moſt pleaſance
in their deſires vniſtedfaſt and vntꝛue,
to ſee eche day a chaunge of princes newe.

Coriolan of Rome a chief citie (iſſance
was their protector: thzough his mighty pu-
banquiſhed their enemies, ſet thē in ſuertie
Brought in rebels to their obeyſaunce,
but thei ageinward of wilful variaunce,
banished him twiſe, and no cauſe knewe,
ſaue for to ſee a chaunge of princes newe.

The knightly nobleſſe, the magnanimitie,
the policie, the prudent gouernaunce,
of Milciades, Duke of the countrey,
where þ Athens in chief toun in ſubſtance,
When he their comon gan moſt to auaūce,
the moze vnkindly in honoꝝ that thei grew
Moſt thei wer buſy to chāge him for a new

Themistocles hauing the ſoueraintee,
of knightes all that bare ſpere oꝝ launce,
During his time I take no moze on me,
for cōpariſons do oft time great greuaunce
Sixe hundred thouſand he put to vitꝛace,
vnto Athens neuer found vntꝛue,
yet thei conſpired his exile for a newe.

What thyng may here flour in felicitie,
oꝝ ſtōd liable by long continuauce,
in high eſtates, other in lowe degꝛee,
now flow, now ebbe, now ioꝝ, now miſchāce
After fortune holdeth the balauce,
and ſpecially, falſe feinyng and vntꝛue,
Comons deſpye a chaunge of princes newe.

Noble princes in your proſperitie,
On ſodein changes ſet your remembrance
freſhnes of floures, of branches the beautie
Haue ay on change a trembling attēdance,
in truſt of comons is no perſeuerance:
as witer & Somer ben driuers of their helo
ſo be thei diuers in change of princes newe

How Ferres king of Perce for his raine
and courtiſe, was diſmembꝛed in ſmal peces.

The .ix. Chapter.

Ad tofoꝛe Bochas
ful piteouſly wepyng,
for to declare his
deadly heaumes,

Came Ferres next, that was of Perce king
and gan complain his dole and his diſtreſſe
which in thre thiges (þ ſtoꝝ bereth witnes)
And as the Chronicle clerely can vs tell,
all other princes on earth he did excell.

In high eſtate was none ſo great as he,
Nothꝛ in riches noꝝ woꝝldly habundance
noꝝ none that time of ſo great dignitie:
for as it is put in remembraunce,
He had al Perce vnder his obeyſaunce,
noꝝ neuer prince as autours do conclude,
Hoſteyed at once with ſuch a multitude.

Space of five yere he made his ozdinaunce,
ſeuē hundred thouſand people he did reſſe
dempt of falſ pryde, agein his gret puiſſaunce
none

None earthly power might counterpeyse,
but some auctours allow him not noz praiser
Because that he peoples to encomber,
set al his trust to conquere wth gret number

But manly princes haue this opinion,
in multitude stondeth not the victorie,
for knightly prowesse of euery Champion,
which manly cast the in armes to haue gloze
Enprinted hath fixen his memoize,
Marciall triumphes god ne doth not shew
in number great no rather than in fewe.

This sayd Xerxes by recorde of authours,
had also in Chronicles as I rede,
The hundred thousand strange souldiers
Without other that wer of Perse & Mede,
which gan the earth for to rule and sprede,
dyed riuers where thei dyd attayne,
harfe down hylls, and made valleys plaine.

This was chief conceit of his fantasies,
to haue al earth vnder subiection,
Thought his power raught aboute the states
Of surquedie and false presumption,
for as he dempt in his opinion,
how in his power plainly that it laye,
fro god aboute the heauen to take away.

But thinke lord that can the meke enhaunce
and from thei sees the proude put adown,
And namely them that haue no remembraunce
To aduertise of wisdom and reason,
to know the lord most mightie of renown,
The lord of lordes, which plainly to compile
will suffer tirantes to reigne but a while.

And one the meruel that euer I did rede,
Greatest and vncouth plainly vnto me,
is how Xerxes kyng of Perse and Mede,
for to shew a speciall singulartee,
out of Asia ouer the Grecian see,
As sayeth mine autour who I dare aledge,
into Europe made a mightie brydge.

Some men parauenture wil therat disdein
and saye it is a meruel not credible,
yet craft in case to such thyng may atteine,
which by nature semeth an impossible.

And as to me it is a thyng odible,
thynges to impugne autentike and olde,
whiche notable clarkes in thei dayes told

These new men that haue but litle seyn,
Nothet expert in craft noz in nature,
for lacke of reason hold all such thyng bein
Though that it be remembred in scripture,
For euery merueyle, and euery auenture,
Is straunge to hym as I rehearse can,
that lacketh y^e cause wherof y^e ground began

This sayd Xerxes had eke possession,
by the tyle of his father Darie,
Of all Egypt as made is mencion,
But they of Grece wer to hym contrarye,
wherefore he cast no lenger for to tarie,
This proud prince, but mightely werrey,
Lacedemonois which would hym not obey

But one that was called Demeratus,
which of that countrey had afore be kyng,
and was exyled, the story telleth vs,
that time with Xerxes in household abiding,
which loued that lond for al his exiling:
gaue the warnig to saue the fro mischaunce
of Xerxes power and al his ordinaunce.

He wrote them letters grauen in a table,
all thempises of Xerxes out of dout,
Of all his stiffe and people incomperable,
And of his number and his great route,
The which table cured was without,
ful subtilly with were yplained pleyne,
That of his sond there was no letter seyn.

Thus was the tent of Xerxes first discured
vnto the Grekes, and all his fell workyng,
But in one thyng they greatly wer assured
Of trust they had by expert knowlagyng,
in Leonidas thei noble famous kyng,
which among Grekes of prowes & foresight
was in tho dayes hold for the best knyght.

Of chualrye called the lode sterre,
the sunne of knighthode y^e shone so bryght &
The berer by both in peace & werre (shene
and strengest pillar his partie to maintene
y^e Grekes right hand their nobles to sustene
Charboulc of armes, mirrour of policie,
And

The thirde

and surest captaine a field to rule and guie.

And as mine autour remembreth in his booke
how in this case he was not recheles,
but in all hast foure thousand men he toke,
To let the wayes and commyng of Ferres:
and by an hyll called Thermophiles,
where Persiens began first their viage,
he knightly cast to stoppe theyr passage.

And secretly espying the comming,
of king Ferres with strong apparayle,
he like a knight made no taryng,
chase out sixe hundred armed in plate & masse
which in such case might most auayle:
and in defence and helpe of theyr countrey
would rather dye than from the field to fle.

And couertly they toke theyr lodging,
and kept them close till it drough to nyght,
and at theyr diner themself refreшыng,
So as they sat in slele armed bright,
the kyng abrayde like a manly knight,
into the field afore they should gone,
right thus he sayd among them euertichone

Sirs (quod he) now dine merely,
and with good wine afoze your corage,
like good knightes in purpose finallye,
foz life noz death not turnyng your visage
but of assent cast in your passage,
as ye here dine now in espectral,
to suppe at night with goddes infernall.

This is to meane, ye shal your life seoparte,
as hardy knightes prouidly to prouide,
within the field asonder not departe,
But kepe close and foz no drede deuide,
desire of worshop make to be your guyde,
your expert noblesse eternally tauaunce,
by quicke report of new remembraunce.

And haue this day nothyng in memozye,
nother your riches, your bloud, noz kintrede
saue onely hope, and good trust of victozye,
And hardy pzwesse you to conduct & lede,
& thinke knightly what shal be your mede,
In marcial palmes your renou & your name
in the highest place set in the house of fame

And though ye be but a fewe in nnumber,
let in your heartes one thyng be fantasie,
while deuision doth you not encomber,
Victozye in armes may you not be denyde:
foz nothing is to conquest moze applyed,
than true accorde among your self to shewe,
though ye in nnumber be found but a fewe.

By this counsaile singularly notable,
and by this kinges knightly good langage,
they recomforted, helde themself able,
again their fomen to hold their passage,
And first of al, of hertely proude corage,
the Persiens moze mortally to greue,
within their tentes they fyl on them at eue.

Thei of Perse ydrowned wer with wyne,
this to saye through their great excesse,
they laye and slept like as drunken swyne,
Thei wathe not kept so how f drunkenesse
causeth oft of very rechelesnesse,
full many a man that wyll not take kepe,
foz to be murthred a nightes whā they slepe.

And as this kyng did his knightes lede,
the Persiens tentes assayinge sodainly,
oz they were ware oz toke any hede,
The foz taffrey they made an hydous cre:
Defence was none vpon their pattie,
foz men may know by olde experience,
in folkes drunke may be no resilience.

Out of number thei slough of their fone,
and ceased not of all the long nyght,
till on the morow that the sunne shone,
That to beholde it was an ougly syght:
and proude Ferres put anon to flight,
euer the last that would his fone assayle,
and aye the fyl that fled in battayle.

In his flight so fast away he ran,
(foz therein was wholy all his trust,)
and of great trauaile anon this Ferres gan
of conard drede to haue so great a thurst,
so drye he was of salt sond, and of dust,
and by the waye seachyng farre and nere,
he nother found wel ne riuer.

Of auenture a miry ground he fonde,
the water troubled and bloudy of colour,
and

And Ferres there drake water in his hond,
him to refreſhe in his dedly labour.
And as he thought he neuer dranke liſcoure
to him moze hoſſome, ſo ſteyre ſode & caſe
Conſect with ſpices, piment noꝝ Iſpocraſe.

This was the fiſt miſchief and the dyede,
in which ꝑ Ferres the mighty prince ſode.
Here men may ſee, ſuch as liſt take hede,
Howe gtery fortune, furious and wode,
wyl not ſpare foꝝ richelle noꝝ foꝝ good.
Mighty princes which liſt not god to know
fro their eſtates to bring the down ful lowe

O hateful Serpent of high preſumpcion,
aye buſlauncheable with gredy vſurping,
By newe trouble of falſe ſedicion,
which liſt of pride receiue no warning.
foꝝ now Ferres of Perſe and Medes king
purpoſed hath with obious apparail,
the temple of goddes coꝛagiously to aſſaile.

foꝝ as him thought it might not ſuffiſe,
to great craumpſe of hys contrarious pride
howe here tofoꝝne god did him chaſtiſe,
By mannes hand to ſet his pompe aſide:
but nowe of newe he gan again prouide,
By ſacrilege his mighty hand to dreſſe,
to ſpoyle Apollo and reue him hys richelle.

There was in Delphos a temple thilke day
moſt ſtately bylde and ſet vp by Malous,
Great Images, Reliques, rich aray,
of golde and ſtones in ſondry manſions.
And there Apollo to ſundry queſtions,
yaue ready aunſwere the ſtoꝝ telleth thus
And he was called Apollo Delphicus.

foure thouſand men Ferres thether ſent,
By his auile choſe out foꝝ the nones,
ful clenly armed, and as they thither went,
to ſpoile the temple of gold and rich ſtones,
With ſodein leue they were byt fleſh & bo-
dy tepeſt, thūder, haile, & hidous reine (nes
Conſumpt echone and neuer after ſeine.

The gret Apollo which ſhineth bright in he-
bad of thys Ferres great indignacion,
which made his people be conſumpt in leue
In cruel puniſhing of hys preſumpcion.
Yet he purpoſed to his conſuſion,

Sith on the land he nothing might wyne
Upon the ſea a warre to beginne.

Can to make ſo great an ordenaunce,
that hys nauye couered al the ſea,
Yet Neptune thought him not to chaunce,
within hys boundes to haue no libertee.
foꝝ Themistoſtes wyth a ſmal meyne,
beſide an Iſle called Salamine,
him and hys ſhippes brought vnto ruine.

Yet as I fynd, this proud king Ferres
had on hys partye Artemiſia the quene,
of Halicarnois, which put her ſelf in pꝛees,
armed in plates ꝑ hone ful bright & ſhene
The army of Ferres foꝝ to ſuſtene.
This woman fought like a fel woulueſſe,
And many greke that day ſhe dyd oppreſſe.

It was a ſtraunge maruaile foꝝ to here,
to ſe a woman ſo ſturdy of viſage,
Yet men expert al day may ſe and here,
they be by nature full cruel of coꝝrage,
And no cowardes found of their langage.
Set at aſſay, and than it ſhall be ſene,
where they be fearful theyꝝ quarel to ſuſtene

(ſente
They may of mekenelle ſhewe a fayre pre-
ſome Serpent is of colour ſluer ſhene,
And ſome floures ful freſhe of apparence,
growe on thiſtles, rough, harpe, and bene.
And ſome that ben angelike to ſene,
and very heauenly with their golde tꝛeſſes
Ben at a pꝛeſe very Leonelles.

To ſay the ſoth, a poꝝe man may be ſhent,
I dare no moze ſpeake of this matter:
But kinge Ferres foꝝ al his proude entene
al his nauye and his people Iſere,
were put to flight & outrated of their chere
Their ſhips dꝛowned among ꝑ waves rude
that none abode of al ꝑ multitude.

King Ferres hurte and wounded moꝝtally
vnnethes he might the great paine endure
His quaking heart quit him ſo cowardly,
on ſea and land ſuch was his auenture.
And yet again his damages to recure,
the hundred thouſad of feighters he ga cal
Upon Grekes, of newe foꝝ to fall.

The thynde

A mighty Duke called Harbonius,
was captaine made his people for to lede,
but Themistocles, mine auctor telleth thus
knowing of Perres þ cowardnesse & drede
A letter made for to be sent in dede,
Enfouering him by Grekes great outrage
Howe of hys brydge was broken the passage

Of which maruaille whā there came tidings
to king Perres, he after anon right,
As he that was aserd of eche thing,
Ful like a coward toke him to the flight
fledde in a boate like a coward knight,
Of al his people there were nomore yseine
to awayte vpon him, saue a chamberleine.

Al his people departed here and yonder,
standing in mischief and great indigence,
To many a coast they went & rode alonder
Pined with hunger, lacked their dispenche,
punished also with vnware pestilence,
feble of trauaile, might not endure,
for Impotence to cary their armure,

Alas eche way lay ful of careins,
the soyle wyth blode steyned and the grene
The aire terrible of pathes and of plaines,
that no man might endure it nor sustene,
The sauer was so odious and vnclene.
Rauensous foules ful homely in their sight
Themselfe to fede vpon the corps alight.

Thre hundred thousand of Persies wer slaine
which Harbonius afore ful proudly ladde:
of which tidings king Perres was not faine,
But for distresse and sorowe gan to madde,
And one the last mischief that he had,
Was whā Cymon a noble grekische knight
Perres disconfited and put his mē to flight

This Cymon was sonne to Hylciades,
his father whilome of Athenes king,
Which last of al outtraped hath Perres
saue of his ende there fil another thing,
Artabanus ful sleighty of working,
which to Perres was not suspect in dede,
Compassed his death in Bochas as I rede

This Artaban was prouost of hys house,
and an officer most especial,

Which his seven sonnes strong & dispitous
vpon a night furious and fatal,
Fall vpon Perres in his palase royal.
And in the story as it is remembered,
On peccis smal they haue him al dismembred.

Thys was of Perres the last final mede,
of his high pride the funeral guerdon.
fro his two kigdōs of Persie & eke of Mede
frowarde fortune hath hym plucked down,
what may auayle the domination
Of such princes as holde them selfe euen,
for to be egal with goddes high in heauens

We list not know such chaūges for no preef
and namely princes in their gret pussaūces
Agein earthly perils & al worldly mischief,
they can prouide them and set ordenaūces
as they that drede fortunes variaūces,
But to godward they take littel hede,
for the great riches which they doe possede

If they may heren of an earth quauē,
tofore it fal, or any token see,
Than wyl they goe anon them self to saue,
Out of their houses & from their touns flee
to put their life the moxe in suertee,
Lest their bilding made of great costage,
fal vpon them in that mortal rage.

O: if an horse ronne out of his stable,
Breake his collet thicke, double, and longe,
men wyl ordayne a Locke of yron, able
to kepe him in, be he neuer so strong.
And thus men can redresse euery wrong,
touching the body by great ausenelle,
Saue for þ soule they wil nothing redresse

Whan a riuer passeth farre his boundes,
boyleth bpward, findeth no resistance,
winneeth land, and ouerfloweth groundes
drowneth townes with his violence:
yet men wil trauaile to find a defēce, (ght
To turne his cours some wey shalbe sou-
But toward god mē thinke littel or nought

Agein sicknesse men seke medecynes,
Letwaries and diuers porcions,
Serch in phisike sondry disciplines
Them to dyete in their transgressions,
Restoratiues

Restoratiues and eke confections.
But vnto godward in this present life,
When not trauaile for no confortatife.

When their bodies wil put in distresse,
Of false desire and couetous feruence,
Only taccoche and winne great richesse,
Suffre colde, labour, and violence,
and nother spare for gold nor for dispenche,
To vnderfonge perilles of beyngloxe,
only for thinges that been transitozy.

They passe moueteins & many hideous roch
In hope it shewd to their entent auale,
To many mortal monstre they approach,
And by many vncouth sea they saile.
Jeoparde their life in warre and in batayle,
by many daunger & many straye they ride,
for worldly tresour which shal no while a-
(vide,

But toward goodes that ben pardurable,
ful litel or nought their hearts they ecline
nor to the heauenly countrey most notable,
They wil not lift vp nother head ne chine,
toward the spheres of Phebus and Lucine,
Casting their streemes to vs from so farre
which to consider al worldly me done erre.

What might auale the great couetise,
of king Ferres in his estate roial,
Of þ gret people which ye haue herd deuise,
ten hundred thousand þ people was not smal
But for al that he had an hideous fal,
whan that he was, (as tofozne is remēbryd)
On pieces smal piteously dismembryd.

¶ Lenuoye.

This tragedye put vs in remembraunce,
of the vnlike flateryng and blindnesse,
Both of fortune and of her variaunce,
and of her ougly froward doublenesse,
In Ferres shewd for al his great richesse.
To vs declaring plainly in figure,
A rauinous pynce may no while endure.

King Ferres had vnder hys obeysaunge,
al Perse & Medes þ flozy beareth witnesse,
Thought al earth to litel in substantie,
to staunch the etike of hys gredinesse.

A fret of hauing put him in such distresse.
Whose tyme declared by record of scripture
A rauinous pynce may no while endure.

He made also an odious ordynaunce,
of surquedye his power for to dresse,
To robbe þ goddes mauger their puissances
& spoyle their tēples of stoward wilfulnes
Take their tresours again al right wilfully
But they him shewd of sodaine auenture,
A rauinous pynce may no while endure.

Great Apollo toke on hys men vengraunce,
with vnware tempest for al their surdnesse
Leuen & thunder brought the to mischaunce
guerdo most able gein their great fallnesse
In pynces heartes aye playnly to expresse,
who by rauine richesses wyl recure,
God wil not suffer him long to endure.

Noble pynces stable in your constaunce,
ye that desire to stand in fixenesse,
Remembre oft vpon the fatal chaunce,
of proude Ferres and his curlednesse,
your self disposing in your hygh noblesse
If that ye list your states to assure,
eschewe rauine and ye shal longe endure.

¶ Howe Artabanus which murdered king
Ferres was afterwarde himself mur-
dered and slayne.

¶ The .x. Chapter.



Art these tragedies, weeping
and dolous,
While Bochas stynt and
would haue ben in pees,

A knight appered called Artabanus,
which had afozne murdered king Ferres,
And gan hys complaint for to put in pees,
ful concluding to speake in wordes plaine
who vseth murdre, by murder shal be slaine.

Thys Artabanus by record of wyting,
with Ferres prouost whilome as I rede,
falsely conspired by sleight of his working
for to be king both of Perse and of Medes,
Hauing seue sonnes which þ were in dedes
worthy knightes, manly and right strong.

¶ All.

Albe

The thynde

Albe thet father was let to doe gret wroȝ,

For he presumed by vsurpacion,
in Perse and Mede to quench þe clere light
and trouble the line of iust succession,
For so as he of force and not of right,
nothing resembling to a true knight,
The murder of Ferres falsely did ordeine,
right so he call to murdre his sones tweine.

And to conclude plainly and not tarie,
This saied king that called was Ferres,
had two sonnes, the yongest called Darie,
And that other named Artaxerxes,
which as the story reherfeth doubtles,
were by discent boȝne for to succede, (we
after their father to reigne in Perse & Me-
(knowe

The murdre of Ferres outwarde was vni-
nor howe Artabanus had þe treasō wrought
Erl afterwarde within a litle throuwe,
he had of newe forged out and sought,
false odious traines þe were neuer thought
told Artaxerxes as he ga with him rowne,
Howe Darie call to occupie the crowne.

And howe þe death of Ferres was ordeined,
only by Darie and by none other wight
Wherupon which ought be complained,
Artaxerxes prouided anone right,
the slaughter of Darie, & so again al right,
This yong brother in hys innocence,
was falsely slaine and did none offence.

Ye wisse by whom this treasō was cōpassed
tweine brethren tweine to make deuision,
The yonger slaine and nothing trespassed,
n oſt redy wey to the distruction
Of Artaxerxes, for in conclusion,
whan the brethren murdred were in dede,
Artabanus thought for to succede.

But Artaxerxes by plaine instruction,
of one that was called Baccabassus,
By tokens knewe the couert false treason,
Of this forsed double Artabanus,
and howe that he by treines outragious
Had Ferres slaine as ye haue herd toforne,
and Darie appeched wherby þe he was loꝛne.

But this vncouth straunge treason wrought
whan Artaxerxes had knowleging,
By great aduise waies he hath sought,
Artabanus to bring vnto rekening.
But specially he dyed him of one thing,
He feble was to bring this thing aboute,
of hys seuen sonnes he had so great doute.

But for to accomplishe fully hys entent,
ful secretly this was his ordinaunce,
to al the worthy he hath his letters sent,
Dwelling in Perse vnder hys obeysaunce
without excuse or lenger attendaunce,
Armed echone and in especial,
to come in hast vnto his courtte royall.

Cause of their coming was to the not know
the kynges purpose was holden secrete,
And kept so close both from hie and lowe,
that to hys meaning no man was priue,
Except the king sayd he would see,
what noubmer of men (if it come to nede)
In his defence he myght gadre and lede.

And among other came Artabanus
vnto the court, and list not for to faile,
A man that was cruel and coragious,
ful of sleighes in al hys gouernaile.
Which thiske tyme armed was in mayle,
for he with him none other armout ladde,
Sawe on hys backe an haburion he hadde

Than Artaxerxes beynge in his strength,
To him abraide of false affection,
for that my mayle wanteth of his length,
I would with the chaunge myne haburion.
The tother hauing none euil suspencion,
Vngyrt him self, would no lenger byde,
Both swoorde and dagger call the far aside

And while that he threwe of hys haburion,
and with the maile stopped was his sight,
He being naked for mozt conclusion,
the king out pulleth a sword kene & bright
And through þe hert he roue þen anon right
And after that of indignacion,
Toke his seue sones and cast them in prisō

Of their ende what should I more endite,
Nor of their death make digression,

God may his vengeance a while respite,
But murder will out and all such treason,
And for Artaban he had a condicion,
falsly to murder, as ye tofore haue seia,
with vnwaite murder he guerdoned was a-

(geyn

Thus euer murder requireth for his wages
Slaunder importable, odious for to heare,
A word defamous most foule in al lāguages
the sound horrible by report to appeare.
a clips during, whose darknes may not clere
for this word murder most ougly & busaue
By a rehearsing infecteth al the ayre.

Of Duke Phalantus, & how the Spar-
tans werred them of Messene for
rauisying theyr maydens.

The .xi. Chapter.

After the death and fatal caas,
and piteous murder of Artabanus
Next in order appeared to Bochas
A mighty duke called Phalantus,
Sonne of a knight named Aratus,
which was exiled, though he no treason met
Oute of his title that called was Tarent.

Upon his exile he sore gan compleyn.
Beseeching Bochas to geat him a space,
within his boke to write his griuous peyn
Albe that he whilom stode in grace,
By glad aspectes of fortunes face,
for the hym rayled by fauour of her might,
to Dukes estate from a ful poze knight.

But seriously this matter to conueye,
how he was made Duke and gouernour,
whan Spartains gan mortally werrey,
Again Messenes, as sayeth myne auctour,
With great collage and diligent labour:
And cause was this, for they w mighty hōd,
Rauished by force all maydens of that lond

for thys people now named Spartencys,
(As the story clerely can deuyle,)
were called afore, Lacedemoniys,
In armes proued manly and right wise:
And while they dyd a solemne sacrifice
vnto theyr Goddes, the people of Messeny,

Rauished theyr maydens, or they could it espy

On which wrong for to doe vengeance,
the Spartencys caught indignacion,
and of assent with al their whole puissance
they layd a siege round about the town:
And of one will and one affection,
they made a vowe, y siege whan they begon
Neuer to depart tyl the town wer wonne.

Afore the town fully ten yere they lay,
And fro the sege, as they had made their oth
they not departed nother night nor day,
But stil abode and not asunder goth.
therof their wiues being at home wer wroth
to theyr husbondes a messenger they sent,
Under these wordes declaring their entent

Sayd it was not accordyng with reason,
They like wiewdowes to liue disconsolate,
without comfort or consolation,
farre fro their husbondes to stond desolate
Whicheiues considered y fall in eche estate,
by long absēce, which ech man should dyede
thzough diuers sickness y fall in womāhede

The tyde abyde not for no maner man,
Nor sint his course for no creature:
And hard it is, as we rehearse can,
Thing to withstand that cometh of nature.
Nacme done by kynd, is froward to recure,
And there is found full litle sikernes,
where as nature affozeth byotlenes.

Thys litle sond ought ynough suffyse,
to declare damage that may fall,
By long absence, folkes that been wyse,
sumtime departed, againe men may not cal
that seldom is sene in loue doth appalle,
And nothing moze maketh wiues erre,
than disseuerance of folkes y be in werre.

This was the effect playnly in substance,
sent to their husbondes which at y siege lay
Compleynyng they had no pleasance.
Space of ten yere, as in loues play:
But desolate in sorow and great affray,
Theyr life they lad affirmyng in sentence,
cause of their cōstraint was their lōg absēce

P. iii.

And

The thyrde

And whā the letters wer at the siege radde
tofore the Citty in al their mortal stryues,
They wer astonied and gan to waire sadde,
And very wery almost of theyr liues,
For to consider þ compleynt of their wyues,
Till theyr caprayn a remedy out sought,
By whose counsel euen thus they wrought

Fyrst old knyghtes that had the siege sworne
It for accomplissh and cast them to be true
His counsel was as they had hight beforne,
to hold their promise, & thereof nothing rue:
But yong knyghtes that wer come of new,
Wight as they list freely at theyr will,
Chose whether they would goe or byde still,

And herupon for theyr most auayle,
in hast their captain (as made is remēbrāce)
Of hygh prudence gaue them this counsaile
That knyghtes old, like their assuraunce,
Should of the siege haue the gouernance,
And yong knyghtes most freshly & wel besem
Should from the siege home be sent again.

(unce

They made amōg thē a ful strange ordina-
at their home coming without difference,
To enterchange their wyues for plesaunce,
and take her first that came to their presēce
This was þ accord among thē in sentence,
Most ready way to their opinion,
to engendure and procreacion.

There was among them quarrell nor stryfe
In this matter, nor no variaunce:
For euery man misused others wyfe,
To theyr desyres as was to them plesaunce
And thus children through this ordenance
that wer engendred, the case is thus befall,
Parthenoys men did them after call,

Which in our tong to speke in wordes pleyn,
After the Greke who list consider and see,
Is no more playnly for to seyn,
then thilke children which ingendred be
In aduoutry: wherefore in that countrey,
Parthenoys of custom they wer named,
Bozne of wombes which that wer defamed

The false occasion of this aduoutry,
Caused after great mischiefe and damage:

That no man coude as for his partie,
By succession whan he came to age,
By tittle of right cleyme his heritage,
For where a lyne fallly doth procede,
Hard is to know by right who shal succede

The disturbance of false succession,
And tytles cleimed aforced with gret might
where that auoutrie hath domination,
And is supported of wil and not of right,
& clayme of trowth hath lost hys clere light,
Though their parties mighty ben & strong
God wil not suffer they shal endure long.

And Parthenoys peysing all these thinges
How false assurance was in their linage,
The gentle blud troubled fyrst of kinges.
For no man knew, of high nor lowe parage,
His own father by likeliness of visage,
Nor father none by his great errour.
Coud geue no tittle to his successour.

whereupon folowed a great mischaunce,
Hateful to heare throughout the countrey,
Eche man troubled in his countenaunce,
who should clayme by any liberte,
to enter his lond or to stond free. (tie
Such doubt they had eche man for his par-
So importable was their aduoutry.

This great mischief whoso taketh hede,
By long processe made them to know & see,
How they wer able as by likelihede,
For theyr outrages to fall in pouerte.
And of assent they cast them for to flee,
Under a captayn, by strong & mighty hond,
fro that cuntry to win some other lond.

And as I rede they chase Duke Phalantus
Of whō I spake to gouerne their passage,
takyng no leaue, the story telleth thus.
At their departing beginning theyr byage,
they wer so confuse of chere & of visage,
For there was none of al that great rout,
to chose his father, but that stode in doubt.

They held themself very ashamed,
And for shame out of that lond they went,
Like people dislaundred and diffamed,
through the auoutry to which they did assēt
And

And to a citie that called was Tarent,
which stant in Doyle a mighty strong cūtre,
this Duke Phalantus came w his meiny.

And there he put through his great might,
the Citizens out of that Citie,
And gate Tarent ful like a manly knight,
and there abode in long prosperitie,
as gouernour and Duke of that cūtrie,
till that his people by false collusion,
him to deprieue sought out occasion.

They him exiled whan he was fal in age,
to what it is in commons to assure,
Stormy of heart vnſure of theyr corage,
field or neuer their frendſhip doth endure
Men may to day their fauour wel recure,
And to morow let set it at a priſe,
they rather hinder whē mē ſtōd at miſchief.

¶ Of Cefo Quintus exiled, & Grac-
chus Clulius taken priſoner.

¶ The. xii. Chapter.

I Can no more rehearſe of Phalantus,
Duke and leader of Parthenoys:
But I wil tel how Cefo Quintus,
came tofore Bochas w a ful piteous boye,
his tale gā & how Gracchus priſe of Equois
Both at once gan theyr ſong entune,
moſt dolefully to pleyne vpon fortune.

This mighty prince Cefo Quintus,
Compleyned firſt, as made is mention,
Now they of Rome wer contrarius,
And ſelly brought to his deſtruction,
and full vniuſly baniſhed him the towne.
And notwithstanding, he was a Dictatour,
him to confound they did theyr labour.

Cauſe of hys exile compaſſed as I rede,
that he was ſlowe, they ſayd and negligent,
him to defend touching the appele in dede,
which again him was brought of falſe entet
Yet Cincinnatus his father by aſſent,
payde for amende (as ſay Chroniclers,)
Set out of lond draught of thre arblaſters,

Yet his enimies would not be content,
But proceeded that he was exiled;
Did execution of his iudgement,
As in his ſtory ful playnly is compyled,
He after neuer might be reconciled:
which I haue pietie to put in remēbraunce,
ſo little offence ſhould haue ſo gret vengeance

Gracchus of Rome called Clulius,
Prince of Aequoys mine autor ſaith ſame
was in his time notable and glorious,
and a great Duke full renowned of fame.
but how y people of Aequoys toke firſt their
vnder ſupport, y no mā haue diſſei (name
I wil the proceſſe declare here in certein.

John Bochas ſayth there is a nation,
which that firſt wer called Hunoys,
And ſecondly alſo by ſucceſſion,
Of ful long time named Anathoys,
and alder laſt men called them Aequoys:
Like as I trowe mine autor ſaith the ſame,
of hoſe moſt ſwift they toke fyrſt the name.

And as it is remembred in ſentence,
By their manhod & famous hardines,
again Alexandre they made a ſtrong deſſee,
On hoſebacke through their gret ſwiftnes
Beſide the hil pleyntly to expreſſe,
which in Chronicles is called Caucasus,
this people of Aequoys wer victorius.

To their nobleſſe plainly as I fynd,
nothing in earth was moze expedient,
In theyr conqueſt of Ethiope and of Inde:
As hoſe moſt ſwift ſeruing theyr intent,
therby conquering al the Orient.
So great prowelle was in theyr paſſage,
that Aequoys brought al Egypt to ſeruage,

Thus where euer Aequoys did ryde,
they gate great good to theyr poſſeſſion:
And Gracchus was their gouernour & gide
which by hys ſturyng and falſe ſuggeſtion,
Ageyn the Romayns ſyll in Rebellion.
But to wſtand him they ſent out and right
Cincinnatus proued a ful good knyght.

He was wel truſted and knowe in the town,
and for his prudence choſen a Dictatour:

His

The thynde

His lifelode small and his possession,
 Albe he was a worthy warriour, (bour,
 which hath vanquished by his knightly la-
 The sayd Gracchus for al his great power,
 And home to Rome brought him prisoner.

Cynennatus in his chayre was set,
 Called Quintius for this great victorie:
 And most solemnely with senators met,
 which gaue to him for to encrease his glory,
 Laude of triumphe to put hym in memory.
 And Gracchus after for his rebellion,
 with chaines bound was cast in dark prison

And there he dyed in ful great mischief,
 after his conquestes first famous & notable:
 An euidence to vs and a great priefe,
 How fortune is aye false and vnsable,
 Euer double froward and deceivable.
 The fall of Gracchus declare can ful wele,
 That whilom sat so hygh vpon her whele.

There Bochas rehearseth the tyranny
 of Appius Claudius and
 falsenes of Judges.

The. xiii. Chapter.

Notwithstanding Bochas tofore
 hath tolde.
 Of Appius the falsenes impoyntable
 And hys outrages and surfets
 manifolde,
 To be remembred hateful and repleuable.
 Yet as him thought it was here couenable,
 To more rebuke and spetting of his name,
 New to rehearse his flaunder and defame.

The great offences of thys Appius,
 And oppressions that he vpon hym toke,
 Made him to growe so inly couetous,
 Through his rauine & all the people quoke,
 As ye may see before in thys thyrd booke,
 where mine autour doth clerely speciffe,
 His fraude in domes, and hys false lechery.

Eke of thys tyrant remembred ye may rede,
 Chief Judge he was with other officers,
 called Decemvirs, & through his pryde in dede
 Agein the custom of the that wer his feres.

He made be borne standerds and banners,
 In otherwise of high presumption,
 than bled wer before in Rome town.

These Judges had a custome and maner,
 Lyke theyr estates in theyr gouernaunce,
 Eche after other to haue borne a banner,
 where they went, such was their ordenance
 by twelue sargeantes numbred in substance
 But Appius of pryde and great outrage,
 Ichaunged hath that custome and vsage.

He fyrst ordeyned eche shoulde in his place,
 Of Decemvirs haue a banner borne,
 In theyr walkyng the people to manace,
 An hundred men of armes them before,
 And twenty ouer by a statute swozne,
 wherby the citie bare great cost in dede,
 and al the people wer put in fere and drede,

To se þ sargeantes walke in plate & mayle,
 they thought it was a meruelous wecking.
 Judges to goe with such apparayle,
 In theyr proceeding as eche had ben a king.
 And whole the intent of Claudius meaning,
 was, that he shoulde of power and of might,
 Doe what hym list, wer it wrong or ryght.

The rightfull punish, and the gylty spare,
 fauor wrong for byrbes and for mede,
 the people oppressed stode in sorrow and care
 found no succour to help them in theyr neede
 Late was there none for reaso lay by drede
 will was Judge, and pleasaunce equitie,
 And thus by maistry was gouerned þ citie.

And as it is remembred by Bochas,
 Appius was lecherous of nature,
 And caught a quarel, as ye haue herd & cas,
 Agayn Virginia a mayde cleane and pure.
 And for he shoulde nothing in her recure,
 Touching his lust her father in that strete,
 with a sharpe sword made her lose her lyte.

And for this tirant by false ribaudry,
 Caused her death by hasty violence,
 And for he shoulde her beauty not maistry,
 Dying a mayde in her chaft innocence,
 Therefore he was demed in sentence,
 As is tofore made clere mencion,

for to be cheined and dte in prisson.

The Decemvirs lost their power,
and neuer in Rome after bare no name,
Nor of that sect was made none officer.
And among all Appius bare the blame,
whose crime reboundeth to his eternal shame
As ye haue herd who that can discern,
and thā tribunes were chose for to gouerne

And in Bochas like as it is found,
the said Judges in mischief did fine,
while Appius laie in prisson bounde,
iyled were al that other nine,
the good, the treascur, of the 7 of their line
Acheted x as for short conclusion,
To comē profite and encrease of the town.

Cenuoy.

This litel tragedy both shortly here deuisse
What mischief foloweth for þ gret vntight
Used by Judges in many sundry wise:
for when þ fauour blinded hath their sight,
And Innocence is borne down with might
and in hys quarrel pouert may not procede,
because that trouth oppressed is with mede

A Judge shoud of equitie despise,
To take gistes of any maner wight,
and redy be al wronges to chastise.
from al gistes turne away hys sight.
Hys handes close, his eares stop atight,
and be ay ware for frendship, hate or dyede,
That trouth be not oppressed with no mede

The noble doctrine and verteous emprise
of Philosophers that had so great in sight
was this to Judges þ prudēt were a wise
for frend or foe their domes so be right,
of rightwisnesse that the sonne bright,
Eclipsed neuer list men for their fals hede.
Report that right was put abacke for mede

Noble princes supporters of Iustise,
Called lode sterres to yue the people light,
en Appius lette Judges not practise,
That trouthes laipe be clere both day & night
your office peysed that longeth to a knight
hold by þ balace of dome in your māhode.

That law in iudges be not corrupt to mede

Bochas ageine the vntuth of Judges.



Sing vpon the death of Appius
and his rebukes for hys
gret outrage,
Bochas by wittinge,
mete sumwhat prous,

Agein iudges false & thought in his corage
They shoud be sad and demure of age:
and that thir life by vertue shoud drawe,
To kepe þ preceptes & statutes of the lawe.

They ought of reason them self to habyle,
To haue science of Philosophie,
and knowe their textes of canon and civile
And therupon their wittes whole to applie.
for canning Judges by prudent policie,
Cause ordinaunces in lawe comprehended
through rightful dome gretly to be comēded

To use of lawe doth Realmes enlumine,
Sustaineth trouth, supporteth innocēce,
Of reuincours boweth downe the chine,
Punisheth robbers for their great offence
Sluggish trauantes for their negligence,
and fained beggers that greatly disauaile,
Constraineth them to labour and trauaile.

Foundours of lawe by antiquite,
Caused in londres was suffered none errour
and made of princes the roial maiestie
To shine in worship by diligent labour,
wrested corages of many Conquerour,
that their triumphes no forther shoud attain
Than lawe of god and nature did ordaine.

Until was that time vnder subiection,
of rightwisnesse by trouth ful well coueyed/
Sensacite was seruant to reason,
and froward law was vnder lock wel kept
Sentence of statutes was not disobeyed,
The rich did right throughout euery londe,
poore folke liued by labour of their honde.

Lordship that time auoided maintenaunce
holy church liued in perfiteiſe, (unles
knight hood tho daies for trouth whet his la-
And false extorcion had none intreſse,

Marchauntes

The thynde

Marchantes winning cam al of rightwisnes
Artificers the workday were not Idle,
And busines of labour held the bydle.

Women that age farced were nor hozned,
Nor their tailes were not serpentine,
wile in of foly nor clerkes wet not scoined
Which in science most freshly did shine.
Law disherited none heires fro their line,
lesingmongers fond that time no sorours
and flatterers tha wer made no cofessours

This golden world flouring in vertue,
Bozne by by loue, grounded on stablenesse
Of Auoutry there sprang out none Jssue,
Princes by doctrin established their noblesse
prested in piater, knightthod in worthinesse
Ech thing by lawe fode vnder gouernace,
Marchauntes by measure & iust pels of ba-
launce,

first Phoroneus by diligent labour,
fond out lawes, that king was of Argues
the Grekes stady he gilt with gret honour
this politike prince to auoid the fro strues
His statutes kept during al their liues,
found first the maner Bochas both deuise
Howe to Jupiter was made sacrifice,

Eke mighty Minos whilom king of Crete
O; dained lawes agein transgressions,
To feare by rigour soles that wer vnmete
and staunch of surfetes al occasions.
Made for robbers mightye strong prisons,
And Dedalus his chief Artificer,
Made Libicintus by diligent entere,

And eke Mercurie bozne by y flode of Nile
As writeth Lactance was of Egypt king,
Unto Marchauntes did lawe first compile
of weight and measure to vs in chaffaring.
And for his wisdom and excellent cuning
Of olde Poetes that whilome were so wise
He called was god of marchaundise.

Solon also the best lawes made,
as Valerie writeth, him self to magnifie,
Atheniens es therof were ful glad.
his great wisdom whan they did espie,
They fond therin so much policie,
And euer he was redy for to debate,

Agein tyauntes so soze he dyd them hate,

King Licurgus eke whilome dnd hys cure
To make lawes to common auantage,
and that they should perpetually endure,
He made his people be sworne of euery age
While that he went out on pilgrimage,
fro poynt to poynt to kepe them in certein,
vnto time that he came home agein.

And for hys lawes were of great substance
And profitable to euery comontie,
He chace to liue in exile and penaunce,
Neuer to resort ageine to his citie,
That his statutes by eternitie,
Shuld not be broke as ye haue herd toform
by the couention to which they were sworn

To comen profite had he such tenderneffe,
that he forsoke his kingdome and kinrede,
To liue in exile, hys story beareth witnesse,
But or he died as he lay bedyede,
He bad his bones should be cast in dede,
amyd the sea farre out from the strond,
That his statutes mighte in their strength
(stand

He eschewed eueryche occacion,
as a thing hateful which was not faire,
That his forsaide royal mighty town,
shuld byeke their oth because of his repaire
But touching that he put them in dispaire,
cast him neuer resort in their dawes,
lest they would breake y sentece of his lawes

Here Bochas maketh an exclama-
tion of the extortion of the officers
of Rome.

The .xiiii. Chapter.

John Bochas here maketh a digression,
I and by rebuking cast hym to cassayle,
Thilke officers that were in Rome town
which by extortion oppressed the pozaile,
And agein Iudges also of Trayle.
And namely them that for lucre and mede,
Set trouth aside and toke of it none hede.

He maketh agein them an exclamation,
such as to vertue were contrarious,

And

And vnder colour and occasion,
of their office list to be lecherous,
Like conditioned vnto Appius,
and finally as it was after sene,
false in their domes & of their life vnclene

O quod Bochas O, trouth, O thou Justice
which in your noblesse whilom did excellen,
wher in effect is now your exercise? (dwel
Where is your woning, alas where do you
of your practike ful fewe men can tel,
So farre put backe is now your discipline
your kin exiled, and your noble line,

Advocates that nowe done occupie,
your olde sees and places full royal,
Al to falschede their wittes they applye,
Such couetise nowe reigneth ouer all.
Causes of ciuile and causes criminall,
their domes take where they be false or true
Al after wyl by statutes chaunged newe,

There been eke other called Accellours,
Sitting by Iudges to yeue the counsaile,
which may ful well be called rauencours,
for they not labour but for their own auail
A number of robbers folowe at their taile,
to pile the people as ye haue herd tofozue,
Bare as a Oyepe that is but newe shorne.

There is no more in this mater to seene,
Saue only this trouth stant desolate,
& rightwisenesse dare to no wight cōplaine
with wronge oppressed, weping and desolate
Wherefore ye princes that sit in high estate,
such thing to amēd, but ye bet hede list take
God Hal w you a ful hard rekening make

Your office is in your magnificence,
twene man and mā al wronges to redresse,
And where a mater is ageine conscience,
it to resourme only of rightwisenesse.
To stand by trouth, maintaine no falsnesse,
and let wise counsaile such matters examine
O ye of hault theron determine.

Haue such thinges in your mynd among,
thinke god will quire like as ye deserue,
Ye spot your noblesse if that ye do wrong,
his sword of punishing drede or it herue,

Let your reason and conscience conserue,
your noble estates, & thinke like your wer-
the lord of you wil axe a rekening. (king

Howe Alcibiades was exiled, and after
brent in hys bedde.

The .xv. Chapter.



fter other that put them
selfe in pces,

Tofoze Bochas their com-
plaintes to discute,
Came of Athens Alcibiades,
that time alieue the fairest creature.
And as it is remembred by scripture,
he was discrete and wise at al assayes,
And one y strongest & manliest in his daies

He was first bozne of ful high limage,
aboue al other of most semelines,
wel propoztioned, and hardy of corage,
Loued & wel fauoured for his gret fairnes
famous in knighthode for hys worthines,
subtil witted, and coud by eloquence,
Much comprehend vnder short sentence,

His wit enclined to manyfolde sciences.
Had of cunning a passing reueris,
Loued clerkes, and fond the their dispces,
Such as in practike he sawe most inuentis,
to rede in bokes reioysed al his life,
Kept what he redde in hys memoris,
and of wise counsaile was none to him egal,

In vncke he had ycalled Pericles,
which stode in daunger of excessif spēding
Yet in hys youth this Alcibiades,
Seyng hys vncke pensiffe in loking,
cast of wisdom to remedy that thing.
And for to allwage his hertes heuinesse,
Gaue him this counsaile by gret auisenesse

fyrst to rehearse how the matter stode,
and of hys vnckes woful high distresse,
there was to him deliuered a summe of good
To repaire the temple of a goddesse,
Called Minerva, but for the gret excess,
Of his dispces he stode somewhat in drede
touchig thacrouit which he must yeld in dede
Alcibiades

The thynde

Alcibiades hereupon musing,
to hys vncke gaue counsaile in sentence,
Vncke (quod he) let be al youre thinking,
and for youre selfe shape this defence.
Not for taccoupt by meane of your prudence
afoze prouided with face & there vnfaired,
To such duresse that ye be not constrained.

And whā Pericles his counsaile aduertiseth,
fond to his worshop it was resonable,
And by good leiser him self ful wel auseth
and by prouision prudent and notable,
Saued his estate fro ech thing reppreuable:
So that he stode touching this matter,
As for accomptes, out of al daunger.

Alcibiades of Athene chief capteine,
from day to day ware vp to great encrease,
Such another was there no where seyne,
them to gouerne both in warre and peace.
And all the Citty by assent him chees,
of their nauye in especiall,
Upon the sea to be their Admiral.

For his knighthode they set him out afarre
To Cathenois to be their gouernour,
Gaue Siracusan for to ginne a warre,
first there receiued wth gloire & gret honour:
But in the ende of his great labour,
fortune that is aye variaunt and vnstable,
was to thys duke not found fauourable.

He was accused to them of the toun,
which in Athenes had gouernaunce,
That he was giltie in party of treason,
By them reuoked for al his great puissance
of captainship, and by their ordenaunce,
and fortunes false mutabilitie,
Unwarely priued from al dignitie.

But for hym selfe thus he gan prouide,
went into exile not farre from that countrie,
Into a Cytie that called was Elide,
There for to haue freedom and libertie
and of his life to stande in suertie,
for in Athene they would haue him dead,
Vnto their goddes to offer vp his head.

But whan he was of their entent certein,
To Lacedemogn he toke the right way,

And by relacion there he herd seine,
howe the Atheniens were put to a fray.
In a bataile byon a certaine daye,
which that they helde to their aduersitee,
Geine Siracusan as they faught on þe see

But the cause of this disconfiture,
as was tolde to Alcibiades, (uenture
was by thre Captaines through thier misa-
which in their leding were found cercheles,
The chief of them named Demosthenes,
the tother called, the noye telle th vs,
The tone Picias the tother Lamachus.

Alcibiades hauing herof tyding,
to auenge hys wrong put him self in pices,
Of Lacedemogn he goeth first to the king,
which of trouth was called Agides,
Beseeching him to graunt to his entres,
Certaine souleours out of his countre,
for to werraye Athenes the Cite.

Thus he ware strong of noble prouidence,
had great people vnder hys gouernaunce,
And like a duke made strong in his defence
By people gadred to hys obeyssaunce, (like
þ other princes which were of high puissance
Can haue enuy of woful frowardnesse,
and to maligne agein his high noblesse.

For seeld o^r neuer in any region,
prowesse of armes, noblesse of cheualrye,
Encrease in riches, repoze of high renown,
fame of cunning in craft o^r in clergie,
May no where dwel without some enuy,
from whose malice as folke expert may se,
Saue only wretches no man hath libertie.

for which this prince as put is in memory,
Escaped not for al hys high parage,
but that some enuied at hys gloire,
for in thys life no man hath auantage,
agein tonges no^r obious false language,
To stop such venom this the best obstacle,
that men with sufferaunce tēpre their triacle

The clere prowesse of Alcibiades,
stained the noblesse of other princes al,
His cure hym raised vp to so great entres,
to the highest trone of fortunes hal.

Such

Suche fatall grace is vnto hym fall,
that in tho dayes playnly this no fable,
there was in knighthode none to him ref^e.
blable.

In his exyle so clere his renoune shone,
and through Grece gaue his gret brightnes
As both a Rubye aboue eche other stone,
yt for to clipps and shadow his worthines,
Lacedemonois dyd their busines,
Such as might not to his noblesse attain,
by false report his renoun so restrayne.

A waite was layde to take hym at mischiese,
and many traines wer serched out & sought
Of entent to put hym at repese,
But al þe euer again him thei haue wrought
at the ende the purpose came to nought.
for god prouideth of his magnificence,
again suche malice to saue innocence.

He was likely to fall in great daunger,
Lacedemonois gan so at hym disdayne,
because his honoz & noblesse shone so clere,
That to his sone it was a deadly payne,
And thus his lyfe stode in no certaine,
for albest he manly was and wise,
He knew nothing their purpose nor malice.

He had almost ywarned be to late,
and like to haue stonde in great perplexitie,
And moze his grace and fortune tabate,
by thocasion of his great beutie,
He with the quene was waren full priuse,
for in her grace so well stode there none,
which gaue hym warnyng of them þe were
(his sone.

And by the counsaile onely of the quene,
to Lacedemoyne he wisely tooke his flight
Toward Athens, & thought he would sene
his own countrey, ful like a manly knight
& though they had not gouerned the aright,
towards him being in distresse,
To auenge his wroȝg he did the no duresse.

for he thought it was again nature,
to be vengeable, or shew his crueltie,
by thocasion of any auenture,
Or in a warre vpon his countrey:
His natife bloud meued him to pitie;
And of very naturall gentlenes,

was debonayze again their vnkindnes.

The case was this for short conclusion,
how kyng Darpe with great apparayle,
Thought to warrey of indignacion,
Them of Athens and their towne tassayle,
And in purpose proudly to preuaile,
Cissafernes a prince of great puissance,
Of Daries power had al the gouernaunce.

Final cause and ground of all this warre,
that Darius gan on them so hastily,
And that he sent his puissance fro so farre
for to destroye Athens bitterly,
was to hold bp and sustaine the partie,
Of Lacedemoyne, which of old harrrede,
wer euer enuous them toppresse in dede.

But by meane of Alcibiades,
and his treare founded on prudence,
Cissafernes inclined to the pees,
Therby in partie appease his violence,
And all was done of noble prouidence:
and fro the place to which he was exyled,
He to Athens should be reconciled.

Vnto the citie he did signifye,
how Darius had made his ordinaunce,
And by his letters he gan them specifye,
If they would stonde at his gouernaunce,
to condescende plainly in substance,
he would labour and no lenger tarte,
to make accord twene the and kyng Darpe.

This was the meane that he ment,
within Athens that the Senatours,
Should of the citie after theyr entent,
Haue full Lordship & be their gouernours,
But as clere wether troubled ay w hours
right so vnwarely within that royal town,
Through this treat fell at discencion.

The commoners gan sodainly disdeyne,
to be so thralled vnder subiection,
And so by assent the commons did ordeyne,
Onely appease all false discencion,
for to reuoke agayne into theyr towne,
Alcibiades as they thought it mete,
through his prudence to set them in quiete.

Q. i. first

The thirde

first in his comyng mine autoz doth report
he was made Duke agein of that cite,
And gan the partie of commons to support,
and them restoze to theyz old libertie,
wherethrough þe senate dzeding þe cōmōtie
fled into exyle full fetre out of all pzees,
Onely for dzeded of Alcibiades.

They stode that time in so great disioynt,
their towne deuided and out of gouernāce
That thei wer brought euen to the poynt,
to yeld the cite vnto the obeyfaunce
Of Lacedemoin, throughe there vnhappye
within the self whan thei gā debate (chance
Under their Duke þe senate bare such hate

But the commons chese in their defence,
Alcibiades to gouerne that biage,
and to the sea with cost and great dispence,
withouth abode he holdeth his passage.
In mighty shippes made for auantage:
well enarmed, and cast (yf he might.)
With Lacedemonoys proudly for to fight.

Thre mightie captains wer on þe other side:
the first zestro, Bochas telleth thus:
And the second that was their lord & guide
called Hydarus, the third Pharbanazus,
On þe sea and lond in armes ful pompous.
But of his knighthode and magnanimitie,
Alcibiades toke them al thre.

Strong was the fight or þe they were take,
of all their meyne away there scaped none,
the Duke þe day gan such a slaughter make.
Of high prowesse vpon his mortall bone,
Cast ouer boord almost euerichone,
And after that whan he came to lond,
a new battayle met hym on the strand.

Such wast was layd about hym enuiron,
of his enemies by sodein auenture,
But of Athens this mightie champion,
which might in armes most souerainely en-
made of his bone a great discōfiture. (dure
Thus in short time this prince in his estate,
On lond and water was twise laureate.

And after that he list not for to cease,
nor tabyde the space of halfe a daye,

The common profit of his towne tenecease,
toward Asie he toke the right way.
And townes, castels, that wer take away,
which appertayned to Athens of right,
He gate agein full lyke a manly knyght.

Danger al that to hym wer contrary,
or wrought agein him by rebellion,
Throughout al Asie in the lond of Darpe,
he knightly brought them to subiection,
Ageyn whose sweord halpe no protection,
And final labour was of his entent,
The common profit of his towne to augmt

And with this gloze and with this noblesse,
he to Athens repaired is agein,
And al the cite with ioy & great gladnesse,
came out to mete him vpo a wel faire plam,
And that his triumphes should opely be seme
both olde and young with full glad visages
Of theyz goddes brought out the ymages.

This was their crye & noise of all the pzees,
victorious prince whose triumphes martial
shal euer be song with laud & new encrease
Tofore the goddes which been immortall,
welcom welcom our protectour & our wall
shelde of our welfare agein al violence,
Phebus of knighthode & swerde of our de-
(fence

Thus with their gods thei made hym egal,
by vncouth prayse of Paganismes rites
Like as he had be very immortall,
and sange refreites to cōmend his merites
and tenhance his gloze thei set al their de-
And with the light of eternall fame (lytes
set vp torches to enlumine with his name.

Thus certain dayes thei halowed of entit
throughe all the cite for his high prowesse,
tyll fortune hath his eye blent;
With new fauour of worldly false witnes,
for all her suger is meyn with bitternes,
a baite of honey had out at prime face,
With mortal venime hid vnder to manact.

For in his highest climbyng by aloft,
and in thal cence of fortunes whele,
After her custome as she hath full ofte,
whan he best wend for to stond wele,

She drewe her fauour from him euery dele,
made the people vnder his obeyfaunce,
to fall in mischiefe for lacke of gouernance

Thus fro this Duke fortune gan to barie,
and his noblesse go backe and eke fayle,
whan kyng Cirus successour to Darpe,
full vnwarely fyl on him in battaile,
And gan his knightes proudly to assayle,
whan he dispurueyed, boyde of prouidence,
was ouerlayde to make resilience.

for small this Alcibiades,
at mischiefe take which he might not recure,
whā through beinglozy he was made rethles
his noble estate testabill and assure,
Lacke of foresight caused his discomfiture.
And to encrease of moze aduersitie,
Sancthed again out of his citie.

Thus defaced and clipped was his glozy.
his citie put in straunge gouernance,
By Lacedemonys after they victorie,
So that he knew no maner cheuisaunce,
to reforme his vnhappy chaunce:
Sawe for refute in yne autoz both rehearse
How that he fled vnto the kyng of Perse.

from Athens of new he was exyled,
and thirtie persons furious and vengeable,
Chase in theyr citie as Bochas hath cōpiled
the town gouerned albe they wer not able,
Wylng a maner hatefull and repzeuable,
through their rauine tēpouerish their citie,
a thyng most odious to all commontie.

A woyme of drede was bred vp in their hert
which suffered not them to liue in pees,
Among themself whan they dyd aduert,
The great prudence of Alcibiades,
How in manhode he was peetles,
Lest he would after for al theyr multitude,
knyghtly acquite their ingratitude.

And of assent to abydge his lue dayes,
they againe hym of malice haue conspyred,
After his exyle to make no delayes,
for tarcomplish h̄ thei long haue desyred,
with brennyng hate their hertes fallly fired
To murder by enuy causeles agayn right,

Alcibiades the noble worthy knyght.

Thus the time approached and the date,
terme afoze set by consellacion,
Of his parodye and his lues fate,
Which was concluded as made is mencio,
by cruell murder to his destruction.
(Alas) what pince with gold or souldyours
may him prouide gain false conspiratours:

Fortune of new gan at him enchace,
from her traimes that he ne scape might,
Dayly pursued from place ay vnto place,
throw Perse & Mede though he wer out of
til h̄ his enemies fil on h̄ by night (syght,
sleping alas) to soone they wer sped,
whan thei him fond thei b̄et him in his bed.

Thus by murder theyr purpose was atche.
alas it was to horrible a dede, (ued
So good a knight, so wel in armes p̄ueed,
So renoumed, so famous in manhead,
for to be b̄ent among the coles read,
first vnwarely in his bed ytake,
and so consumed among the smokes blake.

This was the ende of Alcibiades,
which in knighthode was most souereyne,
in warre a Lion, and a lambe in pees,
As Mars victorions his fate so did ordeyn
to fames palace he fleeth w̄ winges twain,
sōne to Minetua to speake of high prudēce
And like Mercurye by notable eloquence.

Where Bochas maketh an exclama-
cion vpon the death of Alcibiades.

The .xvi. Chapter.



fatal sustren which span
his lues threde,
So short a terme
why did ye determine,

to suffer hym b̄en among the coales rede:
ye wer to hasty to breake & but w̄ine (h̄me
his web of knighthode h̄ through h̄ world did
And cast of noblesse his beimes out so clere
Alas that euer he fyl in your daunger.

Out on Styx, and out on Atrapos,

Q. u.

That

The thirde

That haue of malice slain so good a knight
out on you thre that kepe youre self so close,
Doughters pealled of the darke night.
And thou Lettym þ queintest eke the light,
Of Alcibiades mitrour and lanterne,
to speake in knighthode how mē should the

(gouerne.

Ye slep the worthp, & wretches ye do spare,
Ther sites liueth, Hector is slain i dede (bare
your funeral smokes maketh remes now so
to race bp Cedres their braunches may not
ye pal þ laurer ye make þ fircles sece (spede
fall litle thanke in kingdomes ye deserue,
Captifs to follet, and do the worthp serue.

Alcibiades is passed into fate,
light of knighthode, light elused in þ shade
the Percas sustren to sone set his date,
of his high noblesse to make the laurer fade
Lacedemonois of his death wer glade,
funerall fyre his body hath despyd,
for high prowesse his soule shellished.

Clenoye.

As this tragedie doth my hert to blede
Hypenne quaketh of ruth and of pitie
In my wrytynge whan that I take hede,
To see the straunge fearful diuersitie,
Of all worldly vniure felicitie,
How from their sees shortly to comprehend
froward fortune doth princes down desced.

Alcibiades of corage and of manhede,
as is rehearsed in bokes ye may see,
Of gentleness and of goodlyhede,
Of semelnes, of freedom of bountie,
Of high prudence and magnanimite,
was most famous as autours hym comend
Yet fro his seat fortune made him desced.

All the people both of Perse and Mede,
whyle he gouerned Athens the cite,
sode in his danger & ga his sword to dede,
And all that wer rebell to his countrey,
He chastised them in their most cruelte.
But whā his fame gan highest bp to asced,
down fro her whele fortune made hi desced

Murder & treason id pretised frendlyhede
Outward faire chere, couert iniquitie,

Pleasaunce in speche and vnder þ falsbede
Dony shed out that pe tayed like a Bee,
Song of Sirenes to browne men in þ see
In one combined their malice can extende
to cause princes down fro their sees desced,

Noble princes that se so much and rede,
remembyng stoues of antiquite,
afoze prouidyng that treason not procede,
Be aye most dedefull in high prosperite,
let others fallng a mitrour to you be,
The turne of fortune al autours reprechend
for who sit highest is readiest to descende,

There Bochas writeth agayne the
despyes of people.

The .xvii. Chapter.

After this procelle
yf ye lyst to lere,

Like as John Bochas
maketh mencion,

That worldly folke most feruently despye,
To haue in lordship great exaltacion,
And bp to climbe in their entencion,
Of worldly wo:ship to the highest place,
all earthly treasour at once to enbrace.

The feruent flame of their greedy despyes,
In much gathzyng findeth no suffisaunce,
Their hungry etike kyndlerh so the fiers,
Of Auarice by long continuance,
That their thyrist of worldly habundance,
On Tantalus riuer abyrdeth euer in one,
Drouned in drynking and deme their partes
(none.

There mai no treasor thes droosy wel stach
þ more thei drynke þ more thei thyrist in dede
In Tagus floudes þ depper þ thei launche
the greter dynes doth in their byrles brede
The higher water an ebbe most they drede,
false indigee their heart hath so cofounded
At the fullest sees they seme their barge is
(grounded.

Thus ech man would to gret riches artem
with suffisaunce but ferre hold them contē,
who most aboudeh now rather wil coplein
for lack of good (alas) how thei be blē (spē
wher wial ther gadig, wher shal ther good be
Sum

Sum one parras thal the therof discharge
who thei most hate & spend it out at large.

Within a body but litle of stature,
coyages grow vp to great magnificence,
which vp tassende do they? busy cure,
And in their climbyng & transitoꝝ ascence
hauyng an hope of worldly apparence,
like as nothig they? puissaunce might trouble
nothyng aduertynge how fortune is double.

Some set their toye in cōquest & in warres
to embrace all earth vnder their puissaunce,
Lyke as they myght reche aboue þ? starres,
Cōbyng down heauē vnto their obeisaunce
but yf their power wet weyed in balaunce,
And counterweyed aright in they? memory
thei should wel finde þ? al is but vayne gloꝝy.

What may auayle the? their fetherbeds soft,
Mates of reines, long, large, and wyde,
dyuerse deuises oꝝ clothes chaunge: doft,
Oꝝ vicious meyny walkyng by they? syde:
Voyde of vertue, ambitious in they? pryde,
which causeth pꝛices by report of such fame
for they? mislyuyng to haue an heuy name.

And thus for lacke of vertuous diligence,
through false luxurpe & frowarde ydlenes,
And vpo? flatterers the outrageous expence
support of wrong oppressing rightwisenes:
where Lesingmongers haue an interesse,
whom to sustein whan pꝛinces do their cure
god wil not suffer þ? thei shall long endure.

Office of pꝛinces is to support right (strein
his swerd of knighthode fro wronges to re-
þ? pooze releuing toppresse the? not w? might
his old seruantes wel pꝛeued not disdayn,
his hasty rigour & his vengeaunce sodain,
let mercy temper to dome oꝝ he procede,
And god shall quite him whan he hath most
(nede.

¶ Here John Bochas speaketh again
ydlenes, rehearsyng how some mē
haue toye in one scyence, and
some in another.

¶ The .xviii. Chapter.



¶ Yne auctour Bochas
maketh a rehearsayle,
in eschewyng
off toward ydlenes,

that vnto vertue nought may more auayle,
Than diligent labour and honest busines,
and so concludyng ful plainly doth expresse
euery mā reioyseth this sētece is not glo-
to do such thyng to which he is disposed. (sed

Some haue toye by heavenly influence,
to know the course aboue celestiall.
And some of knighthode do their diligence,
to pꝛeue themself in actes martiall.
And some reioyce in their entent finall,
in eloquence some and in Philosophie,
Some aboue all to study in Poetrie.

The hardy knight is seruāt to .S. George,
meuung of planets searcheth thastronomer,
Hartes smith laboureth in his forge,
Harneys of Steele maketh tharmourer.
But the deuiler by diligent entere,
by freshe contriuing out of the old entayle,
findeth new deuises of plate & eke of maile

The labourer set wholy his pleasaunce,
to tilth of lond in tyme to sow his greine,
Tenecase his sede by pꝛetely habundaunce
And that his plough labour not in veyne.
Casting his seafōs of drought & eke of rein
and Poetes to sit in their librarie,
desyre of nature to be solitarie.

Such as mē loue, such thyng thei vndertake
fish oꝝ foule, oꝝ hunt with their houndes,
Some of wulle sondry clothes make,
by philosophers was found out first þ? greiūds
and of ai study thei set out first the boundes,
caused Poetes plainly to conclude,
out of all pꝛices to liue in solitude.

Logiciens delite in argumentes,
Philosophers in vertuous liuyng,
and Legistres folowyng their ententes,
Greatly reioyce in lucre and winning,
Whisictons trauayle for geatting,
and of Poetes this the subtil fourme,
By new inuencion thynges to transfourme
Quill. Poetes

The thirde

Poetes should eschew all pofenes,
walke by riuers and welles chryftalline,
to hie mountaines a mozon ther cours dresse
the mist desired whan Phebus first doth shine
Study in booke of morall discipline,
Nothyng couet but set their entent,
With moderate foode for to be contente.

Their chief labour is vices to reppue,
With a manner couert similitude:
And none estate with their language geue
by no rebuking of termes dull and rude,
what euer they write on vertue ay cōclude,
Appare no man in no maner wise,
This thoffices of Poetes that been wise.

Clenoue.

TO describe the disposition
Of al Poetes by olde ordinaunce,
They should be quiet fro worldly motion,
And it sequester out of their remembraunce,
fate competente vnto their sustenaunce,
Drinke wine amōg to quicken their diligēce
support of princes to find thē their dispēce.

For they that lacke land and possession,
And can of lucre no maner cheuisaunce,
their cofers void their purse turnde vp so
a want vitaille to find thē in substāce (dōū
Their corage dulleth, they faile cōstenaūce
What might best their sorowes recompēce:
support of princes to find thē their dispēce.

Lordes in earth haue domination,
Men of the church, of gold haue aboundāce,
A knight getteth good throu his high renōū
marchātes w gein great great acquaintance
but pore poets god sheld thē fro mischaūce,
May now a daies for their impotence,
for lacke of support go begge their dispence.

Dant in Itale, Virgil in Rome towne,
Petrark in florence, had al his pleasaunce,
And prudent Chaucer in Brytes Albion,
like his desyre found veriuous suffisaunce,
freedom of lordship weyed in their balance,
because they floured in wisdom & science,
support of princes found thē their dispence

Swel of freedom encline thine eares dōū
And of thy bountie geue some attendaunce
To heare of mercy my supplication,
In releuing of my heartes greuaunce,
oppressed with pouert, & can no purueyance
Saue to resort to thy magnificence,
Only by support to find me my dispence.

Howe Macheus Duke of Chartage for
oppressiō & tyranny was hewen into peces,

The .xix. Chapter.

Man Bochus had
cherished of Poetes,
They: straunge study
and solemne writings,
And they: desires of solitarie lites,
in pleasat places to make their dwellinges
Beside riuers and wholsom well springes,
which accomplished, he gan his penne auance
princes of Affrike to put in remembrance,

And while he did his busy diligence,
Their piteous fallis to put in memory,
first there came twayne vnto his presence,
They: old noblesse appalled and their gloze
Which as him sempt within a territoze,
Of affrike boundes longyng to Chartage,
Did first appete most deadly of vilage.

The tone of them was named Macheus,
Duke of Chartage, of Affrike lord and sire
His sonne also called Cartalus,
whylom chief prince and bishop eke of Tere
But Macheus which held the great empire
Of all Affrike for his pompous outrage,
exyled was for euer out of Chartage.

which caused him in hert he was not mery
but ay remembered vpon his fell banishing
gathred his people within the lond of Surr
And in the field while he lay hollyng,
Cast hym fully to make no taryng,
But in all hast of knightly fell corage,
Mauger his eunies resort vnto Chartage,

Tauenge his exile his heart was set a fye,
and his entent moze to fortifye,
He sent in hast his letters down to Tere,

To Cartagus that he should hym hye,
And bring with him al the cheualrie,
Of his citie in stele armed cene,
His fathers partie to holde vp and sustene.

But whan this bishop knew holy þ manere
And this purpose which ye haue herd deuise
he considered how that time of the yere,
Ordeined was to doe sacrifice,
After the rites of their Daimin wise,
To Hercules, which in that citie,
Above all gods had the soueraintie.

Whose feast was hold space of certein daies
Which for to halow he nedes must entend,
and by the custome make no delayes,
But that he must therto condescende.
And leuer he had his father toffende,
As in such case than through negligence,
vnto his goddes for to do offence.

Wherof his father had indignacion,
the case affecting to unkindnes,
And therof caught a great occasion,
Again his sonne of froward wilfulness.
For princes oft of furious hastines,
will pike a quarell causeles in sentence,
again folke absent though there be none of.

(fence.
And some tonges benemous of nature,
whan they perceiue that a prince is meued,
Aggregate his yre do their busy cure,
In false language to make him more greued
But there is no paynt so wel expert nor yre-
As is of tonges the hateful violence, (ued
namely whan princes list yeeue the audience.

The feast accomplished of mighty Hercules
Al innocent of double or false meaning,
This sayd bishop of wil not rechles,
Came to his father without more taryng,
Chaunged nother habite nor clothyng,
With al thenignes, and in the same wyse,
As he tofore had done sacrifice.

Anon his father made no delaye,
Without excuse it would be no bet,
of hasty rancour the self same dape,
Made hym be hanged vpon an hye gibet.
Law and iustice wer both asyde set,

And tyranny most furious and wode,
to do vengeance in trouthes place stode.

Who can or may tyrantes wel describe,
whose marciall swerdes, whet ay for begace,
ther bloody thyrt doth throw ther bettes true
their eares ay open to heare of some mischace;
their furies mirth their mortal wode place
their pale smiling, their laughter of fals h-
concludeth euer vpon some cruel dede. tread

Ther be ministers to Parcas sullen three,
to vntwine þ thredes of folkes here mortall.
And very colins through hasty crueltee,
vnto the wode furies infernall.
children to Pluto of vengeance marciall,
which for their vices (but ther betes the wele)
Shall turne in hell on Trions whele.

Thus Macheus father most unkinde,
Like such a tyrant shed out his crueltie,
As ye haue heard, and after as I fynd,
Of furious heart and of old enmitie,
By force is entred Chartage the citie,
And slough al tho in his hateful yre.
that hym afoze had cryed into Tere.

no yought after wyll and nothing after right
gan rob and spoyle þ noble famous towne,
which made him hated in the peoples sight
for his outrage and great extorcion,
Hauyng no ioye nor consolation,
Within his heart plainly nor gladnes.
Saue like a tyrant the people to oppresse.

The people of Chartage soze ga to complein
vpon their mischief and desolation,
And Bochas wyrteth rehearsyng in certain
Till is a stepmother of wit and of reason.
And where that princes haue dominacion,
and by false pillage to riches climbe vp fast
trust right wel their lordship may not laste.

The great power of worldly excellence,
nor their accroching of temporall riches,
whā ther be tyrantes may stōd in no defence
And froward wyll ruleth theyr byzynes.
For what is lordship plainly to expresse,
In this world here, if it be deserued:
loue of þ people whan they be wel geturned

for

The thirde

For tyranny and false oppression
causeth princes to stond in great hatredte,
And what is worth their dominacion
without loue, let proue it at a nede,
men for a time may suffer them and drede.
But whan that drede constrained is & gone
than is a prince but a man alone.

Se an example of Macheus of Chartage
for al his castels and towres made of stones
for his oppression vengeaunce and outrage
þ people of Affrike rose on him al at ones,
and hugh asonder his flesh & eke his bones
cast them plainly on him thet wer so wode,
vnto their goddes to offer by his blode.

The people dempt of mortall crueltie,
there was none offrig so pleasāt nor coue-
vnto their gods to plesē their deitie (nable
As bloud of tirantes which þ be vengeable
Thus cruel princes make þ people vntable
of necessite which ought to be complayned
to wʒke their wʒges þ thet be cōstrained.

Loe here the end of Macheus the tyrant,
which doth to princes ful well exemplifye,
To god aboue how it is not pleasaunt,
Thein to delite in no such robberye,
nor yll the people by no false tyrannye,
For for no tales be hasty of vengeaunce,
for all suche thing to god is displeaunce.

¶ Cenuoye.

Red and considred this sayd tragedy,
Sheweth to princes a mirrour ful notable
How thet their rigour shal tempere & modifye
or thet procede for to be vengeable.
For in a prince it is right commendable,
Rancour of heart, of chere, and of corage,
for to deferre tyll that thet yre asswage.

Their hasty yre, their sodayn melancolye,
their colerik fumes, their fury vntreina-
their vunqueint fires w flame of tirāny (ble
Their fleting etik of hate incomparable.
Like beestiall Tigres, like Lions vntretable
Ne wyl not suffer their infernal rage,
deferre their domes tyll thet yre asswage.

The royal Lion of mortal gentrie,
among beastes of force incomparable,
Proueth not his power nor his regallie,
gein bestes prostrate which be not defēable.
And mightie princes shoud in case sēblable
for innocentes take mercy in moʒgage,
Respyting rigour till thet yre asswage.


The sparckle of vēgeace is quicked in partie
by windes fourē fel, and abhominable,
blast of detraction, and blast of flatterie,
blast of fals rouners that forge many fable
& blast of bribours most vicious & culpable
w smoke flāunders & felonous fals visage
causeth in princes thet yre maye neuer as-
(swage.

For which let princes of noble pollicie,
beware of tonges double and decepuable,
which with their venom infect ech cōpany,
They poynant porson is so penetrable,
to folke absent it is mischeuable,
So depe fretteth their serpentine langage
causyng in princes thet yre may neuer as-
(swage.

Noble princes let vertue magnifye,
your high estates to make you merciable,
for moʒall Seneck doth clerely spēcifye,
the throne of princes by clemence is made
vēgeaunce delayed to god is agreable (nable
And hasty rigour doth outrageous damage
whan hūble requestes your yre may not as-
(swage.

¶ How the substance of the hoost of Amilco
Duke of Chartage going to cōquere Ci-
cile died of pestilēce, & after, himself slau.

¶ The .xx. Chapter.

fter these noble
mightie princes twine,
Next in order
with pale and dead visage,
tofore John Bochas Amilco gan complain
the vnhappy fall of his fatall passage,
whan he was sent by autoꝛitie of Chartage
To conquire through his mighty puissaunt
the lond of Cicile vnto their obeysaunce.

They of Chartage had an opinion,
that it was lesul after their entent,
without

without title of ryght or of reason,
Their territories and boundes taugment,
And for that cause Amleco they sent,
The mighty Duke their noblesse tauaunce
which of Chartage had whole þ gouernace

And for he must passe by the see,
toward Cicile this noble worthy knight,
With hym he led a full great armpe,
chole out of Chartage in stele armed byght
their fone to cōquere of very force & might
But fortune gan at hym so disdayne,
That to his purpose he neuer might attain

Ground and gnyning of his destruction,
to be remembred Mostly in sentence,
There fill of the ayre a great corruption,
Which that caused a full great pestilence,
among his meyny by vnrware violence,
And sodain mischief that is vpon him fall,
He lost almost his worthy knightes all.

Algh al his people was slain in that mozein
that with a few be left of his meyny.
Infortunate he turned is ageyne,
Home to Chartage, and they of the citie,
All causeles of hasty crueltrie,
Hath slain this Duke as Bochas doth com-
Loe who may trust fortune any while. (pile

Howe Hannon Duke of Chartage
was dismembred.

The. xxi. Chapter.

After whose death
anon there gan succede.
A mighty Duke
that called was Hannon,
Whiche purposed for to chaunge in dede,
his name of Duke by false ambition,
And to be called throughtout þ mighty toun
king of Chartage, and therupon of pride.
To find out wayes he felly gan prouide.

He was not content a Duke men should hi
but of Chartage for to be named king (cal
And like his purpose that it should fall,
fro day to daye the meanes compassyng,

How he might fulfyll this vncouth thyng,
for to be crownded and reigne in that londe
And at the last this meane waye he londe,

He had a doughter, yong and tender of age,
Which of the people stode in great fauour,
And he him cast to geue her in mariage,
To a yong knyght, sonne to a Senatour,
Which in the citie was a gouernour.
And that his purpose might be atteyned,
day of the mariage and time was ordeined.

And in his palace chief and principal,
This sayd Duke let make his ordinaunce,
To hold a feast full solemne and royal,
And with great coites made his purueyance
Of sondry deinties which that in substaunce
Wer necessary in all maner thyng,
Unto the feast of a worthy king.

He gaue in charge vnto his purue yours,
That all wer redy agayne a certayne daye,
And to his feast came all the Senatours,
dwellyng in Chartage, there durste no man
of his purpose to make no delay (lay nay
Though his fraude was not apperceined,
he cast that dare þ some should be deceined.

He conceiued in his inward entent,
He to be king and reigne in Chartage,
The Senatours would neuer assent,
to change their custome nor their old vlage
He durst therof vtter no language,
Kept him secrete without noyse or soun,
And fully cast hym to procede by treason.

The next way he knew no better rede,
To his desyre than plainly to ordene,
that of Chartage the Senatours wer ded
Than wer he likely his purpose to atteyne,
for to be crownded Lord and seueraine,
So accomplish his lust in all thyng.
And in Chartage to reigne as lord & king.

For if the Senate wer vterly destroyed,
He should find no maner resistance,
Wherby his purpose should be enloyed,
Nor dare saye nay to his magnificence.
For in the pozayle there was no defence,
And at this feast he cast him to procede,

The thirde

All his entent to conclude in dede.

His officers he made to be swozne,
to helpe destroy falsly by popson,
The senatours of whom I spake toforene,
and that their vitayle and deintes in foisō,
And eke they wyues for short conclusion,
shoud with venim be intoricate,
Thzough all the palace & spare none estate.

These officers had a conscience,
for to accomplissh so horrible a thyng,
And secretly vnder great prouidence,
to the senate therof they gaue warnyng,
and whan thei knew this mortal cōpassing
of Duke Hannon to eschewen al affray.
Thei put of prudence the wedding in delay.

Wherof this Duke gan haue suspencion,
and this matter fyl in a maner drede,
Thought he would by some collusion,
ageyn Chartage moze mortally procede.
And gan call to help hym at his nede,
of Mauritayne a kyng of great renoun,
With hym by force to fall vpon the town.

Made hym promes to his auantage,
for to make free distribution,
of the riches, treasours and pillages,
Which that he might fynd in the towne,
For viter fyne of hys entencion,
was to destroye of wylfull crueltie,
the famous Chartage, the mighty strōg citie

Of all the thralles in the towne dwellyng,
and suche as wer bozne of lowe linage,
to strength his partie this was his working
He made them all by mortall fell outrage,
within the mightie castel of Chartage,
To kepe them close of malice and enuie,
agein the citie hymself to fortispe.

But all for nought the mightie senatours,
therof ware and of high prudence,
geyne his malice and al his false robbours,
thei made the strong, & through their prou-
In especiall to ordeyne a defence: (dence,
first on theyr partie to let the commyng,
Of Mauritayne the strong cruell kyng,

And of assent they lyst not delay,
but rose at once and by great ordinaunce,
Their false Duke to vanquish and outtrap,
hym & his cherles they brought to vtterance
fyll vpon hym with a great puissance,
And finally proceeding of reason,
this was his dome by aulse of al the towne.

First of thys Duke as it is remembred,
he was dispoyled, his doublet eke unlaced,
ioynt fro ioynt, hewen and dismembred,
And from his head his eyen out araced,
And right as he had afore compassed,
To haue destroyed his own mightie towne
as ye haue heard he receiued his guerdon.

¶ Lenuoye.

This tragedy both piteously complayne,
And maketh a maner lamentacion,
of these mightie riche princes twayne,
Slaine in Chartage as made is mencion,
causeles the tone, saue by thorcaston,
That pestilence in his froward biage,
slough al his people & wer bozn in Cartage

Fortune also gan frowardly disdayne,
agein this ryche mightie Duke Hannon,
whan he of malice gan mortally ordayne,
The Senatours to murder of his towne,
at his feast by craft of false popson.
As ye haue heard rehearsed his outrage,
He was ageinward dismembred in Chartage

Who doth vengeāce vengeāce shal attain
in hygh estate without exception:
And who of pitie vengeaunce doth restrain
he shall of mercy receiue the guerdon,
for ryght requirerh of trowth and reason,
cruell princes shall haue for theyr wage,
deth like this Duke dismembred in Chartage

Noble princes do your best payne,
for to preserue fro rebellion,
the comon people which stond in no certain
With euery winde turnyng bpsodowne,
After fortune they chaunge affection,
turnyng their hertes w triss oz glad bisage
like as the people did wholom in Chartage.

¶ The

The autout agayn couetous peoble.

Nature that is content
with litle thyng,
The wise ware,
the circumspect goddesse,
which vnder god in heauen aboue reigning
The world to gouerne is called the mpyresse
mother of riches the first founderesse,
which searched out by her artificers,
the straunge treasours hid in the miners.

This noble Lady, this pices most famous
knowyng of man the vncouth condicions,
Saw by experience riches wet noyous
in hym te clypse the disposicions.
And conuey his inclinacons,
by a wroing way vertue to set a side,
How couetous was a ful perdlous guide.

for avarice to al vertues contraye,
the gredy woyme, the serpēt vntancheable
Man to betray with promyses debonayze
at pyme face sore and a greable, (ble
taught him of nature by craft most deceua-
shrow subtil serching as it wet for p nones,
first out of earth to delue pzetious stons.

Of rich mines thei serche out the entres
to find out metals for worldly auantages
contrived shippes with their broad sayles,
by diuers sees to make theyr passages,
And couetise ordeined fyst viages,
caused princes to ride in londes farre,
ethe agein other for to gimne a warre,

Of avarise gan first these robberies,
swapte of bygantes and all extort pillages,
Further slaughter and couert byberies,
Of old contrived furious fell damages,
wrought and acheued in all maner ages,
Now in these daies let set it at a pise,
false couetise caused all such mischiefe.

She was first roote of false extortion,
to spoyle the temple mother of raime,
And sterer by first of oppression,
to take by force this was her doctrine.
And as mine autout doth plainly determine
and concludeth in ful piteous wise,
Roote of al euil is false couetise.

She is eke nyse of conterke and strife,
maistres of murder and wilful violence,
made men to seoparde body, good, and life,
Caused ddition and disobedience,
grutching of cōmōs wdraught of reuerēce
By rigorous constraint sodayn rebellions,
tumout in realmes vniware subuersions.

This froward dragon ful of hydropie,
whose setting etik there mai no plentie fede
To staunche his thyrst there is no remedye,
the more he drinketh, y more he hath ay nede
and y more treasour y more he stat in drede
with Cantals though he swim in y floodes,
in Midas welth pleineth for lack of goodes

This woym eke causeth y mē in their riches
Haue drede of theues a night in their wal-
a if thei heare, on cofer, bed, or presse (king
Cat, Rat, or Mous, or any woyme meuyng
He weneth anon, within hymself demyng,
that there were come with great apparayle,
some vncouth pillour his treasour to assail

The woful soule stondesth euer in drede,
and ay abyde in labour and trauayle,
And of the goodes whiche he doth possede,
falleth in despaye lest thei would him fade
Twene hope and drede there is such batail
through intermining ethe other to confound
to be most gredy whan they most habound.

Hope vnaassured with drede desespayed,
meting in heartes make a mortall warre,
whan hope presumeth to drede he is apayed
a like a cowarde maketh hym stand asarte,
dull of his chere as is a cloudy starre,
which dareth not shew y light of his treasor
But euer to encrease set wholy his laboz.

He dare not touche thyng he loucht most
his cofers close he shettes vnder key,
Though he hath much he make the reof no
lest for his tresor mē would hi warrey (bost
Pleynerth for nede lyke as he would deye,
feineth false pouert to spate his dispence,
Oppressing plentie with froward indigēce

And though his chestes heped be with gold,
with yron barters fast shet and closed:

False

The thirde

False scarlitte gouerneih his householde,
That by none exceſſe he is not vndiſpoſed
his indigent hert ſo ſtreitly is enoſed,
to Erebus hepye and yet wel worſe in dede
In greateſt riches to complaine vpon nede

This Erebus hath (of prynces) not of ſtone,
for auariſe built a foule great citie,
Where as the whele turneth of Ixion,
vnder the boundes of Cheſiphone,
where Siſiphus may neuer a day goe free,
But with his ſtone continually trauayleth,
and the more buſy, his labour leaſt auayleth.

Thus auariſe to vertue moſt contrarie,
found among vices full contagious,
Euer buſy the reſtleſe ſtone to carie,
Now by now down with wery Siſiphus,
Whole endles labor braideth on Theſeus,
which held the bzidel of fruitles buſineſs,
condemned in hell to liue in Idlenes.

Of couetiſe the cruell martner,
is called Charon, which with Phlegonte,
By many a ſtraite, and many fell daunger,
faileth in the floudes of furious Acheronte
vnder that darked and cloudy Orizonte,
where auariſe chees whilom niggardſhip,
for treaſure his coffers for to kepe.

fiſt to declare the labour in gathering,
of couetous men, as it is in dede,
And counterpeiſe how their ſtreite keeping,
is euer meint with importable dze,de,
Sorrow at departing for their moztal mede
which may be called of trowth and equite,
of Cerberus the waker heades thre.

The fiſte head is vniſtauncheable deſyre,
of worldly goodes great riches to attaine,
the more encrease the whoter is the fier.
The ſecond head is the dzedfull payn,
which in keeping his heart doth conſtreine.
vniware departing that ſodeinly doth fal,
Is the thirde head that greuerh moſt of all.

Thys waker worme þ bereth theſe hedes
is called the worme of gredy couetiſe, (the
whole buſy conſtreint, reſtleſe perplexitee,
Troubleth the ſoule in full furious wyſe,

Which fro ward monſter plainly to deuiſe,
braydeth on Hydra, of whom Poetes ſeyn,
One head cut of, there groweth thre again,

Euer at the tayle of plentie and richeſſe,
of cuſtome foloweth grutchyng and enuy,
for he that hath of treaſour great richeſſe,
Is ſeeld glad, as for his partie.
Thus both twaine ſtand in teopardie,
the riche with plentie hold him not appayed
And the neddy with pouert is aſtrayed.

And yet in pouert is full great ſikernes,
which is a treaſour that no man wyl aſſade
Is mine autour Bochas bereth wiſures,
Amiclas among the poſaple,
liued in peace ſure from all battaſle,
Held him content w ſuch as god hym ſent,
than riche wet armed & to the werre wēt,

Electuous pouert ſtādeth euer in ſiker caas
to watche his houſe he hath but litle nede,
But proud Pompey aſſeged in duras,
for feare of Julius ſtode in great dze,de.
But people rude herof take none hede,
ſuch as reioyce them for to ſhede blood,
In ſtraunge wettes wrongly to great good.

Stories old full wel reherſe cunne,
diuers ſtudies of folke here moztall:
fiſt how Diogenes was cōtent in his tūne
In which he made his lodgyng pryncipall,
and ſawe the courſe aboue celeftiall:
Lived gladder among Philoſophers,
thā kyng Creſus with al his ſtuffed coffers

And if men would vnto mind call,
the great miſchiefes folowing in habūdace
and thinke alſo how Sardanapall,
for al his treaſour came vnto miſchance,
and how Philoſidius, poreſt in ſubſtance,
Had but a garden full of lekes grene,
and right nought els himſelf to ſuſtene.

This Philoſopher was euer glad and light
there was no watch made about his towpes.
full ſurely ſlept he al the long nyght,
hauing no dze,de of theues ne robbours.
In ſomer walkyng amōg the grene flours,
and in colde winter full merely and oft,

On dyce strawe he lay and slept ful soft.

Cinnatus a poore labourer,
Made dyches to geat his sustenance,
without gutching euer glad of chere,
Both in his port and in hys countenance,
Dempt he had as much suffisaunce,
to his pleasure, as Cresus kyng of Lyde,
Content with little nature was his gyde.

This poore man in his pouerte assured,
with little foode and clothes but a few:
Had hertes ease, & glad some peace recured:
It liked him not ouer his head to hewe,
which thing coueured clerely doth vs shewe,
that ioyous pouert conueyed with gladnes,
Gutching auoyded surmounteth al riches.

And if that folke could consider aright,
their pitous lighes, their thoughtful bismes
their woful labors, their litle slepe anight,
which they endure for worldly false riches:
and of thabiding the dyedeful sikernes,
which thing peyled and called to memoire,
al earthy power is double and transitoire.

And by stories which that been credible,
to proue theyr power is not abyding,
But at a poynt flyding and fallible,
Whilom Masinissa of Numidy kyng,
that was so mighty by record of wytyng,
for feare of Siphax onely his life to saue,
fled into mountayns & hyd hym in a caue.

And there he fond but ful small vittayle,
constrayned narowe of indigence and nede
whā other deinties in mischif gan him faile
he gadred rootes and eate them in his dyede.
The proud Ferres kyng of Persie & Medie,
drāk blud & water to staich his greddy thirst
Dyede & trauayle gaue hym so great a lust.

Yet some men would say of auenture,
they wer compelled agayn theyr voluntee,
these kinges twain such mischief to endure
Maugre theyr will of necessitee.
for casuel chaunce rafe them theyr libertee
so that the rigour of thys sodayn rage,
Came in by constraynt and of no corage,

But for al that folke in theyr pouertee,
On great meates that themself fede,
been also strong, as whole and fayne to see,
And also lusty prieued at a nede,
bryght of limes their tozneys for to spede.
As long liued the cause to expresse,
Is onely thys, they doe none excess.

To poore men the best medecyne,
Is due labour with moderate abstinence:
good ayre in felde whā shebs list to mine
boyding darke mules that cause pestilence
of heauy stomake they fele no violence.
They not entych the Lieches nor Poteraries
themselfe to saue with vncouth leetwaries.

But folkes ryche werken the contrary,
which in them causeth maladies strong:
for theyr dyete euery day they vary,
with dyuerse meates, & theyr littyng long.
And with al thys theyr appetyes wrong,
take out of tyme which they may not endure,
whiche by custome oppresseth theyr nature.

And thus myne autour shortly to deuyse,
seeth how glad pouert stat most in sikernes
and of al euyl he seeth how couetyse
Is roote & ground with false extort riches,
rout annexed engendring long sickenes.
Theron concluding how moderate dyete,
set body and soule in moderate quiete.

How Euagoras kyng of Cypre was
by Artaxerres outrayed and putte
from hys kyngdome.

The. xxi. Chapter.

In owyng in ordre the processe of
Bochas,
As he remembreth next in hys
wytyng:

To hym appeared, rehersyng thus the caas,
Euagoras that was of Cypre kyng,
Hys eyen darked by manifold wepyng,
Because he had lost that ryche lond,
which he tofozn had conquered w his hond

Thys lond of Cypre, as made is mencion,
of dyuers metalles is passyngly habound,

R. i.

Path

The thynde

Hath of riches great plentie and foyson.
And of his Scite lyke as it is found,
It standeth far south w many hilles round
And hath also many commodities,
within hys boundes of townes and Cities.

Touchyng thys Cypre, I can no more sey,
Of which lond Cuagozas was kyng,
Tyll he gan proudly for to warrey,
With Lacedemonois, they party susteyning
Sayn Artaxerxes, and at they meting,
the said Cuagozas was brought to vittrance
put fro his kingdom & from al gouernance.

CHow Theo kyng of Egypte by Ar-
taxerxes was driuen fro his king-
dom, and fled into Araby.

The. xxiij. Chapter.

NExt Cuagozas came the king Theo,
Of all Egypt long tyme possessour,
And to John Bochas he gan declare
hys wo.
How fortune did her froward labour,
and fro him drough her frendship & fauour.
And sodeinly through her iniquitie,
She kest this king down from his royal se

She lyst her malysse from him not differre,
ne would not suffer hym for to liue in pees
But caused hym to gyn a froward warre,
Agern the sayd myghty Artaxerxes,
wening therby to haue had great entrease:
Gadred hys shippes & made a great armye,
In his entent to haue met hym on the sea.

To Lacedemonoys he was fauourable,
Sent them vessels stuffed with vittayle,
Dempt of pryde that hymself was hable,
with Artaxerxes to hold a battayle.
But hasty trust doth fooles often fayle:
for thys Theo was after anon right,
Driuen out of Egypt and yput to flyght.

Artaxerxes pursued hym so soze,
Colore hys face he durst not appeare,
fled into Araby, mine autoz sayth no more,
banished from Egypt, dedly of face & chere.
And of hys fate whoso list to lere,

He was depriued from kingly dygnitee,
And by fortune cast from his royal see.

CHow Amintas of Macedoyn king, had
by Euridice his wyfe, Alexander
Perdicas, & Philip, and how the
first two wer slayne.

The. xxiiii. Chapter.



And among other they fates
compleynyng,
Through fortunes dzedefull
violence:

There came Amintas of Macedoyn kyng,
And to John Bochas shewed his sentence
And to declare his magnificence,
To Alexander graundfather in hys lyfe,
Hauing foure chyldre by Euridice his wyfe.

The fyrr of them was Alexander called,
And Perdicas named the second.
The third Philip, in Macedoyn stilled,
Kyng of Grece like as it is found,
which in riches greatly dyd abound.
And was eke father, this noble warrior,
to great Alexander the mighty conquerour,

And o: mine autoz further doth procede,
He maketh a maner of digression,
From his matter, like as ye may rede,
And gynneth in order a discription,
Of Macedoyn the famous region,
Among Grekes wyrteth in especiall,
Of leuen prouinces it is the principall.

And so proceding, he sayth how þ countre,
Stretcheth his bouides about him enuron
toward the sea which called is Egee,
furth by Achara toward Septemtrion,
And to Bessene westward it goeth down,
And who that can by craft the coastes call,
To Dalmatia the name therof doth last.

In Macedoyn he doth also bs lere,
Of Olympus standeth the great mountaine
And in that kingdom is many gret minere,
Of gold and siluer like as bokes seyne,
And on that hill is nother wynd ne reyn.
For thilke mountayn so hye doth atteyn.

That

That it may nother blowe theron nor reyn.

The kyng Amintas of whō I spake tofore
Had in Grece many great batayle:
Olympiens in Macedoyn bozne,
and Illiriens together he dyd assaile,
through his wisdom he dyd alway preuaile.
but in his enemies while he stode most in strife
hys death was shapen by Euridice his wife

Myne auctor Bochas of her doth despyne,
She ymagined hys destruction,
Because she had had another concubyne
On whom she set al her affection,
Daylet and tyme to his confusion,
fully ordeyned at a mariage,
he to be slayne by one of his image.

He had a daughter called Eurione,
which prudently espyed the manere
Of Euridice, and secretly alone,
Goeth to the king, and told hym al yfere.
And as the story in order telleth here,
Though she sayled that day of her empyre
She thought fulfyl it in an other wyse.

This is to meane of her iniquitie,
Of her fraude and false ymagynge:
He was in cause through her contrariouste,
Of the destruction of the myghty kyng.
for the conclusion of her false werkynge,
was to haue slayn the kyng and al his lyne,
She to haue reygned with her concubine.

But whan she sawe she myght not atcheue,
Her furious purpose by none auenture,
her benemous malice byd her lord to preue
On other parties she dyd her busynesse,
Enmities and myschiewes to procure,
Agayn the kyng by mortal fell assaies,
with sorow & trouble for to shorthe his dayes.

Right and day his lyfe stode euer in drede
hym to betraie she cast out hoke and lyne,
And who is he that can or may take hede,
freely tescap, reschew or declyne,
Malice of women whan they be serpentine.
Se an example of this queene Euridice,
Woode of al vertue, and full of euery byce.

Alas no pryncce can be ware by other,
to bydle the nobleste in reynes of reason
Such as comit (alas) both myn and rother,
Unto Syrenes to rowe them vp and down,
througheout Caribdis to the destruction,
by craft of Circes alas they be made nyce,
Blynd to remembere vpon this Euridice.

(Drede

which made Amintas to lye in sorow and
to rest in peace suffred him to haue no space
In thought & trouble his lyfe he ga to lede
til by long processe death him gan manace.
Yet or he dyed fortune gaue hym grace,
Hys eldest sonne by wisdom to ordeyn,
Called Alexaunder hys crowne to atteyne.

Thus Alexaunder was hys successour,
for Illirians gan the rancour lete,
Agayns hym: for he with great labour,
By the suffrance came to hys royall sete.
And for to set hys realme in ful quiete,
first with Thebes the myghty strong toun,
prouyded a peace of hys discrecion.

And for to auoyde al ambiguitie,
Of olde debates, and of olde outrage,
first he sent into that strong citie,
Hys brother Philip yong and tender of age
On peace assured to lye there for hostage,
And in that citie the story beareth witnes,
He gan to growe vnto full hygh nobleste.

He was committed vnto the disciplyne,
Of a great Duke called Spaminondon,
which to al vertue hys youth made tenclyne
for of this Duke Justine maketh mention
By a maner recommendacion,
Tofore nor after as by hys auyse,
was neuer no pryncce more excellent of pryce

first he comendeth hys vertuous courage,
His hygh nobleste, his knyghtly excellence,
And by descent he bozne of high linage,
And in two thynges concludeth his sentence,
Seith that he was of most magnificence,
Egall to Mars by famous chualtry,
And sonne to Phebus through hys philosophy

(phis

And Bochas here doth his stile auance,
ful notably with excellent language:

R. II.

And

The thynde

And seith no treasure atteyneth in substance
To thilke riches auoyding al outrage:
As whan there is by bond of mariage,
Knott by a knot atwene excellence,
Of famous knightthod, & of dame prudence.

This knot auayleth moze thā gold in cofre
And is moze glorioz perpetually to abyde:
A mighty prince to be a philosopher,
Which can by prudence all bytes set asyde.
For whan to manhod prouidence is gyde,
And vertuous force is captayn in the werre
Let men wel trust that party may not erre.

This Epaminondas of knightthod susteynoz
Carbuncle of vertue as bokes tel conne:
Of gentle maners called the famous flour
And of high noblesse a very worldly sonne.
Whose knightly triumphes be so hye by tūne
To Martes paleys with the blessed souns,
Of famous trumpets & golden clarions.

For he was called the byght clere myrroure,
Of rightful quarels the partye to suidene,
Of extort wronges most iust reformatour,
A yegal Judge of entent most clene,
Which neuer coude nothing but trowth mene
wound of custome for hate nor allyaunce,
On nother partye declpne the balaunce.

And to commend his vertuous prowesse,
His proued tryumphes, hys magnanimitie,
Hys marciall actes, hys knyghtly businesse,
In the gearting of many a strong Citie,
And all his labour was for the commontie,
Which to augment he would neuer cease
such ioy he had þ commons good tencteece

This was also hys vfaunce euer moze,
What euer he gate to part it in largesse.
Of gold nor coyne he set but litle store,
For al his heart was set on gentlenes,
By manly fredome, and playnly to expresse
He spared no good it shewed wel in dede,
his true seruantes to helpe thē in their neede

He kept not in coffers his treasure,
Of his nature he was so liberal,
For to relieue eche manly souldreour,
Suche as were pried in actes martial.

And for to hold his feast funeral,
After his death his story maketh mynd,
through fre departing there left no gold be,
(hynd,

All his offices and famous dignities,
And great empyres in hys tyme wrought,
encreased franchises throu Grece in his cities
with liberties by his prudence out fought,
for comon profit & for himself right nought
in great augmenting of strange territories
All this came in by meane of his victories.

And among al his knightly excellences,
by dyuers auctours vnto mynd is brought,
How al his lyfe he studied in sciences,
And vpon cunning set wholy hys thought
by māly prowesse of deth he rought nought,
That was shewed as it is wel found,
the day when he receued his deathes wound.

He was home borne vnto his paulion,
Al his armure with blud steyned read,
And on a couche by his men layd down,
And gan abrayde as he lay halfe dead:
Syzs (quod he,) of one thyng take hede,
Hath any enemy this day in the field,
whan I was wounded taken by my shielder

And whan his knyghtes had tolde hym nay,
By a maner of knightly reioysing:
He thē commaunded without moze delay,
To his presence that they should it bring,
And therupon ful pitecouly lokyng,
ful like a knight and with mortal chere,
He kissed it, and sayd as ye shal heare.

Thou wer my felowe in armes & my broder,
That neuer wouldest my fellowship forsake
sure & abiding, there was not such an other
In euery tourney that I did undertake,
To me welcome, & end I must now make,
After my death my soule shal haue pleasure
thee to be kept yet for a remembraunce.

Afore hys death it is put in mynd,
The same houre it came to hys memory,
To enquite he left not behynde,
Haue we (quod he) this day had victory?
O in the field who hath the palme of glory?
His knyghtes he prayed þ day he should dey
The

The plaine trowth that they would him seye

And they him tolde plainly al the case,
How his partie had wōne þ field of might,
And with that word he so reioised was,
That he his spite yeld anone bynight.
And so he dyed like a worthy knight,
in whō is shewēd what auaileth in sentēce,
Noblesse of knightthod ioyned w prudēce

And by the meane of his wise doctrine,
Philip that laye with him in hostage,
Gan encrease in knightly discipline,
Wex in vertue right as he wex in age:
whose brother was by furious outrage
Called Alexander as made is mention,
slaine by his mother by couert false treasō

After whose death Perdicas in dede,
A yonger brother, the story doth deuise,
to the crowne gan lineally succede.
A none slaine after in ful cruel wyse.
Such false murdre euery mā should agrife
as ye haue heard first of Amintas,
Of Alexander and of king Perdicas.

Howe the proude tyzant Aman was
hanged, and the innocent Har-
docheus preserued.

¶ The. xxv. Chapter.

He horrible fall furious
for to rede,
That foloweth after of
the great Aman.

A ful false tyzant found in thought & dede
and was of birth an Assirian.
which as the Bible ful wel rehearce can,
was chief master as mē may there cōcerne,
With Assuerus hys people to gouerne.

He was exalted hie in pryde,
to goddes people most contrarious,
Hys hate ful bentim he list not for to hyde,
but lyke a tyzant most malitious.
Of wilful rancour fel and dispiteous,
fully disposed & coude him not withdraue
to destroy the Jewes and their lawe.

To his entent he gate auctoryte
By his subtil false compassing,
Sent out letters into eche countre,
Throughout al Perse by bidding of þ king
that high & lowe within that lond dwelling
No wight except that people al aboute,
Should vnto Aman obeye, knele and loute.

This was the bidding of king Assuerus,
whā quene Vasthi was bōrde for her pryde,
And hester chosen a mayden most entere,
was brought to courte with þ king to abide
which had in youth for to be her guide,
A worthy Jewe called Hardoche,
within Susys a large faire Cyte.

By whose counsaile euery thing she wrought
Passyng fayre and of great mekenesse,
and whan þ Enukes to þ king her brought
She was accepted for her great fairnesse
Vnto his grace, her story bereth witnesse;
And there cheryshed in especial,
Aboue al the maidens in the court royal.

And of al Perse was she crowned quene,
a pees cōmaunded throug al tho regions,
During the feast that men might sene,
the kinges nobley in cites and in townes.
And of this feast the rich royal sounes,
Came to the cares of simple Hardoche,
which came with others the maner for to se

Before the paleis as he did abyde
with other Jewes in his compaignye,
Of hap as he best his eare aside,
He of two porters the counsaile did espie.
Howe they them cast by false conspiracie,
To slea the king some day of that pere,
like their entent whan they fond best leiser

Whan Hardocheus prudently gan fele,
the secret malice of their compassing,
Of compassion he would it not concele,
But made hester discure it to the king.
wherof conuict they were led to þ hanginge
As me semeth a competent guerdon.
For al that falsely I imagine such treason.

By which meane the said Hardochee,
was well accepted to king Assuerus,

The thynde

Likely also to stand at libertee
Oute of the malice and fell daungere,
Of cursed Aman which make him no there
But compassed in ful fel manere,
Him to destroye and Jewes al Jhere.

This Mardocheus the Byble tel can,
Withdrough him self to doe reuerence,
Unto this tyraunt y fro ward prync Aman
Like as the statute cōmaunded in sentēce.
Which thing tauenge by hasty violence,
This Aman made of hatred to be set,
Afore the paleys a mighty strong gybet.

But who that cast him for to do vengeaūce
and innocentes for to oppresse with might,
By wilfull malice ragregge their greuaūce
As god were blind and had of thē no sight.
But at the last he wil of very right,
Punishe the proud for furious violence,
The poze supporting for their long pacifce

As Mardocheus for innocent liuing,
by meane of Hester and her gret mekenes
Accepted was to Afluere the king,
the lawe of Jewes set in more surenes
Fro ward Aman for hys cursed acēte
Vengeable o' pūde the Bible ye may see,
was hight enhaūged vpon a galowe tree.

Mardocheus of prudence and reason,
The furious daungere of Aman set aside,
Preserued his peple fro distruction,
The tyraunt hanged for his froward pryde.
Thus can the lord his iudgemētes deuide
whan he seeth tyme most mighty & puissant
Support the simple and punishe the tyraūt

Of the two brethē Artaxerxes and Ci-
tus: and howe Artaxerxes slough his
chilozen and concubines, and
howe they ended.

The .xxvi. Chapter.

After the fal of Aman doutles,
whan he best wende
haue reigned in hys flours,
Ofore John Bochas came
Artaxerxes,

Most renoumed his tyme of conquerours
Which gā declare his fodein Harpe Hours
with al the percelles of hys mortall peyne,
which that fortune ageine him gan ordeine

Thys Artaxerxes as put is in memoire
al other princes excelled in richesse,
which in his chayre famous of worldly glory
and in his throne of worldly high noblesse
Sate in his tyme the story beareth witnesse
Hys exalted that was of any king,
That he should fall, was it not an vncouth
(thyng)

kinges he had vnder his obeysaūce,
an hundred prouinces, twenty & eke seven
tonne vnto Darye prync of most puissaūce,
Hys fame dyed more than fiery leuen.
None so mighty vnder the sterred heuen,
accōpted was that tyme in warre and pees
as was thys king called Artaxerxes.

He had a brother that named was Citus,
Out of one stock came their both lynes,
But Artaxerxes the story telleth thus,
was lord of greynes, of oyle and of wines,
And had also by diuers concubines,
an hundred chilozen like as it is tolde,
And fiftene ouer tofore o' he w. f. olde.

Of both brethē the power last farte,
during their tyme stode in ful high estate,
yet atwene thē there was ful mortal warre
Agein nature an vnkindly debate.
For thilke warres be most infortunat,
whā bloud in bloud let no man deme other
List warrey as brother agein brother.

And finall cause why this warre gan,
atwene these brethē, as made is mencid
Throughe which debate there died many a
The ground of al and first occasion, (man
was only this for succession,
after king Dary reignig in Pers & Mede
which of them tweine should next succede.

But Artaxerxes by a maner prouidence,
Put his brother priuely in prison,
that he ne should make no defence,
Nor gadre peple to his distruction.
This yong Citus as made is mencion,

¶

Was fast stocked, and eke as it is tolde,
that his lockes and fetters were of golde.

And though it be not remēbred in Bochas,
Howe that Cyrus escaped fro prison,
Yet also sone as he deliuered was,
through Persie and Medie riding bp & down
Saued people of entencion,
through olde hatred his brother to assaile;
The field assigned they met in bataile.

Where Cyrus proudly put him self in pres
To shewe his manhode in especial,
sought his brother called Artaxerxes,
And gaue to him a wound ful mortall,
without frendship or fauour fraternal.
That Artaxerxes his wound gan so ake,
constrained was the field to forsake.

And Cyrus than furious as Lion,
his aduersaries gan mortally to wake
But false fortune ful of colusion,
vnder feint smiling a mowe ga on hi make
which caused (alas) that day y he was take,
Afore p wounded it would be none other
And than presented to his unkind brother

And though this Citrus had afore befound,
young, fre she, and lusty, manly of his honde,
By the constraint of his mortal wounde,
He died anone for he no succoure fōnd.
Chā y two kingdomes within Persie lond,
fyl to the hondes of Artaxerxes.
In which after he lyued long in pres.

Thus a great space like a mighty king,
al Persie he helde vnder hys obeysaunce,
By famous noblesse ful gloriously shinning
haung of richesses most fullsome habūdāce
And as it is put in remembraunce.
to more encrease of his prosperitie,
In trewe wedlock he had sonnes thye.

The fyrst of them called Darius,
Artaractos named the secound:
and the thyrd named was Ochus:
Manly princes like as it is found,
and of nature like as the king was bounde
vnto Dary as it is made mencion,
about echone he had affection.

And for he dempt him able to the warre,
by lykelihede of peares yong and grene,
He cast fully his noblesse to prefarre
Of ligh prudence thus he dyd mene,
His impotence to support and sustene.
for he was feble in Persie to reigne alone.
He set vp Dary with hym in hys throne.

which was a thing straunge & contrarious
agein the custome of Persiens vsaunce,
But he supposed his sonne Darius,
Should in such case encrease and auance,
Hys fathers party of natural attendaunce,
and shewe vnto hym trouth and kindnesse
Hys impotence to cherishe of gentelnesse.

But in estates oft it doth thus fall,
whan that princes be runne farre in age,
Their childrens loue agein the doth appall,
Meyning no frendship saue for auantage,
Howe that they may reioyse their heritage.
And in such case whan they wax strong,
Thinke their fathers lyue al to long.

And Artaxerxes sode in the same case,
As in his story plainly ye shal finde,
by rehercase and wrytyng of Bochas,
How thys Darye was false & the unkinde,
forgetful, and had nothing in minde.
How hys father the trouth to reherce,
Hath made him egal with hym to reigne in
(Persie.

And to declare the first occasion
to hys father, howe the said Dary,
By a false maner of rebellion,
gan in hys werking for to be contrary,
Which to discaie I wil no lēger tarye,
but with my penne in al hast procede
Here to discretie howe it fel in dede.

Artaxerxes among his concubines,
it is remembred howe that he had one,
Which for to reken wyues and virgines
was fairest holde of them euerychone,
Called Artusia of ful yore agone.
And was that time her bewty to discaue,
Among Persiens the fairest hold aliue.

And though she were yunne farre in age,
like as bokes list of her expresse

The thynde

Both of coloure and also of visage
He kept her beautie & her natue fre shues,
Which was afore for her semelines,
To the forsaide Cyrus breuely to termine
Chose long afore to be his concubine.

But whan thys Cyrus was passed into fate
Which for his brother might not liue in pees
A none vpon without lenger date,
She was take vp for king Artaxerres,
Because she was of beautie peerles.
After long time whan he fel in age,
He cleymed was by title of heritage.

Of king Dary by his fathers lue,
Feining hys cleime by succession,
Although his father agein it did strue:
And thus began as made is mencion,
Of their debate the first occasion.
For Dary cast albe he bare it stil,
Het to reioyse agein hys fathers will.

And to accomplishe falsely his entent,
Of her to haue full possession,
To force his partie he made his argument
Cyrus (quod he) as made is mencion,
Reigning in Persie the mighty region.
And this story doth plainly determine,
For her beautie made her his concubine.

And after time whan Cyrus was ded,
Artaxerres his father ye may se,
next hym succeeding in Persie it is no drede
List her to cleime eke for her great beautie:
And so quod Dary she longeth nowe to me
Because she is so plesant to my sight,
by succession I wil her cleyme of right.

This king Dary to his father said,
he would haue Arthusia the faire,
And therewithal Artaxerres gan abyaide,
and answered with face debonaire,
My sonne (quod he) I wil not be cōtrayre
to thy desire, but of affection,
Deliuier her to thy possession.

Of hys promis he after gan repent,
Cast him to make another chevisaunce,
and secretly his concubyne he sent,
Called Arthusia as made hys remembraunce

and through his sleighty bencouth puruessee
vnto y temple such meanes he hath sought
Of great Appollo y she in hait was brought

where she was beyled & made a priestresse
after the rites pleyuly and the guise,
Of olde Paintmes by a maner holynesse,
and there professed for to do seruise,
As their statutes constreyned and deuise,
During her life it might none other be,
He bounde was to liue in chaite.

Thys thing was wrought by y cōpassinge,
of Artaxerres by froward ielousye,
Wherof Darpe the yong lusty king,
wart almost wode whan he did it espye.
And gan compasse of melancolye
furpous rancoure and hasty cruelte,
Upon hys father auenged for to be.

And hys partie of force to sustene,
with him he had, the story maketh minde,
Hys brethren in bast an hundred & sistent,
which to their father wer false and vnkind.
Of al this noumber there left none behind
that fro thys purpose once list dissent,
Hys deach of one will they assent.

Yet of thys straunge false conspiracie,
Artaxerres had a knoweleging,
Although the story doth not specifie,
howe ne by whom he had therof witting,
for which in hait he made no taryng
To gader meiny and make him self strong
Him self tauenge of this disnatural wōg.

For Artaxerres like as the case thosode,
Though it late wele to hys hygh noblesse,
to be venged vpon vnkind blode.
for lawe nature, decrees, rightwisnesse,
and al statutes damne vnkindnesse.
Wherby thys king occasion did fynde.
Agein his chylde because they wer vnkind

Some men deme howe great multitude
of many children maketh a man strong,
But therupon plainly to concludz,
vertue is cause if she dwell thar among.
But if their corage enclimeth vnto wōg,
and vicious life doe their bridel lede,

The greater nūber þ̄ worse they must speede.

¶ Lenuoye.

A progeny borne of a cursed lyne,
May through hys froward false infection,
outward by colour of trowth tho they shyne,
vnder apparence and simulacion,
Infect and corrupt al a region.
For it is sayd of ful olde language,
fruite of sowre trees take a sowre sarage.

This was well shewed in Artaxerxes,
That suffred hys brother dye at mischief:
Bleding hys wound lest hym helpeles,
whiche to hys name shal euer be repese.
thus blud vnkind, vnkindly maketh his p̄f
for al the children fro his stocke descended
her cursed euertichon as here is cōprehēded

They stocke was first cōtagious of nature
the guiffis froward though they wet gret in
which of assēt did their bily cure, (nūber
By false treason they fader to encumber.
But there is no shade nor no couert vmbre
So closely kept, namē of false gyle,
But the venome wil shewe out some while

And thus the death contagious conspired,
Of Artaxerxes syth go ful pore:
wheron to auēge hym, his hert was so fured
Of furious yre, and p̄zent so soze,
That he not coud differre it fethermore,
But with his meiny fil on them anon,
O they wet ware, & slough thē euertichone.

He slough also al his concubines,
that wet they moders, of whō I told tofore
Suffred none to liue of they lyues,
So of that linage he hath þ̄ wede bpshorne
fond among al no greyn of good cozne,
Conuict by dome when they wet presented,
to his death how e chone they wet assented.

Hys clothes spreynt with the vnkind blode
Of hys chyldren which he dyd shede:
After whose deth in great mischief he stode,
And so in sorow hys lyfe he dyd lede,
Dyed after in myschief and in drede.
Death quit with death, and rage with rage
Loe here the fyne of hys vnwelyd age.

This tragedie afoze declareth here,
The great outrage of vnkindnesse,
Attwene two byethren reigning both yfere,
In Persse lond as ye haue heard expresse,
till diuision (of all myschief maistresse,)
Can entre in through feareful hatred,
which ageyn kind destroyed they kynred.

The warre arose contagious for to lere,
throughout al Persse of mortal frowardnes
Of Cyrus death rehearsing the manere,
How helpeles he dyed in distresse.
And how þ̄ nūber of byethre did them dresse
To slea they father the story ye may rede.
Causing an end of al they whole kynrede.

King Artaxerxes with a froward chere,
His iniuries and wronges to redresse:
slough his children, their moders eke yfere
Spared not one of froward cursednes.
By which occasion toke a great sickenes,
After dyed in mischief and in drede,
Causing an end of al his whole kinrede.

Loe here a sorowe not particulere,
for though all Persse ran the cursednes,
The croked fame spred both ferre and nere
Of thys vengeable hasty fel woodnes,
The ayre infectyng w̄ slaunderous blaknes
to shew by vengeance þ̄ contractous mede
Of bloud vnkind borne of one kinrede.

Noble princes list bp your syen clere,
And confidie by great auisenes,
the woeful stryues, the odious fel daunger,
Sowne in kinredes of wilful strangenes,
Of al rancour your corage doe represse,
Deyfing þ̄ mischiefes folowyn on in drede
Of bloud vnkynd borne of one kinrede.

¶ The ende of the
thyrde booke.

¶

The Prologe to the fourth Booke.

Fruite of wytyng set in Chroni-
cles olde,
Moste delectable of fresynes in
tastynge,
And most goody and gloyous to behold:
In colde and heate lengest abyding,
Change of seasons may doe it no bindyng.
And wherso be that men dyne or fast,
The moze men tast the lenger it will last.

It doth courages renew ayen and glade,
which may be called fruite of the tre of life,
So permanable that it will neuer fade.
To the true wittes greatest resozatife,
and to theyr plesance most chief cōfortatife.
For of nature whan they be quick and good
they of this fruite take theyr natural loode.

Auctours heron conclude and eke assent,
how that wytyng of hys kyndly right,
Doth loued persones & likneses represent
Of frendes absēt seuered ferre from sight
Darkenes of absence is clered with þ light
Thus fruite of wytinges hath his auātages
Of folke farre of to present the ymages.

Lawe had perished ne had be wytyng,
our feith appalled ne wer vertus of scripture
For all religion and ordre of good luyng,
taketh their exāple by doctrine of lectrure
For wyting causeth with help of portrature
that thynges darked of old þ wer begonne,
to be remembred with hys celestial sonne.

God set wytyng and letters in sentence,
ageyn the dulnes of our infirmite,
this world tendlumine by craft of eloquence
Canon, Causle, philofophie, these thre
Confirmed fraunchises of many strōg cite
Covenātes assēd, trouthes of old assured,
ne had wytyng be, might not haue endured

Diligence chief tryumphatrice,
Of sloardy, negligence & slouth,
Eke of memozy vpholder and noyce,
And registrer to supposalaye trouth,
hath of old labour, and els wer great routh

brought thynges passed notable in sublaçe,
Only by wytyng to new remembraunce,

Wytyng is cause that herto is remebred,
Lyfe of Prophetes and Patriarkes olde,
How the Apostles & Martirs wer dismembred
For Chyrtles sayth hys banner vp to holde,
And wytyng sheweth tofore as I you tolde
Of Confessours the great stedfastnes,
And of vyrgyns the virginal clennes.

Like to a tre which euery yere beareth fruit
shewing hys beauty w blossomes & w flow-
right so þ sode of our inward refute, (res
By diligence of these old doctours,
And dayly fruite of theyr saythful labours,
haue our courages fostred and pastured,
by wytyng only which hath so lōg endured

The Epigrams whidom perished had,
Of prudent Prosper that was so vertuous,
And of Seneke the tragedies sad,
The Stratagemes of Virgilius,
Rebuke in byles of noble Persius.
If in olde wytyng had be found a lacke,
these sayd thynges had farre be put abacke,

Wytyng caused Poetes to recure,
a name eternall, the laurer whan they wan,
In Adamant graue perpetually to endure.
Record I take of Virgil Mantuan,
that wrote þ armes and prowesse of þ man
Called Eneas, whan he of hygh corage,
Came into Itayle from Dido of Cartage.

Thre famous bokes this autoz list compile
Eneidos fyrst which that dyd excel,
In Rethorike by suffreinte of stile.
He drank such plente, thys Poete as mē tel
Of the streames that ran down frō the well
wrought by tho sisters þ ben in nūber nine
prowesse of knighthod most clerely to ter-
(mine

for in that boke he cast not to fayle,
with voyce melodious for to discerne aright
The great conquest of Rome and of Itayle
wrought by Enee þ manly Trojan knyght.
whose verse notable yeeue so clere a lyght,
Through

Throughe all the world as in Rethouke.
That among poetes was none vnto him like

He wrote also (this Poete) with hys hand,
By humble stile other boke twayne,
One of pasture, the next of tilth of land.
The verse coueyed w fete of meters pleyn,
by which thre labours a palme he did attein
to make his name throughe ditties delectable
About poetes to be most commendable.

Wrytyng of poetes hath set within his clos,
Conquest of knightthod thre triumphes & re-
cede of Dido Metamorphoseos, (not
The great wonders the transmutacions,
the moztall meaning vncouth conclusions,
hys boke de Donto, and with great diligēce
ful many a pisse compleyning for absence.

Of craft of loue a boke he hath compyled,
wherof Cesar had ful great dayne,
which was cause that he was exyled,
To abyde in Donto, and neuer come ageyn
And yet he dyd hys labour in certeyn,
In hope of grace hys wittes to applye,
to wryte a boke of loues remedy.

Wrytyng of olde with letters aureate,
Labour of poetes doth hyghly magnify,
Record on Petrarke in Rome laureate,
which of two fortunes wrote the remedye,
Certain Eglogs & his Cosmographie,
a great conflict, which men may rede & se,
Of hys quarels within himself sece.

He wrote seven psalmes of great repentāce
And in hys Affryke commended Scipion,
And wrote a boke of hys ignoraunce,
By a maner of excusacion,
and set a notable compilacion,
Upon the lyfe called solitary,
to which this world is froward and contrary

And thus by wrytyng he gat hys selfe a name
Perpetually to be in remembraunce:
Set and registred in the house of fame,
and made Epistles of ful high substance,
Called sine titulo, & moze himselfe tauaunce,
Of famous weomen he wrote the excellēce
Gyfeld preferring for her great patience.

Wrytyng also remembred hath how Troy
Destroyed was, syth gone many a yere,
& slaughter of Hector chief pillar of their ioy
And for the party of Grekes wrote Homere
which in hys wrytyng was perticulere,
For Achilles that wrought al by fraude,
About Hector he gaue a synguler laude.

Wrytyng causeth the chaplet to be grene,
Both of Esop and of Juuenal.
Dantes labour it doth also sustene,
By a report very celestial,
Song among Lumbardes in especial:
whose thre bookes the great wonders tel,
Of heauen aboue, of purgatory and hell.

Men by wrytyng know the miracles,
Of blessed saintes and of theyr holynes,
Medicine saluē, and eke obstacles,
Geyn mortal woundes & euery great sickness
Recreation and solace in dystresse,
Quiete in labour, in pouert patience,
And in riches ryght trowth and conscience

Shortnes of lyfe and foryetfulness,
The wyte of man dull and ay flyding,
Negligente and froward ydlenes,
Echone stepmoder to science and cunning,
That I dare say ne had be wrytyng,
Only ordeyned for our aduantages,
Dead wer memozye & mytid of passed ages.

And thus in chief the causes afore tolde,
Wened the heart of Bochas to wrytyng,
And to remembre by many stoyes olde,
The state of princes in charyes hys sytting,
And for byces theyr binware fallyng:
yeuyng example as I affyrme dare,
Of false fortune how they shal beware.

Hys fyrst thre bokes by full clere mirtours
fully accomplisshed, as Bochas undertoke,
the cause of fallyng of many conquerours,
Onely for trowth and vertue they forsoke.
For which mine autor toward his fourth bo-
ga sharpe his pen to his eternal fame, (ke
Only by wrytyng to geat him a name.

Myne auctour Bochas that so much coud
Beginneth

The Prologe.

Begynneth here to make a proesse,
Ageyn the outrage of princes þat wer proude
which wer brought low for their frowardnes
and notably remembreth how mekenes,
which stondeth whole in one & doth cōiune
Is ay traūchised from danger of fortune.

But he in maner doth recapitle ageyn,
Of the fal of many that sate in hys flages,
How they for vyces stode aye in no certayn
came to myschief for theyr great outrages,
Remembryng fyrst of Ham the damages,
And he lost Scepter and regaly,
For lussyng of false auoutre.

The fal rehearsyng of Astages,
that gaue his daughter whilom in marriage
to one that was called Cambyses,
A poore man bozne of lowe linage,
For he shold haue none aduauntage,
In no maner, nother in right ne wrong,
by rebellion ageyn hym to be strong.

For he tofore had had a vislon,
How there shold one procede of his line,
which shold him put out of hys region,
And cause hym in mischief for to fyne.

But yet fortune coude hym vndermyne,
that al hys wysedome stode in none auayle,
For agayne god preuayleth no counsaile,

It nedeth not his story to rehearse,
For the maner of his vnhappy chauce,
For the fall yng of Cyrus kyng of Persie,
nor of kyng Tarquin for his misgouernace,
though Bochas here put the in remēbrance
for as me semeth it were a thing in bepur,
thing once tolde, to tell it new ageyn.

And he list not now to be reches,
New ageyn to make rehearsaile,
Of the kyng called Artaxerxes.
Sith it is told what shold it more auayle;
But he procedeth streyght vnto Itaple,
To theyr stories, and begynneth here,
at Marcus Manlius, a Romayn cōsulere,

The ende of
the Prologe,
(.v.)

The fourth Boke.



How Marcus Manlius wrought
and did for Rome towne, and at
the laste he was by the commons
cast into Tybre and there drowned.

The .i. Chapter.

While in Rome,
there was a great lynage,
Called Manliors
of renoumed noblesse.
And of that stocke right
saye in his yong age,
Came this Marcus,
the story bereth witness

Which by processe for his worthines,
Was thre times by iust election,
made consul of that worthy towne.

Which to the commō ful greatly did auaille
He diuerse times for the townes right,
fought in his dayes manye strong bataille,
and aye preuailed throug his great might,
And in the field by a singuler fight,
outrayed his enemy like as it is tolde,

And toke from him a riche bye of gold.

Torques in Latin, in English is a bye,
a cercle of gold which that Marcus want,
Brought it home throug his chivalrie,
And of Torques he was called than,
Marcus Torquatus, & thus þ name gan,
He to be called the story telleth vs,
among Romains Torquatus Manlius.

And he would oft leoparde good and lyfe,
for the cite enter the field alone,
And there conquered for a prerogative,
Sondry crownes with manye riche stone,
Man Tuncles of golde manye one,
for thilke time for diuers high empises,
wer crownes made in manye sondrye wyfes.

For as Julius Bellus maketh mencion,
there wer in Rome deuised strange crownes
for such as had foughten for the towne,
and for theyr laboꝝ receiued their gerdouȝ
by a prerogative called champions:
which sondry times of manhode & of might
Jeoparded their liues for the townes right.

S. i.

Like

The fourth

Like their desertes the crownes take they:
for some of the wer called triumphal (names
youe vnto knightes for their noble fames,
Other also called Obsidionall,
in Romain tog, and some there wer Murall
The other twain, Flauial and Castrence,
and al they wer of full great excellence.

The triumphal made wet of golde,
offred in triumphes to worthy Emperours
set with Saphirs, and Rubies manifold,
vpon the heades of mighty conquerours,
whan þ Rome was wining in his flours.
þ crowne called w braunches boozned faire
in their bulgare chaure at coronayre.

The obsidional of whiche I spake tofore,
Deuised wer, the boke doth specyfe,
crownes notable wrought like grein or corn
youe vnto pices which throw their cheualry
rescued sieges and saued the partte,
Of them that wer closed streit within,
throughe high prowesse a crowne for to win.

A nother crowne that called was Murall,
was geuen and graunted by the Emperour
To hym that first ran vpon the wal,
at any siege, and there abode the shoure,
fighting alone in hope of some succour,
And he that might such a byunt susteine,
shold of Lauret weare a crowne grene.

Flauial crownes whsom wer ordeined,
for them that faught manly in the see,
whan their shippes wer together cheyned,
he that of manhode and marcial suertee,
vpon his enimies made first entree,
receiue shold in all the peoples sight,
hoze lich a rother a crowne clere & bright.

The next crowne which called is Castrence,
was yeuen of custome to that manly knight
þ list auance him throughe his magnificence
hostes assembled leoparde would of myght,
tofore al other enter into fight,
shold eke receiue his noblesse for to queme
a flattered crowne made like a Diademe.

The crowne also which called was Quall,
toke first name of ioye and gladnes,

which kinges princes in attes marciall,
used sometime in they ioyous noblesse,
at sodain scarmishes of casual hastines,
as whā they banquished poudly in bataille
such as their highnes vnwarely would as-
(sayle,

And for they wer of power inuincible,
their noble crownes curiously wer wrought
of Mirtes braunches which ben imputrable
Endurynge euer and corrupt nought.
for this worde Quall, if it be well sought,
is sayd of gladnes, as put is in memoire,
Depeyned for princes after their victoire.

Another crowne called Cruica,
of Oken bowes was made rounde & pleyne
Depeyned for them whiche pro re publica
Could in battayle rescue a citezin,
and slep his enemy that was a foreyn,
Of mighty Oke he shold for manhead,
clayme to weare a crowne vpon his head.

And lyke as knightes in marciall delites,
for common profite dyd them selfe auance
So for their noble virtuous merites,
The Romain people had a great pleasure,
with sondry crownes marciall in substance,
for to guerdō their knightes most famous
mine autout reorde called A. Silius.

Among other that dyd their busypayn.
Such crownes manly to recure,
Marcus Manlius in manhode souerayne
put of his lyfe in mortall auenture,
for in his fozte so much he did assure,
that he deserued full poze agone,
Of these sayd crownes many mo than one.

And to encrease of his noble fame,
he did a thing both manly and diuine.
wherby that he gate hym a surname,
To be called Marcus Capitoline.
whiche aboue all his names dyd wyne,
Whan he alone, wherby he is commended,
The Capitol from enemies hath defended.

Whan they of fraunce had take the cite,
put al Rome at mischiesse vnto flight,
and layde a waite with a great meynie,

The

The Capitolle for to take at night,
By a passage that lay farre out of syght,
Under a roche called Carmenton,
their caue entred into the chief dongeon.

They wer there shrouded vnder a dark bale
with ordenaunce and mighty violence,
Toward midnight the wal for to scale,
Most couertly them keeping in silence,
Dempt plainly for lacke of resistance,
that they should mauer the within,
theyr houre assigned the Capitolle winne.

But the geese that wer within close,
the waker foules by noyse of their cōming,
gan beat their winges & by anon they rose,
wherthrougħ this Marcus in his bed lyg
gan tabrayde and made no tarryng.
Toke his harneys most furious and wyth,
And to the walles in all haste he goth.

And hym that came first vpon the wall,
of very force without more tarryng,
Down into Tiber he made hym haue a fall,
And al his felowes busy in scaling,
with shield, or pavis, or Ladders by reising
this manly Mark shortly to comprehend,
into the floude made them to descende.

Vnto the death of hym they wer abaued,
for by his knighthode and his hie renoune
Mauer them the Capitolle saued,
And after ward rescued all the towne,
And for the fortune in conclusion,
which that time did vnto hym fall,
Capitolinus men did hym after call.

And for he was so victorions,
hymself alone by this hie victorie,
This name he gate to hym and al his house
Perpetually to be in memoire,
and registred in the consistorie,
In their Chronicles his name determind,
with golden letters to be enlumined.

And the geese of whom I spake also,
that so well kept watche vpon the night,
stake wer and offred vnto Juno,
Solemnely with great torches light.
To whom also it graunted was of right,

whan a famine made their store to faile,
they spared wer and take for no vitayle.

And thus was Mark like a conquerour,
worshipped in Rome all being of assent:
but whan some folk be set in great honour,
sometime it hapneth they hold the not cōtēt
with couetise their heartes be so blent,
fro suffisaunce aboue their degrees,
To surmount to higher dignities.

This Manlius was fect in his corage,
to greater worships sodainly to ascende,
Deming so to haue had ausauntage,
And in himself gan forwardly pretende,
In that cite all other to transcende,
beside triumphes which wer to hym reserued
higher to climbe than he hath deserued.

But there was one as made is mention,
called Camillus a lord of great substaunce,
which in the cite and in that mighty town,
Aboue al other had gouernaunce,
And as it is put in remembraunce,
to his greatnes no other might attaine,
At whose noblesse Marcus gan disdain.

In his heart he had a great enmie,
which caused hym by outrage for to erre,
Again Camillus which for his chualtye,
The towne gouerned both in peace & werre
And for Marcus would himself preferre,
Aboue that prince in worship and honour,
first of the people he gate hym great fauour.

And by a maner of conspiracie,
He gathred hertes of the commontie,
and drough also vnto his partie,
Great multitude throughout the cite.
And thus arose first the dreadeful enmitie,
Within Rome, the story telleth thus,
atwene these princes Camil and Manlius

Thus first þ benim atwene them two was
Of hasty hatred by false occasions, (sowe
Which in the cite atwene hie and lowe,
Caused of new diuerse discensions
After the vncouth straunge opinions,
for euery wyght drough to his partie,
As they wer meued in their fantasie.

S.ii. But

The fourth

But for to stint this outrageous etrou,
and these hasty sturges furus,
Agein fro Tuscan came a Dictatour,
That time called Cornelius Cossus,
Which of wisdom blamed Manlius:
For he caused such rancour in the towne,
and for his gilt commaunded hym to prison.

Which was in maner hindyng to his name,
And appalled in party his noblesse,
for a time gan teclipse his fame,
but afterward the cloude of that darknes,
By comon fauor was turned into clerenes,
for as it had be right for the nones,
in his defence the commons rose at ones.

First whā thei had amōg thei gret rumors,
myd of thei fell and hateful contencion,
shortly rebuked the worthy Senatours,
because Marcus was set in prison.
Which had been so helplich to the town,
whom to deliuer thei diuers meanes sought
And as I finde even thus they wrought,

first thei clad thē in mournig clothes blake
pale of thei faces pitoufly weping (Make
thei berdes vnshauen, ther heere to rend &
like furious men bp and down rennyng,
tofoze the prison at the nyght wakyng.
And on his harmes plainly to bewycke,
Thei gan manace the prison for to breke.

And for to stint thei outrageous clamour,
The Senatours made anon ordain,
to deliuer hym out of his scour,
lose his fetters and to bzeake his chayne.
And whan he was deliuered out of payn,
He lyst not stint of hasty cruelte,
of proude cozage auenged for to be.

And in his furious fell presumption,
mauger the Senate & tribunes euerichone
Said he would gouerne Rome towne,
At whose outrage they gan disdayn anone,
the peoples hertes from hym wer agone:
And for his pride they by auisement,
Assigned hym to come to iudgement.

Forake he was thzoughout the cite,
there came not one with him of his kinrede

He fond no help in his aduersitie,
Sage a few came with hym in dede,
Of the commons ful feble at such a nede,
And thus (alas) he fond no resistance,
Was vailable vnto his defence.

But for succour constrained and in dze,
Alway he put his clothyng and besture,
And naked stode verely in dede,
Shewing his woundes which he did endure,
at many skirmish and discomfiture.
And for rescue to speake in wordes few,
The Capitolle to them he did shewe.

And in supporting eke of his quarele,
meynyng the people to rue on hys complaint
first to his goddes loude he dyd appele,
To preserue hym of that he was attaint.
The people about him wteres al bespreint
that the Judges astonyed wer in dede,
Wheras they sat ageyn hym to procede.

But secretly he was led out of piers,
To a place called frumentine,
and there (alas) they wer so merciles,
His dome by rigour fully to termine.
Spared nother noblesse nor lyne,
fro the Capitolle out of the chiefe dongeon
Lowe into Tiber for to be cast down.

This was his ende boyde of all fauour,
which no man would redzesse nor amende,
by cruelte cast out of that towne,
which he whilom most knightly gan defend.
But what mā can by wyting comprehend
The busure succour fond in necessitie,
To them that labour for any commontie.

Let men behold & trust in wooldly thynges
and namely they that be proud and haute
Open they open, cast bp they lokynges,
To consider and see wel in certeyn,
who trusteth fortune his trust is but in veyn
And if ye lyst a clere example fynd,
among remēber on Marcus in your mind.

What might auayle his noblesse in battaile
Bies of gold, crownes of Lauree,
His riche plates or his vncouth mayle,
his mighty shieldes & shone so bryght & cleere

O his triumphes song ferre and nere,
O his victories for the citie wrought,
In his mischief auailed hym right nought.

Here Bochas writeth in part ayeinst
such as cannot be content with suffi-
sance, but blurpe to high dignities.

The .ii. Chapter.

Ere John Bochas
callet to memorie,
The straunge Salatre,
the famous guerdown,
of them that gate by conquest and victorie,
honour of triumphe within Rome towne,
how it was vled he maketh mencion.
Seriously rehearseth the manere,
which I shal write if ye list to heare.

Adulce was take first of estates thre,
Of men of armes which that were present,
That saw in dede the magnanimitie,
Of hym that shal haue it by iudgemente,
Of the clergy they must haue eke assent,
and of the Senat and people most notable
by prefe sought out that he wer found able.

This prince also other the captein,
which shal þ triumph receiue of very right,
Within a chaire ful richly beseyne,
He shalbe set of gold boorned bryght,
fret with stones which shal geue a light,
As phebys doth in his midday sphere,
that no darkenes about him shal appere.

This heauenly chaire shal for moze delyte,
to shew the increase of his knightly gloire,
Be led and draw with foure bedes whyte.
Through the citie in token of his victorie,
And he shal haue for a singuler memorie,
in his right hand a palme of gold ful shene,
And on his head a crowne of Lauer grene.

He shal eke haue about al his armure,
poudred with palmes a coate of purple read
In his lett hand his quarels for tallure,
A standard round declarng his manhead.
And all about set vpon the head,
The princes armes ful riche of apparayle,

in whose quarel he accomplished þ batayle.

And of custome the sayd standard shal
Be richly depeint with redde colour,
And so this knight, this man most marciall,
Shalbe conueyed like a conquerour.
And yet for moze encrease of his honour,
vpon their fete his prisoners euerychone,
take by his manhode about his chaire shal
(gone.

The most worthy fast by his syde,
all the remnaunt after on hym lokyng,
Echone of þ poetes which in þ town abide
Shal on him waite at his home commyng.
Ditees deuise and of his conquest syng,
and straunge minstrels to bere also recorde
they instrumentes shal touch of accorde.

All of entent to geue him moze roage,
to the Capitolle so he shalbe brought:
and lest of pride he fall in none outrage,
For surquedye within his owne thought,
the most wretch shal of the town be sought,
Which of custome shal haue a staffe on hōd
and in the chaire behind his backe by stond

Gnothy seanton in Greke he should seyne,
which in our tong plainly doth expresse,
know thy self, remembryng in certeine,
vpon fortunes froward doublenes,
On whom to trust may be no sikernes.
And who that doubteth where þ it be thus,
Let him remember the ende of Manlius.

What auailed his triumphes or his bies,
crounes of gold, or pearled fre sh tunicles,
his high prowesse, or al his chivaltries,
Singular fighting or marciall parties,
newly remembred or red in old Chronicles:
passe his merites and see at the last,
how into Tibet their chaumpion they cast.

To his excuse auailed neuer a dele,
fauour of cōmons Carectes of his woldes,
Nor to the goddes his lamentable appele,
nor remembrance of their franchised boildes,
Territoies, nor winning of the groundes,
which þ he wan with spending of his bloode
all knit in one to hym no stede they stode.

¶ .iii.

Here

The fourth

Here ye may see how fortune sodenlye,
clerences of fame can chaunge to deckenes,
Glozy to reproche, worship to vilanye,
And toye passed to mortall heauines,
Sweetenes of sauoure into bitternes,
And sobernes into furious rage,
and old fraunchise to thraldome & seruage.

For there was neyther request nor prayer,
That auayled to his deliuerance,
In cheynes fetred deadly of loke and chere
Abode þe sentence of his finall greuaunce,
Pale of face, wth trembling countenaunce,
Whan he (alas) gan mortally appoche,
Of Carpeya to the hideous roche.

Of Carpeya this roche bare the name,
after a Lady, as made is mencion,
Called Carpeya which fyl in great defame
Because she was assented to treason,
To haue brought enimies into Rome town,
Wherof conuict her story is wel know,
Under that roche she was ydolu lowe.

This roche also was called Carmentoun,
After a woman of great autozitie,
called Carmentis, whiche through her hygh
the Capitolle made in that citie. (renew)
And she sond letters first of our A b c.
And cunynge had among her workes all,
Declare afore, thing that should befall.

And on this hard surdy roche of stone,
fro the Capitolle Marcus was cast down,
Other fauour nor frendship soude he none
For all his batailles fought for the towne.
The comons heartes wer turned vp so dou
Whose loue is like prued at assay,
A blase of fire, now bright and now away.

The comon people may hoot and crye fast,
As their heartes stedfast wer and stable,
but at a nede their promes will not last,
Of theyz cozages thei be so remeuable,
To solow reason gierish and vntreatable,
Lightly declining and þe is full great ruthe,
After opinions and nothyng after truth.

This Manlius was of his trust deceiued
Whose lust vniuersal was departed on twaine,

first whā of pryde he would haue be receiued
to high estate which he might not atteyne,
wherthrough þe Senat gan at him disdein
And the commons ay false at such a nede,
left him in mischief & toke of hi none bede.

Clenoue.

In this tragedy men may behold and see,
the perilous damages of false ambition,
Of them þe be not content with their degre
But would vp clymbe lyke their opinion,
To hye estate by vsurpacion,
Which not consider þe sentence of scripture
In a good meane men lengest may endure

Who that vsurpeth to higher dignitie,
Than apperteyneth to his condition,
In royall charyes for to make his see,
And hath no title of line nor reason,
through froward pryde ful oft he is put dool,
For lacke he seeth not how euery creature,
In a good meane lengest may endure.

Whan Dedalus taught his sonne to fle,
He bad hym first of hye discrecion,
fro Phobus heate kepe his winges free,
And fro Neptunus colde congelacion,
Meanynge hereby for short concluson,
That who that list with toye his state assure
In a good meane he lengest shall endure.

Remember the manhode & magnanimitie,
of Marcus Manlius which by presumpcion,
Would haue gouerned Rome the citie,
mauger the Senate ruled þe myghty towne,
Which turned after to his confuson,
For he saw not (such was his auenture,)
In a good meane men lengest may endure.

Some in their greatest high prosperitie,
of froward coage and furious motion,
In the yz great weale by false duplictie,
Haue a maner straunge condicion,
Not to be content with plentie nor foyson,
By a false etike which of their nature,
in a good meane ne cannot long endure.

But in this earth greatest felicitie,

As heartes ease richest possession,
With suffisaunce content for to be,
Of worldly trouble tescrowe thocrafton,
Weeping no quarels causyng disencion,
nor claime nothyng which hard is to recure
ith in a good meane mē leget may endure

Princes remember in your most maiestie,
enay of clymbing causeth diuision.
Be of accorde trust in no commontie,
which at a point is but deception.
And specially fle simulation,
pe may in Marcus see a plaine figure,
which for ambition might no while endure

How Nectanabus kyng of Egypte
was by Perres constrained to fle
his kyngdome.

The.iii. Chapter.



After the fall of Marcus
Manlius.
Bochas anone gan his
style dresse,

briefly to tell of Nectanabus,
king of Egypt, and of his great richesse.
Seing afoze in al his noblesse,
By vncouth craft how he ne might chese,
That in al hast his crowne he should lese.

for he was cunnyng in especiall,
and ryght expert as made is mencion,
In al the sciences called liberrall,
And knew afoze by calculacion,
how god would make a transmigracion
Of his kyngdom, and plainly to report,
the londe of Persse to Grekes ful transpourt.

for by king Perres out of his countrey,
mauger his treasor, his cūning & his might,
this Nectanabus constrained was to fle,
Durst not abide to haue of hym a sight.
And into Grece he brought hym anon ryght,
not lyke a kyng but after olde wrytynges,
like a Magicie he wrought woder thinges.

Upon fortune ferther to procede,
by his cunnyng he greatly forthered was,
And by his sleightie workyng eke in dede,

He was acquainted with quene Olimpias,
and so secrete plainly this the caas,
That vpon her men sayd by demyng,
Gate Alexander the great mighty kyng.

But how he fled out of his region,
Of his ymages nor his yllusions,
Bochas maketh no maner mencion,
Nor how he wrought by incantacions,
Nor of his subtyli operacions,
Nor how that he like a man by night,
Whilom appered in the quenes syght.

Same of his death Bochas writeth ryght
remēbrig nether y time nor y date (nought
how he & Alexander together haue fought,
The course of sterres toward eue late.
And how his sonne lyke as was his fate,
Doun from a bridge by full mortall wake,
Cast him backward and so his necke brake,

How Pausanias Duke of Lacede-
moyne was cryled by them of La-
cedemoyne.

The.iii. Chapter.



This was his ende, and after
this Bochas.
Can in haste his style
auaunce,

Of Pausanias to tell the piteous case,
And al the maner of his wofull chaunce.
which was a Duke and had in gouernaunce
Lacedemoyne there foundyng a cite,
which of old time was called Bilsaunce.

The Lacedemoyns y citie gate id myght,
and it conquered by theyr chivalrie,
& afterward whet her it wer wrong or right,
The cryled the same Pausanye.
And thus fortune throug her false enute,
Caused that Duke without more delayes,
in sorow and pouertie for to end his daies.

How Clearchus the tirant of Hera-
clia for extorcion & oppression was
slayn by the knyght Leonides.

The.v. Chapter.

After

The fourth

After the fall
 sothly of these twaine
 John Bochas
 was moued of corage,
 for to rehearse with al his busy pain,
 the great fury and the odious rage,
 Of Clearchus which by great outrage,
 Though he not was famous in chualrie,
 He noyed all parsons with his tyrannye.

Wherfore Bochas gan at hym disdain,
 Cast he would onely for his sake,
 Touch of tyrantes mo than one or twayne,
 And by wyting agein them a warre make,
 And in his hand he gan a penne take,
 Told in order the perillous pestilence,
 which thei wrought by mortall violence.

first he declareth how fortune of right,
 Agein tyrantes furious and wode,
 Hath full cause for to shew her might,
 tappalle their dignities in which þ thei stode
 Such as reioyse for to shed blode,
 Do nought els but labour and deuse,
 To spoyle the people in many sondre wyse.

And Clearchus throught his crueltie,
 And his contrived false extorcons,
 Was mortal enmye to a fayre citie,
 Called Heraclie and many other townes,
 And by his extort false opprecons,
 As the dede concluded at a prief,
 All that countrey he bzought to mischiese,

Turnyng his grace and fauour to hatrede
 mercy and pitie. vnto crueltie,
 Fraunchise of people to seruitude & dzed,
 Oppressed theyr freedom and old libertie,
 & al their statutes by which thei were made
 he interrupted of force, & not of right (for
 which made him odious in euery mas sight

But to restraine his great extorcons,
 fortune this while was not techles,
 for his horrible abhominacions,
 She gan tauale hym in this goddes mercies
 By a good knight called Leonides,
 Which with a felow borne of that countrey
 Call on this tyrant auenged for to be,

They dempt it was an almesse dede,
 to set theyr londe in quiet and in ease,
 Of a tyrant the furious bloud to shed
 His importable malice for tappeale,
 which to their citie dyd so great disafe,
 And of assent with their swerdes kene,
 thei slough the tyrant in their mortall tene,

Of whose death many a man was fayne,
 And specially of Heraclie the citie,
 Dempt it was medefull þ he was so slayn,
 To set in quiet all a commonthe.
 Loe here men may the ryghtful guerdose,
 of tyrantes, which by theyr violence,
 To oppresse the people haue no conscience.

How the vicious Dionise king of Sicile
 slough his brethren & kynred, & af-
 ter being exiled died at mischies.

The. vi. Chapter.

After this tyrant
 with a ful heauy chere,
 And countenance
 pitous and lamentable,
 vnto Bochas Dionise dyd appere,
 which in tyranny most was importable,
 through al his land hateful and reppreuable,
 But for al that he gan mine autour praye,
 Of his maners somewhat to wite and say,

Bochas lyst not rehearse his linage,
 nor make no processe of his genealogie,
 Because he was with al his great outrage,
 full of al vices of pride and lecherie,
 Of auarice, of pye, and of enuye,
 In Sicile helde his royal see,
 At Siraculis a mightie strong citie.

This Dionise was cursed of nature,
 most malicious both of thought and dede,
 for as it is remembzed in scripture,
 he slough his bzethren, his cosins, & kynred
 That he alone in peace myght possede,
 without trouble or interrupcion,
 Of al Sicile the mightie region.

Among al vices Bochas doth specifice,
 he gan draw vnto ydolens,

Followed

folowed his lustes of foule lecherye,
and oft of custome he fyl in drunkenness,
a thought it was most souerain blessednes.
Like as he had be maister of fortune,
to folow his lustes and ay therin contune.

He ware right fat and wonder corsious,
and his eyen gan darke of theyr sight,
that vneth this man most vicious,
He might not wel behold the dayes lyght.
And of malice this tirant agayn ryght,
With help of robbours and of false fozeins
Slough of his citie nye all the Citezeins.

His vicious lyfe in order to rehearse,
After contagious to the audience,
his extort pilages wrought in Grece & Perse
for to write or tell them in sentence,
would infect the eye with pestilence.
But I wyl briefly remember and discryue,
The sacrileges which he dyd his liue.

In Venus temple besyde Citheron,
agreat number of women he did call,
ful wel beseyne and by oppression.
He made his meyne vnwarely on them fal.
Dispoyled them so, that one and all,
By his outrage and froward violence,
They naked shode echeone in his presence,

And whā he saw their shape & their features
he chose out such as wer to his pleasaunce
robbing & rēāt, toke fro the their vestures
And let them go without ordeinaunce.
And for this vncouth abhominable chaūce
the citie of Loeris arose with mighty hond
for his outrage banishyng hym their lond.

Another time also he did sojourn,
within the temple, lyke as it is tolde,
Of Jupiter, sonne vnto Saturne,
There beholding his reliques manifolde,
Saw among ocher a mantel large of gold.
Wherupon whā he cast his loke,
That riche te well vnto his vse he toke.

And thus he sayd hymself to excuse,
It was to heauy and to comberous,
In somer ceason that mantell for to vse,
Because it was to large and to ponderous

And ductmore he alleged for hym thus:
Sith the garment forged was of gold,
for winter season how it was to colde.

And whan he gan away the mantel pul,
than right anon this tirant deceivable,
gaue him another synge made of wul,
Affirmed soothly it was more couenable,
to eyther ceason more mete and agreable.
Concludyng thus, for somer it was light,
& warme for winter to weare & frosty nyght

Another time this tirant eke also,
which was of heart most auaricious,
Entred once the temple of Apollo,
and of his sonne Esculapius.
And whan this tirant fell and contrarious,
beheld Apollo berbles that was olde,
and Esculapius with a long berd of golde.

Quod Dionise than (as semeth vnto me,)
here is a straunge froward conuenience,
That the father berbles should be,
The sonne berded stondyng in his presence
Made anone by surdy violence,
To take away the berd which in his syght
of most fine gold shone so cleare and bright.

Through Grece & Perse where euer he dyd
in all the tēples this was his vface (gon,
the stately reliques with many riche stone,
And massy tables of mighty great substance
to take them al that wer to his pleasaunce.
He spared none, thus lyuyng lyke a thiefe,
tyl he by vengeance was brought to mischief

Siracusans where he was crowned kyng,
All of assent there is no more to seyne,
for his outrages and vicious liuyng,
They banished hym, neuer to come ageine.
And so this tiraunt vacant went in veyn,
About the world like a false fugitive,
and so at mischefe this Dionise lost his life.

Clenoure.

This tragedy peueteth a warnyng,
to all tho that haue dominacion,
ouer the people, Prince, Duke, or kyng,
To eschewe rauine and false extorcion,

Byd

The fourth

Byd them consider how by thortacion,
Of foule pillage and froward tyranny,
This layd Dionise at mischief must dye.

Fyrt he compassed falsly ymagynyng,
to slep the Citezens of his royall towne,
his byethen, his cosins, his kintred not sparig
Brought all his blode to destruction.
In slaughter he had such delectacion,
Reioysyng euer in murther and robber y,
which caused hym at myschep for to dye.

To spoyle temples was most his reioysyng
toke all theyr treasours to hys possession:
Tables of gold with stones fresh shynnyng
eke fro the gods the reliques he toke down
Where euer he rode in any region.
Whose sacrilege and compassed felonye,
caused him vnwarely in mischief for to dye.

In Venus temple by recorde of wrytyng,
He dyd a foule froward abusyon,
al gentlewomen that came there to offring
Them he dispoyled as made is mencion,
Let them go naked without excepcion.
For which defame and great vngentrie,
He banyshed was and dyd in mischief dye.

Noble princes remember on this thyng,
Compassed malice and false collusion,
must haue euil ending & come to rekyng,
fraud ay with fraud, receyueth his guerdon
Haue this in mynde concludyng in reason,
That all tyrantes plainly to specifie,
Had here short lyfe, or dyd at mischief dye.

The autour agayn presumptuous people
and princes holdyng themselfe for goddes.

The. vii. Chapter.

Folke that been
astonyed in your auyse,
To see tyrantes
that ben incorrigible,
lest fro theyr sees that held the self so wyse
thought theyr power was very muttable.
Though tofore god nothyng is impossible.
wherefore remember & do nothing meruail
in vnware falles though fortune the assaill.

For whan tyrantes been set on hye stages
of dygnities, reygnyng lyke wode lions,
full harde it is to wpest theyr corages,
Other to temper theyr dyspolicions.
wooldly felicitie so blyndeth theyr reasons,
As they to god wer egall of power,
And had fortune vnder theyr daunger.

Recorde of Dionise that oft was astrapde
Bassaut of fortune like as was his fate,
for vicious liuyng thre tymes dysmayde,
As his story remembreth of old date.
Next on the ryng now commeth Polycrate,
with one Vitruuius tyrant of Itavle,
Reygnyng lyke wolues toppresse þe popaile

For whan tyrantes in dyuers regions,
Of surquedy catche an opinion,
That theyr estates and dominacions,
shoulde euer endure by long succession,
as god nor fortune myght not put them doun
But as they wer in theyr estate royall,
This woold to rule to both two egall.

First toward god thei haue lost shame & dyd
touching his guerdons other of ioy or pain
Indifferente atwene trowth and falscheid,
theyr lust pserued, no foris who laugh or plein
God is forgotten, at fortune theyr disdayne,
As both wer reclaymed to theyr lure,
falsly transcendyng þe boundes of measure.

For which sometyme as bokes specifie,
God lyst suffer as made is mencion,
That fortune by a maner mockery,
fauour eth some folke like theyr opinion,
Tenhaunce theyr power by false deception
As the wer set playnly for to seye,
To serue theyr lust and durst not disobey.

How kyng Polycrates of the Isle of
Samos for extortion & tyranny was
haged til euery ioint wet fro other.

The. viii. Chapter.

Recorde I take
on proude Polycrate,
Tyrant of Samos
besyde the see Egee,

Which foz laboured early and eke late,
Again conscience of furious cruelte,
Tabounde in riches, and foz to haue plentie
of worldy treasures, deiming that fortune ay
To his despyres ne durst not say nay.

fortune to hym by many diuers sygne,
Shewed outward great tokens of pleasure,
Was to hym eke right fauourable & benigne
In all her port by a maner attendaunce,
As she had been vnder his obeyfaunce,
to suffice his cofers wth treasures locked fast
Of false entent to morke him at the last.

All worldy richesse his lustes did obey,
And whan he fond she was so fauourable,
foz a reason as she list to playe,
this blind goddesse vnure & euer vnstable
Set hym so hie vpon fames table,
Of false entent in his estate royall,
whan he sat highest to make him haue a fal.

foz in himself of pride he gan to deme,
how that he stode most in prosperitie,
Of them that weared crowne or Diademe,
Aboue al other in most felicitie.
And thus enhaunfed in his royall see,
Thought him egall with goddes in comune
ferre from al daunger of fate or of fortune.

And foz tatempt of goddes the power,
and of fortune the varsaunt doublenes,
he toke a ring of golde full bright and cleere,
Therin a Ruby of excellent richesse,
Seking occasion of some new heaumes,
which neuer afoze had know of such thyng
Into the see anon he cast his ryng.

Dispayred again it to recure,
foz he dempt it was an impossible,
but right anon fishers of auenture,
Like a meruaile very incredible,
among the waues hidrons and horrible,
cast in their nettes if it would auayle,
taking a fische the ryng in his entrails.

which was presented at a solemnitie,
to Polierates with full great reuerence,
whan he sat crowned in his most dignitie,
At a feast of famous excellence.

The fisch vndone anon in his presence,
mid the entrails his keruer fonde the ryng,
of auenture and toke it to the kyng.

Which dempt of pride and high presumpcion,
that Neptunus god of the salt see,
Had of his ryng made restitution,
And durst not offend his maiestee,
wherupon a fantasie caught he, (syghe;
nother heaumenty gods nor fortune blind of
wer both vnhardy tatempt again his might.

His great outrage to god was not vnknow
and his presumpcion fortune hath wel espied
foz which she made aduersitie bend her bow
and of her whele p^r spokes she hath so gredy
wheron he sate most richely magnified.
that he vnwarely down fro his hye nobleste
was brought ful low in sorow & wretchednes

In worldy toy nothing is more to drede,
than whan fortune is most blandisying,
And p^r her flattery is fret with worldy mede
High on her whele to make fooles syng.
Tha of her nature sorow she doth in byng,
witnes of princes of olde or new date,
and recorde also of proud Polierate.

Sometime he sat hye on fortunes whele,
of prosperitie with beemes clere shynyng,
whose temple is made of glas & not of stels
Her chrystal eyes vnwarely dissoluyng.
Though it be fresh outward in shewing,
vnure to stond on, and brotill foz tadyde,
who trusteth most, most likely is to llyde.

The gierish quene of chere and face double
withdrough her fauour and began to varye
fro Polierates set him in sorowe & trouble,
were agayn him maliciously contrarye,
Causing Orontes constable wth king Dary
Dauger this tirant in most his cruelte,
to gynn a warre on Samos the citie.

And whan his glozy was most clere of light
and his nobleste shone highest at the ful,
fortune gan through her changeable might
of his prosperitie the fetters foz to pul.
And than at erst his corage gan to dul,
and all his pride vnwarely foz tappall,

Whan

The fourth

Whan he was spoyled of his riches all,

First whan Dyonis his countrey gan assail
This Polycrates of sodain auenture,
Outrayed was and taken in bataille,
By a full perilous mortall discomfiture.
Thus fortune could bryng him vnto her lure
Through her vnware bgy false dysceynes
led into prysen and bound in strong cheynes

The people that dwelled within his region
Reioysed in heart to see him suffer payne,
His tyranny, his false extorcion,
Caused that they did at him disdain.
For of his death no man list complaine,
me though y world be glad & haue plesace
To see a tyrant brought vnto mischance.

four things his tormentes did augment
Sodayn departing from his olde riches,
And that he saw eche man in his entent,
Of his mischief haue so great gladnes.
Haged he was, mine autour bereth witnes:
and henge so long in tempell, ien & thuder,
Tyl euery ioynt from other went asonder.

To beastes wild and foules rauinous,
naked he henge such was his auenture,
to all folkes he was so odious,
Had in despite of euery creature.
At his departing denyed sepulture,
Guerdon for tyrantes vengeable & rethles,
that cannot suffer y people to lue in peas.

Thus maye tirauntes exceding ferre they
by false outrage ful wel resẽbled be (bouds
To cruell wikes, or to furious houndes,
Fret with an etike of greddy crueltie,
To stanche their hũger auayleth no plentie
which for their surfetes froward for to rede,
In Polycrates in hel shal haue they mede.

Howe the tiraunte Alexander
sleugh his philosopher Cali-
sthenes with other mo. for
saying of truth,

The .iiij. Chapter.



Among all storyes
to tell the piteous case,
Of woful plerintises
that put themself in pces,
In weeping iyen mine autour John Bochas
Was moued in heart not to be rethles,
To write the fall of Calisthenes.
The which (alas) as it is remembred,
was for his truth on peces al dismembred.

For whan Bochas his story gan aduert,
He dempt anon in his fantasie,
No man had so hard a stonen hert,
That might of right his iyen kepe drye,
To see the processe of his tormentye.
Yet gan mine autour his woful pen profer,
to write y wrong done to this philosopher.

This Calisthenes in youth right well threw
his grene age promoted to doctrine, (ed
By influence of heauenly fate adewed,
Greatly to profite in morall discipline,
disposed of nature by grace which is diuine
To conquer. (as bokes specifie.)
The noble surname of Philosophie.

Of his merites famous and notable,
Philosophie dyd her busye payne,
to geue him lucke because that he was able
The sore milke of her brestes twain,
most precious liuor who might therto attain
for bawme is none the vertue wel declared,
of worldly riches may be therto comparid.

This precious piment is poue vnto no folke
aboue all licours it doth so ferre excell.
whose original sprange in the holy scholes,
Of Athens as famous bokes tell, (well
for of Philosophie there sprange out first y
where Calisthenes y experiece is wel couth,
with full plentie was fostered in his youth

Though he was borne of a good linage,
vertue made him moze high bp for ascens
to be enhaunsed for noblesse of corage,
Moze than for bloud who can comprehend
for philosophers and clarkes moze comẽd
the morall vertues etreasured by writings
thã al y treasours of worldly crowned kinges

Of

Of gentel stockes reken out the issues,
that be descended down from a royal line,
If they be vicious and boide of al vertues,
and haue no tarage of vertues discipline
with tēporal treasour though they flourish
as for a time sitting on hie stages, (¶ Wine
without vertue they are but dead ymages.

for though prizes haue cōquered by batail
this world in roundnesse by their chivalrie,
what may their triumphes or noblesse auail
without that vertue by right their titles gie
To be compared vnto Philosophie:
for Philosophers apply all their ententes,
To knowe þ heauen and cours of elemētes

They set no store of thinges transitoie,
nor of fortunes tēper doublenesse.
To heauenly thinges is set al ther memory
how þ leuē planers in their cours thē dresse
meueng their sters sparking in ther bright-
with reuolucions of þ sphares nine, (nesse
mothers of musike as Auctours determine

And in the noble tweine famous houses,
flowing in Grece richest of eneryphone,
Called by old date, the faire true spouses
of Philosophers many moe than one.
In Achademye and in Athenes none,
the byght lanternes of most reuerences,
¶ Hys world renlumine by liberal sciences.

And among other this Calisthenes,
was in his youth put for to scole ye,
In the two scoles of prudent Socrates,
and of Plato which that bare the key,
Offeret misteries and of deuine Joy,
in which two scoles of great hablite,
was none profited half so much as he.

These old clerkes, these two Philosophers
were in tho dayes for doctrine souerayne,
called in thys world þ rich precious cofers
And treasourers that kept þ chelles tweine
amid their bresses wherin god dyd ordeine
Most clere possession put in their depose,
Of al sciences vnder a key close.

This Chalisthenes scoler and auditour,
of Aristoteles by cunning cōquering,

The noble gēme & the most precious flour
of Philosophie al flours surmounting,
wherthrough he was chosen in his lyuing
as hys maister list for hym prouide,
On Alexander tawayte and abide.

for Alexander of kinges most entere
and most woorthy to speake of high prowesse
Dyd Aristoteles humbly requere,
to prouide and doe hys businesse.
By expert knowing and auisenesse,
To send hym one which of Philosophie,
might by good counsaile hys cōquest magnify

To wyte also hys triumphes digne of glorie
and to remember his actes marciall,
But hys palmes of knightthod in memory,
and to direct in esperail,
Hys roial noblesse in vertue morall,
that none erreure wer seen here nor there
In him that should al the world conquire,

But it fel so of knightly auenture,
and of fortunes high promotion,
That he by armes proudly gan recure
of Perse and Medes the mighty region,
Brought king Dary vnto subiection,
gate whole his tresour þ no mā might expre
To account the nōumber of his gret riches

(daunce
which vnure treasoure & flowing haboun-
with wasting shadowes of goodes tāsitory
In surquedous pride gā so his heart auāce
by false ambition & out ragious beinglorie
That made him lese mind and eke memory
to knowe of nature he was no man mortall
But like to goddes that were celestial.

Above the palme of olde conquerours,
knightly triumphes conquestes marciall,
He vsurped by title of his laboures,
To heuenly goddes for to be egall.
And through his merites most impertal,
He gan presume by line he was alled,
with the seuen goddes for to be deified.

Through al his paleys and his roial hall,
a lawe he set vpon peine of life,
That mē of custome should him name & cal
this worlds Monark, not mortall nor passif.

The fourth

Sonne to Jupiter for a prerogative,
which had þe earth as god most of puissance
Conquered by sword vnto his obeisance.

By ful aduice purposed for the nones,
Of pompous outrage & surquedous entent
ful great treasure of gold & precious stones
Vnto the temple of Jupiter he sent,
that the Bishops and prestes should assēt
him to receiue at hys home coming,
like as a god and lyke no mortal thing.

Thus by extort drede and vsurped myght,
was first brought in foule Idolatrie,
Causing princes to receiue again all right,
God ly reuerence of froward maxime trye.
But whan Calisthenes this errour did espie
In Alexander, he besily did entend,
thys false opinion to correct and amend.

But fve causes notable to rehearse,
this Calisthenes in especial, Perle
Though he was king of Egypt, Medes, and
He preued of reason he was a man mortal,
Hys byth eke erthely and not celestial,
father, mother, as of their natures,
Bozne for to dye lyke other creatures.

Hys father Philip of Macedoyne king,
hys mother called Olimpiades,
worldly folke, and heuently no thing,
with kinges, quenes, vp set by hys ences
Yet again death they coude haue no reles,
Lawes of nature mauger their wil to beye,
not lyke goddes but only bozne to deye.

Kind made them subiect to sundry passios,
and many vncouth diuerse infirmities
Nowe glad, nowe heauy of condicions,
folowyng the fourme of their humanities.
But of their false vsurped deyties,
I can not say saue drede and flatterye,
wrongly in erth dyd them deifye.

The Alexander folowing euer hys lust,
foral his lordshyp and his great might,
he suffered passions of hunger and of thirst,
Now whole, now sicke, now heuy, now light
whose enterchaūging in euery mans sight,
Clerley shewed clerkes rehearce can,

He was no god but like a mortal man.

It fel once mine Ictour doth compyle,
in a great heate long oꝝ he was olde,
He bathed hym self in the floude of Ayle,
whereof fortune he sode only toke colde,
His poores opened on parties manyfolde
Lay long after hys soꝝy beareth witnesse,
oꝝ he was cured of that great sicknesse.

But at the last by craft of medicine,
deliuered he was of that infirmitte,
Nothing amended by his power deuine,
By might of Juno, noꝝ Jupiters pouste,
noꝝ by hys owne vsurped deite.
for by the passions which he did endure,
it shewed he was a deadly creature.

Of hym also it is made mention,
he had a custome to fal in dronkenesse,
Through bynolence lost oft his reason,
than of yre and furious hastinesse
He would smite and hurt in hys wodnesse,
which tokens were plainly to termyne,
In his person not heauenly noꝝ diuine.

Whan the Philosopher called Calisthenes
gan first consider al these condicions
In Alexander, he put hym self in pres,
boide of dissimuling oꝝ long dilacions,
for to rebourne such false ambitions,
of godly honour which me dyd on the feine
And from al vices hys corage to restraine.

In thys purpose as any centre stable,
he cast hym fully of true entencion,
To correct al that was reppreuable,
bled in hys person oꝝ in hys region.
Crouth gaue hym heart like a champion,
to tel the king in hys estate royall,
He was no god but a man mortal.

for which the king of indignacion,
Caught a quarel again Calisthenes,
put vpon him vniustly false treason,
only to slea his maister causeles,
And for tatternt him afore al the pres,
said how he had of his iniquitie,
Conspired again hys roy al maiestte.

And fained also the self same time,
Howe he had made a conspiracion
agein his lord by an horrible crime,
Interrupting the religion,
Of his diuine institution.

That in such case there was no better rede
but Calisthenes by lawe must be dede.

And to prolong of his death the paine,
Upon a board he was laid alonge,
his fete smit of, and his handes twaine,
Hys eyen rent out wer not his paine ströge:
thus can tirantes whā they list doe wronge
Sleap philosophers without any ruth,
which spared not for to say them truth.

This cruel bengeaunce might not suffice,
but Alexander, moze to encrease his woe
Dyd cut his lippes in ful cruel wise,
his nose thridles, his eares eke also.
And with the body he bad men should goe,
Tofoze hys host as it is remembred,
to shewe þ trunkes how it was dismembred

In a caue depe and wonder lowe,
Solitarie decked al the boundes,
After these peines he made him to be thow
The place stuffed w good barking houndes
of false entent to rende hys bloody woundes
¶ Clit Lismachus of great compassion,
to mozte hys torment gaue him poison.

Who read euer of tormentes moze terrible,
(O Alexander) thou oughtest be ashamed,
Collea thy clerke with paines so horrible,
for thy vices because he hath the blamed,
Thy royal name therby is diffamed.
But euer tirantes whā they thē list be wode
Of innocentes, retoyse to shede the blode.

Againe this knight gentle Lismachus,
Because he had of him compassion,
king Alexander was melancolious,
without cause, title, or offention,
Let the hūmity with a scarce Lyon
Wode of al helpe for to be succoured,
of entencion he should be deuoured.

But Lismachus quyt him like a knight,
Againe this Lyon in the same place,

Ran fearcely on him & of his martial might
Out of his head his tonge he did arace,
Reconsided to the kinges grace,
Because that he so knightly hath him bozne
Better cherished than euer he was tofozne

Another knight that called was Clitus
famouse in armes for his chualtry,
One the greatest of the kinges house.
And most commended of prudent pollicie;
Most famillier as bokes specifie,
Aboute the king as it was oft pzeued,
to tēpe hys courage whā he was agreued;

The king and he walking hand by hand,
wythin the palace being in presence,
Princes, Dukes, of many diuers land,
where they began by notable eloquence,
Remember of armes the martial excellēce
Of cōquerours and worthy knightes olde
and euer y man about his tale tolde.

Among which, Clitus the gentle knight,
gan to commend and greatly magnifie,
Philip Macedoyne as hym ought of tigh,
both of wisdom and his chualtrye,
¶ Cyl Alexander had the rat enuye.
Can disdaine of furious crueltie,
That any should be cōmended moze thā he

Caught occasion of yre and false hatrede,
agein his knight that was to him most true
w a sharp sword vnwarely made him blede
his heart blode whote and reade of hewe,
By hys sides rayling downe of newe,
Therby to pzeue thys story tel can,
He was no god nor reasonable man.

Thus in princes furious and cruell
men may clerely an euidence see,
How their lordship is not perpetuell,
But ful of chaunge and mutabilite.
Of chere, now frendly, nowe sodein enmitte
record on Clitus most in the kinges grace,
Unwarely slaine and did no trespasse.

Was he worthy to be deified,
this Alexander most double of his corage:
Or was he worthy to be stellified,
This furious prince for his fel outrage,

C.ii.

That

The fourth

That slough his fēdes in his mortal rage:
thus fare tyrantes whan they list be woode
To seke occasion for to shedde blode.

Calisthenes slaine for moral discipline,
and Lisimachus for his compassion,
Eke thys tyrant of false greedy raine,
Slough gentle Clitus agein truth & reasō
as ye haue heard for commendacion
Of king Philip, this story well conueyed,
who trusteth tyrantes shal soonest be detey-
(ued

C Lenuoye.

This tragedie of Calisthenes
declareth vs by notable remembraunce,
He was with Plato and olde Socrates,
In hys youth put vnder gouernaunce.
Drake of the milke by plenteous habūdāce
Of thet two scholes, euer deuorde of slough
Last by Alexander dismembred for his trouth.

first he was sent by Aristoteles,
For tawante by prudent purueiaunce,
On Alexander lest he were recheles,
by presumption in his royal puissauce,
To take vpon him goodly attendaunce,
which he withstode (alas it was great ruth)
To be so slaine because he said truth.

Who with tyrantes list put him self in pres
to haue their fauour & stormy acquaintaunce
He must come flatter and fage doubtles,
be double of heart with fained countenaunce
With chere contrived done his obseruaunce.
For faithfull meaning slaine & that was ruth
Is Calisthenes because he said truth.

Noble princes your subiectes kepe in pees,
Be not so hasty for to doe vengeaunce,
for to tyrantes that be merciles,
God sent short life and sodaine mischaunce.
Who saith youe trouth haue no displeasāce,
Drent in your hearte how it was great ruth
that Calisthenes was slaine for his trouth.

Chowe Alexander king of Epyrus auē-
turing to passe the flood of Acheronte,
there at his back by hys most trusty
was deadly wounded.

The .x. Chapter.

After the complaint of Calisthenes,
Slaine tirauntly and did no trespas,
Came Alexander king of Epirothes
Hys woundes bleding vnto John Bochas
To him declared howe he drowned was,
In Acheronte, a riuer of great fame,
Beside a towne Pandosias was the name.

And as it is remembred and ytold,
Of this notable mighty strong Citie,
It was in Grece built by dayes olde,
and after Pirthus called Pyrothe,
whereas the king held his royal se,
And as booke also determine,
This Alexander came of the same line.

Of whose kinrede is made pleinemencion
Sone to Achilles was this knight Pirthus,
And next in ordre by succession,
father to Alexander was Neoptolemus,
which had also, mine auctour telleth thus,
A full faire daughter the story ye may sene
Olimpiades of Macedoyne quene.

And she was wedded to Philip Macedo,
whilom mother this quene of most renoun
To Alexander the story telleth so,
which al the world brought in subiection.
Whose father Philip of great affecion,
Lete crowne the brother of Olimpiades,
Called Alexander to reigne in Epirothes

To whō king Philip for hys great beauty,
Because he was so faire a creature,
had such affecion and specialte,
As it is remembred in scripture,
of false soule lust agein nature,
as saith Bochas I can him not excuse,
Unlesfully he did hys branty sleue

And by meane of that horrible dede,
which to rehearse is to foule athing,
This sayd Philip in Bochas thus I rede:
In Epirus he made him to be king,
and of extortion by record of writings,
Causeles from thence he byd enchaire,
the king Arimbo the reigning in that place
And

And it shal after, the story telleth so,
Of this Alexander by serious rehearse,
Upon the death of Philip Macedo,
With a great host came into Itayle,
Supposyng greatly for to auayle,
To occupy after his proude entent,
Wholy the boundes of al the Occident.

And though so be þ þ fortune be changeable
Double also by course of her nature:
At his gynnynge he fond her fauourable,
Made him twise proude to recure,
Gave them of Luke to their discomfite,
To haue the field, and mauger al their might,
Of very force to put them vnto flight.

Ageyn Itayle whan he gan this warre,
Fully in purpose the Romayns to assaile,
Of hye presumption procede he gan so farre
With many prince that was in his battaile,
To know afoze by certayn diminayle,
Of his conquest the boundes for to cast,
And of his life how long it should last.

And in the temple of Jupiter the grete,
By diuinours that expert wer and olde,
Seruing this God within þ lond of Crete
This was þ answer which they haue hi told,
And it affirmed by tokens manifold,
How þ he not should eschew þ dreadfull date
Quet the day assigned to his last fate.

And they also assigned a place,
therby to haue knowlagynge moze clere,
Under a Citie, long and large of space,
Called Pandosia, and for to goe moze nere,
By Acheronte a famous great riuer,
Colde him pleyndly and could no ferder sey,
Of necessitie there he must nedes dey.

And though it wer an earnest and no lye,
Of god ordeyned not to be set asyde,
He thought of wisdom his desteny to eschape
and otherwile for hymself prouyde.
Cast in Grece no lenger to abyde,
Warning this riuer noz that fayze citie,
Saue in Grece should no where elles be.

And for to set himself in assurance,
Of entent to eschew his desteny,

Into thye batailes departing his puissances,
Came to Itayle tofoze Luke the cite.
They with helpe of Brutians the cuntrey,
with a great power came out anon right,
Slough al his knights & put him vnto flight.

At the backe they pursued hym so nere,
that his ennies almost wer on him fal,
Vnto a byrde broke with the riuer,
And ouerturned with his planks al,
And Acheronte men that riuer call,
as was tolde him by a certayn knight,
which rode befoze him the riuer in his sight.

For by a rayne that fpl thesame night,
the riuer toere to a dreadfull flode:
And not farre thence in the kinges syght,
Upon the water a little towne there stode,
which made the king change face & bloode.
And specially his pryde gan attame,
whan he wist Pandosia was the name.

And than he gan most dreadfullye remembre,
calling to mynd the prestles diminayle,
which made him quake in euery ioint & membre:
for very feare & his beth to fayle,
No man could hym wylhe noz counsaile,
On euery party he stode so on the wycke,
the flud tofoze him, his ennies at his backe.

To take the riuer he stode in mortal dreade,
And if that he his ennies did abyde,
He wist wel that he was but dede,
Passage was none for to turne asyde,
Thus desolate he stode withouten gyde,
Thought it better to sepyard the riuer,
than with ennies that folowed him so nere.

Their mortal dreades his hert gan constrict
Dreade of the flud for to haue passage,
behind his ennies that gan at him disceyn,
Lest he wer slayn in that mortal rage,
His fate approaching, he but yong of age,
the town Pandosia the tokens did expresse,
with Acheronte that bare thereof witnesse.

And whan that he put in auenture,
To passe the floude or elles to be dead,
whom he most trust of any creature,
toke a great spere, square & sharpe the heade,

The fourth

And at his backe he quaking in his dede,
Crayterously throughout plate and mayle,
Perled his heart the blud abrode gan ralle.

And as it is also of him remembred,
The Lucanoy by vengeable violence,
they haue his carcyn on pieces al dismembred
Till an olde lady being in presence,
Required them of humble pacience,
That she of grace gadze might anone,
his membyres al and ioyne them into one,

And after to send the vnto hys suster dere,
Olimpiades the stately greate quene,
That of affection and loue most entere,
whan it befel that she did them sene,
Should of nature as it must nedes bene,
wepe and proude in hys estate royal,
To bury the body with feastes funerall.

Se here example of this proud kyng,
which would haue scaped his fatal destiny,
Chaunge of places auayled him nothing,
Periody of Princes may not chaunged be,
The terme set fro which they may not flee
For when heauen of death hath set a date,
No mortal man may eschew hys fate.

How Dary king of Persie & Medes
was outrayed by Alexander kyng
of Macedoyne,

The .xi. Chapter.

Alexander called Epitrothes,
He lyst as nowe no lenger for to
tarpe:
Slayne at myschiese for he was
rechles,
Double of corage for he coud change & vary
For turne I wil my penne to king Dary,
which that whilom whoso list take hede,
Most mighty reigned in Persie & Medes.

And among other notable wettours,
Like as I deme by heauenly influence,
Only by tytle of hys predecessours.
And through his prudent royal excellence,
To great encrease of hys magnificence,
He had all Asie as made is mention,

Under his lordship and dominacion.

And as mine auctoz Bocas doth defyne,
He was discended from the imperiall blood,
Of Ariaxerxes, and borne eke of that line,
Passed al Princes of treasour and of good,
In Persie & Medes his great Empire stode,
In hundred prouinces, countreies of puissance,
And leue and thyrty he had in gouernance,

Ouer al Asie toward the Orient.
His lordship last (bokes make mynd)
And had toward the Occident,
Ouer Egypt, power as I fynd,
The read sea was not left behynd.
Deming himself of al earthly treasour,
was none but he, lord and gouernour.

Toward septentrion & vnder the middaye
his power taught & his regaly, (Sphere
Ouer Inde in Chronicles ye may lere,
And to the boundes of great Armeny,
Lord of the kingdom that called is Darchy
worldly folke dempt hym with god egall,
Master to fortune, & she not but his thall,

But in his highest exaltacion,
Of worldly glozy he coud not preuayle:
for al his riches and beyn ambition,
But fortune durst him wel assayle,
In his most ryche royall apparayle,
cast in her chages to yeeue hi a sharp shoure,
By Alexander of Grece inheritour,

Vnto purpose I will my penne dresse,
for to declare and make mencion,
How proud Dary in his most noblesse,
was by fortune from his seate cast down,
for anon after the coronacion
Of Alexander in Macedoyne kyng,
this was the proccesse anon of hys working

He not delayed nor made no long date,
In purpose full y of yre to procede,
Of Persie & Medes the scepters to translate
Al theyr riches to conquere and possede,
Perpetually for to abyde in dede
Under Grekes mighty obeysaunce,
In Macedoyne to haue gouernaunce.

And

And as myne auctour well rehearse can,
He set in Grece the mighty strong Citty,
Of Corinth the metropolitan,
there to establish his imperial see,
In regalibus whan he list crowned be,
As man, who god list of his might to marke
the world to conquere & be therof Monarke

At the gynnynge of hys conquest famous,
Throughtout Grece in every region,
first he chafe out of his fathers house,
knightes that wer most souerein of renown
Notable in armes and of condicion,
feythful & true, which had of hys prudence,
foresyght in armes of martial prouidence.

To them he did ful notably assigne,
As men expert in knightly apparayles,
To make his stuffe with many ryche signe
And forge of stele his plate and hys mayles,
Gave them þ rule to gouerne his battayles
for prouidence of yore it hath been tolde,
ful much auayleth of knightes wise & olde.

All thys accomplished, he list no lenger tary
This worthy king but with his ordinaunce,
Purposed to begynne on kyng Dary:
And as it is put in remembraunce,
In most proud wise he gan himself anaunce,
first in hys way to byenne and beate down
Of hally yre. Thebes the mighty towne.

After he gate two mighty regions,
The tone of Phrygia, þ tother called Lyde:
Set by olde tyme wer they foundacions,
Upon two riuers renning there besyde:
whose golden grauels they brightnes may
Partolus & Erine men the cal, (not hide
riches of streames though men reken the al

And of his conquest ferther to termine,
He wan Mauria, a prouince wonder strong,
In Asia, one chiefest of the nyne,
And Pamphilia a kyngdome large & long,
he gate also where it wer right or wrong.
for where þ conquest haue any title of right
my cuning it passeth, my reason & my might

I toke no partie, nor me list net tary,
In this matter, but furth I wil procede.

Now Alexander hasted toward Dary,
tacheue his conquest of Perse & eke of Medes
But first he came to Phrygia I rede,
Into a Citty the name to specifye,
Thylke dayes it named was Gordy.

After mine auctour affirme well I dare,
There was a temple in Phrygia (thus saith he)
Of Jupiter, in which there stode a chare,
with ropes bounde of stones and of pierre,
Among which men might behold and see,
A fatal knot by craft made so subtil,
that no man could vndoe it by no wyle.

For who that had science or cunnyng,
That curious knot to lose or vntwine,
Duer Alie he should be crowned kyng.
And Alexander (as booke determyne,)
Seing this chayne knit with many line,
And how it sempt a maner impossible,
To seuer it which was indiuisible.

The chayne with cordes was so enterlased,
That richely stode in Jours tabernacle,
which by hys wit could not be embzased,
Nothor by craft nor no solemne miracle,
tyl Alexander by a diuine Oracle,
drew out his sword, wherof men had woder
kark the knot and cordes al asunder.

wherby he wist that he was ordeyned,
Duer al Alie to be lord and kyng.
which to reioyce this story is not feyned,
He rode like Mars his battayls conueying
thow Perse & Medes, his staderds displayig
toward his conquest where I leue him dwell,
And of this chayne & knots I wil you tell.

Prudent Iustinus an olde Chronicler,
In his Chronicles rehearseth this story,
How one Gordius a pooze labourer,
Besyde the cite that called is Gordy:
Caring hys lond dō his open gye.
All maner foules that hath wynges flight,
Hye in the ayre appeared in his syght.

Unknow to hym the token what it ment,
with diuinours cast hym to counsaile,
Called Iugures, which wholly they intent,
Knowing the processe of suche diuinayle,
Wher

The fourth

Where it shal profite or disaile,
And at the gate of Gordy the citie,
He met a mayde excelleng of beautie.

Whiche from aboue by heauenly influence,
Had of her byrth a maner knowlageng,
In such augurie great practise and science
Which to Gordius expounded euery thyng,
Sayd of Ahe he should be lord and kyng,
And reygne there duryng al hys lyfe,
In hope wherof she became his wyfe.

After his wedding he were fortunate,
The chronicle can beare me well record,
There fel in Whygge a sodein great debate
Among the commons and moztall discord,
Knowing no meane to bring them at accord
til they goddes by notable prouidence,
taught them a way appeale theyr byolence.

Howe that debate should among them last,
Unto the time they had chosen a kyng.
And they gan crye & pray theyr goddes fast,
By some sygne or miracle out shewing,
to yue to them a maner knowlageng
that they might to theyr notable succres
These such one that should the set in pees.

They had aunswere to wayte & be wel ware
To set spyes by busye attendaunce,
On whom they met ryding in a chare,
To Ioues temple to doe hys obseruaunce,
And him receiue by goddes ordenaunce,
Upon his head without more tarryng,
to set a crown in Whygge to reigne as king

And Gordius in his chaire ryding,
toward the tēple they on the way him met:
And awayting, chose him to theyr kyng,
And solemnely home they did him set.
Upon his head a ryche crowne they set,
And he to them so egal was and mete,
that he them brought in rest and quiete.

Thus to the crowne Gordius did attepne,
By tokens shewed vnto hys great auayle:
And their discordes and strifes to restreyn
He to his lieges gaue notably counsaile,
that they should with roial apparayle,
take his chaire as he did them deuyse,

And offer it by in most lowly wyse.

In the temple that was consecrate,
to Jupiter a ful solemne place,
And more to make their offering fortunate,
They should it set without lenger space,
Tofore the goddesse that was called Grace,
which by miracle theyr heartes to appeale,
Set al the people in quiete and in ease.

And whan the king Alexander had,
Loosed the knot of whiche I haue you tolde;
And of the chaire which Gordius ladde,
the secretes seyne and misteries manifold,
wooldy presumption gan make his bert bold,
without tittle of any righteousnesse,
the Citie Gordye to spoyle of her richesse.

And al Whygge he robbed eke also,
Up to the mountayn he called was Taurus;
The which hill hath famous names two,
for it is also named Caucasus,
Where this prince most victorions
ordeined first proudly with spere & shilde,
Ageyn kyng Dary for to hold a field.

Upon a mountayn they together met,
The martial pleyne named Abasties,
and most proudly theyr wardes there they set
All for the warre and nothing for the peas,
Where Alexander in knightthod perels,
Al the Persiens batayled in his syght,
On Daries partie put vnto the flight.

King Alexander shortly to conclude,
In hys most stately roial magnificence,
Set not his trust in no great multitude,
but in his knyghtes which lōg in his presēt
Had had in armes long experience,
Were wel prised in martial discipline,
to enhaunce his conquest by their prudent

Doctrin.

Which in y tourney haue the so wel borne,
that in their noblesse found was no lacke,
for sixty thousand of fote men the before,
they slough of Perse & men on horse backe,
Other ten thousand so mortal was y make
And forty thousand as made is mention,
wer prysoners and put to theyr raunson.

On

On grekes party the story doth well shewe
 Macedonians on Alexanders side,
 In comparison were slaine but a few,
 For of fote men and men that did ride,
 Though the fieldes þ were so large & wide
 There wet þ day in al their mortall strues
 For ful thye hūdyed which þ lost their liues

Dary could none other rescue make,
 fled at mischief in ful great distresse,
 his wife, hys daughter, led away and take,
 his tents spoyled, his story beareth witnesse
 Grekes made glad with ful great richesse,
 his cofers spoyled, he found no better succour
 And he impouerished of al his whole trea-
 (source

When Dary sawe his deadly auenture,
 ful piteously in heart he did mourne,
 and anon after this discomfiture,
 To Babilon in hast he gan retorne.
 And while that he did there sojourn,
 knowing no recure to hym þ might anasle,
 with Alexander to hold more battaile,

Then of purpose to set hym self in ease,
 and for taledge his deadly fet greuaunce,
 In hys entent king Alexander to please,
 call for to send him letters of pleasure,
 Yene hym giftes in full gret haboundaunce,
 But al þ sleights which Darius hath wrought
 king Alexander set the echon at nought

This manly king kept hys conceit close,
 list not shewe what he ment in dede,
 But call fully after hys purpose,
 upon hys conquest ferther to procede.
 After þ geating of Perse and eke of Mede
 to winne Siria, Egypt, and Libie londe,
 Deming fortune ready to his hond,

And of his conquest ferther to endite,
 when his glory gan most freshly shine,
 The temple of Jupiter call him to visite,
 which stode in Libie Auctours determine.
 Said how he was descended from þ lyne,
 of thilke god borne to be hys heire,
 As lord of heauen, fire, water, earth, & ayre.

And that the priestes fully should assent,
 with heauenly goddes to make him egall,

Great richesse and treasure he them sent,
 Thus drede and mede made him celestall,
 falsly forgate that he was mortal.
 And of ambition by martiall appaile,
 Cast with Dary againe to haue batayle.

And as I find howe they dyd mete,
 the two princes with people innumerable,
 In the confronte of the lond of Phemite,
 and king Dary of folkes defensable,
 Brought into field a people incomparable
 foure hūdyed thousand of fote mē fet fro far
 With Alexander for to hold warre,

An hūdyed thousand there came when also
 On horsebacke in stele armed bright:
 and al thys people when they had a doe,
 Albe that day ful long last the fight,
 were slayne and take, and yput to flight.
 Where Alexander to his encrease of glory,
 Had of king Dary that day the victorie,

And Persiens to their finall mischief,
 without mercy or paying of ransom,
 With king Dary were put to great reppel
 voyde of al hope and consolacion,
 fled as I find into the region,
 called Parthie where as it is tolde,
 He of that people was take and put in hold

And though hys fetters were of gold rich,
 he had therof god wote no pleasure,
 Fortunes giftes be not aye fliche,
 In her false whele there is such variance
 diuers of chere, straunge of her countenaunce
 Made Alexander with a litel numbre,
 The multitude of Dary to encumbr,

Within a town called Tanea he was take,
 In chariot with cheines strong ybounde,
 of al his frendes piteously forsake. (wound
 Led & throught perced with many mortall
 And thys murther contrived was & founde,
 By one Vellus a froward recheles knight
 which stode afore most furthred in his sight

And was assured by feith of his legaunce,
 to king Dary to be true in dede (chaunce
 But this false traytour god send him mis-
 Caused his woundes mortally to blede.

Yee

The fourth

Yet o: he died he sent in al his byde,
A Persien knight, sad and of great age,
To Alexander, to tel hym his message.

As by olde tyme longed vnto kynges,

C Lenuoye.

Goe thanke that prince of his hie noblesse,
whiche of his grace and mercy most habound
Him list to shewe so great gentlenesse,
vnto my wife and chyldren as it is found.
For which to him I am so much bound,
that he myne enmie of his benignitie,
In their distresse list haue of them pittie.

This tragedie piteous for to here (table
therewith of fortune & chaunges lamen.
Of corall thrones, of gold and stoness clere,
in worldly prynces how they be euer vnstable,
Their fatal whele most diuers & chageable
In vnware turne list not her cours to tary,
To thow the doune record vpon kyng Dary.

And sith I se that nedes I must bere,
Through bloody woundes which I may not
say Alexander of grace & I preye (recure
for to haue ruche of mine auenture,
Next to ordeine for my sepulture,
and condiscend to graunt mine axing,
For to be buried as longeth to a kyng.

Who can o: may be ful assured here,
to make fortune to be so treatable,
To find out a way o: search out the manere
By obligation to find her immutable.
Her double face the world ay deceivable,
Shew vs ech day how falsly they ca vary
By couert fraude record vpon kyng Dary.

Praying the goddes which been immortall
whan he hath done to quit him his mede,
That if his mercy most imperial,
him list of grace for to take hede,
To bury me kyng of Persie and Medie.
For if thys fauour be in his heart found,
to his noblesse the fame shall aye rebound.

Exauple how Phobus with his beemes clere
sheweth soe morow his light most agreable
But long o: eue derknes ther doth appere,
through cloudy reynes & mistes long dura-
To vs declaring by tokes ful notable (the
worldly dignities, now fresh & now contrary
Can chaunge their tides record of kyng Dary.

Requyring him of his imperial might,
of my foule murdre to se ech circumstance
for murdre alway calleth to god of right,
Neuer ceasing but by continuance,
vnto the heauen to crye for vengeance,
Namely on murdre compassed & fore thought
which by auspemet is execut and wrought.

Through al Asia, Persie and Medie Ifer,
his lordship last a thing incomparable.
to Ethiopie vnder the midday sphere,
full of treasure with golde innumerable,
his boundes caught fortune eke seruisable,
To obey his lustes til he gan falsly vary.
by expert fraud to proue her might in Dary.

And sith I haue lated on the this bonde,
to Alexander to doe my message,
And him coniuured here with my right hond
to avenge my death wrought by greter outrage
My blood out shed with pale & dead visage
here bound in stokes to gods most benigne
with right whole heart my spyte I resignie.

Noble princes with whole heart and entere
life vpon your corages, hold this no fable.
Though ye sit hie, conceiue with good chere
No worldly lordship in earth is parduable.
And sith ye be of nature reasonable,
Among remembre as thing most nece sary.
All stant vpon chaunge record on kyng Dary.

Thus he lay starke ther was found no blood
Like as another mortall creature.
whan Alexander the murdre vnderstode,
As ye haue heard remembred by scripture,
He did ordeine for bys sepulture.
The funeral feast holde in al thynges,

There Bochas remembreth the batailles,
and losse of realmes of antiquite,
with the falling of diuers
nobles.

C L



Hee ginneeth Bochas
remembre in certeine,
The great sorowes, the
mortal disauailes,

The losse of realmes & bloud shed in vaine
begonne of warres and merciall appailes
Called to mind of olde the fel batailles
gunne of antiquite, as made is mencion,
first atwene Grekes & them of Troy town

A piteous heart it would make blede,
to haue in memory & dyedeful gret outrage
As ye haue herd wrought in Perse & Mede
atwene Darie and Alexander in their age
Eke atwene Romans and the of Chartage
the woful troubles of warres first begonne
Cause al the mischeues & ben vnder sunne

On either party who can remembre aright
How losse, nowe lucre, cometh of deuision,
nowe disencres, nowe heuy and nowe light,
Howe life, now death, for short concludon,
for Bochas saith, such false disencion
Hath many kingdom & stode in good estate
turned to ruine and made them desolate.

Remember of Troy the walles broke down
In Grece destroyed many stronge Citie,
in Perse and Mede great desolation,
Rome dispurueyed of martiall suertie,
Castelles, toures of olde Antiquite,
Made ruynous in Affrike and Chartage
caused by warres and Martes cruel rage

Who list consider wrought by daies olde,
the course of conquest of these warrours,
In Alexander he clerely may behold,
By remembraunce of his progenitours:
and of hys blode howe al the successours,
Had fatallly or they dyd hence wend,
A soden death or a shamefull ende.

ful many rekened that were of hys linage,
for to succede in his possessions,
To sire and thirty parting hys heritage,
to ech assigned their roial porcions,
And first as he made hys diuisions,
he gaue of Phrygie the prefecture of right,

To Leonatus that was so good a knight,

But a litle while last his possession,
for the countreys list hym not obeye.
They of Athenes had indignacion,
with Antipater, for he did them warrepe.
Yet in that warre plainly for to seye,
Leostenes their Duke their gouernour,
was slaine & day he fonde no better socoure

And Leonatus that was hys aduersarie,
Of Antipater the party to sustene.
fond fortune to hym that day contrarie.
for in & field though he rode armed cleue,
in a sharpe spere his wound was made greene
At mischief slaine mine auctour doth cōple
Thus hys lordship last not but a while.

Antipater another successoure,
Of Alexander, as made is mencion,
was by record the same false traitoure,
that for his death tempred the poison.
Cassander his sonne accomplished & treason
bare the cuppe which that made him sterue,
with that strōg venim whā he did hym serue

Antipater of this crime culpable,
greatly desired in his opinion,
Upon al tho for to be vengeable
that likely were to espie his treason.
Dyedde him soze hauing suspencion,
lest he were accused to the states,
Of crime called lese magestates.

Hys sonne assented to that horrible dede,
which to Alexander being in Babylon,
Most traitourly without shame or dede,
As ye haue heard presented the poyson.
And yet the king as made is mencion,
Though he to him false was and contrary,
he made hym perfect lord of & lond of Cary.

And among other notable warrours,
There were thre moze ful worthy & famous
Set in the noumbre of his enheritours,
Polipercon and Neoptolemus,
And eche of them to other enuious,
within a field the story doth vs lere,
Cuerich slough other as they mette Here.

The fourth

Of Perdiccas what should I write or seine,
which among awo was one the best knight
that whā Alexander lay in dying in certein,
And gan to feble of hys force and might,
Sempt afoze that it fate well of right,
Now this Perdiccas for wisdom & manhede
In Macedoine should after hym succede.

And vnto him with there and loke benigne
vpon his bedde for sicknes & complaining,
With ful whole heart for a notable signe
of succession, he gaue to him a ring,
After hys day to be crowned king
of Macedoine, such he most might auale,
Through al his epyre to haue þ gouernale

And yet seyth Bochas breuely in sentence,
though he of knighthode and hie prowesse
Of manly force and also of prudence,
Passed al other the stozy beareth witness,
by victus pride & froward boistounes (rage
He was moze hindred through his own out-
tha al his enemies might do to him damage.

For through his pride and great extortions
fro Macedoine the people of that cuntrey
fledde into other straunge regions,
and of presumption the stoze seith howe he,
Began a warre agein king Ptholome,
where he was slaine in al mens sightes,
not of his emies but of his own knightes.

Of Ariarathes of Capadoce king,
which prouince toyneth to Sirye,
Touching the boiides by record of wyting,
Toward the Dyent the lond of Armenye.
Hating two countries Cilice and Isaurie,
toward Cyre, and a great riuer
Renning amids w streames freshe & clere

This Ariarathes wher he was loth or fain
in dayes fewe hath his kingdome lozne;
for by Perdiccas proudly he was slaine,
of whom that I haue you told befozne.
Thus wooldye princes though they had it
for al their lordship & dominacion, sworne
By fraud of fortune vnwarely be put down

And among other princes of that age,
vpon Alexander dully abydyng,

Bochas rehearseth Amilchar of Chartage,
Duke of that Citie by record of wyting,
after the death of that worthy king,
As ye haue heard ymurdred with popson.
This said Amilchar repairing to his toun,

was slaine in Chartage shortly to cōclude
of cruel malice and conspiracion,
Within that Citie of false ingratitude,
whā he of knighthod fraunchised had þ toun,
And notwithstanding all hys high renoun,
whan he stode hiest in his felicitie,
He by the cōmons was slaine of that Citie,

Howe Eumenes was twise outtraped
by Antigonus, and at the last dyed
in prison.

The .xiii. Chapter.

Alexander in his roial estate
had al conquered tofoze
as ye haue heard,
He like a god most pompeus

and elate,
As soueraine prince of al thys misdeled,
To take vpon him was nothing aferd
to cleime in cōtires a thing þ was not late
Of Jupiter to be both sonne and heye.

One of the principles who so taketh hede,
That first brought in false Idolatrie,
was thilke time that prestes for false drede,
His name with goddes gan to magnifie,
and so to call him of feyned flattery.
And mid their temples in Libye on a stage
of his liknes they set vp an ymage.

But littel or nought to him it might auale,
Agein hys death for to doe succour,
When the fell popson hys hert did assaile,
which made him fade as doth a somer flour
Of whose empire was none enheritour.
Sauc in hys death, thus stode þ woful cas
Twene sire & thyrp his lond deuised was.

And in hys stozy ful pleyntly it is told,
this desparricid to make it firme and stable
He was leyde forth vpon a couch of gold,
to rehearce by tokens ful notable,

Whom

Whom he dempt of very sooth most able,
Of all his princes plainly to discern,
Whā he wer dead his kingdom to gouerne.

First there was one among all that pces,
Pert Alexander the knightliest man,
The worthy knight called Eumenes,
Whose hye renoun full well rehearse can
Prudent Justinus the great historian,
Ordyned afore to gouerne realmes two,
all Capadocce and Baphlagonte also,

his hye noblesse as made is mencion,
In especiall more to magnifie,
hym lacked nought of commendacion,
That apperteyned vnto chyualre,
To hye prudence or noble polycye.
except thre thinges, mine autour saith ysame
A crowne, a scepter, and a kynges name.

But for that he al other dyd excell,
both of prudence and famous cheualre,
It is remembred as some bokes tell,
That there wer some had therat enuye,
for whan fortune lyst to set by hye,
Any person aloft vpon her whele,
Some are besyde that lyke it neuer a dele.

Who holdeth him euer vpon his mountaynes
findeth great experience of blastes & howrs
oft is troubled with storme & windy reines.
So of Alexander the proud successours,
whan they sat byest thynnyng in their flours
wynd of enuy, fortune held so the rother,
That eche was busy to destroy other.

On hylles hye it is an impossible,
A man abyde without wynd or reyne,
A thyng expert and very visibill,
Hye climbing vp is medled with disordeine.
Prasce hath enuy as it is oft seyne,
and through preferring of fortune in estates
is euer caused great warre & great debates.

This same thyng was wel expert & proued,
Among these sayd royall enheritours,
Of Alexander, for eche of them was greued,
To se his fellow reygne in his flours.
And thus atwene these mighty successours
Of false enuy there gan so great a strife,

That eche made other for to lose his lyfe.

And as it is afore made mencion,
Polipercon, and Neoptolemus,
By a maner false conspiracion,
Agein Eumenes wer inly enuous.
Of whose fallenes he was suspicious,
Tyll on a day there is no more to seyne,
meting in batel he slough the both tweyn.

For which slaughter proude Antigonus,
Of Macedoyne prefect and gouernour,
Werte in his hert so fel and despitous,
And was withal a noble werrour.
with his knightes did wholly his labour,
Agein Eumenes by marciall apparayle,
A field assigned to hold a great batayle.

Made vpon hym a proude discomfiture,
As they met armed byght in stele,
And thus Eumenes of mostall auenture,
fled at mischief into a strong castelle,
whereof his knightes lyked neuer a dele.
For as the storye playnly maketh mynde,
That day he fled and left his men behynd.

In which castelle for he stode destitute,
fro thence he cast in all haile to flee,
In his great mischief to fynde some refute
That tyme he drough hym to a strōg courte
Some succour to geat auenged for to be,
Called Argire by Grekes of entent,
The Latin corrupt of this worde *Argent*.

Of Argiraspidēs a people that there dwell,
they name they toke after that region,
The which lond as olde bokes tell,
Hath of siluer most plentie and foyson.
For which cause by old description,
It toke his name of nature and of cyght,
Because the soyle like siluer shyneth byght.

And of this Ile which hath so great a presse,
as myne autour maketh rehearse,
How the people be prouident and wyse,
Prudent in armes and manly in battayle,
Both to defend and proudly to assaile.
which by their wisdom & circumspect counsaile
To kyng Alexander stode in great auaile.
U. i. And

The fourth

And Eumenes one of his successours,
As ye haue heard dyed to that countrey,
There to find refute and succours
In his mischief, and great aduersitie,
And with his wordes of great autoritie,
His noble language and his fayre eloquence
The people had hym in ful great reuerence.

And for they wer manly and coragious,
Able to assenble both in plate and mayle,
He made them ryse again Antigonus,
By theyr prowesse with him to haue bataille,
But of fortune his partie gan to fayle,
where thilke people, the story telleth thus,
Had euer afore be victorius.

Antigonus hath the field recured,
þ day his knyghtes faught like wood lions,
In furious tene of corage assured,
Broke their tentes and their paulions,
Spoiled their castels, robbed their dongeons
Where that countrey vnwarely thus afraid,
Had neuer afore in bataille been outrayde.

And of despite this people reches,
Caught in their heart great indignacion,
Again their prince this sayd Eumenes
Which had the brought to this destruccio.
And all that people of one opinton,
Presented hym it was not after long,
To Antigonus bound in cheynes strong.

In this processe briefly to procede,
at great mischief he dyed in prison,
He fond no mercy plainly as I rede,
For all his noblesse nor his hye renoun,
Yet of his manhode it is made mencion,
Who that his story list to loke ryght,
with Alexander there was no better knight

In his conquest euery houre and space
he most cherished for his high noblesse,
Aboue al other stode most in his grace,
To helpe and releue folke in their distresse
Albe that he dyed in wretchednes,
As vs declarpng the great variaunces,
That all day fall in fortunes chaunces.

¶ Euenore.

This tragedy of Duke Eumenes,
Sheweth of fortune þ froward doublenes
How wooldly princes that been reches,
With vnware chaunges fall in distresse,
And there may be no greater heaumes,
After prosperitie, nor greater payne,
Than aduersitie which that is sodayne.

Greatest enure where is greatest peace,
greatest awaite, where is most richesse,
And greatest ease where is rest and peace,
where most discorde, most is heaumes,
And of all sorowe, sorowfullest extesse,
Is thilke sorow that a man constreine,
After prosperitie, aduersitie sodayne.

Princes in earth of power pearles,
which excelled al other in noblesse,
Had in this world by conquest most encrease
as Alexander, the story bereth witnes.
Remember the fine of al their hye prowesse,
and the triumphes to which they did attem,
After prosperitie, aduersitie sodayne.

The strong enheritours which þ he out chese,
Syxe and thirtie the number to expresse,
which had possessiōs of kingdomes doutles
Eche thyng obeying to the þ worthines,
till fortune through her doublenes,
Shewed her might vnwarely to ordayne,
After prosperitie, aduersitie sodayne.

Noble princes to auoyde all dissencces,
among your selfe discordes do represse,
be not enuious nor frous causeles,
worke nothyng of hasty wilfulnes,
Let discrecion be your gouernetes,
for there must folow if ye part on twaynt,
After prosperitie, aduersitie sodayne.

How queene Olimpias mother of king Alexander,
for she delited in vices, murder
and vengeaunce, dyed at mischief.

¶ The. xiiii. Chapter.



Ext in order to Bochas
dyd appere,
After the mischief of
Eumenes,

¶

The great queene with a full piteous chere,
Mother of Alexander Olimpiades,
borne of the line of Cadices,
among queenes her dozy deareth witness,
excelled all other in beautie and riches.

She was daughter to Acopolemus,
The mightie kyng of Epirothes,
and had suspect how Aectanabus.
By enchauntment put hymself in pree,
Of wisely trowth to make hym recheles.
But Bochas here for to saue her name,
wrote but a litle of her dislauderous fame.

This sayd queene right fayre of her visage,
was fyrst brought forth in thilke regions,
where al the worship of bloud and of lynage,
held the p'scepters and the rich crownes
throughout al Grece with full possessions,
So that this queene that time nere a fette,
was of beautie called the Lodessterre.

But among al her great prosperitie,
her youth flowing in most souerain nobles
her ioy was medled with great aduerstie,
than Philip Macedo to her great heuines
was mortally wounded in distresse,
In Sithia by a certayn nation,
called Triballoys as made is mention.

for in that countrey vpon a certayn day,
wheras he faught and dyd his busye payne,
To geat a citie and at a siege lay,
and for that aut dyd his stiffe o'dayn,
he lost vnwarely one of his eyen twayn,
that whan þ queene beheld his sodayn wound
for sorow she fel euen flat to the ground.

Another thyng boke's specific,
troubled her fame by great heuines,
The suspect slaunders of aduoutre,
wrought by Aectanabus enchaunting her
the light eclipsyng of hie nobles (fartnesse
by swift report for to hynder her name,
what flyeth moze swift than wycked fame:

In womanhede as autours all write,
most thing comended is their chaste honestie
thyng most flaudious they nobles catwite
Is whan p'incesses of hasty frailtee,

Excede the boundes of wisely chastitee.
For what auayleth lynage or royall blood,
whan of they living the report is not good

The holy bed defoyled of mariage,
Or once soyled may not recured be,
The voice goth forth & y froward langage
by many realmes and many great citie.
Slaunders hath a custome & that is great pite,
True other false by contagious soun,
Once rep'ed by it goth not lightly downe.

And to moze hindring of Olimpiades,
Philip from her did away decline.
and of the kyng of Epirothes,
The wife he toke to his concubine,
Called Cleopatra plainly to termine.
And thus in mischief to increase her trouble
Their false aduoutre gan to wepe double.

Of this procelse write I will no moze.
cause the matter is abhominable,
for king Philip the bargein bought soze
as is remembred by Chronicles full notable.
Slayne on a day sitting at his table,
full sodaynly or he toke any hede,
Pausanias did that cruel dede.

Of which slaughter there folowed a strange ^{(caas}
as ye haue heard by Pausanias wrought
Olimpiades full glad and mery was,
Heauy outward her heart voyde of thought
yet saynyngly she hath out wares sought,
for hym to hold solempne and royall,
Like Grekes righres a feast funecall.

After whose deeth wrought of great crueltie
kyng Alexander made no lenget let,
Made Pausanias taken for to be,
and to be hanged vpon an hye gibet.
Upon whose head there was a crowne set,
Of gold and pearle and rich stones Inde,
By Olimpiades in soze as I fynde.

for he stode greatly in the queenes grace,
and as folke dempt of suspencion,
they met together in many priuy place,
Which greatly turned to her confusion.
for noyse arose through all that region,
that by thorcasion of their misliuyng,

The fourth

Howe Pausanias slough Philip the kyng.

But she anone in her malice feruent,
fro the gibet made him to be take down,
Made his body solemnly to be bzent,
kept his exequies with great oblation,
After the rytes of that region,
Not lest behynde in partie nor in all.
That appertained to feasties funerall.

Upon kyng Philip as it wer for the nones,
to doe her Lorde a shame a despyte,
Solemnly she made bzenne the bones,
Of Pausanias for a false appetite,
Unto no man she had so great despyte.
For which this feast was lyke in al thinges
To the requies of princes and of kynges.

She made his sword also to be take,
with which he slough Philip the great kyng
Offred it by onely for his sake,
To soze Apollo by recozde of writing.
Which to her was slaüder & great hindring
Caused folke deme in theyr entent,
To slep kyng Philip how she was of assent.

To be cruell was set al her pleasaunce.
(For merciles bozde of al pitee.)
On Cleopatra causyng this vengeaunce,
That she her self henge vpon a tree,
Murdered her doughter the story ye may see,
What malice may, if it be declared,
Unto the malice of women be compared.

I speake of them that be malicious,
And list of custom for to be vengeable,
among a thousand one may be vertuous,
And in two thousand some one is merciable.
But whan they be of rancour vntreatable,
There is no Tiger more cruell doubtles,
Accorde I take of Olimpiades.

And she of malice was more set of fyze,
To execute boldly her vengeaunce,
By thocasion of the great empyre,
of Perse & Mede full famous in substaunce
which shode by conquest vnder þ governaunce
of Alexander, whereby she thought her strö
tacheue ech thyg whether it be right or wög

Dempt her power should ay contume,
By the meane of his hye maiesty,
God is stronger than the queene fortune,
which suffered her sonne in his most dignite
In Babilone popsoned for to be,
As is remembred in many old histories,
after his triumphes and his great victories.

But for to passe bryfly by writyng,
Touching the queene as made is mention,
whan dead was Philip the famous mighty
she had of Macedoyn ful possessiö, (king
And governed that mighty region,
where like a wulveste as autoz of her wyte
To shede blood she gan her self delite.

In her tiranny most feruent and proue,
Reioysed in slaughter and to se men blede,
for serpent none was more malicious,
This was this queene, in bokes ye may rede.
Yet after all this she receiued her mede,
for though fortune fauoured her a whyle
yet with her traynes she coude her wel begyle

The ende of tirantes and eke of tirānelles
And of murderers be thei neuer so woode,
Of popson mongers and enchauntresses,
Of false supplantours contrayto al good
And of cōspirers and of them þ thirst blood,
all these must haue by goddes puruepañce,
Or here Nozt life or sodayn vengeaunce.

In Macedoyn this queene was most behated
for her vengeable moztal oppression,
And Cassandre again her hath debated,
And gunne a warre vpon her region,
Which to Alexander ministered the popson,
As ye haue heard tofore of hym deuised,
By Antipater most mortally practised.

She found no refute but toke her to flyght,
This cruel queene, this Olimpiades,
into a mountaın that shode ferre out of sight
and of her kin there folowed her a gret pzeis
Supposyng to haue liued there in pees.
for on that hyll shode a great dongeon,
Strongly walled about enuiron.

which that marched to a great cite,
Called Epidura stondyng in great dobut,
Because

Because Cassander of old enmitte,
Had for her layde a siege all about,
And none was hardy for to yssue out,
Till Cassander of false compassed treato,
Made with them a composition.

His faith was layde that time for hostage,
By othe assured to Olimpiades,
By couert fraude vnder faire language,
To suffer her with him to liue in pees,
But of his promes he false and rebles,
For vnder treate as made is mencion,
The quene he toke and cast her in prison.

But wil ye see a royall hie courage,
How boldly deliuered fro prison,
She descended imperiall of disage,
With al her maidens about her enuiron,
Her enemies present wonder than Lion,
Being her honde so stately of her face,
Whan they wer proudest tarest her & manace

She was of purpose arrayed for the nones,
As sayth Bochus in most stately wise,
In rich purple, golde, and precious stones,
Like an Emperesse in the grekiish guise,
Her list not fle the stozz doth deuise,
With crye nor noyse passed not her boundes
Whā ſ her blood dou rayled fro her woundes

She not afraide in all her mortall hours,
Vnde of al feare list not bow her chine,
Make no praier to her tormentours,
Nor no token of courage feminine,
Upright she stode list not downe de cline,
Gave euidences as it is comprehended,
Of what line and blood she was descended.

For vnto time that she gaue by the breath,
Was neuer seine prince nor princeesse,
That moze prouedly toke their fatal death,
For as I deme her marciall hardines,
Came from Bellona of armes chiefe goddesse
Or she had it by influence of courage,
Goue by the goddes to her and her linage.

Force is a vertue bokes specific,
Agein al vices to make resistance,
But froward rancour & woode melancolye,
Gave her a spize of feined pacience,

A false pretence of high magnificence,
A scaunce she had been in vertue strong,
For trowth to haue endured every wrong.

Contractous force made her dispiteous,
Strong in her errour to endure payne,
Of obstinate heart she was fell and yroug,
In deathes constraint list not to complaine,
Counterfeit suffraunce made her for to faim
Nothing of vertue plainly to termine,
Nor of no mannes that be feminine.

In her entrayles all malice was enclosed,
And all contagious venim serpentine,
Not lyke a woman, but as a fiend disposed,
Able to destroye all vertuous discipline,
Thus she began, thus she dyd fine,
In vicious murther she dyd her ay delitte,
Wherfore of her me list nomoze tendite.

Clenoue.

Al ye that shall this tragedy see,
Of ruth and mercy haue compassion,
To see a princeesse from her imperiall see,
So vnwarely by fortune throw downe,
Of whose mischief this was choccasion,
In the things was set most her pleasance
In vicious life, in murther and vengeaunce.

Alas that euer the mortall crueltie,
Of bloody sweorde by execution,
Should be appropriated to feminite,
Agein the nature of their condicion,
Causyng the small slaundersous confusion
Of Olimpiades here put in remembraunce,
For vicious life, murther & falle vengeaunce.

Under fresh floures soote and fayre to see,
The serpent dareth with his couerte popson,
In christall waters ſ calme and smooth be,
Are perillous pittes full of decepcion,
When see al dey by clere inspection,
In feminine faces Angelike suffraunce,
hid vnderneath rācour & great vengeaunce.

Though she excelled of her natue beaute,
all other princeesses of that region,
was neuer none feller seen than she,
To execute like her opinion,

The fourth

The perillous traynes contraiued of treason
And specially in her pompous greuaunce,
Where she hated for to doe vengeance.

Noble p^rinceses set hye in dignitie,
Doe aduertise of discrecion,
In your most power and largest libertie,
Be merciable and do remission,
Sugar with pitie your indignacion,
let grace & mercy temp^re your hye p^rissace,
Of Olimpiades eschewing the vengeance.

Style rygout farre out of countrey,
prue hym with you no iurisdiction,
To womanhede longeth not pardye,
Of cankered rancour new execution,
where mercy retineth of grace there is losse
haue this in mynde by long continuance,
Of Olimpiades forgetting the vengeance.

Let patience by vertuous plentie,
within your heartes purchase a mansion,
Let your compassion attemper equitie,
That right excede not þ^r boundes of reason,
So that your feminine humble entencion,
Be alway bydded by prouident suffraunce,
voidyng al excesses of rigour & vengeance.

For it is sayd of old autowitte,
To woman longeth by disposicion,
Mekenes in language, in port humilitie,
In all vertue humble subieccion,
Woyde of manaces, strife and contencion,
So that no man in your attendaunce,
espye no token of rancour nor vengeance.

The special meane the parcialitie,
Should of al mercy be descripcion,
Rebound to women for of antiquite,
The Lambe not bled to play the Lion,
For no meke doue entiled the faucon,
For to your degre by natural accordaunce,
let nother rigour nor hasty fell vengeance.

This simple enuoy receiue it at gree,
And haue therof none indignacion,
Lowly direct to your benigntee,
Onely of mekenes and no presumption,
knowyng of kynd your inclinacion,
Disposed is by natural puruepaunce,

vnto al mercy & nothyng to vengeance.

How Agathocles of lowbyth borne
attayned vnto royall dignitie, en-
bed in pouertie & wretchednes.

The .xv. Chapter.

Have heard sayd of ful
pore agone,
A whirlewynde blowyng no
thyng soft,

was in old English called a Robion,
That reyseth dust and strawe full hye aloft,
And in thascendyng it falleth so ful oft,
Though it be borne almost to the skye,
Where it becometh there can no man espye

Out of forges by fyre that smithes make,
By clere experience it is ful oft p^respe,
That these infernall ougly smokes blake,
transcend the top of many great mountein
But oft seith by a full sobeyne reire,
al such assercions by rage of wynd by blow,
In vnware turne be reuerled & brought low

And semblably to put it at a p^riese,
And execute it by clere experience,
One the most contrarious mischiel,
founde in this earth by notable euidence,
Is onely this by fortunate violence,
whan that a wretched churliche of nature,
The state of p^rinces vnwarely doth recure.

A crowne of golde is nothyng accor^rdyng,
for to be set vpon a knaues hede,
A foltshe clarke for to weare a r^ring,
Accordeth not who that can take hede.
And in this world there is no greater vied
Than power poue, if it be wel fought,
vnto such one that first rose by of nought.

There is no maner iust conuenience,
A royall Carboncle, Ruby or Garnet,
nor a chaste Emeraude of vertuous excellen^ce
For Inde Saphirs in copper to be set,
Ther^r kyndly power in foule metall is let,
And so the state of politike p^rissauce,
is told where euer knaues haue gouernace.

for a tyme they may wel by ascende,
like windye smokes their boyssous fumes
a crowned asse plainly to cōprehēd (spede
boyde of discrecion is moze for to drede,
than is a lion for that one in dede,
Of his nature is mightie and copall,
boyde of discrecion that other bestiall.

The gentle nature of a strong Lion.
To prostrate people of kynd is mercuriall,
for vnto all that fall afoze hym downe,
his copal pursuancer can not be vengeable.
But churish wulues byrigour vntreatable
And foltilly asses eke of bestialtie,
sailpynge reason brayde euer on crueltie.

None is so proude as he that can no good,
The lewder he ad the moze presumption,
Most cruelte and vengance in low blood,
With malapertnes and indiscrecion,
Of churle and gentle make this diuision.
Of other of them I dare right wel repute
þe floke thei came fro, herto thei wil resort.

The rose is knowe by colour and swetnes,
and violettēs for their fre sh tarage,
The nettle rough for his fel tharpnes,
Thistles, bypers, pricking by great outrage,
And thus considered the roote of eche linage
froward tetches been euer in churles fould
where vnto gentils ay vertue doth rebould.

Let men beware in especial of one thyng,
How great Decepcion is in false coyng,
The plate may be bright in his shewyng,
the metal false and shew a fayre visage.
All is not gold to speake in plain language,
That shyneth bright concludpynge of reason,
Under fayre chere is oft hyd false poyson.

for as a fkye or an ougly cloude,
which that ascendeth lowe out of the see,
and with his blacknes doth the sōne shroud
That men may not his great brightnes see
for haue no comfort of his clere beautee,
So vicious tetches I do you wel assure,
Deface ful oft the gistes of nature.

God vnto some hath geuen by nature,
for to excelle another in fairenes,

yet in vices by recozde of scripture,
thei wer dallasidz Bochas beareth witness
Outward suger inward bitternes,
By which example to purpose I may call,
Agathocles fulfilled with vices al.

In this story he commeth now on the ryng
Which of beaute had great excellence,
But to declare the vicious lawyng,
And to deserue his outrageous offence,
If I should write in sentence,
Like hys demerites wholy the manere,
It would thzough per se blot my papere.

Touching his byrth of low bredde descended
Sonne of a potter the story ye may see,
In no vertue I fynde hym not cōmended,
Except nature gaue hym great beautee,
fostred in mischief and great pouertee,
had eke disdayn, I can hym not excuse,
Of hateful pryde his fathers craft to vse.

By the meane of his great fairenes,
To hye estate he came from low degree,
yet in a vice which I wyl not expresse,
He disused cursedly his beautee,
Again nature that euill mot he thee.
And spoyled he was wholy to specifice,
With al the spises of pryde and lecherye.

Yet notwithstanding his false condicions,
God suffred hym to come to hye estate,
And to gouerne diuers nations,
I fynd a whyle how he was fortunate,
In his lechery ay pompos and elate,
And in a cite called Siracuse,
The sayd vices frowardly he gan vse.

And for he had beaute and great might,
To al vices his youth he dyndcline,
And could also forther hym self aryght,
Of eloquence expert in the doctrine.
and as it is said, though he came of low line
yet as it is put in remembraunce,
an hūdzd knyghtes he had in gouernaunce.

Of Centurien he purchased an office,
and that tyme he toke the order of knyght,
After chosen a tribune of great pryce,
And gate great fauor in the peoples syght.

And

The fourth

And in this while it fell so anon ryght,
Of Siraculis he was made Duke & head,
By election because their Lorde was dead.

Which with Siciliens held a mortal strife,
But Agathocles made them victorious,
Toke they? Duchesse after to his wife,
By meane wherof he werth full glorious,
And in his gloze he grew right dispiteous,
Forgate hymselfe thus growyng in estate,
Wherethrough his citie & he wer at debate.

His condicions whan they gan espye,
And sawe hym worke all of presumption,
The people anon knowyng his tyranny,
Cryed hym out of their region.
In his exyle as made is mencion,
He could fynd no better chevisaunce,
but came to a citie þ called was Murgauice.

Where by his sleightie subtil false aulse,
he so demeaned hym in the peoples syght,
That of a pzetoz they gaue him an office,
he meuing them in all that euer he might,
Gein Siraculis to make thē strong & fight
Of entent on them to auenged be,
Cause for his exyle out of that citie.

But in his exyle the story sayth none other
It was so wrought by mediacion,
of Duke Amilchar þ was his swoyne broder
Siraculans of one entencion,
Called home agem into their towne,
And there was restozed to his place,
And reconciled to the peoples grace.

And vnto him they gaue by great aulse,
By assent of Lordes and al the commontie
Of a pzetoz newly an office,
For pzetozs of custom called be,
Officers that dwell in the citie,
and haue ful charge by dome & iudgemētes,
to put al gyltie to paine and to toymes.

Than of new this Agathocles,
Because he had moze auctoritie,
Cast for to trouble the quiete and the pees,
Of Siraculis, and out of that cite,
all the Senatours greatest of dignitie,
of mortal vengeāce this tyrant made anone

Without exception he slaynt euerychone.

This hasty slaughter wrought by tyranny
might not asswage nor staich his fel corage,
Tyll he their treasours toke by robbery,
And all Cicile he spoyled by pillage,
Cast of prude vpon an hyer stage,
for to ascende by sleighty false workyng,
Of al that region he to be crowned byng.

Made his subiectes mauer thē hi dyedng
To call hym byng, and in especiall,
One the most worthy prince the leuyng,
That late in chayne of Magestie corall,
Tyll fortune shope he must haue a fall.
for of Chartage the Duke a worthy knight
fought with hym twice & put him to flight.

Wherethrough he stode in mischiet despiered
And of a people he was had in disdainne,
To Siracuse in hast he is repayed,
And to his citie returned home ageyn,
There abiding in drede and vncertain,
for whan fortune gan ageyn hym take,
His frendes old of new haue hym forsake.

In that mischiet he bode not long,
Is the proccesse maketh rehearsayle,
Gathred people and made hymself strong,
Onely in purpose all to strike tassale,
with them of Chartage had a great bataile,
Them discomfited as fortune list ordayne,
By hye prowesse of his sonnes wayne.

Archagathus yealled was that one,
Wonder belmer a man of great might,
The seconde brother most worthy of echone
called Heracida which in that mortal fight
Dreued hymself that day a manlye knyght,
for by their māhode in which there was no
thei of Chartage wer felly put aback. (lack

for though so it wer by fortune of þ warre
Agathocles had that day victory,
false couetise made hym for to erre,
and eclipsed the light of his gloze.
for as it is remembred in his story,
Like his byzth as it tofome terminated,
To all fallenes his corage was enclined.

Cruell

Cruel of custom, of heart merciless,
his will was law, yet it wrong or right,
Contrary to accorde, toward vnto pees,
proud and surquedous in his owne syght.
where his power stretched and his might.
Like a tyrant naturally disposed,
To execute vengeance afoze purposed.

He thought he had power for to bynde,
fortunes, whole for to abide stable,
which is a thyng contrary to her kynde,
whose proprietie is to be variable,
his pride (alas) was to abhominable,
for mortal prynces is none that may restrain
her vntwate turne nor her course sodayne.

By influence of the heavenly sterres,
The vncouth course aboue celestiall,
By fortune and fauour of the merres,
This Agathocles of byrth full curiall,
promoted was vnto estate royall,
till pride outrage, and froward engendure
caused i his lordship he might not lōg endure

fortune of kynd is so flakifable.
A monstrous beast departed manifold,
A slidyng serpent turnyng and vnstable,
sliper to gripe on whom there is none holde.
As in this boke declared is and tolde,
her power preyed on prynces reches,
Reorde with other on Agathocles.

As ye haue heard rehearsed in sentence,
Simple and bare was his natuistie,
Brought vp and fostred in great indigence
Out of a stocke springyng of pouertie,
Rose to the state of royall dignitie,
theyz risyng vncouth meruaylous rattayne
the sal moze greuous because it was sodain

from Stracuse he was exyled twyse,
vengeably of heart where he had might,
Of Affricans discomfited thysc,
Cuet in battaile of custum put to flight
Had an vsaunce to robbe day and nyght,
And lyke a tiraunt agein conscience. (lŕce
To spyle his subiectes by rauinous bio-

Blinded by fortune wherof he was not fcm
Her stroke agein hym sodain and violent,

His sonnes two in Affrike wer first slepne;
He of his limmes were feble and impotent,
With a consumpcion his entrayles brent,
And by an ague continual of seruence,
He was supplised by stroke of pestilence.

All his treasour fortune hath fro him take
His proude port and his worldly glory,
his kin, his scendes, his wife hath hi forsake
His conquest dicke, and put out of memoyn
The name eclipsed of al his olde victoyn.
And as he gan in pouert and distresse,
So he made an ende in wretchednesse.

Hasty ryng and thurst that is sodayne,
And surmounting by violent raine,
and extort power may for a whyle attayne,
In riche chayre of Lordship for to shyn e,
Sodayn ascendyng doth sodaynly decline.
And bi vntrush where euer there be increase
When waite of custum a sodain disencease.

Of Agathocles men may example take,
What is the ende of euery false tyrante,
wrong climbing by doth a foule ende make.
For a season though tirantes be pussaunte,
fortune to them yeueth no lenger graunt,
but whan they syt on her whole topall,
By vnware chaunge to haue a sodain fall.

Agathocles was fyrst a simple man,
Brought forth in mischief and in pouertie,
Sonne of a Potter the story tell can,
By vicious liuyng came to great dignitie.
Of all folke hated for his crueltie,
clambe fro pouert by to great richesse,
Made poore agein, dyed in wretchednesse.

Clenuoye.

This tragedy sheweth a figure,
Both by story and by autozitie,
How man and beast and euery creature,
Carageth the stocke of his natuistie.
Herbe of the roote and eche fruite of his tre
for both of vertue and also of outrage,
foloweth some tethe or taste of the image.

Agathocles by recozde of scripture,
Bozne of low bed brought forth in pouertie

Yet

The fourth

Yet fortune made hym to recure,
 vp to hye estate from sul low degree,
 His reason blent with sensualitie,
 Forgate hymself to speake in plain langage
 through a false tette þe came fro his linage

There is a difference of colours in picture,
 on table or wall as men all day may see,
 twene gold and gold, atwene bis and asure,
 all is not gold that shineth bright parde.
 Some noble is false þe hath ful gret beaultie
 Let men beware of counterfeit copnage,
 Tettes eschewing of churlish lowe linage.


Some man forthred of sodayn auenture,
 Set in chaire of royal dignitie,
 wenyng his empire euer shoulde endure,
 neuer to be troubled with none aduersitie.
 With royall Eagles a kite may not fle.
 a Jay may chatter in a golden cage,
 yet euer some tetch must folow of his linage

Gentle bloud of his royall nature,
 Is euer enclined to mercy and pitee,
 where of custom these vileines do ther cure
 By their blurped and extort false pouster,
 To be vengeable by mortall crueltee,
 through hasty fumes of furious corage,
 folowing þe tettes of their vileyn linage.

A mighty pnties your noblesse do assure,
 your passions rest with tranquillite,
 Se how there is no meane nor measure,
 ne here a tirant catcheth the soueraintie.
 Let Agathorles your worldly mirror be,
 to eschew the traces of his froward passage
 As royall bloud requirerth of your linage.

How Cassander slough the wife of
 Alexander, and Hercules her sone,
 and Antipater slough his mo-
 ther, & of other murders.

The .xvi. Chapter.

he great mischief of fortunes
 might,
 The wofull falles fro her
 whele in dede,
 of pnties, pntesses, who so loke aright.

Been lamentable and doleful for to rede,
 But for all that Bochas doth procede,
 in his rehearfaile remēbyng thus him selue
 To him appeared of men & women twelue.

After the death of kyng Agathorles,
 there came tofoze him worthy quenes twain
 The first of them was called Bersanes,
 and of her mischief gan to him complayne,
 wyfe of Alexander the stoypist not sayne,
 The mighty king greatest vnder sunne,
 which by conquest al this world hath wonne.

Wife to Alexander was this Bersanes.
 By his lyfe as made is mencion,
 which with her sonne named Hercules,
 wer by Cassander brought to destruction,
 And of her death this was thocasion,
 Cassander died that Bersanes the quene,
 would with her sone on him auenged been.

For his treasons which he tofoze wrought
 On Alexander and on his linage,
 and specially if that he wer brought,
 To Macedoyn for her auantage,
 with her sonne that was but yong of age,
 Cassander thought & died as I haue tolde,
 thei would auenge his treasons wrought of
 (olde.

He cast afoze of malice causeles,
 this Cassander most falsly woorkyng,
 That if this knight this yong Hercules,
 Sonne of Alexander by record of woorkyng,
 In Macedoyn wer take and crowned king
 How that he would ofe quitte and ryght,
 His fathers death auenge like a knyght.

which thing to eschew Cassander ga proude
 and by false fraude was not rethles,
 But on a day he list not long abide,
 slough first the quene this sayd Bersanes,
 And than her sonne ycalled Hercules.
 Thus by Cassader of murder crop & roote,
 thei murdered wer there was none other bote

Thus cruelte might not suffice,
 vnto Cassander by recorde of scripture,
 But like a tirant in vengeable wise,
 He did them bury by froward auenture,
 where no mā shoulde know the p sepulture.
 And

And thus (alas) which pitie is to rede,
he murdered foure out of one kinrede.

To Alexander he ministred the popson,
slough the quene called Olimpiades,
And of hatred by full false treason,
As I haue told he slough quene Bersanes,
wife to Alexander, mother to Hercules,
which in youth by Bochas rehearsing,
In Macedoyne was like to haue be kyng.

After all this he could not lue in pers,
But euer ready some treason for to do,
Slough eke the quene called Roxanes,
upon a day and her yong sonne to,
and she was wyfe to Alexander also,
Cassander dreyng in his opinion,
lest they would bege the vpo his false treas.

Thus euer he liued in murder, sorow & strife
by way of fraude came al his encrease,
And as I fynd how he had a wife,
and she was called Thessalonices.
And as this story remembreth doubtles,
a sonne they had bozne atwene the twayne
To sleigh his mother which after did his pain

Shortly to passe mine autout writeth none
Antipater was her sonnes name, (other,
and because that she loued his brother,
Better than hym, he to his great defame,
Compassest her death the story sayth & same
Forwithstandyng tappease his crueltie,
She asked mercy knelyng on her kne.

Her brestes open white and soft as silke,
all bedewed with teares her visage,
Required mekely at reuerence of the milke,
with which he was fostred in yong age,
for to haue mercy and tappease his rage,
and to accept goodly her prayer,
To saue the life of his mother dere.

But al for nought, he heard her neuer a dele
He was to her surmounting of measure,
Like his father bengeable and cruel,
I trow it was yow hym of nature,
for by recozde of kinde and eke scripture,
Secde o: neuer no braunch that is good
springeth of custome out of cruell blood,

Of her death cause there was none other,
That Antipater slough his mother dere,
But for she loued Alexander his brother,
Better than hym the Chronicle doth vs lere
Which Alexander if ye list to here,
Had in his succour I fynd by writing,
Demetrius that was of Asia kyng.

Thessalonices was in this while ded,
By Antipater he most infortunate,
bathed in her bloud, her sides wer made red,
without compassion of her hye estate,
and her two sonnes luyng at debate,
Tyll Lysimachus & prefect was of Thrace,
them reconciled eche to others grace.

When Demetrius knew of theyr accorde,
God wote the soth he nothing was fayne,
But by his fraude the story bereth recozde,
That Alexander maliciously was slaine.
This while Antipater stodyng in no certain
Tyll he by sleight of Lysimachus,
was murdered after the story telleth thus.

To wyte the processe and & maner hough,
That Lysimachus by fraudolent workyng
his sonne in law Antipater thus slough,
false couetise was cause of al this chynge.
And Demetrius toke on hym to be kyng
Of Macedoyne, remembred time and date,
When both brethren wer passed into fate.

During this murthet & al this mortal strife
In this processe like as it is founde,
Of Antipater Euridice the wife, (bounde,
doughter of Seleuchus was in cheines
cast in prison darke, hideous, and profounde,
and for a while I leue her there so tourne,
and to Demetrius I will agein retorne.

which made himself to be crowned kyng,
of Macedon throug his great puissance.
But to destroy his purpose in workyng,
there wer thre princes notable in substance
Confederate and of one aliaunce,
echeone assented for short conclusion,
to byng Demetrius to destruction,

One the first was worthy Ptholomee,
kyng of Egypt in armes full famous,

Other

The fourth

Other twayne the story ye may see,
 Called Selenchus and next Lisimachus,
 and of Epirus came the kyng Pirthus,
 Lorde of the prouince as it is eke founde,
 they made the strôg Demetrius to cōsolū.

Shortly to tell with their apparayles,
 of Macedoyne they did hym first depriue,
 came vpon hym with foure strong batailles
 That he was neuer so ouerset in his lyue.
 take of Lisimachus the story doth describe,
 cheyned in prison, of his lyfe in doubt,
 For I not fynd that euer he issued out.

Of the two prefectes, Peucestes
 and Amyntas.

The xvii. Chapter.

Next in order Peucestes
 dyd appere,
 whylom prefect
 of great Babilon,
 And with hym came Amyntas eke yfere,
 Another prefect as made is mencion,
 which the Bactrians had in his possession,
 A great prouince youe hym by iudgement,
 Myd of Asia toward the Orient.

These sayd twayne for theyr worthines,
 And for their manhode in actes marciall,
 Assigned wer by diligent busines,
 To wayte and kepe in especiall,
 vpon the magestie in his estate royal,
 of Alexander for trust as chamberlaynes,
 Agein thassaut and drede of all foeyns.

After whose death for singuler guerdon,
 Made prefectes both they wer in dede,
 As ye haue heard that one in Babilon,
 that other in Bactrie the story ye may rede,
 yet in quiet they myght them not possede.
 For Selenchus gan warre agein the make
 that they wer fain their lordshipp to forsake

How Sandrocottus borne of
 lowe degree, cherished rob-
 bours and theues.

The xviii. Chapter.



Ther prefectes there were
 also I fynde,

Which held the people
 in full great seruage.

In the nether and in the vpper Inde,
 Tyll Sandrocottus a man of lowlinage,
 cast he would redresse their outrage,
 Of entent poore people to restore,
 To their fraunchises & plained on the lore.

Sandrocottus autour of this workyng,
 behight & people throughout of al countreys
 whan he by sleight wer crowned kyng,
 them to restore to theyr liberties.
 But whan he had receiued these dignities,
 al his behestes made with a fayre visage,
 turned as they fond to thraldom & seruage.

Thus whan a wretche is set in hye estate,
 or a begger brought vp to dignitie,
 there is none so proude, pompous, nor elate,
 none so vengeable, nor ful of crueltie,
 woyde of discretion, mercy and pittie,
 for churlishe bloude seeld doth recure,
 to be gentle by way of his nature.

He may dissimule and for a time sayne,
 counterfeyt with a fayre visage,
 out of one hoode shewe faces twayne,
 Contrary of heart, double of his language,
 Still of his port, smoth of his passage,
 Under floures lyke a serpent bare,
 til he may syng, and than he wyl not spare.

And euen lyke of his condicions,
 was Sandrocottus set vp in hye estate,
 Wexed peoples, troubled regions,
 set cities and townes at great debate,
 whose gouernaunce was infortunate,
 As it was seen and found at al pzeues,
 cherished no mā but robbours and theues.

And to declare how he caught hardines,
 And occasion peoples to gouerne,
 By a pronosticke which I shall expresse,
 right merueylous and vncouth to discern
 which was this as I shall tell as perne,
 Wyght wonderful and vncouth for to here
 And it was this if ye list to lere.

Ther

There was a man called Bracatales,
Bozne in Jude, which of his living,
was wonder pooze, came but seeld in prees,
Because he had trespassed in one thyng,
ageyn Menandrus that was that time king
Commaunding to slea him anon right,
But he escaped the story sayth, by flight.

God had poue hym of fete swiftnes,
By meane wherof he saued him frō danger
Throug long trauayle fil in wetines.
And to refresh hym besyde a well cleare,
He lay sleeping, that face and al his cheate,
Dropped as loote, a Lyon came forby,
Licked his face as sayth the story.

With which affray the man anon woke,
and todaynly lift by his visage,
the Lyon rose softly the way tooke,
Toward the forest did him no damage,
forgotte his felnes and his cruel rage,
Of which pronostike gan the occasion,
wherof Sandrocottus toke an opinion.

Cast and thought in hys fantasie,
Sith that the Lyon is beast most royall,
which not dysdeyned hymselfe to applye,
To lycke the face of a man curall,
In hys nature to shew hym bestiall,
He dempt as wel that it was sitting,
to take on hym the state to be a kyng.

His opinion of reason was right nought,
for wherē the Lyon left hys crueltie;
he in contrary were proud in hert & thought
Wode of mercy and barayn of pitie.
for whan that he was set in dignitie,
Brought from a wretche to dominacion,
Ageyn nature he played the Lyon.

Somtime a Lyon for geateth al felnes,
whereas a Wolfe wil naturallly deuoure;
So royal blud hath ruth on gentlenes,
On pooze pleintifes to help them & succour
where as a traunt of nature doth labour,
whan he hath power catching auantage,
to robbe his subiectes & spoile thē by pillage

Sandrocottus thus bozne of lowe kinrede,
In hys estate by fortune whan he stode,

Gan make him strong & bengeable in dede,
with nounder of robbours furious & wode
Cast him destroy al the gentle blode
That was in Jude, and by his ordenance,
Slay al the prefectes that had gouernance

And to the comons whā he was made strōg
and gan the maner of theyr death deuyse,
like a false tyrant although he dyd wrong,
Agein his Lordes when he gan aryse,
An Olifant came in ful vncouth wyse,
Him obeyed which was a great wonder,
whan their batayles wer not farre asunde

Though he was wylde, the story sayth p same
Sandrocottus lept vpon his syde,
And on his backe as on a beast tame,
Toward the battayle anon he gan to ryde,
was their captayn that day and theyr gyde,
with his robbours as it is made mynde,
ough al p prefectes & gentle blud of Jude

Howe Seleuchus the myghtye
Prynce was slayne by the great
Ptholompe kyng of Egypt.

The .xix. Chapter.

Shan came Seleuchus, to Bochas
complayntag,
A myghty prince & a ful māly knight;
Sōne of Antiochus p great famous king
which Seleuchus for wisdom & for myght,
was most fauoured in Alexanders sight,
bozne of a pryncesse p chronicle ye may sene
Called Laodice the great famous queene.

The byrth of hym strange and maruelous,
for his mother vpon the same nyght,
That she conceiued, dempt & thought thus
As it semed playnly in her syght,
of great Apollo p heauenly god most bryght,
How she the time of her conceiuing,
Receiued that night (of golde) a riche rying.

In which ring was set a precious stone,
poue vnto her for a great guerdon,
Gave with an anker her cōmaunding anon,
After the birth without dilacion,
To geue the rying of whole affection,

The fourth

To Seleuchus, wherby in especial,
He should excell in actes marciall.

The same morowe after þ child was boine,
within her bed was found a ryebe rying,
With al the tokens rehearsed here toforene
The anker graue lyke in euery thyng,
which that the quene toke in her keepng:
And of entent for her auantage,
kept it secret til he came to age.

Another meruayle fyll also withal,
This Seleuchus which was a woder thing
Had enprinted eke in especiall,
Upon his thygh an anker and a rying,
So had al by recozd of wytyng,
Such carectes, the soyr doth determine,
that after him wer boine of that lyne.

Whan Seleuchus (as made is mencion)
the tender yeres had of his age conne,
And came to yeres of discrecion:
He by this ring ful many lond hath wonne
whose knightly fame shone there as sune,
He wel auyled, hardy of great might,
Tyme of Alexander hold one þ best knight.

In werre & armes he his tyme hath spent
Brought all Inde to subiection,
Gate all the kingdomes nye of the Orient,
Held them long in his possession,
But here (alas) Bochas maketh mencion,
All his victories that did in honour shine,
with sodein change wer turned vnto ruine

For whan Seleuchus was most victorious
Had al Inde conquered in substaunce:
Atwene him and king Lisimachus,
Of whom tofore is made remembraunce,
Began a warre and a great distaunce.
And as they met with their apparayles,
In a great field ordeyned theyr battayles.

On Lisimachus fill the disconfiture,
whereof Seleuchus glad in especiall,
Dempt his winning came not of aduenture,
But by influence very celestiall.
Can warre proude in his estate royal,
Not supposyng in his victorious stall,
Of his mischeues that should after fall.

for as the pdrresse declarith vnto vs,
Howe of Egypt the great Ptholome,
Brother in lawe to Lisimachus,
fill on Seleuchus by ful great crueltie,
Slough him at mischiefe the soyr ye mayse
Lost is his lyfe as made is mencion,
In Macedoyn the mighty region.

And it is knowen of Antiquitie,
By rehearsale of the olde auctours,
That this foresayd great Ptholome,
was to Alexander one of the enheritours,
king of Egypt there reigning in his flours
After whose name descending down by Grece
wer al the kinges called Ptholomes.

As I finde touching his image,
By procreacion he had children thre,
The first of the to speake in plain language
Inamed was Ceraunus Ptholome:
Next Philadelphus, a daughter Arsynoe,
that wedded was by her fathers consenting
To Lisimachus of Macedoynne kyng.

Howe the two sonnes of quene
Arsynoe were by theyr mo-
thers brother traytourtly
slain, and she exiled.

The .xx. Chapter.

As thus remembred in Bookes olde,
Death of Seleuchus wroughte by
Ptholome,

Unwately slayn tofore as I haue told.
Next in ordre came Arsynoe,
To John Bochas by great aduersite,
All with teares bedewed her visage,
And gan complein þ constreynt of her rage

Thys mighty quene this sayd Arsynoe,
Had sonnes twopen full famous of renowne.
The tone Lisimachus excelling of beaute,
that tother Ptholip as made is mencion.
And al her ioye and discrecion,
In worldly blisse, there is no more to seyn,
was wholy set vpon these chadzen tyme.

for by thorrastion of theyr great faynes,
Men deliyted greatly them to see,

Randy

namely women the story doth expresse,
And they mother thys quene Ircynoe,
Stode in great hope that they should be
Mighty kinges by iust succession,
In Macedoyn the mighty region.

Only by the tytle of they fathers right,
Which to her heart gaue ful great gladnes,
For she dempt that none other wight,
To succede should haue none intresse,
But fortune the blynd false Goddesse
Disposed so for these children tweyn,
That none of the their purpose should attaine

for whā their fader Lysmachus was slain
the sayd quene called Ircynoe,
to saue her life coude none other gayn,
But with her sonnes fearefully to flee,
Into Cassandria a mighty strong Citie,
Onely for drede of one Antigonus,
which them pursued, the story telleth thus.

But the brother of quene Ircynoe,
Called Ceraunus rescued her partte,
Agayne Antigonus, ye may the story see.
Yet in his heart he had great enyre,
Like that they wer nere of one all ye,
that her two sonnes should kinges be,
Of Macedoyn and reign in that cuntee.

for he was set onely of couetise,
to be crowned in Macedoyn kyng:
And of false treason the story doth deuyse,
them to deceiue, this was his werkyng,
first to the quene ful humbly beseching,
he made promise vnder great surete,
In Macedoyn she should crowned be.

And her children so sayre of they visage,
Should be kept vnder gouernaunce,
vnto time that they come to age.
And for to put her in moze assuraunce,
Ceraunus swoze god yee him soye chauce,
he purposed for al his false werkynges,
To crowne her quene and make her sonnes
(kinges)

Toke al the goddes there vnto wittnes,
And swoze ageyn with a pleyne visage,
vnto the quene of fraude and doublenes,
his purpose was to haue her in mariage,

Crowne her quene to her great aduantage,
thus he was sworn altho he was her brother
yet in heart, God wote he thought another.

vnder colour of this assuraunce,
She lete him entre Cassander the Citie,
Came agayn him to doe him moze plesance,
with al her Lordes of hye and lowe degree,
Made the stretes hanged for to be,
with clothes of golde and in solemne wise,
to all they Goddes did sacrifice.

And thus he was receiued solemnely,
The day was halowed and holde festiual,
the quene for soye ordeyned richely,
Her two sonnes that wer so sayre in all,
to be crowned with crownes ful royal.
Goe afoze her in the master strete,
Gloriously they vncle for to mete.

with felonous hert vnder a frendly face,
This Ceraunus roote of all treason,
Gan his cosyns benignely embrace,
him purposyng by false collusion,
To procede to they destruccion.
And finally first he dyd hys peyn,
the quene to exile & lea her children tweyn.

But of thys treason was brought to a prief,
whan the quene apperceiued his fallenesse,
and saw her sones brought to such mischiefe
She contured hym in her moztall distresse,
to haue pietie of natural gentlenesse,
spare his cosyns afoze him whete they stode,
Of royall mercy so nere bozne of his blode.

And with a crye passing lamentable,
She fil afoze him swoynning vnto ground
Lyke as she had be verely culpable,
seing her sonnes bleding w many wound.
But al for nought ther was no mercy sold
for with their blud (this story is not feined)
her garment was dolefully disteyned.

Her face sayre was soyled with ordure,
Her golden heere was al to tozne and rent.
And like a thraill this woeful creature,
with moztal weeping had her syght blent.
And after that I find how she was sent
to bury her children, for there was no space,
Into

The fourth

Into an Ile called Samoithrace,

Is any story whiche maketh mention,
That a pyncesse of so hye degree,
Fond so great cause of lamentacion,
She being daughter to great Ptholome,
Her children slayn by vengeable crueltee.
And to behold the death most dolorous.
Of her husbond called Lysmachus:

She after banished in exile made her end,
With sorrowful compleynt her life thus draw
til into fate her spyte did wend, (along
It is no drede her paynes wer ful strong,
And if I should rehearse al the wrong
that she suffered, it would grieve sore,
therfore of her now I wyte no more.

Clenoys.

This tragedy sheweth an apparence,
And a likenes of faythful assuraunce,
Excite men to yee false credence,
Unto fortunes false variaunce,
which cast her baytes & angles of pleasaunce,
In hooke hid vnder of vengeable crueltee,
as this Chapter put in remembraunce,
Of Lysmachus and of Arsynoe.

Is there any greater euidence,
Of worldly trouble, of worldly constance,
Then see princes from their magnificence,
And from their mighty royal puissance,
vntwarily brought by fortune to mischance
And ouerwhelmed from their tranquillite:
Se here a misfouful notable in substace,
Of Lysmachus and quene Arsynoe.

The ring, the anker of great excellence,
poue to Seleuchus for martiall suffisance,
whan Apollo by heavenly influence,
List with his moder make his allyance:
send him these reliques of singuler acquait
to set his manhod in moze surete. (tance
But in al such quauering perseuerance,
Thinke on Lysmachus and on Arsynoe.

The vncouth treasours, & gold noz & dispree
of them that haue this world in gouernace:
Noz al & subiectes by reckoned in sentence

For al the regions vnder their obeyssaunce,
Princes pyncessees w al their attendaunce,
May again fortune yee them no liberte,
who not knoweth her vn sure gery chaunce
thinke on Lysmachus and Arsynoe.

Her chldzen and she slayne by violence,
Of Ceraunus, god yee hym soz chauce,
That by false colour did her reuerence,
And pretended a maner obseruaunce,
the treason close of venemous puruepaice:
Purposed afore to outtray them al thze,
the children slain which knew no cheuisance
The mother cryed called Arsynoe.

Noble Princes beware of hye prudence,
Among your selfe that there be no distance,
Hyde no rancour of hateful violence,
Under a curtayn of double dalaunce,
Lyke your hert shew out your costenaice,
Worde of dissimuling and duplicite,
wysely weigh this Chapter in balaunce,
Of Lysmachus and quene Arsynoe.

How Ceraunus of Macedoyn king, that
murdred hys colyns was slayn in bat-
tyle by them of fraunce.

The xxi. Chapter.

The noble poete John Bochas in his
booke,
Proceedyng furth compleyneth of
petie,
with quaking hand whan he his pen toke,
And gan to wyte the woeful desteny,
As ye haue heard of quene Arsynoe.
And how Ceraunus, the story maketh mnd
was to her false traytor and vnknd.

Of whose treason is made a great processe,
and how he after was slayne in battayle,
punished by vengeance for his greet fallenes
Like as hys story maketh rehearsayle.
Which to remembre I cast me not to sayle,
folowing mine autor & procede in wytyng,
how Ceraunus was slayn whā he was king

For while that he by his false werkynge,
In Macedoyn had the gouernayle,

The

The hundred thousand accoutred by witting
went out of fraunce to conquere Itale,
Their host departed in many strong bataile
gate by conquest through their his renoun,
ful many prouince and many a region,

(tre

And as they rode through many great coun-
tries people of Gaule in stele armed cleue,
They founded castels & many strong Cite
towards Rome they biled Milan & Sene
Alp & Alpes their armour none ful Menz,
and some of them bp to Rome went,
By very force and the Cite byent.

Some parted bp to the Grekishe see,
had a custome to these their dwelling place
By augurie as birdes did fle,
following their flight they gan after trace,
Holding their way within a litle space,
with mighty hand the boke doth specifie,
They came to a countrey called Dannonie.

This folke of Gaule which is called fraunce
to conquere londes put them self in pees,
As most notable people of puissance,
following p exaple of their knightly eeres,
In their riding of worthy Hercules,
which was worshiped in their actes martial
Like as a God, and called immortal,

Through grace of fortune in their chual-
equered countries alway forth riding, (ries
Them self departing in diuers companies
who the whode they consumed by byning
came to Macedoine where Ceraunus was
of presumpcion wening it should auaille (king
out of ordeinaunce he met them in bataile,

This Ceraunus of outrage and of pride,
dempt him able to mete with the of fraunce,
but for he was through murdre an homicide
he lacked grace and power in substaunce.
Yet they of Gaule by prudent gouernance
offred vnto him, though he was recheles,
With Macedonoys for to treate of pees,

But of presumption and melancoly.
ageyn hys enimies he the field hath take,
And disconfited anone was his partye,
his men gan fle and haue their lord forsake

Hys head smit of, and set vpon a stake.
But al hys mischief was to lite in dede,
To recompence his fradde & hys falsehede

There is no paine ageine so great offence
May be deuised in no boke that men rede,
Equivalent murdre to recompence,
duly to punishe so outrageous a dede,
of him that made yong children blede,
As dyd Ceraunus which of false couetise,
Hys cosin slough as ye haue heard deuise.

To thinke on murdre it is to foule a thing
To god and man hateful and terrible,
the infernal fraud & deuelshe compassing,
To eche creature of nature is odible,
which to redresse is an impossible.
O cursed Ceraunus, I leue thy story here,
Thy name no more shal blot my papere.

How the prince Belgus was disconfited
and brought vnto nought.

The .xxii. Chapter.

After this tyrant as ye haue
heard the cas,
Slaine in battaile
this traytoure odus,
Anon in orde came to John Bochas,
A myghty prince called Belgus,
Deadly pale with face furus,
which complained among thys woful pees,
Hys disfigure done by Duke Solihenes

This sode in mischief greued his heart soze
for al the folke that were in hys battaile,
were put to flight Bochas write no more,
of hys knighthode nor of hys apparayle,
Saufe only thys he maketh rehercayle,
Of the french host he telleth in certeyne,
Howe he was chosen for a chye captayne.

And howe he came into the rich land,
of Macedoine with his people of fraunce,
til Solihenes & Duke with mighty hand
Disconfited him, brought him to mischaunce
of whom I find none other remembraunce,
saue wha he wend to haue be most glorious
he was outraid by force of Brennus.

F.iii.

Howe

The fourth

**Howe Duke Brennus delitting to robbe
and steale, mischeuouly ended.**

The .xxiii. Chapter.

Shis Brennus ful knightly
in working,
which by conquest gate
many great Citie,
And as I rede þ since he was made king,
despoiled regions and many great cuntries
Robbed people of hie and lowe degre,
Spared no goddes, but by violence,
toke their treasours dyd them no reuerence

There was a temple great and meruelous
bilt on a roche and on an hil of stone,
Sacred to Apollo called Delphicus,
In al Grece so Great a god was none.
And oft sith the people would gone,
Up to a Theatre which that stode without,
to haue answer of that they stode in doubt

Their trust, their hope, was to þ god applied
hauing to him singuler affection,
As though he might haue holpe & magnifie
and done to them great consolacion. (ed
For by a sprite of false decepcion,
he gaue answer of sundry questions,
To folke that came from diuers regions.

King Brennus had no fantasie,
in their temples after their Daimyn guise,
No ther to worship nor to magnifie,
their Greke the goddes to doe the sacrifice,
For in his heart he gan them to despise,
raught a toy with al his false robbours,
The to despoile and rob of their treasours.

Behight his men & said in plain language
that hys desire and his entencion.
Was to be boting with them of such pillage
as goddes had in their possession,
and parte with them for singuler guerdon,
For their labour and their great trauailes
That they had had with him in his batayles

He gaue hys people a maner hardines,
made them trust in great multitude,
Hauing dispite of thinnocent simplenes,

Of his enemies because they were but rude,
I meane the folke shortly to conlude,
which had in keping the Juels precious
Of great Apollo called Delphicus.

The people also which was with Brennus
had al the day drunke mighty wines,
To fill their paunches they were so desirous,
that they forgate their marcial doctrines,
Tascēde þ mouētein feble wer their cheynes
their heades tolter & their byayne gā fade,
The temple aloft to spoile or to assaile.

In their ascēding by wates that they chers
vpon the roch they were beate down,
Prestes of the temple put the self in pries
one bare a standerd another a gret penoun
Clad in chericles for hie deuotion.
And with their other vncouth apparailles,
Both on þ roch and lowe in their batayles.

The people of Brennus was incomparable
Spred al the field the story beareth witness
But it is said of olde, and is no fable,
That no defence may be in drunkennes,
And wisdom fakes where is great excess,
And in a field plainly to conlude,
Victory alway standeth not in multitude.

For they were set as Bochas doth deuse
not to knightthod but to false outrage,
To spoile and robbe by greedy couetise,
& stulle their somers in outrageous pillage
Furious raine hath brought the in a rage
and farewell knightthod & marcial noblesse
where couetise is lady and maistresse.

Two mighty Dukes were with Brennus,
which that were chief of his counsaile,
Euridanus that one, þ other Theſsalonus,
which as they thought to their great auade
Began a purpose and it was dilauade,
to robbe the Temple, þ countrey, & ech town
which turned after to their confusion.

Thus Auarice with stomack vnstauchable,
hath strangled þ power of many a worthy
And couetise her sister vntreatable (knight
hath of high noblesse ful oft queint þ light
wher Calalus reigneth a lio hath no might
This

This to meane hunger and couetousnesse,
turneth al noblesse into cowardnesse,

for by the counsaile of these Dukes twelue,
Brennus set al his opinion,
to spoile and robbe dyd hys busy peine,
To pille the Cities of al that region.
But in thys while as made is mencion,
Wher their battailes Bochas doth me lere
The god Apollo and Pallas did appere.

Apollo first shewed his presence,
freshe, yong, and lusty, as any sunne shene,
Armed al in gold, and with great violence,
Entered the field as it was wel sene.
And Diana came with her arrowes bene,
And Hymerua in a bright habircoun,
which in their coming made a terrible soun

The noyse was herd of their bright armure
which made their enemies for fere almost to
that they might afoze the not endure. (cause
fled the field for drede them self to saue,
And there was heard an hideous earthquake
And from heauen in this mortal battaile,
of cold constringing great stones ga doune
(hale

Their aduersaries bete doune and grounded
and afoze them durst not abide,
And Brennus so mortally was wounded
both breast & head, & hurt through other side
For here the ende of couetise and pride.
for Brennus for constraint of his smerte,
Roue with a dagger him self to the herte,

This was his end vengeable & merueilous
and his Dukes sleine both twelue,
Called Euridanus and Thestalonus,
The Greeke Gods gan at them so disdaine
of sacrifice se here the greivous peine,
who to gods list doe no obseruaunce,
Shal vnwarely be punished with vengeance

It is not hoffsome with goddes to playe,
for their puissance presumpuously to attaine
for where as they by vengeance list warrey
who list assay wal find it no game,
for his presumption Brennus fond & same
for Apollo, Diana, and Hymerue,
for hys outrage vnwarely made him sterue

Clennope.

This tragedie declareth toho list here
of Duke Brennus many great batayle,
Hys extort conquest, and wholly the manere
How by force rode through al Italie.
After howe he the Romans did assaile,
Hys fall in Grece by vengeable violence,
for he to goddes would doe no reuerence.

Toke al þe treasours & Jewels most entere,
out of their temples, and richest apparail,
Gold and perle, and al that suffice there,
to hys encrease which that might aduaile,
The rich he robbed, oppressed the poore,
Of very pompe and forward insolence,
and list to goddes do no reuerence.

Thys mighty tyraunt most surquedous of
with couetouse hert in his entraille (there
Whose greedy feet there might no mesure
til þe fortune at mischief did him faile (here
He lacked might her variat whele to naile
again whose fall their was no resistance,
for he to goddes list do no reuerence.

Noble princes conceite and doe lere,
the fall of Brennus for misgouernayle,
And prudently peysing thys matere,
Vertue is stronger than other plate or maner
afoze considred what Salomon doth counsaile
Chief preseruatiue of your magnificence,
Is first to god to doe due reuerence.

How Pirthus king of Epirus list not
live in peace, but of pride and presump-
tion in warre came vnto
mischaunce.

The xxiii. Chapter.

A Bochas booke next folowynge
on the ring,
Came yong Pirthus sonne of
Eacides,
Borne by descent to reigne and be king,
and to inherite the lond of Epyrothes.
Yet in hys youth & in hys tender encrease,
the forward people dwelling in that place,
without hys gylt gan his death purchase,

But

The fourth

**Howe Duke Brennus belitting to robbe
and steale, mischeuously ended,**

The .xxxi. Chapter.

Shis Brennus ful knightly
in working,
which by conquest gate
many great Citie,
And as I rede þ since he was made king,
despoiled regions and many great cunctie
Robbed people of hie and lowe degre,
Spared no goddes, but by violence,
toke their treasours dyd them no reuerēce

There was a temple great and meruelous
bilt on a roche and on an hil of stone,
Sacred to Apollo called Delphicus,
In al Grece so Great a god was none,
And oft sith the people would gone,
Up to a Theatre which that stode without,
to haue answere of that they stode in doubt

Their trust, their hope, was to þ god applied
hausing to him singuler affection,
As though he might haue holpe & magnifi-
and done to them great consolacion. (ed
For by a spyte of false decepcion,
he gaue answere of sundry questions,
To folke that came from diuers regions.

King Brennus had no fantasie,
in their temples after their Daimyn guise,
No ther to worship nor to magnifie,
their Grekishe goddes to doe thē sacrifice,
For in his heart he gan them to despise,
caught a toy with al his false robbours,
The to despoile and rob of their treasours.

Behight his men & said in plain language
that hys desire and his entencion.
Was to be boting with them of such pillage
as goddes had in their possession,
and parte with them for singuler guerdon,
For their labour and their great traualles
That they had had with him in his batailles

He gaue hys people a maner hardines,
made them trust in great multitude,
Hauing dispite of thinnocent simplenes,

Of his ěmies because they were but rude,
I meane tho folke shortly to concludē,
which had in keping the Juels precious
Of great Apollo called Delphicus.

The people also which was with Brennus
had al the day drunke mighty wines,
To fill their paūches they were so desirous,
that they forgate their martiall doctrines,
Tascēde þ mouētein feble wer their cheines
their heades tolter & their byayne gā fade,
The temple aloft to spoile or to assaile.

In their ascēding by wates that they chers
vpon the roch they were beate down,
Prestes of the temple put thē self in pces
one bare a standerd another a gret penoun
Clad in cheicles for hie deuotion.
And with their other vncouth apparailles,
Both on þ roch and lowe in their batayles.

The people of Brennus was incomparable
Spred al the field the story beareth witness
But it is said of olde, and is no fable,
That no defence may be in drunkennes,
And wisdomē fades where is great exces,
And in a field plainly to concludē,
Victory alway standeth not in multitude.

For they were set as Bochas doth deuse
not to knightthod but to false outrage,
To spoile and robbe by gredy couetise,
& Ruste their somers in outrageous pillage
Furious rauine hath brought thē in a rage
and farewell knightthod & martiall noblesse
where couetise is lady and maistrisse.

Two mighty Dukes were with Brennus,
which that were chief of his counsaile,
Euridanus that one, þ other Thessalonus,
which as they thought to their great auade
Began a purpose and it was disauade,
to robbe the Temple, þ cōūtre, & ech town
which eurned after to their confusion.

Thus Auarice with stomack vnstaūchable,
hath strangled þ power of many a worthy
And couetise her sister vntreatable (knight
hath of high noblesse ful oft queint þ light
wher Cāsalus reigneth a lūo hath no might
this

This to meane hunger and couetousnesse,
turneth al noblesse into cowardnesse,

for by the counsaile of these Dukes twene,
Bynnus set al his opinion,
to spoile and robbe byd hys busypaine,
To pille the Cities of al that region.
But in thys while as made is mencion,
Wher their battailes Bochas doth me lere
The god Apollo and Pallas did appere.

Apollo first shewed his presence,
freshe, yong, and lusty, as any sunne shene,
Armed al in gold, and with great violence,
Entred the field as it was wel sene.
And Diana came with her arrowes hene,
And Mynerua in a bright habitoun,
which in their coming made a terrible soun

The noise was herd of their bright armure
which made their enemies for fere almost to
that they might afoze the not dure. (cause
fled the field for byde them self to saue,
And there was heard an hideous earthquake
And from heauen in this mortall battaile,
of cold constringing great stones ga doune
(hail)

Their aduersaries bete doune and grouded
and afoze them durst not abide,
And Bynnus so mortally was wounded
both breast & head, & hurt through other side
Loe here the ende of couetise and pride.
for Bynnus for constraint of his smerte,
Roue with a dagger him self to the herte,

This was his end vengeable & merueilous
and his Dukes sleine both twene,
Called Euridanus and Thessalonus,
The Grekish Gods gan at them so disdaine
of sacrilege se here the greuous paine,
Who to gods list doe no obseruaunce,
Shal vnwarely be punished with vengeance

It is not hollome with goddes to playe,
for these pissaunce presumptuously to attaine
for where as they by vengeance list watterp
who list assay what find it no game,
for his presumption Bynnus fond & same
for Apollo, Diana, and Mynerue,
for hys outrage vnwarely made him steeue

Clennope.

This tragedie declareth who list here
of Duke Bynnus many great batayle,
Hys extort conquest, and wholly the manere
How by force rode through al Italie.
After howe he the Romans did assaile,
Hys fall in Grece by vengeable violence,
for he to goddes would doe no reuerence.

Toke al þe treasures & Jewels most entere,
out of their temples, and richest apparail,
Gold and perle, and al that stuffe there,
to hys encrease which that might aduaile,
The rich he robbed, oppressed the poore,
Of very pompe and froward insolence,
and list to goddes do no reuerence.

Thys mighty tyraunt most surquedous of
with couetouse hert in his entraille (there
Whose greedy feet there might no mesure
til þe fortune at mischief did him faile (here
He lacked might her variat whele to naile
agein whose fall ther was no resistance,
for he to goddes list do no reuerence.

Noble princes contemne and doe lere,
the fall of Bynnus for misgouernayle,
And prudently pesking thys matere,
Vertue is stronger than other plate or mayle
afoze cosidered what Salomon doth counsaile
Chief preseruatiue of your magnificence,
Is first to god to doe due reuerence.

Howe Pirthus king of Epirus list not
liue in peace, but of pride and presump-
tion in warre came vnto
mischaunce.

The .xxiii. Chapter.

A Bochas booke next folowing
on the ring,
Came yong Pirthus sonne of
Acides,
Borne by descent to reigne and be king,
and to enherite the lond of Epyrothes.
Yet in hys youth & in hys tender encrease,
the froward people dwelling in that place,
without hys gylt gan his death purchase.

Bug

The fourth

But to preserve him as made is mention
He was committed and take in keeping,
Certaine peres for his sauacion,
to one Glaucus of Illirie king,
Whose wife was cosin by record of wyting
to the said famous Carides,
As she in story called Beronices.

He nye of blood to this noble quene,
both twaine bozne of one linage
Wonder gracious to al that did him sene
and wel fauoured of fetures and visage.
And in the while of hys tender age,
One Cassander of Macedoine king,
Cōpassed his death by subtel false working

And his purpose for to byng aboute,
he sent for him by false collusion,
Putting Glaucus plainly out of doubte.
But if it came like hys entencion,
He would worke to his destruction.
Gather people both nye and farre,
And on Glaucus ginne a moxtall warre.

But king Glaucus toke thereof none hede,
hauing to Pirthus so great affection,
Of him receiued verely in dede,
To be his sonne by adoption,
Purposing of whole entencion,
To make Pirthus pleynly if he may,
to be his heire and reigne after his day.

Pirthus alway bygrowing by encrease,
ful amiable both of chere and face,
And in this while the people of Epirothes,
knowing that he stode in Glaucus grace,
chaūged their hearts, cast thē in moxt space,
for to reslope al of one corage,
the said Pirthus to his heritage.

Thus by assent he was crowned king,
yong, freshe, and lusty, & semely therwithal,
Wonder wel the woe in his bygrowing,
Like his linage of corage wex royal.
The which was cause in especiall,
He was beloued of frendes al aboute,
And of his enemies greatly had in doute.

The name of him gan to sprede farre,
Throughe al Grece about in ech countrey.

The lond of Tarēt gan in his tyme warre,
Ageine the Romaines as ye may se
Requiring Pirthus that he would be
faunourable, and helping of entent,
To the party of them of Tarēt.

To their request he can condisceind,
and of purpose cast him not to faile
If that fortune would him grace send,
with mighty hand and martiall apparade,
for to be lord and conquere al Itayle
As did hys vncle whilom doubtles,
king Alexander cauled of Epirothes.

First he began hys conquest in Itale,
toward Heracle a mighty great Citie,
wherewith Leuenus he had a great batail,
Consul of Rome and lord of that countrey,
and to the encrease of hys felicitie,
As is remembred in hys story,
Upon Romaines he gate that victorie.

The Olifantes with Castels on their back,
cauled Pirthus the yong manly knight,
with his wilde, wherein therit was no lack
to put his enemies that day to the flight.
And in thys while it hapned forthright,
The Scicilians Bochas beareth record,
Among them self were at discorde.

There was atwene them great deuision,
Ech to tother contrary in working.
But to resourme their false discencion
they prated Pirthus to come & be their king
To whose request he fully assenting,
by them made strong list not to differre,
Agein the Romains to beginne a warre.

Beside a Castle called Asculus,
within Dole hys baners he gan splaye,
The same day not happy nor Curous
Contrarious fortune hys power gā assay,
wounded to y death gan gretly him dismay
By which occasiō this Pirthus anon right
Lept on hys courser & toke him vnto flight

A sonne he had called Helenus,
bozne of the daughter of king Agathorles
whō he ordained mine auctour telleth thus
for to be crowned to hys great encrets.

Of Siciliaus to reygne there in pees.
 Wening therby to haue had aduantage,
 and in this whyle came to him a message

Of Tarent which stode in auenture,
 for his absence out of that region,
 If he not came they myght not endure
 Ageyn the power of them of Rome town,
 which of assent wer descended down,
 Ageyns them, they standing in dispayre,
 Saue in abiding vpon his repayre.

Pyrrhus this while stode in ful hard poynt,
 next abashed and dull in his courage,
 Irwene tweyn hangyng in disloynt,
 werreyed of Romayns, hated in Chartage
 had a battayle to his finall dammage,
 within a field called Tarentinus,
 there put to flyght by one fabricius.

Destitute by fortune and appeyed.
 Wode of succour, barayn of richesse,
 Lyke a man of hope dispeyed,
 Toward Epyze in hast he gan him dresse,
 where he was fyrst, his story doth expresse.
 As ye haue heard rehearsed by wytyng,
 By succession whilome lord and kyng.

But when he came to Epyze his cite,
 He gan of newe agayn Antigonus,
 kyng of Macedoyn, a ful strong cuntrye,
 him to werrey he was so despyous.
 And by conquest the story telleth thus,
 within a while there was no great letting,
 By helpe of fortune he was crowned kyng.

Not seven monethes reygning in quiete,
 By Lisymachus maugre al his might,
 He was put down & remeued from his setle
 yet of presumption though ther was no right,
 He toke on hym to gynne a newe fight
 Gein Lacedemoyns, and felly them werrey
 Only because they would him not obey.

Whose presumption whan that they beheld
 Both of prudence and of policie,
 Wemen wer armed to make a large field,
 With multitude to oppresse his partie,
 for common profit put them in Jeopardye,
 And finally such was theyr ordynance,

that sayd Pirthus was brought to mischa-
 cunce.

His sonne there slayne called Ptholome,
 And many other lost there theyr liues,
 And for al that of pride and crueltie,
 He gan a warre agein the Argues.
 And at the end of al his mortal stryues,
 for conclusion this was his last fall,
 Slayn with a stone as he came to the wal

His head smet of in the same place,
 And therof made an oblation,
 To Antigonus for a great solace,
 Thus list fortune quite his presumption,
 After his werres with many region,
 Loe here the ende of folkes techles,
 that folowed werre and list not liue in pees.

Howe the tyraunt Aristotimus by treche-
 rous working, set asyde the right line,
 was crowned kyng of Epirothes,
 and after slayne.

The. xxb. Chapter.

North proceeding folowing John
 Bochas,
 I will rehearse in full pleyne
 language,

How Aristotimus a tyrant thys the caas,
 Cast and compassed by ful great outrage,
 Hauing no tyle of right nor heritage,
 Of Epirothes by trecherous working,
 Wodyng the line there to be crowned kyng.

Liuing two children, the story telleth thus,
 Bozne by descent to reygne in that cite,
 the eldest of them called was Pyrrhus,
 And the second named Ptholome,
 And both twein by the crueltie,
 Of Aristotimus wer falsly set asyde,
 He made kyng (this tyrant) through his pride

And while that he thus gan occupye,
 Lyke a tyrant cruel and vengeable,
 Of false rancour and melancoly,
 Slough al the citezens & wer most notable,
 And cryed, thys story is no fable,
 Only of malice within his heart close,
 All that wer contrary vnto hys purpose.

Unto

The fourth

Unto the woemen by fraudulent sentence
He made ordeyn after that anon,
Of feyned pietie gaue to them lysente,
To their frendes scely for to gone,
With their riches but they wer euerichone
By his bidding and by his false treason,
Take by the way and fettered in prison.

Of they wer ware was set on them a rest,
And after that of vengeable cruelte,
The children slayn souking at their brest,
Maydens oppressed of their virginittie,
But in this while in Cypre the Citie,
There was a knight passing of great age,
Which cast of purpose to auenge his outrage

The same knight mine autour telleth thus,
In the story plainly as I rede:
Was in Greke tong called Helemarus
Right wise and manly both in werke & dede
And thinges tweyn put him out of dede,
To execute his purpose in certeyn,
Maugre al tho that would be him ageyn.

For common profit he had not to be dede.
A cause was thys, for he was fall in age,
And another that put him out of dede,
For he no children had of his linage,
His quarel rightfull gaue him auantage,
And herupon gadred him of newe,
Suche as he knew þ manly wer and true.

This purpose holde with suspitfull aulse
And thereon made full prudent ordinaunce,
This Helemarus olde, hardy & right wise,
Afore prouyded by knightly parueyaunce,
The sayd tyraunt brought vnto mischaunce
By helpe of them that wer to hym assented,
Vnwarely slain, whose verth was not repeted

Howe quene Arsynoe of Cyrenes for the
aduouttie done with Demetrius hus-
bonde of her daughter Beronices,
ended in sorowe.

The .xxvi. Chapter.

After thys story Bochas gan applie,
to turne his pene, like as ye shal heare,
to wyte and tell the froward lechery,

Of Arsynoe pleasant of looke and chere,
which of her port and eke of of her manere,
was in her dayes lyke as it is found,
for craft & beautie called Venus þ second,

for her fayrenes pouen in marriage,
To noble Agas of Cyrenes king,
It wene them whyle they wer yong of age,
They had a daughter by record of wyting,
Called Beronices, the king at his ending,
In his testament bad that she should be
wedded to the sonne of king Ptholome,

And this was done of intencion,
to cease the warres that had endured long
It wene Egypt, as made is mencion,
and the Cyrenes both realmes strong,
By thys marriage that he might vnderfong
In hys dying to set a final peace,
twene these two reames for their both incre-
Case,

After whose death thus the matter stode,
Quene Arsynoe most subtile in werkyng,
Ageyn thys matter so cruel was and wode,
Maried her daughter without more letting
Called Beronices, agayns the bydding
of her father, that called was Agas,
As heretofore rehearsed is the caas,

She married her to one Demetrius,
That brother was (by Bochas rehearsing)
Unto the mighty great Antigonus,
Being in Grece of Macedon kyng.
But infortunate was after this wedding,
As in this story sayng ye shal see,
By the false werkyng of quene Arsynoe.

And to conclude shortly this mattere,
whan thys quene thys double Arsynoe,
Sawe of Demetrius þ visage & the chere:
His loke, his colour, his language & beaute,
His manly port and his liberalite, (sant
she was enamoured of her fleshy false ple-
Lyke her desire to haue hys acquaintaunce,

Of her nature she was most lecherous,
And of her froward inclination,
She brought about that Demetrius,
Assented was by her suggestion,
For to accomplishe like her opinion.

All her desyres of fleshy appetyte,
Thus of accord there folowed they: delyte.

Left hys wyfe called Beronices,
The quenes daughter and again al right,
In a place secret out of pries,
they lay together almost euery night,
takyng no hede of God nor of no wyght,
Till of fortune the case is so befall,
that he was hated of hys knightes all.

Despyte they had of Arsyne,
The dede horrible whan they did espye,
his wife Beronices eke when she did see,
wholy the maner of they: ribaudye,
In heart she caught a great melancoly,
Omytted knightes in stele armed byght,
In they: auourty to take them on a night.

Lying abed slept and toke no kepe,
After false lusses which they had bled,
they fell vpon them euen when they slepe,
The dede open might not be excused,
to al the world thus they wer accused,
with swordes drawe & knightes thilke night
to slea them both wer purposed anon right.

Out on Beronices cryeth John Bochas,
Because she hade spare Arsyne,
Groun, rote, & ginning of this horrible caas
Sawd her mercy was very cruelle,
To saue such one it was a false pitee,
As sayth mine auctour a thing contrarious,
her to preserve and slea Demetrius.

O Beronices, small is thy discretion,
to saue the quene & hath thy treason found
fyrst to Demetrius she gaue occasion,
for which she should haue had & fyrst wold
take for them both and in cheynes bound,
And after that this false Arsyne,
to exaple of other wold haue punished be,

And while they wer taken thus in cloos,
the sayd Arsyne made no delay,
But fro her bed anon she vp arose,
without clothes naked as she lay.
Ran to their swordes in al they: gret affray
went atwene them, did her busye payne,
to beare of strokes with her armes tweyne.

To saue Demetrius naked as she stode,
Woyde of al dyede dyd her busye cure,
Her white body al bespreynt with blode,
Gan to crye out on euery creature,
Alas (quod she) lat me alone endure
Death by my selfe, ye be too despitous,
to saue my life and slea Demetrius.

To the earth anon she fell adown,
to stand vpryght she might not sustene,
Dead, pale, & wan, with many piteous soun,
Death of Demetrius gan wofully by mene
Embryasing him with al his woundes grene
And in her armes, albe that he lay dede,
She kissed his mouth, cold, blew, & nothing
rede.

In sorow & cōplemt thus she made an end,
I wyte no moze of this Arsyne,
But to Beronices again I wold now tene,
For Bochas sayth, in the story ye may see,
she after was wedded to woorthy Ptholome
Like as it was her fathers fyrst intent,
whan he dyed and made his testament.

The ende of the
fourth booke.



The fyfth Booke.



There Bochas wypte agaynst
them that delite in beautie & seme-
linesse, calling to purpose howe a
manne borne in Tuscan whiche
excelled in beautie and fayrenesse:
(and for hys beautie shoulde not
geue other occasyon to synne,) he
dyffigured hys visage and bodye
with many a great wound & spot.

The fyrst Chapter.

Here John Bochas shew-
eth and hath discryed,
Of thre maner folke he
dyd see
In this worlde, which that
in certeyne,
Set all their loye and all
theyr felicitie,
For to excell in fayrenes and beautie.
Notwithstanding as ye well tell can,

It hath bndone ful many a woozthy man,
Record he taketh of Demetrius,
which in his time was sayest in certeyn,
which caused him to be contrarious,
To al vertue, his shorpe ye haue seyne.
But of the folke Bochas hath most disdeyn
that busye been to conquere and recure,
beauty by craft which cometh not of nature

The thyrde is he that grutcheth ageyn kynd,
For lacke of stature and of semelnes.
And al these thre been ignorant and blind,
and ageyn reasō their corages they by dwell
yet above beautie vertue is maistrasse.
And little woozth is faynes in certeyn,
In a persone where no vertue is seyne.
Unto purpose he telleth of a man,
that excelled all other in fayrenes,
Called Spurina, & borne was in Tuscan,
And folke had loye and great gladnes,
To behold hym for his semelnes.
Whose beautie brought women in dotage,
whan they cast their loke on hys visage.

no pur

women, maidens, dwelling in that countre
 pressed fast on hym to beholde,
 By thoccasion of his great beautie,
 Not only yong, but some that wer old,
 with loues arceffe, now wer thei whote now
 thus was his beauty to many creature (cold
 found in effect a ful perillous lure.

Husbandes old caught a fantasie,
 And had in maner a suspicion,
 Stiered by the serpent of false gelousie,
 Toward Spurina as made is mention,
 But for to auoyde al cruell occasion,
 Of any people that such malice thought,
 ye shall heare how wisely that he wrought.

To put away false delectacion,
 And all occasions of Cupides rage,
 He of prudence and discrecion,
 With many wound defaced his visage,
 for he dempt it was great damage,
 That by the chelison of excellent beautie,
 any creature hyndred should be.

Philosophers and Poetes that wer wise,
 Gave vnto hym a great commendacion,
 That he could so notably deuise,
 To finde a way within his reason,
 To let asyde all occasion,
 Of such vnleful fleshy fantasie,
 That might stiere women to lecherie.

He knew afoze and saw by experience,
 That al beautie shall wast awaye and fade
 Like somet flours in theyr most excellence,
 that grow on hilles & low down in the shade
 The rose, the lillie, when thei be most glade,
 vpon theyr stalkes theyr pteef is dayly sem,
 Been beaten downe with a stormye reyn.

And semblably in euery creature,
 Of lowe degree, or of hye estate,
 Beautie abide not, nor longer doth endure,
 than youtnes season wh age is ful chekmate
 who thynketh heron I hold him fortunat
 And can afoze in his reason cast,
 no worldly beautie in earth may alwai last.

¶ Lenuoye.

YE worldly folke that refoze in beautie
 See with the yen of yout aduertence,
 How with a small sodayn infirmite,
 when death and age list shew the pteefce
 distein al fresynes with vnware violence,
 age in whose might ther is none other grace
 Processe of yeres all beautie doth deface.

Though Demetrius was faire vpon to see
 As ye haue heard rehearsed in sentence,
 Sein lawe and right he loued Arsinoe,
 Thoccasion founde by her false insolence,
 Because reason made no resistance,
 Not aduerting how euery houre and space,
 Processe of yeres al beautie doth deface.

Full horrible was theyr iniquitie,
 And tofoze god hateful theyr offence,
 for through false lust and sensualitie,
 Lost was the bydle of inward prouidence.
 Sharpe mortal sword made pte recompence
 drowned in teares whā she did hym embrace
 with bloudy woundes disfigured al his face.

O noble princes let this story be,
 A clere mirror to your magnificence,
 Therin considred the false feaghtiee,
 Of worldly fairenes which is but apparce
 And transitory (but so be that prudence,
 gouerne the passage, vicious lust to enchale
 Processe of yeres all beautie doth deface.

How the two brethren Seleuchus & An-
 tiochus eche desirous to excell other, fylt
 at discorde and ended in mischiese.

¶ The .ii. Chapter.

There is no man that can in story rede
 Of moze mischief nor of
 moze debate,
 A man of debate that is atwene kintede,
 twene bloud & bloud gein kind infortunat
 namely in persons which been of hye estate
 As it fylt once the story beareth recozde,
 Atwene two brethren that wer at discorde.

That one Seleuchus, Antiochus p tother
 As the story hereafter shall deuise,
 Eche desirous for to excell other,

The fifth

In worldly worſhip & wonderly they were
And both bled by worldly couetiſe, (wiſe
For to climbe by to hye eſtate,
Which cauſed them to be at debate,

Both mighty kiges Bothas maketh meciſ
And of one wombe ſoothly they wer bozne,
Under a curſed ſell conſtellacion,
Of froward ſede may grow no good cozne.
And through couetiſe both they were lozne
And deſtroyed by the moztall warre,
that was atwene the in Aſie nye and ferre.

It is to me very contagious,
To rede the battayles and diſcencions,
The falſe promiſes of Antiochus,
With his deſectes and conſpiracions,
Brethren of byrth and of condicions,
Contrarious wayes euer they byd wende,
froward theiſ ginning froward was theyſ
(ende,

Theiſ mother was called Laodices,
and in Aſia Seleuchus was reignyng,
Euer at warre, coulde not lye in pees,
And in Siria Antiochus was kyng,
and among robbours thei made theiſ eding
where euer they faught in wrong or in right,
Neuer thei bode but toke them to flyght.

Though Seleuchus was at his gynyng
Shynyng in glozy and in hye prowelle,
and of Aſie he was lord and kyng,
With great deſame was dycked his nobleſſe
Becaule that he of great unkyndneſſe,
full falſely ſlough without iudgement,
his yonger brother that was innocent,

And by the byddyng of Laodices,
which was his mother of hatefull cruelte,
fallſ to murder the quene Beronices,
Suiſter to the kyng called Ptholome,
Reygnyn in Egypt, but it ſode ſo that he,
For all his power layled of his pze,
Becaule that he was ware and fled away.

Yet afterward of olde hate and enye,
thys Seleuchus by full falſe treaſon,
Murdered Beronices by conſpiracie,
Her ſonne alſo as made is mencion,
The ſlaunder aroſe thzough many a regio

And was reported vnto his deſame,
wherthzough he loſt his worſhip & his name

And on this murder auenged for to be,
For the horrible great abuſion,
the kyng of Egypt the ſayd Ptholome,
gan make hym ſtrōg & came id people down
But for there was ſo great diſcencion,
thzough all his lond, the ſtozy ſeyth certain,
he was conſtreined to retorne home again.

Seleuchus than made a ſtrong army,
Gathered ſhippes, ſtuffed them with vitayle,
toward Aſie he taken hath the ſee,
But ſuch tempeſt gan his people aſſayle,
That heartes and power of them gan faile
id thundring, lightning, begrably diſtreined,
to take the lond of nece he was coſtreyned,

The people of Aſie ſeing this miſchief,
Had of Seleuchus great compaſſion,
and theyſ ſuccour to ſet at a prieſt,
They hym recepued into that region,
Though it ſode as made is mencion,
that afore tyme for his cruell dede,
they had his parſon in full great hatrede.

And for he ſonde fortune ſauourable,
Not conſpyng her mutabilite,
He caſt of rancour for to be vengeable,
and gynne a warre ageyn Ptholome,
His men outrayed he was made to flee,
knewe no reſute nor ſuccour of none other
But for great miſchief ſent to his brother.

I meane his brother called Antiochus,
Behelyng hym for to crowne hym kyng,
Of all Aſie, his ſtozy telleth thus,
toke truſe this whyle by ſubtil falſe werkig
With Ptholome for ten yere enduryng,
and whan his brother came with his powere
falſed his promes double of hert and chere.

Thus of new they ſyll at debate,
Eche gan other mightilye warrey,
falſe couetiſe to encrease theyſ eſtate,
Caused that nother lyſt other obey.
Met in a field there is no moze to ſeye,
faught hand for had theyſ hoſtes both two,
Seleuchus fled as he was wont to doe.

Thus

Thus a false warre of hatred fraternall.
Againe nature set them at discorde,
Eche busp was in especiall,
As they? sozzy remembzeth by recozde,
Auer i their lyfe to be at one accorde,
but whā Seleuchus was thus put to flight
the people of Sirie gan deme anon ryght.

That he that day was other take o? dede,
and Gallogrecians a people of great pouste
of couetise gan hast them full great spede,
To enter Alie and spoyle al that countrie,
To Antiochus they had eke enmitie,
That he was sayn for his saluacion,
to pay to them a ful great raunson.

Their heart was youe onely to pillage,
Takyng of hym of gold great quantite,
And he seyng of robbyn the outrage,
brough to p pillours & one of them was he,
through al Alie thei robbed eche countrie
for Seleuchus they gan so purchase,
That he not durst abide in no place.

Than Antiochus brough to Ptholome,
boyde of saueconduit o? any assuraunce,
though p atwene them was great enmitie,
for a season as made is remembzaunce,
to haue found succour in his great greuaice,
But al for nought, for in conclusion,
Ptholome hym toke and cast in darke prisō.

There consreynd of nere stite,
knowyng no meane to make his raunsome,
By a woman that liued in pouertie,
He was holpe out of that darke prison.
Loe here of fortune a false condicion,
that could make a king without piere,
Of a pooze woman to stond in daungere.

To proude folke this may be a mirroure,
to see a prince thus sodainly brought lowe,
That none in riches like an Emperour,
Which of disdayn lyst no man to know.
Now is he cast, now is he ouerthrow,
now hath he cause to pletne, wepe & mourne
knowing no frend for succo? him to turne.

He was aferde to holde his passage
By hye wayes, o? for to come in syght,

fil among theues, and ther by great outrage
All merciles they slough hym anone ryght.
and his brother for all his great might,
called Seleuchus which was a gret woder
fil fro his courser & brake his necke at odder.

How the noble quene Laodomia was in
the temple slayne: and how vengeaunce
was take vpon hym that slough her.

The.iii. Chapter.



Fre of estates princes and
princesses,
Shewed them to Bochas
pitteously pleynyng.

to hym declar yng they? mozt all heulnesses,
And fyrst of all there came to hym wepyng,
the noble quene her sozow rehears yng,
Called Laodomia which w ful heup chere,
compleyned the mischief of her suffer dere.

Called Aereis yong and tender of age,
that wedded was of Sciclie to the king,
And on the day of that great mariage,
there fyl a strife and a great meuyng,
Among the commons by a maner rys yng,
that whan the quene thereof had a sight,
to Dianas temple anon she toke her flight.

The people was partte & rose agem p byng
for which rumour and sodein strife,
Laodomia full ferefully quakyng,
Ran to the temple for to saue her life.
Suppos yng in her ymaginatife,
That for the temples chast reuerence,
Men would spare to do they? violence.

But there was one by whō the strife began
And was fyrst grounde of this great motiō
Called Molo a false Sciclian,
Woyde of all reuerence and deuorion,
Ran to the temple fierter than Lion.
And where the quene the aulter did abraze
with a sharpe sweord slough her in p place.

This sacrilege was punished by vengeace
gods wer wroth through this great offence
And Diana by full great displeasaunce,
Made in the court a sodein penitence,

The fifth

And Philo was by private violence,
Turned bestiall, made woode in that affray
And slough hymselfe supping the twelue day.

Chowe Cleomenes kyng of the La-
cedemonians was slayne with hys
wyfe and chyldren.

The.iiii. Chapter.

After this vengeance taken on Philo,
Came Cleomenes of Lacedemoyne
kyng.

And to Bochas gan shew his deadly woo,
His great iniuries of enemyes assaying,
His hye empyses his kingdom defendyng,
And alderlast how he in his cite,
Was by the sonne slayne of Ptholome.

First in his countrey the story doth deuyse,
again his enemyes he had a great batayle,
Of his people defendyng the fraunchise,
Of knightly prowesse as he þ list not sayle,
For his ryght to fyght in plate and mayle,
His lieges echeone beyng of one assent,
To liue and dye with hym in their entente.

Men and women and chyldren yong of age
wet of one heart as in that mattere,
which made the strōg & gate gret auantage
That vnderdeided they stode echeone yfere,
Of one courage, of one wyll & of one chere
Gzeatly assured in theyr opinson,
Because among them was no deuision.

Their commō profit they did more pferre
Than they dyd treasur, lyfe, or good,
For theyr freedom ay ready to the werre,
Not aserde to spende theyr owne blood.
And finally so together they stode,
þ of one thought eche gan him ready make,
To liue and dye for his brothers sake.

He had an enemy kyng of Macedon,
the name of whom was Antigonus,
And he had wedded (þ boke maketh mencō)
The olde quene of kyng Demetrius,
And had her sonne the story telleth thus,
Called Philip for youth in his keepyng,
Therby ppretendyng a title to be kyng.

Of Lacedemoniys claymed agēin right,
There to reygne and take possession,
Like a tirant vsurping of great might,
For to be crowned in that region.
But for al his false ppretencion;
He was put of and pset a farre,
Though he with them held a mortal warre.

And Cleomenes that was rightfull kyng,
Was in the field armed euery daye,
Hardy as Lion, dyed hym nothing.
Gain his enemyes he stode so at a bay,
That fro the field he made them flee away
His dreadfull sword ground was so keene,
That to abide him they might not sustene.

And on a day defendyng his cite,
Helpe in the field a full strong batayle,
With litle people made his sone to fle,
Returning home ful weary of trauayle.
Thought in his heart that it should auayle
To stint the warre hanging in no certayn,
Tyll that his people restred wet agayn.

Set ordinaunce through all the countre,
Gain all enemyes to make resistance,
And into Egypt he goeth to Ptholome,
With wife & chyldren withdrawing his pfect
There receiued with great beneuolence,
Like his estate out of care and dred,
And there abode til Ptholome was ded.

But the sonne of kyng Ptholome,
which reigned after by succession,
Of false enuye and vengeable cruelte,
Slough Cleomenes in that region,
His wife, his chyldren, boyde of compassion,
(Alas) it was so straunge a cruell thyng,
Within a kingdome to murder so a kyng.

Col Hiero kyng of Scitill, of Cor-
nelius Alina, and of old Hanniball
Duke of Chartage,

The.v. Chapter.

After whose death thus wrought by
violence,
As the story remembreth procedyng,
Forth came Hiero and shewed his pfect
Of

Of Siracuse the mighty strong kyng,
 Tofoze Bochas full piteously pleyng,
 Beseeching him with a full piteous cheere,
 Of his mischief to wryte the manere.

The which Piero wilfull and furious,
 Lust to presume of false rebellion,
 For to debate with Appius Claudius,
 And to maligne again Rome towne.
 But he anon for his presumption,
 Constreyned was in all his most pryncesse,
 Like a coward to flie and not abide.

No more of him mine autour writeth here,
 But in his booke as he doth procede,
 There came Cornely of Rome a consuler,
 hymself complainyng of the great fall hede
 which vnto him accomplished was in dede
 By assurance broke of old Hanniball,
 Which of Chartage was chief Admirall.

To this Cornely Hanniball was sworne,
 With the Africans by a maner flattery,
 To succour hym as I haue tolde tofoze,
 With the Romans to holde vp his partie.
 But when they met the booke doth specifye,
 Cornely was take and fettered in prison,
 His mischief dyed there gayned no ransoun

Then Hanniball entred of entent,
 With his knyghtes into a great citie,
 Of Sicill called Agrigent,
 Where Duillius Silua of olde enmitte,
 Layde a siege with a great meynie,
 That he constreyned the sayd Hanniball,
 For very hunger to leape ouer the wall.

By a posterne he toke hym to the flight,
 Gathered shippes and toke the large see,
 And Duillius Silua like a manly knight,
 fought with him and made hym for to flee,
 Upon the water anone after he,
 Was of his knyghtes stoned to the death,
 And so constrained he yelded by the breath.

Of Xantippus, the Duke of the La-
 ccedemonians cast into the sea.

The. vi. Chapter.



fter that Hanniball was
 slain thus,
 And put to flight as made is
 mention,

Tofoze Bochas came worthy Xantippus,
 A famous Duke full notable of renoun,
 And he was lozde of the strong region,
 Lacedemoyne, and was come afarre,
 Into Chartage to helpe them in the warre.

By whose promesse to his encrease of glory,
 The proude Romans wer put to flight,
 Chartaginenses had of them victorie,
 And there was take the wise manly knight
 Marcus Regulus, and brought anon right
 Into Chartage, and led as prisoner,
 By Xantippus as Bochas writeth here.

This noble Duke for all his hye promesse,
 Done in Chartage & shewed to their town,
 And for all his notable kyndnes,
 Thei most vnkindly quite him his guerdon
 For sayyng home toward his region,
 In a ship stufed of their countrey,
 Of false enuye thei cast hym in the see.

To his noblesse and famous chualtie,
 whā he of knighthode sat hiest in his flours,
 They of Chartage by hatred & enuy
 (for maligned agein hym chief sone of their suc-
 cessors) faclyped his light, but thereagein autours
 haue by wryting perpetually set his name,
 And it registered in the house of fame.

Howe Marcus Regulus of his fre
 wyll dyed for the common weale.

The. vii. Chapter.

Who can tel or rehearse the groundes
 of warres,
 & first cause of such mortal outrage
 where it began by influence of starres,
 Twene man and man or of wilfull rage?
 Twene Romans and folkes of Chartage,
 To great hindryng considred the manere,
 Of both parties as booke doth vs lere.

Italiens therewith wer greued oft,
 Namely whā fortune was their aduersary
 V.iii. And

The fifth

And Africans felt ful oft vnsoft,
Whan she to them list be contraye,
Whose course of custō fortune doth vary,
By experience it hath be proued wele,
In þe ouerwhelmyng of her vntrusty whele.

The most worthy and the moste famous,
Afore remembred vpon the partie,
Fortune to day made them victorious,
And to morow she dyd their myght desyre.
Now vp now down al stode in scaparde,
Like as she list them fauour nye or farre,
Their losse, their winning, called Fortune of
(warre.

To some wel willed happy and eurous,
To some also ful strange of acquaintance,
Reckon among other Marcus Regulus,
On Romaine partie a prince of gret substance
To be preferred and put in remembrance,
One the most worthy and true found in dede
Of knyghtly policie that I can of rede.

To common profite was as his aduertence
Twene loue and hate standyng so byrght,
To nother syde declined the balaunce,
Of his domes for fauour of no wyght,
Tyl that the eye of his inward sight,
Conceiued had where the trouth stode,
Than gaue he sentence & thereon he abode.

In al this world ther was no better knight
Better named and bozne of good linage,
A semely person, beluer, and of great might,
Hardy as Lion, ryght manly of visage,
Wal of þe Romaines thar perdyd to Chartage,
Demure, not hasty, sepyng al thyng to sozne,
and in Papinia I finde that he was bozne.

And for he had so great discrecion,
this worthy knight, this Marcus Regulus
Chosen he was a counsell of the towne,
And had a felow called Manlius,
In armes, manly, wysse, and vertuous,
which for they notable expert hie constauce
Of Romaine warres had the gouernaunce.

Theyr shippes stuffed made a great armye
Full prudently with knyghtly apparayle,
These princes twayne taken haue the see,
First with Sicilians had a great battayle.

Discomfited them, and at theyr artuayle,
Outtrayed Amilchar the story is no fable,
That was of Affrike captayn and cūtable.

But in that countrey castels many one,
toke prysoners, stuffe, and great riches,
and all that pray to Rome he sent anone,
By Manlius, the story beareth witness,
And the Romaines for his worthynesse
All of assent because he was so wysse,
Prolonged haue the terme of his office.

Of knyghtly noblesse was none to him like
nother in armes nor politarie ordinaunce,
And for the conquest of Chartage & Affrike
To hym they gaue of both the gouernaunce,
Brought cities, townes, to hys obeyssaunce,
Of the Romaines this noble worthy knyght
wher euer he rode mauger their foes might

By his faithful laborious diligence,
Gate all the countreys to Chartage town,
Tyl tydings came vnto his presence,
Beside a riuer there was a great dragon,
So horrible as made is mencion,
that al þe countrey of hym stode in such doubt
No man durst neygh hym farre about.

In hundred fete and twayne was his length
Like as writeth Titus Liuius,
was none so hardy mā nor of such strength
That durst appoche he was so benemous.
But by the manhode of Marcus Regulus,
Slain was this monstrous serpent,
And for a meruayle the skin to Rome sent.

Thus in conquest while he did his payne,
To great castels and mighty strong townes
again him wer sent Asdruballes twayne,
Called of Affrike the hardy champions,
With all the power of their regions,
But as the story maketh rehearshale,
They wer discomfited both in battayle.

Amilchar after came with spere and shield
In defence of Affrike and Chartage,
And he was also distressed in the field
With al his host mauger his visage.
Thus Marcus had alway the bauntage,
makig þe Romaines this knight most vertus,
Through

Though his prowesse to be victorius.

And where that he in his tender age,
List do labour and till his owne londe,
For exercise and vertuous auantage,
To holde the plough and lede it with his hōd
Auoyding slouth as ye shall vnderstonde,
Now throw al Affrike w many worthy knight
in stele and mailles he rideth armed bryght.

Thus noble Mark what euer he had ado,
He was in armes souerain singulere,
And in the temple at Rome of Appollo,
For him was kept a croune of fresh Lauret
forged of gold, fret full of stones clere,
And in the temple of Iouis was reserved,
A robe of victorie which he hath deserued.

To these goddesses who can consider well,
Of old custome the rites to maynteyne,
As for a thyng beyng perpetuell,
Which faueth neuer of nature thus I mene
Placed is the fresh Lauret greene,
For causes twaine graunted to conquerors
In martiall actes by conquest made victors.

For the noblesse of this tree Diuine,
Wherewith by his odour in wisdom excellēce
By the greenes which neuer doth decline,
Long abiding of vertuous prudence.
The round croune betokeneth prouidence,
In signe onely of knightly gouernaunce,
Taketh his guerdon of long continuance.

Their strength only graūted thē not þ eronn
nor a proud gining stablisheth not their glory
But perseueraunce who list muse and roun
Graunteth to them and putteth in memory
The triumph and palme of theyr victorie,
The croune of Lauret in story it is told,
And of Jupiter the rich robe of gold.

Who can descerne of al these giftes thye,
Most appertheyneth vnto chualrye,
Manly prowesse, wisedom anon let see,
Strength, hardines, conquest politer,
For the Romans caught a fantasie,
For his merites notable and glorious,
To magnifye this Marcus Regulus.

For this Marcus during his lusty yeres,
Prince of þ wares gain Affrike & Chartage
Toke al theyr yong knightes prisoners,
Sent them to Rome for cōmon auantage
But Oh (alas) whan he was fal in age,
The gery goddess among theyr chaunges al
Agayn this prince their fauour made appal.

For to withstand þ prowesse of this knight,
In helpe of Affrike as made is mencion,
Came Antippus of whō I spake now right
A mighty Duke the which was sent doune
fro Lacedemoin which throw his hie renou
Whan the power of Marcus gan to fayle.
His meyny liapn toke hym in battaile.

Into Chartage sent hym prisoner,
and there he lay in strong cheines bounde,
Loe how fortune chaunge can her there,
fallest of trust whan she is most iounde,
First fauourable, after froward found,
This her maner with her double face,
solke þ fit hiest to chaūge thē fro their place.

For he that whilom had in subiection,
almost al Affrike and Chartage the cite,
Now lyeth he bounde and fettered in prison,
Whilom in glory now in aduersitie,
Cast in miserie from hys prosperitie,
Fortunes fauours be made who loke welc
Of byotill glasse rather than of stele.

This māly knight albe that he lay chetned,
which had brought Rome to so hie encrease
þ thet of Affrike & Chartage wet cōstremēd
vnto the Romans to pursue for a peace.
And for taccomplish this matter doubtles,
vnder assuraunce made in Chartage coun,
They toke Marcus anon out of prison.

Bound by his othe there is nomore to seyn,
He to be chaūged for Affrike prisoners,
There for tabyde and they to come ageyne,
the yōg knightes fresh, lusty of their cheres,
So that Marcus feble and old of yeres,
By Affricans wet to Rome sent,
By oth assured to accomplishe their entent.

For the Romans had in such desire,
This noble Marke for māhode & prudence,
And

The fifth

And for the furthering of the commonwele
they had his person for wisdom in reuerence
Called in þe towne their wall & their defence
had in more cheerte for knightthode in þe age
thā al their prisoners of Affrike & Chartage.

Romains greatly reioyced of his coming,
And specially for his deliuerance,
all at once of heart and true meanyng,
Said welcome home our ioye our suffisāce
welcome mirrour of knightly gouernance
this was their voide & this was their lāgage
at his repayre fro Affrike and Chartage.

And thus receyued like to his estate,
and conueyed through al the cite,
Robly presented vnto the Senate,
Began his tale anon as ye shall see,
As he that had more in cheertee,
The common profit than his deliuerance,
Said vnto them these wordes in substance.

Sits by the aduise of you echone present.
First by the estates, next by the commonte,
as prince and consul to Affrike I was sent
And as ye know seuē yere there I haue be,
To chastise rebels of that countre.
And by the fauour and help of gods might,
to your cite I haue acquite me like a knight

In this matter it nedeth not to tary,
ye know your self I am now waken olde,
And fortune is to me contrary,
whetby your enimies in Affrike be made bold
and they desyre me for to be sold,
In eschaunge by short conclusion,
For prisoners which they haue in this toun.

And by the fauour of goddes hpe in heauē,
and by my felowes wise mediacion,
Countreis & prouinces more thā sixe & seuē
I haue in Affrike made subiect to this toun
Dauger their might and their rebellion,
And them constreyned like as ye desyre,
for to obey vnto your Empire.

To make your empire more stately glorious
and to encrease the boundes of your cite,
Whylō by grace I was victorulous, (thē se
benquished your enimies where euer I dyd

Now through fortunes mutabilite,
Made vnhappy and desolate of chere,
Sometime a prince and now a prisoner,

Afore my power by fortune was fraichised
Now am I thral and fetred in prysen,
mine old triumphes be newly now disguised,
And victories oppressed and borne downe,
With this considered the transmutacion,
Of youth passed, and mine bnewelby age,
Little wonder though dull be my courage,

Yet ther is a thig þe draweth a lēgth my lyfe
which in my heart hath set great gladnes
To your encrease how this mortal strife,
By my labour and knightly busines,
The martial princes famous in worthines
In all þe knightes most souerayn of renoun,
fought through Affrike, be now in your prysen

By whose absence febled is Chartage,
þe countrey pouerished, brought to discrees
Seyng that I am dull and fall in age,
Gaine Affricans to put my selfe in ptees,
Causyng your enimies pursue for the pees,
by eschaunge of me that may but smal auad
for Affrike knightes most expert in batail,

They stond in hope of theyr deliuerance,
By eschaunge of me now sent out of prysen
Of entent to encrease theyr pussaunce,
Of new to gyn a warre vpon your toun.
Now take good hede, and of discrecion,
Beise of prudence this thing that I haue told
Theyr youth considered & I am feble & old.

I am consumed and weared in the warres
fortune contrary, I feble to beare armure,
They lusty, fresh, theyr name spred ful far is,
And in the field they able to endure.
I bnewelby and like a creature,
More feble to draw home to my graue,
Than to be armed this cite for to saue.

And in effect I haue more cheerte,
Of very faith without variauner,
Vnto the profit of your commonte,
Than to the matter of my deliuerance.
Two thinges periled and weyed in balace,
Of Affrike knightes expert worthines,

In me the constreint of ages feblenes,
And to conclude vpon this matter,
I might neuer (as semeth vnto me,)
as of knighthode deserue the Laurell,
For the triumphe in this famous cite,
Better than dye tenebreast the commonite.
And thus auised of heart & whole courage,
ride by the spirit of mine brweld by age.

In this purpose he stedfast as a wall,
Of one wyll and one perseuerance,
himself commending to goddes immortall,
Chase for to dye of politike constauce,
And to preferre by notable purseyuance,
The common profite, this was his motte,
Set asyde good treasure and his lyfe,

Right well chered, stable of his visage.
Of perfit loue he had vnto the towne,
He is repayed aye in vnto Chartage,
The articles kept and the condicion,
At the departing from Affricke region,
This to say teplete their lust certaine,
Of prisoner he for to resoyt agayne.

At his departing the Romasne Senatours,
Can were pale of compassion,
To se the pauis of al theyr olde succours,
As prisoner depart out of the towne.
Princesse, Ladies fel a swoone down,
Children wept and cryed for pris,
farewell byholder chief wall of our cite.

Was euer founde any truer knyght,
which of his owne feithfull motion,
where he was fre and had power & myght
To haue stonde at large by his election,
to kepe his promise reperyed to prison:
What shall I write of his noblesse or chere:
To fynde one lyke hym I cede but a few.

And whan he came ageyn with his message
knowyng the intent of this worthy knyght,
Most furiously the people of Chartage,
In the presence of euery maner wight,
Omyned haue to torment anone ryght,
first the liddes of his eyen twayne,
They cut them of to encrease his payne.

That he not should slepe in prison,
But euer watche with paine intollerable,
And for the constreint of his passion,
Crye and complain with sighes lametable,
And after this thei toke a plaine table,
fret ful of nayles, sharpe wher and ground,
and thereupon naked they hym bounde.

Another table they layde on hym aloft,
Nayled also and atwene these twayne,
They couched him this bed was ful vnsuff,
most importable so hideous was the payne,
The bloude ran out of euery sinow & vein,
This was his torment (alas) a cruel death,
of worthy Marcus til he yeld by the breath.

Who read in bookes or etier byd see,
Of any princes so stedfast and so stable,
As whilom wer in Rome the citier:
Or in their conquest so long pardurable,
on vertue fouded of corage vnsancheable:
reckon by all that euer were in that towne,
and to this Marcus make no comparison.

Reckon Camillis, Papires, Scipionis,
Notable, worthy, for many great victorie:
Reckon by the the worthy champions,
Curius, Fabritius, famous of memorye,
But this Regulus eclipseth all theyr glozy,
and surmounteth by report of renoun,
all these foresayd in comparisoun.

Reckon by the foure that whilom wer so rich,
The first of them called Lucius,
Other tweyne of condicion lithe,
As was Staurus and Gaius Celsus,
And forgeat not the great Emilius,
But for al theyr great possession,
Make to Marcus no comparison.

Remember on Crassus of whom it is tolde
The Affriciens to staunche his couetise,
powred in his throte strangled him w gold,
So he dyed the stoy doth deuise.
And though these foure wend haue be wyse
Greatly commended through false opinion,
Of them to Marcus make no comparison.

Touching this Marke let me behold & see,
He left his treasure, his freedom, and riches,
And

The fifth

And for the profit of the commontee,
 Forsoke his frendes Bochas bereth witness
 To forther his towne dyed in distresse,
 To kepe his sayth resorted to prison,
 Make of none other to hym comparison.

Wine autour here put in remembraunce,
 Some that had gold, stones, and perre,
 Some that had of riches haboundaunce,
 And of other that stode in dignitie,
 And some that had worldly prosperitie,
 Set al asyde and conclude of reason,
 Twene them and Marcus is no comparisō.

Princes may live after theyr ententes,
 after their lustes and theyr delices,
 Of gold & purple weare rich garments,
 after theyr power strowardly in vices,
 graunt theyr ministers in cities great offices
 twene all theyr pompe and bayne ambiciō,
 and atwene Marke make no comparison.

All these thinges remembred in certeyn,
 well considered and yput in mynde,
 There was in Rome but fewe such seyn,
 to common profite that found was so kynd,
 And tyl I may such another fynde,
 In all this boke turnyng vp so downe,
 I wyl to hym make no comparison.

Cleniope.

This tragedy who that can take hede,
 Is intermedled with wo and gladnes,
 tope for the worship and singuler manhede
 that was in Marke by excellent noblesse
 to rede his fall it is great heavines.
 whiche chose to dye whereas he stode free,
 Onely for profite of the commontee.

To kepe his othe plainly as I rede,
 Made in Chartage there beyng in distresse
 This noble prince constreyned of no nede,
 But of fre wyll myne autour doth expresse,
 fro Rome ageyn thither gan hym dresse,
 To suffer torment of his free voluntie,
 Onely for profite of the commontie.

This story shoulde crowned be in dede,
 With golden letters for to beare witness,

how þ said Marke having of death no drede
 To set Rome fro warre in like nes.
 whose he renoun most souerein of prowesse
 May neuer eclipse by none antiquitie,
 whiche chose to dye to forther the comōtie.

He deserued for to have the mede,
 Of triumph and marciall worthines,
 And of Jupiter to weare the purple wede,
 fret ful of stones most heavily of brightnes
 þ Laureat crowne conseruyng his grenes,
 Graunted to victours who list consider & let
 Whiche chose to dye for the commontee.

Noble princes which that gouerne and lede
 All worldly people take hede in your hines
 To this story true as is the crede,
 Takynge example do your busines,
 By to support and maintein rightwosnes,
 And let Marcus to you a mirrour be,
 whiche chose to dye to forther þ comōtee.

Howe Ptholome king of Egypt called
 Philopater slough father & mother &
 his wife, in lechery spent his lyfe
 and mischeuoufly ended,

The viii. Chapter.

Next in order to Bochas
 complaynyng,
 vicious of life there came Ptholome
 Called Philopater that was of Egypt kyng,
 In tender age by horrible cruelte,
 Slough father, mother, & sister ye may see,
 He to be crowned it is made mencion,
 To reigne alone in that region.

He was disposed vnto every vice,
 stoward to vertue and to all doctrine,
 Slough his wife called Euridice,
 Left his spouse toke a concubine,
 Wasted his lyfe, gan him self encline,
 To al riot, surfet, and outrage,
 And in this wise he spent his yong age.

Thus was dislaundred his royall maiestie,
 In lecherous lustes watched all nyght,
 abed tyl noone agein al honestye,
 Of false excesse Hope hym anon right,
 Whan

When he arose to drinke again might,
Gorge vpon gorge to asforce his lecherie,
The long day he spent in glottonpe,

I were weary the processe for to write,
Of this tirant vicious and wood,
It is contagious the processe to endite,
Because the example doth harme & no good
And of vengeance thus with hym it stode,
Of soden mischief I rede he dyd fyne,
Embraced in armes of his concubine.

Agathocles plainly was her name.
And had a brother called Agathocles,
Vicious both and flaundred by defame,
Royled by report thei wet so rechles,
Both at once take in a soden prees,
With all theyr allies all at once set,
And by iust dome led to the gibet.

How Bitomarus and Urdoma-
rus kinges of Fraunce after greate
batailes wer by þ Romans slain,

The. ix. Chapter.

Nexte Phlopatet called
Ptholome,
There came in order a worthy king
of Fraunce,

Bitomarus, and out of that countrey,
Rode into Grece with a great puissance.
And fyrst he gan to make his ordinaunce,
Again Romannes albe thei wet farre,
Proudly with them for to gygne a warre.

But they of Rome to theyr confusion,
By theyr Bishops and prestes gan deuise,
To ble a cursed false supersticion,
Unto their goddes in full cruell wyse,
To offer by men by a newe sacrifice,
To bury the quicke, in Bochas thus I rede
By a false hope the better for to spede.

Of Fraunce & Grece thei toke ten in nūbre
half men & womē together twei and twei
and by false murder they dyd the encūber,
buried the quick, their death was ful soden
At this sacrifice the goddes gan disdayne,
And to the Romannes were contrarious,

For their false rites superstitious.

And by recorde of olde Chroniklers,
the yere fūe hundred fro their foundacion,
And one and twentie tho beynge consulers,
The in number as made is mencion,
Which gouerned and ruled all the towne,
The first called Lucius Emilius,
And the second Catalus Caius.

Attilius Regulis the thirde consulere,
By all the Senate ordeyned wet these thre
as I haue tolde the self same yere,
For to gouerne and rule the cite,
And to preserue them from al aduersite,
Again two peoples of Gaul & Lumbardye,
Which than warted of malice and enuye.

Of which warre þ Romans stode in doubt
The Senatours, and all the Citezetins,
because against the thei came so gret a rout
Of Lumbardes by this half þ mountenes
Joynd together with many fell foreyns,
which stode departed as made is remēbrāce
fro thent of Rome and theyr obeysance.

The people rude, bestiall and vnsstable,
together assembled wood and furious,
Of multitude very innumerable,
vengeable of heart, of courage despiteous,
Wode of all reason sodenly furious,
As sayth Bochas, I can no farther gone,
their souldiours bare gisarmes euenshorne.

And Gisarmes of Gisarmes thei wet called
toward Rome them hastying day by daye,
Of great labour the footemen fore appalled
But ay their trust on multitude lay,
Of whose commyng Rome stode in afraye,
And specially the consulers thre,
That out wet sent to fight for the cite.

four score thousand as write þ Chroniklere
Mighty to stond at defence,
In his felowship had eche consulere,
And of the Gisarmes number in sentence,
The hundred thousand by surdy violence
Gopng on foote I fynd that they had,
eight thousand ouer that all þ fildes sprad.

The fifth

I recken not them that rode on horsebacke,
which sixe & thirtie thousand wer in numbze
Sixe hundred ouer purposed for the wack
finally the Romans to encumber.
The shadow of the gaue so great an vmbze
That on the soyle which tofore was grene
There was vnneth any sunne shene.

Theyr captain was Bytomarus,
A manly man, and a ful worthy knyght,
And with them went Viridomarus,
Another captain in stele armed byght.
Twene them & Romans long last þe fyght,
But on the partie of Rome the cite,
Was slaine a consul one of the thre.

After whose death of fortune anon right,
On the partie of them of Rome towne,
One hundred thousand toke the to þe flyght
And thus began the same and the renoune,
Of Bytomarus, as made is mencion,
Of which victorpe his heart was made faine
and on his partie wer but thre thousand slaine

But the Romans resorted be again,
And after that had a strong battaile,
And in the field so manly they wer seyne,
And so proudly theyr enemies dyd assaile,
That as mine outour maketh rehearfaile,
Of the Gsarmes long or it wer nyght,
Fourtie thousand wer slayne in that fight.

The thirde time with help of the of Fraunce
toynded to Lumbardes & folke of Gaul also
they faught again al out of ordinaunce,
Beside the riuer that called is the Doo,
where both batailes together had a doo,
And as I find consulers twayne,
þe Roman Meltrouns knightly did ordayne.

Manlius Torquat, called was that one,
Flaminus Flaccus was with hym pferre,
And w þe Romans forth together thei gon
toward that riuer with a ful manly chere,
In which bataile the story doth vs lere,
Nine and fourty thousand slaine on that day
Of their enemies that none ne went away.

Bytomarus was taken prisoner,
In toke of triumph brought to Rome town

To the Capitolle with a full pale there,
led boud in cheines there gained no ransom
Thus hath fortune appalled his hpe renou
And in token of his discomfiture,
Offered to goddes was his cote armure.

Thus Lachesis his liues threde gan drawe
Tyll Atropos it brake with full great pain,
Viridomarus that was his felawe,
Slain in the field by Romans in certayn,
And of these worthy princes twayne,
This was the ende and the mortal fall,
The least accomplished called funerall.

And in the tyme of these mortall warres,
Arwene these Dukes & them of Rome town
Many tokens wer shewed in the starres,
metueilous lightnings fro þe heauē down
And many an vncouth constellacioun,
sondyr Cometes dyd in the welkin appere,
who seeth their stories may the trowth lere.

The water of Padus that renneth in Itale
Which in that countrey is a famous flood,
The same houre and tyme of their batayle,
As sayth the story was turned into blood,
fires in the ayze most furious and wood,
and mighty towers wer w the flames bent
The Moones appearyng in the Orient.

The people for feare fled into lowe caues,
for drede ware pale & deadly of theyr chere,
And in thre dayes wer thre earth quakes,
Duryng these warres, and in the same yere
Of great Apollo fyl down the pillere,
Of marble white, large, & of great strenght,
that sixtie cubites accounted was þe length.

And in that tyme the story sayth not nay,
of Rome a consull with a great puissance,
Called Claudius slough upon a daye,
thirtie thousand and brought to mischaunce,
Of the souldiours that came out of Fraunce,
and there was slayn w many a captain lorn
Viridomarus of whom I spake tofore.

To his great shame and confusion,
as it is remembred by scripture,
The Romaines made a great oblation,
Up to Jupiter of his coate armure.

And

And in token of his disconstitute,
within that temple of gold beaten clere,
To his despyte they henge by his banere.

Howe Siphax of Numedy king was
take, and dyed in prison.

The .x. Chapter.

Here Bochas briefly for
a remembraunce,
Writeth of warres, debates
and battailes.

That were that time in Italle and fraunce
In Spayne, Châpain, in martial apparat
and amōg other in his rehearfales, les,
He telleth in Affrike the great disencion,
attwene Hannibal and worthy Scipion.

He toucheth their names & abideth not lōg
Upon their stozes he byde not but a while,
here not rehersing their mighty wars strōg
For of their strues he doth not here cōple,
but down descēding directeth furth his stile
for to rehearce and tel by writting,
the fal of Siphax in Numedy king.

This said Siphax batailes had twene,
one with king Gala, and he of very might,
Had eke an other in which he did hys paine
To mete Masinissa aftr anon right,
and both kinges he put to the flight.
And of Masinissa I find by writting,
Howe Masinissa was gouernour and king

This sayd Siphax through his chualte,
Made Masinissa to fle hys region,
constrayned hym to liue by robbrye,
to walke in forrestes wth beastes by & doun.
And for defaute as made is mencion,
To saue his life he fond no better refute,
But fed hym self on rootes and on frute.

Out of his realme Masinissa was enchaied
and constrayned to fle fro hys countre,
fro mind of folke his name was out rased
for no man wist where he should be.
His liege men and folke of his Cite,
Through al Affrike knewe no better rede,
of hys person, but dempt that he was ded.

Thus of king Siphax encrease gā þ glozy,
which by force two kinges hath outraid,
And vpon them wonne the victoize,
But them to flight and the people affraid
þ Rome & Chartage were of him dismated.
And ech of them dyd their labour,
of their warres to make him gouernoure.

Unto Siphax out of Rome toun,
as it is written for a memorial,
To Numedy was sent Scipion,
For this matter in especial.
Out of Chartage was sent Hasdrubal,
And at the castel where Siphax lay,
Both twene arriued at one day.

And by pleyne writting as I haue cōceyued
And as the stozes remembreth in sentence,
at their comming both were receiued,
Of king Siphax with great reuerence.
And through his notable manly diligence,
As it is written by good recōrd,
He made these capteinnes hertely of accord

That they togeder lay the same night,
They had of Siphax so great suerte,
By promise made as he was true knight.
That nother of them should deceiued be.
But there was found great duplicite,
folowing after, who so can take hede,
Like as this stozes shal deuise in dede.

for by the fraud and fallenes most mortall,
Compasled befoze it is thus befall,
that by the sleight of thys Hasdrubal,
As Affricans be nye double all,
Under suger can hve well their gall:
So Hasdrubal by false decepcion,
vnder faire chere deseiued Scipion.

He brought in Siphax by false subste,
And by his sleighty painted faire language
that he should with him allied be,
By full assent to haue in marriage,
Sophonisba, a maiden of Chartage,
which was daughter yong and faire withal,
(As saith Bochas) to this Hasdrubal.

The which thig by craft was brought about
And accomplished verely in dede,

The fifth

And by thys meane pleyndly out of doute,
There first began rancour and hatred,
Simulation feined and falsehede,
that atwene Siphax and Hasdrubal alas,
Scipion was deceiued in thys caas.

And after that done was thys marriage,
Siphax ful enmie to thys Scipion,
with Hasdrubal rode into Chartage,
And gan watrey agein Rome toun.
And in thys while as made is mencion,
King Masinissa out of wilbernesse,
Toward Scipio in al hast gan hym dresse

With hys people gan to make him strong,
Through helpe of Scipion and of Lelius,
went agein Siphax and abode not long,
His heart agein him was so enuious,
and on a day the story telleth thus,
With Africans and folkes of Chartage,
Siphax the Romaines met in the visage.

Of Masinissa the people were so wode,
Upon Siphax auenged for to be,
through their battailes came to him ther he
And mauger him and al his cruelte (stode
of very manhode space was none to fle,
They brought him home through their bie
into y bondes of worthy Scipio (renoun

Siphax was take thus or he was ware,
vnder his baner mauger al his might,
And into Rome led afore the chare,
of Scipion the noble worthy knight.
That wan y triumphe graunted him of right
and Sophonisba afore to Sophax wife,
wed to Masinissa at the end of al his strife

Loe howe fortune chaunge can her tides,
to one this day she can be fauourable,
Make capteines and these great guides,
which wend haue found her whele stable,
But that she is ay froward and chaungeable
freendly to day to morowe at discord,
If thys be true Siphax can beare recorde.

This Siphax was sent out of the toun,
In chaines bound without more tarryng,
and at Tiburtine lay fettered in prision,
Died at mischief made there his ending.

And for because that he was a king,
the Romaines made of martial pite,
him to be buried within their Cite.

How Nabis hauing no title but by tyranny
toke on him to be king of Lacedemoine
and was slaine.

The .xi. Chapter.

Next cam Nabis ful peteously weping
Tofoze John Bochas, which by
tyranny,

Of Lacedemoine toke on him to be king,
Hauing no title saue title of cobbeye,
only by force him self to magnifie,
which with strong hand toke false possessio
for to be crowned in thiske region.

This Lacedemoine as by old wittinges,
whilom was had in ful great reuerence
Because only it floured in two thinges,
Both in knighthode & souereine sapience,
Mars there by manhode, Pallas by prudence
and while these tweine had gouernaunce,
Of al welfare they had suffisaunce.

And while noblesse of these thinges tweine
that is to sey the flower of his clergy,
The hye renoun most famous & souereine,
of martial prowesse and of chivalrie,
Gouerned that land by newe politie,
thā stode y kingdome auctours reherce cōne
Among the grekes like an heuenly sonne,

But at the last eclipsed was the light,
both of knighthode and Philosophie,
whan couetise gan enter agein right,
for to vsurpe vpon the regalpe,
By intrusion of false tyrannye,
and by extort force made their entringes,
Hauing no title there to reigne as kinges.

Thys was chief cause for worst conclusion
that y noblesse of Grece was brought baas
And Lacedemoine brought to confusio,
By couetise that set them in such caas,
wherby their knighthod fully traslated was
And their polisie in chronicles ye may se
Out of Grece to Rome the Cite.

And among other by cleare remembraunce,
Of such tyrantes by order rehearsing,
Habis was one that had gouernaunce
In Lacedemoyne, & was there crowned king
without tyle there falsely reigning.
And for his frowarde contageous crueltie,
He was behated of Rome the Citie.

The Romayns sent a mighty consuler,
Titus Flaminius of theyr warres gyde,
to Lacedemoyne he gan to approche nere,
Toward Argos where Habis did abyde,
Of entent for to abate his pryde.
But whyle Habis stode hysst in estate,
Of Grece his lieges to him wer at debate.

I Duke ycalled Phylipomenes,
with the people that dwelled in Grece lond,
To stryue with Habis put himself in pries,
Disconfited him fighting hond to hond.
And at great mischiet ye shall vnderstond,
Alexamenus, a knight of that countree,
Slough this Habis & chyonicle ye may see

There Bochus rehearseth the mortal
warres betwene the Romaynes,
and the Affricans.

The .xii. Chapter.

After this Habis Bochus doth procede
To tell the warres and the mortall
stryues,

Twene Romaynes and Affricans in dede,
Wherby full many lost there theyr lyues.
Caused wiewowes, maidens and eke wiuues
to wepe & waille, in such distoynt they stode,
On other partie to see the losse of bloude.

for the party of them of Rome towne,
were made captaines and diuers officers,
which into Affrike to people wer sent down
And specially there wer two consulers,
Notable in armes, & famous in tho peres,
Marcus Mallus bozne of þ Romayne line,
That other called Lucius Censoryne.

With them was sent a tribune ful notable,
Of whom tofoze I made mencion,
for the warres most worthy & most hable.

I meane of Rome prudent Scipion,
which of their Citie was chiefest champion
Of whole entent the Affricans tanoze,
and specially Chartage to destroy.

And nye by Chartage ther was a citie strong
Mightely bylded and stode vpon the see,
The walles thicke, round, square and long.
Chief defence called of that cuntre,
to saue and kepe them from aduersitee,
And fourtie cubites with creestes marciall,
like as I fynd of height was the wall.

And in the front reysed for the towre,
Of stones square was an hpe dongeon,
Called Bysa, to which wonder ferre,
Men might behold the cuntreys enuiron,
And as I reade for theyr saluacion,
the Affricans of purpose did ordeyne,
for theyr captaynes Hasdruballes tweyne.

The sayd dungen mightely battayled,
Ageyn all sautes to stond and endure,
But worthy Scipio for al þ hath not failed,
for to approche and doe by busy cure,
With his engines mighty strong and sure.
So that by force this knyght most marciall
A great quantitie brake down of the wall.

And Lucius called Censoryne,
Departed is with Marcus Manlius,
And by the counsayl of Scipion & doctrine
Both of assent in armes vertuous,
they toke their way, mine autor telleth thus
with Hasdruball soothly and they might,
whereras he lay that same day to fyght.

These consulers assailed the Citie,
Called Cyra, and beate down the wall,
Slew forty thousand & chyonicle ye may se,
Of Affricans by vengeaunce full mortal.
And their constable called Hasdruball,
was slayn that day by him it is no doubt,
that he most trusted & next was hym about.

And this while most manly of corage,
The worthy Tribune Publius Scipion,
By very force is entred in Chartage,
And sixe dayes as made is mencion,
He and his knyghtes constrained so þ town
That

The fifth

That displeyed with theyr deadly cheres,
they of the town yelved them prisioners.

Whelky requiting vnto Scipion,
to receiue them in this mortal rage,
that men & women dwelling in that town,
with the Citizens yong and olde of age,
Might abyde and liue in seruage.
vnder þ Romaynes, there was nobetter re-
and yere by yere pay the a tribute. (fute

And of Affrike þ other Hasdrubal,
which among the afore was crowned king;
Left his estate and his power royal,
yelved him prisioner humbly kneeling,
And his wife most piteously wepyng,
whan that she sawe her lord take so,
Ran into fyre and byent her selfe for woo.

Sixte and twenty thousand as I fynde,
wer led of women into captiuitie,
thyrty thousand of men came behynde,
take prisioners in great aduersitie,
And leuenteene dayes byent that cite,
that in their walles was none so hard stone,
but into powder it was byent anone.

And this was done byrefely to conclude,
By the prowesse of Publius Scipion,
Sold in seruage was a great multitude,
The y olde Lordes led fetred to prision,
Thys was of Chartage final destruction,
to write their cōplaintes Bochas abideth no
but into grece turneth agei his side. (while

Howe kyng Perseus was by Romayns
outtrayed, and after taken.

The .xiii. Chapter.

A Macedoyne remembryng
on a kyng,
Called Perseus, a full proude wret-
teour,

Clayming a tytle vpon him vsurping,
for to succede as true enheritour,
to great Alexander most myghry cōquerour
fully affirming ageyn a certayn day,
he wolbe crowned mauger who sayth nay.

And his name to put in memory,
Cast in his persone to renew the prowesse,
Of king Alexander, & to encrease his glory,
to folow his traces in knightthod & noblesse
And first of al of hasty wilfulnesse,
that his conquest might spreade ferre,
gan of purpose w Romayns to haue werre

But after this he was better awised,
whan he perceded the martiall apparayle,
Of the Romayns, whereof he was agriefed,
wer afearde their noblesse to assaile,
which ap wer found victorions in battayle,
And where afore he had been reckless,
sent embassadoys w them to treate of pees

They had perceded his presumption,
and how he was proude and surquedous,
sent a consul with a great power down,
the name of whom was Sulpicius,
which deadly hated the sayd Perseus,
through hertly rācour agein hi were solein,
Of his embassade hauing but disdeyn.

And the y partie for to fortifye,
with the sayd Consul Sulpicius,
they sent another expert in chualrye,
A Consul also Paulus Emilius,
among Romayns notable and famous.
And folowing after the selfe same night,
the Moone eclipsed fully of his light.

A cleare token as made is mencion,
þ kyng Perseus shoulde haue a Sharp Thowre
and that his lordshipp and his region,
shoulde be oppressed boorde of al succour,
and þ Macedonoyrs shoulde haue no fauour
ageyn þ Romayns together whā they met
with round speres & swordes warpe whet.

The day of batayle to his eneres of glory,
for the party of them of Rome to won,
There was a knight that caused þ victory,
yong, fresh, & lusty, that called was Caten,
which brought their enimies to confusion,
for Macedonoyrs through his great might
Outtrayed were and Perseus put to flight.

But Emilius the noble Consulere,
Sent a captain called Metanius,

To pursue after in coastes farre and nere,
the proude king, the said Perseus,
And he was take for there was no restus,
with his sonnes that were in number twaine,
Philip and Alexander the story is certaine.

Nine auctor telleth here of kinges many
Thyrtie in numbre, the first Seramus,
which haue reigned within Macedonie.
And last of al was this Perseus,
The numbre of yeres Bochas writeth thus
was nine hundred as I remembred here,
Space of their reigning w fourte & twenty
(yere

After translated was the region,
with al their ples vnto the obepsaunce
Of them of Rome without exception,
to great lordes that were of most pusillacie
Abode there long vnder gouernaunce.
And Perseus disconsolate of chere.
During his life abode there prisoner.

Now the people of Achata with their chief
Cite called Cozinthe by the Romaines
was destroyed.

The .xliii. Chapter.

Was the lordship weared out & spent,
of Macedonie as made is mencion
There wer two citries thereto adia-
thar one Achata a litle region, (cent
And Spartanois going enuyron,
Mighty of people and of great substaunce,
in one confederate and of one alliaunce.

They wer conioyned and both made al one
By a manere faithfull conuencion,
& whā þ Romaines knew thm for their sone
Hauing their frendship in suspection,
they cast to make a disunction,
Betwene these lādes in bred & eke in lēgth
for thing disseuered is mislied of his strē.
(gth

Ordained Cittes and townes here & yoder
wheron the Romaines gan make a decre,
That their lordships should be set asōder,
which made the people in euery gret Cite,
whan they knewe their false subtilte
To rise at once most cruel of their cheres,

And would haue slayne þ Romain messen-
(gers

And finally by this occasion,
Romaines agein them gan were furious,
toke herdynes of their deuision.
And a Consull called Mummus
a manly knight in armes ful famous,
Into Achata was from Rome sent,
It to destroye by great assailement.

They of Achata by their negligence
and by their froward wilful rechelesnesse,
Of very prude list make no defence,
thought them self without assisenesse,
Of power able and strengeth in southnesse,
Than were Romaines verely in dede,
Thus were they stroyed afoze or they toke
(hede

They stode in hope in their sturdinesse,
by that battaile to haue had great pillage,
Of þ Romaines to haue wōne ful gret rich;
& for a pompe of wilful false dorage, (esse,
they toke their wiues & womē yong of age,
And set them vpon an hie mountaine,
that their manhode might in þ field be seim

whan the Romaines met them in battaile,
they dispurueied and out of ordenaunce,
Slaine like bestes their power gā to fayle
Of froward prude and recheles gouernāce
that Achata was brought to mischaunce,
Women and children for sorow almost mad
To lue in seruage were to Rome lad.

Cozinthe that tyme was their chief Cite,
Destroyed by Romaines & brought to ruine
which among Cittes in Bochas ye may se,
Aboue al other did in honour shine,
of al sciences there floured the doctrine,
And of craftes artificers most wise,
Eke al þ world there was chief Marchant.
(dise

Thus vnwarely in their most noblesse,
sitting highest of fortune in the stage,
They were destroyed of treasour & richesse
Brought to nought by slaughter & pillage,
their walles broke in that cruel rage,
And in that brenning Bochas saith the leuē
Raught a great part vward to the heauent
Aa.iii. Pleins

The fifth

Plaine with þe earth the walles broke down
the people slaine merces pong and olde,
And there was made a great deuillon,
some led in seruage & some of the were sold
Images of copet, of siluer and of gold,
were sodeinly in al that violence,
Togeder molte so hote was the seruente.

Of which metal thus after it is sal,
Gold, siluer, copet, medled into one,
Copre of Cozynth the men did it call,
through al the world of custome euerichone
fame of which metal is so farre gone,
That the vessels forged of the same,
Cozynthoise called is by name.

After Cozynth was thus brēt to nought
A prync called Philis Philermene,
to John Bochas haith his cōpleint brought
In whose face and chere it was wel sene,
The wolful constreint of his mortal tene.
And he was whilom Bochas doth specifie,
Lord of a Citie called Phaloxie.

Marcus Attilius toke him prisonere,
brought him to Rome, list him not respite,
Next to Bochas with an heuy chere,
Appered a knight called Damocrite,
of Etholis mine auctour doth so wyte,
He was chief lord, but he and hys cōuntre,
Translated were into Rome the Cite.

This Duke was cast and cheyned in prison
Escaped once in stoye as I find,
take agein, throwe in a darke dungeon,
There for sorowe went out of his mind.
Slough hym self at mischief agein kind.
Loe howe these prynces proude and reches
haue shameful ende which can not lue in
(pees

Howe great Antiochus vsing riot and
vicious luing, by Marcus Attilius
was outraid and dyed sodeinly.

The .xv. Chapter.

Suching the stoye in ordre here
folowing,

Of Seleuchus and gret Antiochus
Of hys moder Laodices and the ring,
with other tokens and signes marueylous

And howe also the same Seleuchus,
Had in hys thigh as wryten is tofome,
pint of an anker þe day whan he was boyme

And al the chldzen by succession,
had by discent boyme of hys linage,
punte of an anker as made is mention,
in the fourth boke with al the surpluse,
of other tokēs there told in plaine lāguage
and of the said same Seleuchus,
Came by discent the said Antiochus.

Whose hearte was set of hie conetise,
to solowe hys lustes and dilectacions,
And specially he cast gan and deuise,
To winne in Grece diuers regions,
and of the people he caught occasions,
By theit fauoure to conquere their cōuntre,
And rebel agein Rome the Cite.

With multitude and great apparaille,
he gate in Grece castels and the townes,
Longing to Rome conquered by batall,
toke vpon him in his presumptions,
falsely to solowe the inclinacions,
of his birch while he did abide,
In a Citie that called was Calcide.

For cause of slouth he left his chyalcie,
forsoke Mars and toke him to Cupide,
Resting the winter he spent in lecherie,
in watch & riot, chase Venus to his guide
Sensualitie made reason stand aside,
and by these meanes for short conclusion,
He was conueyed to hys destruction.

And whan þe winter with his frostes colde
passed was and al his stoyes bene,
In riot spent and wasted as I told,
and Ver came in with hys newe grene.
And fre the floza which is of flowers quene
of custome ginneth her motles out dresse,
In which season as auctours al expresse.

Kinges, prynces, with martial apparaille,
Came whan Phobus in the rain doth shyne
They them dispose to goe out to batall,
for exercise of martial discipline.
And down from Rome expect in þe doctrine,
Descended is Marcus Attilius,

Agene

Ageine this vicious proude Antiochus.

This noble Marke preued in armes wele
which in hys time was so good a knight,
with al hys hooſte armed in bryght ſtele,
Agein Antiochus cam to þ field down right
þpo a moꝝow whā þhebus ſhone ful bryght
Set his wardeines by capteins þ he chees
þpon a hyl called Thermopiles.

Antiochus þpon that other ſide,
whom glotonye & riot dyd oppreſſe. (hede,
And drunke Bacchus which with him ded a-
w Moꝝpheus wiſe of flūber chief goddes,
which cauſed him thꝛough ſlouth & idelnes
That proudeſce out of his court was gone,
cauſing that day þ ſlaughter of many one.

whā the Conſul Marcus þ woꝝthy knight
his aduerſaries proudly gan aſſaile,
They vnputured toke them to the flight,
Diſareied they might not auade.
Thus Antiochus fled out of bataile,
foꝝ ageine Romains he might not endure,
therfoꝝe on hym fil the diſconfiture.

Thus rebuked fled to Epheſe,
farre frō Grece and there to dwel he chees
Sent to Romains a great Ambaſſatye,
with the ſaied Marcus foꝝ to treaſe of pees
But in this Ambaſſet this very doutles,
whan they atteyned of Marcus þ preſeꝛe,
were reſufed and had none audience.

Of which Antiochus greatly was aſhamed
caſt ageine Rome of hate and enmite,
To raiſe a power and hath of new attamed
to gadꝛe ſhippes and make a great armee,
Emne a watre agein them on the ſea,
hauing an hope vnder a coward drede,
Better on the water thā on þ land to ſpede

Made hys ſhippes be ſtuffed with bitade,
and hys capteins haue the land foꝝſake,
But whā þ Romains of new gā him aſſaile
his ſhippes brent and al his ſtuf was take
a like mine auctour cōpēdiouſly doth make
Chriſe on the ſea þ Romains warreying,
He was outraid the ſtoꝝy witneſſing,

Yet eſt agein to his confuſion,
þpon the land he gan make him ſtrong,
Met with Cornelie called Scipion,
with waſnes, cartes, made foꝝ þ war ſtrong
Shod w hard yron ſharp ſithes ſet amōg
In trauers wiſe by great ordenaunce,
But foꝝ al that he was bzought to miſchāce

With Oliphantes & Caſtels on their back
that day was ſlaine many a woꝝthy knight,
Upon his hoſte ſo cruel was the woꝝack.
that he conſtreined toke him to the flight,
foꝝloke his coultre fled out of mēnes ſight
To the Romaines he coude it not delaye,
Eche yere conſtreined a tribute foꝝ to paye,

But he of fraud becauſe of his tribute,
foꝝ couetiſe ſatned great pouerte,
Gadꝛed robbours and by falſe purſute,
Oppreſſed marchauntes, ſpoiled the coultre
Robbed temples of hateful cruelte,
and fro Jupiter called Dodonean,
Toke al the relikes the ſtoꝝy tel can.

Did ſacrilege and entred in that cloſe,
without reuerence oꝝ any obſeruaunce.
foꝝ which the people agein him roſe,
And as it is put in remembraunce,
by the gods there ſel a great vengeaunce,
Upon thys tꝛaunt quaking in hys drede,
al ſodeynly he fell to ground dead.

¶ Cenuoye.

This tragedy of Antiochus,
who liſt in oꝝdꝛe hys ſrowarde ſtoꝝy ſe,
fiꝛſt to all vertue he was contrarious,
and rebel euer to Rome the Cite,
Juſtly accuſed of vicious thinges thꝛe,
of pride, ſlouth, and of glotonye,
And of diſoꝝdinate ſuperfluſte,
Of night expreſſe, riot, and lecherie.

On hym the Romains were victorꝝous,
Twyes on the lond, once on the ſea,
He was not hardy but malicious,
In euery bataile his cuſtome was to fle,
where vices reigne there may no grace be
to al ſurſetes hys luſt he did applie,
Floꝝed & diſclauoꝛed thꝛoughout his cūtre
Of

The fifth

of night excelle.riot.and lecherie.

Among his lieges woode and despitous,
and for a coward know in the field was he,
The poore to oppresse a wulfe most furious
And by disceyt a for for subtilte,
No mā moze froward of hys noz low degre,
Noz moze belitting in falsehede noz flaterie,
what was his ende: a lodeine death perdy
For hys outrages of pryde and lecherie.

Noble princes of prudence ful famous,
In al your greatest roial maiestie,
Remembre plainly if ye be vertuous,
ye shal perseuere in long prosperitie,
where the contrarie causeth aduersitie
As this stoye afoze doth lperishe,
Of Antiochus cast from his dignitie,
for his great pryde,riot,and lecherie.

Chow Hieronimus king of Siracuse was
slaine, and howe Scipio Affrican, that
laboured for the comon weale of
the Romaines was exiled
by them and so
died.

The .xvi. Chapter.

After the death of this Antiochus,
There came a prince to Borhas
complaining,
which that was called Hieronimus,
Of Siracuse whilom lord and king,
which of hys lieges he nothing trespassing,
Slaine was with hys thre sisters dere,
Of hatred, mine auctour wytteth here.

Siracusans had a condicion,
Through chaunges new aye to be vnstable
of wilful malice voide of al reason,
On their kinges for to be vengeable,
they loued not to haue them pardurable,
But euery yere of custome this is trewe,
them to gouerne to haue a prynce newe.

And for their chaunges & their vncouth str-
with variance of their condicions (ues
Because no frute is found in their lues,
Noz in their stoyes, noz their successions,

I wil passe ouer and speake of Scipions.
And first to write of the worthy man,
Called in his tyme Scipio Affrican.

A famous knight in al nations,
for his conquest shortly to conclude,
which had brought ful many regions,
More by wysdome than by multitude,
to obeye the Romains, but for ingratitude,
which that he fond in them as I rede,
howe he wrought to tel I wil procede.

It is remembred of hys worthinesse,
while that he was flourishing in yong age,
Howe Rome was made lady and maiestie
of many a lond to their auantage,
and specially at Affrike and Chartage,
By his prowesse as made is mencion,
were brought of Romains vnder subiectid

But they ageinward were to him vnkind,
by accusacions found out by their falsnesse
Said agein him as it is put in minde,
by record of many false witnesss,
that he should haue besiled the riches
Of Chartage and Affrike the countre,
which appertained to Rome the Cite.

But ageinward thys noble Affrican,
proudly gaue answer to hys accusours,
He neuer withheld fro tyme that he began,
toward him self no part of their treasoures,
Saue as the maner is of conquerours,
for to conserue hys wo:ship and his name
as most was profite to their touns fame.

Thys is to meane plainly and not tarye,
he neuer attouched treasour nere noz fatte.
Toward him self but that was necessarye,
for their wo:ship to maintein in their warte
and yet that tyme he was their lodesterre
To encrease their boiues, & fully his delite
was al whole set to the comon profite.

He toke none hede of al the surplusage,
of their treasours noz their great richesse,
The name reserved of Affrike & Chartage
to his knighthode and hys hie noblesse.
But their malicious expert vnkindnesse,
was in cause byeuely to compile,

his bodye fro them perpetually to exyle.

Cast hym neuer within Rome towne,
After that day among them to be seyn,
Unkindnes gaue him occasion,
to absent his persone and of hys disdeyn,
to exyle hymself and neuer come ageyn.
But for tabyde in a small village,
called Linterne whan he was fall in age.

And for men should mynd vpon hym haue,
By a maner of indignacion,
An Epitaphye he set vpon hys graue,
which sayd thus to them of Rome towne.
O people vnkind, vnkynnd ageyn reason,
My funeral ashes noz my bones ded,
In thy walles thou neuer shalt possede.

In thine vnkind froward territory,
My bones shall not rest noz abyde,
But thine vnkindnes to put in memory,
to remembraunce shalbe read ful wyde.
Of these letters graue on euery side,
By report only of this smal scripture,
which here is set vpon my sepulture.

Loe here the cause by bryefe description,
Set on my graue for a memorial,
why that my bones out of Rome towne,
Be buried here lowe vnder this wall,
In exile holde my feast funerall,
Unkindnes me droue out of that cite,
that wrought so much for the commontie.

¶ Howe Scipio Asian Lord of Asia,
that laboured euer for the comon
weale, was murdred.

¶ The .xxii. Chapter.

¶ After the end of this African,
Called in his time worthy Scipion,
came next his brother Scipio Asian,
which in Asia had dominacion,
Gayn whom was made an accusacion,
to al the Senate that he vntrewly should,
certayn treasours toward hymself withhold.

which that he in Asia had wonne,
In his conquest by many strong battayle.

which accusacion falsely was begonne,
Of olde enuye causeles this no fayle,
whose worthines ful much did auayle,
to common profit by these two conquerours
By great riches entcreasing their treasours

The tone in Affrike as ye haue herd me tel
By his wisdom and his chualty,
That other in Asia which did excell,
In hys promesse as bookes specifice,
falsely hindred of hatred and enuye,
By compassing of one Antiochus,
him to destroy he was so desyrus.

Notwithstanding these tweyn Scipions,
had in their tyme by manifold battayles,
brought into Rome so many Regions,
to obey their Citty with martiall apparalles
And euermoze to theyr great auayles,
brought in treasours to crease in their towne,
yet haue they wrought to their destruction.

The tone in exyle as made is mencion,
Dyed (alas) whan that he was olde,
The second was murdred in prison,
theyr both stoyes remembred here and told
to geue example to princes manifolde,
That who that labourerth for a commontie,
leth of his thanke by Scipios ye may se.

¶ How the Duke Philopomones was take
and putte in prison, and after dranke
poyson and so dyed.

¶ The .xxviii. Chapter.



After the processe of these two
Scipions,
Twene two peoples wilfull and
reckles,

Began in Grece newe dissencions,
twene Acheoys and Messanians doubtles
And a great Duke Philopomones,
A prince that tyme of ful great puiſſance,
Had of Achaia wholly the gouernaunce.

This sayd prince Philopomones,
Leading his host vpon a ful fayre pleyne,
As he rode armed and put himself in pries,
Whid his people as gouernour and wardeyn
folke

The fifth

folke out of rule for to call agayn,
Upon his steede as he gan them sette,
In due order his wardes for to sette.

And this pryncer of pozt most martiall,
In the pursuit which that he gan make,
Among his enemies he had a sodain fall,
Worde of all rescus vnwarely he was take
Of all his frendes like a man forlake,
among his enemies brought into prielson,
there made an end by drynking of poyson.

Of philopomenes this was the fatal caas,
Out of gouernaunce his people desolate,
Except a captayn called Lycortas,
which in the warres was wonder fortunat
Of Archeops toke on him thestate,
them to gouerne and the people leade,
Of him no moze in Bochas I dooe reade.

Of the thyrd Scipion Nasica,
that euer wrought much for
the commontie.

The .xix. Chapter.

When the autor here maketh a digressiō,
And rehearseth for a memoraill,
Of the thyrd woorthy Scipion,
Called Nasica, which in especiall,
By disposicion very naturall:
Hold amōg Romayns by report of lāguage
Passing all other in wisdom and courage.

Olde of discrecion, & not but yong of yeres,
for a miracle mine auctout doth expresse,
whan the Senatours sent messengers,
Into Phrygia by great auisenesse,
for Berecynthia most famous goddesse,
whan she was brought by the þe did her gyde
In house nor temple she would not abyde.

Save in the palace of this Scipion,
to put his name moze in remembraunce,
The which also through his hye renown,
Gallogrecoys he brought to vittraunce,
A people of Grece farre out of gouernaunce
But Scipion gan them so warrey,
Maugre their malice þe Romayns for to bey

wherby his name was put in memozy,
and ful gret thak he hath in Rome deserued
Because onely of hys great victozy,
for which the triumph was to him reserued
But at last ful falsely he was serued,
Of the Romayns, after their old manere,
In this tragedye anon as ye shal heare.

After he had augmented their treasours,
Conquered in Asie many regions,
Caused of theyr fone that they wer victours
Appoynted of Gracchus the false occasions,
compassed of malice by new dissencions,
Atwene the people and also the Senate,
he of hye wisdom hath stint al that debate.

Trusting þe Romains Scipio was begiled,
Lost their fauour & offended nought.
By them vnwarely banished and expyled,
Cleue forgotten put out of their thought,
for common profit al that he hath wrought,
The guerdō lost though princes can not see
Of al that done for any commonte.

Like a blase for a whyle light,
which sheweth cleere and is neuer after set
Or like a sunne for a moment bright,
Unwarely shadowed with a cloude of reyne,
Right so the windy fauour bloweth in veyn
May resemble for a mutabilitie,
Of them that doe for any commontie.

The people foloweth theyr own opinions,
In their concertes they be so wonderful,
wille holdeth the bydle of theyr discrecions,
their hasty deming so bestial is and dull,
Of blynd bayard they brynde at a pull,
to quite the guerdons of martial bountie,
Of them that done for any commontie.

This day a pryncer stādeth in þe peples grace
Like as they would his name deifye,
Aboue the starres in Jupiters place,
with Mars & Phebus his name to deifye.
But by to morow ther cometh a sodain fall,
Shewing there is a ful seynt suretie,
Of them that doe for any commontie.

And for taffyme that it is truly so,
Call thee Scipions to remembraunce.

first of Affrike and Affie both two, (nāce
note in chyonicles their knightlye gouer:
at her restles labours Romaines for tauāce
Beken ageinward howe these princes thre,
were full vngoodly quit by the comonte.

¶ Lenuoye.

This tragedye of the Scipions,
so worthy in knightthod and eke notable
who made so many famous regions,
subiect to Rome this story is no fable,
where the Romaines double & deceivable
shewed ageinward to these princes thre,
the thanke lost and guerdon couenable,
of him that doth for any comonte.

Beken by in Affrike & Cities and & towns
Great Chartage with castels defensable,
Beken in Affie the great possessions,
with reuenues very innumerable,
Bekē their triumphes of pryncē incōparable,
which considred ye may a mirrour se.
Howe the guerdons be false & flakisable,
of them that doe for any comonte.

They were whylome & Romaine champions,
of senatours to set the honour stable
To auoide discorde and al diffencions,
atwene the comons and states honorable,
But she that is of custome ay chaungeable,
fortune in whom may be no surete,
Meweth in her whele & guerdons mutable,
Of them that done for any comonte.

Noble princes payse in your reasons,
al worldly thing in earth is transmutable,
feint and vnſure your dominacions, (ble
chartre is there none to make the pardura-
So now at departing your bodies corūpa-
a thing resembling that neuer had be. (ble
Record on Scipios by guerdons reſeblable,
of them that done for any comonte.

Trust neuer in your opinions,
but that your power is eche day remeuable,
Be not made blind in your discrecons,
but consider by examles reasonable,
& whele of fortune like hāfard returnable,
with lodeſme chaunge of false felicitye,

Unto the guerdons daily comparable,
of them that done for any comonte.

¶ Howe Duke Hanniball after many vic-
torious dedes murthered him self with payſe.

¶ The xx. Chapter.

Cert to Bochas as I rede,
Out of Affrike and Chartage
therewithall.

There came a Duke that had most hatred,
Agein the Romaines in especial,
this famous prince called Hannibal.
By whose prowesse as it is wel knowe,
the said Romaines were daunted & brought
(lowe

And among other worthy Dukes all,
as olde chyonicles maketh mencion,
Of Hannibal the fate is so befall,
at hys birth by disposicion,
That of hys natural constellacion,
Set in the heauen that he should be,
Perpetually enemye to Rome the Cite.

As the story of him doth deuise,
while hys father Duke whilō of Chartage,
Called Amilchar did once sacrifice,
To hys goddes, and he nine yere of age,
swore and auowed of hearte and of courage
During hys life without exception,
Euer to be enemye vnto Rome town.

This Martes childe this lusty yong knight
was to Chartage the strong mighty wall,
which succeeded in hys fathers right
After the death of worthy Hāfdruball,
first he made a warreful mortal,
Gain Saguntines as it is specified,
Cause with Romaines that they were allied.

A dyeme he had and was thus in sentence,
that he should conquere in bataille,
Hauger altho that stande at diffence,
two mighty cōitres first spaine & thā Itāll
Down descending with great appaule,
passing the famous riuier Iberous,
And where he rode alway victorious.

With him of Affris many gret cheucteing
rode through Gaule, found no resistance,

The fifth

Of Pyrenes by the hie mounteines,
To shewe the rigour of hys magnificence,
Over the Alpes by sturdy violence.
Notwithstanding the passage was ful wicke
Of sliding frostes and of snowes thicke.

A great party of his people lost,
By the constraint of that fell passage,
Horse, Oliphautes, that many besaunt cost
Fond great daunger of them in his carriage,
Assaut of Brygautes whā they fond auā:
And as Bochas put in remēbrance (rage
Felt great losse of al hys ordēnaunce.

The Alpes passed with trouble & gret woe
thys Hanniball with al his chivalrie,
Approched is the river of the Rho,
Came to a hil that called is Ticine,
which standerh nigh the Citie of Paup,
where a consul called Scipion,
Gaue him batayle euen afoze the toun.

The same consul Gneus Scipion,
which by processe of manly Hannibal,
was discomfited as made is mencion,
Tofore Hauie had a right foule fall.
The first victorie in especiall,
That he had beyond the mounteines
whan he purposed taste the Romains,

Sempronius another consule,
that was felowe to the said Scipion,
Sent eke fro Rome with a ful proud chere
Gein Hanniball, but in his coming down,
Tofore Tresbye a large mighty toun,
Outrayed was by fatal auenture,
And after neuer his fall might secure.

Of two consules this was the wooful fine,
Sempronius and Gneus Scipion,
ouer the mounteine called Appennine,
Went Hannibal thzough his gret renown,
to great damage and great confusion,
Of hys people that passed the mounteines,
destroyed with cold, snowe, & hideous reines.

Lost his knightes, his treasures & his goods
There might as tho be made no defence.
his great stedes drowned in the floodes,
By the waters mighty violence,

fond for the time no better resistance,
Saue he escaped fro that lodein work,
of an Oliphaunt he riding on the back,

So importable was his greuous paine,
only borne by of martiall corage,
Yet there he lost one of his ipe twelve,
kept of knighthode one there & one bisage,
Though Traile held alwey his passage,
Slough a consull called Flaminius,
Thus in thze battayles he was victorius,

But in thys while as saith mine auctoure,
Quintus fabius subtil and deceivable,
which was in Rome a famous Dictatour
which apparceiued by tokens ful notable,
No Romain captein was in tho daies able
As it was shewed by experience,
Gein Hannibal to make resistance.

Yet in hys conceit he subtilly got search,
To find a way he did hys busy paine,
day by day gan fully theron werch,
Other by fraude or some compassed treine,
to lye in waite and secretly ordeine
Embushmentes to hys auantages,
of Hannibal to stop the passages.

But al his traines serued him of nought:
for Hannibal thys worthy Affrican,
In his conquest so proudly hath wrought
to like a prince and a knightly man,
For thilke time that he warres gan,
agein the Romaines both on sea and land,
That they were feble hys power to withstand

This Quintus fabius kept him alway close
Lying awayte to fal on Hannibal,
and of assent eke to his purpose,
There was one Varro māly & wise withal
And thes twelve in especiall,
within Rome a large great cuntre,
fought with Hannibal at Cannas the cite.

As the story maketh rehersale,
The Romain partie of worthy warredours,
were forty thousand slaine in battayle,
Emilius Paulus thyrty senatours,
Twenty in numbze that had ben pretours,
and thze hundred capteins of estate

Slaine

Slayne by Hanniball in þe mortall debate.

And by the slaughter of Emilius,
The noble consul, Romaines disespoyred,
And Hanniball that daye victorius,
To his lodgyng is ageyn repayed,
His sone outrayed and mortally appeired,
Knew no refute agayn this manly knyght;
But at mischief toke them to the flight.

The which day if that Hanniball,
had them folowed proudly to the town,
By the counsaile of one Maharball,
A manly knyght, a prince of hys renoun,
He shoulde haue had full possession,
That day of Rome like to his entent
But I suppose fortune list not assent.

In this processe plainly as I rede,
this Hannibal were proud & right pompous,
Of foure victories dempt himself in dede,
Aboue all other to be most glorious,
Of his courage most inly surquedous,
But oh (alas) a litle slouth and prude,
for lacke of pursuite his conquest set aside.

Yet in his cōquest of knightes þe laye ded,
Of consulers olde and yong of age,
With Senatours the processe who list rede
Slaine in the field in that mortall rage,
Duke Hanniball sent vnto Chartage,
Of cleene golde by recoorde of wytynges,
Out of the field thre bushell ful of ringes.

After foure victories here remembred.
By and by the processe who list see,
In which many worthy wer dismembred,
Both of Affrike and Rome the citie,
Abate gan the great prosperitie,
Of Hanniball, by forward auenture,
Set once backe hard fortune to reture.

After the flours of his felicitie,
His noblesse byew to declination,
To Capua he went a mighty strong citie,
There to sojourne as made is mencion,
At the time of winters colde season,
where to his lust and bodily pleasaunce,
Of all vitayle fonde great haboundaunce.

Which made his knightes slow to þe marre
for wine, women, and plentie of vitayle,
full oft sith cause men to erre,
Make them feble their enemies assaile,
Gorges agroteped enbosted their entrayle,
Dispoeth men rather to rest and slepe,
Than of theyr enemies for to take kepe.

But whan winter with his frostes colde,
Was ouer gone in thilke region,
Hanniball gan his purpose holde,
To lay a siege vnto Rome towne.
But so great raines fyl from heauen downe,
So great tempest vpon euery syde,
for the constreint he might not abide.

To fortifie the sayd Hanniball,
Agayn his enemies where he had aboo,
Sent letters vnto Halduball.
In right great hast for to come hym to.
But fortune her whele hath turned so,
That Haldubal where he was loth or faine
By Salinator vanquished was and slayn.

Of which mischief and discomfiture,
Hannibal gan dul in his courage,
Compleined sore of this misauenture,
knew no refute agayn this mortall rage,
Heard eke say that Affrike and Chartage,
Tiller of new to his confusion,
Strongly warreped by worthy Scipion.

Stephan also of Numedy kyng,
which agayn Romaines gan a warre make
mauger his might and al his fell workyng,
was by force of Scipion prake,
wherthrough his courage greetly gan aslake
And how Chartage chief of that region,
Besieged was also by Scipion,

Thus Hanniball constreyned was of nede,
Horne to repayre for rescus of Chartage,
And was also in bookes as I rede,
The same tyme fall farre in age,
And at mischief and great disauantage,
Agayn Scipion ful litle might auayle,
By whom he was scomfited in battayle.

Chartage constreyned of necessitie,
them to submit vnto Rome towne,

The fifth

And for they moze hard aduersitie,
 Carus Scruellus was fro Rome sent down
 Onely of purpose for this conclusion,
 For to procure in especiall,
 Final destruction and death of Hanniball.

After al his marciall labours,
 His old felicitie weye froward and bnnmete
 In holow ymages put all his treasours,
 Toke his passage into the Londe of Crete.
 And fortune contrary and vnswete,
 Made officers kepe his richesse,
 In the temple of Diane the goddesse.

Somewhat for trust & parcell eke for drede
 To fynde succour he went to the king,
 of Bithyny to helpe hym in his nede,
 Called Pusias, but of his commynge,
 The sleightie Romans had knowlagynge,
 To Bithyny down they letters sent,
 If Hanniball escape echeone ye Hal repēt.

The letters read the kyng the same day,
 Made his people besiege the dongeon,
 Where Duke Hannibal of trust alone laye,
 All destitute whan he knew this treason,
 To scape his ennies dranke wilfully poyso,
 these rather so syth other escape was none
 Than in the bondes to fall of his fone.

Before his death sayd this Dyslon,
 To al the goddes deuoutly down knelyng,
 That they would of this false treason,
 Take vengeance of Pusias the kyng,
 Which was cause by his false workynge,
 Of the destruction and death final,
 Of this tryght famous worthy Hanniball.

Cenuoy.

His tragedie froward to wyte or rede,
 Of this foresayd manly Hanniball,
 My penne quoke, my heart I felt blede,
 For to beholde the woofull piteous fall,
 Of hym that was the defensible wall,
 Of Chartage the mighty strong town,
 which slough himself by drinkeyng of poyso.

It was to hym he thought moze manhede,
 to slep himselfe by vengeance most mortal

thā his ennies by cōstretnt should him lede
 In cheynes bound he to be they thal,
 So great despight he had of them at all,
 That leuer he had than byde in they prisō,
 To murther hymself by drinkeyng of poyso.

As me semeth in this horrible dede,
 He resembled the furies infernall,
 Of cruell Pluto I trow he toke his mede,
 Woyde of al reason he became bestiall,
 At whose terrible feast funerall,
 Goddesse Proserpina came wth Manes doū
 The same time whan he dranke poyson.

Noble princes consider and take hede,
 Leuing the surplus his dedes marciall,
 knightly remember & haue in heart hatrede
 Of his enpoysoning in especiall,
 Abhominable to god and man withal,
 That a prince so famous of renoun,
 Should murther himself by drinkeyng of poyso

How Pusias kyng of Bithyny betrayed
 Hanniball and would haue disherited his
 sonne and heyre, and howe after wardes he
 went a beggyng in straunge londes.

The .xvi. Chapter.

Slowynge in order there came to
 Bochas,
 of Bithyny the great mighty kyng,
 which in his time was called Pusias,
 Greatly flaudered and noysed of one thing,
 That he was false and double in workynge,
 Ageyn the noblesse of his estate royall,
 Because that he betrayed Hannibal.

This defeaute darked the brightnes,
 Of his fame and his knightly renoun,
 And eclipsed his passed olde prowesse,
 By report in many a region.
 Alas that euer the condicion,
 Of doublenes by falsenes of feynynge,
 Should be founde, and mamely in a king.

Of this Pusias farther to procede,
 which gayn Hanniball wrought this treat
 A sonne he had called Archomede,
 Bozne to be heyre by full succession.

But

But his father by false collusion,
purposed hym for he was yong of age,
To put hym out of his heritage.

In this matter there grew by a great strife,
By Pylas again this Richomede,
Cause that he by his seconde wyfe,
Had a yong sonne in bokes thus I rede,
whom he purposed to pferre in dede,
for whiche he cast by short conclusion,
Of Richomede the bitter destruction.

And to accomplish this froward false matter
By full great deliberacion,
kyng Pylas gan shew heavy chere,
Gayne Richomede sekyng occasion,
To depriue hym of possession,
After this day by subtil false working.
In Bithynye he shall not reygne as kyng.

The people seing this great iniquitie,
wrought by the kyng gein good conscience
Through all the lond of hye and low degree
To Richomede al of one sentence,
gaue their good wyll and their benetolence
for euery Lord and euery great Baron,
Stode whole with him through al the regid

Thus by rust title he was crowned kyng,
Pylas for shame and heauines,
In straunge countreis liued by beggynge,
Al desolate cryed for almes.
Loe here the ende of treason and falsenes,
Left at mischefe, mine autour sayth the same
Of pouert foxsake his owne name.

Se here two thiges I take right good hede
Of Pylas the vnware sodayn mischafce,
The disheritting done to Richomede,
after folowing on him the great vengeaunce
Is the story put in remembraunce,
for treason done odible and mortall,
Agayne the fozesayde famous Hanniball.

How Persius of Macedoyne kyng
that empoysoned his brother, was
by Emilius outrayed and dyed
in prison.

The xxii. Chapter.

Besprenit with teares piteously
wepyng,
As Bochas sate in his study
alone,

Next came Persius of Macedoyne kyng,
And mortally he gan sigh and grone,
And furiously for to make his mone,
That he whilom was of so great renoun,
Constreyned after to dye in prision.

This sayd Persius of nature was froward
Eul disposed eke of his condicion,
Though he of byrth was but a bastarde,
He compassed by false collusion,
After his father to haue possession,
As mine autour remembreth by wyting,
Of Macedoyne to be crowned kyng.

His father Philip the story telleth thus,
Had a sonne which was yong of age,
wise and ready called Demetrius,
Bozne and beget cruelly in marriage,
But Persius cast by furious outrage,
Hym to destroy and murther by payson,
He of that kingdom to haue possession.

falsly compassed to his auantage,
In his entent Demetrius to depriue,
Of Macedoyne which was his heritage,
And therupon he letters gan contriue,
To pzeue hym tractour while he was alie,
wherof kyng Philip greatly was anoyed,
That he and Persius should be destroyed.

By Demetrius that thought no damage,
Meint no harme in his opinion,
yet his father suspicious of courage,
And Persius gaue hym false informacion,
made hym be slayn by dypnyng of payson,
Upon a day a thyng abhominable,
Sitting at meate at his fathers table.

King Philip after whā he knew the trowth
Had of his death great compassion,
But al to late and that was great routh,
which caused after his own destruction,
for sorow dyed, and of presumption,
Persius after falsly blurpyng,
In Macedoyne was crowned kyng.

Bb. ii. with

The fifth

With diuerse countreys made his aliaunce
in Grece & Thrace gate freedes nere & farre,
And of pride and wilfull gouernaunce,
Cast with Romans for to holde warre,
Ungrace and youth made hym for to erre.
Tyll a consull sent fro Rome towne,
Brought this Persius vnto destruction.

Called Emilius was this consuleere,
sent againe Persius to haue a great bataille
Seyng his daughter heauy of her chere,
Whan he went out his enemies to assaile,
Made vnto her this vncouth opposaile.
why wepe ye so, what thing doth you greue
At my departyng takyng of me leue:

Father(quod she)and ye take hede,
I whelpe I had that did me great pleasace
Called Persius, the which right now is ded
And this is chief cause only of my greuace,
Her father than gan chaunge countenance
This as token to his encrease of gloire,
that he of Persius should haue the victorie,

In Macedoyn he and Persius mette,
And quite hym there like a manly knyght,
conquereth & lond none might him withset,
And manly put Persius to the flight.
After to Thrace he toke the way ryght,
Of which conquest shorte processe to make,
In his two sones Persius was there take.

Emilius after this victorie,
Aske the triumph to his guerdoun,
And as it is remembred in his story,
Persius foloweth after his chare through
condemned after to die in prisō (Rome toun
the which death he did wel deserue,
for he by payson made his brother serue,

Thus can fortune early and eke late,
Down from her whele and her hye stage,
Of proude princes the surquedie abate,
whan to her lust she seeth most auantage,
She frowardly can turne her visage,
And sodainly the state of them consume,
aboue their office that wrogly list presume,

Amonges which a kyng of Israell,
Agayn the precept and law of Moyses,

Called Oziās the Bible can wel tell,
Of presumption wilful and reches,
To sacrifice put himself in pzees,
Like a bishop in the temple arraped,
But o he passed greatly he was afrayed.

Lost his speache smet with meselpe,
Dutyng his lyfe loe here a great vengeance,
Of his croune and his regally,
Impotent to vse the gouernaunce,
Persell for pride and disobeysaunce,
for he list not mekely the lawe obey,
for which at mischief he dyd a lepe deye.

Howe Ammonius a prince of Antioche
deliting in pillage and robbry, with other vi-
cious liuing, fled in womans clothyng, and
after was taken and slayn.

The xxiii. Chapter.

Nerte in order complainyng hys
distresse,
Came Ammonius a notable
warriour,

To John Borhas to shew his beauties,
In Antioche prince and gouernour,
of which countrey while he was possessor,
Had a custome, and this was his trauayle,
to robbe the riche and spoyle the poore.

Spared nother olde nor yong of age,
toke fro marchauntes treasour and riches,
And in delites of lecherous outrage,
was al his lust with watche and dronkenes
Till in his court of reason was maistrisse,
Causyng the people through al the region,
To rise agein hym by rebellion.

Contrary he was to all good discipline,
The people arose agayn hym on a day,
And he for feare inhabite feminine,
Like a wyetche fled cowardly away.
Take at mischief there was made no delay,
faily confessyng, hear yng many a man
Again nature that he was a woman.

The trouth know and & claunder rise,
All of assent the people Antiochene,
Rose at once and so he lost his life,

They wer so wood agayn hym in their tene
Thus of fortune the chaunge is alway sene
fro better to worse she can so wel trāsmue
The state of them that wyll no vertue sue.

How one Andiscus of low byrth boznie,
hauing no title made himself of Macedoyn
kyng, and after was take and dyed in prisō.

The. xxiij. Chapter.

But of one thyng fortune is to blame,
That she is so chaungeable of
courage,

To set a boy vnknow of byrth and fame,
By false errour vpon a royall stage.
for one Andiscus by surquedous outrage
Without title by subrill compassyng,
Of Macedoyn toke on him to be king.

Colour was none his claim to make stable,
Except that he of there and of vilage,
was to king Philip of fetures most seblable
wherby the people in their furious rage,
Caught opinion of wilful false dotage,
Agein reason as Bochas doth describe,
that king Philip was risē fro death to liue.

Whilom father of Persius as I tolde,
for Andiscus brought vp in wretchednes
In presence both of yong and olde,
was bolde to clayme by title of rightwisnes
shewyng no ground but personall likenes
Mockyng the people which by their fauour
Of royall dignitie receyueth the honour.

Thus he that was fostred as a wretche,
In misery and eke in pouerte,
fro poore bed his hornes did by stretche,
To hold a scepter of kyngly dignitie.
And by the suppozt of the commonte,
He gan were pompous and elate,
brought vp of nought whā he stode in estate

Nothing more cruel, nor nothing more vñ-
for more hasty to do execucion, (geable,
for more deynous nor more vntreatable,
Chan whan a begger hath dominacion,
A curte is more froward than a strong Lid,
And semblably none so great crueltye,

As whan a wretche is set in dignitie.

This Andiscus in his royall charer,
To execute his hatefull crueltye,
Gathred people in countreis farre and nere
In Macedoyn, and of olde enmitie,
Began maligne geyne Rome the citie.
But to withset his froward false entent,
One Iuuenius a pieto was down sent.

But because that he was negligent,
And of despyght toke of hym none hede,
He was outraped and by Andiscus shente,
With all the people that he dyd lede.
But the Romans of hope better to spede,
Haue sent Metellus a full manly knight,
To Macedoyn to mete anone ryght.

This worthy man list not long to tarye,
Set proudly on in hope it should auayle
Made Macedoyn to Rome tributarie,
Toke Andiscus manly in battaille,
brought him to Rome w mighty apparayle,
And made him lye fettered in prison,
for his outrageous false presumption.

Thus for his froward vsurpacion,
That he was haute in his prosperitie,
knew not hymself by false abuson,
Blent with a mist of blynd felicitie,
List not remember of his first pouertie,
whō to chastice fortune brought him lowe,
because he list not hymself for to know.

How one Prompalus by a false name
called Alexander, toke vpon hym to be
kyng of Sicile, and for extorcion,
pauise, and vnkindnes, he dyed
at mischief.

The. xxv. Chapter.

Shus can this Lady play her pagent,
By a maner of deynous
mockery,
Her enterpris forth serue them of entente,
To folke that trust her onely of folpe,
And to purpose whilom of Sicile,
There was a kyng lyke as wyte Bochas,
Called Alexander, but truly Prompalas.

The fifth

Of which Pompalus to tell the procelle,
 First of his rylng and after of his fall,
 Antiochus the story beareth witness,
 Called Eupater which in especiall,
 Cleymed title to the state royall,
 After his father named Antiochus,
 Epiphanes the story telleth thus.

After whose death the kyngdom of Sirie,
 Should long by succession,
 To Eupater and eke for his partte,
 Demetrius hostage in Rome towne,
 Cleymed a title in that region,
 Of Sirie, because Epiphanes,
 Was brother to hym the story is no les.

Demetrius fro Rome is come downe,
 Into Sirie to clayme his heritage,
 Received the crowne, toke possession,
 gan were proud, presumptuous of corage.
 Thus Eupater that was but yong of age,
 excludet was in Sirie to succede,
 Of Demetrius farther thus I rede.

Outragious he was aboue measure,
 Ryght vengeable and full of cruelte,
 Hatefull also to every creature,
 And heauy boyme of worthy kynges thre,
 First in Egypt of worthy Ptholome,
 And of Attalus in Alie the reynng,
 And Ariarathes in Cappadoc kyng.

All of assent agayn him haue conspired,
 fonde away Demetrius to depriue,
 His vndoing so soze they haue desired,
 And they entent to execute blie,
 They gan a fable of purpose to contriue.
 As ye shall heare together as they went,
 to which all Sirie at once dyd assent.

They toke a galaunt boyme of lowe linage,
 Called Pompalus of their acquaintaunce,
 And affirmed al of one courage,
 how he was sonne and iust heire in substaunce
 To Epiphanes, and next heire in aliaunce,
 to succede by tokens affyrmyng,
 Next in Sirie to be crowned kyng.

Alexander of purpose they hym cal,
 because they thought of person he was able

Set hym by in his royall hall,
 Maugre Demetrius cruel and vengeable,
 And fortune was to them fauourable,
 Made their purpose finally to auayle,
 With who Demetrius had a great bataille.

This Alexander named Pompalus,
 By Demetrius as put is in memoire,
 First ouercome, and after fell this caas,
 He of Demetrius had the victorie,
 And to encrease of his royall gloire,
 Of fortune by sodain auenture,
 Pompalus the field dyd of hym recure.

Thus by promotion of these kynges thre,
 When he was crowned kyng of all Sirie,
 to false extortion and hatefull cruelte,
 this Alexander dyd his wittes applie,
 To robberyng, pillage, and eke tyranny,
 And despised (shortly to conclude,)
 the sayd kynges of ingratitude.

He had forgeat his state of pouertee,
 knewe not himself of false ambition,
 wedded the doughter of worthy Ptholome,
 Called Cleopatra as made is mention,
 And all his labour in conclusion,
 was onely this in Bochas as I rede,
 All the kingdomes about hym to possede.

Who al coueteth sometime al both lese,
 One agayn al seeld hath soueraynte,
 And for Pompalus frowardly gan these,
 to holde warre with king Ptholome,
 And with the foresayd worthy kynges thre,
 All of assent haue such waies sought,
 by their working he was brought to nought.

First Ptholome fro hym toke his wyfe,
 Cleopatra and gaue her in marriage,
 to one Demetrie causyng full great stryfe,
 for he that tyme was but yong of age.
 But Pompalus after by ful great outrage
 With all his power gathred nye and farte,
 Gayn Demetrie gan to holde warre.

Together met proudly in bataille,
 Pompalus constreyned cowardly to flee,
 And when he saw his power dyd fayle,
 In Arabie a mightie strong countrey,
 zabidus

Whom a prince of great pouerte,
Toke hym by force quakyng in his drede,
To kyng Ptholome sent anone his hede.

Men may two thynges cōsider in this caas
Howe punished and vnkindnes,
And presumption in this Pthompalas,
Without title or clayme of rightwisenes,
Made king of Sirie set in great worthines,
That was his ende ye geat no more of me,
His head smet of and sent to Ptholome.

Clenoue.

This tragedy doth naturally complayne,
Upon this vice called vnkindnes,
Which to punish is torment none ne payne
Rigour condigne flagell nor duresse,
Empyrioning nor none earthly distresse,
That may suffice briefly to conclude,
Again the vice of ingratitude.

All creatures on this vice complayne,
Law, nature, decrees, rightwisenes.
This monster in kynd doth the lyght disteyn
Of euery vertue dikketh the brightnes,
Alexander can beare herof witnes.
Which to his furthyers he of tetches rude,
Shewed againward great ingratitude.

Of Cerberus thynfermall treble theyne,
For of Cantalus hunger nor chustines,
Of Ixion or Siliphus bothe twaine,
Nekon their tormēt remēber their sharpnes
All wer to lile to chastice or redresse,
The hateful vice of them that can delude,
Their frendes old by false ingratitude.

Noble princes which in your demaine,
Haue gouernaunce of al worldly richesse,
Gaye folke vnkynnd loke that ye disdayne,
Suffer them not haue none interesse,
For tapproche to your hye noblesse,
For there is no vice moze hateful to cōclude
Than is the vice of ingratitude.

Here Bochas writeth of the rebel-
lions, & sediciōs in Rome betwene
The Tribunes & the cōmons there.

The xxvi. Chapter.

In Olowyng myne autour in shoyes
meruepious,
I must now write the strong
rebellions.

Of Gayus tyll and of Tiberius
And of the great hatefull sedicions,
meued in Rome twene Tribunes & cōmons
And by theyr strues how they gan cōspyre,
For tatteine falsly to the Empyre.

The yere sixe hundred by computacion
Gayus Gracchus made tribune in that age
After the citie tyll foundation,
Which turned after to full great damage,
Of common profit, for by theyr mortal rage
Cumulte and noyse of commons in the town
Caused a great parte of theyr destruction.

For in departing of chaumpayne heritages
Attwene the worthy and pooze of the cite,
By egal porcions Gracchus to faire lāgages
Had greatly meued al their commontie.
By which occasion in story men may see,
Another Gracchus called the secounde,
Was slayn in Rome and low layd in ground.

After this death of Gracchus as I rede,
Was chosen a Tribune called Minucius,
Which forded the lawes all in dede,
Of old Gracchus called Gayus.
But he that was named Tiberius,
With helpe of Flaccus Tribunes of estate
In the Capitoile began a great debate.

They wer supported by the commontee,
By voice of people & worde of no man knowe
For Gracchus partie hie vpon a tree,
A trumpet stode and proundly gan to blowe,
Which slayn was and fro the tree down throue
By which slaughter the boke maketh reherse
Flaccus were feble his partie gan to sayle.

For drede he fled into the territoire,
Of Janus temple ran vp to a towre,
Whan Tiberius as put is in memoire,
Saw in the citie he had no sauiour,
Despeyred knew no better succour,
Swoorde set at best in presence of Minerue
Fully purposed afoze her for to sterue.

There

The fifth

There stode one by and dyed his hād aback
 Fro that purpose made hym to decline,
 thus Braccus party goth day by day to watch
 And flaccus toke the temple of Lucine,
 his sonne his frēdes and almost al his line,
 thei kept the strōg but mauger their defect,
 thei wer there slain by sturdy violence.

While Braccus frēdes sought for his party
 And he himself constrained was for dyede,
 to pray a boy of his company,
 To take a sword and smite of his head,
 Set on a spere with the bloud made read,
 Sent it is mother cōplaynyng in her tene
 into her castle that called was Miffene.

Named Cornelia his mother was in dede,
 Whilom daughter to great Scipion,
 Her chyldren all slayn as I rede,
 And Braccus goodes acheted to the towne
 therof after made a diuision,
 By iudgement throughout the cite,
 where most was nede among the cōmontie.

Of Braccus side sure hūndred slain & twen
 Upon an hyl called Auentine,
 And Optimus a consull dyd his peyne,
 of their conspiring & ground to serch & myne
 And flaccus partie to byng to ruine,
 he slough two thousand by hasty iudgemēt,
 Among which was many an innocent.

How the wyfe of Hasdruball byent
 her selfe and her chyldren.

The xxviii. Chapter.

BEre John Bochas list in
 especiall,
 To remember how Chartage new
 agayn,

Destroyed was, and how Duke Hasdruball,
 came to mischief the trowth was well seyn,
 Which to rehearse of new it wer but vain
 Sith here tofore is made clere mencion,
 both of their byrning and their destrucciō.

Save here he telleth how Hasdrubals wyfe
 Onely reschew to lue in seruage,
 these with her chyldren for to lese her lyfe,

And wilfully of furious courage,
 She and her sonnes stode and yong of age
 Among the flames and the coales red,
 Consumed was into ashes ded.

Dido the first that built that cite,
 and made towres and the strong wall,
 which was betrayed falsly of Enee,
 those remembred the spets funerall.
 And after long the wyfe of Hasdruball,
 chafe rather dye with her chyldren twayne,
 than among Romains for to lue in pain.

Of Machabeus Jonathas ta-
 ken by the kyng of Siria

The xxviii. Chapter.

In order sayng vnto John
 Bochas,
 There appeared an heauy man
 off syght,

Machabeus the worthy Jonathas,
 Which occupied for wisdom and for might
 office of pryncce, of priesthode and of knight,
 By title of Juda of warres toke the myght,
 By clayme of Leuy as priest dyd sacrifice,

The lawe of Jewes manly to defende,
 With all the londe of promission,
 this Jonathas full knightly dyd entende,
 Agayn all ennies about them eracton,
 till of Siria the false kyng Trefon,
 by traynes compassed & promes falsly hold,
 toke Jonathas of whom right now I told.

Machabeorum is rehearsed all,
 of hys knyghthode and of his worthines,
 with al the treasons in especiall,
 wrought by Trefon by many great falsnes
 his subtil sleighthes and his doublenes,
 them to rehearse ye geat no more of me,
 for in the Bible the story ye may see.

Howe Demetrius the seconde
 losse at the last his head.

The xxx. Chapter.

But

But I will retorne to Demetrius,
That called was Demetrius the
seconde,
Which by descent came fro Antiochus,
And by his manhode as it was wel founde,
Dyd the pride of kyng Pzompalus confounde
Called Alexander which by great outrage,
Had put his father fro his heritage.

This Demetrius famous and notable,
Upon Parthians had many great victoꝝye
yll kyng Arsacides double and deceivable,
Himself deliting greatly in vain gloꝝye,
By his sleightie fraudes deceptoꝝye,
Vnder a shadow of feynynge and false chere,
Toke Demetrius bitywately prisonere.

And to gret hndyrng & flaūder of his name
Arsacides by a maner mockery,
Made Demetrius for despite and shame,
Poorely arrayed of hate and great enuye,
For to be led through all Sirie,
Made hym after by great aulsement,
To wedde his doughter again his own entent

This Demetrius was kept out of pꝛees,
That but few had of hym a syght,
Unto tyme that Arsacides,
Was dead and passed for al his great might
Than he cast to escape away by flight,
And secretly to accomplishe his entent,
He gat him counsaile that was of his assēt.

Callimandrus a Lord of that countre,
Which that was of his assent in dede,
In theyꝝ flyght to kepe them moze secrete,
Made Demetrius for to chaunge his wede.
And pꝛyue wayes forth he dyd hym lede,
But al for nought his flight was but in vaine
For by strong pursutt he was take agayne.

After by constraint presented to the king,
That he gan ware weary of his lyfe,
Kept moze streitly folke on hym waytyng,
And mauer him presented to his wife,
With her to abide full heauy and pensife.
But whā thei had chldꝝe atwene the twayne
To go moze large loosed was his cheyne.

And thus he had space and fre lſence.

to goe and come at his auantage,
For while his wife held with him residence
thei dempt his chldꝝe wer suffiſt at hostage
But he was euer vnstable of his courage,
With Callimandrus the foꝛesayd knyght,
the tyme take and bꝛought again by flight

And for he was so diuers manifolde,
kyng Phzabartes in toke he was vnstable,
Sent him theꝝ dees foꝛged square of golde
To play racket as a chyld chaungeable,
His disposition was so variable.
But for to restreyn his condicion,
He was est take and fettered in prison.

But whan fortune had geuen hym a pul,
By many diuers straunge aduersitie,
to punish him moze Phzabartes warerth dul
And Demetrius of prison was made free,
Full restored agayn to his countree,
Ware proud agayn of new it is so fal,
That he was hated of his lieges al.

Cleopatra his mother that was quene,
Of all Egypt and wife to Ptholome,
Was with her lord at strife who lyst to seene
which turned after to great aduersite.
But to stꝛgth her party thus wꝛought she
Made her sonne for to take on honde,
For her to fight agayn her housebonde.

But Ptholomeus called Euergetes,
Gayn Demetrius defendyng his countrey
Made zebenna to put hymself in pꝛees,
Sonne of a marchaunt boꝛne of low degre
to make a claime by false subtilte,
Of all Sirie to haue possession,
For hym alledgyng title of adoption.

He to be sonne to olde Antiochus,
claymyng thereby the kyngdom of Sirie,
Quely exclude the sayd Demetrius.
And Ptholomeus to susteyne the partye,
Of zebenna with al his chualꝝye,
Gathered in Egypt and countreys enuyron,
Agayn Demetrius proudly is come doune.

And fortune with her double face,
Caused the countrey by rebellion,
That Demetrius stode clene out of grace,
whereby

The fifth

wherby the people of that region,
 All whole agayn hym in their opinion,
 That by Ptholomes wonderfull workyng,
 Sebenna there receyued was as kyng.

Thus sebenna by false intrusion,
 Of all Sirie was made Lorde and kyng,
 Title was there none but collusion,
 Exclude Demetrius by subtil compassing
 yet as I fynde his partie defendyng,
 How Demetrius sebenna gan assaile,
 their quarrel darreyned in a great bataille.

Great people slaine vpon other syde,
 Demetrius put from his region,
 And ouercome for his great pride,
 At great mischief to his confusion,
 haupng no succour nor consolation,
 But with a few chose of his meynye,
 fled by water to Cite the cite.

Like as he would haue liued there in pees,
 By a faint maner of perfection,
 Within the temple of mightie Hercules,
 Under a shadow of religion,
 But suddenly at his commyng down
 Into Cite, and at his arriuayle,
 his head he lost: what might his pride assaile?

How sebenna kyng of Siria by intrusi-
 on entring, had mischieuous endyng.

The. xxx. Chapter.

T Duchyng sebenna of whom
 I spake tofore,
 Doozely brought vp and of lowe
 linage,
 And of kynred but a begger borne,
 Came tofore Bochas trist of his visage,
 Soze weping, muet of language,
 Gan complain his woful auenture,
 Untware and sodayne impossible to recte,

His condicions somewhat dull and rude,
 first in pouertye, proude, and presumptuous,
 Appeched after of great ingratitude,
 Shewed in his life to kyng Antiochus,
 His fynd furtherer the story telleth thus,
 For which Antiochus greatly was anoyed,

cast a meane by whiche he was destroyed.

There was a cosyn he called was Gryphus,
 To Antiochus, and of the same line.
 Which by title of Demetrius,
 claymeth as heire by many vncouth sygne,
 To reigne in Sirie, a proudly gan maligne
 Agayn sebenna whole partie to suppoze,
 Stode Antiochus chief as I can repoze.

This sayd Gryphus yong and tender of age
 By the forthyng and supportacion,
 Of Antiochus had in marriage,
 His owne daughter with great possession,
 That sebenna for short conclusion,
 Compelled was for al his great might,
 To Antioche for to take his flyght.

And there he fell in so great pouertie,
 Fayled money for to pay wages,
 The souldiers which in that countrey,
 Abide vpon hym of all maner ages,
 Strange folke and sondry of languages,
 Theues, murderers, mansleiers, and pillours
 First of Jupiter allepyng the treasours.

To his dislauder perpetuall of memozye,
 the defame arose so manifolde,
 In Iouis temple the baner of victorie,
 He toke away that was of masse gold,
 With a great ymage that stode there of old
 Of gold also with other mo treasours,
 with which pillage he pated his souldiours,

Of sacrilege haupng no conscience,
 Escape away he entred in the see,
 But Colus by great violence,
 With wynde and tempest as he dyd flee,
 Dyd vnto hym full great aduersitee.
 And al his meynie forsoke hym of entent,
 And he was take and to Gryphus sent.

King of Sirie to whō whā he was brought
 Gaue on hym by iudgement this sentence,
 for sacrilege that he had wrought.
 Spoylyng temples by great violence,
 Doyng to goddes no maner reuerence,
 for which Gryphus comaunded hath as iudge
 he to be slain there was no better refuge.

Of

Of byrth a boy clambe vp to royall stage,
Brought vp of nought and set in dignitie,
knew not himselfe were cruell of courage,
Arose fro pouert to great prosperitie.
But through fortunes mutabilitie,
that blind Lady so made her power stretch
as he began to enden as a wretch.

Reckoned the states of worldly regally,
number of meyny, gold, treasure, & richesse.
Stately castels, palace on eche partie,
request by fortune climbing to his noblesse
Cruel sword conueyed by wilfulnesse,
power extorte with couetise oppressing,
causeth destruction of many earthly kyng.

But in contrary who list hymselfe know,
And is by grace enclined to mekenes,
though he fro pouerte in streitnes brought
is by vertue reclined to worthines (vp low
In scepter of peace & sword of rightwines
Indifferently his domes demening,
Such one is able to be cleped a kyng.

What is chief cause, ground, and occasion,
That princes oft stonde in leoparde,
Of worldly chaunges in such confusion,
reynnyng among them the serpent of enuy
Simulation, feynnyng flattery.
The sooth out searched who so list to loke,
By many tragedie expett in this boke.

How Vitellus kyng of the Auernois was
by the Romans taken, and dyed in prison,

The. xxxi. Chapter.

Vitellus next of Auernoys kyng,
Came tofoze Bochas gynnyng his
compleint,

Of his distresse the order rehearsyng,
And how that he was made feble and feint
Again the Romans mischeuously atteint,
Notwithstandyng to mainteine his quarel,
he cast of pryde agayne them to rebell.

But it is fyrst put in remembraunce,
How Auernoys is a nation,
hangyng on Gaul, longeth vnto fraunce,
of which Vitellus stode in possession,

haunyng despyght in his opinion,
to the Romans any wyse to obey,
But proudly cast agayne them to werrey.

His labour was to stonde in fraunchise,
And be at large from theyr subiection,
Gan of pryde their Lordship to despise,
Gathered people of presumption,
Whom for to mete fabius was sent downe
a mighty coliel which knightly toke on hōd
for that partie Vitellus to withstond.

Of whose commyng Vitellus toke disdain
because the folke whiche fabius dyd lede,
wer but few; and whan he hath them seyn,
he said of scorn this people who taketh hede
May not suffice mine boundes for to fede,
whā thei be slaine to few thei be in number,
with multitude that shal them encomber.

In hundred thousand in his bauward he had
that passe shoulde of Auerne the riuere,
And fourescore thousand besyde that he had
the consul fabius met him with good chere
whā he was passed of Rhodanus y daunger,
fought all the day tyll it drew to night.
y Romans wā theyr sone wer put to flight

At the river like as sayth the boke,
there wer drowned & brought to mischaunce
fiftie thousand as thet the water toke,
Through fortunes frowarde variaunce,
And by a train tencease of his greuaunce,
Vitellus take was of the Romaines,
Dammned to prison there to dye in chaynes.

How the tyrant Ptholomeus Euergetes
wedded quene Cleopatra, slough her eldeste
sone, & dyed his wife, & wedded her daughter

The. xxxii. Chapter.

After whose death piteously to reade
and sene,

Of Epiphanes the great Ptholome,
Came the daughter Cleopatra the quene,
Gan compleyn her great aduersitie,
Her sorow furious defaced her beautie,
Her chekes white of blond and teres mient

Rem

The fifth

Rent with her hādes wer piteously bespēt.

To Philometor he wedded was afoze,
Whilom sonne to Ptholome the kyng,
And by her Lozde in true wedlocke bozne,
Two sonnes he had as by old writing.
After whose death anon bysuyng,
To Euergetes a prince yong of age,
She was again toyued in mariage.

By title of her in Egypt Lozde and Sire,
kyng of that lande cruell and despitous,
whose story sheweth no kingdō nor Emprē
May of themself make no man vertuous.
For like a Tiger this tyrant furious,
Her eldest sonne day of theyr mariage,
Bozne to be heire he slough of mortal rage.

Not after long this extort crueltie,
Albe they had children atwene them twain,
Out of Egypt he made her for to flee,
And of malice he gan at her disdayne,
I trowe he had matter for to playne.
He toke her doughter whan ſhe was gon,
Again nature and wedded her anon.

She called was Cleopatra also,
but Euergetes to shew him moze vengeable
Agayn her mother that was fro Egypt go,
The title which was to her fauourable,
The people cryed, he wood & vntreatable,
In her despyght gaue that noble towne,
Of hatefull malice to a straunge nation.

But whā he knew through his cruel dedes,
And gan conceiue how he was culpable,
Saw again him the manifold hatredes,
And conspiracion of states honorable;
He at large to be moze vengeable,
Gave Cleopatra to giue an butouth strife
Went into exyle with his new wyfe.

Gathered people his old wyfe to assaile,
On her children to shew moze vengeaunce
A day assigned held with her battaile;
but which of them was bytuen to vtrauise
mine autour plainly put not in remembraunce
But sayng after, thus of hym I rede,
Howe of malice he wrought a cruel dede.

Which to rehearse is nother good ne fere,
But terrible and abhominable,
He dismembred her sonne and his heire,
on pices smal this tyrant most vengeable.
And whan the mother sat at her royal table
With body and head at a solemnitie,
Lete her be serued of froward crueltie.

wherof all Egypt had indignacion,
And for to auenge his cruel great outrage,
Thei toke his plates, Basnet, Haberton,
& his coate armure wrought of gret collage
fro theyr temples rent out his ymage,
In token he was a tyrant most atteint,
eche thing defaced that was of him depeint.

Whose hateful story replete of wretchednes
ful of vengeaunce and froward mischienes
Therefore I deme Bochas list not expresse,
Moze of his life fulfilled of all represses,
Of Cleopatra write not the small greues,
In this Chapter what fatall way she toke,
Lest the matter should deface his boke.

How Jugurtha by intrusion of Aumedy kyng,
though the rightful heires,
and after hymselfe was drouned.

The .xxviii. Chapter.

After this woeful deadly auenture,
Of Cleopatra, whose story is ful old,
Came Jugurtha ſ manly man to luck,
And to John Bochas hath his tale told,
Of his conquest and dedes manifolde,
Subtil of wit, and as mine autour sayth,
Gaue litle force for to breake his sayth.

But in order the story to conuey,
Of Jugurtha and of his kindred,
Masinissa kyng of Aumedy soth to sey,
his vncle was, and also as I rede,
The sayd kyng had a sonne in dede,
Called Micipsa eldest in writing.
After his day to capgne as kyng.

This Masinissa ordeyned afterwarde,
Tofoze his death of whole entencion,
Because Jugurtha was bozne a ballarde,
To deprive hym of all succession,

In his testament, but in conclusion,
His sonne Micipsa afterward made kyng,
was to Jugurtha frendly and louing.

Micipsa had two sonnes as I fynd,
the one of them called Adherbales,
the second the story maketh mynd,
was that time named Hiempsales,
with whom Jugurtha put himself in preece,
for to abide and dwel in especial,
lyke as their colyn in theyr court royal.

Cherished ful wel because þ he was wyse,
and right likely of disposicion,
chosen afterward for a syngeter pryse,
to goe to Sparyue to helpe Scipion,
Geyn Hamantines, a famous mighty toun
where Jugurtha so knightly hath begone,
that by his noblesse þ toun anon was wone

And to remembze his knyghthod of entent,
his woorthines and his hye renoun,
To Micipsa letters wer down sent,
By the foresayd woorthy Scipion,
which gaue so great a commendacion,
to Jugurtha him calling in that werre,
Of manly promesse the yong lode sterre.

King Micipsa receiued him notably,
And called him sonne by adopcion,
The kyng dyed, but Jugurtha trayterously
Slough Hiempsales heere by succession,
He of that realme to haue possession.
This was his custome how euer þ title stode
by slaughter and murder for to geat goode,

He list to goddes doe no reuerence,
Of his nature wilful and rechles,
Hauing nother remorse nor conscience,
Touching the slaughter of Hiempsales,
fally practised for his owne entrees,
for which murdze Romayns haue set down
A consuler to doe correccion.

Calpurnius called that was sent,
Only to punish that horrible dede,
But with treasure his eyen wer so bleint,
Of execution that he toke none hede.
The Romayns ouercome with mede,
Gave to Jugurtha by collusion,

Of this murder a coloured false pardon,

By which he toke a maner hardnesse,
Of tyranny in him wel exercised:
Gadred people of hateful cursednes,
And in himselfe gan cursedly deaple,
Execute the selfe same gyle.
Of false murder I meane now none other,
to sea Adherbal the second brother.

That he alone by false intrusion,
Of flumed by might be lord and king:
Thus of his crueltie, murder & false treason
the noyse was bozne by lāguage & wyting
of which þ gtefes quickly abroad spreding,
brought furth in binding of his name,
fruite of dislaunder and report of diffame.

Mortal treason was cured vnder floures,
To saue himselfe by some subliste,
And specially with his great treasours,
Appease the senate if it would haue be.
But thereageyn al the commonte,
Made ageyn hym a conturacion,
On his false murder to doe correccion.

four thousand me of armes wer down set
With a pretour called Attius:
The which pretour set al his entent,
to gadze treasure for he was couetous,
And couetise is contrarious,
Vnto knyghthod as autors al expresse,
And kepinoth vnto woorthines.

A siege he layd about a mighty towre
wherin Jugurtha put al his riches,
The siege was layd for loue of þ treasure,
More than for woorthip or for woorthines,
wherby his name and his noblesse,
There discōfited brought vnto mischaunce,
After for mede made his alliaunce.

With Jugurtha to his encrease of shame;
Caused Attius through false cheuraunce,
They together dislaundred by diffame,
them to withdraue fro the obeytaunce,
Of the Romayns, & more them self tauaunce
to theyr purpose corrupted with treasure,
Many a tribune and many a senatour.

The fifth

Of new agayn al the commonlie,
 Fro Rome sent Caius Marius,
 For the murders and horrible crueltie,
 wrought by Jugurtha the tyrant furious,
 which to reforme the sayd Caius,
 A consuler of purpose was sent down,
 A manly knight and famous of renown.

ful notably the warres he began,
 wrought every thing of hys providence,
 And fortune which helpeth a hardy man,
 Gave him great favour by her influence,
 And alder fyrst he did his diligence,
 For to auoyde all that wer vicious,
 Delicate people and folkes lecherous.

A day was set and taken a battayle,
 By Jugurtha by false subtiltie,
 Proffred much good which might not auade
 to haue corrupt if it would haue be,
 The sayd Marius, but euer in one degre,
 He stode ay stable, vpright as a wall,
 And toke none hede to his profer at all.

Then Jugurtha in party despayred,
 Greatly assonied withyn himself musyng,
 But like a man hyndred and appeyred,
 He gan purpose anone a new thyng,
 Of Mauritayne he went to the king,
 to geat helpe, which called was Bocchus,
 Him to succour ageyn this Marius.

Twene the was made of newe an alliance
 the which last but a litle space,
 For king Bocchus gan fal in repentance,
 Cast he would resoꝛt to the grace,
 Of the Romayns, and no moze trespass,
 And to persourne this entencion,
 He made to Marius this mediation.

There was one Sylla called a Quessoy,
 Of Marius host had gouernaunce,
 For king Bocchus he was mediatour,
 That there was newly accordance,
 twene him and Caius, & by the puruepance
 of this Bocchus, Jugurtha anon was hent
 Maugre his might, and to Marius sent.

And al his kingdom without resistance,
 Ageyn to Romayns came vnder obeysance.

And Marius forgave them their offence,
 Receiued them vnder assurance
 that he shal not by dome doe no vengeance,
 to punish the trespasses that they did afor,
 the space accounted fro time they wer born.

Jugurtha taken almost for anger mad,
 Was brought to Rome & fetred in prison,
 to Tarpeia an hys hil he was lad,
 Judgement youe for his false treason,
 Bound to a stone and after throwe down,
 fro the place full hys where he stode,
 without mercy into Tybys floods.

C Lenuope.

This may be wel called a tragedy,
 By description taking autoꝛitie,
 For tragedy as Poetes specyfe,
 Gynnerth with ioye, enderth with aduersitie,
 from hys estate cast in lowe degre,
 Exemple taken this stoꝛy sayth aright,
 Of Jugurtha that was first a good knyght.

At his ginning famous in chualtry,
 Gate Rumania of Spayn a great Citty
 But in repaying home to that partie,
 I meane whan he came home to his cūtrei,
 He changed knyghthod into crueltie.
 With couetise so blynded was the sight,
 Of Jugurtha that first was a good knyght.

His witt, his power, he wholy did applye
 To hateful murder, fraude and subtiltie
 Bextoꝛt tytle himselfe to magnifie
 Though rightfūl heires rest the their libertie
 by false intrusion clambe vp to their see
 & gaue no foꝛce whether it wer wꝛōg or right
 A thyng contrary to euery woꝛthy knyght.

Noble princes list vp your heartes eye,
 within your selfe remembre and doz see
 Of this murdre the hatefull tyranny
 With oppression done to the commontie
 His gynning good, a cursed end had he,
 Murdre cryeth vengeance day and night
 A thyng contrary to euery woꝛthy knyght.

The ende of the fifth booke.

The Sixth Booke. Fo. cxliii.



There Bochas sitting in his studie alone, writeth a great proesse howe Fortune lyke a monstrous ymage, hauing an hūdred handes appeared vnto hym and spake, and Bochas vnto her: Makyng betwene them both many gret argumentes & reasons of Fortunes chaunces.

The fyrst Chapter.

In his studie alone as Bochas stode, his pēne in hond of sodein auenture, To remembre he thought it did him good, Howe that no man maye himself assure In worldly thynges fully to recure, Grace of fortune to make her to be stable

Her dayly chaunces be so variable.

She braydeth euer on the chauntplure
now sog, now weping, now wo now gladnes
Now in mirth, now in peyn to endure (nes
now light, now heuy, now bitter, now sweete.
Now in trouble, now free, now in distresse,
She wing to vs a maner resemblaunce,
No worldly welth hath here none assurace.

while Bochas pensief stode in his library
with there oppressed pale in his visage,
Sumdele abashed alone and solitary,
To him appeared a monstrous ymage,
Parted on tweyne of colour and cozage,
Her right syde full of somer flours,
the tother oppressed w winters stormy shoo-
(wres

Bochas astonied fearful for to abrayde,
whan he beheld the wonderfull figure
Of fortune, thus to himselfe he sayde:
what may this meane, is this a creature?
Or a monstre transfourmed ageins nature?
whose byrning ypen sparkling of their light
As do sterres the frosty winters night.

Et. ii. And

The Arth

And of her chiete ful good hede he toke,
 Her face seming cruell and terrible,
 And by disdeyne manasing of looke,
 Her heere vntuffed, hard, sharpe & hostible
 Froward of shape, lothsome and odible,
 In hundred handes she had of eche parte,
 In sundry wyse her gyftes to departe.

Some of her hondes left vp men aloft,
 To hye estate of worldy dignitie,
 Another hond grypped ful vnsoft,
 which cast another in great aduersitie,
 Gave one riches, another pouertie,
 Gave some also by report a good name,
 Rofled another of flaunder and diffame.

Her habite was of manifolde colours,
 watchet blew of feyned stedfastnes,
 her gold alleied lyke sline in watry howres
 meint w light grene for chage & doublenes
 A pretens red dyde meint with hardines,
 white for clenness like sone for to fayle,
 feynthe blacke for mourning, russet for tra-
 (uayle.

Her colours meint of wolles moze than one
 In while eclipsed, In while she shone bright:
 Dull as an asse when men had hait to gone
 & as a swalow gettysh of her flight (ght
 twene flouth & swist now croked now by-
 Now as a creple lowe cooched down,
 Now a Duery and now a Champion.

Now a coward durst not come in pices,
 Now sumwhyle hardy as a Lyon,
 Now like Hector now dyedeful Therites,
 Now was she Cresus now Agamemnon:
 Sardanapalus of condicion,
 now was she manly now was she feminine
 now could she ratn now could she falsly chine

Now a Mayde Angelike of face,
 A tale behynd very serpentine,
 Now debonaire, now froward to doe grace
 Now as a lambe treatable and benigne,
 Now like a wolfe of nature to maligne,
 Now Citeres to sing folke a slepe,
 Till Caribdis drowne them in the depe.

Thus John Bochas considryng her figure
 All her fetures in order he gan beholde,

Her bye, her length her shape & her stature,
 In hundred handes & armes there he told,
 wherof astonied his heart gan were cold,
 And among al her members euerychone,
 He sempt she had no fete vpon to gone.

And while that he considered al this thing,
 twene them as it wer in a traunce,
 She sodenly toward him looking,
 He conceiued by her countenaunce,
 wer it for yre wer it for pleasaunce,
 Other for sauour other for disdeyne,
 By the maner she woulde sumwhat seyne.

Loking alcoyne as she had had disdeyne,
 Bochas (quod she) I know al thine entent
 How thou traauylest bestest thee in deyne,
 In thy study euer diligent,
 Now in the West now in the Orient,
 To search stories North and Meridien,
 Of worthy princes that hertofore haue been

Some dwelled vnder the pole Arctike,
 By my sauour vpreyed to the sterres,
 Other vnder the pole Anterctike,
 which in contraty fro vs so farre is,
 Some encreased & set vp by the wettes,
 Like as me list their triumphes to auance,
 frowning on other I brought them to mis-
 (chaunce

I see the besy remembryng by scriptures,
 Stories of princes in euery maner age,
 As my sauour folowed their auentures,
 By humble stile set in pleyn language,
 Not made curious by none aduantage,
 Of Rethorikes with Musis for to stryue,
 but in plain fourme their dedes to deserue

In which processe thou dost get diligence
 as they deserue to yue the thanke or blame
 Settest vp one in royal excellence,
 within mine house called the house of fame
 the golde trumpet w blastes of good name,
 Enhaunceth one to ful hye parties
 where Jupiter sitteth amog þ heuely sties,

Another trumpet of sownes ful vengeable
 which bloweth vp at feastes funerall,
 Nothng bright, but of colour sable,
 farre fro my sauour deadly and mortall,

To plunge princes from their estate royal,
whan I am wroth to make them loute lowe
Than of malice I doe that trumpet blowe.

Thou hast writte and set together in grose
Like their deserte woꝛldly mennes debes,
Nothing conserled noꝛ vnder couert close,
Spared þ crownes noꝛ their purple webes
ther goldē scepters but poue the ther medes
crouned one w laurer hie on his head vp set
Oher with perumke made for the gibet.

Thus diuersly my giftes I depart,
One accepted another is refused,
Like hasardours my dice I doe leopart,
One wel fothered another is accused,
My play is double my trust is euer abused,
though one to day my fauour hath wonne,
to morowe again I can eclipse his sonne.

Cause of my cumming plainly to declare,
By good aulse vnto thy presence,
Is to shewe my maners and not spare,
And my condicions breuely in sentence,
Pꝛeued of old and newe experience,
pleynly to shewe me list not for to cowne,
to day I flatter to morow I cā wel croune

This houre I can shewe me marciable,
And sodenly I can be dispiteous,
Some well willed, hastily vengeable,
Now sobꝛe of chere, now hasty and furious
my play vnouth my maneres meruelous,
baid on þ wind, now glad & now I mourne
like a webecock my face ech day I tourne.

Wherem Bochas I tel the yet again,
Thou doest folly thy wittes for to plye,
althy labour thou spillest in vaine,
Gem my maners so fully to repley,
by thy writing to find a remedy,
To interrupt in thy last dawes,
My statutes and my customable lawes.

All the laboures of Philosophers olde,
Trauaille of Poetes my maners to deprave
hath ben of yore to say like as they would,
ouer my fredome the souereinte to haue,
But of my lawes the liberties to saue,
Upon my whele they shal them not diffend,

But whan me list that they shal descend.

Why should men put me in blame,
To folowe the nature of my double play?
with new buddes doth not ller the same,
whan primeroses appere frethe and gay?
To day they shewe to morowe gon away,
Somer after of floures hath foyson,
Tyl Iune with sithees after mow the down

Now is the sea calme and blaundishing,
Nowe are the windes confortable and still,
Nowe is Bozeas sturdy in blowing,
which pong shepe and blomes greueth ill,
why also should I not haue my wil,
to shewe my self now smoth & after trouble
Sith to my kind it longeth to be double?

No man so farre is sal in wretchednesse,
but that he standeth in trust to rise againe,
Noꝛ none so depe plunged in distresse,
Noꝛ with dyspayze noꝛ wanhope ouercleime,
But that there is some hope left certeine,
To reue him confort seruing hys entent,
to be releued whan me list assent,

The earth is clad in motlages white & read
whan Estas entreteth with violettes sote,
The greaues grene and in euery mede
þ bawme fleteth which doth to hearts bote,
August passed again into the cote
By course of nature the vertue doth resoyt
By reuolucion to kind I me report,

Who should than debarre me to be double,
Sith doublenes longeth to me of right:
now frethe w somer now w winter trouble
now blind of loke darke as þ cloudy night
Nowe glad of chere, of heart mery & light,
They be but soles again in my might to muse
Oꝛ me atwite though I my power vse,

Seeld oꝛ neuer I bide still in one poynt,
Men must at loupes take me as they fynd,
and whan I stand ferthest out of toynt,
To set folkes backward farre behind,
Than woꝛldly men with their eyen blind,
Soꝛe complaine vpon my doublenesse
Cal me than the froward false goddesse.

Cr. iii.

Thus

The sixth

Thus by your writing a merueylous lan-
I am disclaundred of mutabilite, (guage
whereof by right I catch a great auantage
With double nesse no sleaunders is to me,
which is a persell of my libertie,
To be called by title of right wisenesse,
of chaunges newe lady and princesse.

Thus when fortune had said her wil,
Parcel declared of her gouernaunce,
Made a stint and sobely stode still,
John Bochas late & heard al her daliaunce,
Fareful of there, pale of countenaunce,
in ordre enpynted ech thing that she said,
ful demurely thus he did abyaid.

He toke vpon him vertue and corage,
Upon a point for to abyde stable,
Certes quod he like to thy visage,
Al worldly thinges be double & chaungeable
yet for my part by remembraunce notable,
I shal perfourme sothly if I conne,
This little boke that I haue begonne.

And lest my labour dye not nor appall,
Of this boke the title for to saue,
Among mine other little workes al,
with letters large about vpon my grane,
This bokes name shal in stone be graue,
Howe I John Bochas in especial,
Of worldly princes written haue the sal.

Of which empyre the cause to discerne,
This was first ground I wil not denye,
to eschewe sloth and vices al my liue,
And specially the vice of glotonye,
which is noyice vnto lecherie,
This was chief cause why I vndertoke,
The compilation of this little boke.

Yet by thy talking as I vnderstand,
Eche thing here of nature is chaungeable,
After thy sentence both on sea and land,
yet coude I reken thinges that be stable,
As vertuous life abiding vnmutable,
set whole to godward of hert wil & thought,
Maugre thy power & ne chaungeth nought.

Thou must eke cal vnto remembraunce,
thinges made stable by grace which is deuine

Hast thou not heard the perseuerance
of holy Martires which list not to decline,
fro Christs seith till they dyd fine,
Thy whele in them had none interesse,
To make them vary fro their stable nesse.

A man that is enarmed in vertue,
Agein thy might to make resilience,
and set his trust by grace in Christ Jesu,
And hath al whole his heartely aduertence
On right wisenesse, force and on prudence,
with their suffer called attemperaunce,
Hath a saueconduce agein thy variaunce.

They set no stoz by thy double whele,
with supportacion of other ladies thye,
Their trust stand not in plate maille or stele
But in these vertues, faith, hope, & charite,
called Virtutes Theologicke,
Which with foure atoz here specified,
Thy whele and the haue utterly defied.

If I with winges might flye to heauen,
there should I se, thou hast nothing adone,
With Jupiter nor the planettes seuen,
With Phebus, Mars, Mercury, nor y none,
But worldly fooles erly late and sone,
Such as be blent or darked with lewdnesse
By false opinton call the a goddesse.

Giftes of grace nor giftes of nature,
almes dede done with humilite,
Loue & compassion be farre out of thy cure
Seme liness strength bounty or beautye,
vertuouly bled in their degre, (sch
Gein none of these thy power may not stre-
For who is vertuous lite of the doth retych.

Of thy conditions to set another prief
which soles vse in their aduersitie,
For excusacion as sometime saith a chief,
when he is hanged it was his destinye,
It witeth fortune his iniquitie,
As she had domination,
To rule man by wil agein reason.

For which John Bochas in party dissolute,
To determine such heauenly hid secretes,
to them that be deuines of estate,
I comitte such vncouth priuetees,

And

And with poetes that be of lowe degrees
I eschewe to climbe to hie aloft,
Lest for presumption I should not fall soft.

But if I had hid in my corage,
Such misteries of diuine prouidence,
without enuye I would in pleine language
write them by writing with humble reuerence
predestinacion nouthet prescience,
Not apparteine fortune vnto the,
And for my parte I wil excuse me.

And procede like as I vndertoke,
after that I told my matere,
Of fall of princes for to write a boke,
but yet afoze if thou wouldest here,
I desire of whole hearte and entere,
To haue a coppe of princes names al,
which fro thy whele thou hast made to fall.

Thy secreete bosome is ful of stoxes,
of sudy princes how they their life haue lad
Of their triumphes and victories,
which olde poetes and philosophers sad,
In metre and prose compiled haue a rad,
longe their laudes their fates eke reserued
By remembraunce as they haue deserued.

Of which I haue put some in memoire,
Cheron set my study and my labour,
So as I roud to their encrease of gloire,
though of language I had but smal fauour
Cause Caliope dyd me no succoure,
for which thou hast during al this while.
Retuked me of my rude stile.

Wt would accoupte it wer a great dillnesse
but in language conueied be by prudence,
Out declared by sobye aufference,
Under suppozt fauoured by diffence,
Of Tullius chief prince of eloquence,
Should moze profite shortly to conclude,
Than my stile spoke in termes rude.

Yet oft time it hath be felt and seene,
Under huskes growing on land arable,
Hath be found and tried out good greine,
Under rude leues making and vnsable,
Pulled faire frute holsome and delectable.
And semblably where Rethorike hath failed

In blunt termes good counsaile hath auailed

Philosophers of the golden ages,
and poetes that fond out freche ditties,
As king Amphion with his faire langage
and with hys harping made folke of low deg-
and labourers to inhabite first Cites. (rees.
And so by musike and Philosophie,
San first of comons noble policie.

The chief of musike is melody and accord,
welle of Philosophie sprage out of prudence
By which two menes gan vnitte & accord,
with politike vertue to haue their assisence
wise men to reigne subiectes doe reuerence,
And by this ground in stoxes men may se,
were bilt the walles of Thebes the Cite.

Accord in musike causeth the melodie,
where is discord there is diuersite,
And where is pees is prudent policie,
In ech kingdome and euery great countre
Strife first induced by thy duplicite,
for which I maist as clerkes thee discerne
Be called lady of contekkes and of strues,

first were found out hateful diuisions,
By thy contriued false mutabilitie,
Slaughter, debate, froward discensions,
In regions, prouintes, and Cites,
Desolacions of townes and of countreis,
wherfore men had first experience,
By thy changeable glerie violence.

Thus by thy optinid of thy whele most double
as farre by nature as it was possible,
Querthwartly I broughtest me in trouble,
Madest ech to other froward and obible,
By thy treines vncouth and terrible,
like a coursfour make courses that be wilde,
with spoze and whip to be tame and mild.

Thus by the tempest of thine aduersites,
to make men moze tame of theyr corages,
in their discordes twene kingdoms & Cites
After the warpe of thy cruel rages,
only by speach & meane of sayre languages
folke by thy fraude fro grace farre exiled.
Were by sayre speach to vnitte reconciled.
People

The sixth

People of Grece, of Rome & of Chartage,
Next in Itale with many a region
were indulsed by sweetenes of language,
To haue together their conuersacion,
To bld castelles and many roial toun,
what caused this to tel in brief the fourme
But eloquence rude people to enfourme:

Afoze time they were but bestial,
Til they to reaso by lawes were cōstreined
vnder discrecion by statutes natural
fro wilful lusses by prudence wer restrained
by assent made one and togedye encheined
In golden cheines of peace and vnitte,
thus gan the building of euery great Cite.

But whā thou medlist to haue an interesse,
They that were one to bring the at discorde
To interrupte with thy doublenesse,
Cities regions that were of one accord,
like as this boke can beare me wel recorde,
fro the time that thou first began,
thy mutabilite hath stroyed many a man.

Thou causelt men to be obstinate,
In their corages and incorrigible,
wilful froward, causeles at debate,
Ech to other contrarious and odible,
Them to resourme almost impossible,
Til faire speach boyding diuision
Dees reconciled twene many a region.

for there is none so furious outrage,
Nor no matter so farre out of the way,
But that by meane of gracious language,
and faire speach may a man conuey
To al reason mekely for to obey
By an example which I rehearse shall,
wel to purpose and is historiall.

The hardy knight the cruel Achilles,
whan hateful Ire assailed hys corage,
there was no meane to him to trete of pees
To lsd the tempest of hys doleful rage,
Saue only this which did his ire alwage,
By attempraunce to obey to reason,
whan of an harpe he heard the swete soun.

which instrument by hys great sweetenesse
But al rancour out of his remembraunce,

rested him ageine to al gladnesse,
from him auoding al rancour & greuaunce
Semblably faire speche and daliaunce,
Set men in rest in realmes here & yonder,
By good language that were farre asonder

with these wordes Bochas wer debonaire
toward fortune as he call hys loke,
withoziwe his rancour & ga to speake faire
touching his labour which he vpo him toke
Beseeching her for to further his boke,
that hys name which was litel knowe,
By good report might be fether blowe.

That his fame might fether speede,
which stode as yet shadowed in darkenesse.
By her fauoure his name forth to lede,
his boke to further doe her besinesse,
By good report to proue it a brightnesse,
with laureat stremes shad forth to people al
By forgetfulnesse that it neuer appalle.

This was the bille which p John Bochas,
made vnto fortune with full humble stile,
whan fortune had conceiued al his caas,
Soberly stode and gan stint a while,
and glad of there after she gan smile,
On mine auctour, and with a freshe visage
In sentence spake to him this language.

Sothly quod she I se thy businesse,
Of mortal me howe Curious that they be
Howe they study by great auisenesse,
Of my secrettes for to be pruee,
to knowe the conceites hid within me,
And my counsailes ye me doe al your peine
albe that lyghtly ye may not therto atteine.

In this matter your wit doth neuer feint,
Imagening likenesses in your mind
like your conceites ye forge me and peint,
Sometime a womā with winges set behind
And portraien me with ypen that ben blind,
Cause of al this breuely to expresse,
Is youre owne couetous blindnesse.

Your appetites most straunge and dyuers,
and euer full of chaunge and doublenesse,
froward also, malicious and peruers,
By hasty climbinge to worchip and richesse
Always

Alway bope of trouth and stables,
most presumptuous serch out in al degrees,
falsly tatteyne to woꝛldly dignities.

Bochas Bochas I perceyue euery thing,
And know ful wel the great difference,
And in thy selfe of woꝛdes and thynkyng,
Betwene them both the disconuenience.
Hast thou not wꝛitten many great sentence
In thy booke to flander with my name,
Of whole entent my maners to defame?

Thou callest me stepmother most vnkynd,
And sumtime a false enchaunteresse,
I Mermayde with a tale behynde,
Of scoꝛne sumwhyle me naming a goddesse
Sumtime a wyche, sumtime a soꝛceresse,
fynder of murder and of deceites all,
Thus of malice moꝛtall men me call.

All this is done in despyght of me,
By accusation in many sondy wyse,
ye oft appeache my mutabilite,
Namely when I your requestes doe despise
foꝛ to accomplissh your griedy couetyse,
whan ye sayle ye lay on me the wyte,
Of your aduersities me falsly to atwyte.

And thou of purpose foꝛ tellaunder me,
Hast wꝛitten vngoodly a contrarious fable
How I wꝛestled with glad pouerte,
To whose partie thou wer fauourable,
Settest me aback, geyn me þ̄ wer dꝛegable,
How of new requirist my fauour,
Thee foꝛ to helpe and farther thy labour.

As I skais I am of maners most changable
Of condicions very feminine,
Now here now there, as þ̄ wind vnstable,
By thy discription and by thy doctrine,
to euery chaunge ready to encline,
As woemen been yong and tender of age,
which of nature be diuers of courage.

But foꝛ to further in party thyne intent,
That of thy booke the processe may procede
By my fauour to the accomplishment,
I am wel willed to helpe thee in thy neede,
Like thy desyre, the better thou shalt spede,
whan I am toward with a benighe face,

to spede thy iourny by support of my grace.

That thy name and also thy surname,
with doctes and notable old auctours,
May be registred in the house of fame,
By suppoꝛtacion of my sobery fauours.
By assistance also of my succours,
Thy werke teplete the laurer foꝛ to winne,
At Saturninus I will that thou beginne.

There rehearseth fortune her condici-
ons vnto Bochas, shewing how many
one she enhaunseth foꝛ a time, and
anon after, them soberyly o-
uerthroweth.



Among Romainys this sayde
Saturnine,
Was outrageous of condicion,
Caused in Rome whan he gan
maligne,
Great debates and great sedicions
And by his stoward conspiracions
he was sharpe enemy ageyn þ̄ pryncet Judge
Called Metellus deuoyde of all refuge.

From the Capitoll set with mighty hand,
Fond no succour Metellus in the town,
Thesame time thou shalt vnderstand,
How by mine helpe and suppoꝛtacion,
One that was small of reputacion,
Called Glaucia in pouert brought vp lowe,
Made consulere the story is wel knowe.

I seruaunt first and almost set at nought,
And afterwarde I made him fortunat;
Left neuer till I had him brought,
By a prerogative chole of the Senate,
To be a pretour an office of estate,
which also wrought by conspiracion,
to bring Metellus to destruction.

Of whose assent there was also another,
Called Marcus, being thesame pere,
teplete this tresor their own sworn brother
which was also that time a consulere,
I fortune made them full good chere,
Lyke their desyres gaue them libertie,
To banish Metellus out of theyꝛ Citie.

The sixth

Of these thre Romayns þ first Saturnine
And Glaucia was called the second,
And Marius layd out hoke and lyne,
As I haue told Metellus to confound,
To theyr purpose I was also found
Fauourable, to bring them to mischiefe,
As theyr story sheweth an open piete.

They banished him out of Rome towne,
And Saturninus by his subtil working,
Clambe by fast of presumption,
To be called of Rome Lord and king.
I gaue him fauor by a maner false smylyng
Till at the last playnly to declare,
Of his destruction I brought him in þ snare

The Senatours knowing the malice,
Of saturnine which made a great gadryng,
Of sondry folke casting in his auyce,
By theyr fauour he might be called king.
All this whyle of hys by climbing,
I shewed him during a long space,
Him to deceiue a benigne face.

Till Marius a mighty consulere,
to withstand his presumption,
Rose wth strong hand, & with a knyghtly chere
Beset his palace about enuiron,
Broke his gates amid of the town,
And Saturninus boyd of all fauour,
to the Capitolle fled for succour.

He was forbarred by Marius of bitrayle,
The Capitolle besieged round about,
At the entering was a strong barrayle,
On other party slayn a great rout.
Thus of my fauour he gan stond in dout,
thus Saturninus brought in grete distresse
His good acheted, lost al his richesse.

Experience ful openly men bereth,
Such as hyst therupon ascend,
Lyke as the tourne of my whele requirith,
whā they least wene down they shal descēd.
They haue no power themself to defend,
Agein my might whē they been ouerthrow
what doe I than but laugh & make a mowe

Dulus also borne of great linage,
And descended of ful hye noblesse,

Unto vertue contrary of his corage,
froward found to all gentlenesse,
Yet chose he was the story doth expresse,
Questour of Asia, an office of degree,
For his byrth to gouerne that cuntree.

But oft time vertue nor gentlenesse,
Come not to heyres by succession,
Example in Dylus þ story beareth witness
which both of courage and disposicion,
was euer froward of condicion.
For which let me deme as they must nedes,
Not after byrth but after the dedes.

Vertues all in him wer set asyde,
Slowe to be armed, hated chualtre,
Most couetous, deynous, full of pryde:
His dedes froward full of trechery,
to hye estate I did him magnify,
yet al my gyftes in him ne might stretche,
For here tofoze thee he cometh like a wretch

He dare for shame not shew his visage,
So farre dislaundred is his wretchednes,
whose couetise and vicious outrage,
falsly caused by his doublenes.
Maugulla a prince of great noblesse,
Betrayed was for mede to the kyng
Called Bocchus by Dylus falsly working,

What maner torment, or what greuous pain
wer competent couenable or condigne,
To him that can outward flatter and feyne
And in his heart couertly maligne:
as Dylus did which shewed many signe,
to Maugulla of loue and frendshede,
Underneath falsse treason hid in dede,

But Maugulla like a manly knight,
Seyn king Bocchus hath himself succored
whan he by dome was iudged ageyn right,
Of an Oliphant for to be deuoured:
Scaped frely and after that laboured,
To acquite himself throughe his hye renoun
Slough falsse Dylus mid of Rome town.

Bocchas also men put the lacke in me,
that I was cause of the destruction
By my contrarious mutabilite
Of the notable famous Cepton

which

whiche in the tyme of Censourne Caton,
Gave the tryumphe for many great victorie,
to put his name perpetually in memozy.

for his merittes chose a consuler,
And chief bulhop to gouerne theyr citie;
to al the Senate patron most entiere,
Most famous of name and dignitie;
Sayed Romayns from all aduersitie,
Time when the werre dyedeful & despitous,
Gan atwoene Pompey and Cesar Julius.

Thus when the sayd famous Cypion,
was throw my fauor acouted most notable,
He fro my whele sodeinly was throwe down
which neuer in word nor dede was culpable
But the Romains malicious and vnstable
By theyr hangman first cheyned in prison
After racked there gayned no raunson.

Thus he that had awayed them so oft,
To saue himselfe fond succour on no tyde,
His dead body they heng it hye aloft,
for a spectacle long there to abyde,
thus gierly my gytes I deuyde.
Stoundmele now frend now aduersary,
Reward good with guerdons ful contrary.

This was expert ful wel in Sepion,
Gan with ioy and ended in wretchednes,
Bochas remember make herof mencion,
And of fanaticus how I of gentlenes,
Made him assend to notable hye prowesse:
Yet booches say touching his kindred,
Manly of persone a churle bozne in dede.

for my dispozt with a glad visage,
I set him vp ful hye vpon my whele,
Gave him Lordship out of lowe seruage,
to doe hym fauour it lyked me ful wele,
Wherfore Bochas his stoye euer dele,
Note it wel and in especiall,
How he by sleight came to estate royall.

By sleight feyning to diuers folke he tolde
How that he spake with Cyrrha & goddesse,
At euery houre plainly when he would,
Of presumption deseruiued her lykenesse,
Sayed also how she of her goodnesse,
Had graunted him his state to magnify,

During hys lyfe a spryte of prophete.

And furthermore the people for to blynd,
He fantasied by a craft vncouth,
within a shale the stoyr maketh mynd,
Of a flutte to haue fyre in his mouth,
Blew it out sparkling north and south,
Asserted wherwith folke wer blent,
It was a spryte to hym from heauen sent.

By which he wrought many great vertue,
Gadied people till he had in dede,
two thousand churles at his retinue,
which afterward his purpose for to spede,
To sixty thousand increased as I rede,
I suffred all serued him at the tyde,
till all Jewry grutched at his pryde.

Though of byrth he was but a vileyne,
Rose vp of nought by sodeyn auenture,
My gieri fauour made him to be seyne,
Royal of port did his besy eure,
to trefe hys banere, weared a coate armure
And by gracious suppoztacion,
Brought great people to his subiection.

At the last my lust gan appalle,
toward him not beynng fauourable,
Down fro my whele anon I made him fall,
for by Romayns was sent a gret constable,
Called Perpenna, a prince ful notable,
which fell on him betuquished him anon,
Nough & outrayed his churles euerychone.

Himselfe was hanged on an hye gibet,
Some of his meiny was cast in prison,
Thus to his pryde I gaue a great tripet,
And fro my whele I cast him lowe down,
In his most hest dominacion, (cne
toke none hede where he did laugh or mou-
for with no man I doe alway solourne.

Bochas (quod fortune) take good hede also
How I can both further and disauayle,
for example see how Ichongo,
That whilom was a shepheard in Itaple,
I Bygaunt after marchantes to assayle,
Lay in awayte besyde a great mounteyn,
Of fugitiues he was made a captayn.

Slough

The sixth

Slough fyrst his lord a ryche Senatour,
By violence brake many a strong pryson,
And for a time I gaue him great fauour,
to gader robbours about him enuiron,
All the churles of that region,
He assembled thzough his iniquitie,
To hold a werre with Rome the citie.

Besegeid castles, brake down mighty towres
Slough and robbed about in eche cuntrey,
Spoyled palace of woorthy Senatours,
Tyle had he none saue tyle of volunte,
toke vpon him of pryde and crueltie
for to be clad in purple like a king,
Bare a scepter among his men ryding.

Upon his head ordeined for the nones
His golde heere tressed lyke an Emperour,
I coysse embroyded all of ryche stones,
He list to laugh that a false robbour,
By suppoxtacion of my giety fauour,
which last not long for after in short whyle
As is my custome I did hym begyle.

I suffered him, made him fayned chere,
As I haue to other moe done ful oft,
till down fro Rome was sent a Consulere,
which toke him prouidly & hing him hye aloft
His churles slayn & some of them not soft,
In cheynes bound for short conclusion,
wer dempt by lawe to dye in pryson.

By which story Bochas thou mayst lere,
I great party of my condiction.
But now in hast a story thou shalt heare,
Howe in the yere fro the foundacion,
more thā sixe hūdzd I mene of Rome toun
was agadering a great company,
togeder swozne by false conspiracie.

Them to withdraue fro the obeylaunce,
Of a Tribune called Lentulee,
which for knightthod had gouernaunce,
And was sent down from Rome Citie,
with mighty hond to rule a great cuntrey,
Called Champayne, and pleyndye for to sepe,
the people there list him not obey.

Thre scoze & foure wer of them in numbze
That named wer chief conspiratours,

which I cast them their captayn to encūbe,
with multitude of theues and robbours,
which chose amōg thē to be their supporters
thre mighty capteins of which ther was one
Called Spartacus, chiefest of etheone.

Gadzed churles made them self strong,
On an hye hill toke they dwelling place,
Hauing no regard wer it ryght or wzong,
to spoyle the cuntrey beastes to enchace,
I cherished them with a benigne face,
for a season and gaue them libertie,
By false rautine to robbe the cuntrey.

What thyng moze cruell in comparison,
Moze vengeable of will and not of right,
than whan a churle hath dominacion?
Lacke of discrecion blindeth so the syght,
Of commoners for default of light,
whan they haue power cuntries to gouerne
fare like a beast I can nothing discrete.

Gladiatores folkes did them call,
for their swordes wer to stele made fyne,
for to fyght geyn wold beastes all,
As Lyons, beares, bores, wold swoyne,
And the mountayn where they did lyne,
Called Vesuuus, & thzough they crueltie,
Slough & robbed about in eche cuntrey.

Spartacus was their chief captayn,
brought bp of nought & bozn of lowe degre,
But Claudius a mighty strong Romayn,
was sent with power fro Rome the citie,
for to defend and saue the cuntrey.
The hill besieging afoze them as he lay,
He was rebuked, bet and dzeuen away.

Many of them that kept the mounteyn,
were hurt that day, the story telleth thus,
amonges which was slayn a great captayn
that was felow vnto Spartacus,
As I find he hight Denomaus.
for whose deth was take so gret vengeaunce,
that al the cuntrey felt therof greuaunce.

They of the mountayn all of one assent,
without mercy or remission,
Most vengeable haue robbed and brent,
All the cuntrey about them enuiron,

Uyll two consulers came fro Rome doune
the fyrst of them called Lentulus,
Both put to flyght by sayd Spartacus.

Wherof the Romans greatly dismayed,
The Senatours of indignacion,
Both ashamed and in themself affrayed,
Sent one Crassus a great Lord of þ toun
With the number of a Legion.
And whan that he on Spartacus fyrst set
slogh of his mē sixe thousand whā thei met

And afterwarde beside a great riuer,
called Salaire they had a great battayle,
where Spartacus stode in great daunger,
for his chere and countenaunce gan fayle,
Thyrtie thousand clad in plate and mayle,
wer slayn that day there gepned no raunse
All they captaynes assigned to prison,

Without all this as made is mencion,
Sextye thousande in the field lay dead,
And syxe thousand wer sent to prison,
The field with bloud steyned & made read,
And foure thousand quakyng in theyr dyed,
wer thilke day after the Romans guise,
Take to mercy recepued to fraunchyse.

And Spartacus at mischiefe put to flyght,
whan I from hym turned my visage,
He lost chere, he lost also his myght,
whan I appalled the fyne of his passage.
And for he was a churle of his linage,
Of his encrease I lyked nothyng wele,
therfore vnwarely I cast him fro my whele

Of my maneres to make a greater preel.
There was another famous great robbour
which through spain was a dislaundred theefe
And for he dyed of Justice the rigour,
Crusyng he shoud in me fynde succoure,
Called Viriatus, he Spayne anone forsoke
And to Rome the ryght way he toke.

Gathred many of his condicion,
Of euery secte to make hymself strong,
Theues, robbours, of euery region,
Many a churle was medled them among,
his name to encrease were it ryght or wroȝ,
what euer he gat in citie or village,

With his shoulders he parted the pylage.

Thus by mine help he came to great riches
which brought in pride and presumption,
He not prouided of my doublesnes,
Gan to maligne agayn Rome town,
But by the prudence of last Scorpion,
Sonne of Lepidus making therof no boost
He slayn was by them he trusted most.

By which example notable of remēbraunce,
Shewed here tofore John Bochas vnto the
thou mayst know in partye my puissaunce,
My sodayn chaunges my mutabilitie,
And for to auoide al ambiguitie,
To declare the summe of mine entent,
Great Marius to thee I do present.

Blake his weede and his habite also,
his head vnkempt his lockes hore and gray
His loke down cast in token of sorow & wo,
On his chekes the salt teares lay
Which bare recorde of his deadly affeate,
Wherfore Bochas doe thy penne dresse,
To deserue his mortall heaumes.

His robe steyned was with Roman bloud,
His sword ay ready whet to do vengeance,
Like a tirant most furious and wood,
In slaughter & murder set al his pleasace.
Yet not for thy I gaue hym gouernaunce,
ouer the people rose on my whele vp fast,
But as vnwarely down I dyd hym cast.

Twene him & Sulla þ wooful deadly strues
At large hereafter Bochas thou shalt wyte
How many Romans lost by thē their liues
I wyl also in order that thou endite,
And if I shall rebuke them and arwote,
As I fro nought made them in honor whine
so I agaynward made thē in mischief fine.

Forgeat not also the deadly piteous fate,
Of him that was so notable in his life,
I meane the great famous Mithridate,
whose name is yet ful couth and ryfe,
To whome I gaue a great prerogative,
For the wynter the dede was well seen,
Agayn Romans the warre to sustene.

The sixth

For which hereafter I geue it the in charge
Of Withydate the story set a longe,
Whan thou hast layure and a space large,
remember his conquest and his dedes ströng
And how that I medled me among,
For all his noblesse and his felicitie,
To proue hym part of great aduersitie.

Next in order after her owne choise,
Fortune vntrusty vpon eche partie,
to John Bochas hath edueied fro Parthois
Strong Rhodes reynnyng in Parthye,
Loe John (quod she) take hede of this story,
All his kinrede if it be wel out sought,
Wet by Scythiens chased and brought to
(nought.

And yet for all my mutabilitie,
Some of them which stode despyed,
I restozed vnto theyr dignitie,
Vnto which whan they wet repaired,
This Rhodes was hyndred and appeyed,
By my chaunges for his hatefull pryde,
Whan he lest wend vnwarely set aspyde.

Suyng after within a litle whyle,
This gierish Lady of condicion,
Gan an yll laughyng falsly for to smyle,
lokyng on Bochas brought with her down
A mighty prince which in Rome town,
Had in his dayes notable pryce and fame,
Albe that she oppressed not his name.

Bochas than his head gan downe decline,
Seyng that prince of face disfigured,
Of suspencion gan to ymagine,
Whan he his mind fully hath recured,
By certain tokens and signes well assured,
It was Pompey surqueuous of estate,
Which with Cesar so long was at debate.

Disconsolate through his unhappy caas.
His face soyled with water of the see,
Time whan Photinus and cruell Achilles
Drouned his body of furious enmittee,
His face disfigured at the solemnitee,
With smokes blacke, deadly and moztall,
Called of Clarkes the feast funerall.

Codrus caused the corps was byent,
And consumed into ashes dead,
To Cesar after his head was bozne & sent

Vpon a pole his story who list rede,
After all this Bochas toke good hede,
How fortune by a maner mockrie,
In scozne of hym gan thus to specifie.

Up to the heauen after his deuse,
I gan enhaunce and encrease his gloze,
By my fauour I gaue hym many a pryce,
conquest of kynges in many great victoze,
And moze to put his noblesse in memoze,
By my support through his chualrie,
with Cesar Julius to hold chaumpartie.

And while that I my fauour dyd applye,
Toward hym his victories to assure,
His fame arose tyll that in Thessalpe,
I gan withdraue his partie to succour.
Suffring his ennies make a discomfiture
Vpon this Pompey hyndred in my sight,
whā he to Lesbos at mischief toke his flight

By the seruauntes of yong Ptholome,
Reynnyng in Egypt Pompey in hys drede
Was take and slayn he fond no help in me
I gaue hym by and so he lost his hede.
Yet of my chaunges no man taketh hede,
noz how vnshurely I cast my dyedfull loke,
Sawe thou art busy to set them in thy boke

Bochas assayed parcell of her presence,
Both of chere, face and countenance,
And in this while haupng his aduertence,
thought he sawe a maner resemblaunce,
of a person which stode in great greuaunce,
Tyll at last fortune cast her syght,
Toward Bochas and tolde what he hight.

This is (quod she) plainly to termyne,
The famous man prince of eloquence,
that gaue to Latines þ scole & the doctrine
Of Rhetorike as wel of that science,
for which I wyl thou do thy diligence,
To wyte with other of this Tullius,
All whole the case and gyn at Marius.

These wordes sayd fortune made an ende
She bete her winges & toke her to þ flight
I cannot see what way she dyd wend,
Sawe Bochas telleth like an Angel bright
At her departyng she shewed a great lght
But

But as soone as he gan disapere,
He toke his penne & wrote as ye shall here.

Howe Cayus Marius of lowe byrth
borne came to hys estate, which bleinte
with couetise after many great ba-
tayles dyed at mischpyse.

The.iii. Chapter.



Ere Bochas gyneth to tell of
the man,
Called in his tyme Cayus
Marius.

Borne at Arpinas a castel of Tuskan,
Sonne of a Carpenter & story telleth thus
pursued armes manly and vertuous,
Through all Rome no; in that countrey,
Was there no man holde so strong as he.

Discipline and great subtiltie,
he had also as bokes specifye,
Prudence, manhode, and habilitie,
Both in armes and in chivalrye,
most famous holde toward the partie,
within a whyle myne autout sayth certayne
chose a Tribune and a great capteyn.

But fro the gynnyng of hys tender age,
As Histories put in remembraunce,
he was pycked so soze in his courage,
By a greddy feet of long continuance,
Neuer to staunche with none habundance,
I would no; fortune wold al their great riches,
Sufficed not to appease hys gredines.

Entryng a temple he fond a diuinour,
counsayled there by his diuinayle,
Center Rome and holde they; solour,
By good aunsie and knightly apparayle,
Made hym promes that he shall not fayle,
ratteyne by fauour of the commonrie,
to great office and state in the cite.

fauo; of comōs brought him to hys estate,
by them receiued vnto the dignitie,
Of consulere, albe that the Senate,
had disdeyne of his felicitie,
Because he was borne of low degree,
Ghaunted to hym after by the toun,

to conquire realmes a commission.

He gat the prouince through his hie renoun
Of Numedye as he dyd them assaile,
And toke the kyng of that region,
Called Jugurtha proudly in batayle,
For which empyse by marcial apparayle,
He gat the triumphe through I toun riding
because onely for takyn of that kyng.

And for he was a person so notable,
for many famous sodern great victorie,
Namely in conquest proued profitable
To all the common as put is in memo;re,
And for the crease of his hie renoun & glo;re
By thopinton whole of the cite,
In his honde laye all they; prosperitie.

Again a people that called was Cimbrys,
the to cōquere scō Rome he was sent down
Also again the boyssous Cheutonors,
Gathred together of many nation,
All them he brought to subiection,
Like as Romaines had afoze despyed,
because they had again their toun cōspired.

That toke vpon them of false presumption,
to passe all the mountaynes of Jtalle,
first discomfited as made is mencion,
The Romain Dukes felly in battaile,
fourtescore thousande clad in plate & mayle
slayne of Romaines the story is well knowe,
vnder Chalpis at mischief ouerthrowe.

This Marius of marciall auenture,
In Germanye had a great batayle,
With Cheutobochus a Staunt of stature,
But first to flight with al his apparayle,
for Marius dyd hym so soze assaile,
At the chace proudly borne to grounde,
mauger his might take & in theyne's boud.

Marius after with his host hym brough,
toward & people of Cimbrys for to fight,
two. C. thousande I fynd of the he slough,
eight thousand take, thre thousand put to flight
kyng Veleus a full famous knyght,
slayne in the field for al his great pryde,
Agayn Marius like as he dyd ryde.

Ed.ii.

Chas

The sixth

That day of Cimbriis was al þ people slain
The women after he list not to reserue
yet thei prosted and would haue ben ful slain
they: chastitie deuoutly to obserue,
In the temple of Vesta for to serue.
But they: request for he list not here,
With hym they faught eche one slayn yfere.

Except some, whan they sawe none other
Remedye, of purpose they wer set,
Euerych of them to slei and murther other.
And some thought also it was bet,
To hang themself vpon an hye gibet,
Than to abide of Marius the outrage,
Perpetually to liue in seruage.

This Marius of thze nations,
through his request accomplished the victoꝝy,
with prisoners of sondy regions,
Entered Rome to his encrease of gloꝝy,
with speciall laudes notable of memoꝝy,
first the triumphe a guerdon singulere,
He tymes sixe was chose a consulere.

Thus fortune was to hym fauourable,
To set hym vp in worldly dignities,
for a season, but for he was changeable,
Among her giftes and great prosperities,
She gaue hym parte of great aduersities,
And specially the time accounted than,
twene hym and Silla whan the warre ga.

Lucius Silla abydyng in chaumpeyne,
Marius at Rome tho present,
Whan the diuision gan atwene the twain,
Eche to other contrary of entent,
Melancolius and impatient,
Whiche of both (the story wel conceyued.)
to gouerne should sonest be receiued.

All sodainly where it wer ryght or wꝝong,
toward Rome takyng his passage,
Again Marius to make himself strong,
Can slei and byenne, and of great outrage,
wylfull hasty furious of courage,
for sodayn comming and vnware violence
Agayn hym sonde no resistance.

Two mightie batailes he did with him lede
entring the cite gan through the wal inue

with one batayle fast gan hym spede,
To passe the gate called Aquiline,
that other gate named was Colyne.
At whose entring by recoꝝde of the booke,
Silla by strength the Capitolle toke.

But whan Marius had knowlagng,
that Silla had so great power and might,
without a rest or lenger abydyng,
Into a Marish Capus anon right,
With al his people toke sodainly his flight
fet out by strength could hym not defende,
Silla after to prison dyd hym sende.

Thus the pꝝowesse for a whyle slept,
Of Marius lying in pꝝeson,
Silla that time the Capitolle kept,
whereby all Rome stode in subiection.
And of hattere in hast he sent down,
A sturdy churle to Marius in his drede,
whyle he lay bound to smite of his hede.

This churle wel copact of brawn & of bones
Sent of purpose Marius for to oppresse,
for his strength ordeyned for the nones,
to the pꝝeson the churle gan fast hym dresse,
where Marius was fettered in distresse,
fully in purpose without moꝝe delay,
to behead hym in pꝝeson there he lay.

Losed hym first lying on his couch,
And Marius rose vp like a man,
the churle ferefull to smite or to touch,
And Marius full proudly tho began.
To enter a place besyde of a woman,
founde an asse there of auenture,
vpon whose backe the see he gan recure.

Toward Affrike there he fond passage,
By enpꝝisonyng though he wer were seynt,
yet there abode still in his courage,
Hye woꝝthines with pꝝudence meynt,
which in his person wer not queint,
Agayn the malice to make a countertake,
Of pꝝoude Silla the malice est tassel.

Of Itayle rode through the countrey,
toke his viage through Rome towne,
with foure battayles entred the cite,
Sixe hundred knyghtes by computacion,
Slaine

Slayne in the field as made is mention,
where men may see who list looke asarre,
what damage diuision both in warre.

first by the manhode of this Marius,
In this diuision the story who list tede,
The great consull called Octavius,
Lost his head and his lyfe in dede,
Upon a pole while it did blede,
was cruelly presented of entent,
Tofoze the Judges sitting in iudgement.

Of whose death some of them wet saue,
Some soze of loue as they wet bounde,
And in this warre Metula was slayne,
Priest in the temple lyke as it is founde,
Of Jupiter with many mortall wotinde,
The Romain slayne þ called was Crassus,
With syer consumed was proud Catulus.

All his enemies Marius byd encomber,
which agein hym by conspiracion,
wet assented with a full great number,
In theyr aulse for to haue put hym doon,
Take from hym his dominacion.
But he abode the toymnt and the howzes
strong to condemne al his conspiratours.

Six tymes afoze rehearsed here,
Of condiction though he wet dispitons,
He was chosen so oft consulere,
yll fortune gan were enuious,
Agein this said cruel Marius,
which made the Senat with al þ chualere,
To grutche ageyn his hatefull tyrannye.

In this tyme the story maketh mynde,
Damalippus a Pretor of the towne,
frendly to Marius and helpyng as I find
Under a shadow of deception,
vnto their citie for to do treason,
Causyng foure Romaine come in fere,
Tofoze Marius a certain day to appere.

And theyr names to put in memorye,
Secuola, Cotta, and Domicius,
The fourth of them as sayth the story,
Called in Rome the wise Antistius.
together assembled tofoze Marius,
Of rancour agein iudgement of lawe,

made the be slayne & throught þ citie draw.

Theyr bodies after wet in Tiber casle,
By crueltie of the sayd Marius,
All this whyle the cruell warre last,
twene hym & Silla til Duke Campanus,
Came to the partie hardy and despitous,
To help Silla theyr banners fyrst displayed
wherof all Rome was sodenly affrayed.

At the gate that called was Colline,
Marius and Silla had a great battayle,
fourescore thousande þ number to termine
On Marius syde slayne it is no fayle,
Silla victorizous with marciall apparayle,
Entring the towne agayn his othe pardie,
thre thousand Citizens notigh of that cite.

Of folke disarmed and naked in the towne,
they nother spared olde nor yonge of age,
the cruell murdres walkyng bp and downe,
By Silla sent in that mortall rage,
fyl Catullus a prince fal in age,
sayde vnto Silla we can no difference,
twene rebellion nor atwene innocens.

We murder and sleigh without exception,
Bothe hye and lowe holdyng no manere,
Ageyn all knighthode to mine opinion,
we do procede in our conquest here,
Our title is lost the tryumphe to requere,
Of hye prowesse whan we cannot obserue,
No difference to sleigh nor to reserue.

And in this whyle of hatefull crueltie,
Silla contriued letters defamable,
wheteby fure handzed out of that citie,
Wet falsly banished Citizens notable,
Against them he was so vntreatable,
Al theyr goodes acheted in that rage,
Of anarice and of false pillage.

Another Romain named Marius,
Brother to Marius of whom tofoze I told
for dyed of Silla fled and toke an house,
whiche vnto Gotes was set vp for a folde,
founde and rent out in his dayes olde,
with cordes draw no rescus might him saue
Of cruell vengeance to Catulus graue.

Ed. III.

Others

The Arthy

Where Silla made by cruel iudgement
With a sharpe sword forged for to bite,
After tyme his eyen wer out rent.
Both at once his handes of to smite.
His head of smet no cause might him quite
Set on a pole it would be none other,
And of despite sent vnto his brother.

To gret Marcus of whō I spake now right
The great Duke so mightie and so huge,
Which had afore take hym to the flight,
For feare of Silla in that mortall deluge,
Into a cite to fynd there refuge,
Called Bzeneste there stonding in gret dyed
Namely whan he behelde his brothers hed.

For as muche as he no succour fonde,
Disespyped this was his purpose,
To sleigh hymself with his own honde,
In thylke place where he was kept close.
Drew out a sword and by anon arose,
Constreyned his seruaunt in þe soden assay
To smite of his head the selfe same daye.

Men say howe death is fine of all mischief
Ende of aduersitie that doth wretches tary
Fortune here maketh another pyef,
In Marcus how she her cours gan harye,
By an euidence hateful and contrary,
To shewe her malice and vngoodlyhed,
Agayn this Duke (alas) whan he was ded.

This froward lady of malice most be geable
Whan her list furiously to raue,
And shew her selfe cruel and vnsable,
To none estate she list no reward haue,
Caused Marcus be take out of his graue,
By cruel Silla in story it is founde,
His ougly carreyn smet on pees round.

And after moze to shew his crueltye,
Marcus shoulde haue no buryng place
Cast his carreyn of cancred enmitie,
Into Tiber there was none other grace,
To thus cause fortune for her folke purchase
By which example touchyng Marcus,
Of worldly chauges Bochas writeth thus.

Maketh in this Chapter a description,
First what thyng is very gentlenes,

To set a prefe and a probacion,
Nothyng atteyneth vnto hye noblesse,
but the clere shynyng of vertuous ciennes,
which may not shew in hye nor low parage
but where it groweth out of a pure courage.

Worldly power, oppression, tyranny,
Earthly treasure, gold, stones, nor richesse,
Be no meanes vnto gentrie,
But if vertue rule theyr hye prowesse,
for where vices haue any intresse,
In hye byrth, meane or low kynrede,
Deme no man gentle but only by his dede.

In royal palaces of stone & metal wrought,
With galeries or stately cloysters rounde,
Gentlenes nor noblesse is not sought,
Nor in sellers, nor in boughtes found,
But only there where vertue doth habound,
Curious clothes, nor great possessions,
Maketh not a man gentle, but condicions.

Philosophers conclude in their entente,
And al these worthy famous olde autours;
No man may queth in his testament,
Gentlenes vnto his successors,
Of wicked weede come no sote flours,
concludyng thus of good men & of shrewes,
cal eche man gentle after his good thewes.

Duke Marcus of whom I spake tofore,
Of nature the story beareth witnes,
As by descent both pooze and neddy borne,
By disposition of couragious noblesse,
had in his person, wit, strength, hardines,
Under al this there did his heart mine,
A woyme of auarice his woorthip to declyne.

What basteeth plentie þe neuer may suffre,
Or what þe floude that stauncheth no thirst
Or what an appetite which euer doth arysse,
Alway to eate, and euer to eate hath lust:
Of cancred hunger so frettyng is the rust,
That the riuier of Tantalus in his rage,
Of greddy etikes the feet may not asswage.

Of Marcus ye haue heard the ende,
His woofull fall and his vnhappy caas,
Into fate how he dyd wende,
Now wil I folow mine autor, John Bochas
How

How vnto hym the Cleopatras,
with loke dourne cast wolfull face and chere,
All at once dyd to hym appere.

The first of them by proesse of wyrtynge,
had the housebondes Bochas doth expresse,
wedded in youth to Alexander the kyng,
Called Sebenna a prince of great noblesse
After that for her great fayenes,
She wedded was vnto Demetrius,
And last of all to kyng Antiochus.

Of her the housebondes wolfull auenture,
And of her sonnes great unkindnes,
Bochas afore hath done his busy cure,
Seriously the maner to expresse,
which to rehearse agayn wer pblens,
With al the proesse here tofore is founde,
Of the first and eke of the secounde.

Which wedded was to kyng Ptholome,
Like as afore eke made is mencon,
Both of theyr ioye and theyr aduersite,
The first slayne by drynkyng of possion,
And the secounde to her confuson,
By Euergetes wer she woe or faine,
Was with her child ferued that was slayn.

The thirde wedded was to kyng Syphus,
Slain in a temple by full great outrage,
for dyed and shame gan waxe furious,
To saue her self knew none ausantage,
Sawe she embraced of Jupiter an ymage,
In the story as here tofore is found,
By she was dead suffred many a wounde.

How kyng Mithridates bode leue yere
in wyldernes, hadde great tozmentes
both on Sea and lond, and by his
bloud was brought to vttraice
and slough hymselfe with
a sweorde.

The. iiii. Chapter.

Now passe ouer these Cleopatras the
furth procede to the hally fate,
Sone execute by Parcas crueltie,
Upon the kyng called Mithridate,
first rehearse the great unkindly hate,

Of them that wet his tufours as I rede,
Hym to destroye by assent of his kinrede,

Which of purpose dyd his death prouide,
By many vncouth straunge occasion,
In tender youth first they made hym ryde,
Upon an hofse wilder than a Lion,
Of purpose onely for his destruction,
But albe so that he was younge of age,
The hofse he ruled in al his most rage.

Not of doctrine but onely of nature,
He was disposed cunningly to ryde,
ouer hym the mastery to recure,
Mauger the hofse of wit he was his guyde,
what way he toke froward or asyde,
He daunted hym that where so euer he rode
Bybled hym and on his backe he bode.

His own kin and his next alpes,
Most laboured to byng hym to mischies,
With venimous drynke set on hym espies,
At good leysure as both a couert thief,
Of theyr sel poyson for to make a prief,
In theyr entent this is well couth,
Him to murther in his tender youth.

But when that he apperceyued their treasde
to saue hymselfe made great ordinaunce,
Anon as he gan hade suspencion,
Of theyr unkindly hateful pcurerpaunce,
for remedies made cheulsaunce
was prouided theyr malice to deelyne,
By many notable proued medicine.

And theyr malice prudently to escheue,
Is remembred whyle he was yong of age,
with certain frendes whiche he dyd him leue
He disposed of custome his courage,
To hunte and chase beastes most sauage,
Under that colour he dyd it for a while,
farre fro his countrey absce him for a while.

Of one courage, one heart, and one chere,
Suffred manly, toke none heauines,
In desertes the space of seuen yere,
Among hye hylls bode in wyldernes,
Set in Asia the story beareth witnes,
fonde no lodgyng trasyng the countrees,
Sawe in cauernes & great holowe trees,

The

The sixth

The boke remembzeth how that his dylet,
wer beastes wild enchaſed w great myght,
fled ydlenes, eſchewed al quiete.
And litle ſlepe ſufficed hym at nyght.
By exerciſe his body was made lyght,
there was nother whan hym lyſt purſue,
Hart nor hind that myght his hand eſchew.

He nother dyd Tigris nor Lions,
He was ſo ſwift though they did him aſſaile
Lyke of ſtrength to olde champions,
No wild beaſt of great nor ſmal entrayle.
to eſcape his hand myght not count reuayle
If he wer ware early other late,
So great ſwiftneſſe had Mithridate.

Among he had in armes exerciſe,
Among to tournay and ren on horſebacke,
All delicate ſare he did alſo deſpyſe,
Of greddy exceſſe in hym there was no lack
A nyghte tyme his ſlepe ful oft he brake,
Stoundmele the houres ſoz to marke,
In the dawnyng roſe bp oꝝ the larke.

The ſpace accompliſhed fully of ſeven yere
He is repayzed home to his countrey,
Shewed hymſelf of manhode and of chere,
ful lyke a knyght his ſtoꝝ who liſt ſee,
Whereof his enemyes ſoze aſtonyed be,
raught of his cōmyng in heart a maner dyed
ſuppoſyng afoze that he was ded.

In whoſe abſence his wiſſe Laodices,
Conceyued a chyld as made is mencion,
foz the defame ſhould not come in pꝛees,
Hym ſoz to murder ſhe ſought occaſion,
fully in purpoſe to ſley hym by poyſon.
of which defautes her lord was nothing ſain
knowyng the tꝛouth made her to be ſlayne.

Toke on hym after many knightly dede,
lyſt to conquere al Paphlagonye,
By the helpe of worthy Richomede,
that tyme called kyng of Bithyny.
Together aſſured to be of one alye,
In loſſe oꝝ lucre fortune to be theꝝ guide
And theꝛto ſwoꝝne neuer to deuide.

To Mithridate Legates wer downe ſente
fro the Romains hym lowly requyryng.

That he wold like to theꝝ entent,
Paphlagonye reſtoze to their kyng,
which he had wonne the cite aſſaylyng.
But he liſt not aduertise theꝝ prayere,
Nor on no parties their requelles here.

He dyed not theꝝ thꝛetes nor manaces,
Gate pꝛoudly after the londe of Salathye,
In his conqueſtes wan many other places,
Cappadoce toke to his partie.
Slough theꝝ kyng of hatred and enuy,
Ariarathes a ful manly man,
And in this wiſſe his conqueſt he began.

Again chaſſurace twene hym & Richomede
All ſoderly he gan fall at debate,
thought he wold warrey hym in dede,
Because that he pompeous and elate,
In Cappadoce toke on hym theſtate,
To reygne as kyng agatniſt his entent,
He nother beyng of counſayle nor aſſent.

And Ariarathes oꝝ they gan debate,
Had long afoze to his owne encꝛees,
the ſuſter wedded of that Mithridate,
whan they as bꝛethꝛen liued in reſt & pꝛees,
And ſhe alſo was called Laodices,
Hauing two ſonnes boꝝne ſoz to ſuccede,
After his diſceale as they ought in dede.

And by proceſſe theſe ſayd chyldꝛen twene,
In Cappadoce by help of Mithridate,
Claymed a title wiſtly ſoz to atteine,
Unto the crowne theꝝ father dyed but late,
foz which they gan ſelly to debate,
Tyll Mithridate faulſly gan contriue,
His two neuewes vngoodly to depꝛiue.

All Cappadoce he toke into his hond,
His owne ſonne he hath there crowned kyng
Cappadoceus by aſſent of all the londe,
Can diſobey of purpoſe his woꝝkyng.
Whan the Romains cōſidꝛed al this thing
Artobarzanes in haſt they ſent down,
Geyn Mithridate to kepe that region.

The ſone of whō fro thē they haue reſuſed
Out of theꝝ kyngdom gan hym to enchaſe
foz they ſempt their fraunchiſe was abuſed,
to ſe a foꝛeyn occupye that place.

Mithridate

Mithridate gan newly them manace,
And toke with hym to susteyne his partie,
Tigranes the kyng of Armenye.

Artobazanes that was fro Rome sent,
To Cappadoce to helpe them and counsaile
Of Mithridate knowyng the entent
How he came down proudly hym to assaile,
With Tigranes set in the first battaile,
Of Cappadoce, that all the region,
was brought that day to thei subiection.

Thus Mithridate hauyng his entent,
In short tyme countreys conqueriug,
Was mightiest prince of al the Orient,
And in tho dayes one the greatest kyng,
And as it is remembred by writiug,
He delited most in astronomie,
In soylage and in sojerie.

And with all these he dyd his busy cure,
For to learne vncouth conclusions,
And secretes sought out by nature,
Knewe the languages of diuerse regions,
Of two and twentie sondry nations,
And helde women many moe than one,
Loued Hyppocrata aboute them euerichone.

To the Romans this manly Mithridate,
As booke olde recorde of hym and sayne,
vpon a day of very cruell hate,
Through al Asia he bad that eche Romayn,
Shoulde of his men merces be clayne,
Twentie thousand he slough eke on a day,
of Romain marchantes durst no mā say nay

To hym he brough diuers nations
To encrease his partie by puissaunce,
Cimbrops, Gallois, with other regions.
Besternois toke to his alliaunce,
With straunge people made his acquaintaunce
Where that euer he rode nye or farr,
With them of Rome for to holde warre.

In Grece also he gate many an Ile,
All Ciclades to his subiection,
Conquered so that within a whyle,
Of Athens he gat the famous towne.
But whan Romans knewe his intencion,
Thei sent Sulla in a furious hete.

With Mithridate in Grece for to mete.

Archelaus which that was counstable,
Leddyng the host of kyng Mithridate,
San again Sulla trustiug he was able,
Hauger Romans with hym to debate,
As they met in thei furious hate,
Beside Cheronea of Grece a great towne,
Of Archelaus the partie was brought down

There gan Sulla to be victorions,
Gain Mithridate and by great violence,
Gat all Cephese a kingdom full famous,
Rode through Asia sonde no resistance,
By his knighthode and manly prouidence,
Cappadoce, Bithynye eke also,
To Romain handes he gate the both two.

Whā Mithridate perceiued hath this thing
How the conquest of Sulla toke encrease,
In none he cast without long taryng,
For a tyme with hym to haue a pees,
Of hye wisdom he was not recheles,
To dissimule tyll he sonde tyme and space,
In fortune to fynde better grace.

Abode his tyme kept himself close,
Tyll he sonde lefyer lyke his opinion,
In this whyle of auenture arose,
Within Rome a great discencion,
Twene two consulers bring in that towne
which to appeyse by his auctoritie,
Sulla came vp agayn to the cite.

Whan Mithridate his absence dyd espye,
to his purpose fond oportunitie,
Gathered people and with his chualrye,
A siege layde vnto Carcum the cite,
Of al Asia most of auctoritie,
tyll Lucullus a mightie consulere,
to breake the siege apporche gan full nere.

Mithridate had on fure captatys,
tofore the towne made a discomfiture,
Of hye despite he had to Romans.
But Lucullus the damages to recure,
Enclose his ennies did his busy cure,
to his minours gaue anone in charge,
About the siege to make a ditche full large.

They

The sixth

They within had knowlagynge,
By certayn tokens of all theyr gouernaunce
Whereupon they made no taryng,
To cast away for theyr deliuerance,
Mithridate seying theyr ordinaunce,
Of hye prudence escaped away beside,
And at the siege list no longer abide.

Lucullus than the mightie consuler,
Pursued after slough of his meynce,
Such multitude that Asopus the riuer,
Was made with bloud like the read see,
Wh wind and tempest fordyeuē also was he,
And whan he sawe no succour in the londe,
To ship he went with strong & mighty hōd.

He sende fortune cruel aduersarye,
On londe and sea this worthy Mithridate,
And Neptune made the sea contrary,
Against hym his puissance tabate.
What shall men call it influence or fate?
So sodeinly a prince of hye renoun,
Fro hye noblesse to be plunged doune.

For any mischief he kept ay one visage,
This Mithridate and loth was for to pleye,
For to bowe so strong was his courage,
But eft agein goth with his chualtre,
Toward Asyrius an hyl of Armentie,
Wheras Pompey beset hym enuiron,
Sent fro Rome to his destruction.

Mithridate makynge his lodgynge place,
Under that hyl whan it dwele to nyght,
The troubled heauē wh thūdynge gā manace,
The fiery leuen darked hath his sight,
The cloudy Moone eclipsed of her lyght,
Assonyed hym by vnware violence,
That he shode confuse of all prouidence.

He was by tempest and vnware darkenes
Almost made weary of his woful life,
Yet I finde of very vnkindnes,
Hippietata which that was his wyfe,
Noth for warre nor no mortall strife,
Left hym neuer disguised of visage,
Folowed him ataped as a page.

Yet in his most mortall heauines,
Whā cloudy fortune gan him most manace

Of his couraige the naturall quicknes,
Appalled not nor remeued from his place,
So hye prowesse dyd his heart embrace,
Not dispeyred for no sodayn fall.
Of condicion he was so marciatall.

In token wherof he stondynge at mischiese,
chaunged nothet chere nor countenaunce.
An euidence and a full great preef,
Of manly force and heartly assuraunce,
Desying fortune with al her variaunce,
Whan that he sonde to his destruction,
Of dispayre greatest occasion.

With him he had a bayliffe as I fynde,
Called Castor which of condicion,
was to his Lorde false and eke vnkynde,
And conspired again him false treason,
In token wherof vp to Rome towne,
his Lordes chldren pong and tender of age
Like a false thefe he sent them in hollage.

One of his sonnes he murthered by treason,
which Mithridate toke ful soze at hert,
Another sonne as made is mencion,
False to his father which whā he did aduert
The vnkynndnes made hym soze smerte,
for of all vices moxtly to conclud,
Most of al is ingratitude.

This same childe of whom I make mynde,
called Pharnaces which ageyn nature,
To his father traytour and vnkynde,
And his purpose agein hym to recure,
In all hast dyd his busy cure,
For to accomplish his purpose in partte,
Drough to him whole his fathers chualtre.

By sleight & mede whā he was made strōg,
He besieged his father round about
Unto nature me semeth he did wong,
to put his father in so great a doubt,
Kynndnes was farre Met without,
Whan the sonne with hate set a fyre,
Ageyn his father list falsly to conspyre.

With multitude his father was cōstreyned,
Mauger his might into a towre to fle,
His sonne vnkynde hath at hym dysdeyned
And yet for all his straunge aduersitie,

Of hys contrage the magnanimitie,
In his person stode whole, list not varye,
Though fortune was to hym contrarie.

True armonye, celestiall sweetenes,
counterpeyle in your remembraunce,
Wooldly chaunges fortunes variaunce,

Yet mine autour Bochas beareth recozde,
That Mithridate yf it would haue be,
requyred his sonne to be at accorde,
And set asyde all olde contrariouste,
But he unkynde indurate was parde,
Euer froward malicious of courage,
So disposed from his tender age.

Aduertise the mortall fell outrages,
Of bloody warres impossible to repressse,
Whyle false enuie with his furious rages
In sondry realmes hath so great intreffe,
Slaughter, murther, diuision fallenes,
which conscience haue brought to vttrauce
through soden chage of wooldly variaunce.

So that the kyng Mithridate (alas)
was ouercome by unkindnes;
That neuer afoze in no maner caas,
Stode dismated but of hys prowesse,
kept ay one face all passions to repressse,
This vertue force by martial doctrine,
for none aduersitie suffered hym decline.

Recken by princes that sat hys on stages,
What was the fine of theyr to all noblesse
Of tirantes reckon by the bloody wages
sodein slaughter guerdoned their woodnes
Mithridate can beare hereof witnes,
by bloud unkynde brought vnto vttraunce,
through sodein chage of wooldly variaunce.

Ende of his warres and his mortall strues
Of his debates and his discencions,
his concubines, his daughters, & his wotues
By meane onely of certain potions,
nough them all by drynking of popsons
for he not would the cause to deserue,
After his death they should byde on lyue.

Princes remember vpon the golden ages,
whā Saturne ruled þ world in rightwines
Next Jupiter for peoples auantages,
The silueren world conserued in clemnes,
Which Mars hath now turned to felnes,
made it steelen with swoord, dagger, & launce
through sodein chage of wooldly variaunce.

His owne death of mortall fel rigour,
compassed afoze thus he gan deuyse,
made a frenche knight þ was a souldiour,
With a harpe swoorde in full cruell wyse,
to ren hym through whereby the fraunchyse
Conserued was his purpose to fulfill,
He would not dye but by his owne wyll.

Of Mithridate regesser the viages,
conspired popsons taffray his hie prowesse
On londe and sea tempestuous passages,
By constraint bode seuen yere in wildernes
Of his wandryng peyse thunsyrenes,
His ende in mischief knew none auoidaunce
gein wooldly chage noz fortunes variaunce.

Loe here the ende of king Mithridate,
Late princes al of his death take hede.
How rechelesly he passed into fate,
And by assent made his heart blede,
And Bochas here who lyst his boke to rede,
playnly rehearsyng but in wordes fewe,
To wooldly princes doth his conceit shewe.

If negligence haue brought you in terages
toward god oꝝ he reckon in streightnes,
let reason medle for you to ley hostages,
compassion, mercy, parting of almes,
Toward heauen to support your feblenes,
whan your merites shall peyse in balaunce
of wooldly chaunges & fortunes variaunce.

¶ Lenuoye.

Mightie princes list by your courages,
toward heauen do your heartes dyesse
Of your memoꝝe turne by the viages,
where loy is euer, peace, concoꝝd & gladnes

With spareth nother hie bloud noz hie lina-
haue mynd hereon for any rechelesnes (ges
Transitoꝝe be here your pilgrimages,
set w bzigauntes vnwarly you to oppresse
But if prudence by great aunsenes,
With prouidence prelerue your puissaunce,
Scyn

The sixth

Geyn worldly chaunge & fortunes variace. And Diodes called was that other.

How Eucratides kyng of the Bactrians was slayne by Demetrius, kyng of the Indians, and after his careyn was cast to houldes.

The .v. Chapter.

Next in order to Bochas dyd appere,
A wolfull pryncce that put hymselfe
in pees,
reynynge in Bactris his Rooye doth vs lere
The name of whom was Eucratides,
But to disturbe his quiet and his pees,
agayn hym plainly as I finde,
came Demetrius þe myghtie kyng of Inde.

Of whom the power and the violence,
To Eucratides was very importable,
besieged first and for lacke of defence,
Take at mischief his sone not mercciabie,
for Demetrius was on hym so vengeable,
whan he was slaine within his own boundes,
made the careyn to be cast out to houndes.

Notwithstanding he was a worthy kyng,
bozne of hys bloud such was his auenture,
Demetrius aboue al earthly thyng,
Hated hym by recozde of scripture,
of rancour denied his sepulture,
And for the matter is hatefull and contrary
On his Rooye I wyll no lenger tarpe.

How Diodes kyng of Parthia warred
with the Romans, whiche after his
sonne & heire was slaine: made his
bastard sonne kyng. that anone
after slough his father.

The .vi. Chapter.

Artabanus whilom of
Parthia kyng,
I purpose my stile to transpoyte,
a ful old pryncce had in his luyng.
Sonnes twayne, boke so reporte,
which in his age did him most comfort,
Mithridate was the eldest brother.

Mithridate by reason of his age,
his father dead dyd after hym succede,
which banished was for tyranny & outrage,
Afterward for mischief and for nede,
Into Babylon he toke his flight for dyede,
The people anone after his parting.
Of indignation made his brother kyng.

Thus came Diodes to estate royall,
Pursued his brother into Babylon,
layde a siege round about the wall,
They to hym yelded by the towne.
Thus was his brother brought to confusie
Afore the castell without lenger date,
made smite of the head of Mithridate.

In Parthos after he toke possession,
Thus pong Diodes of volunte and pryde,
Gan a warre ageine them of Rome towne,
to hom to withstand thei list not long abyde,
the consul Crassus came down on their side,
cōmaunded was wozt processe for to make
toward Parthia his biage for to take.

Crassus list not tenter in that realme,
left Parthia the Rooye doth deuise,
Toke his waye toward Jerusalem,
To take there a solemne empyre,
In the temple onely of couetise,
toke there agein the title of rightwisenesse
Up al theyr treasour & their great richesse,

By which he gat in diuerse regions,
Great multitude to hold by his partie,
Led with hym eleuen Legions,
toward Parthia fast gan hym hys,
by his letters prouly gan desye,
the sayde Diodes and with great apparail
Whid his countrey profred hym battayle.

The next morow whā Crassus toke þe field,
to him was brought of black a coat armure,
Which whan his knyghtes aunsely behelde,
dempt it a token of discomfiture,
for in contrary Romans do they cure,
whan they capteyn whal feight of the head,
His coats armure is other white of read.

A nother token froward to behold,
the first Eagle bere in his banere,
All so sone as men did it vnfold,
contrariouſly he turned loke and chere,
the back to Crassus folke sawe þe sode nete
A pronostike to Romaines ful certeine,
How fortune to them was that day agem.

By the flood passing of Euphrates. (chone
with vnware tēpestes his stādarde euer
Into the riuer were cast among the ptees,
To taken them al, vpright sode not one.
Wherof astonied they would no ferther goe
These pronostikes made them so afrated
Like men in heart dispaired and dismayed.

Of these tokens Crassus was recheles,
The pronostikes also he did dispise,
Toke vpon hym to passe Euphrates,
To entre Parthia only for couetise.
To whom Diodes sendeth in this wise,
That his coming was more for pillage,
Than for knighthode, manhode or corage.

All the power of Parthia tho came down,
with many prefect and much great collage,
Agem Crassus and them of Rome toun,
which as I told abode on their pillage,
That turned after to their great damage,
The sonne of Crassus slaine in that fray,
His father take and al vpon a day.

His head smit of in whom was no diffence
and disconfited with many legion,
The head of Crassus brought to þe ptesce,
Of Diodes within hys royal toun,
which hath commaunded gold to be brought
To be molde there as he lay dead, (down
And to powre therof ful his head.

This thing was done for a mocker ye,
In signe only the story doth deuise,
that gold nor treasure vpon no partye
Staunch might his thyrt of couetise.
Such greedynesse ech man should dispise,
for Auarice of custome in ech place,
Of his prowesse doth the pryce deface.

Diodes after did search al the wardes,
Through al the field vpon Crassus side,

Toke þe penouns, banerdes, and stāderdes
and in hys temples, large, long, and wide,
Let hang them by of surquedye and pryde,
In signe only and eke for a memoie,
He of Romaines hath great the victorie.

With which he list not only be content,
wening hys fortune should abide stable,
Into Siria he hath hys sonne sent
Called Pacorus, made him a constable,
of that region with hym to be partable,
of al treasours and mouables that he fond,
where euer he rode throughout al the lond.

Thys Pacorus by hys chualrie
Encrease gan in hys tender age,
wherof Diodes hys father had enuye
feareful it should tourne to hys damage,
Lest he would by title of heritage
Augre him at hys agem coming,
Take vpon him of Parthia to be king.

Then Pacorus was called home agem
And of Siria where in conclusion
All that he had wrought was in vein
Because one Cassius fro Rome was come
slough al the people in þe region, (down
which appertained to Pacorus as I find,
without captein for they were left behind.

To withstand this Romaine Cassius
Diodes hath his sonne sent agem,
which anone after the story telleth thus
Ampe the field unhappily was slaine.
To trust fortune it is a thing but vaine,
Which of custome to day is fauourable,
And to morowe gettishly chaungeable.

Of Pacorus death whan the noyse arose,
and the discussing of hys chualrie,
And to Diodes abiding in Parthois,
Tiding was brought feard as he would die,
Of hertly sorowe fyl into frensy,
Here was none left of the royal lynes,
saue threty basterdes bozne of concubines.

Thus Diodes was cast in great sickenelle
His sonnes death was to him importable,
his worldly ioye was gone & hys gladnesse,
fortune contrarie which neuer can be stable

The sixth

Age fel on, hys life was not durable,
And of one thing most he dyd him drede,
cause he had none heire to succede.

which would not suffice him live in pees,
til at the last he caught a fantasie
Chase a bastard called Phraates,
Because he was famous in chivalrye,
Gave him the crowne and the regalye,
which anon after briefly to conclude,
Slough Dodes of ingratitude.

Howe one Catus Fimbria a Consull of
Rome Slough hym selfe.

The. vii. Chapter.

After to Bochas by procelle of y booke
four mighy princes
notable of estate,

Towarde him they cast there and looke,
Like unto folke that were infortunate,
with whom fortune had been at debate.
for by their maner as it sempt wele,
they were at mischiesse for her wele.

first Fimbria a Romain Consuler.
Sent by the Romaines to a great Cite,
Called Richomede came as a messenger
To help flaccus and entering that cuntrye,
found flaccus slaine by great aduersite
After whose death his party to auance,
of flaccus meine he toke the gouernaunce.

Of presumption without auctoryte,
Thys Fimbria by diligent labour,
ful farre aboue his state and hys degre,
Toke vpon him by fortunes false fauoure,
to be called Captein and Emperoure
Through al that countrey boke specific,
of whose presumption Sylla had enuye.

Pursued hym through many great Cite,
to a Castel made him take his flight,
where Fimbria of great necessite,
Constrained was maugre al his might
Dispayred for sake of euery wight
to lea him self the story telleth thus,
within the temple of Esculapius.

Of Albinus a Consuler of Rome
that was slayne with stones.

The. viii. Chapter.

Another Consul stode in caas semblable
In his time called Albinus,
whose hateful pride
was abhominable,
To al folkes lothsum and odious,
which like a rebell woode and furious
Agein Romaines oftner than ones,
whan he lest wend slaine was with stones.

Howe Fabius Adrianus falsly usurped
to be king of Affrike who with all
his whole famely was byent in
his owne house.

The. ix. Chapter.

Next came Adrianus which
to estate full hys
Rose in his time (and that ful
lovely)

first in Rome bozne but of lowe degre
toke vpon him to gouerne the countre
Of Affrike through hys great auctoryte,
and by hys flye, subtel, and false working,
Mauger Romaines ther to be crowned king

whom to support shortly to conclude,
was a great nymbze of the comonte,
Of churles gadzed a confuse multitude,
tittle was none nor ground but volunte,
Gentlemen than being in that countre,
al of assent and one opynion,
Assembled them to hys distruction.

At Utica a large great Cite,
Him and his churles beset round aboute,
of woode and fagot with large quantite
In cumpas wise closed him without,
gadzed with him of vileins a great rout.
Laide on fire that with flames read,
Eche one consumed into ashes dead.

Howe

How Sothimus king of Thrace that
much coueted, forwente all and dyed
in pouerte.

The .x. Chapter.

When to Adrian came Sothimus,
tofoze Bochas id tere spēt his face
As the story rehearseth vnto vs,
In his time he was king of Thrace,
fall sodeinly from fortunes grace,
Cast down lowe from his estate royall,
which came to Bochas to complein his fall
whose purpose was if it would haue be,
Seuen Realmes to haue conquered id his
that wer subject to Rome the cite (hond
And al seuen wer of Grekes lond,
who al coueteth ye shal vnderstand,
he al forgoeth ful wel assyme I dare,
At vnset houre, wherof eche man beware.

Log o: his conquest was brought to a prief,
from her whele fortune cast him down,
the pretor Sētius brought him to mischief
Dyed in pouerte as made is mencion,
And Bochas here maketh a digression,
Compendiously within a litle space,
To descriue the region of Thrace.

Here Bochas in partye maketh a
description of the kingdome of
Thrace, and passeth ouer
lyghtly vnto the ac-
complishment of
hys booke.

Thrace whilom a cūtre of gret fame,
And conteyneth a ful large space,
And of Tyas it toke first the name.
Sonne of Iaphet, & so was called Thrace
which many a daye dwelled in that place,
toward Septemtrion plenteous of good,
Belyde Danubie the large famous flood.

Southward Thrace renneth the sea Egee
Macedoyne standeth in the Occident,
And the kingdom called Bzeponthidee,
Stant in Thrace toward the Orient,
where great plentie of blud was shed & spēt

whan Sētius through his hye prowesse,
Kynge Sothimus there manly did oppresse

Hebus in Thrace is the chief Riuer,
As mine auctour maketh mencion,
I cast not to tary in this mattere;
to make of Thrace a description,
But to procede in my translation, (cessē
folow mine auto: whiche writeth a lōg pro:
Of great Pompey and of hys worthinesse

How after many great conquestes of
great Pompey great warre began betwene
him & Julius Cesar, & howe thre hundred
thousand wer slayne: And at y last Pompey
was disconfited and his head smitten of.

The .xi. Chapter.

Hys Pompeyus of whom the
name is couth,
Wyle and woorthy, and famous
of prowesse,
toke vpon him in his tender youth,
After his fader by fortunate duresse,
Called Pompey the story beareth witnes,
Distressed was by sodeyn death coming,
y story saith through thādnyng & lightning.

His hoost destroyed by the violence
Of vnware tempest, like as seyth the booke
fourty thousand slayn in that pessilence,
for feare the remnant y field anon forsoke.
Tyl yong Pompey of courage on him toke
In his beginning proudly to procede,
ful like a knight his fathers hoost to lede.

Rome that time by theire dissencions
Among themself nye brought to ruine,
By the froward false diuisions,
twene Marius & Sylla byzely to termine,
tyll that a newe sunne gan to shine,
Of woorthines which had his light,
In manly Pompey y noble famous knight.

This said Pompey, this noble knightly mā
At his beginning through his chualrie,
the proud captein slough whan he began,
which of Marius held by the partye.
Called Brutus, which in Lumbardye,

The Arth

was by Pompey through knightly gouernace
with all his host brought vnto mischaunce

In his beginning Pompey eke also,
To set Romayns in rest and quiete,
One that was called Gneus Carbo,
he slough him knightly whan he did mete,
which in Sicile proudly held his sete.
And all the countreys about him enuiron,
Pompey made them subject to Rome town

After al this Pompeyus on the see,
with many a ship stuffed with vittayle,
toward Affrike made a great armye,
And there in haste after his arriuayle,
with Domitius had a great battayle,
brought þ cuntry through his hys renoun,
to be to Rome vnder subiection.

He pursued the great mighty king,
called Marbas to Marcus fauourable,
And had also his royall abyding,
In Numedy a countrey ful notable,
Ageyn Pompey his power was not able.
For at a castle as they met in fight,
he slough king Marbas ful like a maly kni-
(ght.

This in brief time holding his passage,
for common profite as made is mencion,
By his wisdom and knightly hys courage
Brought al Affrike to subiection,
whiche stode afoze in rebellion.
to the Romayns, but al theyr surdinesse,
The sayd Pompey did in hast redresse,

The greatest enemy ageyn Rome town,
thiske dayes was one Sertorius,
and of fortune which is now vp now down
On Pompey once was victorious,
But after sone of him it happened thus,
Among his meyny falling at debate,
He slayne was in his most hys estate.

After the death of this Sertorius,
Came Perpenna Pompey for tallayle,
And as they met anon Pompeyus,
Full like a knight slough him in battayle,
which victory greatly did auayle,
to the Romayns after by gouernance,
He brought Spayn to theyr obeysaunce.

By autoritie poue by the Senate,
This noble Pompey for bayle of the cite,
Upon the sea would suffer no Pirate,
where euer he came fro him they did flee,
For with his shippes he scoured so the see,
And bare him there so manly with his hond
that mangre the he brought the to the lond.

All these pirates and these false robbours,
Fgadzed out were of the region,
called Cilice, which like to cauencours,
Habe ageyn Rome a conspiracion,
Robbed, spoyled, seyling vp and down,
Romayn marchantes & people of ech cite,
that none was hardy to passe by the see.

After Pompey hath made the sea to obey,
that pirate none durst theron abyde,
He by the Senate was sent out to warrey,
toward the Orient, his knightes by his spoe
And wher soeuer that he did ryde,
Whine outour wite by influence of heauen,
His conquest was swift as fyre or leuene.

And to encrease of his eternal glozpe,
Perpetually to geat him a name,
His laude and renoun to put in memory,
he builded a cite in Asia of great fame,
called Archopolis, Bochus sayth the same,
Twene two floodes that one Trazes,
and that other was called Euphrates.

He buylded this cite onely of entent,
that Romayn knightes that wer fal in age,
And such as wer in the wettes spent,
Sicke, wounded, in pouertie or in rage,
Should of custome haue their harbergage
In that Cite alway and not faple,
Bedding, clothes, spending and vittayle.

Pompey after rode into Armeny,
Rebel to Rome where Tigranes was king
faught w him there, & through his chualry
Disconfited him there was none abyding,
where Tigranes himself submitting,
Vnto Pompey with euerly circumstance,
Euer to abide vnder his obeysaunce.

Than in al hast Pompey gan him hys,
To ride in hast, where like a manly knight,
He gate the kingdome called Albany,

which toke hys name who so loke aright,
of whatnesse for euery manere wight
That there is bozne by recoorde of writing,
white as snowe hath his heere shining.

There been houndes meruelous of nature
for tallayle Bulles and Lions,
No wild beaste again them may endure.
So Pompey by many regions
Rode through Armeny with his champions
where growe herbes that may neuer seinte
what euer colour men list with them peinte

Conquered realmes about in euery coast,
of Hiberie he gate the region.
And Attaces the king with al hys hoost,
Disconfited as made is mencion,
with hys power to Sirie he came down.
Than to Phenice a kingdom of great fame
which of Phenix whilome toke his name,

Brought al these countreies to subietion,
Of Sidon the mighty strong Citee,
Of Iurie he toke possession,
Through Arabye he came down to Iudee,
which of Jewes was somtyme the countree,
Of Libanus he passed the mounteyne,
where Cedres growe as auctours seyn.

Sent tofoze him entring in that realme,
One Gabinus a mighty strong counstable,
Reigning that tyme in Ierusalem,
Aristobolus a prince ful notable.
And for þe temple was strong & not pregnable
Layd a siege aboute in breaðe and length,
space of thre monethes gate it so by strength

(founde
Thre thousand Jewes vnder þe wall were
Dead at the assaute which made resistance,
The wal after beaten down to ground,
Pompey after by surdy violence
Is entred in without reuerence,
Sancta Sanctorum men that place call,
Made Hircanus hys priest of all.

The great Bishop Aristobolus,
Sent to Rome in mighty chernes bound,
toward Septemtrion I find written thus,
gate seuē Kingdoms & Cities walled round
Rebeldes to Rome he did them confound,

with mighty sword gate al the countre,
fro Caucalus down to the read see.

In hys conquest it sempt verely
As the goddes had done they cure,
And that fortune was with them eke busy
Thys mighty Pompey prince to assure
what euer him list by conquest to recure,
In Spayne he gate whā they were rebels,
Thre hundred Cities & sixty strong castles

Hard to remēbre his conquestes etuerichone
Al the prowesses of thys knightly man,
toward the party of Septemtrion,
I thousand Castels I find that he wan,
Syre hundred moe fro tyme that he begat;
Eight and thirty Cities out of doute,
with mighty walles closed round aboute.

Deyle hys dedes, hys conquestes martiall,
Thyse Consull chose for hys enerees,
Rede ye shal find howe he was egall,
To Alexander or to Hercules.
where that euer he put him self in pres,
All came to hand concluding ye may se,
To comon profite of Rome the Cite.

Hys martial dedes to put in remembraunce
One was chose to doe hys diligence.
to enacte hys conquest in substaunce,
And hys knighthode of singuler excellēce,
and Theophanes famous of eloquence,
Assigned was vnto that labour,
toke hys guerdon of their comon treasour.

Pompey of Rome was chief gouernour,
Cesar absent in Gaul a farre countre,
which tyme Pompeie rode in great fauour
Both of fortune and Rome the Cite,
Somwhat made blind of hys prosperite,
But poshing in his climbing not stable,
He would haue none þe were to him seblable

Vnto purpose was said ful yore agone,
Howe that loue, nother hys lordshyp,
þat hath ben made in many moe thā one
Nother of them would haue no felowshyp,
Eche by his owne would hys party kepe,
In these two cases brother vnto brother,
sleth at a point eche wil put out other.

The sixth

To Pompeie resorting nowe ageyn,
He toke on him al the gouernade,
Of the Romayns as ye haue heard me seint
Both of estates comons and poeple.
And for hys parte al that might auale,
In making lawes, statute or decree,
Al by engrossed by hys auctoritee.

Folke thys while which that had entye,
Toward Cesar in hys long absence,
Let make a lawe by conspiracie,
and a statute concluding in sentence,
Without exception fauour or reuerence,
No man should by wyl of the Senate,
In hys absence be chose to none estate.

No: be admitted by no procuratoure,
To haue auctoritie of dignitie nor offyce
In court of tribune nor of senatour,
To be promoted thys was their aduise,
were he neuer so manly nor so wise,
Thys lawe ordeined by folke enuies,
For hindring only of Cesar Julius.

whā Julius knewe al their false warking
fro Gaule sent vp to the Cite,
al the Senate requyring by witting,
to graunt him by their auctoritie,
Of triumph the notable dignitie,
to haue also thoffyce and estate,
Called in Rome the second Consulate.

For hym alledging many great victorie,
in diuers countries done for the Cite,
Many conquest notable of membyre,
wrought by hys knighthode for which of e.
Requiring t hē guerdoned for to be (quite
But contrarie vnto his entente,
Denied him all by one assente.

whith was chiefe ground, roote & becaus,
that brought in first the controuersie,
Cruile discordes, frowerd diuision,
whan enery man drough to hys partie,
Of olde hatred to kinde newe enuie,
Causing princes, Julius, and Pompeie,
to their confusion eche other to warrey,

The triumph denied to Cesar,
fraude of Pompeie made him therof faine,

Of whose deccite Julius was ware,
Made hym redy with many strong batayle
Passed ouer the Alpes of Itale,
fully in purpose playnly if he might,
with the Romayns & Pompey for to fight.

(twelme)

Thus gan þ warres atwene these princes
Pompeie chose for partye of the coun,
to be their duke and captein souerein,
Ageyne Cesar as made is mencion.
And thus (alas) the desolacion,
Sued of the Cite by many straunge signe,
with vncouth tokē's whā they gan maligne

At the ginning of these wofull warres,
In the heauen were sene dyedful sightes,
sparkling bōdes, cometes, vncouth starres
with flame of fire many feareful lightes,
Like lampes byenning al the long nightes
Casting of spere's, dartes in the ayre,
wherby Romains fel in great dyspayre.

from the party of Septemtrion,
toward Rome came ful great lightening,
It noone sene sters, like blood & sūne shone
The mone eclipsed terrible in shewing,
the mounte Ethna feareful byenning.
From hys cauerne cast vp flames read,
toward Itayle which set thē in right great
dread

But of Charibdis a danger of the see
waues terrible boyled by lyke blood,
From the rockes that in Sciclie be,
was herd howling of howdes & wer woode,
Vesta & goddesse in Rome where she stode,
Whd her temple was al with teres sprent,
whan & heuēly fires were afoze her queint,

Afoze the goddesse at the autler principal,
was fire perpetual byenning day and night
Til warres Cruil hateful and terrible,
San amōg Romayns in & cōtagious sight,
thā of vengeaūce anon was queint & light,
Tofoze Vesta the fire parting on twelme,
of diuision a token full certeyne.

Earth quakes soden and terrible,
ouertourned castels bp so down,
with rage floudes hideous and horrible,
Neptunus dpyd great destruction,
Drowned

Drownded villages and many a mansion,
Beuerfed in temples of gold al their vessels
threwe down baners, standerdes, and p̄fels

Seine these signes was found none arest,
The vnware mischief coude no mā decline
Lions, wolues, came down fro the forest
with many other beastes sauagine,
Wild beastes and Serpentes of rauine,
Came to the Cite and some ageine kinde
Spake as doe men, in Bochas thus I find

Diuers foules which of their nature,
haue in custome to fle but a night,
Knew these warres dyd him self assure,
cū at mid day whā Phēbus is most bright
Though their Cite for to take her flight,
women with child the floy list not feine,
Brought forth some that had heads twene

Of these warres that called were Ciuil
Senatours being in Rome town,
came to the woman that called was Sibyl,
Unto her made this question,
To declare by short conclusion,
Among their other questions all,
Of their Cite what fortune should befall.

To whom she gaue an answer ful obscure
wherupon she made them soze muse,
Toke the sixe letters set in plain scripture
which in no wise they might not refuse,
for false rightes that they did vse,
Like the thre letters twies set in noumbre,
who vnderstandeth they shal þ toun encōbre

The R R R first she set on a rowe,
and the f f f in ordre fast by,
Long time after oz they coul d knowe,
The exposition therof openly,
in their deuinours gan serch subtilly,
To find out like to their entent,
by the sixe letters what Sibyl ment.

Of this word Regnum the first letter is R.
So is the capital of Rome the Cite,
who loke aright the third is not far,
This word Ruer ginneth with R parde
Of which wordes whan they toped be,
The sentence concludeth in meaning
Of their Cite the ruinous falling.

Touching the f f f who can aduertise,
of this worde Ferro, f goth toforne,
And the chief letter of Fames to deuise,
Is f also the processe wel forth borne,
þ same of Flamma by which þ toun was lozne
Of which reasons make a coniunction,
causing of Rome final destruction.

fire, sword, and hūger caused by þ warres
Desire of climbing toward ambition,
Shewing of cometes & of vncouth sterres
with pronostikes of their descention,
pursit of al wilful deuision,
Among them self by vnware violence,
of letters sixe accomplishid the sentence.

The sword of Cesar warres of Pompeye
twene these twene lasting a great while
Made many Romaine and Italien to dye,
By the batayles that called were Ciuile,
with prophecies remembred of Sibyl,
Is the writing ful wel rehearce can,
of the olde Poete that called was Lucan.

In Martes temple on height where he stode
and Bellona the goddesse despiteous,
The prestes cried and offred by their blode
with lamentacion like folkes furious,
Cause of tokens fell and contrarious,
which that were shewed in that sentuarpe,
Howe their gods to Romans wer contrary

Among dead bones that lay in their graues
were boyces herd like woode mē in their caues,
Crye of goostes in cauerne & haues, (ges
Heard in felde, pathes and passages,
Labozers fled home to their villages
Serpentes, Adders scaled slauer bright,
were ouer Rome seyne flying al the night,

Another token piteous for to heare,
which alonted many proude Romaine;
Dead bodys dyd in the field appeare,
which in batayle had afore be slayne,
fro their tombes arisyng where they layn
which in the warres woful and dispiteous
were slaine by Sylla and proude Marius

It was eke tolde by their deuinours,
Howe

The sixth

Howe Pompeius was like to haue a fall,
And howe the state of Romain Emperours,
With their triumphes that be Imperial
At Julius first there beginne shall,
and after him the state shal forth procede,
By election of lineal kinrede.

To withstand the power of Cesar,
which towarde Rome to be his way right,
Pompey was sent, wise, maye, & right ware
But whan he heard tel of the might
Of Julius, he toke hym to the flight.
Eke al the senatours with him did fle,
Toward Egypte in Grece a strong countre.

Pompey was olde, famous in chualtre,
Cesar but yong, hardy for to assaile,
Upon the plaines of Grece and Thessalye,
Pompey and he had a great battaile,
gein Julius sword no Romain might auail
Constrained of force the field to forsake,
Toward Egypt they haue the way take.

Pompey throught Egypte came to Ptholome,
By a great water at Paphos did arriue.
On the strand there he did se,
A stately place and by he went blide,
The name of which plainly to discerne
Cacobasile the countre dyd it call,
Of which name the fortune is thus tal.

The name tokeneth of froward arruaile,
fowing in Greke vnhappye auenture,
By which the trust of Pompey did fayle,
fel in dyspayre might it not recure,
forloke that he dyd hys busye cure,
To take a ship so by the sea sayling,
Toward Egypt where Ptholome was king.

Of trust he fled to this Ptholome,
In hope he should find in him succoure.
fayre there shewed vnder duplicite,
failed at the point gaue hym faynt fauoure,
Albe Pompey by hys frendly laboure,
Crowned him king in Egypt as he fynde,
To whom again he was false and vnkind.

To mete Pompey he lete stuf a barge,
By a maner pretence of frendshede,
Gaue his meyny that were there in charge,
to murdre Pompey behight the a gret mede,

Twelue there were that bare to him hatred
and in the vessel with harpe swordes whet
O he was ware of hys head they smet.

That one of them was called Achilles,
and his felowe named was Phorine,
Toke by the head of that prince alas,
famous in knightshod borne of gentyl line
Among Romaines as auctours determine,
Hold in hys time if men doe him right,
throught al the world one the best knight.

(same
Thus earthly princes to al their pompos
which throught al the world yeureth so gret a loss
Of slaughter & murdre they toke first their
By false raine and extorcion (name
Clambe by first so to domination,
Brenning of countreys conquest by violēce
Set them in chayres of worldly excellence

In this batayle that called was ciuile,
Hold at weene Pompey and Cesar Julius,
thre hundred thousand slaine within a while
Thre thousand take the stozpe telleth thus,
without princes notable and glotious,
As Kinges Pretours reked al at ones,
Tribunes, Consulles, and Centuriones.

(spede
Phebus on the soke night not his beames
nor on the ground shewe out his clere light
When that were slayne lay so thich on byde
that of the earth no man had a sight,
wulues, beares, ravenous foules of flight;
Came great plēts to fede the there eche day
Beside the ruer of Peneus where they lay

Gobbettes of fleshe which foules did arace,
fro dead bodies borne by into the aye,
fel fro their clees vpon Julius face,
Amid the field where he had his repayre.
Made hys visage bloudy and not fayre,
albe that he to his encrease of gloire.
Had thilke day of Romayus the victorie.

(ring
The head of Pompey brought to his stately
offred by to Julius hys presence
He by compassion the murdre aduertisinge,
of hys pynate imperial excellence,
Blast out to wepe and in hys aduertence,
thought gret pite a prince of so gret might,
Should

Should so be slayn & was so good a knight Possession take no force of wrong nor right

The corps abode without sepulture,
till one Codrus of compassion,
after the battayle and discomfiture,
beihought him of great affection,
to hyde the trunke lowe in the sondes down
Sought timber & there he sonde but small,
to doe exequies with fynes funeral.

Such deuision made many man to deye,
Brought the cite to desolacion,
with these two princes fortune list to pleye
till from her whele she cast them both down
Subtil disceit fraude and collusion,
by adicious climbing bleint their both light
Possession take no force of wrong nor right

Now sith this prince came to such mischiet,
Murdered and slayn by Ptholome the king
here of her power fortune hath made a priet,
what trust there is in any worldly thing,
after his death wanted he not burping:
This proud Pompey so famous of his hdd
Of sith deuoured as he lay on quithe sond.

Noble princes, remembze what I seye,
Peyse this story within in your reason,
Of false surmounting auarice beareth & key
Record of Cesar & Pompey of Rome towne
whose wilful warres, hateful discepcion,
yeueth clere warning to you & euery wight
No clayme is woorth without title of right.

What shal men set by power or noblesse,
Of flyding goodes or any worldly gloze,
which to resteyne may be no sicker nesse:
fortune and the world is transitory,
Though Wars to day yue a man victorie,
Partake to morowe vniuately he shal dye,
I take record of Cesar and Pompey.

How victoriotus Julius Cesar bent the
vessels of Ptholome, slough Achilles that
would haue murdered him: & after great vic-
tories he himself was murdered w bodkins
by Brutus Cassius and others.

The .xii. Chapter.

Sith al stant vnder danger of fortune,
Ye worldly men doe your looke by dresse,
to thilke place where soye doth ay contune,
the blind lady hath there none intresse,
Set pryde asyde take ye to mekenesse,
to sue vertue do truly your labour, (your
Geyn worldly pōpe make Pompey your mir-

After the woful compleynt lamentable,
Of Pompeys death pitteous for
to heare,

werres remēbred with treasons importable
Compasled fraudes farced with sayre chere
Conspired murder rehearsed the manere,
How king Ptholome fraudulent of corage
The death conspired of Pompey fall in age

Exenuepe.

This tragedy of the great Pompey,
Declareth in glose the chief occasion,
why he and Cesar gan fyrt to werrey,
Eche age in other thzough bayn ambition,
To haue lordship and dominacion
ouer & Romaine by fauour, fraude or might
Possession take no force of wrong nor right

The processe told I hold it wer but veyn,
therof to wyte a new tragedye,
Thing once sayd it to rehearce ageyn,
It wer but ydle as for that partie,
But how Cesar went out of The Mallie,
came to Alexandry to lodge him in & place,
I wil remembze with support of your grace

To trouthes party pryde is loth to obeye,
Extort power doth great destruction,
Wyse pollicie all out of the weye,
Prudent counsel, age with discrecion,
Lost their libertie of free election, (ght
who was most strong w him held euery wt-

He lodged was in the palace royal,
where he was busy did diligent labour,
thzough that region in temples ouer all,
to spoyle goddes and haue al their treasoure
where he was mocked sond there no fauour
for Achilles which that slew Pompey,
Cast him with Cesar proudly to werrey.

The sixth

His purpose was to fall vpon Cesar,
As of nature was his condicion,
Falsly to murder men oꝝ they wet ware,
By some sleight to fynd occasion,
to destroy Iulius by treason.
And to accomplishe his purpose in partie,
Had twenty thousand in his company.

This Achilles false cruel detestable,
Cast him deceiue Cesar if he might,
Of the Egyptians leader and constable,
With the Romayns purposeth foꝝ to fight.
But when Cesar therof had a sight,
He is descended and fast by the see,
Went all the Flauey of king Ptholome.

All the vessels wer dyuen vnder with a stode
To great damage of sayd Ptholome,
Iulius bent them euen there they stode,
And a great part beside of the citee.
And there was byt which was ful gret pitie
the famous library in Egypt of the kyng,
Ful forty thousand volumes there lying.

In which this Bochas reherseth in sentēce
How Ptholome was greatly commendable
that through his besy royal pꝛouidence,
made himselſe a library so notable.
foꝝ to all clerkes in study that wer able.
Of seuen sciences the stoꝝ beareth mynd,
Like they: desyre might bookes find.

After this fire in Pharos the cuntrey,
the Egyptians had a great battayle,
where Cesar was of great necessitie,
that day conscreyned whan þ field ga sayle,
take a Barge fro Egypt foꝝ to sayle.
But so great pꝛeale folowed at his backe,
Almost the vessel was like to goe to wracke

Cesar armed with letters in his hond,
But his persone that day in auenture,
Two hundred pace he manly swam to lond
And cunningly to lond he doth recure,
Notwithstanding his heauy great armure,
But yet tofoze oꝝ Cesar toke the see,
He in the field had take Ptholome.

And Achilles the murderer of Pompey,
with all his felawes that wet of assent,

wer slayn that day there went none awap,
Many Egyptian thesame time bent,
Cesar of mercy foꝝ Ptholome hath sent,
to Alisaundry sent him home of newe,
charging he shuld to Romains surly be true

But whan he was deliuered fro pꝛieson,
Of Egyptians in Alisaundry the Cite,
From euery coast gadzed great fopson,
Agein Iulius came down with his meyne,
But yet foꝝ al his hasty crueltie,
Such resistance Cesar gan to make,
that .xx. thousand þ day were slayne & take,

Sixty Galleyes not farre fro the lond,
Twelue thousand mē coming to Ptholome
Echone wer yelded & brought to the hond,
Of Iulius his pꝛiesoners to be,
Than Ptholomeus besied him to fle,
to the water, where mauger al his might,
he drowned was in his great hasty flight.

He knowen was by his riche haburion,
Of gold and stele it was entermayled,
By Cesar sent into the royal towne,
which foꝝ defence was strongly embattailed
Buckles of gold richly enamayled:
which tokens anon as they haue seyn,
Dispepyed to Cesar sent ageyne.

Of the to Cesar was made feith & homage
The Realme of Egypt brought to subiectiō
till he of grace and merciful courage,
To Cleopatra gaue al that region,
Longing to her by succession,
By tyle of right that tyme and none other,
Because onely Ptholome was her brother.

King Lagos whilom in his testament,
Father to Cleopatra and to Ptholome,
tofoze his death by great auisement,
Clerely enacted his last volunte,
that his kingdom departed shoud be,
Halfe to Ptholome as his bequeth was,
that other halfe to quene Cleopatras.

She by her brother was holde in pꝛieson,
To kepe her wrongly from her heritage.
wherof Cesar had compassion,
Purposed him to resourme her damage,
And

And while that he held there his hostage,
Of equite, of lawe, and of reason,
Of al Egypt gaue her possession.

Then came Juba of Libye lord and king,
Sower of strifes and discencion,
Proude, ble of port, cruell in working,
Which in especial had indignacion,
Vnto the woorthy last Scipion,
Cause he was chose like as bokes seye,
To succede next Consul to Pompeye,

Thys Juba eke bare to him great hatrede,
Sought a quarel agein hym for a thing,
Cause that he was clad in purple rede,
For him aledging howe only that clothing,
No maner estate should be but a king.
Went for hym self sittina in roial throne,
he would as king that colour weare alone.

Here mine auctour maketh a digression,
Putting example of Almaine the cuntre,
Seith that there is none other nation,
Touching aray that is so disguisee,
In wast of cloth and superfluite,
Rehearsing here in ful pleyne language,
In many wise such wast doth gret damage

It causeth pride and ambition,
Agein the vertue of humilite,
To lecherpe it yeueth occasion,
Which is contrary vnto chastite,
Wast of aray set folke in pouerte,
Causeth also such costage spent in beyne,
Of other pooze to haue ful great disdeine.

Where superfluitie is bled of aray,
Not foloweth proud port and Idlenesse
With wast of time dyue forth the day,
Late drynking, watch, surfet, drunkenesse,
Engendreth feuers and many gret excelle,
Thus euery surfet englued is to other,
and one misrule byingeth in an other.

God suffreth welle there be a difference,
Touching aray as men been of degree,
hie estate that stand in excellence,
Must be preferred of reason men may see,
as cloth of golde, stones and perre,
Was for princes w other fresh clothinges,

But specially purple was for kinges.

Thus was there set of hie discreacion,
aray accordyng to princes hie noblesse,
And for other estates lower downe
Like theire degrees twene pouerte & richesse
An ordre kept from scarfite and excelle,
A meane prouided at wene hie and lowe,
Like to him self ech man may be knowe.

But king Juba insolent and mad,
of surquedye caught an opinion,
That none but he in purple should be clad.
Causyng debate twene him and Scipion,
Yet were they party both with Rome town
agein Cesar and drough toward Pompeye,
for which at mischief both they did deye.

whan Juba felt hym self of no powere,
Agein Cesar to hold chaumpartie,
for sozowe he lost countenance and chere
of hie disdaine and melancolpe,
Called one Petreus a knight of his alpe,
made them by assent & they were both fatne
felly to fight tyl one of them was flaine.

Agein nature was this straunge fight
Eche to sle other and knewe no cause why,
but for king Juba was an hardy knyght,
He slowe hys felowe and abode proudly,
and rather chafe to dye wilfully,
Of hie dispitte and of proude rage
Than vnder Cesar to lue in seruage.

Made cal a man whom he loued welle,
Gau vnto hym great gold & great guerdon
to take a sword forged of fine stele,
And make therof no lenger belacion,
But badde he should for most conclusioun,
Take vpo him and haue no feare nor dread
without taryng to snute of hys head.

Thus king Juba rather chafe to deye,
than lenger lue in subiection,
Vnder Cesar he loued so wel Pompeye.
Than next to Bochas as made is mention,
Came Aristobolus w face & loke cast down,
which was to Rome afoze as I haue tolde,
Sent by Pompeye to be kept in holde.
which

The sixth

Which after was deliuered from prison,
By help of Cesar in full hasty wise,
Standing in hope of hys region,
To be restored vnto the fraunchise,
where Pittcanus as ye haue heard the guide
Defarced was to his great hindering,
By Pompey of Jewes crowned king.

Which Aristobolus hopeth to recure,
cast meanes there to reigne agein,
wrought thereon, did hys busy cure,
Whose hasty labour was but spent in bey n
fel in the handes of a proude captaine,
which that whilom was lōging to Pompeie
And he id poysen vnwarely made him deye

How the last Scipio Consulter of Rome
for that he not list to lue in the seruage
of Julius Cesar rose him selfe to
the heart and so died. And of
the death of Julius
Cesar.

The .xiii. Chapter.

Next came the last worthy Scipion,
which after Pompeie
was made counsilere,
with whom Juba was at disencion
for wearing purple as it was told while ere
And afterward fel in ful great feare,
whan Cesar had within Libye land,
Outrated the both id strong & mighty hand

Wherby Scipion gan fal in dispaire,
lost hys chere as man disconsolate,
With the Romans gan make his repaire,
Damascippus, Pletorius and Torquate,
going to shyp the time infortunate,
Toward Spaine the tempest gan the dyue
that they in Africke vnwarely did arive.

Scipion seing this woeful case lodeyn,
howe he was brought vnwarely to mischief
for Sicius a mighty strong captaine,
Being a Pirate and of the sea a thief,
which is a name of ful great reppief,
The same Pirate longing to Cesar,
fel on Scipion or that he was ware.

Being in purpose to take him prisoner,
within his ship tofoze hys aruarle.
For which (alas) dul gan his chere,
His countenance appalle and eke sale,
to find comfort no man coude him coulsale,
pulled out a sword whā he might not aslaite
And roue hym self euen to the heart.

Thys was the ende of last Scipion.
Leuer he had at mischief so to deye,
Than vnder Cesar lye fetted in prison,
Or to his lordship in any wise obeye.
To Bochas next him came Pompeye,
Sonne and heire to great Pompeius,
Contrarie also to Cesar Julius.

Had brethren and sistren moe than one
and many an other of their alliaunce,
And of assent they cast them euerychone,
Their fathers death hauing in remēbraunce
Upon Cesar to take therof vengeaunce,
Eke vpon Ptholome which by collusion
Slough their father by full false treason.

The eldest brother called eke Pompeye,
being in Spayne with full great apparade
cast him of newe Cesar to warreye,
And hys people proudly to assaile.
And as I find there was a great bataile,
In which Pompeie the eldest sonne of the
by Julius men constrained was to fle.

He fond no succoure nor recett him to saue
of hys life he standing in great dread,
Knowing no refute fled into a caue,
Escape away knew no better red (head
where he was slaine to Cesar brought hys
Sent furth in scozne anone to Dispaile,
which in Spayne is a ful great Cite.

Thus by proesse al wholy the kinrede,
of Pompeius for mozt conclusion,
By Cesar were, and by hys men in dede,
without mercy brought to distruction.
Thus gan encrease þe fame and þe renoun,
Of Julius coquest on sea and eke on land,
whose mortal sword there might no mā w-
stande,

first in Libye, Spaine, and eke Itayle,
The experience of hys roial puiſſaunce,

In Germany by many strong battayle,
His power preued full oft times in fraunce
brought al these kygdoms vnder þe oberface
Of the Romans peised al this thing & sein
touching his guerdō his laboz was in bein.

With Bodkins pearcyng as an nall,
he murthred was with many mortal wound,
lo how false trust in worldly pompe is found.

Clenoure.

Toward Rome makynge his repayre,
By him appeyfed ciuil dissencions,
Of thronē imperiall climbyng on the steyre
for the conquest of thirtene regions,
Of the triumphe required the guerdons,
which to recure his force hath applyed,
Albe the Senat his request hath denyed.

Throug al this boke & rede ech tragedie,
Ifore rehearsed and put in remembraunce.
Is none more woeful to my fantasie,
than is the fall of Cesar in substance,
which in his hyst imperiall puissance,
was whan he wend haue be most glorious,
murthred at Rome of Brutus Cassius.

And his name more to magnifye,
To shew the gloze of his hys noblesse,
To the Capitoll fast he gan him hys,
As Emperoz he domes there to dresse,
that day began with ioye & great gladnesse
The eue nothing accordyng with the morow
the entring glad, the end trouble and sorow.

This martial prince ridyng throug Libardye
eche countrey yelded & brought to obedience,
Passing the Alpes rode throug Germany
To subiectiō brought the realme of fraunce
Gate Brutis Albion by long continuance
two Lustris passed this manly Julius,
Murthred at Rome by Brutus Cassius.

Calphurnia which that was his wyfe,
Had a dreame the same night before,
tokens shewed of the same funeral strife,
How that her lord was likely to be loyne,
By conspiracie compassed and swoyne,
If he that day without aduysment
In the Capitoll late in iudgement.

Among the Senate was the conspracye
All of assent and of one accordaunce,
Whose triumphe they proudey gan denye,
but mauger them was kept the obseruaunce,
His chare of gold, with sedes of pleasaunce
cōueied throug Rome this prince most pō-
þ murthred folowig by Brutus Cassius. (pus

She dreamed(alas)as she lay and slept,
that her lord throug girt w many a wound
Lay in her lap, and she the body kepte,
Of womanhode like as she was bounde,
But wo(alas) to soth her dreame was found,
The next morow no lenger made delay,
Of his parodye was the fatal daye.

Reckō his cōquest, reckon by his chivalrye,
with a counterpeyse of worldly variaunce,
Fortunes chaunges for his purpartie,
waye al together cast them in balaunce,
Set to of Cesar the mischreuable chaunce,
with his parodye Iodeyn and enuys,
Murthred at Rome by Brutus Cassius.

A poore man called Tongstius,
Which secretly the treason dyd espye,
Let wyte a letter toke it Julius,
The caas declaryng of theyr conspracie,
which to reade Cesar list not applye,
But wo(alas)ambitious negligence,
caused his murthre by vnware violence.

Bookes all and Chronicles specifye,
By influence of heauenly purueyaunce,
Mars and Jupiter theyr fauour dyd applye
with glad aspectes his noblesse to enhaunce
Mars gaue hi knighthode, Jupiter gouer-
amōg prynces hold one þe most famus (nāse
murthred at Rome by Brutus Cassius.

Cesar sitting midde the consistorye,
In his estate most imperial,
After many conquest and victoery,
fortune awayting to proue hym a fall,

Behold of Alexander the great monarchye
which al the world had vnder obeysaunce,
Howe wele of Hector medled with gentrie,
Of Achilles melancolike vengeance.

ff. i.

Reckon

The sixth

Reckon of echone þ quaueryng assurance,
Among remembryng the fine of Julius,
Murthred at Rome by Brutus Cassius.

Princes consider in marciall policie,
Is nother trust, fayth, nor assaunce,
al stand in charge with twinkling of an eye
Up toward heauen set your attendaunce,
the worlde vnure and worldy pleasaunce,
Lordship abyde not, recorde of Julius,
Murthred at Rome by Brutus Cassius.

How Octavian succeeded next after
Julius Cesar, & how the murderers
of Julius dyed at mischiese.

The .xviii. Chapter.

After the murthet of this manly
man,
This noble prince, this famous
Emperour,
His wort by newe called Octavian,
to reigne in Rome was next his successor
Which did his deuour by diligent labour,
To punish all tho of nature as he ought,
by rightfull dome that þ murthet wrought.

Chief conspiratour was Brutus Cassius,
which of this murthet made al þ ordinaunce
Another Brute surnamed Decius,
was one also conspiring the vengeaunce,
wrought on Cesar he after slain in fraunce.
Here men may se what costes þ men wend,
How murthet alway requirerh an euil end.

Within the space almost of thre yere,
Destroyed wer al the conspiratours,
By soden death and some stode in daunger,
to be banished or exiled as traytours.
And as it is Chronicled by autours
Space of thre yere reckoned one by one,
Died at mischies the murthetters euerichone.

To murthet a prince it is a piteous thyng,
God of his right wil take therof vengeaunce,
namely an Emperour so famous in ech thyng
which al the world had in gouernaunce,
Reckon his request digne of remembraunce,
All peyled in one Bochas beareth witness,

In hys estate is litle secrenes.

How Marcus Tullius Cicero was two
times exiled, & at þ last slain by one Popilius

The .xv. Chapter.

Mone autour here writteth no
longer processe.
Of Julius death complaynyng
but a whyle,

to write of Tullie in hall he gan hym dresse
compendiously his lyfe for to compile,
complaynyng fyrste with his bareyn stile,
Is insufficient to write as men may seen,
Of so notable a Rethoricien.

Lampe and lanterne of Romain Oratours
Among them called prince of eloquence,
On Parnaso he gathered by the flours,
this Rethoricien most of excellence,
Whose merites truely to recompence,
þ Muses nine me thought as I toke hede,
A croune of Lauret set vpon his hede.

Bochas astonysed gan of hymself conclude,
His looke abashed, dull of his courage,
thought his termes & reasons wer to rude
that he lacked cunnyng and language,
whereby he shoud to his auantage,
though he labored wyting al his lue,
Of Tullius the merites to descryue.

Wherof suppresed he caught a fantasie,
within hymself remembryng anon ryght,
though it so fall sometime a cloudy skye,
Be chased with wynd afore þ sunne bright,
yet in effect it leseth not his lyght.
So Bochas dempt that his dull wyting,
Eclipsed not of Tullius the shynnyng.

With rude language a man may wel report
þ laud of triumphes & conquestes merueilus,
which thyng remembryng greatly ga cofort
the heart of Bochas & to himself spake thus
Two colours seen that be contrarius,
As white and blacke it may bee none other,
Eche in his kynd sheweth moze for other.

In Phebus presence starres lese their light
Clerc

Clere at midday appeareth not Lucine,
the fame of Tullie whilom shone so bright,
Prince of faire speache father of þe doctryne
whose bright beames ito this houre do shine
sothly quod Bochas, of whom whan I wote
myne hand I fele quakyng whyle I wote.

But for to geue folke occasion,
which in Rethorike haue moze experience,
Than haue I, and moze inspection,
In the colours and craft of eloquence,
Them teynte to doe theyr diligence,
Unto my wryting whan they may attende,
Of compassion my rudenes to amende.

Unto hymself hauing this language,
Bochas to wote gan his penne dresse,
Under suppozt afforced his courage,
To remember the excellent noblesse,
Of this Oratour which with the sweetnes
Of his duties abode as they haue shined,
Hath al this world most clerely enlumined.

This Tullius, this singuler famous man,
first to remember of his natiuitie,
Borne at Arpinas a citie of Tuskan,
Of bloude royall descended who list see,
Greekish boke of olde antiquite,
Made of Rethorike, & in theyr vulgar song
He translated into Latin tong.

In tender youth his countrey he forsoke,
And fro Tuskan his passage he gan dresse,
Toward Rome the ryght way he toke,
Enteing the citie the renoumed noblesse
Hid in his person shewed the brightnes
Of diuers vertues, tyme whyle he abode,
That like a sunne his fame spred abode.

for his vertues made a Citifair,
The good report of hym shone so clere,
Like as he had be borne a Romain,
In theyr fauour his name was so entere
Among them chose for a consule,
Agayn the citie time of his consulate,
Whan Catiline was with them at debate.

By the prudence of this Tullius,
And his manhode reckoned both in fere,
Catilina most cruell and prous,

fro ward of port and fro ward of his chere,
Busp euer to fynd out the manere,
How he might by any token or sygne,
Agayn the citie couertly maligne.

Sixte hundred yere foure score tolde & nine
Reckoned of Rome fro the foundation
This cruell tiraunt this proude Catiline,
Made with other a consuracation,
Again fraunchises and freedom of the towne
first discorde as boke tell can,
In the parties and boundes of Tuskan.

The purpose wholy of this Catiline,
Imagined on false couetise,
Was to byng Rome vnto ruine,
And therupon in many sondry wise,
Fond out meanes, waies gan deuise,
To his entent by diligent labour,
In the citie gan geat hym geat fauour.

But finally his consuracation,
Discorde was by one Quintus,
which was afore false vnto the towne,
Tolde all the caas vnto Tullius,
by whose prudence and working meruelus
By helpe of Antonye that was his felaw,
the consuracation was broken & withdraue.

By wote of Tullie al the consurators,
Espied wer and brought vnto mischance,
Theyr names read tofore the Senatours
Of theyr falsehead tolde al the gouernaunce;
Manly ordeyned through his purueyaunce
with al his people as made is menton,
Catilina departed from the towne.

With Antonye the sayd Catiline,
Beside Billore had a great battayle,
Slayn in the field he might not declyne,
for he abode whan the field gan fayle,
Power of one litte may auayle,
namely wha falsehead of malice & of pride,
Again trouth dare the bront abode.

There was another called Lentulus,
Of his felowes that named was Fabius,
The thyrd of them eke called Cethegus,
All assented and sworne to Catiline,
Strangled in prison at mischief dyd fine,

The sixth

Cause Tullius dyd execution,
Tullianum was called the prison.

Thus could he punish traitours of þ town,
out ray they: enemies of manhode & prudence
called of they: citie gouernour and patron.
Sent from aboue to be they: defence,
Their chaumpion most digne of reuerence,
chose of they: goddes they: citie for to guye,
By two prerogatiues knighthode & policie.

Like a sonne he dyd them enlumine,
By hye prowesse of knightly excellence,
And through þ world his beames did shine.
Of his rethorike and of his eloquence,
In which he had so great experience,
By circumstaunces that nothing dyd lacke
He transcended Plotius and Gracce.

Of Oratours it is put in memoire,
this Tullius thzough his hye renoun,
Of all recheone the honour and the gloire,
Was youe to hym as made is mention
Surmounted all and in conclusion,
The golden trumpe of the house of fame,
thzough al the world blew abrode his name.

He knew secretes of Philosophie,
came to Athens to schole for doctrine,
where he profited so greatly in clergie,
In all sciences heauenly and diuine,
that he was called as autours determine,
Among Romaines of very due ryght,
Of eloquence the lanterne and the light.

It is remembred among Oratours
How Tullius pleated causes twayne,
in the Romain court afoze the Senatours
the cause defending by language souerayn,
Of two accused agein them that did playne
on their defautes them sauing fro mischief,
the court escaping fro daunger and repress.

These causes twayne he pleated in Latin,
with so excellent flouryng fayre language.
With such reasons concluded at the line,
that he by wisdom caught the auantage,
In his matters with al the surplusage,
That might auayle vnto his partie,
that he sayd there could no man denye.

Among Grekes at Athens the citie,
So great he was of reputacion,
So famous holde of autoritie,
to be compared by they: opinion,
To the Philosopher that called was Plato
to whose crable Bees dyd abrayde,
And hony soote they on hys lippes layde.

A pronostike like as bokes tell,
Plato should by famous excellence,
Of Rethorike be very sours and well,
For his language mitrout of eloquence,
Yet the Grekes recorder in sentence,
How Tullius in partie and in all,
Was vnto Plato in Rethorike egal.

Thzough his language this sayd Tullius,
reconciled by his soote Orisons,
to the Lordship and grace of Julius,
Princes and kyniges of diuers regions,
That suspect stode by accusacions,
Because they did Julius disobey,
Wer enclined with Romaines to Pompey.

He could appele by his prudent language,
folkes that stode at disencion,
By craft he had a speciall auantage,
fauour singular in pronounciacion,
In his demeanyng great prudence & reaf,
for the pronouncing of matters in substance
his thanke receiuerth by chere & couenance.

To a glad matter longeth a glad chere,
Men treate of wisdom w wordes of sadnes
Pleyntes require after the matter,
Griuous or mortal a chere of heauines,
Like as the cause eyther the procelle,
yeueth occasion to hinder or to speede,
the doctrine in Tullius men may rede.

The name of Tullius was couth i many place
His eloquence in euery londe was rise,
His language made hym stonde in grace,
And he preferred duryng all his lyfe.
Maried he was and had a right fayre wyfe,
Chyldren many, seruauntes yong and olde
And as I fynd he held a good household.

De officiis he wrote bokes thre,
De Amicitia I find how he wrote one,

Of age an other notable for to se,
Of morall vertue they created euerychone,
And as Vincent wrote full yore agoe,
In his mirrour called Historial,
number of his boke be there remembred all.

He wrote also the dreame of Scipion,
Of rethorikes compiled boke twayne,
And twayne he wrote of diuination,
Of tilth of loude to write he did his payne,
A large boke of glozy that is bayne,
De re publica, and as he sayth hym selue,
Of his Oracions he wrote boke twelue.

And of his duties that called be morall,
Is remembred notably in dede,
In the sayd mirrour Historial.
And yet this sayd Tullius as I rede,
Mid his worshippes stode alway in drede
Of fortune, for in conclusion,
He by enuye was banished Rome towne.

Being in exyle this famous Tullius,
In Campania at Ateine the cite,
Receyued he was of one Plantius,
A man that tyme of great auctoritie.
And whyle that he abode in that countrey,
Sleeping a nyght the boke maketh mencio
How that he had a wonder vision.

He thought thus as he lay sleeping,
In a deserte and a great wildetnesse,
fynndyng no path but to and fro erryng,
How he met clad in great richesse,
Cayus Marius a prince of great noblesse,
Aspyng Tully with a sad countenaunce,
what was chief ground & cause of his greuaunce

When Tullius had hym the cause tolde,
Of his discaise and his mortall wo,
Marius with his hand set on hym holde,
To a sergeaunt assigned hym ryght tho,
And in all hast bade hym he should go,
To conuey hym do his busycure,
In all hast possible to his sepulture.

Where he should haue tidings of pleasance
Of his repayre into Rome towne,
Be alleged of his olde greuaunce,
This was the end of his auision.

The next morow as made is mencion,
There was holde to Tullius great anayle,
tofore Jupiter in Rome a great counsaile.

Within the temple builded by Marius,
the Senatours accorded wer certayn,
to reconcile this prudent Tullius,
Out of exile to call him home again,
After receiued as Lord and souerayn,
Of eloquence by assent of the Senate,
fully restored vnto his first estate.

This thing was done whā þ in Rome touri
þ strife was greatest twene Cesar & Pompey
And for Tullius drewe hym to Caton,
With Pompey us Cesar to warrey.
And of Julius the partie disobey,
Out of Rome Tullius dyd hym hpe,
fled with Pompey into Thessalie.

Cesar after of his fre motion,
whan that he stode hysell in his glozpe,
Hym reconciled ayein to Rome towne,
Upon Pompey accomplished the victozpe,
But Julius slayn in the consistorie,
By sixty Senatours beyng of assent,
Tullius agayn was into exyle sent.

And in a cite called Formian,
Tullius his exyle dyd endure,
for Antonius was to him enmye than,
Because that he percase of auenture,
Compiled had an true ettrue scripture,
Again Antony rehearsyng al the caas,
Of his defautes and of Cleopatras.

Thus of enuye and of mortall hatrede,
His death compassed by Antonius,
And after ward executed in dede,
By procuryng of one Pompilius,
Gave a commission the story telleth thus.
Of false malice, and fourth anone went he,
Into Calatte of Champayne a Cite.

And by the vertue of his commission,
takyng of Antony lisencc and libertie,
Chiefe Rethoricien that euer was in þ town
Among Romans to worship the cite,
Was slayn (alas) of hate and enmitie,
By Pompilius roote of al falschede,

ff.iii. Procyng

The sixth

Profering hymself to smite of his hede.

Tullius afore had be his defence,
fro the galloves and his death eke let,
Which had deserued for his great offence,
to haue been hanged vpon an hye gibet.
Who saueh a thefe whan the rope is knet,
About his necke as olde clarkes wyte,
Whome false turne þe byboure wil him quite.

Lo here the vice of ingratitude,
By experience brought fully to a preel,
who in his heart treason doth include;
Cast for good wyll to do a man repreef.
What is the guerdon for to saue a theefe
whan he is escaped looke ye shall fynd,
Of his nature euer to be vnkynde.

This Pompilius traitour most odible
to shew hymself, false, cruel, and vengeable
toward Tullie dyd a thyng horrible.
Whan he was dead this byboure most culpable
smote of his right had to here abhominable
with which hand he luyng on hym toke,
to wyte of vertues many a famous booke.

The honde, the head of noble Tullius,
which euery man of right ought complayne
Whe take and brought by Pompilius,
vpon a stake set by both twayne,
there to abyde where it dyd shyne or reyne,
with wynde and wether til they wer despyed
In token all fauour was to hym denyed.

A Chapter again of such as be Janglers
and defamers of Rethorike.

Bochas complainyng in his study
alone,
The death of Tully and the woe-
full fall.

Smutchyng in heart made a piteous mone,
the folke rebukyng in especiall,
Which of nature be boylous and cural,
And hardy been for they no cunnyng haue,
Craft of Rethorike to hynder and depaue.

Clerkes olde dyd greatly magnify,
this noble science that wer expert and wise
Called it part of Philosophie,

And sayd also in they prudent wyse,
there be thre partes as treasours of gret pryse
Compiled in booke and of olde prouided,
Into which Philosophie is deuided.

The fyrst of them called is morall,
Which directeth a man to good thynges
And the seconde called naturall,
Tellethe the kind of good men and shewes
And the thyrde Racionall well shewes,
what mē shal boyd & what thyng vnderstodg
And to that partie Rethorike doth long.

By Tullius as auctours determyne,
Of his person rehearsyng in substance,
Translated was fro Greke into Latine,
Craft of Rethorike, and for the habundaunce
Of eloquence stuffed with pleasaunce,
All Oratours remembred hym toforene,
was there none like nor after hi yet bozne.

Bochas also sayth in his wryttinges
And proueth wel by reason and sentence,
To an Oratour long foure thynges.
Fyrst natural witt, practike with science,
Vertuous lyfe chief grounde of eloquence.
Of poyst and maner that he be treatable,
these meanes had mine auctor hold hi able.

In his wrytyng and in his scriptures,
Bochas wel perceiueh it must nedes been
How that of ryght there long shal armures
To euery notable Rethoricien,
Set here in order who lest them seen,
Which he calleth rehearsyng in sentence,
The fyue baners longyng to Eloquence.

The fyrst of them called Inuencion,
By which a man doth in his heart fynde,
A secrete grounde founded on reason,
with circūstaunces þe nought be left behind,
fro poynt to poynt enprynted in his mynd,
touchyng þe matter, þe substance and þe great,
Of which he cast notably tentreat.

Another armure in order the seconde,
Of right is called Disposition,
As of a matter whan the ground is founde.
That euery thyng by iust diuision,
Be boyde of all soze yn digression,

So disposed touchyng time and space,
fro superfluite kepe his due place.

The thirde armure named in sentence,
Is Elocucion with wordes many or fewe,
Matters conceiued by iust conuenience.
Disposed in order couenably to shewe,
Like a caruer that first doth timber hewe.
Square and copasse cast features & visage,
with caruing tole maketh bp a fayre image.

Pronunciacion is the fourth armure,
Necessary to every Oratoure,
In such case whan craft vnto nature,
Joined is by diligent labour.
With execution and that there be fauour,
In declaring with every circumstance,
folowyng the matter in there & countenance.

In heauy matter requireth an heauy chere,
To a glad matter longeth well gladnes,
men in pronouncing must folow the mattere
Olde Oratours can bere hereof witnes,
A furious compleint vttered in distresse.
This was the maner as Poetes do describe
In his tragedies whan Senek was alyue.

The fifth armure called remembraunce,
with quicke memozye by prouidence to see,
So awfully to grosse bp in substance,
wholy his matters that nought forgytete be
Lest forgetfulnes darke not the liberte,
Of clere report eche thyng to haue in mynd,
that in pronouncing nothing be left behind.

More provided so that forgetfulnes,
Be none hinderer to Inuencion,
And in procedyng no fozeyn rechelesnes,
Trouble not thorder of Disposition.
And for accomplish all bp woth reason,
that pronouncyng by clere remembraunce,
be wel fauoured with chere & countenance.

These sayd thinges be only necessarye,
To every prudent notable Oratour,
Not to hasty nor ouer long to tary,
But to conuey his processe by measure,
In there accordyng stant al the fauoute,
for in pronoucing who lacketh chere or face
of Cullius schole standeth farre out of grace.

All earthly beastes be muet of nature
Sauce onely man which hath auantage,
By a prerogative aboue eche creature,
To better his conceite onely by language.
The soule by grace represteth ail outrage,
Namely whan reason hath the soueraintie,
To bydle passions of sensualitie.

Kind vnto man hath youen Eloquence,
A thyng couenable in especiall,
Whan that it is conueyed by prudence,
To talke of matters that be naturall,
And secretes hyd aboue celestiall,
Doth entre, ste of sunne, moone, and starres
Y infuēt power down set of peace & warres.

God of al this hath graunted knowlaggng,
Onely to man by wisdom and reason,
And through language poue to hym shewing
Outward to make declaration,
Of the heauenly course and sondry motion
Diuers chaunges, and playnly to define,
The resolution of the spherres nyne.

Men by language shew out theyr ententes
The naturall meuyng and mutacions,
Accorde and discord of the foure elementes
Kindly variaunce of foure complexions,
The generation and the corruptions
Of earthly thynges contrary eche to other,
corruption of one engendryng to another.

This the power and the precellence,
Youe vnto man which is resonable,
That by language and by eloquence,
A man is taught in vertue to be stable,
Of soule eternall, of body corruptible,
taught with his tonge whyle he is alyue,
Of his defautes how he shall hym amure.

Bochas eke telleth touchyng Rethorike,
There be two maners, one is of nature,
learned in yowth which doth one speake like
As he heareth or learneth by scripture,
Craft of Rethorike poue to no creature,
Sauce to man which by great diligence,
By study commeth to craft of Eloquence.

Craft of language and of prudent speache,
causeth preachers by spiritual doctrine,
Virtuously

The sixth

Virtuously the people for to teach,
How they shall live by morall discipline,
Language teacheth men to plant vine,
Enfozmeth folke to worship holy churche,
the artificer truly for to worche.

Yet there be some þ plainly teach & preach
Haue of language this opinion,
God hath not most reward vnto speache,
But to the heart and to the affection,
Best can guerdon the inward intencion,
Of euery man not after the visage,
but like the meuing of theyr inward coage.

To bitter language is great diuersitie,
whā þ men shew the effect of their meanyng
Be it of ioye or of aduersitie,
There for racorde therewith in vttering,
Now debonayre somewhyle rebukynge,
And in rehearsynge like there alway tapply
Be it of rudenes, be it of curtesye.

Of discrecion set a difference,
in his pronouncynge to perse or vndermine
to moue the Judge vnto his sentence,
Or to his purpose to make hym to encline,
Se whether he be melancolike or benigne
Or his matter bee vttered or vnclosed,
Consider afoze how that he is disposed.

Peysed all thyng the Rethoricien,
with other thinges which apperteyn of right
to craft of speche he must conceiue and seen
matters of substaunce & matters þ be lyght
Dispose hymself tencrate euery wight,
Like to purpose and fine of his mattere,
As for the time Rethorike doth requere.

As by example myne autour doth recorde,
When set at warre in heart farre a sonder,
the Rethoricien to make them for racorde,
must seche wayes and meanes here & ynder
of old rancour appease the boyllous thuder
by wise examles and prouerbes pertinēt,
tenduce the parties to be of one assent.

A man also that stant in heauines,
Dispeyred and disconsolate,
the Rethoricien must do his busines,
the ground considred and felt of his estate.

The cause searched why he stant desolate,
which to resourne by diligent labour,
Is the true office of euery Oratour.

Of Rethoriciens whelom that wer old,
the sugred language & vertuous daliaunce
by good examles & prouerbes that thei told
wordes pefible enbelished with pleasaunce
Appesed of tirantes þ rigorous vengeaunce
Set asyde theyr furious sentence,
By vertue onely of prudent eloquence.

And in contrary plainly to conclude,
When see al day by clere experience,
folke vnaused and hasty fooles rude,
And brainles people of wilful negligence,
Because they wer barren of Eloquence,
vttryng theyr speache as naked men & bare
for lack of rethorike their matter to declare.

By clere exauple as purples who taketh hede
Longeth to kinges in sozy men may fynde
with clothes of gold and riche beluet wede,
fret with Rubies and other stones Inde.
Saphires, Emeraudes, pearles of their hand
As al these thinges appropried been of right
pleasunt obiectes to a mannes syght.

So the language of Rethoriciens,
Is a glad obiect to mans audience.
With song melodious of Musiciens.
which doth great cōfort to euery hie prestee
by exauple as Amphidion song and eloquence
Bullded the walles of Thebes the cite,
He had of Rethorike so great subtiltie.

In his lāguage there was so gret pleafare,
fyndyng thereby so inly great profyte,
that al the countrey came to his obeysance
To heare him speake thei had so gret delite,
the people enuiron had such an appetite.
In his person in peace and in batayle,
here mē may se what Rethorike doth auail.

¶ Howe Sertus great Pompeyus
sonne warred against þ Triumuri
of Rome, and of the death of
great Antony & Cleopattras.

¶ The .xvi. Chapter.

Following

Following the order Bochas of
his boke,
With penne in hand casting by
his eye,

Tofoze him came pale of chere and loke,
A mighty prince sonne vnto Pompey
Called Sextus which as bokes sey,
Delited hym with a great nauee,
Like a Pirate to robbe on the see.

To his father contrary in such caas,
For euery Pirate of custom he dyd hate,
Upon the sea whose vsage was,
Agaynst them proudly to debate,
Pursued them early and eke late,
Where this Sextus to his great reproof,
Was of the sea a robbour and a thefe.

The slaunder of hym gan to sprede farre,
Reported was to many farre countrey,
With Triumvir this Sextus gan a warre,
Which is an office and a dignitie,
By the Romaines committed vnto thye,
Notable estates chose for chualrie,
Thempyre al whole to gouerne and to gise

The first of them named Lepidus,
And the seconde called Octavian,
The thyr in number was Antonius,
Agayn which thye Sextus this proud man,
Of surquedy a new warre gan,
Afoze by Julius for his rebellion,
Banished for euer out of Rome town.

Triumvir of politike gouernaunce,
Wel auised afoze in theyr reasons,
Treating for peace by notable purueyance,
With proud Sextus vnder condicions,
Wite and enact in theyr conuencions.
But anone after list no whyle tarpe,
He to his promes was froward & contrary.

for his conuict outrageous fallenes,
And on the sea for his robbrye,
Bochas of hym wrote no long processe,
Hauyng disdayn his name to magnifye,
For he to vertue list nothyng applye,
The difference, cause which is in thestate,
Betwene knighthode and life of a Pirate.

With fugittues, theues and robbours,
And men exyled out of Rome towne,
Banished people false conspiratours,
With other conuict of murder and treason
He toke all suche vnder protection,
And one Moena a churle of his certayn,
Of foxtie shippes he made hym captayn.

The said churle vnwarely tho began,
Follow the nature of his condicion,
Allyed himself with Octavian,
Agayn his Lorde with full false treason,
With al his naue and shippes he came downe
Spared not to mete of berypide,
With Menecratus & was on Sextus syde.

But al so sone as the batayle gan,
And the parties together shoulde gone,
All the vessels of Octavian,
With sodern trespers wer douned euerichone,
Beside a castel bylt of lime and stone,
called Pauletum where yet to great reproof
Sextus fled and was brought to mischiese.

Went into Grece to make him strong agayn
To holde a battayle with Antonius,
take in his coming by strength of a captayne,
Longing to Antonye called furnius,
whylom neuue to Cesar Julius.
And o: Duke Sextus might ferther wend,
He slayn was and made there his end.

Of Triumvir in thempyre as I tolde,
There was a captayn called Lepidus,
which by his offite like as he was holde,
Right busy was the boke rehearseth thus,
To reconcile the proude Antonius,
To the grace of great Octavian,
eche thyng forgeue wherof the warre gan.

And to conclude shortly who list se,
fortune a whyle was to him gracijs,
Thempyre all whole gouerned by these thye
Lordship of Affrike had Lepidus,
By which he were proude and contrarius,
To hym assigned vnder commissions,
fully the number of twentie Legions.

wherof in heart he caught such a pride,
Causyng by processe his destruction;

Surquedy

The sixth

Surquedry a whyle was his guide,
fro his estate tyl he was fall doune,
Namely whan he of false presumption,
toke vpon hym of malice to warrey,
the sayd Octavian and gan hym disobey.

Whan Octavian his malice dyd see,
that he gan wake sodeinly contrary,
He threwo hym down from his dignitee,
Cast hym in exyle list no lenger tarye,
Lo how fortune sodeinly gan varye,
To make hym that had gouernaunce,
Of all Aflrike to come to mischaunce.

Another prince Cesar Lucius,
Exyled was fro Rome the cite,
By his vncle the sayd Antonius,
Of wilfulnes and hasty crueltie,
For in that time as men may reade and see,
contrived causes wer fond vpon of malise,
Cexyle princes notable holde and wyse.

Some because they helde with Cesar,
Othel for Pompey that held on that partie,
Some for theyr good afore or they wer ware,
Some for suspection, Some for enuye,
Some for they could not flatter noz lye,
Some for vertues which was great routh
Because they wer so stable in theyr trowth.

In this trouble dyedfull and odious,
As is rehearsed in order ye may rede,
The noble knyght Paulus Lucius,
Exyled was of malice and hatredte,
Following vpon the great horrible dede,
The piteous death and the hatefull caas,
Of great Antony and Cleopatras.

The tragedy of these pike swayne,
For me as now shalbe set asyde,
cause Chaucer chief Poete of Britayne,
Seing their heartes could not deuide,
In his boke the Legende of Cupide,
Remembryng there, as one thei dyd endure
So wer they buried in one sepulture.

Thyng once sayd by labour of Chaucer,
wet presumption me to make agayn,
Whose makynge was so notable and entere
Right compendious & notable in certayne,

which to rehearse þ labour wer but in vain
Bochas remembryng how Cleopatras,
caused Antony how he destroyed was,

Her avarice was so importable,
He suppresed with her great fayzenes,
Following theyr lustes foule & abhominable
She desyryng to haue be Emperesse,
And he (alas) of stowarde wyfulnes,
To please her unhappely began,
To warrey the great Octavian.

Forward ambition set his heart on fyre,
To clymbe vp to the imperiall see,
To haue possession of the whole empyre,
toke vpon hym if it would haue be,
to reygne alone in Rome the cite,
Cleopatras to foster in her pride,
Title of Octavian for to set asyde.

With multitude of many Legions
As I haue tolde agayn Octavian,
To him attatched of diuers regions,
Great multitude of many a manly man,
First on the sea to warre he began,
where he was first mauger al his myght,
To his confusion vnwarely put to flyght,

Disespered fled home to his countrey
knowyng no helpe noz meane to recure,
But to encrease of his aduersitie,
Whan that he sawe his woeful auenture,
Gayn Octavian he might not endure,
With a sharpe sword his dauger to diuert
Himself he rose vnwarely to the hert,

Of whose death the quene Cleopatras,
Toke a sorow very importable,
Because there was no recure in the caas,
Thought of his woe she would be partable,
Whose fatall ende piteous and lamentable
Slough eke her selfe loue so dyd her raue,
After they both buried in one graue.

The ende of the Sixth
Booke.

(.)

The seventh Booke. Fol. clxv.



Of Antonye sonne and heyre to
great Antonye, and of Cesarus,
Julia, Agripa, Cassus, and of
Quintus Gallus.

The first Chapter.

His story ended last of the
sixth Booke,
Bochas weary thought
for the best,
Of gret trauaile oppressed
in his looke,
Fell in a slumber lenyng
on his chest,

fully in purpose to haue take his rest,
But even as he rest should haue take,
Came a great pteale & made him to awake.

first of that felowshyp came þ sonne & heire
Of Antony with blood sprent all his webe,
Called eke Antony fall in great despaye,
cause Octavian bare to him hatrede,
whose sword he fled quakyng in his dyde
to an olde temple succour for to haue,

trauelling to death þ place should him saue.

In that temple Cesar was bested,
Of who by Romains was set by a great
But when he saw þ he was espyed, (image,
He ran to Julius hye vpon a stage,
Can hym to embrace in his piteous rage,
He rent away by soden violence,
Unwarily slayn there gayned no defence.

Next in order came Cesarus,
Of whom there fell a wonder piteous caas,
Whilom begat of Cesar Julius,
Upon the yong saye Cleopatras,
Slayn in his pcutt thus wytteth Bochas,
As Octavian dyd himself assigne,
for he gain Romaines should not maligne.

Following in order Julia began,
His greuous compleint to Bochas specific,
Whilom daughter to great Octavian,
With weping open gan to howle and crye,
Which by her father to punish her lecherye,
Exyled was out of her countrey,
For lacke of succour dyed in pouertie.

Her

The seventh

Her sonne Agrippa yonge and tender of age
 bozne of hye bloude Bochas doth expresse,
 came next in order pale of his visage,
 which spent his time in flüer and ydlenes,
 from art to vertue, and for his wretchednes
 Octavian which was great routh,
 suffred hym dye at mischief for his slouth.

After Agrippa came forth anon ryght,
 Cassius of Parma a famous great countre
 which in Itayle was holde a manly knyght
 with Marke Antony wel cherished & sette
 Bode in his court and therewithal parde,
 Greatly allowed fyrt for his chualtye,
 And for his notable famous policie.

And therewithal he had in existence,
 a ryght great name & stode in great favour,
 for his knighthode and for his hye prudence,
 After accused vnto the Emperour
 Octavian, for a consuratur,
 He should haue be of froward false entent
 To Julius death fully of assent.

For which by bydding of Octavian,
 Take he was beyng but yong of age,
 And as mine autour wel remember can,
 Brought tofore Julius hye vpon a stage,
 there offered by vnto his ymage,
 By cruell death the story telleth thus,
 For the false murder of Cesar Julius.

After the death of sayd Cassius,
 Another came of Rome the citie,
 Which as I rede called was Gallus,
 Of a Pretor hauing the dignitie,
 And for suspencion slayne eke was he,
 His eyen fyrt out of his head were rent,
 For Julius death than into exyle sent.

Toward his exyle by Bygates he was slain
 And after that within a litle whyle,
 Of his labour nother glad ne faine,
 Bochas began to direct his stile,
 To great Herodes byefly to compyle,
 His greivous fall and wholy the manere,
 To set in order here next as ye shall here.

How the ttraunt Herodes slough
 his wyfe and children and after
 dyed at mischiese,

The .ii. Chapter.

Remembryng first in Itewy he was
 kyng,
 Antipater his father who list see,
 In Arabia mightily reygning,
 Ouer the prouince called Idumee,
 This same Herodes gardeyn of Galile,
 Obedyed was fyrt for his hye prudence,
 And for his notable knightly excellence.

famous in manhode, famous of his lyne,
 famous also by procreacion,
 I rede also he had wiuers nyne,
 And among all as made is mencion,
 To his pleasaunce and his opinion,
 maister of stoxes rehearseth there was one
 Mariamnes sayest of euerychone.

By whom he had worthye sonnes thweyne,
 Alexander and Aristobolus.
 But for his sister dyd at her disdayne,
 Called Saloma the story telleth thus,
 He vnto her were suspicius,
 Because he was accused of enuye,
 By Saloma touchyng aduourtrie.

Again her of rancour sodeinly,
 He gan of heart greivously disdayn,
 In rigorous sweord he slough her furiously,
 But as the story doth vs ascertyn,
 He for her death felt afterward great paine
 Euer whan it came to his remembraunce
 her port, her chere, her womāly pleasaunce.

Lo what it is a pynce to be hasty,
 To euery tale of rancour to assent,
 And counsels to procede wilfully,
 to execucion of froward false entent,
 for Herodes so soze he dyd repent.
 That he for thought fell into a noye,
 Of hertly sorow and melancolie.

Rest had none nother day ne nyght,
 troubled with fure that he were frenthe,
 In dreames vexed & many an vncouth sight
 of chere nor colour to no man he was lyt,
 And euery moneth once Lunatike,
 A great whyle he had this wooful life,
 for sorow ouely he had slayne his wyfe.

And

And as the story wel rehearce can,
In the Capitoll mid Rome the cite,
By Antony and by Octavian,
He crowned was and made king of Judee,
By the Senate made thereon a decree,
And requir'd that he and his kinrede,
Should in that land lineally procede.

In Rome was made the confirmation,
To this Herodes bookes specifie,
Being afoze the translation,
was made of Juda and of Iurie,
Sceptre crowne with al the regaly,
By him vsurped as ye haue heard tofozne,
vpon the tyme when Christ Jesu was born.

This same Herodes by procuracion,
Of Antony did also occuppe,
By Augustus plenair commission,
the great estate called Tetrarchie
In two kingdomes with al the regalie
Of Tetracontides, Iurie eke also,
By the Romayns made Lord of both two.

Maister of stories rehearseth of hym thus,
for commendacion in especiall
In Aschalon he bylded a stately house,
Of right great cost a palace full royal,
Was none so ryche for to reckon all,
After which mine autour doth so wyte,
he called was Herode Ascalonite.

This same Herodes cruel of nature,
Of chere and port passing ambitious
Ipe to be venged did his besy cure,
On al that wer to him contrarious.
His wiues brother Aristobolus,
In Hierusalem chief Busshop as I rede
fally he slough of malice and hatrede.

(alme
Unlustly reigned born heuy through his re-
his heart fret and kancred with enuye,
another busshop in Hierusalem,
Called Hyrcanus mine autour list not lye.
This same Herodes in his melancoly
Slough him vntwarily by rancour ful ven-
litting at diner at his own table. (geable

There was no man of courage moze cruel,
For moze desirous to be magnified,

To make his name also perpetuell.
Foure stately cities he hath edifyed,
Of which the names be here specified,
Cesaria, Sebasten Cities souerayn,
Antipattra, and Cypre the other tweyn.

He had also a false condicion,
he trusted none that was of kinrede,
his sonnes tweyn he had in suspencion,
they purpose was to slea hym of hatrede,
whan he wer dead hoping to succede,
And causeles as fadze most vnkind
Made them be slayne, in story thus I find.

In al his working he was found double,
A great tyrant hold through his realme,
Neuer thing so greatly did him trouble,
as when thre kinges came to Hierusalem;
Jesu to seche that was borne in Bethleem.
Boldly affirming cause of their coming
was to worship that blessed yong king.

The which thing whan he did aduertise
Prophecies remembring and wytyng,
within himself a meane he gan deupse,
first to ded toy these famous holpe kinges,
Namely whan he knew of their offringes
Imagining gan suppose blyue,
the child was borne that should him depriue

Awely descended fro Dauid down by line
Cast almost Herodes in a rage,
Of curled heart gan frowardly maligne,
Like a tyrant of venemous outrage,
Slough al þ children within two yere of age;
About Bethleem a ful large space,
he spared none for fauour nor for grace.

One of his children being at noycery,
As the story put in remembraunce,
Of auenture or they could it espye
his knyghts slough, I trowe it was begaue
Eche tyrant gladly endeth with mischaunce.
And so must he that were again Christ wode
which for his sake shed innocentes blode.

The nūbre of children þ wer slayn in dede,
about Bethleem and in tho parties,
an hundred fourty foure thousand as I rede
two yere of age sought out by espyes,

The seventh

Of Herodes, and for the propheties
Of Chyestes byrth mention did make,
They wer echone slayn for his sake.

fro that day forth as made is mencion,
he fyl in many vncouth malady,
his flesh gan turne to corrupcion,
fret with wozmes vpon eche partie,
which him assayled by great tomentye,
his legges swell robed blache gan shyne,
where vengeaunce werke th adew al medicine

Of his sickenes the stench was so horrible,
to awayte on him no man might abyde,
Unto himself his careyn wext odible,
So soze he was troubled on eche syde,
Leches for him did a bath prouyde,
But al for nought in such mischief he stode
Of greivous constreynt he sodeynly wext
(wode,

In token he was wery of his life,
So importable was his mortal peyn,
To pare an apple he asked a sharpe knife,
his malady dyd him so constreyne.
fully in purpose to cut his heart in tweyn,
The knife he caught leyser when he fonde,
one stode besyde, backward draugh his hond

for peyn vneth his wynd he might drawe,
Gaue al his frendes in commaundement,
By a decree and a furious lawe,
That al the worthy of parties adiacent,
which that wer sayn oꝝ glad in their entent
Of his death he voyde of al pietye,
Thesame day they shoulde slayn be.

This cursed wretche, this odious caytife,
I reade of none stode feither out of grace,
In sorowe and mischief ended hath his life,
Eche man was glad when he shoulde passe.
And for his story both this booke deface,
with woful clauses of him when I wyte,
Therefore I cast no more of him tendite.

¶ Lenuoy.

Of Herodes the vnware cursed fall,
the life vngacious of him & his kindred
Euer vengeable in his estate royall.
His wife, his chyldren slough of old hatred

Innocētes he made in Bethleē for to blede,
Reigning in Juda, borne of foreyn lyne.
The fyrst tyrant ye may the byble reade,
which agein Chyist gan frowardly maligne

His sword of rigour cruel and mortal,
A ready whet to doe vengeaunce in dede,
hasty, fumous, with furies infernal,
of wilful malice innocētes blood to shedde
Did execution also in womanhede.
Slough al his alies which was a cursed si,
was the first cause he stode in dyde. (gne
which agein Chyist gan frowardly maligne

He would that none wer to him egall,
that day alwe in Israel to succede,
the byrth of Chyist dyed in especial,
Cause fro Jesse his line gan stoure & seede
he but a foreyn came in by fraude and mede
without tyle to that estate vndigne.
The fyrst also who list take hede,
which agein Chyist gan frowardly maligne

Noble princes that gouerne all,
This large world both in length and byde,
whan ye syt hest in your royal stall
Doe not the people oppresse nor ouerlede,
Upon Herodes remembre as I rede,
In what mischief that tyrant did fine,
to shew that none shal in his purpose spede
which agein Chyist doth frowardly maligne

¶ Of Antipater the fyrst sonne of Hero-
des, exyled by Octavian: And of Archelaus
the seconde sonne of Herodes, lykewyse by
him exyled. ¶ The .iii. Chapter.

Conspendiously as ye haue hearde
the fall,
Of Herodes remēbred by Bochas,
how in his testament set in especial
to succede was Herode Antipas,
In haste exiled, of him this was the caas.
By Octavian to Vienne as I rede,
Archelaus ordeyned to succede.

Sonne of Herodes called the second
which in effect toke possession
In Hierusalem reigned as I rede,
Of whom mine autout for mozt conclusion
Waketh

Maketh in hys boke but smal mention,
him and hys brother set sodeinly aside,
Of them to write no longer list to abide.

Haue that he writteth how forsaide Antipas
at Viennne a mighty great Cite,
In hys exile lone after Claine was,
Archelaus succeeding in Judee,
with Herodias who list the floyp see.
By agrippa to Tiberius accused,
Of certein crimes could not be excused.

I certein time commaunded to prison,
of themperour coude neuer geat grace
Banished him farre from hys region,
In to Spayne for a certein space,
And hys worship brestly to disface,
fortune caused to hys final reprief,
He died there in pouert and mischief.

The fatal ende rehearsed of these twelue.
in what distresse that they dyd line,
Whine auctour after gan hys penne ordeine
To write the case by many a woful line,
Upon the strife atwene Messaline,
And other twelue standing by her side,
Tofore John Borhas howe they did chide.

Tofore Borhas they came al thye to pleine
Messaline the wife vnto Claudius
Again whom there were other twelue,
Caligula and Tiberius,
In whose time was slayne Christ Iesus,
touching þ debate that was amōg these thye
Suinge þ processe here folowing ye shal se

Of the strife betwene Caligula,
Tiberius, and Messaline.

The.iii. Chapter.

His Emperesse named Messaline,
as I haue told was wife vnto Clau.
succelsoz as bokes determine (dius
To Caligula called Caius,
And as I find that Tiberius,
with Caligula both woode for tene,
Stode afoze Borhas & Messaline atwene.

Meting al thye with furious loke & chere,

Caius Caligula called by hys name,
Can first rehearce anon as ye shal here,
without reuerence of any maner Name;
With an exordye her to disface,
Borhas present felly gan abrayde,
To Messaline, and euen thus he said.

Thou flaundred woman noyed in lecherie
through all the world as folke thy name a
And repozted for thine auoutrye, (twite
what doest þ here in thy mourning habite,
I trowe thou comest of purpose to visite,
in thys place the vnhappy women five,
Touching disclaundet that euer were aluie

The first of them called Emilia,
and Lepida was named the seconde,
Liuis Plautia, and the fifth Elia,
Disfamed echone in dede as it was founde,
In token wherof the lecherie to confound,
Of Emilia in Juoutrye take,
was by the lawe of her lordz forsaie.

By thee whilom was knowe that Drusus,
strangled was and murdered by poyson,
Like to Claudia daughter of Claudius,
which by her lordz the booke maketh mēciō
was thowen out to her confusion,
for her disfautes sonde in Juoutrye,
sclaundred for euer there was no remedye.

Thou couldest whilōe make thy lord to slepe
with certein drinks to cast him in a reage
By which he was made hys bedde to kepe,
To geat leyser in thy flouting age,
for to misuse of false lust thine outrage,
Anightertime toke vpon a wede,
at the boydel dydest amisse for mede.

Thine appetite was berie vnsauncheable,
it is a shame to write it or expresse,
Thine hateful life was so abhominable,
Tiberius and I can beate hereof witness,
and with that word anon we gan her dresse
whan we had heard al their fel language,
Gaue them this answer with a sad visage

Certes (quod we) I coude neuer kepe,
To saue my selfe a woful creature,
I haue great cause to compleine and wepe.

The seventh

My feladerus life which I may not recure
But I suppose I had it of nature,
To be such one for by dayes olde,
An Astronomer so my father tolde.

At my birth taking the ascendent,
tolde long afoze of my misgouernaunte,
The Sunne, the Moone toward the orient
wer in the signe that beareth the balaunce,
And said also moze for assuraunce,
The same signe had by description.
His foote in Virgin, armes in Scorpion,

Amid the heauen was Venus exaltate,
In Mars cōtoynded þ booke maketh mēcō,
And Jupiter was also infortuneate,
To my sayd disposicion,
within the fishe helde tho his mansion,
Thus by the lordship plainly of Venus,
I was disposed for to be lecherous.

In her excuse the sayd Messaline,
Can aledge her constellation,
But prudent clerkes plainly determine,
Of heavenly cours the disposicion,
Is obeyssaunt and subiect to reason,
That euery man which wel gouerned is,
Is not constreyned of force to dooe amisse.

For bindeth no man of necessity,
Vicious lustes fromwardly to sue,
a vertuous man stante at liberte,
false inclinacions by prudence to remeue,
Euerie man by grace may eschewe,
al thing to vertue that found is contrarye,
For there is no sinne but it be voluntarie.

Yet for al thys the sayd Messaline,
In her excuse would not be in peas,
The heauē (quod she) as poetes determine
was bozne by wisdom by mighty Hercules
Yet coude he neuer of nature haue releas,
for al his knighthode and his chualrie,
To ouercome the vice of lecherte.

But thou Caligula and thou Tiberius,
what euer ye say I take therof none hede,
For thou Caligula called eke Caius,
Thy self discoloured with lechery in dede,
to rebuke other þ shouldest stande in dede.

But thy rebukes in party for to quite,
who is defouled none other shoulde atwite.

By fames trumpet thy flader is out blowe,
Through al the world reported shamefully
Thy thes sulters fleshy þ dost the knowe,
wer read for shame and for thy partye,
For the vice of hateful lecherie,
During thy life put me no moze in blame,
which art thy self defouled in the same.

It sitteth not in no maner wise,
a thief for theft to sit in iudgement,
A lecherous man a lechour to chastise,
For he that hath al his life spent,
In wast and riot fostered and mysuent,
To be a Judge other to rebysse,
no; leperous lechis to cure mē of sicknesse

I would haue suffred and take in patience
If of Aske the chast Scipion,
had me rebuked for my great offence,
I would haue suffred his word of iust reasō
O; if the famous prudent olde Caton,
had agein me in such caas made abyayd,
I would haue suffred what euer he had said

O; if Lucrece for my correccion,
had said to me for vertuous doctrine,
Al my surfetes mid of Rome toun,
I would haue bowed both back and chine,
To haue obeyed vnto her discipline, (gh
Shame for a crippel to stand þ hath no mē
To rebuke other for they goe not byright,

Agein thee also I may replie,
many another false conspiracion,
Touching matters of Aigromancie,
And many another contriued false poison,
found in two bookes Bochas maketh mē.
One called Bugio most superstitious, (cū
And the second named Gladius.

Able al this world tenuenime and enioye,
agein thee states dwelling in Rome toun,
Their names write of the thou canst destroy
which to remembre is great abusyon.
A chest also fullfilled of poplon,
After thy death cast in þ sea I read, (dead
by which an hundred thousand fishes were
On

On this matter is tedious for to abyde,
namely to princes princeles, boyn of hys es.
It sitt th not gentle blood to chide, (tate
By furious rancour to stond at debate,
And for these matters been infortunate,
I wil passe ouer and no more of them write
Saue of they? end compendiously endite.

To thee Tiberius I haue sumwhat to seyn
Knowe and reported by many creature,
How in Champayn folke had of the disordr
For thy most hate ful lecherous ordure,
In thiske byce which is ageyn nature,
which accomplysh boide of al hap & grace,
Thine abyding was in suspicious place.

To such false lustes during al thy lyfe,
List not forbear in thy latter age,
thou vbest many ryche restoratise,
In such vntyft to encrease thy courage,
Of ribaudy thou fyll in such dotage,
Howe mayst thou than rebuke me for shame
which in such case art blotted with defame:

I did amisse but it was in my youth,
horrible thinges which Caius here hath told
But thine outrage the reposte is yet couth,
thou didst them vse both yong and olde.
And for taffozee your byces manifold,
thou and Caligula in al such ribaudye,
Dyd greatest surfete in froward gluttony.

Also Tiberi thou beyng Emperour,
Cruel causeles and molt malicious,
Dydst murdre in Rome þ famous Oratour
Called in his time prudent Asinius,
which through thepore Romayns told thus
was light and lanterne found at al assayes
Of Rethorike called in his dayes.

Thou wer eke cause that worthy Monnus
Byng of Parthois through thy crueltie,
Cryled was thou wer so couetous,
to haue possession of his treasour pardie,
Dyed in mischief and in pouertie,
Be shamefast any wight to accuse,
which in such case thy self cannot excuse.

To Agrippine thou didst ful great outrage,
as Romayn stozies wel rehearce can,

whan she for succour to the great ymage,
Ran to be saued of Octavian,
Whode the temple a place called than,
which halpe her not þ she list thider wende,
Put out by force, for hunger made an ende.

Thine owne brother called Germanicus,
Which in hys time was so good a knight,
thy brother also called eke Drusus,
Both wer poysoned and slayne ageyn right
by false conspiring of thine imperial might,
Excuse the murder thy selfe at the least,
wer clad in blacke at they? funeral feast.

I haue no cunning speche nor language,
To rehearce nor make mention,
Specially of thy great outrage,
and sacriledge thou diddest in Rome town
By violence when thou dzen downe
the ymage of Janus, and after in al hast,
Into Tibre thou madest him to be cast.

And thou Caligula among thy byces all,
Of surquedy and false presumption,
wouldest that men a God thee should call.
Twene Dollus & Callos to haue thy mātio
fro which place thou art now throwe downe
which held thy self among the goddes seuē
Egal to Jupiter for to sit in heauen.

Answer to me here being in presence,
which of these. iiii. Mars, Janus, Minerue
Or Mercury God of eloquence,
Hath rent thee down as thou didst deserue
fro Jupiter in mischief for to serue.
That þ herafter wherso þ laugh or frowne
Shalt haue no fauour more w him to roun

With these diffantes and many other.
Afoze rehearced in hindring of thy name,
How thou ordeynest first to slea thy brother,
with inē of armes which was to the a shame
to Ptholome thou didst also thesame.
Sonne and heyre to king Iubaroun,
and many a senatour thou slough in Rome
(tonn

Shittest by myd Rome the Citie,
there gartners which neuer afoze was seyn
wherby enfamined was the commontie,
Dietie to heare this plat and plegn,

The seventh

Of necessity constrained in certeyn.
Shame to rehearse or put it in scripture,
Eate theyr membyres a thing ageyn nature.

Jupiter no; Juno the Goddess,
Gaue no such counsel I suppose vnto thee,
But it was Venus to flatter thy highnes,
And furious Mars by froward cruelte,
to sea senatours greatest of that Cite,
thy self sone after wherof þ toun was sayn,
By thy seruantes murdred wer and slayn

And for tabate thine outrage & thy pyde,
which thou hast vsed al thy lyfe,
Lyst vp thine head loke on thy left syde,
thou fynder vp of murder and of stryfe,
Slough thou not Cesonia thy wyfe,
thy daughter after that called was Dulsia,
Of cursed enynt thy malice to fulfill:

I haue meruayle how any of pou tweepe,
Thou Caligula or thou Tiberius,
Be not ashamed any thing to seyn,
Ageyn me with visage despiteous,
We for to avowte that I was lecherous.
Of a small mote ye can abrayde me,
But in your eye a beame ye can not see.

Where haue your soules take their harbor.
that be contrary to me for to strue. (gage
I trowe þ Charon hath made your passage
Up at the stound in hell for tarye,
There ye abyde thus I descriue.
where dreadeful Styx called infernall flode,
of custom cenneth to furious waues mode.

Rhadamanthus one of the Judges tweepe,
with kyng Minos hath poue a iudgement,
Perpetually ye shal byde in peyn.
And Cacus hath ordeined your torment,
In Phlegeton the flood most violent,
ye shal be drowned and an end make,
Euer for to abide among the streames blake

I may you call of Emperours the refuse,
ye shoulde be shamefast to shew out your vi-
lery assonied, dreadeful & confuse, (sages
To haue to me so vncurteys languages.
Thus Messaline daunted theyr corages,
with her feminine crabbed eloquence,

They durst no longer abyde in her presence

Of the most vicious tyrant Nero, that
slough saint Peter and saint Paule, and
did many other horrible dedes: and howe he
slew himselfe at the last.

The .v. Chapter.

SHis hateful story with many a woeful
lyne,
Of Caligula and Tiberius,
touching the strife betwene the & Messaline
Shameful rebukes stoward and obious,
By them rehearsed with there most furious
As ye haue heard here ended their chiding
Nero þ tyrant cometh next vnto the rying,

One most cursed in comparison,
That euer was of hye or lowe degre,
Most disnatural of condicion,
By great outrages of cursed cruelte,
That euer reigned in Rome the Cite,
His fader called booke determine,
Domicius, his moder Agrippine.

This Agrippina by her subtiltie,
and blynd fortune being fauourable,
that set by tyrantes of froward vbluntie,
By their demerites though they be not able
to estate imperial and notable. (stand
what thing moze dreadeful who can vnder-
than cruel tirantes to bloody sword on bond

When this Nero of age was twelue yere,
He was ordeyned in especial,
after he had learned his grammere,
and the seven artes called liberall,
vnto a maister in al vertue morall,
Called Moral Senec which dyd his peyn,
from al vices his youth to restreyn.

He kept him euer, thus Senec as I rede,
maugre his fatal disposition,
By a constrained and a maner dede,
from al outrage and dissolution.
Conceiued wel his inclinacion,
to be vicious as of hys nature,
which to restreyn he did his busye cure.

At one and twenty winter of his age,
Chronicles of him wyrtten thus,
How he that time toke in mariage,
Octavia the daughter to Claudius.
All this while being vertuous,
While Senec had hym vnder discipline,
Hys moder in lawe called Messalyne.

The sayde Senec made him to desyre,
to pursue cunning by diligent labour,
At entring in fyrst of hys Empire,
I meane whan he was crowned Emperour
Of al the Senate had great fauour.
And by report as clerkes of him wryte,
In prose & metre he cou'd right wel endite.

In John Bochas as it is made mynd,
He dyd excell greatly in Poetry,
Made in tho dayes also as I fynde,
A booke notable of straunge poysye,
Like as mine autour of him doeth specifye,
The tytle therof called Luscio,
ageyn a pretour Claudius Pollio.

Excelled in musike and in Armonyne,
Crowned with laurer for the best harpoun,
that was that time and he did edifye,
In Rome a palace with many a riche toure
which in bylding cost great treasour.
The circuite being thre thousand paas,
And Transitozy that palace called was.

for this cause as put is in memozy,
The sayd palace afterward was brent,
Therfore it was called Transitozy,
But after that Nero in his entent,
Lette bylde an house by great ausement,
to recompence that other that was olde,
and called it the ryche house of golde.

In al this worlde was none to it liche,
where that ever men did ride or gone,
Tables of yuo: fret with petre ryche,
Pillars of chrystal garnished w many stone
Saphirs, Rubies and Copasion.
Chrysolites and Emerawdes grene,
with plate of gold cyled & shone full shene.

To bodely lust and delactacion,
this sayd Nero set al his desyres,

Gardeyns conduites for recreation.
He did ordeyne to endure many yerres,
with nettes of gold fished in hys riueres,
His garmentes of gold and Inde stones,
And neuer he would haue the on but ones.

In his beginning the story both deupse,
Lord and Emperour in Rome the Citty,
to Senatours he gaue ful great fraunchyse
Graunted comons many great libertie.
But in his most imperial dignitie,
Of froward will left all good pollicie.
and al at ones gaue him to ribaudy.

Of Grece and Egypt with diuers Joggles,
And among vileyns himself disposing
Left the presence of olde Senatours,
And among ribaudes he would harpe & sing
Made commedies dishonestly so wryting,
At the bordel did himself auance,
with common weomen openly to daunce.

Thus by procelle to al vertue contrary,
By great excesse he fell in gluttony,
And after that list no lenger tary,
as euery byce to other doth applye.
Surfet and ryot brought in lechery,
and ground of al as chief portresse,
To eyle vertue was froward ydenes.

About the Citty called Hostience,
Besyde Tyber and other fresh riueres,
Dyd ordeyne by excessive expence,
tentes for ryot, cookes, tauerneers,
and al the night reuel about the fyres.
Ladies came that wet afoze wel named,
By such false ryot wet afterward distamed.

Thesame Nero by false abusion,
It is reported his story who list see,
By violence from their religion,
Such as had auowed chastitee,
And wet professed to virginitee,
In the temple of Vesta the goddesse,
Of froward lust he did them oppresse.

Among which Rubia was one,
Maugre her will she durst it not denye,
from the temple bidden of lime and stone,
Sacked to Vesta, mine autour list not lye,

The seventh

He rent her out to vse his lechery,
Notwithstanding he was religious,
Made her to abyde at the bozdel house.

By my wytyng men shal neuer rede,
the matter is so foule and outrageous,
to be rehearsed and the horrible dede,
which Nero bled whilom on Sporis.
And on another called Doryphorus,
Both male childzen as bookes tell can,
them to transfourme to likenes of woman.

Some bokes of him determine,
Like a ribaude horrible and detestable,
He misused his moder Agrippyne,
and like a tyrant cruel and vengeable,
which to remembre is abhominable,
He made her wombe be coze vpon a day,
to see the place nine monethes where he lay

Of disnatural hateful crueltie,
to God no; vertue hauing no regarde,
And of the vyce of prodigallitie,
He was accused in knighthod a coward.
and to al vertue contrary and frowarde,
Of whose wodenes good hede whē I toke,
I was ashamed to set him in this boke,

He hated al that were vertuous,
and to them had specially enuye,
His brethre, his wife, this tyrant dispiteous
he falsly slough in his melancoly.
His master Sener autours specifie,
aye whē he saw him hauing a maner dyede,
In an hote bath to deth he made him blede,

Chrystes feyth first he gan werrey,
Of Emperours in his froward intent,
Peter and Paule in Rome he made deye,
Upon a day they legend both assent,
Halfe the cite of Rome I synde he bzent,
And Senatours welnye euerychone,
This Nero slough spared almost none,

Made his mules be shod with siluer shone
Of surquedye whan he shoulde ryde,
The cite bzent, Romayns after sone,
Pursued him vpon euery syde.
And from a suburbe where he did abyde,
twene Salatia and Aumentana right,

There stant a path whether he toke his flit.
(ghe)

To Poliphagus a wodeman most sauage,
which that fed him most with fleshy of man,
Nero toke men olde and pong of age,
to find him bitale in stretes where he came
Curled at his end curled whan he gan,
whan he did offre innocentes bloodde,
to be deuoured of him that can so woode.

By a depe marishe as Nero toke his flight,
whan he sawe he might not alerte,
He was so pursued by a Romayn knight,
to fynd succour he might not diuert.
Roue him selfe anon vnto the hert,
with a sharpe dagger, a curled end lo,
Of the false tyrant that called was Nero.

Lenuoe.

Of this Nero to wyte a Lenuoe,
Nor of his dedes to make mencion,
to rede y processe no prince shoulde haue top,
for al cōcludeth of murder and of treason,
Of auoutrie, excelle and popson,
Ryot, gluttony, lechery, vengeaunce,
Slaughter of himself eded with mischaunce

If that I might I would race his name,
out of this boke that no man shoulde it rede,
his vicious life chief mirrour of disfaime,
Ser him aside lat no wight take hede,
for to remembre so many a cruel dede,
Saue onely this to thinke in substance,
How euery tyrant endeth in mischaunce.

Of him I cast to wyte now no more,
And what I say is sayd but in repulse,
Of the vyces that he wrought of poze,
During his empire concluding for a thefe,
All tyranny shal end with mischief.
Recozd on Nero which for misgouet naue
as ye haue heard ended with mischaunce.

Howe Eleazarus a Jewe borne, for
extorcion and robrye was brought
in pesson and there ended.

The. vi. Chapter.

After

After Nero came Eleazarus
a Jewe of Birth a pynce of robberye,
An extortioner, cruel and dispiteous,
for hys outrages done in that partye.
To redresse hys hateful tyrannye,
A mighty pretour was sent fro Rome down
Called Felix into that region.

By force of Felix take he was and bounde,
Daunger hys might vnto Rome sent,
Strongly fettered with massy chelines roūd,
Suffered in prison many great torment,
At the last this was hys iudgement,
there to abyde because he was a thief,
for evermore ended in mischief.

Howe the head of Sergius Galba Em-
perour of Rome was smiten of, filled
ful of gold, and offered at
the Sepulture of
Nero.

The. vii. Chapter.

Sofore Bochas next came
Galba doune,
Which in Spayne dyd many
knightly dede,
After the death rehearsed of Neroun,
In hope stode this Galba as I rede
In thempire iustly to succede, (bozne
parcel for knighthode he hath him so well
and for gret mariage which he had before.

I find in Bochas rehearsed in sentence,
He was disclaundred of hateful vices thre
He was cruel contrary to clemence.
Strept in keeping gem liberalite,
bungeable of heart gem merce and pite,
A thing not sitting vnto chualtye,
Of custome youe to slouth and slogarde.

To occupie thempire he began,
Among Romans toke possession,
Cleyning a title by one Licinian,
That was hys sonne by adoption.
But anon after for hys pzelumpcion,
One called Otho a full manly knight,
Swet of hys head were it wpong or right.

This seid Galba mine auctour witerh thus
from his Empire vnwarely pulled down,
Had an enemy called Patrobus,
the head of Galba toke in possession,
filled it with gold, made an oblacion,
At the sepulchre of Nero therewithall
to al the goddes and goddeses infernal.

Howe Otho Salustius and Aulus Ul-
tellus Emperours of Rome for Glut-
tonye, Lecherye, Ribaudye, and
crueltie, ended in mis-
chief.

The. viii. Chapter.

Ad after þ this offering was ful doe
as ye haue herd to John bochas thā
To make his cōpleint in ordre came
afore surnamed iustly Licinian. (also
Sonne adoptife to tel as I began,
Of sayd Galba cleyning to succede,
Slayne anon after by Otho as I rede.

Then was thempire parted into thre,
Otho toke Rome vnto hys partye,
and Vitellius to reigne in the countre,
ouer the boundes of al Germanye,
and Vespasian reigned in Sicilie.
But first this Otho surnamed Sergius,
Came to compleyne cruel and dyspyteous.

Of al thempite thys same Sergius,
By slaughter, rause, and extortion,
By murdre, death, and dedes outragious,
with mighty hand toke there possession.
And there began a great diuision,
which was occasion of gret sorow and woe
Atwene Vitellius and this sayd Otho.

It is rehearsed that in Germanye,
In sondry places they had batayles thre;
in the which Otho with hys partye,
Vanquished þ field, made hys sone to flee
But through fortunes mutabilitee,
At the fourth time plainly this the caas,
Daunger his might discōfited there he was

Tofore Bedye a mighty strong Citty,
Of Germanye was this disconstitute,
After

The seventh

After which of forward cruelite,
This sayd Otho seing hys auenture
With woe suppressed might not endure,
Of hys constraint the importable peine,
Toke a sweord and roue hys heart atweine

Uitellius hauing the victoize,
With his power as made is mention,
Of surquedye and false beine gloize,
Came with hys host in to Rome town.
But Bochas here maketh a discrecion,
rehearsing Mostly hys birth & eke his lyne
And how that he of blode was Saturnine.

Thys to say Saturnus king of Crete,
Chased by Jupiter out of hys region,
and Janus had in Itayle take hys sete,
Upon a mount called Janiculum,
where nowe of Rome is bilte þ large town
Janus receiuing of liberalite,
whan Saturne fled into his Cite.

Tofoze þ coming of Saturne this no faile,
Rude and boistous and bestial of reason,
was al the people abyding in Itayle,
land was none sowe noz turned vp so down
For marchaundise bled in no town,
till Saturne taught the maner of liuing,
Of cith & labour to Janus that was king

Afoze whole comming tofoze as I you told
Craft was none bled by no creature,
For no building of houses newe noz olde,
but liued as beastes their liuelode to recure
Like as they wer learned of nature (Hape
They coude tho dayes make no cloth noz
of frosty wethers the greuous colde tescap

They were not busy by costful apparayle,
of sundry meates and confections,
Of diuers drinks and manifolde vitayle,
to be curious to their refectiouns
Markets wer none in Cities noz in townes
No man with other bought noz solde
til Saturne came and the the maner told.

And whan he had taught them the manere,
and set an order of their gouernaunce,
The simple people as bokes doe vs lere
Like as to god did their attendaunce,

With certain rightes to doe their obseruance
worshipped him and after did him cal,
Saturne most mighty of their goddes al,

After thys Saturne was made a pedegree
to set an order conueyed from hys line,
Descending down the maner who list see,
to one Latinus and so forth to Laune
which was his doughter as poets determin
Thus by discent fro Saturne & faunus
Bozne of their blode came Uitellius.

The first knight bozne of that linage,
Because he was manly and right famous,
Had in armes prowesse and great roage,
He called was Uitellius Publius,
And of him came Uitellius Lucius,
father to him myne auctour doth expresse,
of whom that I haue gonne this proesse.

Diuers stories remembre and plainly tell,
During hys youth and stode at libertie,
how this foresayd that called was Uitell,
was þ most vicious þ any where might be,
youe to ribaudy and al dishoneste,
Because of which chaunged was his name;
Called Spinter a name of great defame,

I find that he was an hasardour,
In al hys workes passing riotous,
for hys surfetes great with the Emperour,
That whilome was called Claudius.
and for his dedes and maners outragious,
for hys great wast and prodigalitie,
Of great dispence he fel in pouertie.

Among his riotes & surfetes moe than one
which he dyd in countries here and there,
I find that he for nede sold a stone,
which hys mother bare whilome at her ere,
for by olde time was bled who list lere,
women that were that tyme of hys degre
Bare at their eares stones and perrey,

And by the selling of that rich stone,
for which that he receiued great treasoure,
by subtell working & sleighthes moe thā one
He gate him frēdes & was made Emperour
and therwithal he did eke hys labour,
to receiue another dignite,

To be chief Bishop in Rome the Citty.

And in short time thys Vitellius,
Of the mpyce toke on him al the state,
The sword receiued of Cesar Julius,
Wsed a garment that was purpurate,
Hempt of hymself he was most fortunate,
Notwithstonding more boldly þ time at least
Of Allicns holden was the feast.

Allicns was a solemnitie,
among Romayns kept by dayes olde,
in frsch myne aour reco:deþ thus parde
And in that tyme of custome no man should
for by statute bound was noz holde
to doe no maner occupation,
that touched vertue oz religion.

Durynge thys feast he should haue doyng.
By a custome wsed in that cite:
And Vitellius as Emperour and kyng,
Asked that time another dignitie,
to be chief Bishop and haue autozitie,
Of that estate with power whole and pleyn
No man so hardy to replie theragayn.

from al vertue Vitell did varye,
Set at nought al wisdom and science,
Thought vnto him was not necessary,
Cuning knightthod manhob noz prouidēce,
Gaue him only to slouth and negligence.
To gluttony folowing his desyres,
watch alnight with drinke and reue suppers

Being a Bishop of they? Daynsm lawe,
Lyke Romayn ryghtes doing theire scruse
tofoze þ goddes he would hymself withdraw
and cast asyde censer and sacrifice,
and cal a boy in ful vngoodly wyse.
A kitchin boye tofoze the hye autter,
and him cōmaunded to byng him his diner

Being arayed in his Pontificall,
for the manere boyde of deuotion,
Like a ribaude oz like a wode minstrell,
Euer drunkelewe and out of al reason,
Gorge vpon gorge this excessive glutton.
Most ydropike dranke oft ageyn lust,
the more he dranke the more he was athyrist

This was a Bishop sacred for Sathan,
And an Emperour crowned w mischaunce,
More like in port a beast then a man.
Wsed al his power in slaughter & in vēgāce,
To shedde blood was set al his pleasance,
taking none hede noz of wrong ne right,
and thus he were hateful to euery wight.

His souldiours forsoke him nye echone,
In al parties by hym where they wer sent,
through al the countreyes of Septemtrion
And in al Spye toward the Orient,
Of one accord and al of one assent,
echeone forsoke him w him bode not a man,
And became seruauntes to Vespasian.

Vitellius sawe it would be none other,
and for feble of drunknes and outrage,
and saw the power gan fayle of his brother
whan he had sent and signed the byage,
Ageyn Vespasian to hold his passage.
But al for nought backward wēt his party.
Stode dispeyred of euery remedy.

Thus Vitellius vnhappy to the werres,
Like a fozedrunke vnhappye great glutton,
whose boast afoze raught by to the sterres.
Now al his pryde in mischief is come down
fayn for to accord to this conuencion.
For litle treasour which men should him as-
to Vespasia the Empire to resigne (signe

This was his promise but he held it nought
what he sayd his woord was neuer stable,
Certein flaterers chaūged had his thought
and certayn cōmons þ euer be chaungeable
gaue him cōsel sayd hymself was hable,
To gouerne the state imperial,
And none so hable for to rekon all.

First of Almayn he sent out souldiours,
And of presumption a newe werre he gan.
Thought þ he was among other werrours
Hable for to fight ageyn Vespasian.
And of auenture it befel so than,
In these werres Vespasians brother,
Alayn was it would be none other.

This stoward man called Vitellius,
Vngracions euer fond in his entent,

Smēt

The seventh

Smet of the head of the sayd flautus,
 Brother of Vespasian and to Rome sent
 And after that the Capitoll he byent,
 But suing on within a litle space,
 among Romayns he lost both hap & grace.

Of his ryot what should I more entrete,
 For except ryot nothing of hym I rede
 his coke his pastlere, folke þ were most mete
 to serue his lustes and appetites to fede.
 Forsoke him not but wēt with him in dede,
 Toward Chaumpeine right as any line,
 Up to an hyll called Auentine.

Stōdng in hope but that was but in veyn
 Of Vespasian the fauour to recure,
 Euen to Rome retourned is ageyn,
 the palace entred & there hymselfe to assure,
 Hauing with him none other creature,
 the gates ther which was to him gret shame
 take at the last forsoke his own name.

Halfe naked he was, and half sound yclad,
 All alone like as he was founde,
 So in the Citie afore the people lad
 Both his hādes behind his backe was bound
 with mighty cheynes and with ropes round
 Like a woode man of looke and of visage,
 The people to him hauing this language.

O thou olde lecherous fowle glutton,
 I very cowarde, to al vertue contrary,
 Cruel vengeable of thy condicion,
 To euery good man cruel aduersary,
 To all cursed benigne and debonayre,
 Roote of al surfeits, hauing ay delite,
 To sue and folowe thy lecherous appetitz.

With such rebukes and casting of ordure,
 with dung and slag blotted was his visage
 In the presence of many a creature,
 With cordes drawe he was by gret outrage
 Unto a place called in their language,
 their most chief racks or galowes of þ town
 where is of custome done execution.

Some men remēbre he slayn was in hast,
 with sharpe swordes dismembred on þ ground
 His careyn after into Tybze cast,
 with a large hoke of yron sharpe and round,

More reuerenced than a stinking bood,
 Remembryng here mine outour seventh also,
 Of this Vitellius, Galba and Otho.

Affirming thus as for their partie,
 they be named among the Emperours,
 For a time the state bid occuppe,
 And first this Galba by record of auctours,
 Dred at mischief boyd of al succours,
 Eyght monethes reigned as lord and syre,
 And after that cast out of his empire.

The thyrd moneth as made is mencion,
 Otho dred, proud and ambitious,
 And as I fynd the domination,
 Last eyght monethes of Vitellius.
 And for they wer proud ribaudy lecherous
 Cruel vengeable, boyme of cursed lyne,
 In wretchednes echone they did fine.

¶ Here Bochas ageyn gluttony com-
 pleyne, saying as it foloweth.

Here John Bochas seeing the great
 offence,
 Of this foresayd fromard company
 Toke hys penne of entere diligence,
 And in his study gan hymself applie,
 To damne the vyce of hateful gluttony,
 Fro which sinne record of Adam,
 All our mischieues and sorowes came.

By the outrage of disobeyssaunce,
 Our seyde fader being in Paradyse,
 twene him & vertue ther rose a gret distaunce
 Clerelpe conceiued he that was so wyse,
 Aboue creatures by reason bare the pyce,
 Till he offoly wrongly gaue assent,
 to be gouerned by a false serpent.

Hys innate vertues did hym anon forlake,
 for his assenting and did in hast retourne
 Ageyn to heauen whan the infernal snake,
 In stede of vertue did with man forourne,
 For which we haue gret mater for to mourn
 Sith that we be disfourmed in certeyn,
 By vicious laising of vertue made bareyn.

And thus came in the domination,
 Of vyces al and held a great battayle,

The

The retinue sent from the infernal donged
As woful wretches in earth for to assayle,
Stretching their power & proudly ga preuaile
through al the world and possession toke,
for our demerites whan vertues vs forsoke

These said vertues comprised in þ nymbre
Of foure reckoned prudence, attemperaunce,
from vicious life tadawed vs fro þ nymbre
Righteousnes to haue hold the balaunce,
And fortitudo of their aliaunce,
whan they forsoke mankynde to gouerne,
than of al vertue was clipped the lanterne.

Thus throw derknes vices wer made bold,
the multitude almost innumerable,
Among al reckoned of new or old,
There be foure perillous and repreneable,
Slouth, lechery and most abhominable,
falle auarice by a greby desyre,
with gluttonye chief kindler of their fyre.

Nature in sooth with litle is content,
And as mine autour abideth here a whyle,
And to remember was somewhat diligent,
To wyte whan Saturne reigned in þ yle
Called Crete the prophetesse Cibile,
In her time by great auctoritie,
The world deuided prudently in thre.

A chapter describing the golden world
that is to saye whan attemperaunce hadde
wholy the gouernaunce.

The world whan Saturne was
first king,
Reygnyng in Crete in his royall
estate,
Aoe Abraham, by vertuous liuyng,
caused earthly folke to be most fortunate
The worlde tho dayes was called aureate,
for sobernes and attemperaunce,
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

There was that time no wrong nor violēce
Enuy exyled from euery creature,
Dissolucion and drunken insolence,
Ribaudy and al suche foule ordure,

Stoward surfetes contrary to nature,
Banished wer because attemperaunce,
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Youth was brydled vnder discipline,
Vertuous study floured in middle age,
Dyed held the yard of nurture and doctrine,
Not restreyned from surquedous outrage,
Hateful detraction repressed his language,
kouth was charitie because attemperaunce
had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Fortitudo stode tho in his might,
defended widowes cherished chastitie,
knighthode in promes gaue out so clere a li-
ght id his sweozd of trouth & equitie (ght
Held by the churche in spiritual dignitie,
punished Heretikes because attemperaunce
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Rightwisenes chastised al robbours,
By egall balaunce of execution,
fraud, false mede, put back ward fro furours
true promes holde made no delacion,
forswearing shamed durst enter in no toun,
nor lesingmongers because attemperaunce
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

That golden world could loue god & drede,
All the seven dedes of merrey for to vse,
the rich was ready to do almes dede,
who asked harbour men did him not refuse
No man of malice would other tho accuse,
defame his neyghbour, because attēperaūce
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

The true marchāt by measure bought and
Deceit was none in the artificer, (sold
making no balkes þ plough was truly hold
Abacke stode Idlenes farre from labourer
Discrecion marciat at diner and supper,
content with measure because attēperaūce
Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Of wast in clothig was þ time none exceſſe
men might þ lord from his subiettes know
A differēce made twene pouertie & richesſe
twene a princeſſe and other states lowe,
of horned beaſtes no boar was tho blowe,
nor counterfeit feining because attēperaūce

Had.

Had

The seventh

Smet of the head of the sayd flavius,
 Brother of Vespasian and to Rome sent
 And after that the Capitolle he bent,
 But suring on within a litle space,
 among Romayns he lost both hap & grace.

Of his ryot what should I more entrete,
 For except ryot nothing of hym I rede
 his coke his pastlere, folke þ were most mete
 to serue his lustes and appetites to fede.
 Forsoke him not but wet with him in dede,
 Toward Chaumpaine right as any line,
 Up to an hyll called Auentine.

Stodring in hope but that was but in veyn
 Of Vespasian the fauour to recure,
 Euen to Rome retourned is ageyn,
 the palace entred & there himsele to assure,
 Hauing with him none other creature,
 the gates ther which was to him gret shame
 take at the last forsoke his own name.

Halfe naked he was, and half found yelad,
 All alone like as he was founde,
 So in the Citie afore the people lad
 Both his hâdes behind his backe was bound
 with mighty cheynes and with ropes round
 Like a woode man of looke and of visage,
 The people to him hauing this language.

O thou olde lecherous fowle glutton,
 A very coward, to al vertue contraty,
 Cruel vengeable of thy condicion,
 To every good man cruel aduersary,
 To all cursed benigne and debonayre,
 Roote of al surfeits, hauing ap delite,
 To sue and folowe thy lecherous appetitz.

With such rebukes and casting of ordure,
 with dung and slag blotted was his visage
 In the presence of many a creature,
 With cordes drawe he was by gret outrage
 Unto a place called in their language,
 their most chief rackses or galowes of þ town
 where is of custome done execution.

Some men remēbz he slayn was in hast,
 with sharpe swordes dismembred on þ ground
 His careyn after into Tybze cast,
 with a large hoke of yron sharpe and round,

More reuerenced than a stinking boord,
 Remembryng here mine autour seyth also,
 Of this Vitellius, Galba and Otho.

Affirming thus as for their partie,
 they be named among the Emperours,
 For a time the state bid occuppe,
 And first this Galba by record of auctours,
 Dred at mischief boyd of al succours,
 Eght monethes reigned as lord and sye,
 And after that cast out of his empyre.

The thyrd moneth as made is mencion,
 Otho dred, proud and ambitious,
 And as I fynd the dominacion,
 Last eght monethes of Vitellius,
 And for they wer proud ribaudy lecherous
 Cruel vengeable, bozne of cursed lyne,
 In wretchednes echone they did fyne.

¶ Here Bochas ageyn gluttony com-
 pleyne, saying as it foloweth.

Here John Bochas seeing the great
 offence,
 Of this foresayd froward company
 Toke hys penne of entere diligence,
 And in his study gan himsele applye,
 To damne the vyce of hateful gluttony,
 Fro which sinne record of Adam,
 All our mischeues and sorowes came.

By the outrage of disobeyaunce,
 Our sayd fader being in Paradyse,
 twene him & vertue ther rose a gret distaunce
 Clerelye conceiued he that was so wyse,
 Aboue creatures by reason bare the pyce,
 Till he of foly wrongly gaue assent,
 to be gouerned by a falsse serpent.

Hys innate vertues did hym anon forsake,
 for his assenting and did in hast retourne
 Ageyn to heauen whan the infernal snake,
 In stede of vertue did with man sojourn,
 For which we haue gret mater for to mourn
 Sith that we be discourmed in certeyn,
 By vicious leuyn of vertue made bareyn.

And thus came in the dominacion,
 Of vyces al and held a great battayle,

The

The retinue sent from the infernal donged
 His woful wretches in earth for to assaile,
 Stretching their power & proudly ga preuaile
 through al the world and possession toke,
 for our demerites whan vertues vs forsoke

These said vertues comprised in þ nymbre
 Of foure reckoned prudence, attemperaunce,
 from vicious life tabawed vs fro þ slumbe
 Righteousnes to haue hold the balaunce,
 And fortitudo of their aliaunce,
 whan they forsoke mankynde to gouerne,
 than of al vertue was clipped the lanterne.

Thus throw derknes vices wer made bold,
 the multitude almost innumerable,
 Among al reckoned of new or old,
 There be foure perilous and repreneable,
 Slouth, lechery, and most abhominable,
 false auarice by a greedy desyre,
 With gluttonye chief kindler of their fyre.

Nature in sooth with litle is content,
 And as mine autour abydeth here a whyle,
 And to remember was somewhat diligent,
 To write whan Saturne reigned in þ Ile
 Called Crete the prophetesse Sibile,
 In her time by great auctoritie,
 The world deuided prudently in thre.

A chapter describing the golden world
 that is to saye whan attemperaunce hadde
 wholy the gouernaunce.

The world whan Saturne was
 fyrst king,
 Regnyng in Crete in his royall
 estate,
 Aoe, Abraham, by vertuous liuyng,
 caused earthly folke to be most fortunat
 The worlde tho dayes was called aureate,
 for sobernes and attemperaunce,
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

There was that time no wrong nor violēce
 Enuy expyled from euery creature,
 Dissolucion and drunken insolence,
 Ribaudy and al suche foule ordure,

ftoward surfetes contrary to nature,
 Banished wer because attemperaunce,
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Youth was bzidled vnder discipline,
 Vertuous study floured in middle age,
 dyed held the yarde of nurture and doctrine,
 Riot restreyned from surquedous outrage,
 Hatelful detraction repressed his language,
 Youth was charitie because attemperaunce
 had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Fortitudo stode tho in his might,
 defended widowes cherished chastitie,
 knighthode in promes gaue out so clere a li-
 ght id his sweozd of trouth & equitie (ght
 Held by the churche in spiritual dignitie,
 punished Heretikes because attemperaunce
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Rightwosenes chastised al robbours,
 By egall balaunce of execution,
 fraud, false mede, put backward fro furours
 true promes holde made no delacion,
 forswearing thamed durst enter in no town,
 nor lesingmongers because attemperaunce
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

That golden world could loue god & dyede,
 All the seven dedes of mercy for to vse,
 the rich was ready to do almes dede,
 who asked harbour men did him not refuse
 No man of malice would other tho accuse,
 defame his neighbour, because attēperaūce
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

The true marchāt by measure bought and
 Deceit was none in the artificer, (sold
 making no balkes þ plough was truly hold
 Abacke stode Jolenes farre from labourer
 Discrecion marciall at diner and supper,
 content with measure because attēperaūce
 Had in that world wholy the gouernaunce.

Of wast in clothig was þ time none excelle
 men might þ lord from his subiectes know
 A differēce made twene pouertie & richesse
 twene a princesse and other states lowe,
 of horned beastes no boast was tho blowe,
 nor counterfett feining because attēperaūce

Had.

Had

The seventh

Had in that world wholly the gouernaunce.

This golden world long while dyd endure
Was none allay in that metall sene,
till Saturne ceased by record of scripture,
Jupiter reigned put out his father clene,
Chaunged obaison into siluer shene,
Al by so downe because attemperaunce,
Was set asyde and losse her gouernaunce.

Of Martes mineral the metal is so strong
Inflexible and not malliable,
By sturdines to do the people wrong
with rigorous sword, furious & vengeable
the mercifull golde of Phebus not plicable,
to haue compassion because attemperaunce
was set asyde and lost her gouernaunce.

Let(e of philosophers) is called gold lepus
Tin of Jupiter) crashtyng and dul of soune
false and fugitive is Mercurius,
the Moone is mutable of her condiction,
The golden world is turned by so downe,
In eche estate sith attemperaunce,
Was set asyde and lost her gouernaunce.

By Sibillaes exposition,
take of this metal the moralitie,
the golden worlde was gouerned by reason
the world of pryn was furious crueltie,
The moone is mutable full of duplictie,
lyke to this world because attemperaunce,
Is set asyde and hath no gouernaunce.

Venus of louers emperesse and quene,
Of vicious lusses Lady and maistresse,
Her metall copier that wil tennish grene,
A chaungeable colour contrary to sadnesse
A notable figure of worldly brotlenesse,
Like gier Venus because attemperaunce
Was set asyde and lost her gouernaunce.

Wine auctor Bochas ga piteously cōplain,
Of the disordinate comorous gluttony,
Of Vitellius and his felowes twayne,
All the defouled with horrible lechery,
defamed by flauider noised for their ribaudy
contrarious enemies echone to attēperaūce,
Banished fro their courtes might haue no
(gouernaunce,

Of gluttony and riotous excesse,
watche and reuel and drinking al the nyght
come vncouth leuers & many great accesse
membres podagre maketh me thet goe not ri-
Goutes, mozmalles horrible to p sight (ghe
Many infirmities because attemperaunce,
was not of couisel toward their gouernaunce

Out of they court banished was prudence,
fortitudo had none interesse,
Gain vicious luyng to make resistance,
cryed wulues head was vertuous sobernes
trowth durst not medle, aback stode rithwyl-
put out of houshold was atēperaūce (nes,
with these thre Emperours coulede haue no
(gouernaunce,

Sonne of the prophete called zacharye,
the Patriarche, the holy man saint John,
Victorious champion of greby gluttonye,
Lived in desert deinties he had none,
Did eate wild honey, lay on the cold stone,
Locusts garbzed his cooke was tēperaūce
And of his houshold had al the gouernaunce.

Of Camel heeres was wouē his clothing,
Record the ghospel that can the trowth tell,
Honisforles his moderate fedying,
Wong wylde beastes whan he dyd dwell,
to staunch his thyrst drank water of p well,
this blessed Baptist roote of attemperaunce
set for chief mirrour of al good gouernaunce.

Of his byete Catour was scarstie,
His colfull sode was vertuous abstinence,
Rootes of deserte his delicate plentie,
His rich pimentes his Ipoeras of dispence
Hing not in Costretes nor botels in p spēce
Not excessive because attemperaunce,
Had of his houshold wholly the gouernaunce.

This Baptist John by his moderate foode,
the chief triūph of abstinence hath begonne,
This Patriarche reckon one the good,
content with litle al suffisaūce hath wonne
As Diogenes in his litle tonne,
Held hym apayde because attemperaunte,
Had of his houshold al the gouernaunce.

His tonne to hym was recete & housholde
And

And if I should boast of his Sellere,
there wer no cuppes of syluer noz of golde,
his costful vintage came from the riuer,
wel timed measure was for his mouth but.
And his tastour was attemperaunce, (lere
which of his houlhold had al þ gouernaunce.

His conquest was moze souerain of degre,
Than Alexander for all his hye renouu,
for he conquered his sensualitee,
Made him subiect and seruaunt to reason
Daunted of prudence eche foze yn passion,
His clerke of kitchin called attemperaunce
which of his dyet had al the gouernaunce.

Of superfluite, of slouth and of slepe,
this Diogenes stode euer among in drede,
Of worldly fauour he toke no maner kepe,
Straw was his litter a simple russet wede.
Turned his tonne again the wind in dede,
twene whote and cold that attemperaunce,
in somer & winter had whole þ gouernaunce

Cleuoye.

Noble princes of prudence take hebe,
This litle Chapter bryefly to cõprehend
The golden world is turned into lede,
Pray to god his grace down to sende,
Of his hye mercy that it may soone amend.
And that this princeesse called attẽperaunce
may of your houlholdes haue þ gouernance

Chiefly for loue and parcel eke for drede,
in your estate whan ye be most shynend,
for your ãcrease & your most gracious spede
To his pzeceptes do diligently attende,
Of old Emperours rede the Legende,
whyle they wer ruled by attemperaunce,
in lōg prosperitie stode their gouernaunce.

Of worldly kingdoms Rome is called hede
whose royall boundes farthest out extende,
In marciall actes both in length and brede,
Rem publicam by pꝛowesse to defende,
No foze yn enemy hardy to offende,
They hye noblesse whyle attemperaunce,
With her thye sustre had the gouernaunce.

Howe the kynrede of Jacob was de-
stroyed, Chyste was bozne and cruci-
fied, Jerusalem destroyed, and e-
leuen hundred thousand slayn
and dead by sweorde, hun-
ger, fyre and pestilence.

The .ix. Chapter.

The story ended of Nitellus,
Of his two seres Galba & Otho,
How his careyn horrible and hy-
deous.

Drowned in Tiber was possed to and fro.
After the story accomplished was and do,
Came great number to Bochas as I rede,
Echeone descended of Jacobs kinrede.

In token of compleint and of heaumes,
Like folke dismayd clad in mourning wede
For the constraint of their wretchednes,
bespreint with teares quakly in their drede
knowyng no recure in so streit a nede,
Resemblyng folke by tokens full mortall,
That wer toward some feast funeral.

Their ougly cheres piteous to behold,
As they gan approche the presence,
Of John Bochas to tell their sorowes olde
their woundes bleding by marciall violence
oppressed w hunger, thyrst, soden pestilence
By foze yn sweord their liues manacing,
Upon the death as beastes abyding.

That wer enclosed narrow in a folde,
Dispeyred succout to recure,
to passe their boundes for dyed thet wer not
within ãfamed bareyn of al pasture. (bold,
This wofull story remembred in scripture,
How that of Jacob the generacion,
Was vengeably brought to destruction.

This Patriarche called whilom Israell,
Most renowned among all nations,
And most famous the Bible can wel tell,
their line out reckoned thꝛoughout al regis
By gods behest toke their possessions (ons
mauger Egypciens & Pharaos pride (gyde,
whan Duke Moses by god was made their
Ph. ii. with

The seventh

With dye fete they passed the red see,
conueyed by Moyses and also by Aaron,
their law was wrytten the Bible who list se
vpon Sina in tables of hard stone,
And through deserte as they did gone,
with Angels meate called Manna as I rede
fourty winter there he dyd them fede,

After Moyses led by Josue
Into the londe of promission,
Twelue linages of Jacob there parde,
He let make a distribucion,
And to eche line he gaue his porcion,
By promise made afoze to Abzaham,
To Isaac, Jacob, whan they thither came,

By Patriarkes and prophetes that wer sad
mauger their enmies and their mortal sone
by mighty Dukes and Judges thei wer lad.
Gate all the regions where thei dyd gone,
Till at the last of pryde they echeone,
Like other nations would haue a king,
Saul was chole, god graunted their asking

Thus by Patriarkes and by their allies,
From Abzaham the genealogie,
told by prophetes and by their prophecies,
conueyed to Dauid which in his regalye,
Helde of Jewes all whole the monarchie,
Of whose kintred by processe thus it stode,
was Christ Jesu bozne of that royal bloode.

Set fro his father as prophetes determine,
toke flesh and bloud for our saluacion,
By the holy ghoost bozne of a pure virgine,
Had among Jewes great tribulacion,
Under Herodes suffered passion,
And as the ghospel truely doth deserue,
the thyrd day he rose from death to liue.

This blessed lord, this lord of most vertue,
End of Decēber bozne sothly in Bethleem,
And by the Angel named was Jesu,
Shewed to thre kynges by a starre beame,
This same Jesus in Jerusalem,
By conspiracion of Jewes through enuye
By Pilate dempt to dye on Caluerie,

Thus vnto Jesu Jewes wer vnkinde,
for which thei were destroyed nye echeone,
Christ prophesied (þ ghospel maketh mynd,)

how of their citie there should not leue a ston
vpon another, for their mortall sone
should them besiege he told the so certayne,
And make Jerusalem with þ sode all plaine,

With weping eyen Christ told the so befoze
Of their ruine and of their destruction,
Sinne was cause that they wer lozne,
for thei not knew to thei confusion,
Time of their notable visitacion, (lowe
whan Christ came down bozne here in earth
for their saluacio thei list him not to know,

Chyrtte yere full, Chroniclers wyte,
And somewhat more after his passion,
Among the Jewes plainely to endite,
Withinthemselves fel a diuision,
Murthzers rose vp within their owne town
So great a nūber with many an hometide
That in the citie no man durst well abyde,

Their presidentes reignyng in Judee,
Seyng this horrible foule rebellion,
And of murthzers the mortall crueltie,
That long endured in that region,
which for tapperse Romains sent downe
Vespasian, with many a manly knyght,
which into Galile toke his way ryght,

And to chastise the murthzers & robbours,
brent their countrey as he rode by and downe
So continued with his souldiours,
Tyl vnto tyme the countreys enuitoun,
Of Jerusalem entred be the towne,
With their oblacions in many sondry wyse
As Palke requyred to do theyr sacrifice,

Before the dayes was Jerusalem,
Had in great worship of all nations,
Called princesse of euery other Realme,
Whose fame stretched throughout al regions
theyr treasor great and theyr possessions,
Double walled of building most notable,
Dyding none enemy for it was impregnable

Among Romains was many a manly man
wylling echeone of one affection,
Through the knighthode of Vespasian,
Echeone to labour to the destruction
Of Jerusalem for great diuision,

Among

Among themself was gonne in the cite,
By certayn captains wer in number thye.

Simon, John and Eleazarus,
Horrible tirantes oppressing the poeple,
Of gouernaunce froward and outragious,
falsly deuised eche other dyd assaile,
Among themself had many great battaile
Warre without, and warre was within,
Thus of vengeance mischief dyd begyn.

Vespasian not being reches,
for his party like a prudent knight,
By notable meanes excited them to pees.
But all for nought bleynt they owne sight
to chese the best they could not see arpyht.
And in this whyle this noble warreour,
Vespasian was chosen Empeour.

By Alexandria to Rome he went agayn,
receiued there the imperial dignitie,
His sonne Titus he made his chief captayn
His procuratour to gouerne in Iudee,
Beset enuiron Jerusalem the citee,
With men of armes seged it so about,
that none mighte enter nor none issue out.

Stopped they the founteyns & their waters clere
Enfamed them for lackyng of vitayle,
A certain womā thus saith þ Chronicle
Rosted her chyld whan vitayle dyd fayle,
She had of stoz none other apparayle,
Thereon by leysure her self she dyd fede,
which in a woman was to horrible a dede.

Their mighty walles & gūnes wer cast dou
two strong towres take of their citee,
Resistance gan fall in the towne,
they stode of hunger in such perplexitte,
Titus of knighthode and magnanimitie,
Througout the towne called Antonian,
Is entred in like a knightly man.

The people in stretes lay for hunger dead,
to bye nor sell no lifelode in the towne,
there was no succor nother of drink nor byed
In pain of death bothe nother by nor down
Vomite of one was the refeccion,
vnto another there was such scarstee,
who redeth Josephus þ trouth he may there
(see,

Brent was the temple made by Salomon,
which had edured thus wyte þ Chronicle
That was so royal built of riche stone,
fully a thousand and two hundred yere,
Romains entered mauger their portere,
with spere, pollax, & sweordes sharp whet,
Like woode Lions slough whom they met.

Their rich gates couered with plate of gold
wer brent and molten without exception
the siluer ymages that forged wer of golde,
the violent spere made them runne doune
Noble Titus had compassion,
his martial Dukes spared nothyng certain
Lest of presumptiō they would rebel again.

Alten hundred thousand wer there slayn,
By swoerd, by hunger, by fyre, and pestilēce
Stinke of carcases that in the stretes layn,
caused of death most fodein violence,
And Titus gaue among them this sētence
I meane of them that dyd aloue dwell
for a penny men should thyrty sell.

So as Judas solde Chyrist for thyrty pence,
Titus agayn thought of equitie,
Of marchandise to make recompence,
thyrty Jewes found in the citee,
for a peny and for no moze payde,
They to be sold for their great outrage,
Euer among Saracins to liue in seruage.

Of the temple a pteft that was full olde,
two stately lanterns þ wer ful bright & shene
Tables, Basons, Altols of bygyht gold,
He presented and thus he dyd mene,
That they treasour should wel be sene
Of the temple, and shewed to Titus,
In token it was whilom so gloriouse,

To shewe eke there he dyd his busy cure,
Silke, Synamome, frankensence withal,
for sacrifice the purpate besture
with Thymyame the rich pectorall,
whiche ordeyned wer in especiall,
for the solempne place of places al,
Sancta sanctorum, and so men dyd it cal,

Of the citee a prince called John,

þh.iii.

To

The seventh

To Titus came and Metwed his presence
Dale for hunger there came also Simon,
brought by a Duke þ named was Terence
Clad in purple brought by violence
received of Titus whan this noble towne,
castels, towres, and walles wer sinet downe.

Into a castle called Masadan,
Cleazarus had take his flight,
Besieged of Silua oꝝ he the castle wan,
This Cleazar like a furious knight,
Within the castle the self same nyght,
Slitred euery man, father, child, and brother,
Wharpe sweoꝝdes eche man to slep other.

Thus was the citie most statelý of building
that whilom was of this worlde chief town
where Melchisedech reigned priest & king
By dayes olde as made is mencion,
restored by Dauid builded new of Salomō
princes of prouinces was no where such an
now is it abiect & refuse of al other. (other

Unto the Jewes Christ Jesu gaue respite,
full thirtie yere oꝝ he toke vengeance,
In token the lord hath toy and great delite,
whan that sinners dispoſe them to penaunce,
By contricion and heartely repentaunce,
This blessed lord, this king most merciable,
Lengest abideth oꝝ he list be vengeance.

He was to them so gracious and benigne,
Bade that thei shoulde to hym conuert sone,
Metwed vnto them many an vncouth sygne
During twelue dayes eclipsed was þ mone
þ people at ons knew not what was to done
But indurate in their froward entent
Like folke abasht wist not what it ment.

Afoze the siege oꝝ Titus gan the warre,
Quet the citie wherof they wext aserde,
there appeared a comete and a starre,
the sterre was shape like a sharpe swerde
Touching the comete there was neuer herd
Of such another, so fery bright, and clere,
Which endured the space of all a yere.

Their festiual day halowed in April,
their priestes busý to make oblacion
So great a light the temple dyd fyll,

That all the people stondyng enuiron,
thought it so bright in their inspeccon
Passyng the sunne as it dyd seme,
But what it ment no man could deme.

As the priestes dyd their busý cure,
to offer a calfe, anone oꝝ thei toke hede,
the same calfe a thyng again nature,
brought forth a lambe thesame time I rede
an ougly tokē which put thē in ful gret dred
A contrary pronostication,
Shewd vnto them of their subuersion.

With other tokens froward and contrary,
thesame time wer shewed euer among,
the brasen doozes of the inward sent warý,
with prou barres Met that wer most strong,
Bode of entayle rounde and wonder long,
þ might not meue with thirtý mens might,
Opened by themself twyse on a nyght.

There wer seyn also chayres in the ayre,
men of armes with bright sweoꝝdes clere,
Of plate and mayle armure was so fayre,
Bright as phebus where they dyd appere,
And as the storp also doth vs lere,
with their heltrons and theyr apparayle,
A profer made Jerusalem for to assaile.

To the Jewes it dyd signifie,
A pronostike of their destrucccon,
Priestles to the temple as they did them hye
þpon a nyght to do oblacion,
Amid the temple was heard a dredful soun,
Of which noyle this was the dredfull ende
Rise þp echeone and let vs hence wend.

And ful foure yere tofoze the siege gan,
One Ananias yong and tender of age,
Of his birth, sonne of a rude man,
By disposicion dull of his courage,
Like as he had fall in a rage,
Ran in the citie by a maner frensie,
Spaced not with open mouth to crye.

Unto this noyse was made none obstacle
But obstinate euer to his entent,
Daye of the feast holde in the tabernacle,
A voyce (quod he) out of the Orient,
voice fro the South, fro North, & Occident

Worpe

voice fro þ. ill. wibes þ blow so brode & wide
voice again Ierusalem crieth out on euery
(syde.

Voice gain the temple, again þ people also,
voice again husbondes, voice againe they
wo to Ierusalē with a treble wo. (wibes
Of hunger, thyrt, and lesyng of their lyues,
of swoerd and fire and many sodein strues
This was the wretched lamentacion,
Which Ananye cryed through the towne.

Beaten he was for his affray ful oft,
whipped, scourged, endlong and byright,
All wet it so he felt ful vnsoft,
Was by beting made seint & feble of might
He stynt not to crye so daye and nyght,
A psonoflike shewing to the cite
How ryght sone it should destroyed be.

By rehearsayle also of Carnotence

With that cite for synne it stode so tho,
That yf Romains by marciall violence,
Had not come and done them al this wee
The earth should haue opened and vndoe,
Deuoured the people boyde of al refuge,
Or drouned the toun by some sodein deluge.

Briefly to passe this begaūce most terrible,
Done vpon Jewes for theyr transgression
for their demerites þ punishig most horrible
Of Ierusalem finall subuersion,
Of the temple, tabernacle, and the towne,
In Iosephus who list se all the dede,
De bello Iudaico the surplus he may rede.

The ende of the
seuenth booke.

The seventh

To Titus came and shewed his presence
 Pale for hunger there came also Simon,
 brought by a Duke þ named was Terence
 Clad in purple brought by violence
 received of Titus whan this noble towne,
 castles, towres, and walles wer sinet downe.

Into a castle called Masadan,
 Eleazarus had take his flight,
 Belieged of Sclua oꝝ he the castle won,
 This Eleazar like a furious knight,
 Within the castle the self same nyght,
 Siered euery man, father, child, and brother,
 Wharpe swoꝝdes ethe man to slep other.

Thus was the citie most stately of buildyng
 that whilom was of this worlde chief towne
 where Melchisedech reigned priest & king
 By dayes olde as made is mencion,
 restored by Dauid builded new of Salomō
 princes of prouinces was no where such an-
 now is it abiect & refuse of al other. (other

Unto the Jewes Christ Iesu gaue respite,
 full thirtie yere oꝝ he toke vengeaunce,
 In token the lord hath toy and great delite,
 whan that sinners dispose them to penance,
 By contricion and heartely repentaunce,
 This blessed lord, this king most merciable,
 Longest abideth oꝝ he list be vengeable,

He was to them so gracious and benigne,
 Bade that thei shoulde to hym conuert sone,
 Shewed vnto them many an vncouth sygne
 During twelue dayes eclipsed was þ mone
 þ people at ons knew not what was to done
 But indurate in their froward entent
 Like folke abasht wist not what it ment.

Afoze the siege oꝝ Titus gan the warre,
 Quet the citie wherof thei wext aserde,
 there appeared a comete and a starre,
 the sterre was shape like a sharpe swerde
 Touching the comete there was neuer herd
 Of such another, so fery, bright, and clere,
 Which endured the space of all a yere.

Their festiual day halowed in April,
 their priestes busy to make oblacion
 So great a light the temple dyd fyll,

That all the people stondyng enuiron,
 thought it so bright in their inspection
 passyng the sunne as it dyd seme,
 But what it ment no man could deme.

Is the priestes dyd their busy cure,
 to offer a calfe, anone oꝝ thei toke hede,
 the same calfe a thynge again nature,
 brought forth a lambe thesame time I rede
 an ougly tokē which put the in ful gret dred
 A contrary pronostication,
 Shewed vnto them of their subuersion.

With other tokens froward and contrary,
 thesame time wer shewed euer among,
 the blasen doozes of the inward sentuary,
 with yron barres set that wer most strong,
 Brode of entayle rounde and wonder long,
 þ might not meue with thirtie mens might,
 Opened by themself twyse on a nyght.

There wer seyn also chayres in the ayre,
 men of armes with bright swoꝝdes clere,
 Of plate and mayle armure was so fayre,
 Bright as phebus where they dyd appere,
 And as the stoyr also doth vs here,
 with their heltrons and theyr apparayle,
 I profer made Jerusalem feto auale.

To the Jewes it dyd signifie,
 A pronostike of their destruction,
 Priestes to the temple as they did them hye
 vpon a nyght to do oblacion,
 Amid the temple was heard a dyrdful soun,
 Of which noyse this was the dyrdfull ende
 Rise vp echeone and let vs hence wend.

And ful foure yere tofoze the siege gan,
 One Ananias yong and tender of age,
 Of his birth, sonne of a rude man,
 By disposition dull of his courage,
 Like as he had fall in a rage,
 Ran in the citie by a maner frensie,
 Spared not with open mouth to crye.

Unto this noyse was made none oblaclie
 But obstinate euer to his entent,
 Daye of the feast holde in the tabernacle,
 I voyce (quod he) out of the Orient,
 voyce fro the South, fro North, & Occident
 voyce

voice fro þ. iiii. wdes þ blow so brode & wide
voice again Ierusalem crieth out on euery
(syde.

Voice gain the temple, again þ people also,
voice again husbondes, voice againe they;
wdo to Ierusalē with a treble wo. (wīues
Of hunger, thyrst, and lesyng of their lyues,
of swoord and fire and many sodein strīues
This was the wretched lamentacion,
Which Ananye cryed through the towne.

Beaten he was for his assay ful oft,
whipped, scourged, endlong and bypight,
All wet it so he felt ful vnsoft,
As by beting made feint & feble of might
He synt not to crye so daye and nyght,
A pzonostike shewing to the cite
How ryght sone it should destroyed be.

By rehearsayle also of Carnot enee

With that cite for synne it stode so tho,
That yf Romains by martiall violence,
Had not come and done them al this wo
The earth should haue opened and vndoe,
Deuoured the people boyde of al refuge,
Or drouned the town by some sodein deluge.

Briefly to passe this vegaice most terrible,
Done vpon Jewes for theyr transgression
for their demerites þ punishig most horrible
Of Ierusalem finall subuersion,
Of the temple, tabernacle, and the towne,
In Iosephus who list se all the dede,
De bello Iudæco the surplus he may rede.

The ende of the
seuenth booke.

The Prologe to the eyght Booke.



Bochoas maketh here an
exclamacion,
Agayne the Jewes grea
t unkyndenes,
Brought by the Romans
their cite and towne,
Like as the story dyd here tofore expresse,
They disparpled to live in wretchednes,
By gods hond punished for their outrage,
For ever live in tribute and servage.

Folowynge myne autour I call for to touch,
So as I can rehearsynge the manere,
How John Bochoas lyng on his couche,
Spake to hymself sayd as ye shall here.
Why art thou so dull of looke and chere:
Like a man thy face beareth witnessse
That hym disposeth to live in Idlenes.

Certes (quod John) I take right good kepe
Of much trauaile that the outrage,
Hath by long slumber cast me in a slepe,
My limmes feble, crooked, and feint for age
Cast in a drede for dulnes of courage,
For to presume vpon me to take,
Of the eyght boke an ende for to make.

Thou weneest parauenture in thine opinio,
By this labour to geat thee a name,
For to rehearse the sobeyn fallynge downe,
And by some new proffesse for to attaine,
Of princeesses siting bye in þ house of fame
In diuers bokes where thou doest the find
Perpetuallly to put thy name in minde.

Thy dayes short put the in great drede,
Of such a labour to take the passage,
The more feble the flower is the spede,
The sight darked and thou art fall in age.
Among remembryng thinke on this lagage
Whan men be buried lowe in the earth dost,
Sawe of good living farewell al guerdon,

Worldly goodes shall passe ryght soone,
Treasour, cunnyng and al shall out of mind
Frendship chaigeth as both þ cloudy moone
At a streight nede few frendes men to find,
But a good name whan it is left behynde,

passeth al riches self it be wel deserved,
and al gold in vasser locked and conserued.

Of thy labour the same shall wepe derke,
beware Bochoas and hereof take good hede
Slouth spake to me & had me leue werke,
for a smal reward þ shalt haue for thy meke
As by example thou mayst other rede,
This was the language I had therof couth
attwene John Bochoas & this Lady Slouth.

Bochoas assayed ga doun his head decline
vpon his pillowe lay hangynge in a traunce
Stode in great dout could not determe,
Like a man hangynge in balauce,
to what party he should his penne auance
To procede as he undertoke,
O; leaue the labour of his eyght booke,

It wene twayn abyding thus a while,
what was to doe in doubt he gan to flete,
Halse within, and halse ouer the stile,
could not deserue to hi what was most mete
Tyl fraunces Petrarke the laureat poete
Crouned with laurer grace was his guide,
Came and set him down by his beddes side,

And as Bochoas out of his slumber abrayde
And gan adawen somewhat of his chere,
And saw Petrarke lowely to hym he sayde,
Welcome master, crouned with laurel,
Which haue I steyle like a sonne clere,
With poetrie playnly to deserue,
Most souerainly enlumined by your lue.

I haue despyed as it is wel couth,
Of rightful hert by humble attendaunce,
To do you worship fro my tender youth,
And so shall euer voyde of all variaunce,
Duryng my lyfe (for truly in substaunce)
ye haue been lanterne, light and direction,
Ipe to support myne occupacion,

As in wytyng bookes to compyle,
chief example to my great auantage,
to resourme the rudenes of my stile,
with aureat colours of your frely langage
But

But now for dulle by impotence of age,
Of Decrepitus marked with many a signe
My labour by of wrytynge I resygne.

I call me not forth to procede,
Stond at a bay for dyen for werimes,
quod frācis Petrarch, lese not thus thy mede
yue men no cause to report nor expresse,
In thy last age thou hast found a maystresse
which hath thee bydded in soth & is couth,
and holdeth thy reyne & she is called slouth

In euident token of froward slougarby,
Upon thy bed thy limmes so to dresse,
Rise by for shame, for I can well espye,
folke that can grone and fele no sickenes.
Theyr chamberlayn is called ydlenes,
which layeth thy pillowe at eue & at morow,
doyd her from thee and let her go to sorow.

To all vertue froward and contrary,
Is ydlenes here in this present life,
which hath the drawe away fro thy library
till they not suffer to be contemplatife,
for her condicion is to hold strife,
With euery vertuous occupation,
which men should holde of wisdom & reaso.

In this matter what should I long tarye,
thy slumber leaue and by thine euen dresse
The boke I made of lyfe solitarie,
Remember thereon the which in liernes.
Teacheth the way of vertuous busines,
By and by who list rede euery lyne,
Of contemplation morall and deuine.

As I sayd erst yet list by thy looke,
for sake thy bed ryle by anone for shame,
wouldest þ rest now upon thy leueth booke,
And leaue the eyghtr in soth þ art to blame.
Procede forth and geat thy self a name,
And with one thyng do thy self comforte,
As thou deseruest men after shall report.

Make a comparisō twene darknes & light,
Twene ydlenes and occupacion,
Twene fayre dayes, and the cloudey nyght,
Twene cowarde prowesse, and hys renoune
Twene vertuous speech, & false detraction

And to conclude all vires to repressse,
Contrary to slouth is vertuous busines.

Vertuous busines, O Bochas take good
renueth al thinges of old antiquitie (hede,
Maketh men to liue after they be dead,
remēbereth the noblesse of many great citie,
And ne wet wyters, al wet gone pardie,
wherefore Bochas sith thou art nere the lōd,
Suffer not thy ship to Rumble on þ sond.

I meane as thus, the ship of thy trauayle,
Which hath passed the sea of bookes seuen
cast not anker till thou haue good riuayle,
Let no tempest of thunder, rayn, nor leuen,
Nor no wyndes of the cloudey heauen,
nor no false tanglers of demers þ wyl blame
Deprauē thy labour let thy ship arriue.

Hast on thy way let grace crosse thy sayle,
Fall on no sonde of wilfull negligence,
Let good wyl be chief of thy counsayle,
To quie thy rother set entere diligence,
If bitaile sayle and wine to thy dispence,
Yet at the last thinke for thy succour,
Some royal prince shal quite the thy labor.

Thinke by wryting autours did their paine
to yue princes their commendacions,
to Remus, Romulus, called founders twen
Of Rome towne and of two Scipions,
they wrote þ knighthode, prudence of two Ca-
of Julius, Pompey, Hannibal eke also (tons
By example of whom loke that thou doe so,

Of prophetes they wrote the prophecies,
And the noblesse of olde Moyses,
Of Poetes the Laureate Poetes,
the force of Sāplō, the strength of Hercules
Of two Grekes Pirthus and Achilles,
By theyr wryting bokes say the same,
Into this daye yet endureth the name.

And he that can, and ceaseth for to write,
Notable examplis of our pcedessours,
Of enuy men wyl him atwite,
that he in gardenis let perishe whollō flour
In sondry caas þ might doe great succours
Labour for other and spare not thy trauaile
for vertus labor gain slouth mai most auail

The Prologe.

A thyng remembered of antiquitie,
 As when there is set a fayre ymage,
 Of a prince of hys owne degree,
 Of a person a pteint of his visage,
 Gladderhys frent, aicheth his coirage,
 And semblably by example men may fynd
 thynges forgotten by wisting come to mind

And so; to make our names perdurable,
 And our merites to put in memoire,
 Wises to eschew in vertue to be stable,
 that labour may of slouth haue the victorie,
 to clapme a see in the heavenly consistorye,
 despite of Idlenes & furthering of vertue,
 fine of our labour be poue to Chyist Jesu.

When Petrarche had rehearsed this lesse,
 In rebuking of vicious Idlenes,
 Bochas supplied and moued of reason,
 Rose from his couch gan his penne dresse,
 Wylle ouercame thimpotent feblenes,
 Of crooked age that Bochas undertoke,

so; raccomplish by his eight boke.

A folowynge after forbulled so; rudenes,
 More than thye score yeres set my date,
 Lust of youth passed his fresnes,
 Colours of Betherke to help me translate,
 Wier faded away I was bozne in Lydgate,
 where Barchus licour doth ful scarcely flete
 My dye soule so; to dewe and wete.

Though passed age hath forbulled me
 Trembling toynes let my hand to wyte,
 And fro me take al the subtile,
 Of curious makynge in Englishe to endite
 Yet in this labour truly me to acquite,
 I shall procede as it is to me due,
 In these two bokes Bochas so; to sue.

¶ The ende of the
 Prologe.



How the proud tiraunt Domitian Emperour of Rome, and many other Emperours and nobles for their outrages and wretchednes mischienously ended.

The fyrst Chapter.

Brother to Titus sonne of Vespasian, came next in ordre as wyke myne autour, The proud ambitious called Domitian, And was in Rome crowned Emperour, An extorcioner and a false pillour, proudly commaunded in his estate bystalled Of all the world he should a god be called.

Through hie presumpcion of him it is eke told, nother of timber hauen nor of stone, Set by Images of syluer and of golde

In token there was no god but he alone, Into pathmos he exiled eke Saint John And agayn Christians þe second next Aers, That began fyrst the persecution.

This same tiraunt reigntyng in his estate To all the citte was passyng odious, best and most worthy he slough of þe Senate And vnto all that wer vertuous, Mortal enemy and most malicious, And for slaughter of Senatours in þe tour, Ared the triumph as made is mencion.

Made among Jewes by ful great outrage, Wheras he had greatest suspicion, to sleial tho that wer of the linage, Of Dauids bynted or of kyng Salomon, Lest he wer put out of dominacion, Among Jewes this was his meanyng, Slough al tho that wer bozne to bee kyng.

Amid his palace as god would of right, Punish a tiraunt and quite hym his meide, this Domitian was slayn vpon a nyght, His carein after vnbured as A rede. And Commodus doth after hym succede, whiche

The eyght

Which was al yowre by fleschly appetite,
to leue al vertue and folow his delite.

Theatre playes of custome he dyd vse,
As was the custome there and the vsage,
His lyfe in vices fally dyd abuse,
In lecherous lustes dyspēt al his yong age,
to the Romans dyd full great damage,
for of the Senate that wer most vertuous,
wer fally slayn by this Commodus.

In his time by stroke of thundre dent
And fyre lightning he came down fro heauē
the common library was of the citie bent,
with royall bookes of all the craftes seuen,
Bokes of Poetes mo than I can neuē,
And Commodus byrly to termine,
was slayn and strangled by his concubine.

Elus Pertinax came next on the ryng,
O'dayned after Emperour of that towne,
Olde and batweldy slayn in his ggunnyng,
After whom the boke maketh mencion
By no title of succession,
But an intrusour one called Julian,
thelate vsurpyng to reigne there began.

But of the noble linage Affrican,
Bozne in Tripolis a mighty great Citie,
One Seuerus that was a knightly man,
Gathred of Romans a woder great meine
Both made strong Julian met and he,
At pont Meluan a Citie of Itayle,
And there was Julian slayn in battayle.

Seuerus after entred the Emppre,
And toke vpon hym the domination,
vpon chylden of malice set a fyre,
Began agēn them a persecucion,
Of tyrannye and false ambicion,
But one of Egypt called Pescennius,
Again Seuerus began to worke thus.

Gathred many Seuerus for tasselyle,
In purpose fully and theron dyd his peyne
fyt with hym to haue a great battayle,
Aert of the emppre the crowne for tatteyne.
But ye shall here what fill on these twayne,
On Pescennius fell the discomfiture,
And Seuerus the emppre doth recure.

In his purpose or he might assayle,
With one Albinus he was a manly knight,
He had in Gaule a ful great battayle,
ful great bloud shed in that mortall fyght,
Albinus slayn of very force and might,
Seuerus after entred in Britayn,
Caught sickness and dyed of the paine.

After Seuerus next came Antonine
Of whom the froward disposicion,
As all auctours of hym determine,
His busines and occupation,
Set wholly in fleschly delectacion,
So false a lust his courage dyd assayle,
Among Parthois slayn in battayle.

Macrinus after tofore Bochas came down
Whilom a p'sect in Rome the citie,
Of the p'setour and by inuasion,
came to the imperial famous dignitie,
Occupped a yere, late in his Imperial set,
Till fortune left him to disgrace,
Among his knightes slayn at Archelade.

Next came Aurelius surnamed Antonyne,
A great ribaude and passyng lecherous,
yet was he Bishop as auctours determine
In the temple called Heliogabalus,
And in his time was one Sabellius,
A false Heretike of whom gan the names,
Of a sect called Sabellianes.

This sayd Aurelius agayn all nature,
Of false presumption in bokes it is tolde,
would not pource his wombe by nature,
But in vessels that wer made of gold,
And in despite whan that he was olde,
Slaine of his knightes and not after long
His careyn was thowen into a gonge.

After this proude foresayd Antonyne,
Into the emppre by iust election,
Of Senatours as bokes determine,
Came Aurelius and for his hye renoun,
Surnamed Alexander as made is mencion
fought with Persiens lyke a manly knight
And there hyng Feres put vnto flyght.

This Aurelius the prudent knightly man,
Whan he late Judge in the consistorye,
There

There late one with him called Valian,
A great Carlian notable of memorie;
Of whom it is so bys encrease of glorie,
Reported this by great auctoritie,
He of digestes made the bookes thre.

Full pitteously this Emperour lost his life.
Casually as made is mencion,
Among his knyghtes by a foderne treffe,
Where he was slaine in that discrecion.
After whose ende for thys conclusion,
Toke Bochas the boke wel tel can,
Came Maximinus and with him Gordian.

Maximinus the chronicle both expresse,
Chose of his knyghtes and his soldours,
For his victorious martial hyppocresse,
Done in Almayne and among Emperours
Set by in Rome manger the senatours,
After strong enmye as mine auctour sayth
With al his power vnto Chyrtles sayth.

He was the enmy his life who list to seen,
To chyrtten clerkes of auctoritie,
And specially to old Dyogen.
But in his most furious cruelite,
In Aquileya a mighty strong countree,
Of a prefecte called Puppien he was slaine
Of whose death al Chyrtten men were fayne

Next by the Senate chosen was Gordian,
First againe Parthois he cast him to warrey,
Of Janus temple when the warre began,
He made the gates be opened with the keye,
Which was as then as olde booke seye,
The gates opened to folkes nye and farte,
That in their soone þ Romanis would haue

(warre
With parthois first this saw Gordian,
to hold warre fast he gan him speke,
And vpon them alwaye the field he won,
after he sped hym into Persie and Mede,
Alway victorious in battaile as I rede,
Upon Cypriates slaine as I finde,
by false treason the cronicle maketh mynde.

Next in ordie came Philip by his name,
his sonne eke Philip came with him also,
mine auctour Bochas verberfeth eke þ same
The father the sonne baptised both two,

Right sad and wyse in that they had to doe
And were the first Chyrtten of echone,
emperours reigned for ther tofore was none

By Pontius the Martyr as I rede,
In Nicca a famous great Citee,
They were baptised and afterward in dede
Slayne in battaile for they list not flee,
Tofore their death both of assent pardee,
their treasoure whole that wer Imperial
to Chyrttes church I find they gaue it all.

The Bishopp Sextus toke possession,
Vermouly assigned it to Laurence,
Therof to make distribution,
To poore folke in their indigence,
for which dede by cruel violence,
The tiraunt Decius again the toke a strffe
caused holy Laurence by brooking lose his life

This same Decius cursed and cruel,
Caused þ slaughter of these Philips twene
and for he was subtil false and fell,
By sleight & fallshede he did his bus þeins,
To the Empire by force for to attempe.
The seventh tyrant by persecucion,
which againe Chyrtle folke toke first occasiõ,

mine auctour writeth time of this Decius
the holy Hermite example of perfectiõ
By dayes olde called Antidius,
Lived in desert farte out in wilderness,
As an Hermite bespising al richesse,
Lived by fruite and rootes as men tell,
And of perfection dranke water of the well

Upon Decius for his crueltyes,
againe Chyrtten which gaue so hard sentence
through Rome & Itall mine auctour bereth
In every cite was so gret pestilence
That by the foderne deadly violence
The heartes of men depending in a traider
to saue their liues coude no chenselance,

Of this matter write no more I can,
To these Emperours I will resort againe,
Speake of Gallus and Volusian,
That besy wele they labour was in beyne,
their time worst as some booke sem,
for Martin writeth, an olde Croniculer,

The eyght

In thempire they reigned but two yere,

But both were slaine by the procuring,
and by the purchase of one Emilian,
A Romain knight which by slye working,
To occupie thempire the began,
By tyrannye the lordship there he wan,
whose lordship for lacke of hap and grace,
No longer last than two monethes space.

This little Chapter as tofore is sene,
rehearsed hath and told in wordes pleine,
Of Emperours almost full foure tene,
and of al were good none but twaine,
which to rehearse I haue doe my peine,
And to procede further as I began,
I must nowe write of one Valerian.

HE and hys sonne called Galien,
To al Christen bare great enmitte,
Slough al tho their legend men may seene,
that serued Christ in trouthe and equite,
Whose persecucion and hateful crueltie,
abated was as I can wel rehearse,
By one Sapor that was king of Persie.

By force of armes Sapor this mighty king
Came in Asia and with hys hoste came down
by Tigris Euphrates & knightly so riding,
Toward the parties of Septemtrion,
to Caucasus not farre fro Babilon.
And al Siria he proudly vnder assaile,
And Cappadoc he wan the by batayle.

Whom for to mete came down Valerian,
To Mesopotamie with many legions,
the warre was strong but this knightly man
This hardy Sapor with his champions,
The field hath wonne with al the legions,
Whose rehearsed and through Persie he lad,
Valerian bounde with cheynes round & sad

He was by Sapor mangle hys visage,
this Valeria so streightly brought to wrack
Like a prisoner bound to thys seruage,
By obediunce that found were no lack,
to knie on foure and to prostrate his back,
Vnto Sapor whan him lest to ride,
The by to mount for al his great pride.

This was the office of Valerian
By seruitute during many a yere,
wherefore he was called of many a man,
The ascending Noche in to the sabel net,
which is in french called a mountwote,
This was his office to bowe down his cois
wha king Sapor should moite on his hois

This is the guerdoun & fauour of fortune
her olde maner to pynites and to kinges,
Her double custome bled in commune,
By sodein change of al worldly thinges,
after triumphes and their byrtinges,
what foloweth after here wel tel I can,
I take record of Valerian.

This lady fortune the blind fell goddesse,
to Valerian shewed her self vnstable
Taught him a lesson of her doublenesse,
to king Sapor she was fauourable,
But yet he was to cruel vengeable,
with his fere deuouise of al fauoure
To fode the backe of an Emperoure.

Of olde it hath be songe and cried loud,
Record on Cirus and many other mo,
Kinges of Persie of custome haue be proude
After punished and chastised the also.
Princes of mercy should take heede herto,
After victorie in their estate notable,
To their prisoners for to be merciable.

Whine our our Bochas in thys mater trel
Rebuke tyrannous that were by dayes olde,
Turneth his side, speaketh to Valerian,
where be thy riches & Saphers set in gold
The rich pearles and ringes manyfold,
that thou wer wont to were vpon thy hodes
Now as a wretch arte bound in foure in bodes

Where thou were wont, of furious crueltie
Clad in purple within Rome town,
to Christ contrarye in thine imperial see,
Gave dome on martyrs to suffer passion,
nowe liest thou bound fettered in prison,
To king Sapor constrained to encline,
whan he list ride both neck and chine.

Thus art thou fal fro thine Emperial sage
Thinke on fortune & haue her in memory.

Sbe

She hath thee cast in thyslome & seruage,
And eclipsed al thine olde glory,
where thou sate whilome in the consistory,
As an Emperour and a mighty Judge,
Lest bold in cheyns, & knowest no refuge

It is full sette out of thy mind,
the knightly dede of woorthy Publius,
Of Rome a capteyn ordeyned as I fynd,
To fight ageyn Aristonichus,
kyng of Asie, of fortune it fel thus,
when the Romayns did the field forsake,
this Publius among his sone was take.

This noble prince slyding in dyedeful caas,
his life, his woorthip depnding atwene twain
In his hand holding a sturdy maas,
Smet out one of the eyen tweyn
Of him that kd hym, that other for the peyn
That he felt and the great smert,
joke a dagger roue Publius to the hert,

which loued more his woorthip thā his lyfe,
Chose rather to dye than liue in seruage,
This conceit had in his ymaginatife,
And consydered sith he was in age,
to saue his honour it was more auauntage,
So to be slayn, his woorthip to conserue,
than like a beast in pryson for to serue,

fortunes Chapter of him it was not rad,
As Valerius maketh mencion,
After whose conceite no man in vertue sad
Should not long languish in pryson,
But rather chese like his opinion,
Of manly force and knightly excellence,
The death endure of long abstinence.

As whilom did the princesse Agrippine,
whan she in pryson lay fettred and bound,
Of her free choyle she felt so great pyne,
Of hunger and thurst in sope it is found,
that she lay pale and grose vpon the ground
Haugre Tibertus, & let her goost so wend,
Out of her body this was her fatal end.

Thou shode sette of al such fantasie,
I speake to thee (O thou Valerian)
Thy cruel heart of false melancoly,
Hade whilome dye many chrysten man,

And many martyrs sith Chyestes sayth begā
which for mankind dyed vpon the roode,
The for iacquette list for to shede his blood;

Ageyn his lawe thou wert impatient,
And importune by persecucion,
thou didst fauour and suffice in thine entent
that Egiptiens did theyn oblation,
their sacrifice and rites by so down,
Unto Jhis of stoward wilfulnes,
that was of Egypt called chief Goddesse.

faourable thou wert in thy desyes,
to suffer Jewes theyn Sabbath to obserue
And Caldeys to woorthip the fyre,
and folke of Crete Saturne for to serue,
and chrysten men thou madest falsly sterue;
Of whose lawe for thou did not retche,
thou died in pryson at murther like a wretch

Howe Galsen sonne of Valerian
was slayne.

¶ The .ii. Chapter.

Erte in ordze to Borhas tho came
downe,

Some of Valerian one called
Galsen,
But for great horrible effusion,
Of chrysten blood that men might seene,
Shed by Valeria god would it should beene
Shewed openly to Romains by vengeance
Of many a cuntrye soden disobeysaunce,

They of Almayne the Alpes did passe,
Unto Rotienne a Citie of Itayle,
Gothes also proude of chere and face,
Had ageyn Grekes many great battayle.
And they of Hūgry armed in plate & mayle,
With them of Denmarke furious and cruel
Ageyn Romayns went of assent rebell.

To whose damage in this meane whyle,
among Romayns it is befall thus,
woeful werres which called been cause,
Gan in the citie cruel and despitous.
fyrst whan they met was slayn Semthus,
which fyrst toke on him in bokes as I rede,
Of hye courage to weare purple wede.

The eyght

One Postumius a mighty strong Romaine
Kept all Gaule vnder subiection,
to theyr auayle after vnwarely slayne,
among his knyghtes for al his hye renowne,
By a sodeyn vncouth dissencion.
Nert Victorine hauing the gouernaunce,
Of al Gaule was fyist slayn in fraunce.

But Galien of whom I spake toforne,
Sonne and heyre to Valerian,
His domination of purpose he hath loyne,
In Re publica anon when he began,
Like a contrarious and a froward man,
Were lecherous and vicious of liuing,
at mischief slayn, thys was his ending.

Chowe Quintilius was murdered
by weomen.

The.iii. Chapter.

Next Galien came one Quintilius.
A man remembred of great
attemperaunce,
Brother of byrth to gret Claudius
hale and discrete in al his gouernaunce.
Who may of fortune eschew þ sodeyn cha-
to wyte his end shortly in a clause. (ſee
Of weomen murdered I can not say þ cause

Of Aurelian the Emperour, bozne
in Denmarke, & of others,

The.iiii. Chapter.

If Denmarke bozne next came
Aurelian,
A mocthye knight his enemies to
vntaile.

Agayn Gothes a great werre he began,
Gate victorie in many strong battayle,
Whole noble conquest greatly byd auayle,
to common profit: for al his worke partie,
was to the increase of Rome the citie.

He recured al the Septemtrion,
And westward had many great victorie,
among other I find that he was one,
fred the triumphe to be put in memozy.

But there was do thing eclipsed his glorie,
which hath þ light of his knyghthod vnto
for he was enemy to Christ and to his lawe

Of him Bochas left no moze to wyte,
But in his booke goeth furth as he began:
Of me remembryng that called was Tacite
which was successor to Aurelian.
And after him succeeded Florian,
Of which tweyn no remembraunce I find,
that is notable for to put in mynd.

Probus after reigned ful seven yere.
A foure monethes, which by his hye renowne
Geyn Saturninus with a knightly chere,
and brought him proudly to subiection.
Notwithstanding that he in Rome town,
toke vpon him of wilful tyranny,
Wholy the Empire for to rule and geyn.

Beside the Citie called Agrippyne,
this said Probus gein many proud Romaine
a battayle had, list not to decline,
Wette Proculus a mighty strong capteyn,
with one Bonosus, and both they wer slayn
And al theyr meyne of very force and might
slayne in þ field, þ remnant put to flight.

After this battayle and this disconfiture,
Probus was lodged in Sarminie a gret cite
and there vnwarely of sodeyn auenture,
slayn in a towne that called was ferrye.
But a smal season last his prosperitie.
In fortunes curtseye let no man trust,
al worldly thinges chaungeing as the lust.

Chow thempetour Carus and his two
sonnes were mischeyued.

The.v. Chapter.

If Bochas, Carus next came
downe,
with hys two sonnes Numerian
and Carpyne,
and as I find he was bozne in Narbon,
and descended of a noble lyne.
But whan that he most clerely did shyne,
In hys Empire he gate Citty tweyn,
and dyed at Ctesiphon in great payne.

Besyde

Beside Tigris a famous swift riuere,
He pight hys tentes & cast him there abide,
A sodaine lightning hys face came so nere,
Smet all to poudre for all hys great pryde,
And Nimerian that stode by hys side,
Had a marke that was sent fro heauen,
Lost both hys eyen the with the fyr leuen.

Hys other sonne Carinus a good knight,
In Dalmaria had al the gouernaunce,
and for that he gouerned not a righte,
He was cast down and lost al hys puillance,
Vicious life cometh alwaye to mischaunce,
Septius chose Dalmaria for to gise,
Among his knyghtes murdred of enye.

Howe the hardy quene Zenobia faught
with Aurelian and was take.

The. vi. Chapter.

NYne auctoure here no lenger
hitt so iourne,
Of these Emperours the falles,
for to write,
But in al hast he doth his stile tourne,
To Zenobia her story to endite,
But for Chaucer did him so well acquite,
In his tragedies her piteous fal to entreat
I wil passe ouer rehearsing but the great,

In his boke of Canterbury tales.
Thys soueraigne Poet of Brites Albion,
through pilgrims told by hilles & by dales
wherof Zenobia is made mencion
Of her noblesse and her hie renown,
In a tragedy compendiously told al,
Her mercial powesse and her piteous fal.

Whine auctour first affirmeth how that she
Descended was to tel of her linage,
Bozne of the stocke of worthy Ptholome,
King of Egypt ful notable in that age.
And thys Zenobia expert in al language,
wise of counsaile and of great prudence,
Passed al other in fame of eloquence.

Among she was armed in plate and maile,
Of Dalmyences wedded to the king,
Called Odonatus prudent in batade,

She was also by record of writing,
Hardy, strong, her lordship defending,
Hanger al the with her chivalrie,
Agains her that wrongly took part ye.

By Odonatus she had sonnes twine,
Herennian called was that one,
And Timolaus of beauty souereine,
After whose birth their sadde gan anone,
to occupie the prouinces euerichone,
of Persse & Mede by processe made the flent
Of Zenobia the hardy wise Queene.

whyle Odonatus weted most glorious,
in his conquest throughout Persse & Mede
Slayne he was by one Mronius,
which to the king was coken as frede,
But for because of this horrible dede,
And for the murdye of king Odonate,
Died at mischief and passed into fate.

By processe after Zenobia the quene,
toke her two sones & proudly did them lede
Cofore her chare that men might the sene,
Howe they wer bozne as princes to succede
made the like kinges be clad in purple wede
Them to defende thys mighty creature,
Hardy as Lion toke on her armure.

For al her lordes and knyghtes she hath set,
Hanger & Romaines proudly ga her spede
Al the parties of the Orient,
To occupie and her host to lede,
of þ Emperour she stode nothing in dyde,
Called Aurelian met him in batade,
with her meinye him proudly did assaile.

On outhet side þ day gret blod was shedde
the stroke of fortune instant no creature
The quene Zenobia was taken & forth ledde
faught first as long as she might endure
with rich stones set was her armure,
with whom theperoure so entring Rome
Of triumphe required the guerdon. (tous)

He dempt it was couenable and sitting,
Thys Emperour thys proud Aurelian,
To are the triumphe it was so gret a thing
to take Zenobia that such a warre began,
Seine Romaines thys mercial woman.

The eyght

For I suppose of no woman borne
was neuer quene so hardy seen afoze.

this hardy pricesse for al her coisalte (know
whose hye renown through al þ world was
with stockes of gold was brought to the cite
from hye estate in pouert plunged lowe.
A wind contrary of fortune hath so blowe,
That she (alas) hath piteously made sal,
Her that in promise passed women all.

The triumphe pouen to Aurelian,
For the conquest he had vpon thys quene,
Called Zenobia, came Dioclesian,
Borne in Dalmacia hys story who list sene,
Out of hys countrey first he did sene,
Of garlike and lekes as saith þ cronicle
Because that he was but a gardener.

Other mencion is none of his linage,
Of hys birth forsoke the region,
Left his craft of deluing and cortlage,
Gave him to armes, and by election
Chose to be Emperour & reigne in Rome toise
first into Gaule he sent a great power,
And Maximian he made there hys Usker.

His biker there had many great batayle,
Vpon such people that by rebellion,
Gan frowardly contrary and assaile,
To obey hys lordship within that region,
Til Carasus by commission,
And an hardy knight vnder Maximian,
Them to chastise toke on hym like a man.

But by proesse the story both deuise,
Hys lordship there did great damage,
To comon profite so he by couetise,
the countrey robbed by ful great outrage
And to hym self he toke al the pillage,
And of þz sumpcion ware the coloure,
Of rich purple like an Emperour.

This Carasius of Britayns tweyne,
Proudly vsurped to be their gouernour,
like a rebel geyne Rome did his peyne,
And besyed hym by martial labour,
with many strange fozein souldiours,
Hauing no title nor commission,
Continued long in hys rebellion,

wherof assonted was Dioclesian,
Semyng this mischief dreadfull and peridous
Dreyned in hast that Maximian,
was surnamed and called Hercules,
Made him Emperour called Augustus,
which had afoze no more gouernaunce,
But Gaule, which now is called Fraunce.

Also moreouer thys Dioclesian,
Made in this while gouernours twaine,
Constantius and one Maximian,
surnamed Galerius Constantius in certein,
In this while to wed did hys peine,
Daughter of Maximian called Hercules.
named Theodoza mine autour wytteth thus

By Theodoza thys Constantius,
Had sixe children in true marriage,
brother to Constantine þ cronicle telleth thus
which after ward whan he came to age,
for hys manhode and merccial corage,
was chose and made lord and gouernour,
Of al the world crowned Emperour.

Carasius which had ful seven yere,
like as I told rebelled Britayne,
Againe the Romans a great extorcioner,
A knight Alecius that did at him disdayne,
Murdered him and after did hys paine,
By force only and extorte stranny,
fully thys yere hys place to occupie.

Til Asclepio Dotus was set fro Rome doo
though Alecius mauer al hys might,
Brought al Britaine to subiection,
Of the Romans like as it was right.
And in thys while like a manly knight,
for Italiens gan Romans disobey,
Constantius gan proudly them warrey.

He first with them had a strong battaile,
Hys meine slaine and he put to the flight,
trusting on fortune he gan them est assaile
And sixty thousand were slayne in þ sight,
the field was hys through fortunes might,
As he that coude dissimule for a while,
and after ward falsely him begyle.

I will passe over as briefly as I can,
Set also all forsome incidentes,

Reloyt

Resort againe to Dioclesian, (tenites
which at Alexandry proudly pitched hys
the capre in slough gaue in commaundemēt
To his knightes to doe their auauntage,
within the Cite by robbing and pillage,

Can againe Challen great persecution,
Used hys tyranny in the Quent,
By hys bidding Maximian came down,
towards the partes of the Decident,
Both these titauntes wrought by assent,
vnder whose sword many martir dayes,
slayne in Octodora the region of Thebes,

At Hierolamy a famous oulde Cite,
Saynt Albon slayne hys legend doth so tel
And in Rome by furious cruelte,
The Pope slayne that called was Marcell
By their statutes and by their domes fell,
Churches were bent in touns and Cities,
Lost their fraunchise and al their liberties

forward enmy he was to Christs lawe,
Many a martir to dye for hys sake,
wert feble and olde and gan him worthdial
from occupation hys rest for to take,
hys attorney Maximian he doth make,
In hys last age it is rehearsed thus,
Stode in great dyede of Constantius.

The dyede of hym late so nye hys hearte,
and therupon toke such a fantasie,
Imagening he might not starte
By fraude of hym but that he should dye,
Almost for feare fell in a frensie.
Of which dyede the boke maketh mencion,
He slough hym selfe by drynking of poison.

As I told erst in the Decident,
Maximian called Hercules,
Reigned as Emperour & euer in his tēnt,
To pursue martirs he dyd aye hys labours
of whose birth Bochas found none autours
This to say he coude neuer rede,
where he was borne nor of what kindred.

He findeth no moze of this Maximian,
of hys vsurping in especial,
But that he was by Dioclesian,
Set in dignite called Imperial.

famous in armes, prudent and mercial,
Daunted al tho that dyd agēne him strue,
Slough Gyauntes called in noumbre fyue

Rode in Afrike like a conquerour,
Brought to subiection thye sturdy nations;
Fortune that tyme did hym such fauour,
Gave Sarmacia with other regions
Many Cities and many rich touns,
by hys conquest of newe that he hath wōne;
througħ ꝑ world his name shone like a sūne

He was cherished in armes from hys youth
dyd great empises for Rome the Cite,
Yet Dioclesian as it is wel couth,
Counsayled hym resigne hys dignite,
But he was loth to forsake hys see,
Sith he was lord and gouerned all,
for to renounce hys state imperial.

But by assent of Dioclesian,
As he hym self had left al gouernaunce,
So euen lyke thys Maximian,
Discharged hym self of hys royal puissance
but afterward he sel in repentance,
And besy was as dyuerse folkes seyne,
The state of Emperour to recure agēne.

Which for to achewe he did hys diligence,
He was discourbed by Galerius,
for hys sonne that called was Maxence,
put in possessiō myne auctour wytheth thus
To which thing he gan wex enuious,
and gan ordeine meanes in his thought,
To trouble hym, but it auailed nought.

whan his purpose might take none auails,
agēne Maxence as Bochas doth deserue,
hys daughter fausta ꝑ knewe his counsaile
discured his purpose for which he fled blue
Into Gaule, and durst no longer strue.
And by Constantius in Warlike the Cytē,
slayne sodenly lost al hys dignite.

Howe The Emperour Galerius oppressed
martirs and Christs sayth, and
mischeuously ended.

The. vii. Chapter.

Act

The eyght

Next tofore Bochas came Galerius,
A man disposed to riot and outrage,
Such teched, toward and vicious,
There is no story speaketh of hys linage
Yet was he set full hye vpon a stage,
Of worldly dignite rose vp to hys estate,
yet in hys ginning he was not fortunate.

He was sent out by Dioclesian,
and made Emperour by his auctorite,
Ageine Arseus the proude knightly man,
Reigning in Persie a lord of that countre,
which held warre with Rome the Citie.
For which Galerius toke on him this Epise
with mighty hond hys pryde to chastise.

Galerius entred into Persie lond,
King Arseus met him of auenture,
Had a wronge bataile fought hand to hand,
On Galerius spyl the disconfiture,
Hys fortune such he might not endure,
Clad in purple as made is mencion,
Of Dioclesian receyued thys guerdon.

At their meting anon o he was ware,
Dioclesian made hym to abide,
To his confusion he sitting in his chaire,
To walke on foote by the chaires side,
with many a rebuke bated was hys pryde,
Galerius for the great shame,
Can seke a meane again to geat hys name

Can for to assemble his old souldiours,
Made his ordinaunce by diligent working
Chose out the best proued warreours,
with a great hoste to Persie he came riding
And est agein fought there with the king.
That the Persiens maugre al their might,
were of Galerius that day put to flight.

The field was his, gate their great richesse,
Robbed their tentes, man their gret pillage
In hys resort receiued in sothnesse,
in great noblesse because of that viage.
Thus can fortune chaunge her visage,
Of Dioclesian where he liode in disdaine,
with newe triumphe resorted is again.

(teine

This cloudy quene standeth euer in no cer-
whose double whele quauereth euer in dout

Of whose fauour no man hath be certeyne
though one haue grace another is put out.
Late every man as it cometh about,
Take hys tourne and neuer in yet assure,
fayling in armes is but auenture.

Thus Galerius after hys batayle,
On Persiens gan wex glorious,
gouerned Affrike and lordship of Itaple,
Throughtout the Orient he was victorius
til he for age gan wex tedious,
Hys last dayes maligned as men saith,
Of false hatred again Chyssen saith.

And him to helpe in these false matters,
it is remembred to hys confusion,
In hys Empire he set two vikers,
Gave them power in every region,
The lawe of Chyis to oppresse & put down,
To punish the martires & put the to the death,
and in this while ful many one he sleath.

And thys sayd cruel Galerius,
which of thempire had al the gouernaunce
Of cursed heart and cozage dispiteous,
By hys vsurped Imperial puissance,
Gave auctorite for to do vengeaunce,
Unto twelue, Seuerus and Maxence,
On al Chyssen by mortal violence.

A certeine space both of one accord,
To estate of Emperour chose was Maxence
Till Seuerus and he fil at discorde,
And after by vengeable pestilence,
within a Cite of noble preeminence,
Called Rauene Seuerus there was slayne
Of which Galerius god wote was nothing
(saue.

for which in hast this Galerius,
him to support and stande in hys diffence,
chose out of Denmarke a knight Licinius
to be Emperour throught knightly excellẽce
for to withstand and fight agein Maxence.
But Maxence of Rome knyghts all,
was chosen Emperour & set vp in hys stal

With which eleccion Galerius wex woode
fel in a maner froward frensie.
Hys entrayle dyent, corrupt was hys bloode,
And of hys froward vengeable maledye,
In

In euery member gan rotte and putrifye
Till all the ayer about him enuiron,
to al that felt it was venome and popson.

Like a Lazar cozbed bakke and chine,
In this while on Chyssen most vengeable
To him auayled no maner medicine,
but there was one in Chyssen feith ful stable
that spake vnto him in language ful notable
In his wordes few concluding in substance
The great Jupiter hath take on the venge-
(aunte

And ouermore for short conclusion;
with a bolde sperte to him gan abyapde,
It is not Jupiter wooshypped in this town,
In the Capitolet set soorly as I saide.
But Jupiter that was bozne of a mayde,
which list not suffer of þ thou doest endure,
that any medicines Would thee resure.

Lyke a tyrant by vengeaunes farcous,
At mischief dyed as bookes tell.
Perpetuelly, with cruel Cerberus,
Upon the whele of Ixion to dwel;
for his demerites with Tantalus in hell,
There to receiue his final last guerdoun,
which could on martyrs haue no compassiõ

It was his tope for to lyde their bloode,
Sent out his letters to dyuers regions,
Lyke a flye woofte rancorous and woode,
To slea martyrs by dyuers passions.
Lyke his desert receiued his guerdons.
Horrible death fyrst did him here confound,
with furies infernal lyeth now in hel bound

How Maxence the Emperour, en-
mye to Chyssen feith, mischeuous-
lye ended.

The. viii. Chapter.

After Galerius cruel violence,
Geyn chyssen blood as Bochas hete
hath tolde,
with piteous chere þ Emperour Maxence
Came tosoze Bochas, of age not ful olde,
famous in armes, sturdy, free and bolde,
Albe he entred not like an inheritor,
Toke vpon han to regne as gouernour,

To Chyssen feith he was also enemye,
After sone he lost his gouernaunce,
Of infortune slayne sodenly,
God on tirantes vniwarely taketh vfgaunce
of whose buryng was made no ordinaunce,
for he was not receiued of the ground,
But cast in Tybe lyke a rotten hound.

Howe Licinius enemy to Chyssen
feith was slayne.

The. ix. Chapter.

Next tosoze Bochas came Licinius
A knyght of Denmarke, bozne of
right good lyne,
which had an enemy the boke seyth thus,
An hardy knyght called Martine,
chose a captayn to theperour Constantine
To the feith of Chyssen he bare gret enmitie,
Slayne anon after in Thace the cuntry.

Of whose death Licinius was glad,
Gan agein chyssen gret persecution;
In his proceeding sodenly war mad,
which commaunded of false presumption,
whan he began doe execution,
That no chyssen no where him besyde,
By no condiction should in his house abyde

This Licinius which falsly did erre,
Ageyn our feith chyssen men to assaile,
Geyn Constantine of nerse he gan werre,
But of his purpose in sooth he did fayle,
for he was twofe discomfited in battaile,
By Constantine once in Hungery,
Next in Grece besyde Calke.

Thus Constantine through his hye renoun
Gare nye all Grece and euery great citte,
Albe Licinius stode in rebellion,
Geyn Constantine both on land and se.
But when he sawe it would none other be,
He might not escape in no place,
But wholy himselfe in Constantines grace

But Constantine for his rebellion,
Gave iudgement in hast that he be dead,
Lest in the Citte wer made diuision.

By

The eyght

By Licinius wherof he stode in dede.
This same while as Bochus toke hede,
there came befoze him with chere ful piteous
brythren tweyn, Constantine and Chrysus.

Of Constantine and Chrysus, and
howe Dalmacius was slayne.

The .x. Chapter.

SO Constantyne of whom I spake
tofoze,
They wer sonnes, Constantyne and
Chrysus,
the same tweyn of one moder borne,
cam tofoze Bochus his boke rehersteth thus
with them came eke Licinius,
Sonne of Licinius which in Rome town,
aloze was slayn for his rebellion.

Constantine his werres to gouerne,
Made them bikars the self same thre,
Echeone right wise & coud wel discerne,
what might auayle most to their citle,
To encrease the profite of the commonite.
They names told Constantine & Chrysus
tofoze remembred with them Licinius.

While these thre bikars vnder theperour
Gouerned Rome as knights most famous
In Alexandria rose bp a great errour,
By a false priest called Arrius,
To our beleife a thyng contrarious.
And for he dyd ageyn our feyth so wurtche,
By a decree was put out of the church.

By assent at Bythyny ful notable,
In Nicene a famous great citle,
This errour was pyeued ful damnable,
The hundred bishops wer preset there par-
and eyghtene, the chronicle who listle (sic)
And al these clerkes of one sentence plyke,
Dreued Arrius a false heretike.

This same time booke I specifye,
How Constantine of hasty crueltie,
The sayd bikars so nigh of allye,
Feyned a cause to slea them all thre,
No cause rehearsed nor tolde of equitee,

Saue onely this in which he gan procede,
to make his col in Dalmacius succede.

But his sauour was not fortunat,
toward Dalmacius, nor gracijs in sentere
among whole knightes fil a sodeyn debate,
Constantyne there being in presence,
Dalmacius without remeence,
with sharpe swordes to speke in wordes fewe
Unto the death was wounded and hewe.

Of the brythren Constance & Constan-
cius, and how Magnentius and De-
cius murdered themselves.

The .xi. Chapter.

THan came Constans and Con-
stancius,
younge brythren thus wyrteth
myne auctour,

To Constantine in time of Arrius,
And eche of them by ful great labour,
Dyd his peyn to reygne as Emperour,
Tyll at the last bryuelly for to sepe,
Eueryche of them gan other to werrey.

This sayd Constans is entred Persie lond
Nine tymes he faught agayn Sapor,
The same king as ye shal vaderstonde,
that with Romayns had faughten aloze,
But finally Constans hath him so boze,
to hold the field he might not endure,
for vpon him fyl the disconstitute.

His fortune gan chaunge anon right,
whan that he left to be vertuous:
He was in Spayn slayn like a knight,
In Castyl tong called Magnentius,
than was none left but Constancius.
The Romain knightes desitute euerychone
Chose them an Emperour Uetracion.

Thys Uetracion was farre ronne in age,
Bareyn of wit, could no lettrure,
Nor in knighthod had no great courage,
Nor was not hable to study in scripture,
Nor like an Emperour no while to endure.
For Constancius of whō I spake now late,
with this Uetracion cast him to debate.

Thys

This Treason hath left hys estate,
Lest not warrey againe Constantius,
Forsoke the field, loked no debate,
but of Spaine mine auctour writeth this
As I wrote late howe that Magnentius,
Geyn Constantius in sword speare & shield
presumed proudly for to holde a field,

To great damage and bitering of the toli
for many Romaine the day was dead,
Beside a Cite which called was Lion,
Till at the last of very cowardie dead,
Magnentius which captein was and head
Again Constantius both the field forsooke,
Los howe fortune can her chaunges make

Magnentius for very fordwine and shame,
Bode no lenger but gate hym a sharpe knife
shole by him self where he was to blame,
Roue through his heart and lost so hys life.
His brother Decetius partable of the strife
about hys neck cast a mighty corde,
And hynge him self bookes so recorde,

Constantius chase after him Gallus,
His vncles brother to gouerne fraunce,
was a false traitour, cruel outrageous,
Shone after slayne for hys misgouernance.
Another biter for hys disobedience,
called Helianus by Judgemēt was slaine
for which in fraunce many a mā was lame

How the Emperour Constantine the great,
was baptised by Siluestre Bishoppe of
Rome, and was cured of hys leppe

The xii. Chapter.

If this mater sime I wil a while,
And folowing myne owne
straunge opinion,
fro Constantius turne away my stile,
To hys farther make a digression,
Cause Bochas maketh short mention,
Of Constantine, which by record of clerkes
was so notable found in al hys werkes.

This mighty prince was borne in Bytanie
So as the Bytane playnly doth vs lere,
hys holy mother called was Helayne,
He in hys dayes most mightily and entere,

Of merchautes he knewe al the manere
Chosen Emperour for hys hys noblesse,
Till to be leppe Ciponicles doe expresse.

Hys soze so greuous that no medecine,
Might anable hys sicknesse to recure,
He was counsayled to make a great piscine
with innocent blode of children & wet pure,
To make him cleane of that he dyd endure,
throug al Itail childre anon were sought
And to his paleys by their mothers brought

It was great routh to behold and see,
of tender mothers to heare the sobbing,
By furious constraint of their aduersities
their clothes to rent bedewed with weeping
The straunge noyse of their hideous crying
Ascended vp that their piteous clamour,
Came to the eares of the Emperour.

Of which noyse the Emperour was agrieved
whan that he knewe grounde and occasiō,
Of this matter also told and deuised
this noble prince gan haue compassion,
And soz to stinte the lamentacion,
Of al the women there being in presence,
of merciful pite hath chaunged his sentence

This glorious & hys gracious Emperour,
As clombe of mercy so hys vpon the theye,
Spared neither vitayle nor hys treasour
for hys langoure that dyd him so appaie,
with sol glad chere made them to repaie,
where they came soz to Rome the Cite,
they haue retourned glad to their countie.

Royal compassion did in hys heart mine,
chose to be sicke rather than blode to shede,
his trest flammied by grace which is deuine
which fro the heauen dyd vpon him spede,
He would not suffre innocentes to blede;
preferring pite and mercy more than right,
He was visited vpon the next night.

Peter and Paul to him did appere,
sent from the lord as heauenly messengers
Bad Constantine be of right good chere,
for he that sitteth about the nine sheeres,
The lord of lordes the lord of longest yeres,
wot that thou haue it wel in mind,

The eyght

In mounte Saryp þu shalt thy leche find
 God of hys grace list the to brynne,
 to thede blode because that thou doest spare
 He hath vs sent thy labour for to quite,
 Thynges brought of helth and thy wellfare
 Hope sheweth to the that declare,
 As we haue told be right wel assured,
 of thy sicknesse howe thou shalt be cured

To mouite Saryp in al hall þu thou sende,
 Suffre sheweth to come to thy presence,
 soughe and found briefly so make an ende,
 Received after with due reuerence,
 Byd hys deuoyr of entere diligence,
 Like as the life of sheweth hath deuised,
 by grace made hole whan he was baptised.

His fleshe renued and sodenly made white
 by thise washing in the frethe pascine,
 Of holy baptisme welke of most delite,
 where the holy ghost did hym enlumine,
 Enfourming after by teaching of doctrine,
 Of sheweth like as mine auctour saith,
 of al articles that long vnto our faith.

The fonte was made of porphyrie stone,
 which was after by cost of Constantine,
 with a round wyre that dyd about gone,
 Of gold and perre and stones þu were fine,
 Whio of the font right by as a lyne,
 Upon a pillar of gold a lampe bright,
 ful of fine barons that byent al the night.

A lambe of gold he dyd also provide,
 Set vpon this fonte vpon a smal pillet,
 which like a coudre vpon every side,
 shad out water as any Chistal cleere,
 on whose right side an image most entere,
 was richely forged of oure sauour,
 Al of pure gold that coste great treasoure.

And on this lambe vpon the oether side,
 In Image set long to endure,
 Of baptem John with letters for to abide,
 Grane euersyde, and this was þu scripture,
 Ecce Agnus dei that I dyd for man endure
 on good friday offred by hys blood,
 To saue mankynd dyed vpon the roode.

He let also make a great censer,

All of gold set with perles fine,
 which by night as iherus in his sphere
 Throughe al þu church most freshly dyd shine
 there were fourty bones Jarmerine,
 Apollis temple made auctour wyte þu same,
 was halowed newe in saint Peters name.

The Romayn temples that wer bilt of olde
 he hath fordone with al there maumentre,
 their false goddes of siluer and of gold,
 he hath to broke vpon eche partre,
 this godly prince of gossy polier,
 set of newe statutes of great vertue,
 to be obserued in name of Christ Jesu.

The first lawe as I rehearse can,
 in ordre set with full great reuerence,
 That Christ Jesu was soth fast god & man,
 Lord of lordes, lord of most excellence,
 which hath thys day of hys beneuolence,
 Cured my leysie as ye haue heard deuised,
 By blessed sheweth whan I was baptised

This gracious lord my soueraigne lord Je-
 from hence forth for thort conuision, (su,
 I will that he as lord most of vertue,
 Of faithful heart and whole affection,
 Be worshipped in every region,
 No man so hardy my bidding to disdain,
 Lest he incurte of death the greuous pain.

Folowing the day called the se cond,
 this Constantine hath ordeined a decree,
 That who that euer in town were found,
 Or else where about in the countree,
 what euer he were of hys or lowe degre,
 That blasphemed the name of Christ Jesu,
 by dome should haue of death a pleyn Iste

The third day in every mannes sight,
 By a decree confirmed and made strong,
 to any Chastien who that dyd butright,
 By oppression or by collateral wrong,
 It should not be faried ouerlong,
 who were conuict of gyle shal not chese,
 By lawe ordeined halfe hys good to lese.

The fourth day among Romayns al
 thys priuledge pronouned in the town,
 Yone to the pope sitting in Peters hall

As souerayne head in every region,
To haue the rule and iurisdiction,
Of priestes al alone in all thyng,
Of tempozall lordes like as hath the kyng.

To the church he graunted great franchise
the fifth day and special libertee,
If a felon in any maner wyse,
To find succour therether did flee,
Within the boundes fro daungert to go ffe
to be assured and haue there ful refuge,
from execution of any tempozal Iudge.

No man presume within no cite,
the sixth day he gaue this sentence,
No man so hardy of hys noz low degres,
to build no churche but he haue licence,
Of the Bishop beyng in ptesence,
This to say that he in his estate,
By the Pope afoze be approbate.

The seuenth day this law he dyd eke make
Of all possessions which that be copall,
The tenth part yerele shal be take,
By Iudges bondes in partie and in al,
Which treasour thei deliuer shal,
As the statute doth plainly specifie.
whole and entiere churches to edifie.

The eight day mekely he dyd hym quite
with great reuerence and humble affectis,
whan he dyd of al his clothes white,
And came himself on pilgrimage downe,
Tofoze sainte Peter of great deuotion.
Notwithstandyng his royal excellence,
made his confession in open audiencc.

His crowne toke, and knelyng thus he sayd,
with wepyng eyen and voyce lamentable,
And for sobbyng so as he myght abyde,
O blessed Jesu, O Lord most merciable,
Let my teares to thee be acceptable.
Receiue my prayer, my request not refuse,
As man most sinful I may me not excuse.

I occupied the state of the Emperour,
Of thy Martirs I had the holy bloude,
Spared no saintes in my cruel errour,
Them to pursue most furious and woode.
now blessed Jesu most gracious & most good

Deysed & considred myne impoztable offence,
I am not woorthy to come in thy ptesence.

Noz for to enter into this holy place,
vpon this grounde vnable for to dwel,
To open myne eyen, or to lift vp my face,
But of thy mercy so thou not me repel,
As man most sinfull I come vnto the well,
Thy wel of grace and mercifull pttie,
For to be washed of myne iniquitie.

This example in open he hath shewed,
His state imperial of mekenes layd afoze,
his purple garment with teares al bedewed
Sword noz scepter, ne horse vpon to ride,
ther was none seen noz baners splayed wide
of martiall triumphes there was no token found
but cryng mercy the Emperour laye plat on
(ground.

The peoples gladnes was medled w wepig
And ther wepyng was medled w gladnes
to se an Emperour and so noble a kyng.
Of his ffe choise to shew so great mekenes
Thus intermedled was loye and heaumes,
Heaumes farre passed olde vengeaunce,
with newe reioysing of ghosly repentance.

This loye was like a feast funerall,
In folke of custome that do theyr busy cure
To byng a cooyle which of custom shal,
Haue al the rightes of his sepulture.
And in this time of sodayn auenture,
To life agayn restored be his bones,
causing his frendes to laugh & wepe at ons.

Remblably dependyng atwoene twayne,
The people wept and therewith reioysyng,
to se the Emperour so piteously complayne,
for his trespasses mercy requyzyng,
Of loye and sorow a gracious medlyng,
that day was seyn gladnes meint w mone,
with wepyng laughter & al in one persons.

After al this he digged vp himself,
Stones twelue where he lay knelyng,
And put them in cophins twelue,
on the twelue Apostles deuoutly remembryng
Compassed a ground large for buildyng,
Beside his palace east theron to wurchen,
In Chyistes name to set vp there a churche.

The eighth

The place of olde called Lateranense,
Bylde and edifyed in the Apostles name,
Constantinus bare all the dispence,
ordeined a law mine aboute sayth the same
If any poore, naked, halt, or lame,
Receiue would the sayth of Christ Iesu,
He should by statute be take to this issue.

In his promise if he wer found true,
that he wer not by fainyng no fauour,
He should first be spoiled and clad new,
By the costage of the Emperour,
twenty Willinges receiue to his succour.
Of which receit nothing was withdraw,
By statute kept and holde as for a law.

It wet to long to put al in memoire,
His hye prowesse and his notable dedes,
And to rehearse euery great victorie,
which that he had with hostes that he ledes
And to remember al his gracious speches,
The surplusage who list comprehend,
Let hym of Siluester reade the Legend.

And among other touchyng his vision,
which he had, in Chronicles men may lere
When he slept in his royall dongeon,
How Christ to hym graciously dyd appere,
Shewd hym a crosse & sayd as ye shall here,
Be not aferd vpon thy sone to fall,
for in this signe thou shalt ouercome the al.

By which auision he was made glad & light
through gods grace and heavenly influence,
first in his baner he shone ful clere & bryght,
his crosse was beaten chief toke of his defence
though the tyrant that called was Maxence
After whose death through his hye renoun
Of al the Emperys he toke possession.

In which estate he maintained truth & right
vpon al poore hauyng compassion,
Durynge his tyme hold the best knyght,
That any where was in any region,
Of Christes faith the imperial champion,
through his noble knightly magnificence,
to al christen protectour and defence.

After his name which neuer shal appal,
chaunged in Grece the name of Byzantur,

Constantinople he did it after call,
And on a stede of brasse as men may see,
Manacing of Turkes the countree
He sit armed a great sword in his hande,
Them to chastise that rebell in that londe.

Reioyce ye folkes that borne be in Britayn
Called otherwise Brutus Albion,
that had a pryncce so notably soueraine,
Brought forth and fostered in your region,
that whilom had the domination,
As chiefe Monarch, pryncce and president,
Ouer all the world from East to Occident.

Time of his death that moneth of the pere
Phobus not seen idrough his seruēt here,
And long aborne large, hode, and clere,
toward the rike shewd a great Comete,
Alway encreasing drough toward the seate
Of Aithomedye, shone early and eke late
Where in his palace he passed into fate.

Howe Julianus Apostata enemye to
Christes faith by false illusions was cho-
sen Emperour, and after was slayn.

The xiii. Chapter.



fter the death of this martial
man,
I meane this worthy noble
Constantine,
cometh the Apostata cursed Julian,
which by descent to Constantine was colin,
His gynnynge cursed had a cursed fine,
Entred religion as bookes specifie,
vnder a colour of false Hypocresie.

It hath been sayd of antiquitie,
where that there is a dissimuled holmes,
It is ycalled double iniquitie,
Iye on all suche feyned perfecties,
For simulacion cured with doublenes,
And false semblant with a sober face,
Of al sectes standes farthest out of grace.

A certain space as made is mencion
To al perfection he dyd hymself apply,
Till he were wery of his profession,
Forsoke his order by Apostacie.

And first he gaue hym to Nigromancye,
Double Apostata as mine out our sayth,
first to his order and after to our faith,

By ordinaunce of Constantius,
this saide Julian roote of Hypocrisie,
Of gouernaunce froward and vicious,
was sent to Gaul with great chualrye,
As what chosen the countrey for to gye,
Gave hym fauour and falsly gan conspyre,
To haue possession of the whole Emperre.

And for he was not likely to attayne,
to that estate he dyd his heart applye
Another meane plainly to ordayne,
wicked spirites to make of his alpe,
Became a penitente to learne sorcerye,
To haue experience by inuocations
to call spirites with his coniurations.

By false illusions in the peoples syght,
Of wicked spirites had so great fauour,
A crowne of Lauret vpon his head alpyght
Made folke to deme by full false errour,
It came by miracle to chese hym Emperour,
which in trouth as in existence,
was but collusion and feined apparence.

with them he had his conuersacion,
Spared not to do them sacrifice,
with ceremonies and false oblacion,
And to the Emperre he rose in this wyse,
The state receiued first he gan deuise,
Again he kes out of his countrey farre.
to make him ströc to them to haue a warre.

The fiend a while was to hym fauourable
Gave hym enter and possession,
And made him promes for to abyde stable,
In his lordship and domination,
To haue this world vnder subiection.
Of whiche behest he stode in perilous caas
folowynge the opinion of Pythagoras.

Pythagoras had this opinion,
When men dyed anon after than,
There was made a translacon,
Of his spirit into another man,
A maner likeness the Bible tell can,
the double spirit of grace and prophesye,

To Helseus was graunted by Hely.

Here on concludynge lyke his opinion,
As Pythagoras affirmed in sentence,
He that had full possession,
Of such a spirit in very existence,
Should haue the same wisdom and science
the disposition after hym as blise,
which had þ spirit whyle he was here alie.

Of gouernaunce and also of nature,
Resemble hym of maners and luyting,
And thus by fraud Pluto did his cure,
To make Julian to trust in euery thyng.
He had by byrth the spirit of the kyng,
called Alexander, by whiche he should wyne,
this world by request wha euer hi list begin.

Thus gan he son and fall in fantasie,
to trust on Pluto and goddes infernall
They should enhaunce him by his chualry
for to possede and reioyce all,
Sweorde, scepter, crowne, & state imperiall,
Wasse Alexander in honoꝝ and in gloꝝy.
And hym excelle in triumphall victoꝝy.

He trusted Sathā by whō he was deceiued
To Chyries sayth became moxtall enmye,
Where that euer he hath perceiued,
Crosse or crucifix he brake them vengeably
By false language he called traitourly.
Christ Iesu he called Galdeus,
And of despite sometime Nazareus.

Agayn our sayth this tyrant were so wood
And agayn Chyri had so great hate de,
Nough many martir & falsly had their blood
An Idolater and runnegate in dede,
held moxtal warre to the of Perse & Mede
comming to Perse first he gan debate,
Gain Sapor king of whō I spake but late.

Of Parthors also he etred through þ crew
Where he found no maner resistance,
And as he came for by Jerusalem,
To the Jewes anone he gaue licence,
to build the temple with great diligence,
In despite of purpose to do shame, (name)
to Chyrien churches built newe in Chyrien
A. ii. In

The eighth

In this toyle he caught a great courage,
In a Theatre made brode in the towne,
To wold beaste s cruel and sauage,
Of sainctes blood to make oblacion,
they to deuoure men of religion,
And al christen of purpose to destrope,
His lud was set and al his worldly ioye.

By an Herauld that dyd his host condey,
Of very purpose to byng them in a trayne
by straunge desertes foud out a froward way
the heate impositable dyd them so constrain,
brent through & hachelle felt so great payn,
The daye sandes the ayre infect with hete,
Whide many a man in had thei life to lete.

This froward tirant knowyng no remedy
Of cursed heart gan Christ Jesu blaspheme
And of malicious hatred and enuye,
Woode and furious as it dyd seme,
Gan curse & Loyd & al this world shal deme
Christ Jesu which of long patience,
list not by vengeance his malice recōpence.

And more cruell was there neuer none,
Nor more vengeable, not Cerberus in hell,
Whotall enemy to good men eueryphone,
Whose blasphemies and rebukes fell,
By rehearshale yf I should them tell,
I am afrayde the venemous violence,
Should infect the ayre with pestilence.

He kest out dattes more bitter than is gall,
Of blasphemy and infernall language,
And in this toyle among his princes all,
A knight unknowne Jungelike of visage,
freshly armed to punish his outrage,
In a sharp spere through euery sinow & vein
Of this tirant roue the heart on tweyne.

Bathed in his blood this tirant till dole low
To god and man froward and odious,
though for & time the knight was not know
Yet some men seyn it was Mercurius,
which by the prayer of Basilus,
this tirant slough as Chronicles do vs lere
By a miracle of Chyldes mother bere.

This Mercurius as bookees determine,
In Cesarea a mighty strong cite,

Within the countrey called Palestine,
Buried afore rose by at his iourney,
Out of his graue, a straunge thyng to see,
an hoyle brought to hi araid in his armure
Which hyng tofore besyde his sepulture.

The same armure was not sene that night,
Nor in the morow at his graue foud,
till midday houre & Jhebus shone full bright
whan Mercurius gaue him his fatal wound
His blasphemy for euermore to confounde,
which this accomplisshed this miracle to proue
he and his armure wet there again at Eue.

Of his blasphemy this was & sodem make
which the tirant receiued for his mede,
The last woide I fynde that he spake,
Thou Galile hast overcome in dede.
Toke the blood that he did blede,
this deuillysh man dyng in despayre,
Despite of Jesu cast it in the ayre.

His body slayn and his skin was take,
tawed after by pzecept and bydyng,
Shouple and tender as they coude it make,
Shapod bad so that was of perle byng,
that men might haue therof knowlagyng,
Earely on morow and at eue late,
He did it uayle vpon his palace gate.

And to a cite that called was Cayre,
As Chronicles make rehearshale,
This Apollata would oft a day repayre
To a woman which had in her entrayle,
Spirates closed to make his damayle,
in whose wombe, baraine and out of grace,
of wyched spirites was the dwellyng place.

This sayd woman was a creature,
The which afore by cursed Julian,
By his life his purpose to recure,
In sacrifice was offred to Sathan.
And so as he with cursednes began,
Such was his ende as all bookees tell,
whose soule in Pluto is buried depe in hel.

With this tirant Borhas gan were twof
for his most odious hateful fel outrage,
And to rehearse in party he was loth,
The blasphemies of his fell language.

for nother fury nor infernall rage,
may be compared with porson fret within,
to the false Venim of this horrible spume.

It is contrary to all good thewes,
And tofore god most abhominable,
Hatefull to all saue to cursed shrewes,
For of al vices very incomperable,
most contagious and most detestable,
The mouth infect of such infernal houndes
which euery day slea Christ w new woundes

for obstinate is purpose for the nones,
Of disposition furious and woode,
Not aserd to sweare by goddes bones,
with horrible cries, the body, flesh, & bloode,
the lord dismeimbring most gracious & good
His fete, his handes, armes, face, and head,
rend hi of nere as thei would haue hi dead,

This blessed Lorde which is immortall,
though they be deadly they would hym slep
They be earthly, he is celestiaall, (agayne,
In frowarde wyle they been ouerfeine,
Discrecion sayleth they? reason is in bayn
All such blasphemie for short conclusion,
prouderly of pryde and false ambition,

It semeth to me they haue soule sayed,
of kindnesse to do hym reuerence,
which for they? loue vpo a crosse was nailed
to pay their raunsd for mans great offense,
suffered death with humble patience,
false rebuking, spitting in his visage,
And byng mankynd vnto his heritage,

False surquedie that doth the heartes reyse
Of such blasphemours as was this Julian
whose great Emppre might not couerpeisse
Agayn that Lorde which is both god & man,
The original ground of pryde was Sathan
Bynce vnder hym most infortunate,
was this Apostata reigning in his estate,

What was the ende of this tyrant horrible
this cruel felon hateful to euery wight,
By sodein miracle to all hostis visible,
There dyd appeare a very heauynly knight
Most freshly armed Jungelyke of syght,
With a warpe spere sitting on his side,

Made the tirant his hertes blond to blede,

His false goddes might hym not auayle,
His froward offering done to Harometre;
Nor all his proud imperial apparayle,
His inuocations nor hateful sorcerre.
For this Apostata that dyd his sayth denye,
Among his knightes slayn by death sodein
His soule damned w Sathan depe in peine.

How the Emperour Valence slough
Hermites, /ged christen bloude, de-
stroyed churches, & after was byt.

The .xiii. Chapter.

Wchas in hast doth his style dresse,
Next to the Emperour that called
was Valence,
Rehearsing first the perfit holmes,
Of Hermites that dyd they? diligence,
To lyue in penaunce and in abstinence,
forsoke the world and for Christes sake,
Into desert thei haue the way take.

In this world here they list no lenger tarpe
Diuers and double of trust, none certayne,
Ferre in Egypt to lyue solitarie,
Depe in desertes of folke not to be seyn,
The soyle was dyde of vitayle ful bareyn,
the fruitles trees vp sered to the roote,
for Christes loue they thought þ life moste
(foote.

This sayd Valence of malice frowardly,
to these Hermites þ lured in great penaunce,
Causeles was to them great enemye,
troubled them and dyd the great greuaunce,
Lyke as a titaunt set al on vengeaunce,
Destroyed churches with people that he lad
And where he rode christen bloude he had.

This meane whyle by robbing and raime
In Mauriteine which is a great countrey
there was a pynce that called was firmitus
And in Chartage a famous great cite,
for his extorcion and his crueltie,
He toke vpon hym proudly there re pyng
Mauger Romaines to be crowned kyng,

Theodosius the first a manly man,

Ab.iii,

Was

The eighth

Was sent out his malice to withstande,
By the bidding of Valentinian.
Which that tyme the Emperre had in honde
Both at once, but ye shall vnderstande,
Theodosius was sent out to assaile,
The sayd fermeyne & slough hym in batayle.

Of which fermeyne by ful cruel hate,
In that countreypresumptuously reaignyng
Smer of his head and set it on the gate
Of Chartage, this was his endyng,
Which by intrusio afore was crowned king
In Mauritaine oppressing them by drede,
As ye haue heard, for which he lost his hede.

In this matter Bochas doth not sojourne,
By none attendaunce nor no long diligece
But of purpose doth agayn retorne,
To the Emperour that called was Valence,
Which as I told byd so great offence,
To holy church of froward curlednes,
Nough al Hermites that bode in wildernes.

God would not suffer he should lōg endure,
graunteth no tiraunt to haue here long life
for by some mischief or sodain auenture,
thei dye by murder, w dagger, sword, or knif
the Gothoys whylom gan a strife,
for his outrage and great oppression,
they agayn Romains fyl in rebellion.

A prince of his called Maximus,
distressed them by so great tyranny,
was vpon them so contrarious,
that they gathred al their chualtre,
And were so strong vpon their partie
that by theyr manhode it fyl of auenture,
they on Valence made a discomfiture.

Spared not by robbing and pillage,
slough and byent many a stately place,
Cities, townes, and many small village,
that wer famous within the lond of Thace
But al this whyle Valens gan enchase,
And causeles of malice voluntarye,
pursued Hermites that lued solitarie.

And of new this Valens gan agayn,
great multitude of Romains to purchase,
And with his host proudly by dayne,

Agayn Gothoys came doun into Thace,
But furiously they met him in the face,
where like a coward he turned his visage,
to saue his lyfe lay hyd in a cotage.

Thus finally this Emperour Valens,
As ye haue heard sayled of his entent,
the Gothes folowed by cruell violence,
As wold beastes al of one assent.
the house and him to ashes they haue byent
Lo here the fine ye princes take good hede,
Of tyrauntes that saintes blood do shedde.

Of Hermentricus king of the Gothes,
and howe the Emperours, Gratian and
Theodosie, destroyed temples of
falle gods, and how Gratian was
put to flyght.

The .xv. Chapter.

After Valens to God contrarious
In al his woyses most frowarde
of luing,
tofore Bochas came Hermentricus
which of Gothes was whilō lord and king.
Of his great age piteously complaynyng.
Inflame and bolle list make no delayes
Nough himself to worst his greivous daies.

Then came to Bochas & nephew of Valence,
the mighty Emperour called Gratian,
which afore had had experience,
In the emperre the boke tell can.
first with his father Valentinian,
And afterward Theodosie and he,
Had gouernaunce of Rome the cite.

Theodosie and Gratian of assent.
Destroyed temples as in that partie
Of falle gods also they haue down rent,
the great ydols and al such paymentrie,
And full deuoutly gan churches edifye,
And in this whyle as fortune list ordeyne,
One Maximus was bikar in Britayne.

In hardy knyght albe that he byd barpe,
from his promise made by sacrament,
In Britayn list no lenger tarpe,
But into Gaul of heart and whole entent,
Gem

Then Gratian he suddenly is went,
And as it fel, set by their both auple,
they had a battayle not farre out of Paris.

This Gratian was there put to flyght,
By the prowesse of a proude captayne,
called Merobandes an hardy knyght,
whiche with his power hath so ouerlayne,
That Gratian was constrained in certayn,
Whan his power might not auayle,
Gain Maximus to flee out of Italye.

This Maximus of pride gan desyre,
In his heart by false ambition,
To reygne alone, and of the whole Empryre
In his handes to haue possession.
But in what wyse fortune threw him down
With such other as be in number fure,
In this Chapter Bochas doth deserue.

Agayn this same traitour Maximus,
Whan that he had slayn Gratian,
The noble Emperour Theodosius
To venge his death a warre in hast he gan,
Because also that Valentinian,
was wrongly banished through the cruelte
Of Gratian ful farre from his countrey.

With Maximus to holde by his partie,
Was Andragathus a full notable knyght,
whiche was made pynee of his chualte,
that toke vpon him of very force and might
to kepe the mountaynes & no maner wight:
with Theodosius armed in plate and maille
Should passe ouer the Alpes of Italye.

Theodosius made a great armye.
By grace of god and martiall courage,
Layd a siege to Aquileia a great cite,
And wan the towne mauer his disage,
Toke the tyrant and for his great outrage
Becast hym fyrst his royall garment,
and slough him after by rightfull iudgement.

Whan Andragathus knewe Maximus,
that was his lord was slaine in such wyse,
In none for sorow the story telleth thus,
He drowned hymself as Bochas doth deuise
thus can fortune make men arple,
to the state of Emperours attayne.

with brwate stroke geue hym a fall agayne.

This Maximus of whom I spake tofoze,
Tofoze his death made an ordinaunce,
that his sonne which called was Victor,
Should after him gouerne Gaule & fraunce
Whom Arbogastes had in gouernaunce,
A great Constable with Valentinian,
slough this Victor to reigne whan he bega.

A good processe how the Emperour
Theodosie by prayer with a small
nnumber gate the victoysse,

Che. xvi. Chapter.

Ihan Valentinian with great
apparayle,
By Arbogastes toke possession,
Of Lombardy and of al Italye,
Brought al that lond to subiection,
than with his power he came to Gaul down
There receiued with great solemnitie,
At Vienne a famous olde cite.

Arbogastes of whom I spake but late,
His chief Constable as ye haue heard deuise
Of his Loyde by ful cruel hate,
the death conspired of false couetise
Thereby supposyng that he should arple,
Unto the state to be chose Emperour,
whan he wer dead lyke a false trayfoure.

Up in a towre he byng hym trayfourelly,
& to more flattery and byndyng of his name
Reported outward and sayd cursedly,
this Arbogastes to hyde his owne shame,
His souerein Loyde to put in more defame,
slyly assyming a thyng that was ful false,
How he hymself byng vpon the hals.

Thus lyke a murtherer and a false traitours
And of condicions hateful and obious,
Labourd soze to be made Emperour,
that he alone with Eugenius,
Might exlude Theodosius.
Fyrst to let hym be shoud in no partie,
passe through Italye nor through Lombardy.

Set espyes to byng hym in a trayne.

which

The eyght

Whiche that tyme as they vnderstode,
 Lyke a iust prince dyd his busy payne,
 As he that thought nothyng but good,
 In the hilles of Lumbardy abode,
 Whom Arbogastes of furious outrage,
 Call hym to trouble and stop his passage.

He and Eugenius beyng of assent,
 Theodosie mortally to assaile,
 Whiche whā he knew their meaning fraudolēt
 Albe that he had but scarce vitaille,
 On euery coast beset with a batayle,
 And of his knyghtes forsaie in manere,
 He left all thyng and toke hym to prayere.

With hym was left but a small meyny,
 True and feythfull in theyr affection,
 And first of al he fyll downe on his knee,
 And to Jesu gan make his Oyson,
 O Lord (quod he) thine eares encline down,
 And of thy mercifull gracious goodnes,
 Deluer me out of my mortal distresse.

Consider and see how that I am thy knyght
 Whiche oft sith through my fragillite,
 With fleshy lustes blynded in my syght,
 A thousand times haue trespassed vnto the,
 But gracious Jesu of mercy and pitee,
 To my requestes beningly take hede,
 Me to succour now in this great neede.

My trust is wholly plainly to conclude,
 thou shalt further and fortune my viage,
 With few folke agayn great multitude,
 To make me haue gracious passage,
 after the prouerbe of new and old language
 how þ thou mayst and canst thy power shewe
 Geyn multitude victoꝝ with a fewe.

And as thou saued whylom Israell,
 gein Pharaos mighty strong puiſſaunce,
 And from the Lions deliuered Daniel,
 And saued Suzāna in her mortal greuaunce
 Saue me this day fro sorow and mischaunce
 In this mischief to graunt me this issue,
 to escape fro daunger by grace of thee Jesu,

Thy blessed name by interpretation,
 Is to say most mighty sauour,
 There is no drede nor dubitation,

That Jesu is in al worldly labour,
 to al that trust him victorious protectour,
 Now blessed Jesu pause of my defence,
 make me escape myne enemies violence.

Let mine enemies þ so great boast do blowe
 though their power be dyedful and terrible
 That they may by experience knowe,
 There is nothing to thee impossible,
 thou two and thye and one induisible,
 Though I with me haue but fewe men,
 Saue me this day Jesu fro death. Amen.

The day gan clere, þ sunne gan shyne bryght
 whan Theodosie deuoutly lay knelyng,
 And by grace adawen gan his syght,
 fro cloudy waues of long piteous wepyng
 His souerain hope set in the heauenly kyng
 Jesu his capteyne in whose holy name,
 that day escaped fro mischief and shame.

The holy crosse bette in his armure,
 boꝝne as chieſ stander tofoze in his batayle
 God made him strong in the field to endure
 Hardy as Lion his enemies to assaile,
 Jesu his chāpion his plate & che his made
 Jesu alone set fire in his memoꝝre,
 By whom that day he had the victorie,

There was a knyght pꝛince of the chualꝝre
 Of Arbogastes and Eugenius,
 Whiche gouerned al whole theyr partie,
 Arbio-called manly and vertuous
 Whiche goodly came to Theodosius,
 Did him reuerence & with right glad chere
 saued hym þ daye fro mischief and daungere.

whan Theodosius vpon hys fone gan set,
 Lyke a knyght not turnyng his visage,
 And both batayles together whan they met
 Of Theodosie to cōplete the passage,
 fyll a miracle to his auauꝛage,
 by sodeyn tempestes, of windes, halle & rain,
 troubled all tho that sieged the mountaine,

Vulcanus which is chieſ smith of heauen,
 Gein Arbogastes gan him ready make,
 to bend his gūnes with thūdet & with leue
 And Colus his windes gan awake,
 out of their cauerne, hiden, þ ioune, & blake

All of assent by surdy violence,
with Theodosius to stand at defence.

Again Eugentus & Arbogast his brother,
their people & the departed here and ponder
with wind & mist that none of the saw other
by vnware vengeance of tēpest & of thūder
their speres brass, their shieldes roue as dōer
Eugentus take, after loſt his head,
And Arbogast slough hymself for dyede.

Thus can the lord of his eternal myght,
chastise tyrantes and their malice repelle,
Saued Theodosie his own chosin knyght,
who trusteth him of perfect stablesnes,
goeth fre fro daunger, escapeth fro distresse,
Bokes recorde how Theodosius,
was in his time called Catholicus.

This miracle god list for him wourche,
make hym victor for his great mekenes,
Afore and after found vnto the churche,
As Chasties knyght I take vnto witness
his submission and his deuout humblenes,
Of hastines whan he was vengeance,
He to the churche yeldded hymself culpable.

The case was this as I rehearse can,
In Thessalonica a famous great cite,
Being Bishop saint Ambrose in Milan,
Certayn Judges for to do equitie,
And sit in dome haupng auctoritie,
Notwithstanding their commission,
wer slain by cōmons entering in the towne.

Wherof the mperoz was nothig glad ne faine
But commaunded of hasty wilfulnes,
Whan he knew these Judges wer so slayn
that his knyghtes should them thider dresse
Entred the cite by cruel surdines,
With sword and pollax, & daggers sharp whet
Indifferently slea all tho that they met,

By whose bydding the cite to encomber,
that day was slayne many an innocent,
fue thousand dead remēbyng in þ number
Murthred in hall without iudgement,
By them that wer into the cite sent.
But whan Ambrose heard of this cruel dede
Like a mist wrelate thus he gan procede,

As ye haue heard hoto this vengeaunce gan,
By Theodosie to chastise the cite,
the same Emperour came after to Milan,
would haue entred at a solemnitie,
the Cathedral churche in his most copaltie,
Bishop Ambrose at the poythe hym met,
And of purpose manly han with set,

Quod the Bishop, I counsel thee withdraw
Into this church þ halt haue none entree,
Thou hast offended God and eke his lawe,
Be not so hardy nor bolde I charge thee.
to set thy foote nor entree in no degree,
Because thou art a cruel homicide,
that mauger thy might þ halt awhile abide

Vnto thy palace home again retorne,
this eight monethes lōke thou be not setne,
passe not thy boundes, do mekely there sojourn
for trust me wel and be right well certan,
al such murderers god hath them in disdain
bloud falsely shed haue this in remēbraunce
callet day & nyght to hym to do vengeaunce.

Against thee for this great offence,
Of innocent bloud shed agayn right,
By iust auctoritie I geue this sentence,
these eight monethes accordept day & night
to enter þ churche þ halt not come in sight
Reason hal holde to iust the balaunce,
til thou haue fully accomplished thy penaunce.

What I haue sayd take therof good hede,
for this time thou gettest nomore of me;
withdraw thy hand innocent bloud to shed
for any rancour or hasty crueltie,
Than to behold the great humilitie,
Of the Emperour consoyed euery dele,
It would haue perced an hert made of stele.

With head enclined no word he spake again
brass in weeping with sobbing vnstaunchable
His purple robe bedewed (as with rayne)
returning home with chere most lamētable
So continued in his purpose stable,
with al the tokens of feithful repentaunce,
in lowly wyse accomplished his penaunce,

Gave examples to princes euerichone,
In case semblable that wyke of wilfulnes

The eyght

To execution to p[ro]cede anon,
maintein their errour & froward curbednes
desed their trespass, maintein their woodnes
ferte out of t[em]pt if it shalbe declared,
to Theodosie for to be compared.

To the church he mekely did obey,
lyke goddes knight did lowly his penaunce
where there be some that wroglly it warrey
holde thereagayn by froward mainenance
touchig this matter set here in remembrance
As men deserue let euery wight take hede,
He that seeth all quyteth them their mede.

Theodosius lyst nothing abyde,
To wote the yerde of his correction,
forsoke the plat of rigour toke the edge
Whely to suffer his castigation,
To bowe his chin was no rebellion,
By meke confession knowyng his trespase,
By saint Ambrose restored agayn to grace.

Virtuous princes may example take,
Of Theodosie how the lord shal queme
he not froward amēdes for to make (deme
his scepter, his swoerd, his purp[ur]e, his dis-
subiecte to Ambrose what hym list to deme.
Obeyed all thyng and for his great offence
To holy churche to make recompence.

He knew that god was his souerayn lord
To holy churche how greatly he was bound
grutched neuer in wyl, thought, nor woorde
wholy on Christ his Emperre for to founde.
where vertue reyneth, vertue wol a reboude
And for this prince obeyed to all vertue,
hath now his guerdon aboue in Christ Jesu.

How knightes & gentilmē of þe Gothes
chose Alaricus to bee their kyng, and
the commons chose Rhadagasus
whiche ended in mischefe.

The .xvii. Chapter.

It is remembred of antiquitee,
In the Bible after Moyses floude,
Howe by dissent of his sonnes
three,
Of theyr image playnely and theyr bloude,

All kynredes dislaid been abyde,
And myne outour as it is made mynde,
Of Japhet came seven nations as I fynde.

The people first of Gaul and Galathye,
Of Magoth, Gothes and folkes of Itayle,
The Scythia with many great countrey
Stondyng in Asia as by rehearlayle,
But in Europe stant Thace it is no fayle,
Gothes Scythiens of purpose dyd ordeine,
Among themself gouernours tweyne.

Knightes and gentlemen chose Alaricus,
To be theyr prince and haue the souerainte,
where the commons chose Rhadagasus,
The Gothes first for great suertie.
With kyng Meryke entryng the cite,
Into Rome to fynde theyr succour,
That tyme Honorius beyng Emperour.

By graunt of whom al the whole countree,
Gave to Alarike, of Gaul, Spaine, & frader,
There to abyde and there to holde his lee,
Gothes, Spainfolks, vnder his oberlaunce,
Takynge on hym al the gouernance,
till Stillicon out of the Occident,
to mete with hym was down fro Rome set.

That tyme Honorius being Emperour,
Stilllicon gan Alarike enchaife,
With many a surdy proude souldiour.
for to fyghe they chose haue theyr place.
But Alarike stode so in the grace,
Of fortune, that by very myght,
Stilllicon he put vnto the flyght.

Rhadagasus and Alarike of assent,
Haue concluded and full accorded be,
Through Itayle for to make their went,
toward Rome and to enter that citee,
manger Romans, to haue the soueraintie
tofore they entring gan the town manace
the name of Rome to chaunge and deface.

for euermore the towne to do a shame,
their purpose was as ye haue heard deuys,
first of al to chaunge the townes name,
Wempe themselves able to that empyse.
But fortune thought al otherwys
Lyke her maners to do most damage,

whan

Whā she to mē sheweth freshest her visage

Her condicions be not alway one,
Stoundmele of custome she can varye,
For she was fyist froward to Stillicon,
And to Rhadagasus eft ageyn contrary.
In one poynt she list neuer tarpe.
to Rhadagasus her fauour dyd fayne,
By Stillicon he vanquished in battayle.

All his proude might not make hym spede,
For fortune list so for hym ordeine,
that he was fayne at so streite a nebe,
to flee for succour to an hye mounteyne,
Of al vitayle naked and bareyn,
where for hunger he felt so great griefe,
nigh al his people dyed at mischies.

Of al succour destitute and bareyn,
Saw no remedy, toke hym to the flight,
By the Romans he was so ouerlepye,
take at mischies and mager al his might,
In cheynes bound and damned anon right
for to be dead his people as it is tolde,
many one slayn, some take, & some wer sold.

There was none prouder nor moze surque.
In thilke dayes plainly to descriue, (dous
Chan was this sayd kyng Rhadagasus,
which toke on hym id Romans for to strue
His power thort was ouerturned bloue,
for fortune of malice had a lust,
to slep this tirant id hūger and with thurst.

Among other proude princes all,
Reioysed himself by a maner daynglorp
because that men in countreis dyd hym cal,
kyng of Gothes, but thort is the memory
Of hym rehearsed or witten in historye,
To yue example in dede men may fynde.
the name of tirantes is sone put behynde.

Howe Ruffine chamberlayne with
Theodosie usurped to be Emperoz,
and therefore by Honorius was
damned & his head smet of.

The. xliii. Chapter.



Pe clymbyng bp hath oft an
vntwate fall,
And specialle whan it is
sodeyn,

fro low degree to estate imperiall,
whan false ambition the ladder doth ordeyn
By vsurpacion presumptuously to atteyne,
Aboue the skies with his head to pearce,
fro whence he come wer shame to rehearse.

I meane as thus, al such hasty clymbyng,
Of them that list not themself for to knowe
And haue forgeat þe groud of their ginning,
by froward fame id worldly windes blowe
to reise thep; name aboue Sagittaries bow
Record of Ruffine which proudly ga desire,
By false intruiston to occuppe the Emperre.

The which Ruffine was whilō chāberleyn
with Theodosie and hold a manly knyght,
yet in one thyng he was fowle ouersepye,
By couetise blinded in his sight,
To spend his laboz & had no groud of right,
By the Emperour Honorius he was sent,
for to gouerne all the Orient.

By processe Ruffine was made bikere,
Called after the bikar imperiall,
Toke vpon hym wholy and entere
By auctorite as chief and principall,
Hymself alone for to gouerne all,
And most able thus he dyd deane,
Befoze all other to weare a Diademe.

Of hymselfe so muche he dyd make,
In port and the most ambitious,
At Constantinople vntwately he was take,
fyist bound in cheynes & after serued thus.
By true iudgement of Honorius,
His head smet of and his right hōd in dede
This was his ende nomoze of hym I rede.

Howe Stillicon and other of lyke
condicion ended in mischies.

The. xix. Chapter.

After whose death to Bochas the
came one,
Such another like of condicion.

Also

The eyght

Afore remembred called Stilliton,
Whose sone Eutherius as made is mencid,
But posed hym to haue possession,
Of þe Emppre whole plainly thus he thought
By what meane the way his father sought.

Compendiously to tell of these twayn
fro diuers countreys toward Septemptrid,
To gather people thei dyd their busyn payn,
Of many diuers straunge nation,
Agayn Honorius thei came together downe
And as they met fortune made them sayle,
Both at once slayn in battayle.

Their gynnynge cursed had a degeable fine
After whose death I reade of other twayn,
Of one Constance his father Constantine,
Which Constantine toke on him in certayn,
To reygne in Gaule and after that ordayn,
In that countrey to be gouernour,
there to continue as Lord and Emperour.

His sonne Constance caught a deuotion,
Of conscience, and forthwith anone ryght,
Was haue a Wonne & made his professiō
His father after of very force and might,
let take him out, gaue him þe ordre of knight
both of assent gan make the self strong,
to oppresse the cuntrey & do the people wrong

This sayd Constance as mine autor saith
Was confederate of hatefull crueltie,
with one Gerontius a Turasie made & saith
As brethren sworne for moze auctorite,
And for to make the number vp of the
Constantine was sworne with them also
To be al one in what they had ado.

These sayd the sworne and toynded thus,
conquered in Spayne many a great cite
But in this whyle this sayd Gerontius,
Crautour and false ful of duplicite,
His felow slough again his oth partie,
thus was Constance through false collusio,
Of Gerontius murthred by treason.

Gerontius after liued but a whyle,
By his own knyghtes he slayn was also,
fraud for fraude, discreit is quit with guyle,
It soloweth euer and gladly cometh the retro

Men receiue their guerdon as they do,
Let men alway haue this in remembraunce,
murder of custom wil end with mischaunce.

Among such other thus endynge in mischief
Came Attalus and one Heraclian,
for no prowesse but to thei great reppel,
remembred here thei story tell can,
Agayn Remains whan the rebell gan,
By Honorius afore made officers,
And of the Emppre called chief vikers.

first Attalus for his tyranny,
whan he in Gaul was made gouernour,
Went into Spayne with a great compaign
By his payn and fraudolent labour,
By false sleight to be made Emperour,
Take and bound cpyled for fallens,
His hand smet of ended in wyetchednes.

Of Heraclian the ende was almost lyke,
yet was he promoted to great prosperitie.
Made gouernour and Loyde of al Africke,
Of consulere rose to the dignitie,
Rode through Libye & many great cuntrey
with the thousand Wyppes gan to sayle,
and to leue hundred to arrive by in Itale.

Such nūber of shippes neuer afore wer seyn,
Like as it is accompted by wytyng,
his nauye passed, the nauye in certayn,
Of mighty Xerxes that was of Persie kyng
By Alexander, but yet in his commynge
Toward Itale whan he shoulde arrive,
the sea and fortune gan agayn hym strue.

At his arriuale he had a sodeyn byde,
Cause Honorius had sent down a capteyne
Constantius called gouernour and head
of al the Romans to mete him on the plain
for which Heraclian turned is agayne,
As I fynde gan take his passage,
Toward the cite that called is Chartage.

Thus fortune lyst her power shewe,
By he came fully to that noble towne,
with Warpe swordes he was al to betre,
Among his knyghtes through false occasiō,
As thei fyll at a disencion.

Of intrusion first gan the quarrell,

Agayne

Agayn Romayns whan that he gan rebell.

A good processe why Rome was de-
stroyed: and for the same, or lyke
cause, many other realmes.

The. xx. Chapter.

If many mischieues afoze here
rehearsed,
Some drawe along and some hostly
rolde,
And how fortune hath her whele reuerled
By tragedies remembred manifolde.
Tofoze by Bochas of princes yong and old
Into the eyght boke rehearsed the processe,
Echeone almost ended in wretchednesse.

Namely of them that did most despye,
By wrong tyle themself to magnifye,
to haue lordship and gouerne the empire,
the state imperial proudly to occuppe,
which estate pleyntly to specyfye,
as ferre as Dhebs doth in his sphere shyne,
Among al lordships is brought vnto ruine.

fro myne autour me list not discorde,
To tell y ground why Rome is come to nou-
by an exaple I cast me to record, (ght
what was chief cause if it be wel sought,
By a story that came vnto the thought,
Of John Bochas, which that ye shal lere,
ful notably is rehearsed here.

Which exaple and story rehearsing,
Seriously folowing myne autour,
Odoacer whylome a famous kyng,
A kyng by name and a great gouernour,
But of his cōditions a rauinous robbour,
Out of whose court wet mercy and piete,
Banished for euer with trouth and equitie.

In that region where mercy is not vsed,
And trouth oppressed is with tyanny,
and rightwiseness by power is refused:
false extortion supporteth robbery,
and sensualitie can haue the mastery:
Above reason be tokens at a piete,
which many a lōd haue brought to mischiefe

There is no realme y may stand in suretie,
fyrme nor stable in very existence,
Nor continue in long prosperitie,
But if the throne of kingly excellence,
be supported with iustice and clemence,
In him that shal as egal Judge stand,
twene rich & poze w scepter & sword in hand

A cleare exaple this matter for to groun
So as a fader that is naturall,
Or like a moder which kindly is bound,
to foster their chyldren in especiall,
Right so a kyng in hys estate royal,
Should of his office diligently intend,
His true lieges to cherish and defend.

By good examples his subiectes to flumine
For temporal realmes should as in figure,
Resemble the kingdom which that is diuine,
By lawe of God and lawe eke of nature,
that Res publica long tyme may endure,
Woode of offcozd and false duplicite,
As one body long in prosperitie.

Neither they reyn nor dominacion,
Haue of themself none other assurance,
The estate of kinges gan by permission,
Of Goddes grace, and of his purueyance
by vertuous lyfe and mozal gouernaunce,
Long to continue both in peace and werre,
like they deserve, & punish the when they
(erre

They should be the myrrour and the lyght,
Transcend al other by vertuous excellence
as examples of equitie and right.
So by discrecion of natural prouidence,
To tempze they rigour w mercy & clemēce
What shal fall cast afoze al thynges,
As apperteyneth to princes and to kynges.

Thynges passed to haue in remembraunce
Conserue wysely thynges in ptesence,
For thynges to come afoze make ordinaunce
folowe the traces of vertuous continence
ageyn all byces to make resistance,
By the verrue of magnanimite,
which is appropried to imperial maieste.

Neither to force autours save echeone,
which conserueth the royal dignitie,

Al. t. In luse

The eyght

In such a meane stable as any stone,
Not ouer glad for no prosperitie,
Nor ouer sad for none aduersitie.
For lyfe nor death hys courage not remue,
To god and man to yeld them that is due.

Geyn fleshy lustes arme hys self in sobrenes
Vorbe al surfets and froward gluttony,
Gredy appetites by measure to repressse,
Out of his house auoyde al ribaudy:
Rowners, flatterers & such folke as can lye
wate in his domes he be not parciall,
to poore doe almes, to vertuous libetall.

In his array shew him lyke a kyng,
From other princes by a maner difference,
So that men prayse hys vertuous living,
more thā his clothing sette fro his presence,
And let him thinke in his aduertente,
Trust theron verely certeyn,
as he gouerneth men wil report and seyne.

Let hym also for hys great auayle,
Haue such about hym to be in presence,
Notable princes to be of counsaile,
Such as tofoze haue had experiente,
twene good & euill to know the difference.
And lye thynges hateful of new and olde,
to banish the out in hast from his household.

Fyrt them that loue to lye in ydlenes,
And such as nother loue god ne drede,
Coutous people that poore folke oppresse,
and them also that doe al thyng for mede,
and simulacion clad in a double wede.
As such as can for theyr auauntages,
Out of one hoode shew two visages.

Let him also boyde out at hys gate,
Ryotous people that loue to watch al night
and them also that vse to dymke late,
Lye long abed tyl theyr diner be dyghte,
& such as list not here of god to haue a sight
And reches folke that list not heare masse,
lauoyde hys court and let the lightly passe.

For which defaultes rehearsed here tofozne
Not onely Rome but many great cuntree,
Hath be destroyed & manye kingdom lozne,
In olde Chronicles as men may rede & see

False ambicion, toward duplicite,
hath many a realme & many a lond ecloyed,
And ben in cause why they han be destroyed

Jerusalem was whylom transigrate,
They true prophets for they had in despyte
And Balthasar was eke infortunate,
for he in Babilon folowed al hys delyte,
Darpe in Drece had but smal respyte,
Sodeynly slayn and murdred by treason,
thesame of Alexander whē he drank poysō

Dyscoide in Troye grounded on couetise,
whan by false treason sold was Palladion,
Rome and Chartage in thesame wise,
Destroyed wer for short conclusion,
among them selfe for theyr diuision.
Rekon other realmes þ been of latter date,
as of diuisions in Fraunce þ fil but late.

All these defaultes rehearsed here byest þ
Durbought the roote and wayed in balauce
Chief occasion to tell by and by,
hath ben in princes þ haue had gouernaunce
And specially to put in remembraunce,
for an example telleth as cometh to mind,
Of Odoacer the slop as I fynd.

Bozne in Dyce and hardy of courage,
At hys begynning hymself to magnify,
Though no mention be made of his linage
Hauing no tyle but theste and robbrye,
hys request gan nought of blood & auncetry
Gadred people of sundry regions,
Entered Itayle with many nations.

With hisouldours fyrst he gan a Tayle,
with multitude entring anon right,
Kyngdom of Hūgary & countreys of Itayle,
Met in his passage with a Romain knight
Called Rojestes in stele armed byght.
The field was take and put in reopartye,
Rojestes fled for succour to Daupye.

Strepyght besieged and the towne wonne,
found for the time none other cheuissauce
The next morowe at rylpyng of the sunne,
Bound in cheynes tencease his greivance
Sent to a Citie that called was Placence,
Agayn whom Odoacer was so fel,

Let him be slaine by iudgement ful cruell.

After whose death by sodaine violence,
Odoacer is passed through Itayle,
Entred Rome found no resilience.
For there was none to yeue him batayle,
And the Emperour durst him not assaile,
So that by force and rauenous working
Of al Itaille he was crowned king.

Had al Rome vnder subiection,
Fortune a while list him not to sayle,
And therof had indignacion,
Gaue he age in him in hope it should auaise
And therupon the lordship of Itayle,
He gaue of purpose hys power committing,
To Theodozick that was of Gothes king.

So þ Theodozick in hope to haue victorie,
Ageine Odoacer gan make resilience.
And hys name to put in memozye,
Toke vpon hym by knightly excellence,
For the Romans to stande in defence,
Met him proudly with hys chualtrie
Beside a riuer that called was Sourye.

With their batayles togedze whā they met
Beside Aquileia that standeth in Libardy,
With round speares & sharpe swordes whet
Odoacer for al his tyrannye
Was put to flight, disconfited hys partye,
And fortune than þ ca best chaunge & vary
At vnset houre was to him contrarie.

Hym & hys power þ Romayns haue defied
He bynt their vines and townes enuiron,
Because the entrie was to hym denied,
and to Raucenne he is descended down.
But maugre him he was taken in the toon
By Theodozick let ech tiraunt take hede,
Odoacer commaunded to be dede.

Myne auctour Bochas of entencion,
for the time as came to remembraunce,
Toward Romans maketh a digression.
To them recordeing the great variaunce
the vnware chaunges, the gery countenance
Of fortunes false transmutacion,
These same wordes rehercing to the toon

Remembre O Rome & cal agein to minde
The dates passed of thy felicitye,
thy martial conquestes, thy triumphes leste be.
Thy gret victories most of auctorite (hind
thy famous lawes long in ech countre
which like a Sunne through al þ world did
Rome al at once is turned to ruine (Whine

from East to west thy lordship did attaine,
Aboue al powers most excellent and colial
But nowe fro Rome down into Almain,
Theslate translated which is ymperiall,
Name of thy senatours name in especiall,
The golden letters decked and distaced,
and from remembraunce almost out caced.

Citie of Cittes whilom most glorious,
and most freshly floured in chualtrie,
to which þ Alpes & moūteins most famous
were lowly subiecte of al Lumbardy,
Ed that discord, diuision, and enuye,
Among your self hath clyped þ brightnesse
by a false serpet brought in by doublenesse.

Kinges princes were to thee tributarye,
of al prosperite so fullom was the flood,
Among your self tyl ye began to varye
The world throughout subiect to you stode
Tyll ye gan weue two faces in one hoode.
what folowed after fortune hath so prouided
Ye came to nought whan ye ga be deuided

Unpurueyed of prudent Senatours
Thy marchaundise turned to pouertie,
of knighode naked, bareme of souldiours,
Disconsolate stant al the comontie,
Toures walles broke of the Cite,
That whilom were a paradise of delite,
Nowe al the world hath the but in despise.

Cause to conclude of al thy wretchednesse,
False ambition, pride and Lecherie,
Diuision, malicious, doublenesse,
Rancoure, hatred, couetise, and enuy,
which set aside al good policie,
In brief rehearsed for most conclusion,
haue be chief ground of thy destruction.

Al. n. Chow

The eyght

Howe Trasilla king of the Gepidols, and
Busa kinge of the Bulgariens were
brought vnto subiection, and made
tributarie vnto the sayd The-
odozke, called Theodozke
of Berna.

The .xxi. Chapter.

After these mischeues told
of Rome town,
Came Trasilla king of Gepidols,
with other twaine as made is mencion,
Busa that was king of Bulgatoys,
with Philitheus rainig in Rugiois,
Al these thre byefly for to seyn,
Came at ones to Bochas to compleyne,

These realmes stading toward Septetris
and to remembre of the first twaine,
were brought at once vnto subiection,
By Theodozke that dyd hys busy peyne,
them to conquere, and poudly did ordeyne,
That they were neuer hardy to rebell,
Again Romans no take no quarell,

To Theodozke they were made tributarye,
Most wretchedly bound in seruage,
Neuer so hardy after for to vary,
In payne of death during al their age,
of seruitude loe here the surpluseage,
Of al wretches most wretched they be foud,
That they to thraldome constrained be and

(bound

Treasure of treasours if it be wel sought,
Is vertuous freedom with large libertie,
with worldly gooddes it may not be bought,
with roial rubies, gold, stones, no perre,
for it transcendeth and hath the souereinty
aboue al richesse that been in earth foud,
A man at large frely to stand vnboud,

Howe Philitheus king of the Rugiois
lost hys kingdome, and of others,

The .xxii. Chapter.

Next these two kinges in order ye may
to John Bochas ga shew his presce
the third king called Philithe,
which by fortunes fodeyn violence,
Lost hys kingdome by cruel sentence,

(se

Of Odoacer the tyrant merceles,
and eke his life and came no more in ptees

These fodeyn chages to rede tohan I bega
Sawe so oft the whele turne by and down,
of fortune there came one Marcian,
Of whom is made none other mencion,
Sawe by a fodeyn confuracien,
He murthered was being ynnocent,
Among hys knyghtes which slough hym of
(allent.

Than tofore Bochas to shewe hys presce
there came out that called was Leon
which caught a title by no violence,
But made hys clayme by iust succellion,
after hys father, and toke possession,
which of a Leon mine autour saith þ same
Being Emperour bare the same name.

Thys yonger Leon ageyn al truth & right
By tyranny (as made is mencion.)
through cruel zeno þ was an hardy knight,
was put out of hys possession,
Constrayned to liue in religion,
But to what orde that he dyd wend,
I find not but there he made hys ende.

Howe Simachus and Boetius hys
sonne in lawe were banished, and
after iudged to dye,

The .xxiii. Chapter

After these mischeues Simachus gan
him drawe,

Toward Bochas with a full
piteous face,
Boetius came to him þ was his sone in law
which among Romans gretly stode in grace
But in thys mater byefly for to passe,
the sayd Boetius only for hys truth,
Exiled was, alas it was great ruth,

for common profite he was vnto the town,
In matters that grounded were of right,
Very protectoure and stedfast chaumpion,
Ageyn two tyrantes which of force & might
Had in the poynle oppressed many a wight,
By exactions and pillages gonne of new,
Upon the comons ful false and eke vntrew
Whan

When Theodosius of Gothes lord & kyng.
Toke vpon him by false illustration,
To reygne in Rome the people oppressing.
By his two prouocles as made is mencion.
Byd in the Citie great oppression.
Confedatate as brother vnto brother.
Opilio and Gaudentius was that other.

Compendiously thys matter to declare,
To saue þ common Boetius shode in defence
foz lyfe no; death he list not foz to spare,
to withstande of tyrantes the sentence.
Kyng Theodosius of cruel violence.
Banished him by hateful tyrannye.
He and his sader to abyde in Pauce.

Afterward Theodosius of battrede.
Like a false tyrant of malice and enye.
Gave iudgement that both two wer deay.
But touching Boetius as bookes specify.
wrote dyuers bookes of Philosophy.
Of the Trinitie matters that were diuine.
Hattered foz Chyist and called Seuerine.

Of kyng Arthur of great Bytteyn. now
called Englonde: and of his coquestes.
and howe he was destroyed by his
cosin Mordrede.

The. xxiij. Chapter.

As ever pynce might hiself assure
Of fortune þ fauour to restreyn.
Like his desyre his grace to recure
to abyde stable and stond at certeyn:
Among al other reken Arthur of Bytteyn.
which in his tyme was hold of euery wight.
the wyfdest pynce and the best knight.

To whom Bochas gan hys stile dresse.
In this Chapter to remember blyue.
Hys great conquest and his high noblesse.
with singuler dedes þ he wrought his lue.
And first he gymmeth bytenye to deserue.
the Seite of Bytteyn and of that cuntrey.
which is inclosed with a large see.

Set farre westward as ye shal vnderstand
Hauing Spayne set in the opposite.
Of a smal angle called Englonde.

France about him deseruing thus his scite
with many a riuer pleasant of deylte.
Whote bathes and welles. & there be found
Dyuers mynes of metalles ful habound.

About which renneth the Ocean.
Right plenteous of al maner vitayle.
the name of which at Brutus first begat.
London hath Wyppes by the sea to sayle.
Bachus at Winchester greatly doth auayle
Worcester with frutes haboundeth at the full
Hertford with beastes. Cotswolde with wull

Bathe hath hote bathes holef for medicine
Porke mighty timber for great auantage
Cornwall myners in to myne:
Salisbury beastes ful sauage.
Wheate meale & hony. plentie for enery age
Kent and Canterbury hath great comodite
Of sundry fishes there taken in the see.

Bochas reherceth there is eke in Bytteyn
found of Gette a ful pacious stone.
Blake of colour. and vertuous in certeyn.
foz sickeneses many more then one.
Powder of which wil disceure anon.
If it be drunke (though it be secrete)
Of maydenhed the broken chastitee.

There been eke pearles founde in most well
And they be best that haue most whitnesse.
And as the booke of Brutus also telles.
Howe kyng Arthur to speake of worthines
passed al kinges in martial prowesse.
Touching his lue and hys royall kyrede.
who that list see in Brutus he may rede.

His sader called Uterpendragon.
A manly knight and famous of courage.
Of false enye murdered by poyson.
His sonne Arthur but yong & tender of age
By ful assent of al hys baronage.
by succession crowned anon right.
Called of Europe the most famous knight.

Curteys. large. and manly of dispenre.
Mercur called of liberalite.
Hardy. strong. and of a great prouidence.
And of his knightly magnanimitie.
He drove Saxons out of his countree.

U.iii. Conquer

The eyghe

Conquered by promesse of his mighty hond
Dyradoys, Denmarke and Gotlande,

Yreland, Gaule, Norway, Scotland & Fraunce
Is Martes sone to the wertes mete,
Wrought by counsaile & by the ordinaunce
Of prudent Marlyn called bys prophete.
And as I fynde he lete make a fete,
Among his Byrons most famous & notable
throug al the world called the round table.

Most worthy knights proued of theyr hond
chose out by Arthur this ordre haue begone
their famous nobles throu euer chysse lōd
Shone by report as doth the midday sūne,
To fames palace the renoun is bypūne,
Statutes set by vertuous ordinaunce,
Under p̄fession of martial governaunce.

The fyrr statute in the registre found,
fro which they shoulde not derlyne of right,
By ful assurance of othe and custome bound,
By to be armed in plate forged bryght,
Except a space to rest them on the night,
Seke auenture and their tyme spend,
rightful quarrel to susteine and defende,

The febler partie if he had right,
To theyr power manly to support,
If that they wer required of anye wight,
Folke disconsolate to beare by and cōsoft,
At al tymes men may of them report,
No maner wyse they doe no vpolence,
And agein tyrantes make knightly resūlce

That wedowes & maydes suffer no damage
By false oppression and hatefull cruelte,
Restore chyldren to their true heritage,
Wryngly cryed folke to theyr cuntrey,
And for holy churches libertie,
Ready euer to make them self strong,
Rather to dye than suffer the haue wryng.

For common profit as chosen champions,
Pro Re publica defending theyr cuntrey,
Shew aye them selfe hardy as lyons,
Honour to encrease chasste dishonestie,
Relieve al them that suffer aduersite,
Religious folke haue them in reuerence,
Wydgetimes receiue p̄fayle of their dispence

Called in armes seuen dedes of merce,
Bury souldiours that fayle sepulture,
folke in prison deliuer them graciously,
Such as poore be theyr ransom to recure
wounded people that languishe & endure,
which Pro re publica manly spent theyr blud
the statute bound to doe such folke good.

To put them self neuer in auenture,
But for matters that were iust and true,
Afore proude by theyr shode sure, (nerue
The grounde wel knowe wer it of olde or
And after that the matter whan they knew
To procede knightly and not fayne,
As right required, their quarrel to darreyne.

A clerke there was to chyonicle theyr dedes
By pursuantes made to him report,
Of theyr exploite and their good speedes,
Rao and song to folke gaue great comfozt,
these famous knightes making their relosyt
At high feastes euerych toke his seate,
Lyke to theyr estate as was to them mete.

One was boyde called the see perillous,
As Seyn Greal doth pleyntly detemine,
Aone to entre but the most vertuous,
Of god prouyded to be a pure virgyne,
Bozne by discent to accomplish and to fyne
He alone as chiefe and souereyne,
All auentures of Wales and Butteyne.

Among al kynges renoumed and famous,
Is a bryght sunne set amid the sterres,
So shode Arthur notable and glozious,
lyke fresh p̄hebus calling his light afteres
In pees like Argus most martial in wertes
Is Hector har by like Wilkes treatable,
Called among chysse kyng most honozable.

His royal court he did so ordeyne,
throug eth cuntrey so ferre sp̄ad out p̄ light
who that euer came thyder to compleine,
By wryng oppressed and required of right
In his defence he shoulde fynde a knight,
To him assigned finally to entend,
By martial dome his quarrel to defende.

If it fel so that any straunge knight,
Sought auentures & thyder came fro ferre

Co

To do armes his request made of right,
His challenge sene were it of peace or warre
was accepted to the court came therre.
Like as he came with many or alone,
they wer deliuered forsaake was neuer one.

There was the schole of martial doctrine,
For yong knightes to learne al the gyle,
In tender age to haue ful discipline,
On horse and foote by notable exercise,
thing take in youth doth helpe in many wise
And ydlenes in grene yeres begonne,
Of al vertues clipe the cleare sunne.

Widowes, maydens, oppressed folke also,
of extort wronges wrought by tyranny,
In that court what nacion came therto,
Receiued were, there list no man denye.
Of their compleyntes found ready remedy
Made no delay, but furth anon right,
them to suppozt assigned was a knyght.

He by theyr order they bound wer of trouth
By assurance and by oth yfwozne,
In their empuses and let for no flouth,
Oleynly to tel how they haue them borne.
Theyr auenture of thynges done besyme,
Right as it shal spare in no manere,
to tel ech thing vnto the Registrere.

Thing openly done, or thing that was secrete
of auentures as betwene tweyne,
or any quarrell take of volunte,
truely report and platly not to feyne,
them to be sworne the statute did ordeyne.
Not conceled of worship nor of shame,
to be registred report the selfe same.

And to conclude the statute hath vs lered,
Euery quarrel grounded on honestie,
In that court what knight was requered,
In the defence of trouth and equite,
falshed excluded and duplictie,
Shal ay be ready to sustene that party,
His life, his body to put in icopardy.

Thus in Britteyn shone the cleare light,
Of chivalrye and of hye prowesse, (ght.
which throughe þ world had his bemes bryt
well of worship, conduite of al noblesse,

Imperial court al wronges to repressse,
Hedspyrng of honour, of larges chief sitre,
myroure of manhod, of nobleste þ lantern

Yet was there seyn neuer so bryght a lūne
the soners day in the midday sphere,
So frely shone but some skyes doime,
Myght percase curtayne his beames clere,
oft it sayleth whē fortune maketh best chere
And falsely simpleth in her double weede,
folke seyn expert than is she most to dyde.

Thus whan the name of this worthy king
was farthest spard by report of memory,
In euery realme his noblesse most shyning
All his empuses concluding on victorie,
this double Goddesse enuyed at his gloire,
and cast meanes by some maner treyne,
to clipe the light of knightthod in Britteyn.

Thus whyle Arthur stode most honorable,
In his estate flourishing in his age,
Among his knightes of the round table,
Hest of princes on fortunes stage,
The Romayns sent to hym for truage,
Can make a clayme toward a outrageous,
taking their tytle of Cesar Julius.

The same time this mighty king Arthur,
conquered had Gaule and also Fraunce,
Outraged scolle, and like a conquerour,
Brought Darys vnder obeyssaunce,
Toke the to grace, and with his ordenaunce,
Gate al Jungoy, Ingoyis, and Gascoyne,
Doytows, Flauerne, Barry, and Burgoynes,

Ceased not but dyd his busy peyne,
Most like a knight held furth his passage
Gate al the land of Doyters and Couraynes
Theyr Cites polde to him they did homage
To be rebels they found none anauntage,
Soiourned in fraunce as leith þ Cronicles
Helde possession the space of nine yere.

Held a feast ful solemne at Darys,
Al the cuntreys which he gate in fraunce,
Lyke a prince ful prudent and wise,
which had of freedom ful royal suffisaunce
Of al his conquest þ cuntreys in substaunce,
for his princes and Barons so prouyded,
Lp

The eyght

As they deserues he hath them deuyled.

To his Seneſcal that called was Ray,
 Aungoyne & Mayne he gaue all the party,
 to his butler was made no delay,
 Called Bedwerc he gaue Normandy,
 To a Baron nye colin of allye,
 A marly knight which named was Berel,
 Gaue the duchye of Burgoyne eury dele.

Thus he departed lordſhips of that lond,
 there he thought was moſt expedient,
 Some he reſerued in his owne hond,
 Ageyn to Brittain returned of entent,
 Sent out wyttes, held a great parliament,
 After which he made a feaſt anon,
 In the cuntrey called Gloumorgon.

At a great citie called Carlion,
 As it is remembred by wytynges,
 came many a pynce & many a freſh Baron
 In number I find þ there wer ten knynges,
 Ready to obey Arthur in al thynges,
 Wyſſent alſo as it was wel ſene,
 there wer of Eagles reckoned full thyrtyene.

All the knyghtes of the round table,
 Feaſt of Wentercoſt a feaſt principall,
 Many eſtates famous and honorable,
 Of wynces, barons, bozne of þ blood royal
 were preſent there, and in eſpecial,
 Al that wer by othe and promiſe bounde,
 to the byotherhede of the table rounde.

And it ſil ſo while that king Arthur,
 as apperteyned ſate in his eſtate,
 There came, ſit, ſent down by great labour
 Of olde men choſen out of the Senate,
 Sad of theyr poxe, demure and tempoate,
 Rycheſe clad of looke and of viſage,
 Gray heard echone ſempt of right gret age

fyſt cunningly as they thought it due,
 cauſe of theyr coming, & plainly what it mēt
 fyſt of aſſent the king they did ſaue,
 Next after that they told who thē ſent,
 and theyr letters mekely they preſent,
 Concluding thus to ſpeke in bryef language
 How the Romayns are of hym truage,

Customed of olde ſith gone many a daye,
 when that Ceſar conquered fyſt Britain,
 the king requyting to make them no delay,
 Arthur abode liſt nothyng to ſeyn,
 But al the court gan at them diſdein.
 The proud Britons of cruel haſty blood,
 would haue thē ſlaine euen there they ſtoode.

Ray quod Arthur to al his officers,
 within our court they ſhal haue no damage
 they entred been and come as meſſengers,
 and men alſo greatly fall in age.
 Let make them there with a glad viſage,
 Toke his counſel of ſuch as wer moſt wyſe,
 with thys anſwere ſayd in curteys wyſe,

Your letters read and playnly vnderſtode
 the tenure whole remembred in this place,
 touching the charge þ ye haue take on bond
 To geue anſwere rehearſed in ſhort ſpace
 by word & wytyng ye greatly me manace.
 Howe ye purpoſe with many ſtrong batayle
 paſſe the mountayns me ſelly for taſſayle.

It nedeth not ſuch conqueſt to alleadge.
 Agayn Britons of none olde truage,
 Of coming down your way I ſhal abydge,
 with goddes grace ſhort your paſſage,
 Make you no delay but with my baronage,
 paſſe the ſea without long tarpyng,
 to mete Romayns at theyr down comyng.

This was þ anſwer youe to þ meſſengers,
 at theyr departing bare to them gret riches
 The king bade ſo vnto hys officers.
 Ageyn to Rome anon they gan them dreſſe
 playnly repoyntyng the plenteous largelle,
 Of worthy Arthur, conſidered al thynges,
 Of chryſtendome he paſſed al other kinglynges.

Arthurs court was the ſours and well,
 Of martiall promeſſe to Lucius they tolde,
 And how that he al other did excell,
 In chualtry, with whom there wer withold,
 The choſen knyghtes both yong and olde,
 In al Europe, who can conſider aright,
 Of al nobleſſe the torches be there light.

He caſt him not to pay no truage,
 Sawd of þ Romayns how he held no lond:
 Which

Which to defend he will make his passage,
Of your clymes to breake a two the bode,
And knightly proue with hys honde
Ye haue no title, ye no; your Cyte,
again þæt Byetons which euer haue stond fre

With al þæt kingdoms subiect to Rome coun
Kinges princes aboue the hye mountaynes
With Lucius they be descended down,
To mete Bytons vpon the large playnes,
Arthurs coming greatly he disdaines,
Because he had plainly to dischaunce,
In multitude of people such fyue.

At Southhampton Arthur toke the see,
With al hys knyghtes of the round table,
Behind he left to gouerne the countre,
hys cosen Mordrede vnttully and vnstable
and at a prief false and deceivable.
To whom Arthur of trust toke al hys lond,
þæt crowne except which he kept in his hond.

fro Southhampton Arthur gan to sayle,
with al the worthy lordes of Bytaine,
At Harflue fond good arriuayle,
he and his princesse their passage did ordein
througħ Normady, Fraunce, & eke Burgoin
Up to a Cite called Augustence,
where he first fond of Lucius the presence.

So large a field no; such a multitude.
Of men of armes assembled in a pleine.
Upon a day mostly to conclude,
Together assembled afoze was netter seyn,
Lucius had on hys partye certeine
Estward the worlde al the chualtie,
Brought by þæt moſteins down toward Ger-

(many
Their wardes set in ech a great batayle,
with their capteines to gouerne and guye,
Arthur w Bytons the Romans did assail
fond many Sarasins vpon that partye,
The Byton Gaufride doth pleyntly specifie
As he of Arthur the prowes doth deserue,
he slough þæt day of Sarasins kinges fyue.

The great slaughter the effusion of bloode
There was that day on outher side,
Ech agein other so furious was and woode
Like for the field as fortune list pload,

That if I should long thereon abide,
to write the death the slaughter, & þæt manere
Touching the field wer tedious for to here

To conclude and leue the surpluse,
In that batayle dead was many a knight,
the consul Lucius slaine in that rage,
The proud Romans by force put to flight
Of gentlenes Arthur anon right,
Let the body of Lucius to be caried
Again to Rome it was no lenger taried.

The worthy princes and lordes þæt were deb
and manly knyghtes abiding with Arthur,
Like a king solemnely toke hede,
that they were butied by diligent labours.
And in thys while like a false traitoure,
hys cosin Mordrede dyd hys busy peyne,
to take from him the kingdome of Bytaine

So as the story plainly maketh minde
Mordrede falsly to hys auantage,
Entreatyd them that were left behind,
Under coloure of fraudolent language,
gaue the gret fredde & they did him homage
That by hys false conspiracion,
brought al Bytein into rebellion.

By faire behestes and many frendly signe,
Througħ the people to hym in sundry wise,
Shewed him outwarde goodly & benygne,
Gaue libertes and many great franchyse
to make Bytons their souereyn lord despise,
And purue paunce he gan ordeine blise,
To kepe the portes he should not arise.

When king Arthur had knowledging,
of thys false reason, and al the purueance
That Mordrede made, he like a manly king
Left Burgoyne and al the land of fraunce
Cast on Mordrede for to doe vengeance,
toke the sea, and with great appaile,
Cast at Sandwich to make hys arriuayle.

(nombze
Mordrede was ready w knyghtes a great
made a strong field to mete him on þæt pleine
In purpose fully Arthur to encoumbe,
at which arriuayle slaine was Gawene,
Colin to Arthur a noble knight certeine.
The Agnifel was slaine on the strande,

king

The eyght

King of Scottes oꝝ he might come to land

Maugre Mordrede Arthur did arrie,
the ground recured like a manly knight.
For feare of whom anon after bloue,
The sayd Mordrede toke hym to the flight.
Toward London toke hys way right,
The gate thet and kept was the Cite,
agein Mordrede he might haue none entre

In al hast to Cornwalis he fled,
the sweord of Arthur he durst not abide,
Lest he should lay his lyfe to wed.
Yet for hym self thus he gan proude,
with multitude gabzed on hys side,
But life and death that day on auenture,
That day to dye oꝝ the field recure.

In fortune there may be no certeine,
Upon whole whele al bytlenes is founded
Mordrede that day in the field was slayne,
And noble Arthur to þe death was wounded
by þe which þe field of Bietōs was cōfounded
Of so great slaughter & good knightes loꝝn
Upon a day men haue not sene befoꝝn.

After the bataille Arthur for a while,
To staunch his woundes, & hurtles to recure
Boꝝne in a litter, came into an Ile,
Called Aualon, and there of auenture,
As þe sayd Gaufride recoꝝdeth by scripture
Howe king Arthur floure of chualrie,
set with his knightes and liueth in sayrie.

Thus of Bzetayn translated was þe sonne,
Up to the rich sterry bright dongeon,
Astronomers wel rehearse bonne,
Called Arthurs constellation,
where he set crowned in the heuenly mācō
Amid the paleys of stones chꝛistalline,
Cold among Chꝛistē first of þe worthy nine.

Thys errour abideth yet among Bytōns,
which founded is vpon the prophesie,
Of old Marlen like their opinion,
He as a king is crowned in fairie,
with scepter & sweord and with hys regaly
Shal refoꝝt as loꝝd and soueraigne,
Out of sayrie and reigne in Bꝛitaine.

And repaꝝre ageine the round table,
By prophesie Herlen set the date,
Among pꝛinces, king incomparable
Hys sete agein to Carlion to translate,
The Parchas sustren sponne so hys fate,
Hys Epitaphie recordeth so certeyne,
Here lieth king Arthur þe shal reigne agein

Unto Bochas I will ageine retourne,
afoꝝe rehearsed parcell of his pꝛowesse,
Theron to abyde me lest nomoꝝe solourne,
But to remembꝛe the great vnkindnesse,
the conspꝛacion, the treason, the fallenesse
done to king Arthur by his cofe Mordrede
Make a Lenuoy that men al may it rede,

Lenuoye.

Thys tragedy of Arthur here folowing,
Byd pꝛinces al beware of false treason,
for in al earth is none so perelous thinge,
as trust of sayth where is decepcion,
Hyd vnder curteyn of false collusion,
for which mē should I hold þe cofad good
Beware afoꝝne euer of vnkind blood.

The world is diuers fortune aye chadging
In euery countre and euery region,
At a straye fewe frendes abiding,
Long absence causeth discencion,
and if pꝛinces by false deuision
Aigh of allpe thewe two faces in an hode,
Let men beware euer of vnkind blood.

Who was moꝝe hardy of pꝛinces here reig:
Oꝝ moꝝe famous of marcial renoun (ning
than whom was hys enmies outraping,
Arthur chief sonne of Brutus Abyon:
But for al that the disposicion,
Of fate and fortune most furious & wood,
Caused hys destruction by vnkind blood.

(wing

what is moꝝe cōtrarious to nature in the-
than sayre pꝛetence double of entencion,
Great alliaunces frowardly working,
Hyd vnder floures a serpent cast porson,
Bright silver scaled damageth the Dragon
ech worne som party tarrageth of his brode
And what moꝝe perilous thā vnkind blood
Noble,

Noble princes on Arthur remembryng,
Deme the day of Iherus going down,
Al is not gold that is clere shynynge,
Afore prouyded in your inward reason,
False vndermynyng and supplantacion.
Remembryng aye with Arthur how it stode
By conspiracion of vnkynnd bloode.

An exclamacion of Bochas ageyn
kinredes vnkynnde.

The. xxb. Chapter.

Cyn kynredes and vnkynnde
all yaurces,
Bochas maketh here an ex-
clamacion,

Upon Mordrede, which in hys ordinaunces
Caused of Arthur final destruccion,
thesame eclipsing of Brutus Albion.
Notwithstanding playnly to descryue,
He trusted him aboute al men alyue.

It is a meruayle and vncouth to deuyse,
By what occasion or by what courage,
That a man shoulde in any maner wyse,
Be found vnkynnd unto his linage,
Hateful to God that in any age,
Blood agayn blood bozne of one kinrede,
Conspire shoulde of malice or hatrede.

In this matter it wer but beyn to tary,
The story knowe of Arthur and Mordrede
By blood allyed in working most contrary,
which made many Briton knight to blede,
for by vsurpyng, conspiring and falshede,
The sayd Mordrede most infortunat,
Caused al Brittain to stand desolat.

First desolate by absence of thei kyng,
Called in his tyme of kynges most notable
The desolacion of knyghtes abyding,
whylome in Brittain famous & honozable,
Brethren echeone of the round table.
By which by Mordrede & false forsworn knight
Stode long eclipsed & derked of his light.

(Butte yn

The light of noblesse that shone through al
by false Mordrede was derked of his beames
The monarchie departed was on tweyn,

That stode first on in hys martiall stremes,
But afterwarde by brightnes of his beames
Drough to declyne by false draction,
which hath destroyed ful many a region.

Al this processe upon duplicite,
playnly concludeth a blood that is vnkynnd
Ademe welfare and al prosperitie:
Where peace and concord be left behynde,
Trees may not thurme departed from y root
A plain example in Arthur and Mordrede
who can conceyue and list the story tede.

Of Selmerus king of the Wanda-
loys, and of thre other kynges,
and how they wer destroyed.

The. xxvi. Chapter.

After al these straunge vncouth
thynges,
Tofore John Bochas (as made
is mencion.)

There came tofore him foure mighty kings
for to compleyn thei desolacion,
First Selmyer king of the region,
Called Wandalia, in werres ful contrayre,
Unto a prynce called Bellisarye.

And to this sayd noble Bellisarye,
Full rencumed that tyme in chualrye,
The kyng of Gothes was also aduersarye,
And both at once of battelde and enuye,
Assented fully to hold champarty, (monit
Geyn Bellisaris, which through hys hye re-
Toke them both and cast them in prision.

There is no moze of them in Bochas told.
But after them in order by wyrryng,
Came Attila with many bluddy wound,
which in hys time was of Hawkes kyng,
without cause or tyle of any thyng.
Upō John Saguin ga werrey agein right,
whiche through al Affrike was one the best
(knight

The sayd John armed in plate and mayle,
Met Attila in Affrike on a lond,
and held with hym a mighty strōg battayle.
And like a knight slough him with his hood,
Droue al hys people prouly fro that lond.
And

The eyght

And in my booke there is none other mynd
to be remembred of him that I can fynd.

Then Sindual of Brentois lord and king
Tofoze Bochas put hym selfe in pces,
San shew his mischiefe piteously wepping
whan he held werre wilfull and cethles,
Ageyn a pynce ycalled Rarles,
a Romain knight, ferce, hardy, & ryght strōg
in his defence whan mē would do him wōg

This Rarles of case or auenture,
Though he in dede was a manly knight,
He sayled membyes in sooth of ingendure,
His aduersaryes echone he put to þ flight,
Toke they kyng & furthwith anon right,
As the chynicle playnly doth record,
On hye galowes he henge him with a corde.

Of Rarles after this victory,
Kyng Totila had ful great disdeyne,
with a great host most pompous in his gloze
Came vpon him and met him in a pleyne,
with multitude though he wer ouerleynne,
Kyng Totila which many man beheld,
Of Rarles was slayn in the field.

In order next Bochas doth so wyte,
Of Gepidoys how kyng Turisounde,
Required hym that he would endite,
the great aduersities in which he did habound
And of his daughter called Rosimond,
The vnhappy chaunce to marken & descryue,
To whom fortune was contrary al her liue

Alboynus kyng of Lumbardy,
with many a lond held in subiection,
Conquered Beeme, Prage and Hungary,
The lond of Gepidoys a woorthy regyon,
fought with they kyng as made is mencio
Slough in battayle the sayde Turisounde,
wedded after hys daughter Rosymounde.

Whene autour greatly cōmendeth her beaute
and wyrteth also she was but yong of age,
whose story fyll whan I byd see,
Howe vnglacypous also was her mariage,
I gan were pale in my visage,
Greatly astonyed confusd of very shame,
To wyte the story in hyndryng of her name

I will forbear and brie fly passe here,
The surplusage lightly ouerpasse,
for by and by to tell all the manere,
Of felonies that dyd her heart embrace,
It should blot this booke and eke deface,
For which I cast truly and not sayle,
touching her story to make rehearshale.

How Alboynus kyng of the Lumbardes
was murdered by hys wyfe: and howe
He afterward beyng most vicious
was murdered also.

The xxvii. Chapter.

Ring Alboynus as ye shall
vnderstand,
After many conquest and victory,
which he had both in sea and lond.
To put hys name & triumphes in memory,
Let crye a feast to hys increase of gloze,
At which feast solemne and princypal,
So as he late in his estate royal.

Parcel for pryde parcel for gladnes,
The quene present, the sayd Rosimound,
take and suppyled he was with drunkenes
Of mighty wines which þ day did habound
Sent a Gobelet of gold as it is found,
Unto the quene with licour ful pleasaunt,
Bade to her father she should drinke a taunt,

She dempt it was a maner mockery,
Fyrt her name and worship to confound,
to byd her drinke a taunt for her partie,
to her father, the sayd Turisounde,
Slayn aforene with many bloudy wound,
By Alboynus through his vnhappy chaunce,
Of which rebuke she cast to doe vengeance

She bare the rancour ful long in her entee
which day by day gan renew and encrease,
A certayn squyer she made of her assent,
To accomplishe she would neuer cease,
And on another squyer she gan pces,
Called Perebeus accorded al in one,
This false murder to execute anon.

The day was let whyle he laye asleepe,
Fyll vpon hym with sharpe swordes greouē

Her

Her Lord was slayne, alas he toke no kepe
Of he dyed of fortune he hath founde
A speres head to a tronchon bounde,
Himself defendyng in that mortall strife,
But slayn he was by treason of his wyfe.

After this murder to escape fro daunger,
His Rosimonde fled awaye by nyght,
With her went Helmiges her squyer,
To be a ship sayled by starre light.
To Rauenne thei toke the way right,
And with them for refuge and succour,
Of Alboinus al the whole treasour.

After she was wedded to Helmiges,
Jan of this world stode most in her grace,
Her loue appalled set of him no price,
For she not could be content in one place,
Her toy was euer newe thing to purchase,
To assay many neuer pleased with one,
By experience she proued had eche one.

Most of Rauenne and chief gouernour,
For the excellence of her great beautie,
For he al women loued her paramour,
Than she entred first that citie.
And though her fraude and duplictie,
She call murder in her stoward wyfe
Her new husband called Helmiges.

She whote somer in lusty fresh may,
The same Helmiges for heat and wearines,
Himself to bathe went a certayn day,
Caught a great thyrs of faintnes in sorhnes
And Rosimonde of infernall falsenes,
Toke a gobelet with licour great forson,
Gave him drinke wine medled with poyson.

He dranke by half and therewithal he gan,
Best and belly to swell and to arise,
Intoxicate were deadi pale and wan,
And whan he dyd her treason aduertise,

He made her drinke in the same wise,
Manger her wyl she might it not restryne,
Guerdon for murder they died both twyne.

In this Chapter but litle frutte I finde,
Saue onely this to put in remembraunce,
That men should call agayn to mynde,
Further afoze god requirerh ay vengeance
This funetall story weped in balaunce,
Wrought by Helmiges compassed first & last,
By false treason of curled Rosimonde.

Slough first her lord Alboinus as I sayde
Twene of her squiers did execution,
Out of his slepe whan he dyd abyayde,
Let counterpeise what was her guerdon,
Eche murdered other by drinkyng of poyson.
Helmiges drank first, & next drak Rosimond,
At them it gan and to them it dyd rebound.

Counterpeised one murder for another,
Alboinus slayn by Rosimonde his wyfe,
By assent of Helmiges and after ech to other
Poyson parted there gan a fatal strife (life
murder quit for murder thei bothe lost their
who bleseth falsenes ful wel asirme I dare,
Shall with falsenes be quit or he beware.

As they departed such part again they toke
As men deserue such shal be their mede,
this stoward story ende of the eight booke,
of Rosimond & Helmiges wrought in dede
for thort conclusion biddeth men take hede
Thei shal againward receiue such measure
As thei measure vnto their neighbour.

The ende of the
eyght Booke.

The ninth Booke.



How the Emperour Mauricius,
his wife & his chyldren wer slain
at Calcedonie.

At Calcedonie as made is mencion.
After whose death he toke possession,
The sayd phocas as put is in memoꝛy,
Gave pantheon to saint Gregoꝛy.

The fyfth Chapter.



In Fraunces Petrarche,
as Bochas undertoke.
In eschewyng of slouth
and ydlenes. (booke
as he begā accōplish by his
Assurance made to do
his busynes.

whiche thing remēbred gan his penne dresse
the ninth boke so god would sēd hym grace,
It to perfourme if he had lyfe and space.

At the begynnyng sothly of his labour,
In his study to hym there byd appere,
Mauricius the mightie Emperour
whiche compleined rehearsing the manere,
How he by phocas cruel of loke and chere,
Destroyed was, wyfe, chyldren, and kinrede,
the slaughter counth who list the story rede.

The sayd Maurice as writte Bochas John
was by phocas brought to destruction,
His wife, his chyldren, slayne everychone,

whiche was a temple of olde foundation,
Full of ydols set on hye stages,
There through the world of every nation,
Wor of their goddes set by great ymages
To every kyngdōm direct wer their disages,
As poetes and fulgens by his lyue,
In boke olde playnly doth descreue.

Everich ymage had in his honde a bell,
As perceyveneth to every nation,
whiche by craft some token shold tell,
Whan any kyngdom fyll in rebellion,
Or gan maligne agayn Rome towne.
whiche is redress with strong & mighty hōd,
Sent a prince to chastise all that londe.

The sayd temple buylded of lime and stone,
Pope Bonifare as boke specifice,
Where it was fyrst called pantheon,
Set by crosse upon eche partie,
halowed it to Martis and to Marye,
Pere by pere gynnynge of November,
The shall hold the marriage doth remēber.

In

In Asia this Emperour Maurice was slain
In the citie that called is Calcedonie.
All his household and many good Romayn,
by Phocas & Periciens as had is in memozy
And Phocas after for his bainglozy,
slain by Heraclius who thā was emperour,
fourte & twenty winter & chief gouernour.

Of Machomete the false prophete,
and how he beyng dronke, was deu-
oured among swyne.

The .ii. Chapter.

After the death of Phocas as
I told,
That Heraclius to regne fyrste
began,

Came Machomete in his tyme I holde.
A false prophet and a Magician
As booke's olde wel rehearse can.
Borne in Arabia, but of lowe kynrede,
All his lyue worshipped ydols in dede.

And whan that he grew into great age,
Discreuable in many sondry wyse,
with Camels vñsed fyrst carriage,
false and double subtil in his deuises,
Went to Egypt for marchandises,
To Jewes and chrysten sondry tymes sent
Learned the old and the new testament.

As booke's old recorde in that partie,
This Machomet, this cursed false man,
Out of Egypt fast gan hym hie,
Toward a countrey called Cozozan,
With a Lady that hight Cardican,
Through his subtil false daliaunce,
By craft he fylle into her acquaintance.

He wrought by his enchauntmentes,
And by false meanes of Aigromansie,
Her enclinyng toward his ententes,
for both he could flatter wel and lye,
Said openly that he was Messie,
Jewes abiding vpon his coming.
As greatest prophete & their souerain king.

Thus þ people he brought in great errour
By his teachyng and his false doctrine

He were among them a great gouernour,
the sayd Lady also he dyd encline,
As to a prophete which that was drinne,
Sent from aboue as she dyd vnderstand
for which she toke hym to her housebonde.

His image gan at Ismael,
Had a sickenes ful oft sith fylle down,
In his excuse sayd that Gabriel,
was sent to hym fro the heavenly maner,
By the holy ghost to his instruction,
and for the Angel shewed himself so shene
To stand vpryght he myght not sustene.

On his shoulder wer oft tymes seyn,
whan he to folke shewed his presence,
milke white doves which that picked grete,
Out of his eares aspyrnyng in sentence,
They came by grace of ghostly influence,
Hym to visite to shewe and specifie,
He was the Prophete þ called was Messie.

New lawes also he dyd ordayne,
Shewed signes by false apparence,
Like Moles hymself he dyd sayne,
A prophet of most excellence,
And thereupon to shewe an euendence,
Smal pottes with milke and hony borne,
On a great Bull wer hanged on ech hoorne.

He made the people peue credulite,
To his doctrine and froward teachyng
By milke and hony figured was plente,
By the merite of his ghostly workyng.
And thus he was at his begynnyng,
take of Sarazins as they gan to hym drabe,
which by false errour bound to the his law.

A clerke of his called Sergius,
Whote his lawes and these miracles thre,
first of these doves how they came to hi thus
As here tofore rehearsed was by me
how milke and hony wer token of grete pletes
And of the bull afore by craft made tame,
By false decytes to geat hymselfe a name.

Of Arabiens and Sarazins as I rede,
And of Turkes made prince & gouernour,
with Ismaelites & folke of Persie & Medec,
He gathred people gan were a warriour.

Am. ii. Agayn

The ninth

Againe Heraclius the mighty Emperour,
and vsurped to ryde in the countreys,
Gate Alexandria with many mo cities.

Of the parties desirous to be kyng,
Of that purpose whan he was set asyde,
to the people falsly dissimulynge,
Told he was sent prophetes to prouide,
For the countreies for to be their guide.
And for he was lecherous of courage,
He made of Venus to set vp an ymage.

Made Sarazins to worship the frydaye,
Sembably his story doth expresse.
So as the Jewes halowed the Saterdaye
All his woordes concluding in fallenes,
whan he drank wine fyll in dronkenes,
to the people lyke a false prophete,
to drinke water and good wyne to lete.

As I sayd the Heretike Sergius,
with him of coufasse froward and contrary
fene to our faith he and Nestorius,
from holy churche greatly thei gan varye.
On whose errors Bochas list not tarye,
More to wyte of this Machomete,
A Magromancian and a false prophete.

Who list to se his lawes euerychone,
poue to Sarazins his boke can beare witness
as thei be set in his Alkaron,
echone in order grounded on fallenes,
Like a glutton dyed in dronkenes.
By excess of drynkyng muche wine,
fyll in a puddle deuoured among swyne.

This was the ende of false Machomete
for all his craftes of Magromancie,
the funerall fyne of this sayd prophete,
Drunkewode of kinde called hymself Welly
whom Sarazins so greatly magnifie,
John Bochas lete be for a quene of fraunce
More of his error to put in remembraunce.

Howe Brunichilde quene of fraunce
slough her kin. brought the lond in di-
uision, and after was hanged, and
hewen in pieces small.

The .iii. Chapter.

She came arrayed nothyng lyke a
Quene.
Her heere vntressed Bochas
tooke good hede,
In al his booke he had afore not seen
A more woofull creature in dede,
with weping yent to tyme was al her woode
Rebukynge Bochas he had left behynde,
her weichefulness for to put in mynde.

Unto mine autour sodenly she abyde,
like a woman that wer with woe cheekmate
fyrst of all thus to hym she sayde,
Sometime I was a quene of great estate,
crouned in fraunce, but now all desolate,
I stode forsooth Brunichilde was my name,
whiche to rehearse I haue a maner name.

Thou wer busy to wyte the woofull caas,
within thy boke of Arismet,
Biddest seruite to quene Cleopatras,
Of Rosmonde thou wrote also parde.
And among al thou hast forgotten me,
whereby it semeith thou doest at me dysdayn
List no parcell to wyten of my payn.

Whan Bochas heard this, of chere he were
knowyng nothyng of what she did endure, (ad
Iwylle (quod he) afore I haue not rad,
In no Chronicle nor in no scripture,
Of your froward woofull auenture,
No (quod she) I pray you take good hede,
So as they tell I wylle rehearse in dede.

Bochas with Brunichilde gan debate anon
Soothly quod he this is the condicion,
Of you women almost euerychone,
ye haue this maner without exception,
Of your naturall inclination,
of your declarynge this obseruaunce to kepe
nothyng to say contrary to your wothepe.

Nature hath taught you al what is wroge to curse
Vnder a curtayn al thyng for to hyde,
with litle grayn your chaffe ye can abuse
On your defautes ye list not to abyde,
The gaulle toucheth al that ye set asyde,
Shew roses fresh the wedes ye let passe
And sayest there there ye most trespass.

And

And yf ye shal tell your owne tale,
How ye sal fro fortunes whele,
Ye wyl vncluse but a litle male,
Shew of your vices but a smal partell,
Botle glasse sheweth bryghter than stele,
& though of vertue ye shew a faire pzetenes
He is a foole that geueth you credence.

Quod Brunichilde I daright wel espye,
Thou hast of women a false opinion,
How that they can flatter wel and lye,
And been diuers of disposicion.
Thou mightest haue made an excepcioun,
Of hye chates and them that gentle beyn
Namely of me that was so great a queene.

Your hye estate of kynd hath no power
To chaunge in nature nother cold nor hete
But let vs passe and leaue this matter,
Theron to abide or any moze to plete,
Of your complaynt say to me the grife,
By way of seruire to you I wyl me quite,
As ye declare take my peyne and wyte.

Take hede (quod she) and with good awyle,
fro the trowth beware that thou ne vary
whyls in fraunce reigned kyng Clodouice
Had a sonne that named was Clotarpe,
Clothair an deye that named was Lotarpe
And this Lotarie named the seconde,
Had sonnes four in floppit is fonde.

To the Chzonicle who can take hede,
As it is put in remembraunce,
whan her father the mighty kyng was dede
Atwene these four was parted all fraunce
Eche by hymself to haue gouernaunce,
By one assent as brother vnto brother
wearing their crownes ech quite them vnto
(other.

The same tyme I called Brunichilde,
she list not vary from the old wistynge,
Had a father named Athanagilde,
Of all Spayn souerayn Lozde and kyng,
shyd father to full great hyndryng.
Of both realmes the same ranne so farre,
twene Spayn & fraunce ga a mortal warre.

The byrth of four in fraunce crowned higes
Agayn my father made strong defence,

Of martial pryde and fortunate chaunges
whan they met by mortall violence,
Of sodain slaughter fel such pestilence
On outhet partie þ field like a great floud,
with the terrible effusion of blood.

To both realmes the warres wer impoytable
Causing of death passyng great damage,
Sought meanes, wext by assent treatable,
of bloudsheddyng to appease the wolful rage,
By one atroide I was youe in marriage,
To Sigebert reynyng thom fraunce,
twene both realmes to make aliandce.

Nay quod Bochas I deme it was not so,
twene you and me there must begyn a strife,
Be aduised take good hede thereto,
The first assurande of marriage in your life,
Of Chilperthe ye wer the wedded wyfe,
Chronicles seyn what euer ye expresse,
In this matter wyl beare with me witness.

Though some bokes rehearse and so seyne,
like as ye haue made here mencion,
Their rehearsaile stand in no certeyn,
for by the assent of outhet region,
Spayn and fraunce in their conuencion,
Dyapned so in my tender age,
To Sigebert I was yue in martage.

Himeneus was not there present,
whan we toke our chamber towarde nyght
for Thesiphone and her sustren of assente,
Infernall goddesse bare the toches lycht
And as the toches shewed derke or bryght,
therby the people present one and all,
Dempt of the marriage what shoud befall.

This custum bled of antiquite,
from theyr temples of gods and goddesse
At marriages of folke of hye degree,
toches wer bozne of whō men toke witness
As they wer derke or shewed their bryghtnes
The difference seen in ech estate,
If it wer towarde or infortunate.

Of this martage mozt proesse for to make,
the toches byt and yet they wer not bryght
shewed out combzous smokes blake,
Of consolation lost was al the lycht.

Am.iii. Thus

The ninth

Thus in darkenes wasted the first nyght,
their vers, their song, of gods & goddesses,
till altogether of sorow and heavines,

These wer þ tokens þ night of my marriage
Þronostikes of great aduersite,
yet of nature I had this auauntage,
Of womanhode and excellent beaultie.
And lyke a queene in stoncs and þerrey,
I was arrayed and clad in purple wede,
With a crowne of gold vpon my hede.

Solemnelly crowned queene of fraunce,
whom for to see folke fast gan repayze,
Of all wellfare I had suffisaunce,
Clombe of fortune full hye vpon þ stayze.
I sonne I had which called was Clotayze,
By Sigebert by recoyde of wytyng,
thirde of that name in fraunce crowned king

So would god that day he was boyne,
he had be put in his sepulture,
In saluation of bloudshed here tofozne
caused the death of many creature.
As durers bookes report in scripture,
grounde and gynnynge as made is mencion
withen this lond of great diuision.

He with his brethren of whom I spake late,
At hym began the fyrst occasion,
Not so (quod Bochas) ye failed of your date
who was chief cause of diuision.
Soothly (quod he) in myne opinion,
Among themself I dare wel specifie,
the chief gynnynge was fraternall enite.

Kepe you more close in this matter, ye sayle,
folowyng the traces of your condicion,
Ye halt foule in your rehearsaile,
for of your owne ymaginacion,
ye sewe the sede of this diffencion,
Among these kinges if ye take hede,
By which in fraunce many a mā was dede.

Than Brunichilde gan to chaunge chere
to Bochas sayd with face ful cruell,
Not long agon thou knewest not þ manere
Of my luyng but a smal parcell.
me semeth now thou knowest euerydele,
So that ye may without lenger strife,

Sit as Judge that knoweth so wel my life.

Whan these brethren stode at discorde,
Eche agayn other by mortall violence,
Under a colour to treate of accorde,
with many a maner feyned diligence,
Chilperike there beyng in presence,
whylom brother to Sigebert the kyng,
was slain among them by false conspiring.

On whose death auenged for to be,
As Sigebert byd hymself auaunce,
Among the preale he slayn was parde,
not so (quod Bochas) but of false gouernace
Of your misluyng fyll this unhappy chaunce
that Sigebert was murthered in soothnes,
Onely by occasion of your doublenes.

Folowyng the traces of new fanglenes,
gein Sigebert you wrought full falsly
whan ye loued of froward doublenes,
Landrike the Earle of chaumpain & of Bites
for by your outrage and your great folpe,
the kyng was slaine and ye byd assent,
In a forest an huntynge whan he went.

Whiche called was the forest of Compyne,
(Alas quod he) and brake out in wepyng,
Bochas, Bochas, thou dost soxe undermine
All the surfetes done in my luyng.
þ knowest þ slaughter of Sigebert þ kyng
whiche þ was wrought (alas) by mine assent,
How knowest þ it & wer not there present.

Of these debates and of al the trette,
with rebukes rehearsed here in bayne,
In rehearsaile greatly thou dost erre,
for which I can be right wel certaine,
In my defence to replee agayn.
It was not I, he that thou dost mene;
It was fredegunde the lusty yong queene.

This fredegunde thou shalt wel vnderston
Right womanly and saye of her visage,
Chilperike was whylom her husband,
for her beaultie toke her in marriage,
By her traynes and her great outrage
He was after (the story who list rede,)
at mischief slaine thou shalt so find in dede.
Though

Though ye by language make strong defence
In these matters which cause me to muse,
I haue again you lost my patience,
What so subtelly would your self excuse,
contrariouſly your traynes ye abuse,
For Clotayr I haue so sad parde,
was not engedyed of Sigebert nor of the.

I remember ful wel that I haue rad,
that Chylerike (though ye therat disdayn)
recorde of autours that prudent be and sad,
how he in trouth was gendryed of you twein
which in his dying me list not for to feine,
left sonnes two, the sozr ye may rede,
Theobert and Theoderike to succede.

Bochas (quod he) though I turne by so down
the saide sozres rehearsed here in dede,
following of malice thine owne opinion,
Dauger thy will forth I wil procede,
As I began take therto good hede,
the first Theoderike thou shalt vnderstand
Cousin Germain was to my husbnde.

King of Burgoin that time and another,
He of hatrede and indignacion,
slough Theobert which I was his brother,
His wife, his children, for worst conclusion,
which in the myghtie famous region,
Of Austriche reigned as lord and king,
what euer thou saist this trouth I no leig.

Hay nay (quod Bochas) it was al otherwys
I may not suffer how ye go there among,
All this language of new that ye deuise,
brought to a prief, concludeth vpon wrong,
what should we lenger this matter draw along
your self wet cause where ye be loth or fain
By Theoderike that Theobert was slayn,

The grounde hereof gan parcell of enty,
By your stowarde byennynng couetise,
Which that ye had onely to occupie,
to rule the lond after your owne guise.
And if I shal plainly here deuise,
of these mischieues rehearsed god do boote,
ye wet your self ground, chief crop, & roote.

Quod Buxin/chide, I conceiue wel and les
ye for your partie haue left al reuerence,

Your self enatmed to shew your crhelit,
Against me touching the violence,
Of two slaughters rehearsed in sentence,
first how Theoderike his brother slough in
called Theobert, a piteous thig to rede (dede)

Himself after strangled with popson,
His wife, his children, he we in pices smale,
As ye (quod Bochas) make here mention,
Some part is true but not all your tale,
for I suppose ye should were pale,
for shame of thing which ye cannot excuse
whan Theoderike beginneth you to accuse.

He put vpon you the crime of false treason,
ye slough his wife and children also,
Himself also ye murdred by popson,
I would wote what ye could saye hereto,
Alas (quod he) alas what should I do,
was neuer woman in his nor lowe estate,
Al thing considred moze infortunat.

fortune of me set now but litle priefe,
By her stowarde furious violence,
Turning her whele and visage of malice,
Causeth to me that no man yeueth credence,
Had in despise, boyde of al reuerence,
And though fortunes mutabilite,
Hole and abict and fall in pouertie,

O Bochas John for worst conclusion,
thou maist agayn me thy stile now auance,
I haue deserued to haue punition,
and al the princes & barons now in fraunce,
Crie out on me and aske a vengeance,
Refuge is none nor recure in this thyng
though I Clotayr my sone be crowned king,

for my defautes foule and abhominable,
tofoze the Judges of al the parliament,
I was foriudged and founde also culpable,
Of euer y crime conuict by iudgement,
Mine accusours there being present,
Of one and other stondyng a great route,
marked with fingers of folke I stode about.

for very shame I did mine eyen close,
for them I gaured and cast on me thet sight
But as folke may by tokens wel suppose,
mine cares wet not stopped half aryght,

Taben

The ninth

Taken by force and lad forth by might,
By the hangman drawe ouer hyll and vale
dismembred after and hewe on peeces smale.

With my bloude the pavement al bespight,
shaked be fortune which was mine aucture
The soule parted, the body was so faint,
With ead euer of any creature,
That more wo of torment dyd endure:
Dyde Bochas to haue al thyng in mynd,
wyte her life and leaue nothyng behinde.

Clennore.

This tragedy of Brynnichilde the quene,
To her story who list pene attendaunte,
froward to trade, contagious to sene,
And contrary to al good gouernance,
Boorne in Spain, crowned quene of fransie
Double of tong, dyfender of treason,
caused al that londe stande at diuision.

from her traynes there could no mā flee,
sours and head spyring of sorow & mischance
Shed honny teer, hang after as do Been,
her myce medled wth sugred falle pleasaunce
what she sayd enclosed barbaunee,
Maidresse of murder and of disceioun,
Caused al that lond stand at diuision.

Princes of Gaul might not sustene,
the great outrages nor the great greuaunce,
For the surfetes done in her yeres grene
brought that kingdom almost to vtraunce,
All of assent cryed on her vengeaunce,
The same arose how al that region,
By her fallenes stode at diuision.

The knife of murder ground was so hene
By her malice of long continuance,
Her courage fet wth infernall tene,
Spared nother kin nor alliaunce,
Deiled her surfetes and weped in balaunce,
As Bochas wyte she was the occasion
which made al fraunce to stonde at diuision.

Bochas meruailing of the ma-
lice and crueltie of Brynnichild,
wyteth thus.

The .iiii. Chapter.

Bochas assayed gan inwardly
meruaile,
fyll in a manner of
ambiguïtie,
Of Brynnichildes merueilous rehearse,
How any woman of reason should be,
So ful of malice and froward crueltie
to slea her kyn and set at distaunce,
By diuision al the realme of fraunce.

Bochas dempt it was not credible,
that a woman should be so vengeable,
In her malice so venomous and terrible
of slaughter and murder for to be culpable
The story suspect held it but a fable,
Onely except that she dyd him excite,
With great instance her story for to wyte.

Her crie on Bochas was very importune,
To set in order her felicities,
with her vnhappy chaunges of fortune,
Her disclaunders and great aduersities,
with her defame reported in countreys
So very grounde founde in dokes olde,
But of confession that she her selfe tolde.

That mine autour with solemne stile,
Rehearse should her dedes disclaunders
Her flouryng yeres also to comyle,
medled with her dayes that wer cotraryous
Her fatal ende froward and furious,
wherof encombred for very wearines,
Towarde Heraclius he gan his pene dresse.

Whome Heraclius the Emperour sus-
teyned Herespe, sell into dyspse, and
lichenes vncurable, and so dyed:
and of others.

The .v. Chapter.

After whocas with great honour
and glory,
Crowned Emperour of Rome
the cite,
In whole tyme as sayth the story,

The

The Romans stode in great perplexitie,
Byt them of Herse that tose with Cosmoys,
which toke vpon hym to be lord and kyng,
Is a tyrant to trouble the Emppye.

Gate many prouince & many famous reem,
Through al Asie as the Chronicle sayth;
Gan approach toward Jerusalem,
Afore the towne proudly a siege he layeth,
As a tyrant froward to Chyrtles sayth,
But Heraclys mauer al his might,
met of his head & slough him like a knight.

And by grace which that is diuine,
This famous prince this Heraclys,
in his begynnyng many proud Sarayn
hold in the dayes notable and glorious;
And in his conquest passyng famous,
Diuers relikes of the crosse he sought,
& fro the countreys many of the he brought.

Was none so famous holden in his dayes,
As Heraclys the Emppye for to gine,
For more manly found at all assaies,
Of hye promysse nor in chivalrye.
But whan he gan to susteyne Heresye,
God toke from hym within a litle space,
his hap, his welfare, his fortune & his grace.

He gan sustayn and folow certayn rites,
Of wilfulnes and froward fantasie,
Of a sect called Eutichites,
which is a sect of froward Heresie.
And sayth that he brought to that partie,
The story telleth for al hys hygh estate,
this Heraclys was neuer fortunate.

Where he was first drad on sea and londe,
Namely of Sarayns for his chivalrie,
grace & fortune fro hym through their hōd
for whan he fell into Heresie,
He was trauayled with such a dropsy,
And therewithall he had a froward lust,
euer to drinke and euer he was athurst.

In the dayes found was no leche,
Albe that thei wer sought on eche partie,
the sayd prince that could wylhe or teche,
hym to releue of his dropsie,
Made feint and feble with a great passye,

Thus in sickenes he hath his dayes spent,
By vengeance slayn with infernal torment.

Of Heraclys this was the woeful ende,
As is rehearsed slayn with sickenes
Out of this world whan he should wend
All whole & Emppye stode in great distresse
force of Sarayns dyd them so oppresse,
And day by day brought vnto decline,
By his successour called Constantine.

Which had a sonne as made is mencion,
In whose time through his great folye,
Sarayns dyd great oppression,
Spoyleng the countreys of all Lombardy
And Constantine of wilfull sluggardye,
wasted his dayes tyl that he had brought,
All the Emppys almost vnto nought.

Seint Chyrtles sayth in especial,
He gan of malice his wittes to apply,
And was thereto enemy full mortall,
And chief supporter of false Heresie.
And toward Rome last he gan hym hye,
Spoyled temples of many riche ymage,
And by water after toke his passage.

To Constantinople he hasted hym ful blame
By Sicile the way was most mete,
At Syracuse I fynde he did arriue,
And for the reason was excessive of hete,
which in his labour made hym for to swete,
And secretly he gan himself remue,
to be bathed in a pitey stue.

Of enuy there he was espyed,
His owne knyghtes like as it is found,
By conspiracion certain of them allyed,
fell vpon hym with sharpe swordes ground,
And merelles with many mortall wounde,
thei slough hym there on hi thei wot so wode
Amid the stue naked as he stode.

After whose death thei did thei self swaie,
to choose a knyght bozne in Armenye,
Of the Emppye toke the gouernaunce,
And to support falsly thei Emperie.
But Constantine surcedynge of all ye,
Being next here the trowth for to sewe,
To hym that was martyred in the stue.

Called

The ninth

Called Constantine as his grandfather was
 Right notable in actes martiall,
 More wisely governed stode in other caas,
 Like a prince by iudgement royall,
 Of manly heart and courage naturall,
 The conspiratours spyl of al he sleath,
 That wer assented to his fathers death.

To great entree ase of his famous renoune,
 Grace of god byd hym enlumyne,
 Constantinople in that royall towne,
 Olde heresies to craze and to fine,
 Two hundred Bishops eightye & eke nynt,
 He made assemble to stonde at defence,
 Of Chyrcles sayth of manly prouidence.

He was eke busy churches to restore,
 All heretikes manly to withstonde
 their opinions examined wel before,
 And when the trowth was wel vnderstond
 Like Chyrcles knyght list for no man woud
 To punish them wylly by rigour,
 Without exception of person or fauour.

Of hym in Bochas but litle moze I rede,
 For of his Emperre I fynd none other date
 spared none heretikes nother for golde nor
 at Constantinople he passed into fate (mede
 when Vlgarians gan with hym debate,
 A froward people wilful and recheles,
 Gave them a tribute he for to lue in pees.

How Gysulphus the Lombard was
 slayn and his wyfe ended mischie.
 nouelye in Lecherye.

The. vi. Chapter.

Next came Gysulphus to Bochas
 on the kyng,
 A famous Duke and notable
 in his lyfe,
 with wepyng eye piteously playnyng,
 with whom also came Romilda his wyfe,
 which that liued ever in sorow and strife,
 Yet was she both of byrth and of linage,
 Right excellent and fayre of her visage.

Shee chylzen had this famous quene,
 By Gysulphus gotten in marriage,

wonder semely and goodly vnto seene,
 And fortunate by proesse of theyr age,
 Albe their father felt great damage
 By the warres he had in his luyng,
 with Caranus that was of Bauars kyng.

This Caranus with many strong battayle,
 Is descended and take the way right,
 of Duke Gysulphus the lombes to assaile,
 together met in stele armed byght,
 Gysulphus slain his people put to flight,
 and Caranus with strong and mighty hnd,
 toke possession, conquered all his londe.

After whose death Romilde the Duches
 Greatly assonged pale of her visage,
 to the castle of Forogopl gan her dreffe,
 with her knightes of strong and fel courage
 Caranus made after his passage,
 layde a siege call hym to repart,
 His life, his body, rather than depart.

About the castle armed as he rode,
 like a prince sat knightly on his stede,
 vpon the walles as Romilde abode,
 frelyly beseen in her purple robe,
 And of the siege gan to take hede,
 Her looke vnwarely as she cast asyde,
 And saw the kyng afoze the castle ryde.

So lyke a prince and a manly knyght,
 She gan on hym loke wonder narow,
 the god of loue perced through her sight,
 vnto her heart, and made from his bowe
 The fiery tines of his breynyng arrow,
 Made the soyle so pliaunt of her thought,
 of her castle she set almoste right nought.

And for to accomplissh the whole entencion
 Of her false lust in al maner thyng,
 She is agreed by composition,
 to pelde the castle in hast vnto the kyng,
 She for to come without moze taryng,
 lyke a Duches her self to present,
 wheras the kyng sat armed in his tent.

The people within prisoners take,
 Her four sonnes toke them to the flight.
 Loue caused that she hath forsake,
 Her bloud, her kin, wer it wyong or right.

And

And Romid the space but of one nyght,
with Cacus had all her delite,
And euer after he had het in despyte.

And by the kyng whan she was refused,
twelue in number that dwelled in his housse
Most frowardly her beautie hath abused,
Of her nature she was so lecherous,
All to rehearse it is contagious,
How she were after so abhominable,
to be acquainted with gromes of the stable.

It wer but vain to tary on this mattere,
Or any long processe for to make,
Her story is contagious for to here,
But finally at mischief she was take,
for a spectacle pitched on a stake,
Set by aloft mine outour telleth so,
Dyed in distresse for constraint of her wo.

Of thempetour Justinian the second
being a false extorcioner, and howe he
was exiled by Leontius, & after both
his nose and eyen cut from his
head, and of others.

The. vii. Chapter.

Example so as frewe
armure,
Through long resting leseth his
brightnesse,
fret with old rust gathereth great ozdure,
Is defaced of his fresh cleerenes.
Semblably the Romans his prowesse,
Can for to appal (alas) and that was routh,
whā thei them gaue to negligence & slouth.

Who in knighthode list haue experience,
Must eschew riotous ybelenes,
Be prouidente with entere diligence,
large with discretion, māly with gentlenes
to hygh empyres his courage dyelle,
And be wel ware vpon eche partie,
Him to preserue from rust of sluggardye.

The which vice greatly hath apperred,
As it is remembred of old antiquite,
caused oft Romans to be despayred
By froward luses bynded thei cite,

And appalled thei olde prosperitie,
Of which defautes came to plain blais,
to John Bochas Emperours succ.

As many kinges of thesame number,
which by slouth wer afoze oppressed,
whom that slouth whylom dyd encomber,
thei names by and by here expressed,
to mine auroz thei haue their course dressed
Like their degrees to speake in wordes few
Justinian first gan his fate shew.

Not Justinian whilom so vertuous,
And of prudent gouernance so notable,
But Justinian Temerarious,
double of his dedes, false and deceivable,
of his promes diuers and vnstable,
whylom cyled by Leoncian,
for extorcions that he in Rome began,

His nose, his eyen, Leontius gaue in charge
to be cut of by furious crueltie,
and of the Empire that was so wide & large
Leontius next gouerned the citie,
And throught fortynes mutabilitie,
the same Leonce by Tiberi was cast down,
His eyen put out, dyed after in prison.

Tiberius after serued of the same,
His nose cut of, from his lee put downe,
for a rebuke and a perpetual shame,
to a cite that called was Cherson,
without mercy, sauour, or raunson,
Cyled he was, prisoned as a theef,
By long tojment dyed at mischief.

Howe the Emperour Philippicus
dyed at mischiefe.

The. viii. Chapter.

Next to Bochas came whilom the
kyng,
whose Emperie no whyle dyd
endure,

Like an heretike cursed of luyng,
And odious to every creature,
Bete down ymages & many secul picture,
of holy samentes which in their temples stode
wherby Romans dempt that he was wode
pursued

The ninth

pursued he was by a manly knight,
called Anastasius and put out of his place
And in Scitile of very force and myght,
He dyd his eyen out of his head arace,
By iudgemente his visage to deface,
Sembliably as he by great outrages,
Of Chyrlles fapth defaced the images.

Died at mischief dicked with blindnes
than Anastasius toke possession,
In whose tyme (boke beare witnes,
And Chronicles also make mencion.)
Of the Emppye was made diuision,
That first was one parted into tweyne,
wherof mine autor in maner doth cōplein.

Howe the Emperoure Anthemius An-
nastasius was compelled to leaue the
Empire, and to be a Priest and liue
in pouertie.

The .ix. Chapter.



he rehearseth in his opinion,
And therupon doth a ground
deuise,
Cause and roote of their deuision
Toke originall of false couetise,
And cereumly he telleth here the guyle
into þ church whā richesse brought in pryde
All perfection anon was set asyde.

The poore staffe and potent of doctrine,
whan it was chaunged and list not abyde,
In wilful pouertie but gan anone decayne,
On stately palstres and hie hoise to ryde,
Sharpe heares wer also layde asyde,
turned to copes of purple and sanguine,
Gownes of scarlet furred with Ermine.

Slender fare of wine and water clere,
with abstinence of bread made of whete,
Chaunged tho depes to many fat dinere,
with conserct drinke and Ipoctas swete,
All sobernes did his boundes lere,
Scarfnes of foode left his olde estate
with new excellē gan wepe delicate,

Ghostly lying in the churche appalled,
caused Gykes withdrew them in sentence,

from the Pope in Peters place stalled
And list to hym do none obedience.
False auarise caused this offence,
that the Gykes did themself deuide,
fro the Romains for they great pryde.

Thus couetise and false ambition,
did first great harme in the spirituall,
Brought in discorde and deuision,
Among princes in their estate royal.
who climbeth hiest, most perillous is his fall,
Recorde I take of the foresaid Anastase
By Theodosie put out of his place.

This Theodosie dyd his busye peyne,
On Anastasius such warre for to make,
that mauger him he dyd hym so constrayne,
That he was saynt the Emppye to forsake.
For feare and drede he did vpon hym take,
the order of priest from the imperiall see,
Content with litle liued in pouertee.

Howe the head of Lupus kyng of
Lumbarde was smet of by
Gymasidus.

The .x. Chapter.

After these chaunges remembred by
wyttinges,

Like as I haue told here in partie
Came to Bochas foure mightie kynges,
Reignyng echone of old in Lumbarde
After the maner and guise of Barbarie,
they wer araid in their passage,
with heere forgrowen body and visage.

Their berdes raught ouer their naui down
their garmentes of colours manifolde,
with brode baudrykes embaced enuiron,
Large buckels and pendantes of fine gold,
their breche embrouded after þ guise of old,
fret with pearle, legges stocked to the kne,
Playning to Bochas of their aduersitee.

Their shoone wer raced freshly to the tone
richely transuerled with gold wyre,
And theron set many a strong stōne,
gein phebys light shone ful bright & clere,
These Libard kynges gan to appoche nere

The

The first of al the proud king Lupis,
Unto Bochas gan hys complaint thus.

Bochas (quod he) as for my partie
for to rehearse by short conclusion,
One Grimoaldus a prince of Lumbardy,
Hath me enclosed out of my region,
And cruelly encheyned me in prison,
And after that dyd a largeaunt send,
Smet of mine head, & there I made an end.

How the head of the tyrant Alahis was
smet of by the commaundement of
king Gunberte.

The .xi. Chapter.

After thys ende rehearsed of Lupis,
for to declare hys mortal heuynesse,
First in ordre there came Alahus,
A Lumbardy king famous of richesse,
which toke on him surquedous prowesse,
for to compassse the destruction and smerte
Of a prince called Gunberte.

which were also a crowne in Lumbardy,
atwixt both was warre and great distance
But al the people and lordes of Hauye,
with mighty hand and mercial gouernace,
The sayd Alahis brought vnto mischaunce
and Gunberte escaped from al dyede,
Of mortal vengeance let limite of hys hede

How Arithbertus king of the Lumbard-
es was discomfited in bataile, and after
drowned with great richesse.

The .xii. Chapter.

After whose death pitcoulslye plotting,
tofoie John Bochas came Arithbertus
Of Lumbardy whilom lord and king
which like a foole of hys presumption,
All causeles toke occasion,
Of Volunte, there is no more to sey,
agein the Duke of Bauarotes to warreye.

These princes twelue taken haue the field,
and of Arithbertus the party gan appeyre,
hys aduersary anon as he beheld,

His toward heart gan to despayre,
Into Hauye for feare he gan repaire,
Toke hys treasure in purpose anon right,
for very dyede to take hym to the flight.

Toke a vessel and entred is the see
with sodain tempest assailed and berkeilled
hys barge perished by great aduersitee,
and he was drowned w al his gret richesse.
Loe here the fine of worldly weddednesse,
Namely of them to great great treasures
that ginne warre agein their neighbours.

Howe Desiderius the last king of Lum-
bardye was by Pope Adrian and
Charles the gret king of frace
put to flight, and dyed at
mischaunce.

The .xiii. Chapter.

Next to Bochas with heauy lode
and chere,
King of Lumbardy shewed
hys prouidence,
Called in hys tyme noble Desiderie,
Notable in armes and of great excellencie,
and where hys fadye had done offence
To the Pope, and sul great durtelle,
thys king cast the damages to redyelle.

Agilulphe was hys fathers name,
which to the Pope dyd great aduersitee,
for which hys son to encrease hys fame,
Of roial freedom and magnanimitie,
And of benigne liberalitie,
Gave to the Pope with humble reuerence,
a stately Citie that called is Paduene.

Therewith he gaue gret trefont & gret good
as he that lyst of freedom not to spare
A mighty castle which on Tybe stode,
within the boundes and lordship of ferrare
Which is a Citie plainly to declare
of antiquitie, mine auctour telleth so,
And stant vpon the riuier of the poe,

Thys Desiderie reigning in Lumbardy,
Gan wex famous at hys beginning,
Had great name vpon ech partye,

The ninth

But in this earth is nothing abiding,
all flant on change: and fortune in working
Is found waitable and double of her visage
Which of this king chaunged the courage.

There he was first large on every side,
Liberal found in many sundry wise,
His goodly pende was chaunged unto pride,
and his larges in to couetise.
Of doublenes he gan anone drisse,
To clepme age in as ye shal vnderstand,
His sayd giffes out of the popes hand.

Which Desidere had made all paunces,
As the chronicle maketh mention,
with king Deppeyne reigning cho in frades
After whose death to haue possession,
and ful lordship of al that region.
He gan of newe sal at distaunce,
Both to the pope & the new king of frace

Of presumption these warres he began,
agin his promise of double variaunce,
pope in the dayes was holy Adrian,
which to stint the trouble & great mischace
Requited help of the king of fraunce,
And great Charles in Bochas as I rede,
Came to the pope to help him in this neede

Charles that time was chief protectoure,
to holp church thei paues and diffence,
Which of whole heart and diligent labour
with Desidere by manly violence,
He met in Cusape of knightly excellence,
Had a batayle to proue thei both might
Charles was victour, Desidere put to flight

As I find he fled into Dauy,
Whourth Charles layde a siege afozne,
Constrayned them vpon ech partye,
For lacke of vitale they were almost lozne,
They wanted licoure, greyne and cozne,
By sodeine constraint and gret aduersitie,
to king Charles they yelded by the Citie.

King Desidere was sent into fraunce,
with mighty cheines fettered in prison,
Lys a wretch in sorowe and in penaunces,
Byed at mischief there gained no raunson
which had afoze so great possession,

After whose daye as by old writing,
am by Libardes was neuer crowned kinge

Of a woman named Joane who was
pope, and after got with Childe
and than put doun.

The xiiii. Chapter.

After þe princes rehearsed here tofore
Downed in teares came a creature
like a bulshop rounded and hoine,
And as a priest he had a byode consure,
Her apparayle outward and besture,
Byeng a womā, wherof Bochas toke good
like a byelate shape was her wede. (hede

She was the same that of poze agon,
Unworthelge fate in Peters place,
was afterward called pope Jon,
a herdes prelate nōe here seen on her face
Of her byrth named was the place,
Magonice a Citie not standing in Itayle.
But on the Rhine ful famous of vitayle.

In her youth and in her tendre age,
forsoke her kinne, and in especiall,
Cast she would for her auantage,
Geue her to cunning, body heart and al.
And in the sciences called liberal,
In al seven by famous excellence,
By great study she had experience.

Her name couth in many diuers lande,
To thewe her cunning first whan she begā
Serching prouinces came to England,
No wight supposing but that she was a mā
Came to Rome, her story tell can,
Taught Grammer, sophistry, and logik,
Had in scoles openly Berthorik.

In the time of emperour Lotarpe,
After the death as made is mention,
fro myne auctour if I shal not barpe,
That the pope which called was Leon.
The sayd woman by election,
Was called was no wight supposing than,
By no token but that she was a man.

The boke of sortes after that anon,
of auenture turned vpsō doun

She was named and called Pope John.
Of whose naturall disposition,
Fel by pproesse into temptation,
Quick with child þ houre came on her ths
was deliuered at saynt John Lateran.

After put down for her great outrage,
I will on her spend nombze labour,
But passe ouer al the furplufage,
Of her liuing and of her great erreure.
Turne my stile vnto the Emperour,
Called Arnolphe & write his pitous chailte.
sonne to Charlemaine king of fraunce.

To this Charlemain as bookes determine
he was sonne, not boine in marriage,
But begotten of a concubine,
Toke vpon hym of surquebous outrage,
without title of birth or linage,
To succede by fraude and false labour,
amdg Romayns to reigne as Emperours.

He was vnglacious sitting in that estate,
In mischief spent hys dayes euerichone,
with lyfe and woymes made infortunat,
Though skyn and flethe fret vnto þ bone
craft of medicine nor socout was ther no.
So depe he was fet in hys entaile, Cus
Dyed in disresse no leche myght auale,

Bochas counsaileth pynces to remeþze
on the Emperour Arnolphe.

The .xv. Chapter.

MYne auctoure Bochas wynte here
for a while,
Sharped hys penne of entencion,
Can of anger to transport hys stile,
to wyte of tyrantes the transgression,
More woode and fel than any scorpion
Them cōsailling whan they be most boide
for to remembre of this proude Arnold.

He ne was not in hys pryde assayed,
Not with wolues, Tygres, nor Lions
In rauenous Bears nor wild Bores trauel.
Roather with other mighty chāpids led
which haue conquered many regions.
But with woymes engendryed of hys kinde

The said Arnolphe was murdred as I find

In such discont the sayd Arnolphe stode,
with Life and Woymes fret agyn nature
That was to nye boine of Charles blood,
Impotent the peyne to endure,
which was in for an vnsouth aventure,
That a pynce might not be socoured.
Of smale woymes for to be deuoured.

A great example who list consider and see
To pynces al for to abate their pryde,
Let them consider their fragilitie,
To se an Emperour for to abyde,
Challante of woymes, lay their boile aside,
In thys Arnolphe wisely aduertise,
How god hath powet their pope to chailte.

Death of Arnolphe dyd my penne encumbe,
for the great abhominacion,
I haue to Bochas came the twelfth in nobys
Called Pope John as made is mencion
Enting by fraude and false eleccion,
To goddes lawe froward and contraye
not like a pastoz but like a meretraye,

Called afore he was Octavian,
Nothing resembling Petres gouernance,
fro the time in Rome that he began,
To sit as Pope he gaue hys attendaunce,
To folowe hys lust & hys fleshy plesannee
In hauking and hunting stode hys felicity,
And among women conuertant for to be.

Unto surkete, Riot and glat tonye,
He gaue him wholy, toke of god no kepe,
Greatly disclaundryed he was of lecherie,
Kept in hys courte without shame or dreds
a numbze of women in cronicle as I rede
Two cardmalles of purpose dyd entende,
hys diuous life to coꝛeche and amend.

And of entent these Cardmalles two
the church esclaudryd cast them to redreffe,
Made letters sent them to Otho,
Duke of Saxon that he should him dresse
Toward Rome and of hys hye noblesse
On holy church to haue compassion,
Make of this mischief full refoꝛmacion.

Fin.ii.

Thys

The ninth

But in this earth is nothing abiding,
all flant on change: and fortune in working
Is found wastable and double of her visage
Which of this king chaunged the courage.

There he was first large on every side,
Liberal found in many sundry wise,
His goodly phebe was chaunged unto pride,
and his larges in to couetise.
Of doublenes he gan anone drusse,
To cleyne agein as ye shal vnderstand,
Hys sayd giftes out of the Popes hand.

Which Desidere had made all paunce,
As the chronicle maketh mention,
with king Pepyne reigning tho in fraunce
After whose death to haue possession,
and full lordship of al that region.
He gan of newe fal at distaunce,
Both to the Pope & the new king of fraunce

Of presumption these warres he began,
agein his promise of double variaunce,
Pope in tho dayes was holy Adrian,
Which to stint the trouble & great mischance
Required help of the king of fraunce,
And great Charles in Bochas as I rede,
Came to the Pope to help him in this nede

Charles that time was chief protectoure,
to holy church their paues and diffence,
Which of whole heart and diligent labour
with Desidere by manly violence,
He met in Cusaye of knightly excellence,
Had a batayle to proue their both might
Charles was victour, Desidere put to flight

As I find he fled into Daup,
Wourthy Charles layde a siege afozne,
Constrayned them vpon ech partye,
For lacke of vitale they were almost lozne,
They wanted licoure, greyne and corne,
By lodeine constraint and gret aduersitie,
to king Charles they yelded by the Citie.

King Desidere was sent into fraunce,
with mighty cheines fettered in prison,
Like a wretch in sorowe and in penaunce,
Byed at mischief there gained no raunson
which had afoze so great possession,

After whose daye as by old writing,
among Libardes was neuer crowned kinge

Of a woman named Joane who was
Pope, and after got with Childe
and than put doune.

The xiiii. Chapter.

After þe princes rehearsed here tofore
Downed in teares came a creature
like a bushop rounded and shorne,
And as a priest she had a bryde tounsure,
Her apparayle outward and besture,
Beyng a womā, wherof Bochas toke good
like a prelate shape was her wede. (he de

She was the same that of yore agon,
Unworthelge sate in Peters place,
was afterward called Pope Ion,
a berdes prelate nōe heere seen on her face
Of her byrth named was the place,
Wagonice a Citie not standing in Frayle.
But on the Rhine ful famous of vitayle.

In her youth and in her tendre age,
forsoke her kinne, and in especiall,
Cast she would for her auantage,
Geue her to cunning, body heart and al.
And in the sciences called liberal,
In al seuē by famous excellence,
By great study she had experience.

Her name couth in many diuers lande,
To heere her cunning first whan she begā
Serching prouinces came to England,
No wight supposiſg but that she was a mā
Came to Rome, her story tell can,
Taught Grammer, sophistry, and logik,
Rad in scoles openly Rethorik.

In the time of emperour Lotarpe,
After the death as made is mencion,
fro myne auctour if I shal not barpe,
That the Pope which called was Leon.
The sayd woman by election,
Installed was no wight supposiſg than,
By no token but that she was a man.

The boke of sortes after that anon,
of auenture turned bpsō down

She

She was named and called Pope John.
Of whose naturall disposition,
fel by pprocess into temptation,
Quick with child þ houre came on her thã
was deliuered at saynt John Lateran.

After put down for her great outrage,
I will on her spend nomoze labour,
But passe ouer al the furplusage,
Of her liuing and of her great erreour.
Turne my stile vnto the Emperour,
Called Arnolphe & write his piteus chalice,
sonne to Charlemaine king of fraunce.

To this Charlemaine as bookes determine
he was sonne, not borne in mariage,
But begotten of a concubynie,
Toke vpon hym of surquedous outrage,
without title of birth or linage,
To succede by fraude and false labour,
amidg Romayns to reigne as Emperoure.

He was vngacious sitting in that estate,
In mischief spent hys dayes euerichone,
with lye and woymes made infortunate,
Through skyn and flethe fret vnto þ bone
craft of medicine nor socout was ther no.
So depe he was fret in hys entraile, Cne
Dyed in distresse no leche myght auaille,

Bochas counsaileth princes to remēbre
on the Emperour Arnolphe.

¶ The .xv. Chapter.

Nye auctoure Bochas synte here
for a while,
Sharped hys penne of entencion,
Can of anger to transport hys stile,
to write of tyrauntes the transgression,
More woode and fel than any scorpion
Them coussailling whan they be most boode
for to rememore of this proude Arnold.

He ne was not in hys pride assayed,
Not with wolues, Tygres, nor Lions
In rauinous Bears nor wild Boxes trauail
Noether with other mighty chāpiōs (led
which haue conquered many regions.
But with woymes engendred of hys kinde

The said Arnolphe was murdred as I find

In such discomt the sayd Arnolphe stode,
with Life and Woymes fret age yn nature
That was so nye borne of Charles blood,
Impotent the peyne to endure,
which was in soth an vncouth auenture.
That a prince might not be socoured.
Of smale woymes for to be deuoured.

A great example who list consider and see
To princes al for to abate their pryde,
Let them considre their fragilitie,
To se an Emperour for to abyde,
Chassaute of woymes, & lay their host aside,
In thys Arnolphe wisely aduertise,
How god hath powet their pōpe to chastise.

Deeth of Arnolphe dyd my penne encumbe,
for the great abhominacion,
Than to Bochas came the twelst in nūbze
Called Pope John as made is mencion
Enteing by fraude and false election,
To goddes lawe froward and contraye
not like a pastor but like a meretraye,

Called afozrie he was Detraian,
Nothing resembling Peters gouernance,
fro the time in Rome that he began,
To sit as Pope he gaue hys attendaunce,
To folowe hys lust & hys fleshy plesauce
In hauking and hunting stode hys felicity,
And among women conuersant for to be,

Vnto surfete, Riot and glut tonye,
He gaue him wholy, toke of god no kepe,
Greatly disclaundred he was of lecherie,
Kept in hys court without shame or dyede
a numbze of women in cronicle as I rede
Two cardinales of purpose dyd entende,
hys vicious life to correke and amend.

And of entent these Cardinales two
the church esclaudred cast them to redreffe,
Made letters sent them to Otho,
Duke of Saxon that he should him dyell
toward Rome and of hys hye noblesse
On holy church to haue compassion,
Make of this mischref lust reformation.

¶ An. ii.

¶ Thys

The ninth

This Pope John when he hath perceiued,
Of these Cardinales the maner of wyting
And howe þ Duke þ letters hath receiued,
He to doe vengeance made no taryng,
Bode no longer this iudgement penning,
Cut of the nose felly of that one,
Hand of that other & ech was called John.

The Emperour dyd hys letters send,
To this Pope of whole affection,
Of hys defaultes he should hym amend,
But there was found no correccion.
For which he was deposed and put down,
By Cardinales for hys cursednesse,
He left nomore wyte of hys wretchednes.

For hys defaultes and hys great outrage,
this John put down as ye haue heard deuise
Whene auctour after caught a gret cozage,
Seyng this mischief in many sondry wise
In holy church which that dyd arise,
Among prelates cast them self bluiue,
Their defaultes openly to discruiue.

Of their pride and their presumption,
And while he gan study in this matter,
He gan remembre anon in hys reason,
Upon a verse written in the Psaltere,
touch not my profets ne nigh the not to nere
For again the beware in dede and thought
In no wise that ye maligne nought.

For this cause as ye shal vnderstand,
Touching this matter plainly as I rede,
Whene autour Bochas ga withdraw his hand
Left his purpose and furth he gan procede,
To whose presence of that he toke hede,
Came a prince, Duke Charles of Lozein,
Hym besought to wyte hys greuous peine.

Of Charles Duke of Lozein con-
founded with hungre.

The .xvi. Chapter.

Shis Duke of Lozein as ye
shall conceiue,
Had warre with the king of France,
Called Hugh Capet, and as I apperceiue,

An Archbishop to doe the king pleasure,
Of hatred made his ordinaunce,
Agein this Duke awaite vpon him kept,
That he hym toke abed while he slept.

The said byshop gan falsely vndermine,
this worthy Duke by full false treason,
Which as I fynd was called Anceline,
And he was Byshop that tyme of Leon,
which by fraude and false collusion,
Toke this prince that was Duke of Lozeine
And to the king he brought hym by a treine

By whom he was deliuered to prison,
To vylhaunce, and with cheynes bounde,
what was hys ende was made no mention
But in a pitte horrible and profound,
Mischief with hunger dyd hym so confound
That I suppose this Duke of Lozeine,
Consumed was for constraint of hys peine

Howe king Salamon whilom kynge of
Hungry was put to flight.

The .xvii. Chapter.

After to Bochas in noumber there
came doune,
Princes foure, and ech for hys partye,
Their greues told: & first king Salomon,
which that whilom reigned in Hungrie,
Both foole and coward booke specifice,
Woode of reason noyed of ignoraunce,
And at a popat could no purueaunce.

fortune also dyd at hym disdeine,
for he was nouthet manly nor corageous,
agein whom wer worthy princes twaine.
Geyla was one with Ladislaus,
famous in armes, notable and vertuous,
Both at once on Salamon came doune
And made hym fle out of his region.

Though his vnhappy froward cowardise
there was in him found no defence,
flight was hys helde yst in no wyse.
Geyne hys enemies make resistance,
fayled heart to come to presence,
To saue hys land he dreab him self so soze,
of whos Bochas wyte in his booke nomore.

Howe

How Petro kyng of Hungary
was slayne.

The .xviii. Chapter.



Another kyng put here in re-
membraunce,
Called Petro reygning in
Hungary.

For his defaultes again the kyng of Fraunce
I called Charles of malice and folye,
By indignacion this was his tormentry,
His eyen put out there was no better succour
And after slayn by dome of the Emperout.

How Diogenes Emperour of Con-
stantinople was taken, and hys
eyen put out.

The .xix. Chapter.

After to Bochas there came tweyn on
the ryng,
Duke of Sueue earnest as I rede,
Ageyn theperour first maliciously working
Henry the Emperour reigning tho in dede
But for his malice this was his fatal mede
Banished to dwel among beastes sauage,
Slayn in a forest for his great outrage.

Whan Constantine departed from thys life
whirch of al Grece was lord and gouernour,
By marriage of her that was hys wyfe.
A knight Diogenes was made Emperour,
fortune to hym did so great fauour,
Constantinople holding in his hond.
As souereyn pryncce of al Grekes lond.

Yet there was some þ grutched therageyn,
And had of hym grete indignacion.
The kyng of Perse, Bellech Turcomane,
fro hym by force toke many a region,
Mesopotamy to hys possession,
Toke by strong hand through his chualrye
Haugre Diogenes and almost all Syrye.

Bellech Turcomane made himself so ströð
By many force Diogenes to assaile,
And for Diogenes thought he did him wöðg

He gan ordeyn great stuffe and apparayle,
A day assigned they met in bartayle,
Diogenes of froward auenture,
He & his knyghtes brought to discomfiture.

Take he was & brought by great disdeyn,
In whom as tho there was no resistance,
to kyng Bellech called Tarcomane,
And whan he came vnto his presence,
Ageyns him was poue this sentence.
To lye downe plat, and that kyng Bellech,
Should take his foote & on his throte it set

Thys was done for an hpe dyspyte,
Diogenes brought furth on a cheyne,
without reuerence, fauour, or respyte,
At great feastes assigned was his peyne,
and alderlast put out his eyen tweyne.
The whele of fortune turneth as a ball,
Sodeyn clymbing axeth a sodeyn fall,

How Robert Duke of Normandy faught
with the Turkes, & refused the king-
dome and crowne of Hierusa-
lem, and dyed at mischiese.

The .xx. Chapter.

A woorthy Prynce spoken of in manye
Realme,
Noble Robert Duke of Normandy,
Chose to the crowne of Hierusalem,
But for cause he dyd it denye,
fortune aye vnto him had enuie.
The same Robert next in order was,
that came to pleyne his fatal vnto Bochas.

For Chyrlles sayth this mighty champion,
This Duke Robert armed in plate & mayle
With manly Godfray, Godfray Bullion,
Ageyn Turkes faught a great bartayle,
for Chyrlles sayth that it should auayle,
To susteyne his lawe in theyr intent,
to al the kynges of the Decident.

(nūbre
Of Turkes and Sarazins was so great a
Geyn Chyrlles lawe gadzed in pūssaunce,
the seyth of Chyrlis fallly to encumbrē.
But there were made hasty oꝛdenaunce,
by kinges of Englonde, Normandy & Fraunce,
An. iii. f. viii.

The ninth

First to succour did his busie peyne,
Godfrey Bulliō that was Duke of Lozein

Which on Sarazins made a discomfiture,
Haugre Turkes for al theyr great might,
In which battayle Christ made him recure
The field that day for to support his right.
Wher this Robert was found so good a knight
that for his noblesse by record of wyting.
Of Hierusalem was named to be king.

Assented not vnto the election,
Because of newe that he did vnderstand,
His elder brother for short conclusion,
Called William was dead in Englonde.
Knowing himselfe next heire to that lond,
forsoke Hierusale, but like a manly knight,
came to Englonde for to cleyme his right.

And yet or he came he had knowledging.
His yonger brother that called was Henry,
Had vpon hym take to bee crowned kyng,
Tolde his Lordes and princes finally,
He was next heire entred rightfully,
As inheritour to succede in that realme,
His brother being kyng of Hierusalem,

God wote the case stode al in othertowse,
the sayde Robert Duke of Normandy,
Purposed hym by martiall emprise,
from his brother to take the regaly.
Toke his princes and his chualry,
thought he would lyke a manly knight,
Arryue in Englonde and retoyce his right.

Both in one field assembled on a daye,
the brethren tweyn ech with strong party,
to batteyne and make no delay,
Eche with other to hold chaumpartye.
But whan these lordes þ mischief did espye
they busied them and were not rechles,
Atwene the brethren to resourme pees.

The sayd brethren wer fully condiscended.
Vpon this poynt for short conclusion,
As in the accorde was lustly comprehended,
Henry to holde and haue possession,
Duryng his life of al this region.
And Robert shoulde haue for his party,
A summe of gold with al Normandy.

Thre thousand pound put in remembraunce
Eche yere to Robert sent fro this region,
Of which payment to make ful assurance,
was layd hostages as made is mencion,
But yet of newe fel a dissencion,
Atwene the brethren of hatred and enuye,
For a certein castle that stode in Normandy

Which castle longed of heritage,
Vnto the kinges iurisdiction,
Of which the Duke toke his auantage,
Haugre the king and held possession,
turned after to his confusion.
And whan the king this thing did espye,
with strong hand came into Normandy.

Where the Duke was layd a siege about,
Made ordeinaunce to recure his right,
Gate the Castle, toke his brother out
Emprieoned hym of very force and might,
Left him alone out of mennes sight.
fourtene yere the Chronicle wyrteth so,
there he dyed in myschiel and in wo.

Whyle Bochas was busie in his labour,
His boke taccomplish with great diligence,
to him appeared the great Emperour,
Called Henry shewed his prsence,
San compleyn vpon the great offence,
Done to him the mischief and distresse,
By his sonnes great unkindnesse.

The which sonne was called eke Henry,
Greatly accused of ingratitude,
Cause he wrought so unnaturalye,
toke his father with force and multitude,
Entreated him boysterously and rude,
And afterwarde there gayned no ransom,
at great mischief dyed in prison.

How Joceline prince of Bages for pride
flouth, and lechery dyed in pouertie.

The .xvi. Chapter.

Nexte in order with trist and dead
visage,
Vnto Bochas to shewe his
heauines,

Came Joceline, Lord and prince of Bage.
Whiche

which is a citie famous of richesse.
And this prince (mine auctor bereth witness)
was greatly yow to slouth and slothardye,
And al his lust he set in lechery.

Left hys lordship out of gouernaunce,
for lacke of wisdom and discrecion,
In fleschly lust set al his pleasure.
And in the cuntries about him enuyron,
He was not had in reputation.
Certain princes mine about both deserue
of his lordship cast him to depyue.

Among which the prince of Alapye,
Called Sagine, the story who list see,
to Joceline hauing great enuy,
Layde a siege to Rages his Citie,
He being absent ferre from that cuntry.
And thus for slouth and wilful negligence,
Rages was take by mighty violence.

And Joceline commaunded to prison,
to him fortune was so contrarious:
Lost his lordship and dominacion,
Loe here the fine of folkes vicious,
Slowe, delicate, proude and lecherous.
Dyed in pouertie, in mischief and in nede,
Of vicious princes, loe here the final mede

How Andronicus Emperour of Con-
stantinople slough al that were of the
blood royall, cherished vicious
people, and after was
hanged.

The. xxi. Chapter.

As berpe heyre and true successor,
By election and also by linage,
Came Andronicus as Lord and
Emperour.
Of Constantinople crowned young of age,
Next to Bochas with trist and pale visage,
Beseeching him to doe his busy cure,
to remember his woeful auenture.

Among Grekes by story and scripture,
this Andronicus gouerned not aright,
Ageyn lawe and eke ageyn nature,
found with his suster fleschly on a night.

Both of assent toke them to the sight,
Ageyn him hys colyn was so fell,
Lorde of that cuntry called Emanuel.

For a time stode as a man cryed,
for hys dissencions & many vncouth strife
By his princes after reconciled,
Standing in hope he should amend his life
But in the tyme that he was fugitive,
he was made lorde, and stode so for a whyle,
Reygning in Pontus of Asia a great Ile.

In this whyle Emanuel was dead,
fall in great age the story telleth thus,
Hauing a chyld, and he who list take hede,
While he dwelled in his fathers house,
Among Grekes called Alexius.
And the tutoz he was assigned to,
Icalled was Alexius also.

The same that was assigned hys tutour,
to see vpon hym al the gouernaunce,
And full power as Lord and Emperour,
Had al the empire vnder the obeyssaunce,
Princes, Lordes, gaue to him attendaunce
whether that he wer present or absent,
Eche thing was done at his commaundment

I meane as thus, he had al in his hond,
Constantinople a Citie of great substance
But for extorcions which he did in the lond
On his subiectes and for misgouernaunce
among the lordes it fil in remembraunce,
All of assent in heart gan desyre,
Cal Andronicus ageyn to his empire.

By assent restored and crowned Emperour
Constantinople entring the Citie,
Busied hym by fraudulent labour,
Al the blood bozne of the imperial see,
For to be slayn of vengeable crueltee,
By iudgement of this Andronicus,
Except a prince called Isaacus.

Thus in effect the trouth was wel seyn,
He was vengeable last in his old age,
Right as he was in hys yeres grene,
felly gouerned ful of false outrage,
Last of al malicious of courage.
toke to counsell in Grece he was thus named,
All such

The ninth

Al such as wer disclaundred oꝝ diffamed.

Homicides he had in his houlholde,
Tyrantes þ̄ wrought ageyn rightousnes,
Cherished al that hardy wet and bolde,
Wiedowes, wrues, and maydens to oppresse
Ribaundy was called gentlenes,
Spared nother he was so lecherous,
weomen swoꝝne chast, noꝝ folke religious.

Had also no maner conscience,
To pyll his subiectes falsly by raine,
toke what him list by bniust vyolence,
to al byces his yowth he dyd enclyne.
And al that wer of the royal lyne,
wer slayne echone except Ifacius,
As I told earst by Andronicus.

And as I fynd foꝝ him in hast he sent,
foꝝ this purpose to come to his pꝛesence,
To murder him thys was his entent,
By dyuerse tokens and many euidence,
And fully knew the fine of his sentence,
He lyke a pꝛince list to come no nere,
Smet of the head of the messangere.

And after that of manly pꝛouidence,
Wyd the Citie thewed hym lyke a knyght:
Pꝛayde loꝝdes to geue him audience,
Pꝛynces, Judges foꝝ to doe hym right,
That he might declare in theyꝝ sight,
Great iniuries, damages outragious,
wrought by þ̄ Emperour called Andronicus.

O Citizens that knoꝝwe al the guyle,
Of your Emperour called Andronicus,
Not Emperour so ye list aduertise,
But a tyrant cruel and furious:
A false murderer, vengeable despyteous,
Hath of nerue and froward false courage,
Slayn of the Emptre wholy the linage.

There is aloue left none of the blood,
Saue I alone of the royal lyne:
foꝝ Andronicus lyke a tyrant wode,
Hath slayn echone byesly to termine,
his sword of vengeance they might not de
Now purposeth of mortal tyranny (cline
Slea me also that am of theyꝝ allye.

Requyring you in this consistory,
O Citizens that here pꝛesent be,
To remember and cal to memory,
How this famous imperial citie,
Hath aye be ready to doe equitte,
Besy also of theyꝝ high noblesse,
Wꝛong of tyrantes manly to repesse.

Philosophers and Poetes eke deuyse,
In theyꝝ sawes prudent and notable,
Blood of tyrantes is noble sacrifice,
To God about whan they be vengeable,
And sith ye be rightful, iust and stable,
In your werkes boyde of vꝛapauce,
Weigh this matter iustly on balaunce.

The people echone al of one assent,
Foꝝ outrages of this Andronicus,
Put him downe by rightful iudgement,
In whose place set by Ifacius,
The sayd tyrant froward and vicious,
Can maligne and hymselfe dresse,
In his defence to take a foytresse.

It holpe hym not to make resistance,
So as he stode boyde of al fauour,
Sieged he was, and by violence,
Waugre hys might rent out of that towne,
Spoyled cruelly felt no better succour,
Stode al naked quaking in his peyn,
And fyrst rent out one of his eye n tweyn.

And ouermore he had this rewarde,
without helpe, succour oꝝ respire,
Rode on an Asse, his face set backe ward,
The Asses taylor holding foꝝ despyte,
Whom to behold the people hath delpyte.
To poore and crybe throughout the Citie,
Him to rebuke was graunted libertie.

After al thys in a carte set,
And vengeably lad out of the town,
By dome ychanged on an hye Gebet,
The people on him to his confusion,
Made a clamour and a terrible soun,
would neuer see the galowes wend,
til in mischief by death he made an end.

Clenoue,

In this tragedy againe Andronicus,
Bochas maketh an exclamation
And againe al princes victoris
while they haue power and domination,
By tyrannye that ble extorcion,
Concluding thus that their false king,
Of right requireth to haue an euell ending.

Indifferently this tyrant lecherous,
Of womes, maidens, made none exception,
Following his lust froward & disclaundrous
Spared no women of religion,
Made widowes breake their profession,
By violence pepse wel at this thing,
Of right requireth to haue an euell ending.

Most in murdre he was contagious,
Of Innocent blood to make effusion,
Vengeable also againe al vertuous,
Agains his kinrede sought occasioun
To sle the line by which that he came down,
which considered al such false working
Of right requireth to haue an euell ending

Bochas manaceth princes outragious,
which by their proude hatefull ambicions,
To god and man of wyl contrarious,
Hauing in heart a false opinion,
All tho that been in their subiection,
They may deuour their power so stretching
which shal not faile to haue an euell ending.

Noble princes ye that been desirous,
to perseuere in your domination,
And in all vertue to be victorious,
Cherishe trowth, put falseheede about,
Be merciable mesured by reason,
Of Andronicus the surfetes eschewing,
That ye by grace may haue a good ending.

Of Iacius the emperor who was made
blind and taken at mischief, and of
diuerse others.

The .xxiii. Chapter.

Is rehearsed whan Iacius
Had al the Empire in hys possessiō
To auge the death of Andronicus
Constantinople in that royal toun,

A brother of hys by force there came doubt
with a bason brenting bright as glede,
Made hym blind, of hym no more I rede,

Except Iacius was take at mischief,
Of hym that wrought to hys distruction,
Lying awaite as doth a prey thief,
Toke the Emperour, put hym in prison,
and vengeably by execution,
As is remembred with a bason bright,
Brenting red hote, and so he lost hys sight;

Alsom he had called Alepus,
tendre of age cast hym to succede,
By hys tutor false and contrarious,
Murdered he was at mischief as I rede,
The same tutor purposing in dede,
Of the Emperre by false collusion,
By fraude and mede to haue possession;

In this Chapter of hys nomore I find,
Rehearsed here in order by writing,
but to mine autour þ process maketh mind
There came Sauagerus of Egypt kyng,
And with hym came petrouslly weping,
Mighty princes, Souldanes both twene,
Reigning in Siria their fallies to complete

Of Slopp, Salech was that one
Reigning in Damasco by true right,
Cathabaden there being eke Souldone,
which in the dayes was hold a maly knight
And right notable in every mannes sight,
And for the Souldane of Babilon a ferre,
Called Saladin oppressed was with wret

For sorour sent to these princes twene,
To come in halt with al their chualrie,
Hym to support and do their busypyne,
Enforce their might to sustene his partye,
whose request they list not denye,
Abode no lenger but made the selfe strong
To stande with hym were it right or wrong

Of this matter the substance to conclude,
these princes came, Salech & Cathabadyr
for their guerdon they found ingratitude,
In this forsaide Souldane called Saladin
found him vnkind plainly this the fine,
from their estate as it was after knowe,
Disgraced

The ninth

Disgrated and brought the down full lowe

Of hym in soch they had none other mede,
For their labour nor for their kindnesse,
What fell after in Bochas I not rede,
For he furthwith leueth this processe,
And vnto Robert doth hys Aile dyesse,
Called Suuereine reigning in Tarence,
Lost hys lordship by sodaine violence,

Thys to say he reigned but a while,
Thys sayd Robert lost his gouernaunce,
Next to Bochas came Guiliam of Sicile
Kyng of þe countrey a lord of gret puissance
Lost his kingdome through fortunes vari-
Hys eyen twentirent out of his head (aunc
After dyed in mischies and in dread.

Which Guiliam reigning in Sicile,
was by descent bozne nye of allye,
to Robert Guisgarde as bookes doe cōple
That whilome was Duke of Normandy,
Which of hys manhode and gret polycye,
with hys brother ful notable of renoune
Brought al Naples to theyr subiection.

Hys brothers name called was Rogers,
which had a sonne to be enheritour,
Called Tancret as saith the chronicle,
which toke vpon him to reigne as succellour
thus in Sicile Tancret was gouernour,
Agein whom by tittle fought aftere,
Of alliaunce began a mortal werre.

For a mayd that called was Constance,
That daughter was to the king Rogers,
which was set of spiritual plesaunce,
To be religious of whole heart and entere
And by recozd of the chronicle,
Thys Constance hath the world forsaie,
And to religion hath her body take.

Of thys Constance the self same pere,
That she was bozne (as made is mention.)
There was a clerke a gret Astronome,
Tolde of her byrth by calculacion,
She should cause the desolacion.
Of that kingdome by processe of her age,
By the occasiō only of her mariage,

Some that were to Tancret great enemye
By their vngoodly exhortacion,
Moued þe Emperour that called was Herry
To take Constance from her religion.
And by the Popes dispensacion,
He wedded was þe Emperour by his might
By tittle of her put Tancret from his right

With a great nōmbze of Italiens,
the Emperoure entred into that region,
But by fauour of Siciliens,
Tancret long tyme stode in possession.
But through fortunes transmutacion,
the same time to conclude in sentence,
The sayd Tancret dyed on pestilence,

Hys sōne Guiliam þe was but yong in dede
With Siciliens cast him not to sayle,
To kepe hys land and his right possede,
Wete the Emperour with statly appaile
Made hym redy with him to haue a bataille
But the Emperour to gret auantage,
Cast otherwile of fraude in hys courage.

feynynghly during this discord,
The Emperour cast all another toyle
By a false coulour to sal at accorde
And yong Guiliam vngoodly to begyle,
Under treaty taken in Sicile,
falsely depriued of hys region,
Sent to Itale and throwe in pylson.

By way of treaty the story who list see,
It concluded vnder false treason,
with Guiliam take wete hys sisters thre
Hys eyen put out for moze conclusiō,
He perpetually damned to pylson,
Died in pouerte, lost hys enheritaunce,
Loe here the fine of worldly variaunce.

ferther to write as John Bochas began,
After that Guiliam was put fro his realme
To hym appered Guido Lusignan,
Chose afoze to be king of Hierusalem,
whose knightly fame none like þe sūne beme
which by his noblesse he whilom dyd atteine
Godfrey present that was Duke of Lozine

But by the Shoulidon named Saladine,
He was enchaied out of that dignite,

All worldly pompe byaweth to decline.
So for the constraint of hys aduersitie,
The yeres passed of hys prosperitie,
Went into Cypre as a fugitive,
What fel after I rede not in hys life.

To make his compleint after him came one
which had stand in great perplexitie,
Erle of Biennne, and was called John,
which after ward was king of the Citie
Called Ierusalem, and had also pardie,
A fayre daughter yong and tender of age,
Joined to second Frederik in mariage.

Being that time lord and Emperoure,
was desirous aboue al other thing,
Of Hierusalem to be gouernour,
And of Sicilie to be crowned king,
which alderlast for hys subtil working,
Constrained was down fro that partye,
To be a captein forsooth in Lombardye.

Of Henry, the eldest sonne of Frederik
the second, mischiefed by hys father.

The. xxiij. Chapter.

Next to Bochas troked, halt & sicke
one called Henry came for to plein
The eldest sonne vnto Frederike,
which by sicknesse had felt great peine,
Hegre and pale, contract in every beyne,
Of whose langoure the chief occasion,
was that he lay so long time in prison.

All hys disease and great aduersitie,
pcaused was for host conclusion,
By hys fathers froward crueltie,
As Bochas after maketh mencion.
And thys Henry by generation,
Sonne vnto Frederik like as it is soude,
I meane Frederik called the second.

Thys sayd Henry by dissent of line,
Of Sicilie first was crowned king:
And of Hierusalē whole renown did shine,
Throughe many a land at hys beginninge.
And fortune also in her working,
Was to thys Henry passingly notable,
In al hys werkes and in y^e fauorable.

Of his persone he had this auantage,
to al the people he was right acceptable,
well comended in hys flouring age.
Of chere and face and looke right amiable,
and of his port very demure & stable (wōne
Called in his ginning, such fauoure he hath
Of princes al very light and sonne.

But oft it falleth that a glad morning,
whan Phebus sheweth her beames clere &
The day sometime the cupō solowning (bryght
with some derke skye is clipped of hys light,
And semblap throughe fortunes might,
Thys sayd prince by her false variaunce,
Fond in her whele ful noyous fel greuāce.

Who may þ furis of fortune appeare (plein
Her troublly waues to make thē calme and
where men most trust they find most disease
where double cozages stand in no certē
A shining day is oft meint with reine.
Thus of Frederik the great vnstablēesse,
hath brought his sōne in mischief & discease.

Thys Frederik set vp in a great fauoure,
By the Popes diligent businesse,
vnto thestate lift vp of Emperoure,
but throughe his hateful froward vnkindnes
Of cotterile fell into such excesse,
Toke vpon him Patrimony to gūpe,
of Chyilles church that part to occupie,

Fell in the Popes indignacion,
Counsaile nor treaty might none auāse,
But of malice and false presumption,
Cast with the Pope to haue a great datāse,
The sayd Henry hys father gan counsaile,
Agēn the church to doe no violence,
But hym submit with humble obedience.

This strife duering atwene these gret estates
Frederik made hys sōne to be accused (tes
To hym of crime Lesa Maiestatis,
would not suffre he should be accused,
But like a man maliciously refused,
By hys fathers cursed false treason,
He was commaunded to dye in prison.

Some bookes sepe he was taken & brought
To hys father, of dome to haue sentence.

But

The ninth

But like a man passed sorowe and thought
Which to hys life had none aduertence,
Furiously and with great violence,
As he was lad alas, on hys backe,
Hys horse fell down & so his necke he brake

Some bookes rehearse of hym and seyne,
hys father toke agein him occasion,
And whan he had long in cheynes leyne,
At great mischiefe he dyed in prison,
And some say howe that he fel down,
Of a bridge Bochas rehearseth here,
and drowned was in a depe Riuer.

A commendacion of Bochas of such as
be kind to their kinrede.

The. xxb. Chapter.

NExt in orde min autour did his cure
To make a special commendacion,
Of such as be disposed by nature,
And by their kindly inclinacion,
as bloode requireth and generacion,
To acquite them self, in thought, wil, & dede
without feining vnto their kinrede.

Specially that none unkindnesse,
Be found in them for none aduersite,
To consider of natural gentlenesse,
to them oppozied is mercy and pite.
And to auoyde the false duplicite,
That was in Frederik which so unkindly,
Lette slea hys sonne that called was Henry.

Wittie is appropriated to kinrede,
father and mother by disposition
To cherishe their children and eke fede,
till seuen yere paste, lawe maketh mencion.
And as they be bound of naturall reason,
That time passed their tenderenes to encline,
vnto fortune by vertuous disciplyne.

Then afterward in their Adolescence,
Vertuously to teach them and chastise,
Roxth them in doctrine and science,
fostre in vertue vices to dispise,
To be curtes, prudent, sad and wise,
for whan they ginne to vertue in that age,
Gladly after they doe none outrage.

As it longeth to euery gentle line,
And blood royal by kindly Influence,
to sadze and modze shew them self benigne
Of humble hearte doe them reuerence,
aye to remembre in their aduertence,
On sxe princes that wrought the contrary,
for which fortune was their aduersarye.

Euerich to other found was unkind,
In cursed bloode may be no kindnesse,
Of one ramage sauoureth tre and tind,
The fruite also beareth of the tre witnesse,
and semblably the fathers cursednesse,
With mortall sword in nature reprouable,
Ageyne the child is oft seen vengeable.

Among which Brutus is rekened one,
Next in orde foloweth Manlius,
slough their childe by recorde euerichone,
Philip, Manlius, and also Cassius,
And cruel Herodes fell and malicious.
Frederik also most vengeable,
Slough his sonne that called was Henry.

Thys Frederik being aye contrarye,
toward hys son not gracious nor benigne,
from holy church vngoodly he gan vayne,
and thereagein frowardly maligne,
And like a man obstinate and badigne,
Died accursed through misgouernance,
without confession or repentaunce.

Howe Manfrede king of Naples in
Italy was slaine, and of others.

The. xxvi. Chapter.

NExt to Bochas of Naples came
the king,
Beganne hys fall and compleynt
specysse,
Called Manfrede, & for hys false working,
put down and slaine because of hys tyrany.
Loe what auasleth scepter or regalte,
to a tyrant which of violence,
List to godward haue none aduertence.

With loke down cast dedly pale of chere,
Of Sardinia Euenus next came down,
King of that land to tell the manere,

Howe

How he warreyed agayn the mighty town,
Called Bononia to his confusion,
By the vanquished & with cheynes rounde,
Dyed in prysen so long he lay there bound.

Following myne autor called Bochas John
In Sardinia as he maketh mynde,
Serpent nor wolfe in that londe is none,
Hauing a well which of very kinde,
Theues euen the water maketh blinde,
To true folke as he doth diuine,
Water therof is helth and medicine.

There groweth also an herbe as bokes say,
Which that is so diuers of nature,
Who tasteth therof laughyng he shall dye,
No medicine may helpe them nor recure,
The touche therof stant eke in auenture,
If it enter his mouth on any syde,
He shall aloue for laughter not abyde.

There was another froward frederike,
Sonne of Alphonse that was king of Castile
Of courage woode and eke frantike,
His owne brother falsly to beguyle,
Began a warre lastyng but a whyle
Whose purpose was his brother to deceiue,
And the crowne of Castile to receiue.

This frederike came with a great battaile
Agayn his brother for the same entent,
Of his purpose yet he dyd faile,
God nor fortune wer not of assent,
Take in the field and by iudgement,
Of his brother for his great trespase,
Slayn openly had no better grace.

Maumetus of Berse loyde and kyng,
Came next in pries distressed in great pain
Upon fortune piteously plaining,
His aduersitie dyd hym so constreyne,
For there was one which at him did disdain
Called Argones boyde of title or ligne,
Gein Maumetus proudly gan maligne,

Whiche Argones for his presumption,
Take at mischief by soverain violence
His dome was geuen to dye in prysen,
Of no power to make no resistance.
But fortune that can no difference,

In her chaunges attwene frende and fo,
Caused them dye at mischief both two.

Howe Charles kyng of Jerusalem
and of Sicile for auarice and ad-
uourtye dyed at mischief.

The. xxvii. Chapter.

After these foresayd rehearsed
in sentence,
As Bochas proceedeth in his style,
came noble Charles vnto his presence,
kyng of Jerusalem and also of Sicile,
Of whose coming mine autor a gret whyle,
Astonyed was to see his knightly face,
With such good chere come into place.

For by his port who that beheld hym wel,
Considered first his loke and his visage,
It sempt he trade vpon fortunes whele,
And of his noble martial courage,
Had of her power gotten auantage,
Shewyng hymself on eche partie,
Her and her might dyd viterly desyre.

First to commend his royall hys linage,
And of his vertuous famous alliaunce,
As by wyting and praylyng of language
The name of hym specially to auance,
Seyth he was borne of the blood of frendice
And to encrease moze souerainly his pryse,
Wyteth he was brother vnto saint Lottes

Gaue to fraunce this commendacion.
So as Phebus passeth eche other starre,
Right so that kyngdom in comparison,
Passeth euery londe both nye and farr,
In pollicie be it of peace or warre,
For it transcendeth in peace by prouidence,
And in warre by knightly excellence.

These wordes be not take out of mine autor
But entitiled here for a remembraunce,
By one Laurence which was translatur,
Of this processe to commend fraunce,
To prayse that lond was al his pleasur,
Seyth influence of that royall londe,
Made Charles so woorthy of his honde.

The ninth

Of whose noblesse Pope Urban had soye,
Hym to encrease for vertuous living,
which that time was Duke of Angeoy.
After cholen of Sicile to be kyng.
Of Pope Urban requested by writing,
toward Rome that he should hym dresse,
Of king Maufrede the tyranny toppesse.

Again the Pope and holy churches right,
this sayd Maufrede byd great extorcion,
Noble Charles as gods owne knyght,
came with strong hand by to Rome towne
which in his comming gaue possession,
to Guido of Mountfort for to haue the gard
in his passage and gouerne the barward.

To Rome with great ordinaunce,
they passed ouer the boundes of Itale,
this manlye knight, this Charles borne in
lad with him many strong bataille (France
the Popes enmy manly to assaile.
But al this while to stonde at defence,
this sayd Charles found no resistance,

Enteing Rome to be their protectour,
ful wel receiued at his first enteing,
those and preferred for chief Senatour,
By the Pope most glad of his comming,
Of Sicile was after crowned kyng,
And of Hierusalem as made is mencion,
Gaunted to hym full possession.

Which in his ginning bare him tho so wele
entring that londe with knyghtly apparail
Of Caline gate first the strong castle,
At Beneuent had a great battaile,
with king Maufrede whose partie did faile
To rehearse shortly his auenture,
Charles made on hym a discomfiture.

In which battaile king Maufrede was slain
And noble Charles toke possession,
Wherof Romans wer full glad and fayne,
yet in Sicile there was rebellion,
But they wer brought vnto subiection,
Yet Conradine recorde of al writing,
Sonne of Conrade claymed to be kyng.

Can make him strōg proudly toke his place
At Calliatono a famous olde cite,

Noble Charles with knightly chere & face,
Fyll vpon hym made him for to flee.
And to set rest in the countree,
to auoide trouble and make al thing certam
Gaue iudgement Conradine to be slayn.

Among kinges notable and glozious,
Charles was put (as made is mencion.)
Like a prince strong and victorions,
In ful peaceable and whole possession,
Of Sicile and al that region.
Against whom was no disobedience,
yelded of whole heart to his gouernaunce.

By title also of his alliaunce,
Fortune greatly did hym magnifie,
For as it is put in remembraunce,
The noble princeesse that called was Marie
doughter to Stephene reigning in Hūgary
pyopned was and knit in marriage,
to Charles sonne to encrease of his linage.

This same Charles by auctoritie,
Of the Pope so as hym list to ordayne,
was made king of the great cite,
called Hierusalem, of townes most souerayn
By which title he bare crownes twayne,
His brother Lowes olde bookes saie,
the same time in Egypt gan warrey.

Gate al the countreys about emiron,
which that Sarazins did falsly occuppe,
Brought them agayn to subiection,
Of Hierusalem that lond to magnify,
Chartage in Affrike with all their regalye,
and al the countreis beyng afozne contrary
to kyng Charles became tributarye.

Thus while he sate highest in his gloze,
like Phobus shining in his middaysphere.
with many conquest and many great victorie
whan his noblesse shone most bright & clere
The same time with a frowning chere,
Fortune gan from Charles turne her face,
And hym derast her fauour and her grace.

This lady fortune doth seeld in one cōtune
She is so gierish of condicion,
A foxteresse, a traytourese in commune
cast a false meane to his destruction,

One of his sonnes slayne with poyson,
which did eclipse mine autour both expresse
A full great partie of his olde gladnes.

He was disclaundred of the great vice,
Which apperteyneth unto tyrannye,
I meane the vice of froward avarice,
which is contrary greatly to chualtrie,
Defamed also of false aduoutrie,
which was susteyned thzough his maintey-
within þ lōd by a knight of fraunce. (naūce

The same knyght abidyng in his house,
All Sicile troubled with that dede,
the great offence was so disclaunderous,
Thzough al the region þ it began to sprede.
For thlike woman plainly as I rede,
was wise to one whiche suffered this offence
And to be venged he dyd his diligence.

John Percida playnly was his name,
which cast him fully auenged for to be,
that king Charles should beare the blame,
slayn al the frenche men þ bode in þ cōtre
Without grace, mercede or pitie,
And for to do ful execution,
Required was the kyng of Aragon.

Lost of Sicile al that region,
with the obeyssaunce of many great cite,
And of Hierusalem the possession.
fill by processe in great aduersitie,
And last constreyned with greuous pouertie
To god most mekely with full heauy cheere,
Soone to be dead this was his prayere.

Suppressed he was with sorow in his corage
Lost his force, fyl in to maladie,
Languished forth till he gan fall in age,
Again fortune found no remedy,
And by occasion of false aduoutrie,
fill to mischief, and for sorow and drede,
this Charles dyed, no more of hym I rede.

¶ Enuoye.

Lyke as Phebus in some fresh morning,
After Aurora the day both clarelie
falleth oft that his bright shynnyng,
percked is with some cloudy saie,

A lkenes shewed in this tragedye,
Expert in Charles the story both wel pzeue;
youth and age reckoned eche partie,
the sayre day men do prayle at eue.

The noble fame of his fresh gynnnyng,
To saint Lowes he was nigh of all ye,
right wise, right manly, vertuous of luyng
called for knighthode floure of chualtrie,
Tyll maintenaunce of aduoutrie,
came into his courte to hurte his name and
his life, his death put in leopardeye, (greue
The sayre day men do prayle at eue.

Like desertes men haue their guerdonnyng,
Vertuous lyfe doth princes magnifye,
the contrary to them is great hindzynyng,
folke expect the trowth may not denie,
Serche out the rewarde of cursed lechery,
where it is vsed þ houshold maye not pzeue
In this matter to Charles haue an eye,
The saire day to praise toward eue.

Noble princes al vices eschewyng,
your high courages let reason modifie,
withdraw your hond fro riotous watchynyng,
flie fleshy lustes and vicious company,
Oppresse no man, do no tyranny,
Succour the neddy, pooze folke do rellus,
Let men report the prudent pollicie,
Of your last age whan it draweth to eue.

¶ Of Hugoline Erle of Pise slain in prison.

¶ The .xxviii. Chapter.

After Charles story rad the woeful fine
As ye haue heard the maner & the guise
To John Bochas appeared Hugoline,
called whylom the noble Erle of Pise,
tyll the pesanes gan again hym cyle,
Most vengeably cruel and vnkynde,
slough hym in prison, no more of hym I fynde.

Saue his children of hatred and enuye,
wer murdred eke in a depe prison.
next with his compleint the king of Armeny
came tofoze Bochas that called was Aston,
A chysten prince ful famous of renoun,
for our suth from which he list not erre,

The ninth

Gem Tatarians long tyme he held great
(warre.

This māly king in knighthode ful famous
It was Herod, his soryp who lyst rede,
Had a brother fell and despiteous,
called Sabath desirous to succede,
Heir of his brother þ kyngdome to possede,
by false treason reued hym of his ryght,
Kept hym in holde and put out his syght.

This Sabath lost both happe and grace
His other brother as made is mencion,
By strong hand put hym from his place,
Chased him out of that region,
take by force and fettered in prison,
Dyed there, no man list hym visite,
Lo how god can treason and murder quite.

How Pope Boniface the eight was
take by þ linage De columpnis .eate
his own hondes and died in pyn.

The .xxx. Chapter.



Among these woofull froward
princes three,
Which Herod them so ougly of
theyr chere,

Pope Boniface by great aduersitee,
the eyght of that name gan to approach nere
A thousand thre. C. accompted was þ yere,
fro Chyestes birth by computacion
whan that he made his lamentacion.

This same Pope caught occasion,
which vnder Peter kept gouernaunce,
to interdict all the region,
tyme of king Philip reignyng tho in Fraunce
Direct Bulles downe into Constaunce,
to Nicholas made by Boniface,
Archedeacon of the same place.

Of holy churche the prelates nough rehone,
Bishops of Fraunce felly haue declared,
Preuyng by pointes many moe than one,
In a great Scene plainly and not spared,
by hym the churche was hurt & not repared
put on hym crimes of great misgouernaunce
denounced him enemy to al þ lond of Fraunce

put on hym many great outrage,
wzongly how he had done offence,
to a Cardinal bozne of the linage,
De columpnis a kindred of reuerence,
for which cause he kept hym in absence,
out of the court drough where he was bozne,
by which occasiō þ Pope his life hath lozne.

De columpnis the linage hath so wrought,
toke Boniface for his old crueltie,
W gret force & power ther haue him brought
Unto a castle which stode in the cite,
Callet Sancti Angeli gaue auctorite,
to a Cardinal, and by commission,
Power to do full execution.

Of these matters hangyng in balaunce,
at weene parties wet it right or wzong,
Both of Romains & prelates eke of Fraunce
the Pope ay kept within the castle strong,
Of auenture abydyng there not long,
fyll in a flyre and afterward for nede,
for hūget .eate his own handes as I rede.

Houre of his dyng it is made mencion,
about the castle was merueylous lightnyng
where the Pope laye fettered in prison
none such afozre was seyn in thet layng,
And whyle Bochas was busy in wytyng,
to write the fall of this Boniface,
the order of Tēplers came tofoze his face.

How the order of Tēplers was
fouled & a number of them byent.

The .xxx. Chapter.



Contelers the trouth can
recozd,
Callyng to mynde the fyrst
foundation,

And olde autours therewithal accorde,
Of these Tēplers how the religion,
San that tyme whan Godfray Bullion,
Had wonne that noble knightly man,
Hierusalem that order fyrst began.

By certain knyghtes which did thet busye
whan þ sayd cite was fyrst I wonne (payn
By noble Godfray Duke whilom of Lorein
There

There crowned king this order they begon
Olde bookes well rehearse konne,
takyng a ground of pouertie and mekenes
to founde this order byd theyr busines.

Theyr begynnynge gan of deuotion,
the grounde ytake of wilful pouertie,
And made fyrst theyr habitacion,
By the temple not farre from the cite,
In token of clennes swozne to chastite,
Of the temple like to theyr desyres,
toke that name and called wer Templers.

Pope Honoré gaue them autoritie,
Of holy church beyng that time head,
A white habite they bare for chastite,
Eugenius after gaue them a crosse of read
And to defend pilgrymes out of dread,
gayn Sarazins through their high renoun
this was chief point of their profession.

Whyle they liued in wilfull pouertie,
these crossed knightes in mantelles clad of
they names spred in many far cūtre (white
for in perfection was set all their delite,
folke of deuotion caught an appetite,
them for to encrease gaue them great almes
by which they gan encrease in great riches.

By processe within a fewe yeres,
the number great of their religion,
And the fame of the sayd Templers,
Can spede wyde in many region,
By sodein rysyng of their possession,
with towres, castels, they gaue the to delices
appalled in vertue which brought in manye
(vices.

It wer to long for to reckon them all,
But among other I fynde there was one
A manly knight, folke Jacoes byd hym cal,
Great of autoritie among them euerychone
As Chroniclers remember of yore agone,
the which Jacoes in the realme of fraunce
was bozne of bloude to great enheritaunce.

The same Jacoes holde a manly knyght
In his gynnynge, frely lusty of courage,
Had a brother by elder title of ryght,
Occupied all whole the heritage,
Because Jacoes yonger was of age,

Which might not by no condicion,
Nothyng clayme of that possession.

His elder brother occupied all,
whyle this Jacoes but lowe was of degree,
wonder desirous to be with hym egal,
Alway put backe by froward pouertie,
And to surmount if it would be,
fonde out a meane lyke to his desyres,
was chosen maister of the Templers.

Was promoted by free election,
By them that should chese hym of ryght,
whereby he had great domination,
Riches, treasour, great power and might,
Of his person was eke a manly knyght,
the same time put in remembraunce,
Philip la Bele crowned kyng of fraunce.

Which had of Jacoes great indignacion,
to al the Templers and al their chivalrie
cast waies to their destrucion,
Gate autoritie his lust to fortifye,
Down fro the Pope bookes specifice,
Clement the sixt concludynge if he may,
All the templers destroyed them on a daye,

for certayn crimes horrible to heare,
Al at once wer set in prison,
By their frendes touching this manere,
counsayled to aske mercy and pardon,
That they should by plaine confession,
Requyre mercy knelyng on a rowe,
And as it was their trespas been aknow,

Jacoes was take and with him other thyres,
Kept in hold and to prison sent,
And the remnaunt of their iniquitie,
Ordained wer by open iudgement,
to mightie stakes to be tied and byente,
the king in maner like to do them grace,
So they would confesse their trespas.

But al for nought they wer so indurate,
All of accorde and of one courage,
to aske mercy wer obstinate,
the fyre ready al with one language,
whan the flame approached their visage,
full plainly spake cryed piteously,
Of their actes how they wer not giltye.

The ninth

fro they purpose they list not to decline,
But with one voyce echone and one sounne,
fully affirmed tyll they dyd fine,
How they order and they religion,
Ygrounded was vpon perfection.
And howe they death verely in dede,
Compassed was of malice and hatrede.

The sayd Iacobs of whom I spake tofore
brought to a place whiche called was Leon,
tofore two Legates of that his life was loyne
All openly made his confession,
He was worthy for hyst conclusion.
For to be dead by ryghtfull iudgement,
This was his ende, to aches he was byente.

¶ Bechas here comendeth Theodorus
with other two Philosophers for they
notable patience in tormentes
and aduersitie.

¶ The .xxxi. Chapter.

BEING a pryse to Philosophers
three,
Bochas commendeth with great
diligence,

How eche of them was in his countree,
Souverainly by vertuous excellence,
Of olde commended for their patience,
which may be set and crowned in her stal,
As Emperesse among vertues all.

Among Sicilians first Theodorus,
for patience had in great reuerence,
Among Grekes the story telleth thus,
Anaxarchus for his magnificence,
By force of vertue grounded in patience,
Because he was both vertuous and wyse
for soueraunce gate him a souerayn pryse.

Among Romans put in remembraunce,
Scevola both philosopher and knyght,
for his martial hardy strong constauce,
whan that he held amid the flame light,
hand and fingers among the coales byght,
tyll the ioyntes falling here and yonder,
from the wress departed wer a sonder.

first Theodorus borne in the famous Ile,
By patience great paynes enduryng,
chief philosopher called of Sicile,
with chaines bound vpon the ground lying
On his body layde gaddees read byrning,
Suffryng this peyne list it not refuse,
Byking Ierom the tyrant of Siracuse.

for common profite suffered all this payne,
Longtime afore lying in prison,
which by assent of moe than one of thwayne
was the most chief by conspiracion,
To byrning the tyrant to his destruction,
for no payn that he myght endure,
the conuacion he would not discure.

Rather he chose in mischief for to dye,
than the name openly declare,
Of hym that slough the tyrant sooth to sey,
thought of ryght no man should spare,
for common profite health and welfare,
to slea a tyrant deming for the best,
All a region for to set at rest.

for which title he list to suffer death.
All his torment toke most patiently,
Theodorus tyll he yelded by the breath,
Gutched not with noyse nor loude crye,
Amid whose heart rooted so faithfully,
was common profite Bochas wyte thesame
Among Sicilians to geat hym a name.

Grekes also commende aboue the starrs,
Anaxarchus and greatly magnifie,
cause that he to stynt mortall warres,
List not spare to acquite his partie,
In rebuking manly the tyranny.
Of Alcorcon the tyrant full mortall,
Reigning in Cypr in his estate royall.

Spared not nother for death ne dyede,
Him to rebuke by vertuous language,
the tyrant bad cut of his head,
His tonge in hall, but he with strōg courage
Said he should haue none awauntage,
of that member which mauger al his might
Had tolde hym trowth in the peoples syght.

Of his manace set but litle tale,
Byt of his tonge of hardye strong courage,
Chewed

Chewed it al on peres small,
Of many heart thought it no damage,
Spit it out into the visage,
Of the tyrant gate so the victorie,
to put his name euermore in memoire.

And Scruola egall to these twayne,
For common profite by iust comparison
Put hym in pces byd his busye paine,
to slea Porcenna enemy to Rome towne,
for to accomplishe his entencion,
toke a strong dart right passingly treshaunt
with al his might cast it at the tyrant.

Of his marke because he byd fayle,
to slea his enemy after his entent,
which in Tuskan with many strong bataille
sein Romains with his knightes went.
This Scruola his owne hand he byent,
Cause that he fayled of his arte,
to slea Porcenna with casting of his dart.

To declare the force of his manhede,
Upon hymself auenged for to be,
As I haue tolde in bright coales rede,
His hand he byent for loue of his citie,
Onely to acquite his magnanimitie,
Of feruent loue his citie to auayle,
to slea the tyrant cause that he byd fayle.

Thus for to put the marciall suffraunce,
Of these noble Philosophers thre,
In perpetual minde and remembraunce,
How they them quite eche like his degre,
for their pure partie vnto the commonte,
cause al their ioye and their inward delite,
was for auaille of the common profite.

First Theodorus put hymself in pces,
for Siciliens to die in prison,
And for Grekes noble Anarches,
His tonge tozne felt great passion,
And Scruola for Romains and their towne
Suffred his hande by short auisement,
Of very trowth in coles to be byent.

A martirdom it was in theyr manere,
of theyr courage to haue so great constauce
With so stable of heart, body and chere,
for common profite of face and countenance

Vnto the death without barlaunce,
Gate the triumph by souerayn excellence,
with Lauret crowned for theyr patience.

Lyke as Phebus passeth the litle starre,
Nest by rayed in his midday sphere,
So this vertue in trouble peace and warre
Called patience most freshly doth appere,
Among vertues to shewe his beames clere,
for patience knit with humilitie,
where they abide there may none erroure be.

Trauntes heartes this vertue doth appeere
Mordeth theyr cruel fell woodnes,
Rage of Lions who list liue in ease,
Of folke prostrate his malice doth repress,
All our ioye gan fyist with mekenes,
for of Juda the hardy strong Lion,
a maidens mekenes fro heauē brought doth

In bataille and mightie strong Heltrons,
Iouise with suffrance winneth the victorie,
patience vanquisheth champions,
Lounes in vertue by many old Historie,
And mekenes perpetuall of memoire,
All to conclude grounde on reason,
a maidens mekenes wrought our redemption

Clennoye.

Certue of vertues O noble patience,
In laure crowned for vertus constance,
Laude, honoz, pure and reuerence,
Be youe to the princes of most pleasance,
Most renowned by olde remembraunce,
Of whom the myghtie marciall armure,
gayn all vices lengest may endure.

Ground and gynnynge to stonde at defence
Agayn Satrans infernall pynsaunce,
Laureat Quene where thou art in presens
For eyn outrages haue no gouernaunce,
cōdunt, headspring of plenteous habūdauce
Chrystall well celestiaall of figure,
gayn al vices which lengest may endure.

Chief founderesse by souerayn excellence,
of ghostly buildding and spiritual substance
Emperesse of most magnificence,
with heauenly spiritus next of alliaunce,

With

The ninth

With life euerlasting thy triumphes to auance
And ioy eternall thy noblesse to assure,
in the Aureat throne perpetually to endure.

The Hierarchies there beyng in presente,
Whō humilitie hath souerain acquaintance
where O sanna with deuoute diligence,
Is songe of Angels by long continuance
Tofore the throne keeping their obseruance
sing Sanctus Sanctus recozde of scripture,
with voice memorial perpetually to endure

The byrenning loue of Cherubin by seruice
Perfit in charitie and diligent obeysaunce,
And Seraphim with humble obedience,
and orders nine by heauenly concozdaunce,
dominacions with vertuous attendaunce
afoze the Trinitie syng freshly by measure,
with voice memoriall perpetually to endure.

Suffraunce of painms hath but an apparēce
Done for bainglozy hangyng in balaunce,
But Chrystes martirs in very existence,
List again trauntes make no repugnance,
Rather dye than done god displeasaunce,
Hewed in no mirrour, likenes, noz picture,
take ful possessiō fozeuer w Chyist to endure.

Suffraunce for vertue hath y preeminēce,
Of them that set in god their affiaunce,
Recozde of Stephen, Vincent & Laurence
Blessed Edmonde by long perfectiō.
Suffred for our faith victorious greuaunce
kyng, mayde, and martir, a palme to recure,
in the heauenly court perpetually to endure.

And for to set a maner difference,
In Bochas boke told euery circumstance,
How for our fayth by full great violence,
Diuers saintes haue suffred gret penaunce
Stable of thet there, bisage & countenaunce
Neuer to barye for none auenture,
like Chyistes chāpions perpetually to endure

Whose foundation by notable prouidence,
grounded on Chyist their soules to auance
graue in their heartes & in their conscience
voiding al trouble of worldly perturbance
chauges of fortune with her double chaunce
loued god and dread aboute eche creature,

In hope with hym perpetually to endure.

How Philip la Beale king of fraunce
was slayne with a wilde boze, and
of his thre sonnes and they
endynges.

The .xxxii. Chapter.

When Bochas had wrytten of
patience,
And commended the vertue of
suffraunce,

Philip la Beale came to his presence,
fifth of that name crowned kyng of fraunce
gan complayn his vnhappy chaunce,
And on fortune of custome that can barye,
whiche was to hym cruel aduersarye.

Wounded he was and with a greuous soze
gan his compleint to Bochas determine,
Howe he was slayne of a wilde boze
In a forest which called is Champayne,
told howe he was flaundzed and al his line,
once in flaunders w many a worthy knight
bāquished of flēmpnges & felly put to flight

Proceeding farther gan touch of his linage
How in his time he had sonnes three,
Lowes, Philip, and Charles yonge of age,
The fourth Robert also a doughter had he,
Called Isabel right excellent of beaute,
The sayd Robert the story is wel couth
whiche that dyed in his tender youth.

To this story who list haue good regarde,
the circumstance wisely to discerne,
His doughter Isabell was wedded to Ed-
Carnaruan y boke so doth vs lerne (ward
this yong Philip wedded in Hauerne,
the kynges doughter a stately marriage,
called Jane whyle she was tender of age,

The same Philip after crowned kyng
Of Hauerne, his father of assent,
fue sonnes he had in his liuyng,
Of which fue as in sentment,
The in number be ryght pertinent,
to the matter who so list to looke,
And the processe of the same booke.

The eldest sonne called was Lotwes,
To whom his father gaue possession,
Of Auerne because that he was wyse,
For to gouerne that noble region.
Philip his brother for his high renown,
was afterwarde by iust inheritaunce
And rightfull title crowned kyng of Fraunce.

The thirde brother was by title of ryght,
made Erie of March & named was Charles
Eche of them in the peoples syght,
wer famous hold and passing of great prynces
And for they wer right manly & right wyse
Philip and Charles toke in tender age,
the Eries doughtre of Burgoin in marriage

But as the story reherceth in certain,
to theyr nobleste fortune had enuy,
And by a maner of malice and disdayne,
Brought in by proccesse vpon the partie,
Of their two wyues froward aduoutie,
causynge the death of all these prynces thre,
whan they most floured in their felicitie,

After these thre prynces glorious,
tofore Bochas to shew his entent,
A mightie Duke notable and famous,
came to compleine, Charles of Tarent,
which in his tyme to florence went,
to make peace in his royall estate,
twene Guelfes & Gibellines stondyng at
(debate.

The said Charles born of þe bloud of Fraunce
A manly knight the story doth deuise,
by whose vnhappy fatal froward chaunce,
In the warres betwene florence and Pise
On horsbacke sitting in knightly wyse,
hurt with an arrow fullow down to þe ground,
whereby he caught his last fatal wound.

A man of armes beyng a souldiour
with the Pisanes wer it wrong or ryght,
Of false disdayne that day did his labour.
to treade on Charles in the peoples sight,
whan he lay grasse, wherefore he was made
by their Captain for a maner pryde, (knight
which gouerned the Gibellines side.

And in his study with ful heauy chere
whyle John Bochas bode still on his sete,

To hym appeared and gan approche nere:
Dauntes of florence the laureat Poete,
with his dittes and Rhetorikes swete,
Demure of looke fulfilled with patience,
with a visage notable of reuerence.

Whā Bochas saw him vpon his sete he stode
And to mete him he toke his pace full right,
with great reuerence auailed cap and hooode
to hym sayd with humble chere and syght.
O clerest sunne, day starre & four rayn light
Of our citie which called is florence,
Laude vnto thee, honour and reuerence.

Thou hast enlumined Itale & Lombardye
with Laureate dittes in thy flouryng daies
Grounde and gynnynge of prudent policie,
mong florentines suffrest great affraies
As golde pured proued at al assayes,
In trowth madeest mekely thy self strong
for common profit to suffer payn & wrong.

O noble Poete touching thy mattere,
How florentines to thee wer brynnde,
I wyl remember and wyte with good chere
thy piteous cryle and put here in mynde,
Nay (quod Daunt) here stant one behynde,
Duke of Athens turne toward him thy stile
His vncouth story bytely to compile.

And if thou list do me this pleasure,
To deserue his knightly excellence,
I wyl thou put his life in remembraunce,
How he opprested by mightie violence,
this famous citie which called is florence.
By which story plainly thou shalt see,
Which wer frendes and foes to that citee.

And which were able for to be excused,
If the trowth be clearly apperceued,
And which wer worthy to be refused,
By whom the citie full fallis was deceiued,
the circumstances notably concerned
To reckon in order by euery syde,
which should be chased & which should abide

How Duke Gaunter of Athens for
hys tyrannye, lecherie, and co-
uetise ended in mischefe.

The

The ninth

The xxxiii. Chapter.

Adrian Borhas knew all
the entencion,
Of the sayd Daunt he cast hym
anone right,
To obey his maister as it was reason,
Toke his penne, and as he cast his syght,
A litle a syde, he sawe no maner wight,
Sawe Duke Gaultier of all that long daye,
for Daunt vnwarely vanished was away.

This sayd Gaultier bryefly to prouede,
Like as it is put in remembraunce,
touching his line and his royall kinrede,
He was descended of the bloude of Fraunce,
By long processe and knightly purueyance,
His father fyrst by diligent labour,
Of Athens was Lorde and gouernour.

Stode but a while in clere possession,
Grekes to hym had ful great enuy,
cast of assent for to put hym down,
And depriue hym of that famous Duchie,
To their entent a leysure they dyd spie,
Toke hym at mischief quaking in his drede
Of hys despite in hast smet of his hede.

Vpon whose death auenged for to be,
this sayd Gaultier with mightie apparayle,
cast he would assege that citie,
But of his purpose long he dyd sayle,
And in this while with many strong batayle
two mightie princes wet come down of pale
Laide a sieg to Luke in knightly wise.

Florentines to Luke wet fauourable
And to deliuer the sieg from the towne,
with multitude almost innumerable,
made ordinaunce & knightly thei came down
which turned after to their destruction,
for it fel so of mortal auenture,
On Florentines fyl the discomfiture.

The noyse and fame of this great batayle,
Can sprede farre by report of language,
In Lumbardie, and throughout al Itale,
Whonge souldiours lusty of courage.
And among other feynynge a pilgimage,
the sayd Gaultier by vnware violence,

came fro Naples down into florence.

The florentines helde fyrst a parlamente,
for the saluacion and gard of theyr citie,
By great prudence and great auisement,
Of such as wet highest of degree,
By one assent they gaue the soueraintie,
them to gouerne hoppyng to their encrease,
with statutes made both for warre & peace.

The greatest states rulers of the towne,
called Magnates the dapes in soothnes
To Gaultier gaue this domination
Of entent the commons to oppresse,
And marchantes to spoyle of theyr riches,
streyn men of craft by froward violence,
Again theyr liberties bled in florence.

The people alway in a wayte lying,
to be restored vnto their libertie,
gan grutche sore among themselves pleyning
for great extorcion done to theyr citie,
The great also of most auroxtie,
Had leuer to suffer Gaultier reygne,
than their exactions to modesty or restreyn.

The sayd Gaultier in full subtil wyse,
By a false maner of simulacion,
Enmy in heart vnto theyr fraunchise,
All that he wrought for short conclusion,
was done onely to their destruction,
with a pretence feyned of frendlyhede,
To his promise contrary ay was the dede.

Clambe by by processe to full hys estate,
By feyned speach and subtil flatterye,
In his heart were pompous and elate,
his working outward no man coulde espye,
Lite and litle brough to his partie,
That to conclude shortly for to say,
Al florence his lustes did obey.

Can subtelly please the commonthe,
for to accomplish falsly his desyes,
Made promise to encrease theyr libertie,
to such as wet froward of maners,
Made an othe to destroye theyr officers,
But they would of theyr free voluntie,
graunte vnto hym larger libertie.

Greater

Greater power and dominacion,
to encrease his might vpon euery side,
Gan manace the greatest of the towne,
And day by daye encrease in his pride,
felly he gan felly he byd abyde,
thereupon kept close in their entrayle,
the florentines greatly gan meruayle.

In this whyle there was one Reynet,
Of great auctoritie and of great reuerence,
A mightie sargeant and a great officer,
to whose bidding obeyed al florence,
which with Gaultier accorded in sentence,
with souldiours had stuffed eche hostie,
for to susteine of Gaultier the partie.

And traytourly for to fortifie,
the entent of Gaultier fell and ambitious,
To haue the state only by tyranny,
As their chief lord, froward and sutquedous
to reigne in florence the case was perilous
whan two tirauntes be both of one assent,
with multitude to accomplish their entent.

Which thing considred by their gouernours
And Magnates called in the cite,
whan they found among them no succours
to remedy their great aduersitie,
fill to accorde of necessitie,
Gave their assent without variaunce,
that Gaultier should haue al y gouernaunce.

And condiscended they wer to this issue,
that Gaultier should in all his best wise,
Upon the body be sworne of Christ Iesu,
them to restore vnto theyr franchise,
Used of olde and for no couetise,
From his promise for life ne death declyne,
As the conuencion the court list to termine.

Hereupon was blowe a trumpet,
for to assemble the states of the towne,
A parliament holde, Gaultier first was set,
And to pronounce the conuencion,
with euery parcel entitled by reason,
Like their accorde declaryng anon ryght,
Stode by a vocate in the peoples sight.

With men of armes in stele armed bryght,
Unto their palace chiefe and principall,

The sayd Gaultier conueyed anon ryght,
Set in a seat most stately and copall,
And the people with voice memorial.
Gan crye loude concluding in sentence
Gaultier for euer was chief lord of florence.

So to perseuer during al his lyfe,
Toke in the palace full possession,
there durst none agayn it make strife,
Graunted to hym the domination,
of al the caille about enuiron,
Tuskan, Aretinum, and Caille florentine,
with al Lordships to mounte Apennine.

As ye haue heard, Gaultier thus began,
By his owne furious drinayle,
Sayde he was bozne to be lord of Tuskan
with a great partie also of Atrayle.
tolde he was lad and conueyed by a quayle
Saide euer more wer it right or wrong,
that was the sentence of the byrdes song.

The same birde brought him first to florence
Al the way afoze hym toke his flyght,
with soote singyng byd hym reuerence,
Hye in the ayre of courage glad and light
would neuer parte out of his syght,
Gave him tokens to set his heart asyre,
That of florence he should be lord & syre.

The same birde he bare in his deuises,
ful richely enbrauded with perrey,
toke vpon hym many great empyres,
As chiefe lord of florence the cite,
Sate in iudgement, gouerned the countrey,
brough to him flatterers & folke y could lye
Baudes, Ribaudes, where he might the espy

Of that cite toke merueilous trauages,
Accrocheth to hym riches of the towne
Of lechery used great outrages,
Of maydens, wiues, made none exception,
boyde of inuery grace and remission,
found quarels for to be vengeable,
that to rehearse it is abhominable.

where he hateth, merces he sleeth,
Broke franchises and old liberties,
the people plained desyryng soze his death,
cried vengeaunce about in other cite

The ninth

For tyranny done in their countrees,
whiche was cause of great discencion.
And of their citie almost subuersion.

Thus thei wer among themself deuised,
For their greuous sodayn oppression,
Lacke of foresyght & they wer not prouided
To see mischeues that shoulde fall in þe toun
This is very sooth, where is diuision,
By witnes and recorde of scripture,
May no kingdom nor citie long endure.

For whiche they gan compleyne one and al,
Both of the great and of the commonie,
And of accorde among themself they fall,
To resourme the hurte of their citie,
And finally they condescended be,
By a maner fell consuracion,
To procede to his destruction.

Vpon a day they armed in stele bryght,
Magnates first with commons of the toun
All of assent they rose vp anon ryght,
Gan to crye and make an hideous soun,
Let slea this tyrant, let vs pull hym downe,
Layde a siege by mightie violence,
Afoyne his palace where he lay in Florence.

Such as wer enclined to Gualtere,
Amid the palace the stozp doth vs lerne,
to eschew the siege with full heauy chere,
Ordeined themself to fle away ful yerne,
Out of the strength by a small posterne,
whan florentines dyd theyr labour,
to vndermine round about the towre.

Of which thing whā Gualter gan take hede
this message he sent vnto the towne.
Not of trouth, but seyningly for vynde,
Made promes by false collusion,
For to make ful restitution,
Of theyr fredomes as thei list deuise,
Sent them out one Guillam Bassie.

whiche to the citie was proued a great so,
Had afoyne done them great damage,
with Guillam he sent to them also,
his sonne and heye to stint al theyr rage
worse than his father of wil and of courage
Both at once wer hanged anon ryght,

tofoze the palace in Gualters sight.

Another also that called was Harry,
which had afoze your instruction,
Vnto Gualter and was eke enmy,
to stiere hym agayn that noble towne,
Emner and grounde of their diuision,
which tofoze Gualter his iudgemēt to them
with sharpe swordes was al to herwe.

the execution done vpon these three,
In Tuskan bozne the rancour did appease,
Of florentines to slaunche the crueltee,
Again Gualter and to his lyfe great ease,
He glad to escape out of his diseale,
fled away in ful secrete wyse,
the toun restored agayn to their franchise.

Thus he lost by his insolence,
All his power and domination,
Both of Tuskan and also of Florence,
And as mine autour maketh mencion,
fro Lumbardy he is descended down,
brough to king John reysing tho in fraunce
And of byrth ful nygh of alliaunce.

As I fynde he was on that partie,
with kyng John, this Gualter like a knight
whan that the king with al his chivalrye
was take hymself his lordes put to flyght,
Into Englonde lad after anon ryght,
the sayd Gualter hauyng no rewarde,
to his worship fled lyke a coward.

Met in his flight with diuers souldiours
Of Lumbardy abiding with kyng John,
Which that tyme as Brigantes & pillours
Toke this Gualter, led hym forth anone,
His force, his courage, his heart was agone
Of auenture a certayn florentine,
Smet of his head, this was his fatal fine.

How a woman called philip of Ca-
thenoyse bozne of lowe byrth, came
vnto great estate: and after, she,
her sonne, and her doughter
were byente.

The xxxiii Chapter.

Besprent

Besprennt with teares and with a
woefull noyse,
Tofore Bochas quakynge in sorowe
and dyede:

Next in order came Philip Cathenops,
Dooze of degree bozne of lowe kinrede,
which rose after to great estate in dede,
And gan w gret sorow a cōpleint ful mortal
Seriously to tel her woeful fall.

Touchnyng her birth darke was her image,
Of pooze bed bozne in other syde:
Bochas was loth to spend great language,
On her history long theron to abyde:
Purposed him nothyng for to hyde
Of the substance, but tel al the great,
And superfluitie of the remnaunt to lete.

which was rehearsed by him in his youthe.
whan he was toward Robert of Scicile,
king of Hierusalem, the story is not kowth:
Yet in his booke he list it to compyle,
And it rehearse by ful souerayn stile,
Like in that court as it was to him tolde,
By one Bulgare clad in slaueyn olde.

The sayd Bulgare was a marinare,
with him also was Calabrien:
Called Constantine, which ful many a pere,
Trauayled had, and soondy p thynges seen,
In dyuerse countreyes there he had been.
Among other thynges leyn in dayes olde,
This was a story which Bulgar tolde.

Duke of Calabrie Roger by his name.
By his fader Charles the mighty kyng:
Had in cōmaūdemēt the story seith p same
Geyn Frederik to make a strong ryding,
Which by force proudly vsurpyng,
Toke vpon hym to be Lozde of that Ile,
which called was the kingdome of Scicile

Depnamum in sooth called was the towne,
where Duke Roger his pausions pight,
Ready armed through hys hye renoun,
Geyn Frederike for that lond to fyght,
and withstond him pleynly if he might.
And so befel the mozowe befoze pyne,
the Dukes wyfe of chyliding bode her tyme.

Violant men did that Lady call,
In her tyme a famous great Duchesse,
Destitute of other weomen all.
whan her chld was bozne in that distresse,
to yeue it sucke the story doth expresse,
saue for mischief Philip was brought nere,
Of Cathenops the Dukes chief Lauderere.

By a fisher whiche was her husbond,
A chld she had liuing by thep? trauayle,
which fro the sea vnto the court by lond,
Day by day caried vittayle.
And in this case because it might auayle,
Philippe was brought in this gret stretnes
to be nourice vnto the Duchesse.

where she was cherished after her desyres,
Eche thing ready whan that euer she sent,
with the Duchesse among other chaūbers:
Into Naples I fynde that she went,
Tyl Atropos stoward of entent,
Made of this chld, there is no more to seith
the lues thre de for to bzeake in tweryn.

with kyng Charles of whō I spake tofore
As mine auctour remembreth in his booke,
Was one Raymond of Chaumpayn bozne,
which w the king was called maister Coke
And on a day this iourney he toke,
Toward the sea a pyrate as I fynd,
sold him a chld which was bozne in Inde.

Like Ethiopiens was his colour,
for whō this Coke Raymond hath deuised
for in his notable diligent labour,
Made him chystened & so he was baptised.
Gaue him his name & hath also practised,
him to promote that he vpon him toke,
By his doctrine to be maister Cooke.

for he sone after toke the order of knight,
The Ethiopien were a good offitere,
Gate such grace in the kinges syght,
to be about him moze nere.
By proesse he was made wardroper.
And though he was blacke of his visage,
To Cathenopse he was ioyned in mariage

Where malyperte and of presumption,
to be made knight the king he gan requyre,
pp.1. which

The ninth

Whiche of freedom and great affection,
Is condescended to graunten his prayer.
But to declaire playnly the manere,
In this tyme Violant the Duchesse,
Afoze remembred dyed of sicknesse.

After whose death the booke certifie,
How Duke Roger of Naples the cite,
Wedded a Lady that called was Hauite,
To whom Phillippe as fil to her degre,
With diligence and great humillite,
To please her did so her deuoye,
That of counsaile was none so nere.

Euer ready at her commaundement,
Wrought atpres pleasant of dryte,
With holesome waters that wer redolent
to make her skinne by washing sore & white
Made confections to serue her appetite,
By her husband, the story who list see,
Thesame Phillippe had children thres.

She was cunning, and of her port prudent
Chosen by fauour for to be maistresse:
To saye Jane pong and innocent,
which daughter was to the great Duchesse
Of Calabre: and ferthermoze texpresse,
Her husband the Ethiopien withal,
Of Charles household was made Senescal

O Lord/quod Borhas) spake of hye disdain
what meneth this fortune for to make chere
with her fauour to reyse by a foreyn,
Upon her whele with bright fethers clere:
But of custome it is aye her manere,
Fayrest to appeare with chere & costenaunce
whan she wil bying a man vnto mischaunce

For he that was a boye the last day,
An Ethiopien bozne, and horrible of syght:
And afoze tyme in the kichen laye
Among the pottes with bawdy coate anight
Now he of new hath take þ order of knight
with kyng Charles, now is he Senescal,
Such lodeyn clymbing aseth a lodeyn fal.

He and Phillippe hys wyfe fro potterte,
Be enhaunted and tye to great riches:
The wyne of thes sonnes stately married be,
And for fauour moze than worthinesse,
toke order of knight, & in his most highnes,

They father dyed, whose feast funerall,
was solemnised and hold ful royal.

Thus can Fortune chaunge as the moone,
Her bright face decked with a skye:
His eldest sonne dyed after soone,
The second left by his cleargie,
To be made knyght gan hymselfe apply,
Stede of his father, playnly as I cede,
In his office by fauour to succede.

Thus by proteste fro Phillippe anon right
Death of her husband & her sonnes tweyne
fortune in partye eclipsed hath the lyght
Of her wellfare, and gan at her disdeyn.
Yet euen lyke as when that it doeth reyne,
Phebus after sheweth moze clerenes.
So she fro trouble cole to moze noblesse.

I meane as thus, rehearsing no vertue,
In her persone that men could espye,
But onely this by tyle of this issue,
whan Charles daughter on that partie,
was to the kyng wedded of Hungry,
Called Andreas a man of great courage,
His sayd wyfe but right tender of age.

Thesame Jane not without byce,
As is rehearsed samwhat by mine autour,
To whome Phillippe whylome was noyce,
As ye haue heard, and by ful great labour,
of the sayd Jane Robert made gouernour,
Sonne of Phillippe for a great reward,
Made of Sicile & of that lond Steward.

This fauoure done to Phillip Cathenoye,
caused in þ lond gret indignacion, (noyse
whose daughters wedding caused eke gret
married to Charles þ gret Earle of March
which gaue to folke great occasion,
to deme amisse about in eche cuntreye,
that al that lond was gouerned by tho thre.

By quene Jane and Phillippe Cathenoye,
And the sayd Robert steward of Sicile,
Sonne to Phillip thys was þ comon voyce
The quene and Robert by their subtyl wyle
Had of assent bled a long whyle,
The hateful sinne of auoutrye,
Rose in Sicile and went by to Hungarye.

For quene Jane began no maner thyng,
But Cathenoy's assented w^{er} therto,
The execution and fully the werkynge,
Brought to conclusion by Robert al was do.
And in thys tyme rose a stryfe also,
Disclaunders and a froward discorde,
Atwene the quene & him that was her lord.

Hard to p^{ro}cede vpon suspicion.
Slaunder is swift lightly taketh his flight
For which shoulde eschewe the occasion,
Of fame and noyse of euery maner wight.
By p^{ro}vidence remember in his foresight,
Whan the report is through a lond y^{ou}ngne,
Hard it is to stint it whan it is begonne.

Withstand p^{ri}nciples occasions to declyne,
Lest vnwarely there folowe great damage,
To late cometh the salve of medicine,
To festred sores whan they be incurable;
And in case very resemblable,
To eschewe slaunder list not for to spare,
May not fayle to fal in the snare.

Thus for a tyme þ^e slaunder was kept close,
Albeit so it dyd for a while abyde,
Another mischief ful pitcoull y^e arose,
Which afterward spred abroad so wyde,
Quourty to murder is a gyde:
Set at a p^{ri}ef myne autour doth recorde,
The kyng Andreas was strangled w^{it} a corde.

Out of hys chaumber reysed a great height
By a coniected false conspiracion,
He was entreated, brought down by sleight
After strangled as made is mencion,
Whose death to punish by commission,
Hugh Earle of Aluelpne by a patent large,
To be Judge toke on hym the charge.

Of thys murder rose by a great noyse,
By euidences ful abhominable,
Philip that called was Cathenoy's,
Her sonne her daughter þ^e they w^{er} culpable
Dome was poue by Judges ful notable,
And to conclude shortly they^r iudgement,
With cheyres bound to stakes they w^{er} byt

¶ Lenuoye.

This Tragedy afoze rehearsed here
Tellethe the damage of presumption,
By experience rehearsyng the manere,
Whan beggers ryle to domination,
Is none so dyedeful execution,
Of crueltie if it be wel out sought,
Than of such one as came by of nought.

Recozd on Philip that with humble chere,
By sodeyn fauour and supportacion,
Which was tofoze a simple smal lauender
Of no value nor reputacion
By fortunes gierp mutacion (brought
Shed out her malice testate whan she was
list not conside how she came by of nought

Where is more disdain or where is more da
or more froward communicacion? (get
More vengeable venome doth appeare,
For more sleighty false supplantacion
For more conspired vnware collusion,
For vndermining done couertly & wrought
Than of such folke as come by of nought.

Fortunes changes and meyniges circulare
With her most stormy transmutacion,
Now one set by ful hye in her chayre,
Enhaunceth vicious, vertuous she put down
Recozd on Philip, whose venemous treat
Compassed afoze in her secrete thought,
þ^e dede brake out whē she came by of nought

Noble princes with your bright i^{ye}n clere,
Aduertise in your discreacion,
that no flatterer come in your court to nere
By no fraude of false decepcion,
Alway remembryng afoze in your reason,
on thys tragedy & on this treason wrought,
by a false flatterer that came by of nought.

¶ Howe Sautius kyng of the Ile of
Malorca was slayne by hys cosyn,
whiche was brother vnto
the kyng of Arragon.

¶ The. xxxv. Chapter.

¶ The tyme came of hys great trauayle
Bochas deimpt holding for the best,
This noble porte of Florence & Itale
¶ p. ii. Co

The ninth

To make his penne a while for to rest,
Closed his booke and set it in his chest.
But ere he might sperre it with the keye,
Came three princes & mekely gan him pray.

Amonges other remembred in his booke,
they griuauces byessly to declare,
wherewith Bochas gan cast by his looke,
And of compassion beheld they piteous fare,
thought he would for no flouth spare,
to they requestes goobly condiscend,
and of his booke so to make an ende.

And he gan fyrt rehearce by wytyng,
and his compleynt ful piteously he made,
touchyng the fall of the great kyng,
Called Sautius, whiche his sojour had,
the place named was Asirosiade.
And as he wyte, a little there besyde,
was a small Ile called Emacide.

Both these Iles together knyt in one,
where Sautius had his domination,
Luing in peace enemye had he none,
In long quyet had possession,
whose kingdom whole as made is mencion
In þ bulgare mine autour wyte the same,
Of Malliogres playnly bare the name.

There is also therby another Ile,
Called Maiorca, and of both tweyn,
The sayd kyng was lord a great while,
Keepyng his estate notable and souereyne.
Hauing a colyn a hich gan at hym dyldeyn,
which was brother (as made is mencion.)
Unto the kyng that tyme of Arragon.

In these Iles remembred by wytynges,
whan the people went into battayle,
was the blage found by fyrt of flynges.
With cast of stones they enemies to assayle,
they had of shot none other apparayle.
In that tyme Arblast nother bowe.
Parauenture was tho but litle knowe.

All these cuntreys wer called but one londe,
where Sautius held possession,
til his colyn with strong and mighty honde,
and with great power sodeynly came down,
Brought people out of Arragon,
fil on kyng Sautius feble in his defence,

Gate þ kingdom by knightly violence.

The balaunce was not of euen pees,
Betwene these colyns who list take hede,
for in his conquest this Arragoneys,
Of cruelte had smitten of the head,
Of kyng Sautius quakyng in his drede,
Though it stode so they wer nigh of allye,
there was that day shewed no curtesy.

How Lowes kyng of Hierusalem and
Sicile was putte downe.

The. xxxvi. Chapter.

After this story told in wordes fewe
And of kyng Sautius slayne by
tyranny:

There came a prince and gan his face shew
Called Lowes, Lord of Trinacrye.
The same Ile as in that parcie,
Called Sicania, the story telleth thus,
after the name of kyng Siculus.

Trinacrye a cuntrey meruelous,
Toke fyrt his name of famous hilles thre
the chief of them is called Belorus,
The next Dactinus, the thyrde Libe.
Not farre from Ethna the sayd hilles be,
Besyde a sea ful perillous and yle,
with two daungers Charibdis & the Scille

The sayd Lowes kyng of Hierusalem.
And of Sicile the booke maketh mencion,
which was chased and put out of his realme
By another Lowes and put down,
Ended in pouertie for short conclusion,
This last Lowes of pietie did him grace,
tyll he dyed to haue a dwelling place.

How kyng John of fraunce at Pop-
ters was take prisoner by Prince Ed-
ward, and brought into Englonde.

The. xxxvii. Chapter.

Ext of al and last of euer yphone,
Curlyng fortune id al her variacion
Making his pleint to Bochas came
Kyng John,
told his mischief how he was take in fraunce

By

By prince Edward for al his gret puissance,
and after that with strong & mighty hand,
He was fro Porters brought into England

Alfox destroyed hys Castelles & hys townes
and ouerthrowen manly in batayle,
Hys princes slaine their baners nor penons
Nor brode standerdes might the not auaille
the case out sought spoiled of plate & made
maugre his might king John was prisoner
In England after abode full many a yere.

Set afterwarde to ful great raunson
the worthie slayne on the frenche partye,
The same time in Brytes Albion,
There floured in soth nobleste of chivalrie
High prowesse and prudent policie,
Mars and Mercurie aboue ech nation,
Gouerned that time Brutus Albion.

Mars for knighthode their patre in bataille
And Myneua gaue the influence, (make
meint with bryghtnesse of shyning plate and
To floure in clergie and in hys prudence,
that prince Edward by martial violence,
That day on lue one the best knight,
Brought home kyng John mauger all hys
(might

Though Bochas gaue hym fauoure by lan-
Hys heart enclined vnto þ partye, (guage
which vnto hym was but smale auantage,
worde is but wind brought in by enuye,
for to hindre the famous chualry, (thinke
Of Englyshe men full narowe he gan hym
left speare & shield, faught with pene & inke

Though þ sayd Bochas flourd in poetrye
His perryall wyting gaue no mortal wound
Caught a quarel in hys mzlancolye,
which to hys shame dyd afterwarde reboude
In conclusion lyke as it was founde,
Agein king John a quarel gan to make,
Cause þ he would of Englyshe me be take.

Held them but smale of reputation,
in hys report men may his wyting see,
Hys fantasie nor hys opinion,
Stode in that case of none auctozite,
their king was take their knyghtes ded flee
where was Bochas to help the at such nede

Saue with his pen he made no mā to blede

Of rightwinesse euery Cronicle,ere,
Would in hys wytyng make none exceptis,
Indifferently conueye hys mattere,
Not be partial of none affection,
But yeue the thanks of mercial guerdon,
Hys stile in ordre so egally obserued,
To euery party as they haue deserued,

Laude of king John was that he abode,
In that he quit hym like a manly knight,
hys lordes slayne, some away they rode,
Most of hys meine toke them to the flight,
this Jorney take for king Edwardes right
The field I wonne, haue thys in memoire,
Crouthes title hath gladly the victoie.

Of king John what should I wyte more,
Brough to thys land with other prisoners
Upon which hys realme compleyned sore,
By rehearsaile of old Chronicle,ers:
Dyed in England within a fewe yeres,
Had home agein after their wytinges,
lieth at seint Denys w other worthie kings

Clenuoe.

Of Bochas booke the last tragedye,
Compendeously put in remembraunce,
Howe Prince Edward with hys chivalrie,
faught at Boytres w king John of frace
and through hys mighty martial puissance
Grouded his quarel vpon hys faders right
Toke hym prisoner ful like a manly knight,

By collusion king John dyd occupye,
Set out of ordre the royal aliaunce,
Sceptre, crowne, with al the regalye,
was down descended to Edward in substaunce,
Conuerted the braunches by lineal cōcordāce,
for which title grouded vpon right,
Prince Edward faught ful like a māly kni-
(ghs

Hys cleyne, hys quarel, more to fortespe.
in token that god hys quarel would auance
Disconfiture was made on that partye
Upon king John by violent outtraunce
An heuenly signe by influent purueiaunce,
Sent fro about to shewe Edwardes right

The ninth

For which price faught like a māly knight

Noble princes your hertes doe applye,
Justly to weye this matter in balaunce,
All thing peyled ye may it not denye,
If ye consider every circumstance,
In rightfull Judges may be no variaunce,
The field darained deme who hath right,
For which prince Edward faught like a māly knight

All thing by assent put in leoparde,
and committed to goddes ordinaunce,
There may be after no controuersie,
Betwene parties, quarel nor distaunce,
who shal reioyle & in this case shode fraunce
Sith at Doyters declaring who hath right
Prince Edward faught ful like a māly knight

Here Bochas maketh a rehearſaile how
fortune hath made high estates vn-
wately to descende.

The .xxxviii. Chapter.

Let folke of wisdom conside
in their witte,
Gather vp a summe and counte
in their reason,

To all estates howe fortune hath her quit,
To Popes prelates gin first in Rome toun
To Cardinales most souerein of renoun,
whan they sat hiest coude them not defend,
Agein fortune by no prouision,
but with a tourne she made them to descend

After in ordre call to remembraunce,
The state Imperial of famous Emperours
which as Apollo through their mighty puissance
their fame by blow to Jupiters tours (ſace
And forgeat not these olde conquerours
Aboue Mercurie cast them to assend,
Tyl that fortune with her froward howres
Most sodeinly made them to descend,

Kinges, Princes, of diuers regions,
In Asia, Europe, Affric, and Chartage,
Of Ethiope the marcial champions,
Monstres of Inde, hideous of visage,
Atlas, Hercules, in their most furius rage
agein whose might no mā could him defed

what folowed after: from these hiest stage,
fortune vnwarely made them to descende.

Priestes, Prelates, and wel fed fat parsons,
richly auaunced and Clerkes of degree,
Reke by religiōs id al their brode crownes
And patriarches that haue great souerantye
Byshoppes Abbottes confirmed in their se,
seculer Chanons with many gret prebend
Behold of fortune the mutabilite,
Howe sodeinly she made them to descende.

All that is writen is writen to our doctrine,
one courbeth lowe another goth vpright,
Some be vicious, some in vertue shine,
Phebus now clipted ſūtime his beames bright
Somtime cloudy, ſūtime a starr y night,
Some folke apperze some doe amend,
Mew of fortune the power and the might,
One goeth vpward another doth descende.

Some man wholly increaseth in vertue,
Another recheles of froward wilfulnesse,
One is perſite and ſtable in Chriſt Jelu,
Another brapdeth vpon frowardnesse,
One increaseth with treasour and richesse
who liſt thriue to labour muſt entend,
Maugre the world fortunes doublenesse,
Doth one ariſe, another doth descend,

One is buſye and ſet al hys labour,
Early to ariſe hys good to multiplie,
Another ſpendeth and is a great waſtoure,
Some tree is bare in ſome doth fructifie,
One can ſay ſoth, another can well lye,
One can gather, another can deſpend,
Vnto fortune thys matter doth applye,
ſhe maketh one ariſe another to descend.

All theſe matters reherſed here toſozne,
Of which thys boke maketh mencion,
Woyde the wede, of vertue take the corne,
as reaſon teacheth in your diſcrecion,
And ſo to ſet a ſhort concluſion,
In a brief ſūme this booke to comprehend,
Fortunes whele by reuolucion,
Doth one climb vp another to descend.

Right

Right reuerent pater with support
of your grace,
by your commaundement as
I vndertoke,
with dreadfull heart, pale of chere and face,
I haue accomplisshed traslaciō of your booke
in which labour mine hand full oft quooke.
My penne also troubled with ignozaunce,
lest mine emprise wet not to your pleasāce.

Of right considred of trouth and equite,
I not expert nor stufed with language,
I know how þe Englishe in Rime hath scarstite
Howe I also was conne ferre in age,
not quicke, but rude and dul of my corage,
Of no presumptiō, but atwix hope & drede,
to be your bidding tooke on me to procede,

Hope w^{ch} glad chere gaue me great comfort
of trust I should agreeen your noblesse,
But tho came drede contrarious of report,
gan manace and frowardly expresse,
Gain me alledging vncunning & dulnesse,
sayd for hys part by argumentes stronge,
I was not able for to vnderfong.

This sated emprise to perfourme & confune
the profound processe was so poetical.
Entermedled with chaunges of fortune,
and straunge matters that were historial
touching estates that had a sodein fal,
The freche vncouth compediōusly cōpiled,
to which language my tung was not assiled

Drede and vncunning being of assent,
made ageinst me a daungerous obstacle,
for accomplishe your commaundement,
Standing farre of fro Cullus habitacle,
myne yien misted and darked by spectacle,
Till hope agein gan maken hys repaire,
me to support he put away dispayre.

Yet of Bacchus seared were the vines,
of Adgas touch the aureat licour,
and of Juno welles Christallines,
were dried vp there fond I no fauour,
a thurstlewarelle cause of my langour,
none egal peple, heart heauy, and purg light
which causeth Doctes sighen at midnight.

Trusting ageynward your liberal largesse,
of thys quotidian shall relesse me, (esse
hope hath brought tidings to recure mine age,
after thys ebbe of froward scarstite,
shal folowe a spring floud of graciōus plēty
to walke away by plenteous influence,
alground ebbes of constrained indigence.

With hope also came humble affection,
made a promise vnto my dul courage,
sayd ye my lord should haue compassion,
Of royal pitie support me in mine age.
whereof I caught a maner ausantage,
thought I would rather condescend,
to your desire than your bidding offend.

To be your precept I plucked vp mine hert
cast in my cōceit though cunning did faile
By good aulse I did also aduert, (ualse
how in such caas good will might most pre-
will hath more might thā force hath in batall
And with that thought inwardly suppressed,
for to protecke I was fully aulse,

But for excuse first of my rudenesse,
to such as list haue of thys booke disdeine,
that ye my lord of merciful goodnesse
With thys traslacion ye haue rad & seyne
though it be spoke in wordes bate & plene,
I aske mercy for my poore heartes ease,
to me best guerdon so that it may you please

Ifought be write or sayd to your pleasaunce
the thanke be youe to your royal noblesse,
and where I faile atwixeth ignozaunce
al the defautes arrect to my rudenes,
with this anered requirring of humbleste
that altho which shal thys making rede,
for to correct where as they se nede.

So it be done with supportacion,
of their goodnesse to be fauourable,
Not to pinch of indignacion,
which were to me very impoytable,
And ye my lord for to be merciable,
of your high grace my good wil to consiore
an horse w^{ch} shi, fete may stūble amōg & slide
And

The ninth

And semblably though I goe not byright,
but stomp and halt for lack of eloquence,
Though Homer us held not the torch light,
to further my penne wth colours of cadence,
For moral Sener most sad of hys sentence
Gave me no part of hys moralitees,
therefore I saye thus kneeling on my knees.

To al tho that shal thys booke behold,
I them beseeke to haue compassion,
and therewithall I pray them p^r they would
fauour the Witer and doe correction.
Of gold no assure I had no forlon,
For other colours thys processe tenlumne
Sawe whi te a black, & they but dully shine

I neuer was acquainted with Virgile,
nor with the sugered ditties of Homere,
For Dares Phrygius with hys golden stile
For with Ouide in Poetry most entere,
nor with the souerein Balades of Chaucer
which among al that euer wer rad or sung
Excelled al other in our englische tung.

I can not been a Judge in thys matter,
as I conceiue folowing my fantasie,
In moral matter ful notable was Gower,
and so was Strood in hys Philosophie.
In perfit liuing which passeth poplie,
Richard Hermitte contemplatife of sentece
Drough in Englische the prick of conscience.

As the gold cressed byght summer sunne
Passeth other starres with his beemes cleere:
And as Lucina chaseth setes doune,
p^r frosty nightes whā Hesperus doth appere
Right so my master had neuer peere,
I meane Chaucer, in storyes that he tolde,
and he also wrote tragedies olde.

The fal of princes gan piteously compleine
as Petrark did and also John Bochas,
Laureat fraunces Poetes both tweine,
told howe princes for their great trespass,
Were ouerthrowe rehearsing all the caas,
As Chaucer did in the Monkes tale,
but I that stand lowe down in the vale,

So great a booke in Englische to translate
did it by consent and no presumption,

Bozne in a billage which called is Lidgate
By olde time a famous castel toune,
in Danes time it was beat doune,
time whā saint Edmund, martir, maid, & king
was slaine at Oxone, record of wyting.

I me excuse nowe this booke is doe.
How I was neuer yet at Citharon,
For on the mounteine called Parnaso,
where nine Muses haue their mansion.
But to conclude mine entencion,
I wil procede furch with white and black,
and where I faile let Lidgate beare p^r lack

Of this translacon considered the matter,
the processe is in party lamentable,
woful clauses of custome they require,
nor he thowkes nor flozshinges delectable
Letters of compleint require colour sable,
And tragedies in especial,
Be rad and song at feastes funeral.

This booke remēbyng of the sodein falles,
of famous princes & surquedous princesses
that wer vnwarely cast fro their roial stalles
which wer in earth worshipped as goddesses
Inde stones vpon their golden tresses.
what was their end: read Bochas p^r shal se
by fatal spinning of Parchas listren thye.

Of thys matter there be bookes nine,
al of fortunes transmutacions,
thys blind Lady howe she made the decline
from their most famous exaltacions.
Some plunged down to p^r infernal dāgeōs
with cruel Pluto depe down in hell,
with Proserpina perpetually to dwell.

For their demerites and lacking of vertue,
that they list not their souerein lord to know
For who is recheles to setue our lord Iesu,
Fortunes whele shal sone him ouerthrowe
though fames trūpet of gold be loud blowe,
Hys victories, hys martial renounes,
rad and remembred in diuers regions.

Who knoweth not god is fal ferre in slouth
betwene p^r princes euer of thinges tweine,
in euey quatrel that your groud be trouth.
Next in order doth your busy peyne,

To loue Iesu your lord most souereyne,
Trust him of heart and he shal not fayle,
to be your succour in peace and in battayle.

For lacke of trust trowse I saye alas,
and make hereon an exclamation:
Al the mischieues remembred in Bochas,
fro tyme of Chyestes incarnation,
Ha been for lackyng of deuotion:
That ye princes of wilful negligence,
list not to God doe due reuerence.

Dysdeineth not to haue in remembraunce,
ye be no Goddes ye be but men mortall:
Stond vnder danger of fortunes chaunce,
More lyke to tumble, and more nere a fall,
than doth a beggar in thys lyfe mortall,
Of vertuous power the fal is not vnsoft,
Most greuous fal of them that sit aloft.

Ye princes quake stonde not in no such caas
yet whe death cometh ye can no bet socour
than can the poore record of John Bochas
Hath mind hereon and make you a mirrour
Of such as reigned in glory & great honoure
as cyche Cyrus and Sardanapal,
How fro the whele of fortune they wer fall

(tune)

Set not your trust beth ware of false for:
For al this booke treateth of such matter,
ginneeth his processe, & so furth doth cōtune
Lamentable and doleful for to heare.
Howe Adam fyrst with a ful heauy chere,
from a place most souerayn of delysse,
Whylome departed out of paradise.

Cherubin abiding keping þ gate of paradise
with brening sword þ ther shoulde etre none
this booke conueyed by ful great ayse,
Certouly from Adam to King John,
Reigning in Fraunce, of whō not yore agone
I laugh remembred the date of thilke yeres
whan he was take prisioner at Doyters.

A thousand tolde by computacion,
thre hundred ouer, fiftie and sixe yere,
Cruely reckoned from the incarnation,
whan sayd John was take prisioner,
Tolde and remembred by the Chronikler,
As Adam was fyrst that did fall,

So in this boke King John was last of all.

We had neuer standen in daunger,
Of worldly stryfe nor perilles full mortall,
Nor drede of death not in thousand yere.
Nor of fortune that turneth as a ball,
If Adam had in paradise had no fall.
Touche of an apple and inobedience,
cause that fortune is had in such reuerence.

But for to tell and speake in woordes pleyu
How fortune caught fyrst an interesse,
to be called (not truely) but in bein,
Of worldly people a froward false goddesse
This errour gan of bestial rudenes,
Deming themselves they wer assured wele,
whan they sat high on her vntruely whele.

Rekon by al tho that haue done her seruice
And folowed on in theyr opinion,
Lyke as this booke in order doth deuyse,
Peyle in balance what was theyr guerdon:
A soden reyle an vnware tumbling down.
Yet for al thys through her flatterye,
al worldly people doth her magnifye.

¶ C lenuoye.

Noble prince remembereþ al these thinges
Peyleth of reason. lyfte vpe your eye
and see:

As your lyne conueyed is fro kynges,
How vertue longeth vnto dignitee.
What foloweth after grace and prosperite,
Hath this in mynde and theron doe attend,
Haugre fortunes mutabilitie,
ye shal to Godward encrease and ascend.

Of humble entent with hert & hand quaking
Direct this boke vnto your maiestie,
In which ye may at good layser reading,
Seen dyuers changes of worldly vanitie,
Princes cast downe from theyr imperial see
for they wer froward list not condescend,
Vertue to sue, and bytes for to flee,
So to Godward encrease and ascend.

Fall of other through vicious liuing,
Some disgraced vnto ful lowe degre,
Of prouidence lat their chastysing,

The ninth

For lacke of grate to you a myrrour be,
Where vertue reygnerh there is felicitie,
In such as list the pꝛ froward life to mend,
who loueth þe lord which hath the souereinite
shal ay by grace encrease and ascende.

(ning)

Though your estate like Phebus were wy-
pet for al that ye haue no suretie,
How long time is here your abyding,
Age with her colyn called infirmitie,
wil clayme her right of very duetie,
Death taketh no mede afoze he wil not send
Prouyde your lyfe while ye haue libertie,
Dayly in vertue tencrease and ascende.

As men deserue by record of wytyng,
An expert thyng by olde autoritie,
ye shal receiue to your mede or punysshing,
by egal peple of trowth and equitie,
Beth ware afozn folke haue their tōges fre
lyke your desert shal reade your legende,
This very sooth voyde of duplictie,
reueith them cause to pray you may ascende.

The wordes of the Translatour.

Mith letters and leaues goe litle
booke tremblyng,
Pray to the pꝛince to haue on thee
picie:

Woyde of picture and enlumynng,
which hall of Cythera no curious ditter,
For of hys gardeyne no flowres of beautie,
God graunt grace thy rudenes not offend
The high noblesse and magnanimitie,
Of his pꝛesence whan thou shalt bp ascende

And for my part of one heart abyding,
Woyde of chaunge and mutabilitie,
I do present this booke with hand making
Of whole affection kneling on my knee:
Praying the Lord one, two, and thre,
whose magnificēce no clerke may cōprehēd
To sende you might, grace and prosperitie,
Euer in vertue to encrease and ascende.

Goe bysse þe steppes of the þe wer furthering
Laureate Doctes which had souerainite,
Of eloquence to support thy makynng.

And pray al tho that shal thys processe see,
In thyn excuse that they list to be,
fauourable to lacke or to commende,
Set thy ground vpon humilitie,
Unto the pꝛ grace that thou mayst bp ascende

In a short clause thy content rehearsyng,
As one bp climbeth to great prosperitie,
So another by expert knowlageing,
from great riches is brought to pouertie.
Alas (O booke,) what shall I say of thee:
thy tragedies throug al the world to send,
Goe furth I pray, excuse thy self and me,
who loueth most vertue, highest shal ascende

Black be thy weede of cōpleynt & mourning
Called fall of pꝛinces from their felicitie,
Like chaūtplure now singing now weping,
woe after mirth, next ioy aduersitie,
So entermedled there is no suretie,
Like as this boke doth pꝛeple & repꝛehend,
now on the whele nowe set in lowe degree,
who wil increafe by vertue must assende.

Here endeth the

Booke of John Bochas v-
pon the fall of pꝛinces and
dyners other nobles.



Greneacres a Lennoy
vpon John Bochas.

Lacke be thy hondes & thy wede also
Thou sorowefull Booke of mattes
opfepeyred:

In token of thine inward mortall woe,
which is so bad it may not be impeyred,
thou owest not outward to be feared,
that inward hast so many a rusul clause,
such be thine habite of coulour as thy cause

No cloth of Tissue ne beluet Cremesynie,
but like thi mōke mourning vnder his hode
Goe weyle and wepe with woeful proserpine
And lat thy teres multiplie the floode,
Of blacke Lithey vnder the bare yn woode
where as Goddesse hath her Hermitage,
helpe her to wepe and she wil geue the wage

Noblesse of toy sith thou maist not appoche
Thys black Goddesse I counseyl the toby

Booke.

Fol. CXX.

Compleyn with her vnder the craggy roch
with weping soules vpon the sepe Lithey,
Sith thou of sorow art instrument & kepe,
So harpe & sing there as þ mayst be heard,
for euer toy is of thy name afeard.

Princes of woe and weeping proserpine,
which harborst sorow euē at thine hert rote
Admitte this Bochas for a manne of thine
And though hys habite blacker be than lote
Yet was it made of thy monkes hode,
That he translated in English of Latine,
Therefore now take him for a man of thyne.



1010.127

The case of the ...

The first of these is the fact that the
 second of these is the fact that the
 third of these is the fact that the
 fourth of these is the fact that the
 fifth of these is the fact that the
 sixth of these is the fact that the
 seventh of these is the fact that the
 eighth of these is the fact that the
 ninth of these is the fact that the
 tenth of these is the fact that the

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

The first of these is the fact that the
 second of these is the fact that the
 third of these is the fact that the
 fourth of these is the fact that the
 fifth of these is the fact that the
 sixth of these is the fact that the
 seventh of these is the fact that the
 eighth of these is the fact that the
 ninth of these is the fact that the
 tenth of these is the fact that the

The daunce of Machabree

wherin is lively expressed and shewed the state of
manne, and howe he is called at vncertayne tymes by
death, and when he thinketh least thereon: made,
by thasofesayde Dan John Lydgate
Monke of Burpe.

The Prologe.



Ye folkes hard hearted
as a stone,
whiche to the worlde haue
al your aduertence,
Lyke as it shoulde euer
lasten in one.
Where is your wit, where
is your prouidence?

To seen afoyne the sodayn violence,
Of cruel death that be so wyse and sage,
which slayeth (alas) by stroke or pestilence,
both yong & olde of lowe and high parage.

Death spareth nought low ne high degre
Popes, kynges, ne worthye Emperours,
whan they shine most in felicitye,
he can abate the fresheynes of her flours,
Her bright sunne clippen with his shours.
make them plunge fro her sees lowe,
mauger the might of al these conquerours,
fortune hath them from her whele ythrow.

Considereth this ye folkes that been wyse,
And it emprenteth in your memoziell,
Like the ensample which that at Parisse,
I fonde depict ones in a wal,
Full notably as I rehearse shall,
Of a frenche clarke takyng acquaintance,
I toke on me to translaten all,
Out of the frenche Machabrees daunce.

By whose aduise and counsaile at the lest,
through her steryng and her motion,
I obeyed vnto her request,
therof to make a playn translation,
In English tonge of entencion,
that proud folkes that bene stout and bolde,
As in a myrrour tofoyne in her reason,

Her vgly fyne there clearly may beholde.

By ensample that thet in her ententes,
Amend her life in euery maner age,
the which daunce at saint innocentes,
Portrayed is with all the surplusage,
yoven vnto vs our liues to correct,
And to declare the fyne of our passage,
Right anon my stile I wil direct,
to shewe this worlde is but a pilgrimage.

The ende of the
Prologe.

The wordes of the translatour.



Creatures ye þ bene reasonable,
the life desiring which is eternall,
ye may se here doctrine ful notable
your life to lead which þ is mortall

Thereby to learne in especiall,
how ye shal trace the daunce of Machabrees
to man and woman ylike naturall,
for death ne spareth high ne lowe degre.

In this myrrour euery wight may fynde,
that him behoueth to gone vpon this daunce
who goeth tofoyne, or who shall go behynde
All dependeth in goddes ordinaunce.
wherefoze lowly euery man his chaunce,
death spareth not pooze ne yet bloud royall,
euery mā therfoze haue this in remembraunce
Of oo matter god hath yforged all.

(. . . .)

CC.

The daunce of Machabree.

Cunctis mortalibus mors debetur.



Death fyrst speaketh vnto the
pope, and after to euery degree as
foloweth.

On this daunce with other for to trace,
for which al honor, who prudently can see,
is litle worth that doth so soone passe.

Death speaketh to the Emperour.



(dignitie,
Y^e been set most in high
Of al estates in earth
spirituall,

And like as Peter hath
the soueraintee,
ouer the church and
states temporall,

Vpon this daunce ye first begin shall,
As most worthy lord and gouernour,
for al the worship of your estate papall,
And of Lordship to god is the honour.

The Pope maketh answer.

Fyrst me behoueth this daunce for to lede
which sat in earth highest in my see,
the state ful perilous whoso taketh hede,
To occupie Peters dignitie,
But for al that, death I may not flee,

Y^e Emperour lord of al the grounde
scuerene prince & highest of noblesse,
ye not forsake of gold your apple roind
scepter and swerde & al your high prowesse
behind leten your treasour and your riches
And with other to my daunce obey,
Against my might is worth none hardines,
Adams children al they must deye.

The Emperour maketh answer.

I Note to whom that I may appeale,
touching death which doth me so cōseem
there is no gin to helpen my querel,
but spade and pickoys my graue to attayne
A simple thete there is nomore to seyn,
to wrappen in my body and visage,
wherupon soze I me compleyne,
That Lordes great haue litle auantage.

Death

The daunce of Machabree.

fol. CCxi.

Death speaketh to the
Cardinal.

Heen abashed it semeth and
in dede,
Syr Cardinal it sheweth by
your chere,
But yet for thy ye folowe shall in dede,
With other folke my daunce for to lede,
your great aray al shal leauen here,
your hat of red, your vesture of great coste,
All these thynges reckoned well in feare,
In great honour good auyse is loste.

The Cardinall maketh
aunsweere.

I haue great cause, certes this is no faile,
To be abashed and greatly dread me,
Sith death is come me sodainly to assaile
that I shall neuer hereafter clothed be,
In grise nor Ermine like vnto my degree,
Mine hat of red leuen eke in distresse,
By which I haue learned wel and see,
how that al ioy endeth in heauines.

Death speaketh to the
kyng.

Noble kyng most worthy of renown
Come forth anone for al your
worthines,
That whylom had about you enuiron,
Great royaltie and passing hye noblesse,
But right anon al your great highnes,
Sole from your men in hast ye shall it lete,
who most aboundeth here in great riches,
Shall beate with hym but a lyete.

The kyng maketh
aunsweere.

I haue nought learned here tofor to dafce
no daunce in sooth of footyng so sauage,
where through I se by clere demonstraunce
what pryde is worth or force of high linage,
Death all fordeeth this is his vsage,
Great and smal that in this worlde so tourne
Who is most meke I hold hym most sage,
For we shall all to the dead alies tourne.

Death speaketh to the
Patriarche.

Sy Patriarche al your humble chere,
He quiteth you nought nor your
humilitie,
your double crosse of gold and stones clere
your power whole and al your dignitie,
Some other shall of verie equitie,
Possede anon as I rehearse can,
Trusteth neuer that ye shall hope be,
For holy hope deceiueth many a man.

The Patriarche maketh
aunsweere.

Worlde honour gret treasure & riches,
Haue me deceued soothfastly in dede
Mine old loyes been turned into tristesse
what auayleth such treasours to possede
It climbeth vp, a fall hath for his mede,
Great estates folke wassen out of number,
who mounteth high, it is sure and no drede,
Great burden doth hym oft encomber.

Death speaketh to the
Cunstable.

It is my ryght to atest you and
constrayne,
With vs to daunce my mayster
Sir Cunstable,
for moze ströger thā euer was Charlemain,
Death hath assorced and moze wortheypable,
for hardines ne knighthode this is no fable
nor strög armure of plates nother of mark
what gayneth armes of folkes most notable
whan cruell death list him to assaile.

The Cunstable maketh
aunsweere.

My purpose was and whole entencio
to assail castels & mighty fortresses
And byng folke vnto subieccion,
to seke honour, fame, and great riches,
But I see that al worlde pryde,
Death can abate which is a great despyte,
to him alone, sorow and eke sweetenes,
for agaynst death is found no respire.

CC.ii. Death

The daunce of Machabree.

Death speaketh to the
Archbishop.

SY? Archbishop, why do ye you
withdrowe,
So frowardly as it wet by
disdayne?
Ye must appoche to my mortall lawe,
It to contrary it wet nought but in bayne.
For day by day there is none other gayne,
Death at the hand pursueth every coast,
Best and debte mot bee peld againe,
And at a day men counten with her host.

The Archbishop maketh
aunswere.

A Las I wote not to what partie for to
(flee
for drede of death I haue so gret distress
to escape his might I can no refute see,
that who so knew his cōstreint and duresse
He would take reason to maistrisse,
Adue my treasour, my pompe & pride also,
my painted chābers, my port & my fresnes
thyng that behoueth nedes mot be do,

Death speaketh to the
Barone.

ME that among Lozdes and Barons
haue had so long worshyp and
renoun,
For yet your trumpetes and your clacions,
this is no dreame nor simulacion,
whylom your custum and entencion,
was with Ladies to daunsen in the shade,
But oft it happeth in conclusiō,
One man breaketh that another made.

The Baron maketh
aunswere.

Eill oft sith I haue been auctoyzed,
to high epyles & thiges of gret fame
of high & low my thanke also deuised
cherished w Ladies & women high of name
He neuer on me was put no defame,
In Lozdes of court which that was notable
But deathes stroke hath made me lame,
Under heauen in earth is nothyng stable.

Death speaketh to the
princesse.

Ome loth anon my Lady good
princesse,
Ye must also gon vpon this daunce,
nought may auaple your great straignesse,
nether your beauty nor your gret pleasance
Your ricke aray nother your daliaunce,
That whylom couth so many holde in hond
In loue for al your double variaunce,
ye mot as nowe this footyng vnderlonde.

The princesse maketh aunswere.

A Las I see there is none other boote,
deeth hath in earth no lady nor maistris
& on this daunce yet mot I nedes sore
for there nis quene countesse ne dutchelle
flouring in bountie nor in her faynes,
that thooe of death mot passe the passage,
When our beautie and counterfeit fairness
Dieth, adue then our rimpled age.

Death speaketh to the
Bishop.

My lord sit Bishop with mitre & crosse
for al your riches soothlye I ensure,
for all your treasour kept in cloffe
your worldly goodes and goodes of nature
Of your shepe the bredesal ghostly cure,
with charge committed to your prelacie,
for to accoumpt ye shal be brought to lure,
No wight is sure that climbeth ouer hye.

The Bishop maketh
aunswere.

Mine heart truly is nother glad ne
(mercy
of sodein tidinges which I ye bring
my feast is turned into simple ferie,
that for discomfote me list nothyng syng,
the world contrarieth to me now in working
that al folkes can so disherite,
He al with hault (alas) at our partyng,
Al thyng shall passe saue onely our merite.

Death speaketh to the
Squier.

Commeth

Commeth forth sy squire right fresh
of your araye,
þ conne of daunces al the new guise
If ye bare harnes freshly horsed yester day
with spere & shilde at your vncouth deuise,
And toke on you so many high empise,
Daunseth with vs it wyl no better be,
there is no succour in no maner wyse,
for no man may fro deathes stroke flee.

The squire maketh
aunsweere,

Sithens that death me holdeth in his lafe
Sper shal I speake oo worde ere I passe,
Ioue al myrth adue now al solace,
adue my Ladies whilom so freche of face,
adue beautie, pleasaunce, and al solace,
Of deathes chaunge euery day is prime,
thinke on your soules ere þ death manace,
for all shal rot and no man wot what time.

Death speaketh to the
Abbot.

Commeth forth sy Abbot with
your brode hatte,
Beeth nought abaht if ye
haue n ryght,
great is your head, your belly large and fat,
ye mot come daunce if ye be nothyng light,
Leaueh your abbey to some other wight,
your heyre is of age your state to occupie,
who that is fattest I haue hym behyght,
In his graue shall soonest putrifie.

The Abbot maketh
aunsweere,

If these thyets haue I none enuy,
þ I shall now leaue al þ gouernaunce
But that I shal as a cloyster dye,
this death is to me passing great greuaunce
my libertie nor my great habundaunce,
what may they auayle in any maner wyse
yet aske I mercy with heartely repentance,
If in dying to late men them auise.

Death speaketh to the
Abbesse.

Ad ye my lady gentle dame
Abbesse,
With your mantels furred
large and wyde,
your beile, your wiple, passing of gret riches
And bedes, (sister) ye mot now leyn on syde,
for to this daunce I shalbe your guide,
if ye be tender bozne of gentle bloode,
whyles that you liue for your selfe prouide,
for after death no man hath no good.

The Abbesse maketh
aunsweere,

Alas þ death hath thus for me ordeined
þ in no wise I maye it nought declyne,
if it so be ful oft I haue constrained,
Brest and throte my notes out to twyne,
My chekes round garnished for to wyne,
Ungird ful oft to walken at the large,
thus cruel death with al estates fine,
who hath no shippe he must rowe in bote or
(barge,

Death speaketh to the
bayly.

Come forth sir bayly that knowen al
the guise, (nes,
by your office of trowth & rightwis-
ye must come to a newe ailysse,
Exorcionous and wronges to redresse.
Ye be somned as lawe biddeth expresse,
to peue accomptes þ Iudge wil you charge
which hath ordeined to excluden al falsnes,
that euery man shal beare his own charge.

The bayly maketh
aunsweere,

Whou lord god this is a hard iourney
to which asorne I toke but litle hede
my chaute is turned & þ forthinketh
whilo I iudges what me list to spede, (me,
lay in my might by labour oft for mede,
But sith there is no tescus by battayle,
I hold him wise that couth wel seen in dede
again death that none apel may bayle.

Death speaketh to the
Astronomer.

CC.iii. Come

The daunce of Machabree.

Some foorth maister that looketh
 up so farre,
 with instrumentes of Astronomie,
 to take the grees and hyght of every starre
 what may auade all your astrologie:
 Sith of Adam all the genealogie,
 made first of god to walke vpon the groue,
 death with aress thus sayth theologie,
 And all shall dye for an apple rounde.

The Astronomer maketh
 aunswere.

For all my craft, cunnyng, or science,
 I can nought find no prouision,
 nother in the starres search out no differēce
 By domifyng, nor calculacion,
 Saue finally in conclusion,
 For to descriue our cunnyng every dele,
 there is no moze by sentence of reason,
 who liueth aryght mot nedes dye well.

Death speaketh to the
 Burgis.

Sir Burgis what doe ye
 long tarpe,
 for all your auoyze and your
 great riches,
 yf ye be strong, deynous, and contrary,
 toward this daunce ye mot you nedes dresse
 For of al treasour, plentie, and largesse,
 from other it came and shall vnto strāgers,
 He is a foole that in such busines,
 wot nought for whō he stufferh his garners

The Burgis maketh
 aunswere.

Ertes to me it is great displeaunce
 to leaue al this & mai it nought assure
 how these rentes, treasoz, & substance,
 death al for both suche is his nature,
 The refoze wise is no creature,
 that set his heart on good that may disseuer
 the world it lent the world wil it recure,
 And who most hath, lothest dyeth euer.

Death speaketh to the
 Chanon secular.

Ad ye say Chanon with many
 great prebende,
 ye may no lenger haue
 distribution,
 Of golde, silver, largely to dispende,
 for there is now no consolation,
 but daunce with vs for al your high renoun
 for if death stode vpon the bynke,
 ye may therof haue no delacion,
 death cometh ay whē mē least on hī thinke.

The Chanon maketh
 aunswere.

My benefice with many personage,
 god wot ful lite may me now cōfort
 death hath of me so great auantage
 that al my riches may me nought disport.
 I misse of grēis they wyl ayein resorte,
 vnto the world a surples and prebende,
 al is vayne glozy truly to repozte,
 To dyen well ethe man shoud entende.

Death speaketh to the
 marchaunte.

Rich marchant, ye mot looke
 hitherwarde,
 I passed haue ful many diuers lond
 On horse, ou foote, hauing most re-
 to lurre & winnyng as I vnderstond (gard
 but now to daunce ye mot geue me your hōd,
 for al your labour ful litle auayleth now
 I due vayne glozy both of free and bonde,
 none moze couet thē thei that haue ynow.

The marchaunt maketh
 aunswere.

By many an hyll and many a strong bale
 I haue traualled with many marchandise
 Quere the sea downe carpy many a bale,
 To sondrye fles moze than I can deuyse,
 mine heart inward ay stretteth with couetise
 but al for nought now deth both me cōstreim
 for which I se by record of the wyse,
 who al embraceth lile shall constreim.

Death speaketh to the
 Chartreux.

Yeue

The daunce of Machabree.

Fol. CCxlii.



Cue me your honde with chekes
deap and pale,
Caused of watche & long abstinence
Sir chartreux, and your self auale.
Unto this daunce with humble patience,
To strue ayein may be no resilience,
lenger to liue set nought your memoire,
If I be lothsome as in apparence,
Aboue al men death hath the victorie.

The Chartreux maketh
aunsweere,



Unto the world I was dead long agoon
By mine order and my profession,
And eueryman be he neuer so strong
Dreadeth to dye by kindly motion,
After his fleshly inclinacion,
but please to god my soule to bozowe,
fro fiendes myght and fro damnacion,
some arne to day & shal nought be to morow

Death speaketh to the
Sargeaunte.



Come forth sir Sargeaunt with
your stately make,
Make no defence nor
rebellion,
it may nought auale to grutché in this case
If ye be deynous of condicion,
For neyther pele nor protection,
May you fraunchise to doe nature wrong,
For there is none so sturdy chaumpion,
If he be mightie, another is also strong.

The Sargeaunt maketh
aunsweere.

Howe dare this death set on me arell,
That am the kynge's chosen officer,
which yester day both East and west,
Mine office dyd ful surquedous of chere,
But now this day I am arested here,
And can nought flee if I had it sworne,
Euery man is loth to die both sacre & nere,
& hath nought learned for to be ded aforne.

Death speaketh to the
Monke.



Sye Monke also with your blacke
habite,
ye may no lenger hold here solouré,
there is nothyng that may you here respice
Agein my might you for to doe succour,
Ye mot accompt touchyng your labour,
howe ye haue sped it, in dede, word, & thought
To earth and ashes turneth euery flouré,
The life of man is but a thyng of nought.

The Monke maketh
aunsweere.

I Had leaue in the cloyster be,
At my booke and study my seruice,
which is a place contemplatife to see,
But I haue spent my life in mony wyse,
Like as a foole dissolute and nice,
God of his metty graunt me repentaunce,
By chere outward hard is to deuise,
Al be not merue which that me seen daunce.

Death speaketh to the
Usurer.



Thou usurer looke vp and beholde,
Unto thy wynnynge thou settest aye
thy payne,
whole couetise waxeth neuer colde,
thy greedy thyust so soze the both constraine,
but thou halt neuer to thy desyre attayne,
Suche an eteke thyne heart streten shall,
But that of pittie god his honde refraine,
one perillous stroke shal make thee losen al.

The Usurer maketh
aunsweere.

Now behoneth sodenly to dye (uance
which is to me great paine & eke gre.
succour to fynde I see no maner way
Of golde nor siluer by none cheuissance,
death through his hast abideth no purueiance
Of folkes blynde that can nought loke wel
full oft happeth by kynde of fatall chaunce
some haue sayre epen that seen neuer adel,

The poore man bozoweth of
the Usurer.

Usurer

The daunce of Machabree.

VSurer to God is full great offence,
And in his syght a great abusyon,
þ poore bozoweth per case for indigēce,
The riche lent by false collusion,
Onely for lucre in his entencion,
Death shal both to accoumptes sette,
to make rekening by computacion,
No no man is quit that is behynd of dette.

Death speaketh to the phisicien.

Mister of phisike which on your v.
So looke and gaze, and stare
agaynst the sunne,
for al your craft and study of medicine,
All the practike and science that ye kunne,
Your life course so farre forth is yunne,
Apem my might your craft may not endure
for al the gold that thereby ye haue wunne,
Good lethe is he that himself can recure,

The phisicien maketh answer.

Fill long agon that I vnto phisike,
Set my wit and eke my diligence,
In speculatif and also in practise,
to great a name thzough mine excellence,
To fynd out agaynst pestilence,
Preseruatifes to staunche it and to fine
But I dare thortly in sentence,
I say that against death is worth no medicine

Death speaketh to the amorous
Squyre.

Me that be gētle so fresh & amorous
of yeres ydg flouring in your grene
lusty fre of hert, & eke desirous (age
ful or deuises & chaunge in your courage,
pleasaunt of port, of loke and of visage,
But al shal turne into ashes dead,
for al beautie is but a faynt ymage,
which stealeth away oꝝ felkes can take hebe.

The Squyer maketh answer.

Alas alas I can notwe no succour,
against death for my selfe prouide,
I due of youth the lusty fre sh flower,
A due vāingloꝝ, of beautie and the prouide

A due all seruice of the god Cupide,
A due my Ladies so fresh so wel beseyn,
for agayn death nothyng may abyde,
and winde great gon down with litle reyn

Death speaketh to the Gentlewoman.

Come forth maistrisse of yeres ponge
and grene, (reyn
which hold your selfe of beautie soue-
As saye as ye, was whilom Doliuene,
Penelope and the queene Helein.
Yet on this daunce thei went both thweyne,
and so shal ye for al your straungenesse,
yf daunger long in loue hath lab your cein,
arested is your chaunge of doublenes.

The Gentlewoman maketh answer.

Crue! death that spareth none estate,
to old and yong thou art indifferent,
to my beautie þ hast said checkmate
So hasty is thy mortall iudgement,
for in my youth this was mine entent
to my seruice many man to haue lured
but he is a foole thortly in sentment,
that in her beautie is to muche assured.

Death speaketh to the man of law.

Sþ advocate, thort proces for to make
ye not come plete afore þ high iudge,
Many quarels ye haue vnder take,
And for Lucre done to folke refuge,
But my fraunchise is so large and huge
that counsaile none auaisle may but trowth,
he scapeth wisely of death þ great deluge,
tofoze þ dome who is nought teint w slouth

The man of law maketh answer.

Of right & reaso by nature's law (fsee
Icā nought puttē against verth no de-
for al my wit noz for al my gret pu-
to appeale from his dzedful sentence, (dēce
nother by no sleight me kepen oꝝ withdꝝaw
noz nothyng in earth may a man preserue,
Agayn his might to make resistance,
God quiteth all men like as they deserue.
Death

The daunce of Mithabree.

Fol. Cxxiii.

Death speaketh to maister John
Bikil Tregetour.

Master John Bikil whilō Tregetour
Of Noble Henry king of Englonde
A of Fraunce þ mightie cōquerour,
For al the sleighes and turning of thine hōd
thou must come nere my daūce to vnderstōd
nought may auayle al thy conclusions,
For death shortly nother on sea ne lond,
is not deceiued by none illusions.

The Tregetour maketh aunswere.

What may auayle magike naturall,
Or any craft shewed by apparence,
Or course of starres aboue celestiall,
Or of the heauens al the influence,
Against death to stonde at defence?
Legerdemain now helpeth me right nought
Fare wel my craft and such sapience,
For death mo maistries hath ywrought.

Death speaketh to the person.

Sir curate þ been now here present
that had your worldly inclination,
your heart entere, your study & entēt
Most of your tithes and your oblacion,
which shoulde haue be of conuersacion,
Mirrour to other, light and examplar,
Like your desert shalbe your guerdon.
And to euery labour due is the salarye.

The person maketh aunswere.

Muger my wil I must condescende
For death assaileth euery liuely thing
Here in this world who cā cōprehend
His soden stroke and his vnware turning
Fare wel tithes, and fare wel mine offering
I mot go coumpten by order by and by,
and for my shepe make a iust reckonyng,
& who þ so him quiteth I hold he is happye.

Death speaketh to the Furrou.

Master Furrou which þ at assises,
And at theres questes dydst embrace
Deper didst lond like to thy deuises

And who most gaue most stode in thy grate
The poore man lost both lond and place,
For golde thou couldest folke disherite,
but now let se with thy terynt face,
tofoze the Judge how canst thee quite.

The Furrou maketh aunswere.

Whom I was cleped in my countrey,
The besweather, and that was not alite
nought loued, but dyad of high & low degree
For whom me lēt by craft I could endite,
Nongen the true and the these respite,
Al the countrey by my worde was lad,
But I dare sein shortly for to wyte,
Of my death many a man is glad.

Death speaketh to the minstrel.

Thou minstrell that can so note
and pipe.
Unto folke for to done pleasaunce
by the ryght honde anone I shall the gripe
with these other to gone vpon my daunce,
There is no scape nother auoydaunce,
On no syde to contune my sentence,
For in Musike by craft and accordaunce,
who maister is shewen his sentence.

The minstrell maketh aunswere.

This new daunce is to me so straunge,
wonder diuers and passingly contrayre,
the dredefull footyng doth so oft chaunge,
and the measures so oft sith varye,
which vnto me is now nothyng necessarye,
If it wer so that I might altere,
but many a man if I shal nought tarye,
Oft daunseth but nothyng of hert.

Death speaketh to the Labourer.

Thou Labourer which in sorow
and peyn,
hast lad thy life in great trauayle,
ye must eke daūce, and therfoze nought dis-
For if þ do it may the nought auayle. (Dein
And cause why that I thee assaile,
is onely this from thee to disceuer,
the false world that can so folkes faple,

De

The daunce of Machebe.

He is a foole that weneth to liuen euer.

The labourer maketh aunswere.

I haue wished after death ful oft,
Albe þ I would haue fled him now
I had leauer to haue lpen vnsoft,
In wind & rain to haue gon at the plowe,
With spade & pikoye labored for my prowe,
Doluen and ditched, and at the cart gone,
For I may say and tell platye howe,
In this worlde there is rest none.

Death speaketh to the frere menour.

Syr Cordehere to you mine hande is
raught,
you to this daunce to eduaie & leade,
which in your preaching han ful oft ytaught
How that I am most gasful for to dyde,
Albe that folke take thereto none hede,
yet is there none so strong ne so hardye,
but death dare hym rest and let for no mede,
for death every houre is present and ready.

The frere maketh aunswere.

What may this be þ in this worlde no mā.
Here to abide may haue no suretie:
Strength, riches, noz what so that he can,
of worldly wisdom al is but vanitie.
In great estate noz in pouertie,
is nothing founde that may his death defēd
for which I saye to high and low degree,
wise is that sinner that doth his lyfe amēd.

Death speaketh to the chyld.

Tele faunte that were but
late borne,
Shape in this worlde to haue
no pleasaunce,
ye must with other that gone here besoyne
be lad in hast by fatall ordinaunce,
Learne of new to gone on my daunce,
there may none age escape in soth therfro,
let every wight haue this in remembraunce
who lengest liueth most shal suffer woe.

The yong chyld maketh aunswere.

A.a. a woorde I cannot speake
I am so yonge I was borne yester day,
Death is so hasty on me to be weake,
And list no lenger to make no delate.
I am but now borne and now I go my way
Of me no moze to tale shal be told,
The wyll of god no man withstonde maye,
As soone dyeth a yong as an olde.

Death speaketh to the yong clerke.

Ye Syr clerke, suppose ye to
be free
fro my daunce, or your selve defende,
that wend haue risen vnto high degree,
Of Benefice or some gre at prebende,
who climbeth highest sometime shal descēd
Let no man grutche ayenst his fortune,
But take at gree what euer god him sende,
which punisheth al when time is oportune.

The Clerke maketh aunswere.

Shall, that am so young a clerke now die
Of my seruise I haue no better guerdon.
Is there no gayn ne no better way,
No better fraunchise noz protection?
Death maketh alway a short conclusion,
to late ware when me been on the byrke,
The world shal fayle and all possession,
for much faileth of thing that folkes thinke.

Death speaketh to the Hermite.

Me that haue liued long in
wildernes,
And there continued long in
abstinence,
At the last yet ye mot you dysse,
Of my daunce to haue experience,
for there agaynst is no relisence.
Take now leaue of thyne Hermitage,
werfore every man aduert to this sentence
That this life here is no sure heritage.

The Hermite maketh aunswere.

To liue in desert called solitarie (space
May again death haue respit none noz
At vnset houre his conmyng doth not tary
And

And for my part welcom by goddes grace,
Thankyng hym with humble chere & face,
Of al his giffes and great haboundaunce,
finally affirmyng in this place,
no man is riche that lacketh suffraunce.

Death speaketh agayn to
the Hermite.

That is wel sayd, and thus shoulde
every wight.
thanke his god & al his wittes dresse
to loue & dread him wth all his heart & might
Sith death to escape maye be no sikernes,
As men deserue, god quiteth of rightwines
to riche and pooze vpon every syde,
A better lesson there can no clerke expresse
than til to morow is no man sure to chide,



*Nil ita sublime est, supraq; pericula tendit;
Non sit ut inferius, suppositumq; deo.*

The king liggynge eaten
of wormes.



Ye folke þat loke vpon this por-
Beholding here all estates
daunce,
seeth what ye been & what
is your nature,
meat vnto wormes, nought
els in substance.
and haueth this mirrour aye in remembraunce
Howe I lye here whylom crowned kyng,
To al estates a true resemblaunce,
that wormes foode is þe fine of your luyng.

Machabree the
Dortoure.

Man is nought els platly for to thinke
but as toid which is transitory (winke
passing ay forth whether he wake or
toward this daunce haueth this in memoire
Remembryng aye there is no better victorie
in this life here than fle syn at the least
than shal ye reygne in paradise with gloire
happy is he that maketh in heauen his feast.

Yet been there folke mo than sixe or seuen,
Recheles of life in many maner wyse
like as there were hell none nor heauen,
Such false errour let every man despise.
For holy sayntes and olde clerkes wyse,
writen contrary her fallenes to defame,
To liuen wel take thys for the best emprise,
is much worth wher men shoulde hence passe.

¶ Lenuoy

The daunce of Machabree.

TLeniwe of the
translatoure.

O Ye my lordes & maisters all in feare,
of aventure & what this daunce reade
Lowely I pray with all myne heart,
to correct where as ye se nede (entere.
for nought elles I aske for my mede,
But goodly support of this translaton,
and with fauour to suppowalle drede,
beninglye in your correccion,

Out of the French I brough it of entent,
not word by word, but folowing in substaunce
And from Paris to England it sent,
only of purpose you to do pleasance.
haue me excused my name is John Lidgate
Rude of langage, I was not borne in frace
Her curious miter in Englishe to traslate
Of other tong I haue no suffisance.

There endeth the daunce of
Machabree.

Printed at London

in Fleetstrete within Temple barre at
the sygne of the hande and sharte, by Richard
Cottel, the .x. day of September in the
yeare of oure Lorde.

1554.

Cum Priuilegio ad impri-
mendum solum.

